

# LONGMAN

# Study Dictionary

of American English

**Understand more.  
Achieve more.**



PEARSON  
Longman

# NEW!



What teachers say about the new  
**Longman Study Dictionary  
of American English**

“

***The new dictionary looks enchanting and I believe that non native-speakers at various levels of competency in the English language, as well as under-achieving native-speakers who are below standards will benefit from it.***

***The definitions are clear, the example sentences help to learn the meaning of the word, and the Thesaurus, Word Family, and Usage boxes are certainly a good solution that makes the layout much more user-friendly.***

”

J.J. Lee-Gilbert  
ESL Department  
Menlo-Atherton High School, California

“

***Impressive, high access – the word families boxes I especially appreciate – I will be recommending this dictionary in my seminars!***

”

Dr. Kevin Feldman  
Educational Consultant  
Healdsburg, California

“

***The Language minority students, struggling adolescent readers, and mixed-ability classrooms pose so many unique challenges and I've been impressed with the consideration Longman has shown to their needs.***

”

Marty Roberts  
Hillsdale High School, San Mateo  
California



# LONGMAN

# Study Dictionary

of American English



PEARSON

Longman

**NEW!**



## **Pearson Education Limited**

Edinburgh Gate

Harlow

Essex

CM20 2JE, England, UK

and Associated Companies throughout the world

www.longman.com/dictionaries

© Pearson Education Limited 2006

*All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the Publishers.*

First edition published 2006

ISBN 1405 831650 (Paperback edition)

ISBN 1405 831669 (Cased edition)

ISBN 13: 978-1-4058-3165-9

ISBN 13: 978-1-4058-3166-6

Set in Helvetica by Letterpart, UK

Printed and bound in the United States of America

## **Acknowledgements**

### **Director**

Della Summers

### **Senior Publisher**

Laurence Delacroix

### **Managing Editor**

Stephen Bullon

### **Editorial Manager**

Cait Hawkins

### **Editors**

Karen Cleveland-Marwick

Chris Fox

Stephen Handorf

Karen Stern

### **Lexicographers**

Evadne Adrian-Vallance

Lucy Hollingworth

Elizabeth Manning

Michael Murphy

Martin Stark

Laura Wedgeworth

### **Project Manager**

Alan Savill

### **Production Manager**

Clive McKeough

David Gilmour

### **Corpus Development**

Steve Crowdy

### **Computational Linguist**

Allan Ørsnes

### **Production Editor**

Alexandra Jaton

Jane Townsend

### **Project and Database**

#### **Administrator**

Denise McKeough

### **Technical Support Manager**

Trevor Satchell

### **Pronunciation Editor**

Dinah Jackson

### **Workbook Section**

Linda Butler

### **Proofreaders**

Philip Hillyer

Jane Horwood

Wendy Lee

Sue Lightfoot

Adèle Linderholm

Ruth Noble

Daphne Trotter

Carol Osborne

### **Design Project Manager**

Linda Ward

### **Picture Researcher**

Karen Jones

Sandra Hilsdon

### **Design**

Mick Harris

### **Marketing**

Jillian Elston

### **Keyboarder**

Pauline Savill

Tracey Garrick

### **Administrative Assistance**

Janine Trainor

### **Artwork**

Chris Pavely (Pavely Arts),

Jo Blake (Beehive Illustration),

Kevin Jones Associates,

Ray and Corinne Burrows

(Beehive Illustration),

Mark Turner (Beehive Illustration),

Peter Wilks (Simon Girling

Associates)

**The publishers would like to express their gratitude to** their special adviser **Dr Kate Kinsella**, Teacher Trainer and School Consultant, San Francisco State University, Department of Secondary Education, for her keen interest, highly informed and focused guidance, and continued support throughout the development of this new dictionary.

**The publishers would also like to thank** all the dedicated teachers who have attended focus groups and given their informed feedback on sample text, in particular:

J. J. Lee Gilbert, Cuba Munsey, Karen Ball, Veronica Fern-McElarney, Margaret Klee, Dolores T. Andrews, Adriana Bo, Claire Trepanier, Nancy Rodriguez, Pilar Meija, Wayne Miller, Lorie Johnson, Trudie Heney, Susanna Cawley, Ms Barlow, Kelly Taggart, Sue Bolender, Jane Ardell, Cathy Personius, Steven Kirk, Marlene Churgel, David Roberts, Patricia Armendariz, Ann Ly, Kristien Evans, Donna Minick, Janet Ennis, Sarah Windes, Christina Park, Joyce Gordon, Doris Noriega, Lauri Buehler, Lisa Barnes, Shelly De Simone, Catherine Bunch, Devra Miller, Kim Shults, Ann Pappas, Ann Sokolovskaya, Marty Roberts, Adele Alvarez, Ross Russell, Jim Ybarra, Vanessa Henson, Ryan Coy, Courtney Gonzalez, Xavier Haase, Toni Costantino, Dorothea Jordan, Liane Cismowski, Laura Hill, Corinne Christiansen, Kevin Feldman, Lyndi Stauffer, John F. Fox, Lisa Visendi.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	v
Guide to the Dictionary	vi–vii
<b>The Dictionary A–Z</b>	<b>1–782</b>
Picture Dictionary	A1
Workbook	A33
Irregular Verbs	783
School Content Vocabulary	786
Weights and Measures	801
Geographical Names	802
Workbook Answer Key	805
Pronunciation Table	inside back cover



## Photography credits

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:

Dartboard – Corbis (Royalty Free); Well – Corbis (Chris Lisle); Rush hour – Corbis (Bob Krist); Aquarium – Alamy (Bill Bachman); Exhaust – Alamy (INSADCO Photography); Exhibition – Alamy (Janine Wiedel Photography); Fingerprint – Alamy – PHOTOTAKE Inc; Bruise – John Birdsall; Straighten – Royalty Free (Business Hands); Chimpanze – NHPA (Michael Leach). All other pictures Hemera Technologies Inc “Copyright ©2006 (Pearson Education) and its licensors. All rights reserved”

Alamy Images: (A26–27) (truck) (Peter Horree), (train/railway line) (Thomas J. Preston), (subway station) (PCL), (cab/taxi) (Joe Fox), (bus/bus stop) (David R Frazier/Photolibrary), (crosswalk) (Culliganphoto), (cycle) (TNT Magazine), (motor home) (Allan Ivy), (ship) (Andre Jenny), (motorcycle) (Guillen photo), (plane/runway) (EK Aviation), (A24–25) (rollerblading) (Swerve); Corbis: (A26–27) (police car) (Alan Schein Photography), (rowboat) (Ariel Skelley); Getty Images: (A26–27) (pickup truck) (Photographers Choice), (A24–25) (running) (Iconica)

All other images:

Dorling Kindersley

Hemera Photo Objects (Royalty Free)

iStockphoto.com (Royalty Free)

PhotoDisc (Musical Instruments/Royalty Free)

PhotoDisc (Sports and Recreation/Royalty)

www.comstock.com (Food Icons/Royalty Free)

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

Picture Research by Sandra Hilsdon



# INTRODUCTION

by **Kate Kinsella**,  
Ed.D., San Francisco State University,  
Department of Secondary Education

---

A dictionary can be an invaluable resource for young language learners as they tackle the vocabulary demands of challenging reading curricula and academic writing tasks.

Unfortunately, the curricular mainstay of U.S. upper-elementary and secondary classrooms is a collegiate desk dictionary, and as the root word “college” suggests, this lexical tool was designed for a mature adult reader with a highly literate command of English. As a consequence, definitions are overly precise and concise at the expense of clarity, and often include another form of the target word or even more sophisticated words.

Standard desk dictionaries also fail to provide familiar synonyms within a school-aged youth’s “personal thesaurus” and illustrative examples drawn from commonplace experiential realms. Students in grades 4–9 are generally too mature for the junior picture dictionary that served them well in the primary grades but far too immature for the comprehensive dictionary that they will need in advanced high school and collegiate coursework. When students find themselves more confused and frustrated than illuminated by a vocabulary resource, they are bound to rely upon unproductive coping strategies like rote copying or abandoning any independent study efforts in hopes of an eventual teacher explanation. Repeated unsuccessful forays into a dictionary have a long-lasting negative impact on struggling learners who internalize their disappointing endeavors as a personal failure rather than a glaring curricular mismatch.

I teach and coach instruction throughout the U.S. in highly diverse 4–12 classrooms, including striving readers and English learners who are woefully under-prepared for the language demands of their grade level curricula. The teachers need a potent lesson-planning tool that will aid them in effectively and efficiently preparing to teach the most critical terms to a linguistically vulnerable class. Likewise, the learners need a non-intimidating resource that won’t leave them utterly bewildered and paralyzed with confusion when they are assigned independent vocabulary work.

I am elated to finally be able to wholeheartedly recommend an appropriate dictionary for the mixed-ability intermediate or secondary classroom. The **Longman Study Dictionary** meets all of my criteria for a “considerate” vocabulary development resource for younger learners. The visual impact of the page spread is appealing, and the judicious use of color and graphics all make page navigation more manageable.

Furthermore, the meticulously crafted definitions are conscientious explanations written using familiar language within a school-aged youth’s daily register rather than the arguably precise yet elusive synonyms and syntax characteristic of the academic lexicon. These accessible explanations are complemented by evocative, familiar contexts that help a less experienced young learner build a powerful mental anchor, increasing the odds of word comprehension and successful application.

Equally valuably, the **Longman Study Dictionary** highlights high-incidence academic vocabulary in striking Word Family Boxes, drawing students’ attention to critical words for academic endeavors. Knowledge of the most commonly used academic words across grade levels and subject areas can significantly boost a student’s comprehension level of school-based reading material and performance on high stakes writing assignments. These academic “tool kit” words are given lexical status in this learners’ dictionary, which should facilitate lesson planning for teachers and independent word study for developing English language users.

A considerate, developmentally appropriate dictionary should be an educational civil right at every grade level. I sincerely hope the **Longman Study Dictionary** makes its way into as many school libraries, classrooms and backpacks as possible to support young aspiring learners in making the academic language and literacy strides that underlie educational success.



# GUIDE TO THE DICTIONARY

Different meanings are shown clearly, with the most common meaning first.

Definitions explaining the meaning of a word are written in clear simple language, using the 2000-word Longman Defining Vocabulary.

Words with the same or opposite meaning are shown after the definition.

Pictures help you to understand the meaning of a word.

Irregular forms of verbs are shown at the beginning of an entry.

Simple examples show you how to use a word and help to explain its meaning.

Phrasal Verbs are shown in alphabetical order at the end of an entry.

The dictionary contains words that are often used in science lessons and course books.

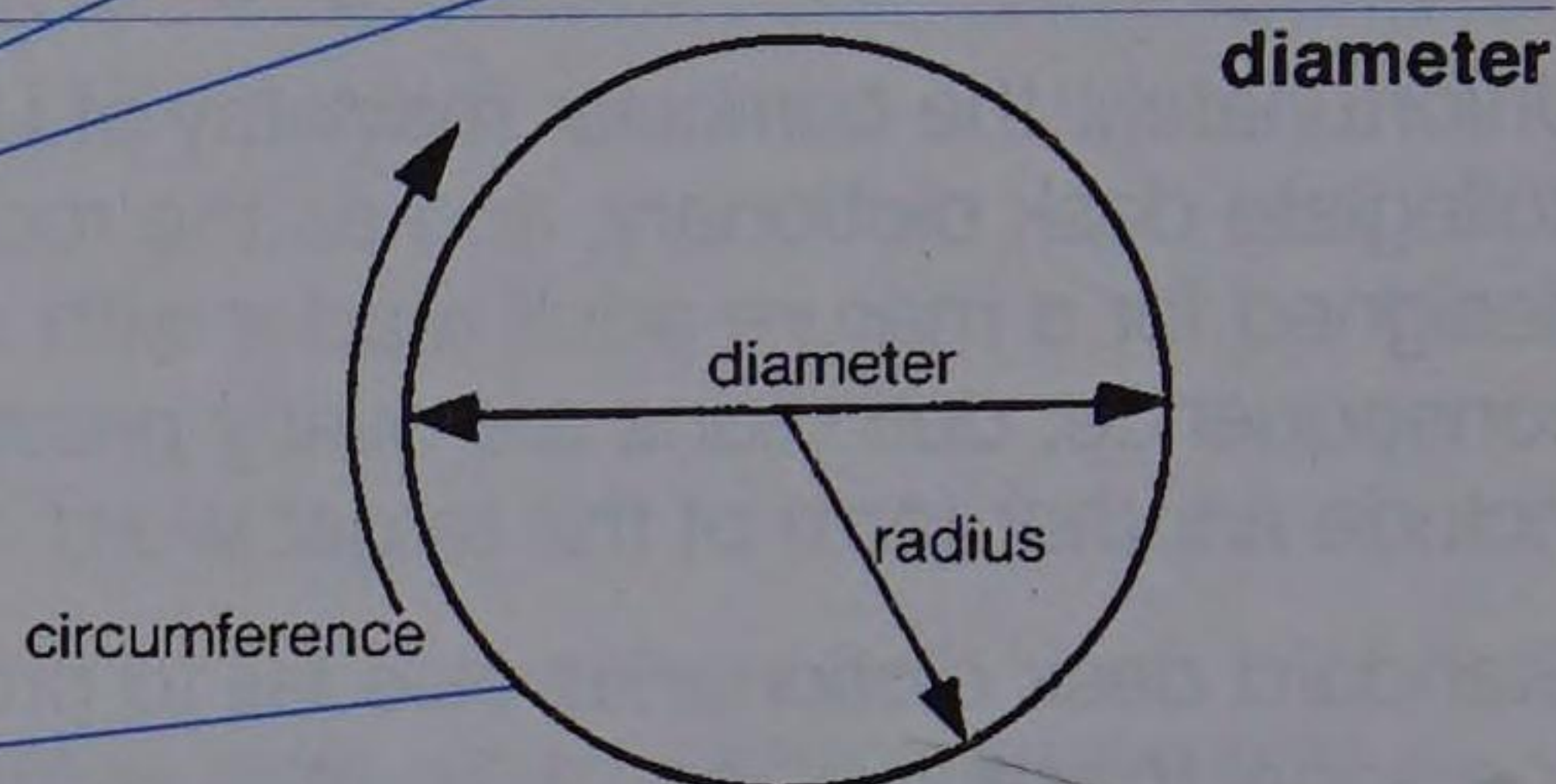
A label before a definition shows that a word is formal or informal.

Derived words are shown at the end of an entry. These words can be easily understood from the meaning of the main word.

**con·clude** /kən'klud/ **Ac** verb, formal

**1** to decide that something is true from the information you have: *He concluded that Tina had not taken the money.*

**2** to end a meeting, speech, event, etc.: *She concluded the meeting by thanking everyone. | The fair concluded with (=ended with) a fireworks display.* **SYNONYM** finish, end; **ANTONYM** begin, start



**di·am·e·ter** /daɪ'æmətə/ noun

a line or measurement from one side of a circle to the other, through the center: *The table is five feet in diameter (=it measures five feet across).*

**eat** /it/ verb **ate** /eɪt/ **eaten** /'i:tn/

**1** to put food in your mouth and swallow it: *She was eating an apple. | I'm still eating my dinner. | Do you want something to eat (=some food to eat)?*

**2** to have a meal: *We usually eat at about 6.*

## PHRASAL VERBS

### eat out

to eat in a restaurant: *They usually eat out once a week.*

### eat something up

**1** to finish eating all of something: *Eat up your breakfast! We're late!*

**2** to use too much of something: *This class is eating up all of my time. I don't have time to study anything else.*

**3 eat it up** informal = to enjoy something very much: *If you give the kids a computer game, they'll just eat it up.*

**en·zyme** /'enzaim/ noun

a chemical that is produced in plants and animals and that causes a chemical process to start: *Enzymes in the stomach change food so that it can be digested.*

**e·rupt** /ɪ'rʌpt/ verb

**1** formal if violence erupts, it suddenly happens: *Fighting could erupt again at any time.*

**2** if a VOLCANO erupts, it sends out smoke, fire, and rock into the sky: *More than 800 people died when the volcano erupted.*

—**eruption** /ɪ'rʌpʃən/ noun an occasion when a VOLCANO erupts



**globe** /gloub/ **Ac** noun

**1 the globe** = the world: *Our company has offices all over the globe.*

**2** a round object that has a map of the Earth on it: *The teacher used a globe to show how the ships sailed from England to America.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- globe noun
- global adjective
- globally adverb

**hap·py** /'hæpi/ adjective **happier, happiest**

**1** feeling pleased, for example because your life is good, or something good has happened: *Pete is very happy at his new school.* | *I was really happy to hear your good news!* **ANTONYM** sad

**THESAURUS:**

**cheerful** someone who is cheerful seems happy and smiles a lot: *Tom's a very cheerful little boy.*

**pleased** happy because someone has done something good, or something good has happened: *Her parents were pleased that she had done so well in college.*

**glad** happy because something good has happened. You use **glad** especially when you are telling other people that you are happy about something: *I'm really glad you can come to the party.*

**delighted** formal very happy because something good has happened: *She will be delighted when she hears the news.*

**in·for·ma·tion** /,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/ noun

facts that you get from someone or give someone: *Can you give me some information about where to buy this book?* | *Before you start on the project, I have one more important piece of information for you.*

**GRAMMAR:**

Do not say "an information" or "informations." Say, for example, **some/any information, a lot of information, or a piece of information:** *Where can I find some information about your company?* | *All of this information is in the book.* | *I need a couple more pieces of information before I can finish my report.*

**judg·ment** also **judgement** /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ noun

**jump**<sup>1</sup> /dʒʌmp/ verb

**jump**<sup>2</sup> noun

The dictionary contains words that are often used in academic writing.

Common phrases have their own definition, and the meaning of the whole phrase is explained.

Word Family boxes have lists of words that are from the same family.

Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives are shown at the beginning of an entry.

Part of speech

Thesaurus boxes explain words with similar meanings to the word you are looking up, helping to increase your vocabulary.

Pronunciation

Grammar and Usage Notes give you help to choose the correct word and not make mistakes.

Different spellings are shown at the beginning of an entry.

Words that are spelt the same but have different parts of speech have separate entries.







# Aa

**a** /ə; strong eɪ/ also **an** indefinite article

**1** used when you are mentioning someone or something new, or describing one person, thing, etc.: *He wants to buy a car. | Her mother's a teacher.*

**2** used with "hundred," "thousand," etc. to mean "one": *a thousand dollars (= \$1,000)*

**3** for each, or in each: *The candy cost 75 cents a bag, so two bags cost \$1.50. | She calls me twice a week – on Tuesday and on Thursday.* **SYNONYM** *per*

## GRAMMAR: a

### a, an

Use **a** if the word that is after it starts with a consonant sound: *a car | a white egg | a house | I bought a CD today.*

Use **an** if the word that is after it starts with a vowel sound (the sounds shown by the letters a, e, i, o, or u): *an apple | an orange sweater | I waited an hour.*

**A** /eɪ/ noun

**1** the best GRADE that you can get on a test or in a class: *I did a really good job on my book report, and I got an A.*

**2** the sixth note in the musical SCALE of C, or the musical KEY based on this note

**a.ban.don** /ə'bændən/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**1** to leave a person, place, or vehicle and not go back: *He abandoned his family and moved to another state.*

**2** to stop doing something because of problems: *They abandoned the search when it became too dark to see.*

—**abandonment** noun the action of abandoning someone or something

**ab.bre.vi.a.tion** /ə,brɪvɪ'eɪʃən/ noun

the short form of a word: *"Mr." is the abbreviation for "Mister."*

**ABC's** /,eɪbi'sɪz/ noun

the letters of the English alphabet: *She's learning her ABC's and can recognize most of the letters.*

**ab.do.men** /'æbdəmən/ noun, formal

the front part of your body between your chest and your legs

—**abdominal** /æb'dəmənəl/ adjective, formal relating to your abdomen

**ab.duct** /əb'dʌkt/ verb, formal

to take someone away by force in order to keep him or her as your prisoner: *Terrorists abducted the reporters and kept them as prisoners.* **SYNONYM** *kidnap*

—**abduction** /əb'dʌkʃən/ noun when someone is abducted: *the abduction of a child*

**a.bil.i.ty** /ə'bɪləti/ noun plural **abilities**

if you have the ability to do something, you can do it: *Her ability to speak Spanish was very useful when she was in Mexico. | He has a lot of athletic ability and does well in sports.*

## THESAURUS: ability

**skill** something that you do very well because you have learned and practiced it: *This class will help you improve your writing skills.*

**talent** a natural ability to do something well: *He plays the trumpet really well – he has a lot of talent.*

**knack** informal a natural ability to do something well: *Kate seems to have a knack for learning languages.*

**a.ble** /'eɪbəl/ adjective

**able to do something** = if you are able to do something, you can do it: *I'd like to be able to play a musical instrument.*

## WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **able** adjective
- **unable** adjective
- **ability** noun

**ab.nor.mal** /æb'nɔrməl/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal

different from usual in a way that is strange or dangerous: *If the boy's abnormal behavior continues, you should take him to a doctor.*

**ANTONYM** *normal*

—**abnormally** adverb, formal: *The strange weather conditions and extra traffic are causing abnormally high pollution levels.*

—**abnormality** /,æbnɔr'mæləti/ noun, formal something that is abnormal



**a-board** /ə'bo:rd/ *adverb, preposition*  
on or onto a ship, airplane, or train: *Everyone aboard the plane survived.*

**a-bol-ish** /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ *verb, formal*  
to officially end a law, system, etc.: *The country recently abolished the death penalty.*  
—**abolition** /,æbə'liʃən/ *noun* the act of abolishing something: *the abolition of slavery*

**a-bor-tion** /ə'bɔ:ʃən/ *noun*  
the act of ending a PREGNANCY: *She decided not to have an abortion and keep the baby.*

**a-bout** /ə'baʊt/ *adverb, preposition*  
**1** used to say what the subject of a book, conversation, thought, etc. is: *She was reading a book about horses. | He was worried about the family's money problems.*

**2** a little more or less than a particular number or amount: *The sun sets at about six o'clock. | There were about 50 students at the meeting.* **SYNONYM** approximately

#### THESAURUS: about

**approximately** a little more or a little less than a number, amount, distance, or time: *A kilo is approximately two pounds.*

**around** used when guessing a number, amount, time, etc., without being exact: *"What time will you get home?" "Around nine, I think."*

**roughly** a little more or a little less than a number, used when you are saying a number you know is not exact: *Roughly 7,000 cars cross the border every day.*

**or so** *informal* used when you cannot be exact about a number, amount, or period of time: *I saw him a week or so ago.*

**3 be about to do something** = if you are about to do something, you will do it very soon: *They have their coats on. I think they're about to leave.*

**4 informal almost:** *He could fix just about anything, so we never had to throw things away.*

**5 what about/how about a)** used to make a suggestion: *How about looking under the bed for the ball? b) used to ask a question relating to another person or thing involved in a situation: *What about the food? Was it good?**

**6** used to say that someone or something has a particular quality or feature: *There's*

*something weird about that guy – he never looks at me when he's talking to me.*

**a-bove** /ə'bʌv/ *adverb, preposition*

**1** in or to a higher position than something else: *Raise your arm above your head. | He heard a noise in the room above.* **ANTONYM** below

**2** more than a number, amount, or level: *Temperatures rose above freezing today to 35 degrees. | The program is for kids age 8 and above.* **ANTONYM** below

**3 above all** *formal* = most importantly, or more than anything else: *Above all, children want to feel safe and loved.*

**4 formal** before, in the same piece of writing: *The drugs mentioned in the paragraph above are not being sold yet.* **ANTONYM** below

**a-bridged** /ə'brɪdʒd/ *adjective, formal*  
an abridged book, play, etc. has been made shorter: *I read an abridged version of the book, so it didn't take as long.*

**a-broad** /ə'brɒd/ *adverb*  
in or to a foreign country: *I want to go abroad after college – maybe to Russia.*

**a-brupt** /ə'brʌpt/ *adjective*  
**1** sudden and unexpected: *There was an abrupt knock at the door.*

**2** using few words in a conversation so that you appear unfriendly or impolite: *She was very abrupt on the phone, and I thought she must be angry.*

—**abruptly** *adverb:* *The train stopped abruptly and I almost fell over.*

**ab-sence** /'æbsəns/ *noun, formal*  
a time when you are not in a place where you are expected to be: *My assistant will deal with any problems in my absence (=while I am away).*

**ab-sent** /'æbsənt/ *adjective, formal*  
not at work, school, a meeting, etc. when other people expect you to be there: *Ten children were absent from class today because of colds.* **ANTONYM** present

—**absentee** /,æbsən'ti/ *noun* someone who is absent: *Ten people were at the meeting, but there were three absentees.*

**ab-so-lute** /'æbsələt/ *adjective*  
complete or total: *I have absolute confidence in you – I'm sure you'll do well in this job.*



**ab-so-lute-ly** /,æbsə'lutli/ *adverb*

**1** completely or totally: *Are you absolutely sure? If you're not certain, we'll try something else.*

**2** used to emphasize what you are saying: *There's absolutely nothing you can do to stop me – I'm going to do it no matter what you do.*

**3** used to say yes in a strong way when you completely agree: *"Would you like to come along?" "Absolutely."*

**ab-sorb** /əb'sɔrb/ *verb, formal*

**1** if something absorbs liquid, gas, or energy, it takes it in and holds it: *The towel absorbed most of the water.*

**2** to learn and completely understand new information: *There was too much information in the article – I couldn't absorb it all.*

**3 be absorbed in something** = to be so interested in something you are doing or watching that you do not pay attention to other things: *I pretended to be absorbed in my work.*

—**absorbent** *adjective* able to absorb liquid: *Which brand of diaper is most absorbent?*

**ab-sorb-ing** /əb'sɔrbɪŋ/ *adjective, formal*  
an absorbing book, movie, etc. is so interesting that you continue reading or watching it with great attention

**ab-tract** /æb'strækt/ **Ac** *adjective*

**1** relating to ideas rather than specific real things or events: *Are animals capable of abstract thought? For example, do they feel love?*

**2** abstract art consists of shapes and patterns that do not look like real things or people

**ab-surd** /əb'sɜ:d/ *adjective*

completely silly: *That's an absurd idea! We could never do that.*

—**absurdly** *adverb*

**a-bun-dance** /ə'bʌndəns/ *noun, formal*

a lot of something: *There is an abundance of information about this on the Internet. It would take months to read it all.*

**a-bun-dant** /ə'bʌndənt/ *adjective, formal*

more than enough: *We have an abundant supply of fuel, so we don't need to worry about not having enough.* **SYNONYM** plentiful

**a-buse<sup>1</sup>** /ə'byus/ *noun*

**1** cruel or violent treatment of someone: *He was accused of child abuse when he broke his daughter's arm.*

**2** the use of something in a way it should not be used: *He has a history of drug abuse (=he has taken illegal drugs in the past).*

**3** formal rude things that are said to someone: *People were shouting abuse at the soldiers.*

**a-buse<sup>2</sup>** /ə'byuz/ *verb*

**1** to do cruel or violent things to someone: *He admitted that he abused his wife by hitting her.*

**2** to use something in a way it should not be used: *Did the senator abuse his power by giving jobs to his friends?*

—**abusive** /ə'byusɪv/ *adjective* using very unkind words or violence: *Her abusive husband had seriously hurt her several times.*

**AC** *noun*

**1 alternating current** the type of electric current used in buildings for electrical equipment

**2 informal** another word for AIR CONDITIONING

**ac-a-dem-ic** /,ækə'demɪk/ **Ac** *adjective*  
relating to education, especially in a college or university: *The school has very high academic standards – you have to be very smart to go there.*

**a-cad-e-my** /ə'kædəmi/ **Ac** *noun plural*  
**academies**

**1** a school or college where students are taught a particular subject or skill: *a military academy*

**2** an organization whose aim is to encourage art, science, literature, etc.: *the National Academy of Sciences*

**ac-cel-er-ate** /æk'selə'reɪt/ *verb*

if a vehicle or its driver accelerates, it moves faster: *The car accelerated down the hill.*

**ac-cent** /'æksent/ *noun*

**1** a way of pronouncing words that shows that you come from a particular place: *He had a strong Russian accent.*

**2** a mark above a letter that shows how to pronounce that letter: *There is an accent over the second "e" in "René."*

→ See Thesaurus box at **language**



**ac·cept** /ək'sept/ verb

**1** to take something that someone offers you: *Are you going to accept their offer? | He wouldn't accept any money from us.* **ANTONYM** **refuse**

**2 accept an invitation** = to say yes when you have been invited somewhere: *She asked me to come for a visit, and I accepted her invitation gladly.*

**3** to admit or agree that something is true or cannot be changed: *She refused to accept that he was dead.*

**4** to let someone join a university, organization, etc.: *I've been accepted to Harvard.* **ANTONYM** **reject**

**ac·cept·a·ble** /ək'septəbəl/ adjective

satisfactory: *They tried to make a deal that would be acceptable to both groups so that everyone would be happy.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **satisfactory**

**ac·cept·ance** /ək'septəns/ noun

**1** the act of taking something that is offered to you: *His acceptance of the job offer meant the family had to move.*

**2** the act of agreeing that something is true or cannot be changed: *There is little acceptance of the theory among scientists. Only a few scientists believe it is true.*

**ac·cept·ed** /ək'septɪd/ adjective

accepted ideas are considered true or right by most people: *It is generally accepted that being very fat is dangerous to your health.*

**ac·cess**<sup>1</sup> /'ækses/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** the ability to have or use something: *The library allows anyone to have access to the Internet.*

**2** a way of getting into a place: *Stores must improve access for customers in wheelchairs.*

**access**<sup>2</sup> verb

to look at information that is available, especially on a computer: *I couldn't access the file.*

**ac·ci·dent** /'æksədənt/ noun

**1** a situation in which someone is hurt or something is damaged without anyone intending for it to happen: *Her parents were killed in a car accident. | He had an accident and broke his leg.*

**2 by accident** = if something happens by accident, it is not intended or planned: *I*

*found the information by accident – I wasn't even looking for it.* **SYNONYM** **accidentally**; **ANTONYM** **on purpose**

**3 be an accident** = if something bad that happens is an accident, it is not intended or planned: *The explosion was an accident – no one meant for it to happen.*

**ac·ci·den·tal** /,æksə'dentəl/ adjective  
happening without being intended or planned: *It was an accidental shooting, so he will not have to go to jail.* **ANTONYM** **deliberate**

**ac·ci·den·tal·ly** /,æksə'dentəli/ adverb  
if you do something accidentally, you do it without intending to: *I accidentally left my keys in the car.* **ANTONYM** **deliberately**

**ac·com·mo·date** /ə'kʌmə,deɪt/ **[Ac]**  
verb, formal

to have enough space for a particular number of people or things: *The room can accommodate 300 people.*

**ac·com·mo·da·tions**

/ə'kʌmə'deɪʃənz/ plural noun

a place to live or stay: *The cost of the vacation includes hotel accommodations.*

**ac·com·pa·ny** /ə'kʌmpəni/ **[Ac]** verb  
accompanied

**1** formal to go somewhere with someone: *He accompanied her to the hospital so she would not feel alone.*

**2** to play music while someone is playing or singing the main tune: *My sister sang, and I accompanied her on the piano.*

**ac·com·plish** /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/ verb

to succeed in doing something: *We've accomplished our goal of raising \$45,000.*

—**accomplishment** noun something that you have succeeded in doing: *His biggest accomplishment was winning the New York Marathon.*

**ac·cord** /ə'kɔrd/ noun

**of your own accord** formal = if you do something of your own accord, you do it without being asked or forced to do it: *I didn't tell him to go – he left of his own accord.*

**ac·cord·ing·ly** /ə'kɔrdɪŋli/ adverb, formal

**1** in a way that is appropriate because of the situation or because of what has been done or said: *We listened to students' ideas and made changes accordingly.*



**2** as a result of something: *The cost of health care continues to rise. Accordingly, the senator is introducing a bill that would help poor families pay for health care.*

SYNONYM **therefore**

**ac'cording to** preposition

**1** used to say where your information comes from: *According to our records, you owe us \$520. | It's the best movie Spielberg has ever made, according to Melissa (=Melissa said this).*

**2** in a way that obeys a rule or follows a plan: *You will be paid according to the amount of work you do. | Everything went according to plan (=happened in the way that had been planned), and there were no real problems.*

**ac·cor·di·on** /ə'kɔrdiən/ noun

a musical instrument that you play by moving the sides apart and together and pressing buttons

→ See picture on page A21

**ac·count<sup>1</sup>** /ə'kaunt/ noun

**1** also **bank account** an arrangement with a bank to keep your money for you: *I don't have much money in my account (=there is not much of my money in the bank). | a checking account (=one that you can use to write checks from) | a savings account (=one in which you save money so that the amount increases)*

**2** formal a written or spoken description of an event or situation: *Can you give us an account of what happened?*

**3** **take something into account** = to consider a particular fact when judging or deciding something: *We take the patient's age into account when we decide which medicine is best for him or her.*

**4** **on account of something** = because of something: *He couldn't lift anything heavy on account of his bad back.*

**5** **accounts** = a record of the money that a company has received and spent

**account<sup>2</sup>** verb

PHRASAL VERB

**account for something**

**1** to explain something that has happened: *How do you account for her success? Was it talent, hard work, or something else?*

**2** to be a particular part of an amount: *In*

*California, Asian Americans account for over 12 percent of the population.*

**ac·count·a·ble** /ə'kauntəbəl/ adjective  
responsible for what you do or make happen, and having a duty to explain it: *Teachers should be held accountable for their decisions (=they should have to explain their decisions and be punished if their decisions are bad).*

**ac·count·ant** /ə'kauntənt/ noun

someone whose job is to keep records of how much money a business has received and spent

**ac·count·ing** /ə'kauntɪŋ/ noun

the job of being an accountant

**ac·cu·mu·late** /ə'kyumyə'leɪt/ **Ac**

verb, formal

**1** to gradually get more and more of something: *During his life he accumulated a huge amount of money.*

**2** if something accumulates, it gradually increases in amount: *Dust had accumulated in the corners of the room because he never cleaned anything.*

—**accumulation** /ə'kyumyə'leɪʃən/ noun, formal a large amount of something that has increased gradually

**ac·cu·ra·cy** /'ækjərəsi/ **Ac** noun

**1** the quality of being correct or true: *Check the accuracy of your answers before you give the teacher your test.*

**2** the ability to hit the thing that you are trying to hit: *The bombs can be aimed with amazing accuracy.*

**ac·cu·rate** /'ækjərɪt/ **Ac** adjective

**1** correct in every detail: *I checked the figures with a calculator to see if they were accurate.* ANTONYM **inaccurate**

**2** an accurate shot, throw, etc. succeeds in hitting the thing that you are trying to hit: *He made an accurate throw to first base.*

—**accurately** adverb

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **accurate** adjective
- **inaccurate** adjective
- **accurately** adverb
- **accuracy** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **right<sup>1</sup>**



A

**ac·cu·sa·tion** /,ækjə'zeɪʃən/ *noun*

an occasion when someone says that another person has done something wrong: *She made accusations of violence against him, and the police arrested him.*

**ac·cuse** /ə'kyuz/ *verb*

to say that someone has done something wrong: *Terry accused her of cheating. | He was accused of murder.*

WORD FAMILY → **accusation** *noun*

**ac·cus·tomed** /ə'kʌstəmd/ *adjective, formal*

**be accustomed to (doing) something** = if you are accustomed to something, it is not strange or unusual for you: *We were accustomed to working together after sharing an office for five years.* **SYNONYM** **be used to (doing) something**

**ace** /eɪs/ *noun*

a PLAYING CARD with one symbol on it. It has the highest or lowest value in a game: *the ace of hearts*

**ache**<sup>1</sup> /eɪk/ *verb*

if part of your body aches, it hurts for a long time: *My legs were aching after walking so far.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hurt**<sup>1</sup>

**ache**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a continuous pain: *She felt an ache in her chest where she had been hit.*

**a·chieve** /ə'tʃɪv/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to succeed in doing or getting something you want: *She achieved her goal of becoming a lawyer.*

—**achievable** *adjective* able to be achieved: *an achievable goal*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **achieve** *verb*
- **achievable** *adjective*
- **achievement** *noun*

**a·chieve·ment** /ə'tʃɪvmənt/ **[Ac]** *noun*

something important or difficult that you do successfully: *One of his greatest achievements was to win a gold medal at the Olympic Games.*

**ac·id** /'æsɪd/ *noun*

a liquid chemical substance that can burn things: *The acid had burned a hole in the metal.*

—**acidic** /ə'sɪdɪk/ *adjective* relating to or

containing acid: *acidic soil*

—**acidity** /ə'sɪdətɪ/ *noun* the fact of containing or being acid

**acid 'rain** *noun*

rain that contains acid and that damages plants, trees, and rivers

**ac·knowl·edge** /ək'naɪdʒ/ **[Ac]** *verb*

**1** to accept or admit that something is true or correct: *Angie acknowledged (that) she had made a mistake and apologized.*

**2** to show someone that you have seen or heard him or her: *She didn't even acknowledge me when I said "hi."*

**3** to let someone know that you have received something from him or her: *She never acknowledged my letter, so I don't know if she got it.*

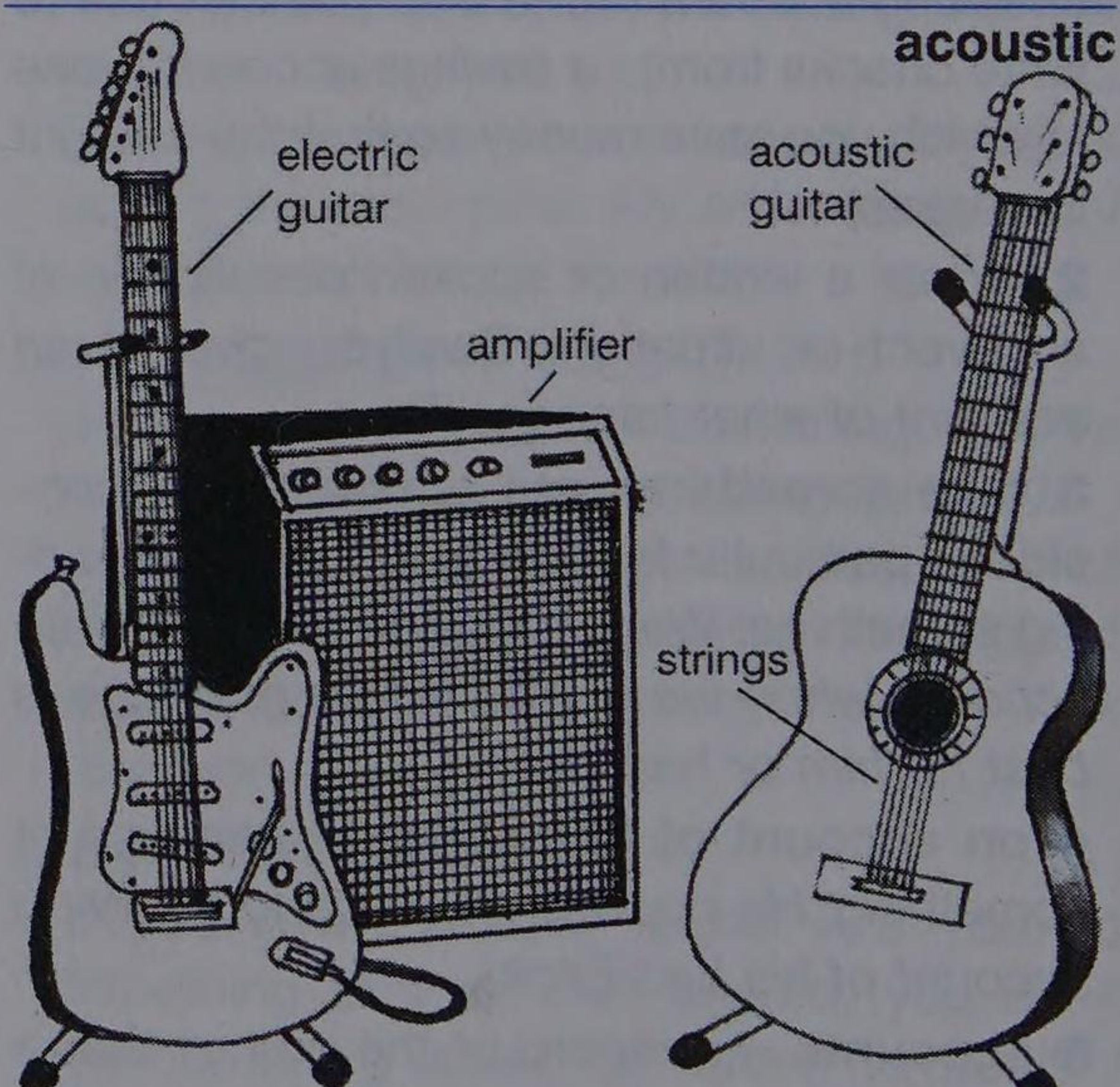
—**acknowledgement** *noun* the act of acknowledging someone or something

**ac·ne** /'ækni/ *noun*

a skin problem that makes a lot of red spots appear on your face, and is common among young people: *She had terrible acne when she was a teenager and she tried to cover her face with her hair.*

**a·corn** /'eɪkɔrn/ *noun*

the nut of an OAK tree



**a·cous·tic** /ə'kustɪk/ *adjective*

**1** an acoustic musical instrument or performance is not electric or does not use electric instruments: *I have an acoustic guitar. I've never played an electric guitar.*

**2** *formal* relating to sound and the way people hear things: *You need good acoustic skills to understand spoken language.*



**ac·quaint·ance** /ə'kweɪntəns/ *noun*, formal

someone you have met, but do not know well: *He's an acquaintance of mine from church, but we have never spent much time together.*

**ac·quaint·ed** /ə'kweɪntɪd/ *adjective*, formal

if you are acquainted with someone, you know him or her, but not very well: *Are you acquainted with Professor Green? | Why don't you two get acquainted (=start to learn more about each other)?*

**ac·quire** /ə'kwaɪə/ **Ac** *verb*, formal

to get or buy something: *The museum acquired the painting for \$5.6 million.*

—**acquisition** /,ækwə'zɪʃən/ *noun*, formal  
something that you have acquired: *The painting is a new acquisition.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **buy**

**a·cre** /'eɪkə/ *noun*

a unit for measuring an area of land, equal to 4,840 square yards or about 4,047 square meters: *a 40-acre farm*

**ac·ro·bat** /'ækrə,bæt/ *noun*

someone who entertains people by doing difficult physical actions such as walking on his or her hands or balancing on a high rope in a CIRCUS

**a·cross** /ə'krɒs/ *adverb*, *preposition*

**1** from one side of something to the other: *A boy suddenly ran across the road. | They are building a bridge across the river. | At its widest point, the river is 2 miles across.*

**2** on the opposite side of something: *Ben lives across the street from us.*

**act<sup>1</sup>** /ækt/ *verb*

**1** to do something: *When someone has a heart attack, you need to act quickly. | We're acting on the advice of our lawyer (=doing what he or she says).*

**2** to behave in a particular way: *Nick's been acting strange recently. | Pam's acting like a child.*

**3** to perform in a play or movie: *She's acted in several Hollywood movies.*

**4** to have an effect or use: *The honey acts as a kind of glue, holding the pieces of bread together.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **act** *noun*
- **act** *verb*
- **action** *noun*
- **activity** *noun*
- **active** *adjective*

**act<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** something that you do: *He carried the old lady's bags as an act of kindness.*

**2** also **Act** a law that the government has made: *the Civil Rights Act*

**3** also **Act** one of the main parts of a play: *In Act II, Ross and Diane get married.*

**4** a short piece of entertainment that is part of a television or theater show: *The two men performed a short comedy act.*

**5** behavior that is not sincere: *He never loved me. It was just an act (=he was just pretending).*

**act·ing** /'æktɪŋ/ *noun*

the activity of performing in plays or movies: *She's beautiful, but she's not very good at acting.*

**ac·tion** /'ækʃən/ *noun*

**1** the process of doing something, especially in order to achieve something: *The government needs to take action (=start doing something) to stop the rise in crime. | The best course of action (=way of dealing with the situation) is to tell her the truth.*

**2** something that you do: *Alan's quick actions saved Sarah's life after the car accident.*

**3** the effect that a substance has on something: *The rocks are worn away by the action of the waves.*

**ac·ti·vate** /'æktə'veɪt/ *verb*, formal

to make something start working: *This button activates the alarm.*

**ac·tive** /'æktɪv/ *adjective*

**1** someone who is active can move and do things easily: *Although Bob is over 70, he's still very active and goes for a long walk every day.* **ANTONYM** **inactive**

**2** in grammar, if a verb or sentence is active, the person or thing doing the action is the **SUBJECT** of the verb: *In the sentence "The boy kicked the ball," the verb "kick" is active.*

**ANTONYM** **passive**



A

**ac·tiv·i·ty** /æk'tɪvəti/ noun plural **activities**

**1** something that you do for enjoyment in a regular organized way: *She enjoys outdoor activities such as hiking and riding bikes.*

**2** things that people do because they want to achieve a particular aim: *It's impossible for the government to stop all terrorist activities.*

**3** a situation in which a lot of things are happening or a lot of things are being done: *Sally loved the noise and activity of the city.*

**ac·tor** /'æktər/ noun

someone who performs in plays or movies or in television shows: *He wanted to go to Hollywood and become a movie actor.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**ac·tress** /'æktɪs/ noun

a woman who performs in plays or movies or in television shows

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**ac·tu·al** /'æktʃuəl/ adjective

used for emphasizing that something is real or exact: *Were those his actual words or are you changing it a little? | I know the White Sox won the game, but I don't remember the actual score.*

**ac·tu·al·ly** /'æktʃuəli/ adverb

**1** used to emphasize the truth of a situation, rather than what people may think: *They were never actually married. | What actually happened?* **SYNONYM** **really**

**2** used to add new information to what you have just said, to give your opinion, or to start saying something new: *I've known Barbara for a long time, since we were babies, actually. | Actually, I think I'll stay home tonight instead of going out.*

**a·cute** /ə'kyut/ adjective, formal

**1** very serious or severe: *There is an acute shortage of food in some parts of the country and people are starving. | She had to take medication for her acute back pain.* **SYNONYM** **extreme**

**2** an acute sense is able to notice small differences in things: *Dogs have an acute sense of smell that they can use to find people.*

**a·cute·ly** /ə'kyutli/ adverb

used to emphasize how strongly you feel about a serious situation: *We are acutely*

*aware of the problem and are trying very hard to fix it.* **SYNONYM** **extremely**

**ad** /æd/ noun, informal

another word for an ADVERTISEMENT: *She put an ad in the newspaper to sell her bike.*

**A.D.**

used to show that a year came after the birth of Jesus Christ: *He became emperor of Rome in 161 A.D.*

**a·dapt** /ə'dæpt/ **Ac** verb

**1** to change the way you do things because you are in a new situation: *The fox is good at adapting to changes in its surroundings.*

**2** to change something so that you can use it in a different way: *He adapted the car to run on a battery.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **adaptable** adjective

→ See Thesaurus box at **change**<sup>1</sup>

**a·dapt·a·ble** /ə'dæptəbəl/ **Ac** adjective

someone who is adaptable is good at changing the way he or she does things in a new situation: *For this job you need to be adaptable and able to deal with unexpected situations.*

**add** /æd/ verb

**1** to put something with another thing: *Add more garlic to the sauce.*

**2** to put numbers together to get the total: *If you add 5 and 3, you get 8.* **ANTONYM** **subtract**

**3** to say more about something: *He told me about the mistake, and added that it wasn't his fault.*

**4** to increase the amount or cost of something: *Sales tax adds 5% to the bill (=because of sales tax, the bill has increased by 5%).*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**add up**

**1** **add something up** = to put numbers together to get the total: *If you add up these numbers, you can calculate the total profit.*

**2** to seem true or reasonable: *Her explanation of what happened doesn't add up.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **add** verb

→ **addition** noun

→ **additional** adjective

→ See Thesaurus box at **say**<sup>1</sup>



**ad·dict** /'ædɪkt/ *noun*

someone who cannot stop taking harmful drugs: *She was a drug addict and had lost her job, home, and friends.*

—**addicted** /ə'dɪktɪd/ *adjective* not able to stop taking a harmful drug: *He was addicted to heroin and couldn't stop, even though he was very sick.*

—**addiction** /ə'dɪkʃən/ *noun* the problem someone has when they need to take a harmful drug regularly: *Her addiction to alcohol ruined her life.*

**ad·di·tion** /ə'dɪʃən/ *noun*

**1 in addition** = used in order to add another piece of information to what you have just said: *In addition to repairing cars, he also sells them.*

**2** the process of adding numbers together to get a total: *Most children learn addition in first grade.* **ANTONYM** subtraction

**3** something that is added to something else, especially in order to improve it: *This product is a new addition to the company's range of software.*

**ad·di·tion·al** /ə'dɪʃənəl/ *adjective*

more than you already have: *Additional information is available on our website.*

**SYNONYM** extra

→ See Thesaurus box at **more**<sup>2</sup>

**ad·dress**<sup>1</sup> /'ædres/ *noun*

**1** the details of where someone lives or works, including the number of the building and the name of the street and town, etc.: *Write your name and address at the top of the form.*

**2** a series of letters or numbers used to send an email to someone, or to reach a page of information on the Internet: *Give me your email address and I'll send you the pictures.*

**3** /ə'dres/ a formal speech: *The president's address was broadcast live on TV.*

**ad·dress**<sup>2</sup> /ə'dres/ *verb*

**1** to write a name and address on an envelope, package, etc.: *There's a letter here addressed to you (=the letter has your name and address written on it).*

**2** *formal* to speak directly to a group of people: *The senator addressed a large crowd of people.*

**3** **address a problem/question/issue, etc.** *formal* = to try to solve a problem: *There are*

*serious problems that we need to address and find a solution for.*

**ad·e·quate** /'ædɪkwət/ **Ac** *adjective, formal*

enough for a particular purpose: *Her income is not adequate to pay the bills.* **ANTONYM** inadequate

—**adequately** *adverb, formal* in a way that is enough for a particular purpose: *You must be adequately prepared for the test.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **satisfactory, enough**

**ad·ja·cent** /ə'dʒeɪsənt/ **Ac** *adjective, formal*

next to something: *Their yard is adjacent to the river, so they go fishing whenever they want.*

**ad·jec·tive** /'ædʒɪktɪv/ *noun*

in grammar, a word that describes a noun. In the sentence "I bought a new car," "new" is an adjective.

**ad·just** /ə'dʒʌst/ **Ac** *verb*

**1** to change or move something slightly to make it better: *How do you adjust the color on the TV? It's too green.*

**2** to gradually become more familiar with a situation: *The kids are slowly adjusting to their new school – they're making more friends and their grades are improving.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **change**<sup>1</sup>

**ad·just·a·ble** /ə'dʒʌstəbəl/ *adjective*

something that is adjustable can be changed or moved slightly to make it better for a particular purpose: *an adjustable desk lamp*

**ad·just·ment** /ə'dʒʌstmənt/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** a small change made to a machine, system, or calculation: *We made some adjustments to our plan because Carol couldn't come on May 15.*

**2** a change in the way you behave or think: *Moving to the city was a difficult adjustment for us.*

**ad·min·is·tra·tion** /əd,mɪnə'streɪʃən/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** the U.S. president and the people who work for him or her after he or she is elected: *the Bush Administration*

**2** the work of organizing or managing the work in a company or organization: *We're*



**A** looking for someone with experience in administration.

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **administration** noun
- **administrator** noun
- **administrative** adjective

**ad·min·is·tra·tive** /əd'mɪnə'streɪtɪv/

**[Ac]** adjective

connected with organizing or managing the work in a company or organization: *The company has cut its administrative staff (=the people who do jobs organizing or managing work) in half.*

**ad·min·is·tra·tor** /əd'mɪnə'streɪtər/

**[Ac]** noun

someone whose job is to help organize a particular area of work in a company or organization: *She is a college administrator and professor.*

**ad·mi·ra·ble** /'ædmərəbəl/ adjective

someone or something that is admirable has many good qualities that you respect: *He had many admirable qualities, especially honesty.*

**ad·mi·ral** /'ædmərəl/ noun

an officer who has a very high rank in the Navy

**ad·mi·ra·tion** /,ædmə'reɪʃən/ noun

a feeling of great respect and liking for someone or something: *I have great admiration for his work – it's the best I've seen.*

**ad·mire** /əd'maɪə/ verb

to feel great respect and liking for someone or something: *I really admire the way she's raising her kids. | I admire Tanya for always telling the truth.*

**THESAURUS: admire**

**respect** to admire someone because of his or her knowledge, skill, personal qualities, etc.: *She's a good teacher, and the students respect her.*

**look up to someone** to admire and respect someone: *He was a good player, and the other kids looked up to him.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **admire** verb
- **admiration** noun
- **admirable** adjective

**ad·mis·sion** /əd'mɪʃən/ noun

**1** the price you pay to go to a movie, museum, sports event, etc.: *Admission to the museum is \$8. | an admission fee*

**2** the right to become a student at a college or school: *Tom has applied for admission to City College.*

**3** formal a statement or action that shows that something bad about yourself is true: *If he runs away from the police, people will consider it an admission of guilt.*

**ad·mit** /əd'mɪt/ verb admitted, admitting

**1** to say that something is true, although you would prefer not to say it: *Okay, I admit (that) I was wrong – I shouldn't have lied.*

**2** to allow someone to enter a place: *No one will be admitted to the game without a ticket.*

**ad·o·les·cent** /,ædl'esənt/ noun

a young person between 12 and 17 years old who is becoming an adult: *At fifteen, Bill was a shy adolescent.*

—**adolescence** noun the time of your life when you are an adolescent: *Adolescence can be a difficult time because your body is changing and so are your responsibilities.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **child**

**a·dopt** /ə'dɒpt/ verb

**1** to become the legal parents of a child that is not your own child: *The Bakers wanted to adopt a child because Christine could not become pregnant.*

**2** formal to begin to use a new way of doing something: *The city has adopted a new method for reducing crime.*

—**adoption** /ə'dɒpʃən/ noun the act of adopting a child

**a·dor·a·ble** /ə'dɔrəbəl/ adjective

very pretty or easy to love: *Amber was an adorable little girl with big brown eyes and curly hair.*

**a·dore** /ə'dɔr/ verb

to love someone or something very much: *She adored her sons and was willing to do anything for them.*

**a·dult** /ə'dʌlt/ **[Ac]** noun

a person who is not a child: *The tickets are \$8 for adults and \$5 for children.*

—**adulthood** noun the time of your life when you are an adult



**ad·vance**<sup>1</sup> /əd'væns/ noun

**1 in advance** = before something happens or before you do something: *It's a good idea to get tickets in advance. They're selling quickly.*

**2** progress, or a change that brings progress: *Advances in medicine mean that we will all live longer.*

**advance**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** if medicine, computers, etc. advance, they improve: *Technology has advanced greatly in the past few years. Computers, for example, are faster, more powerful, and cheaper.*

**2 formal** to move forward to a new position: *The soldiers advanced steadily across the valley.* **ANTONYM** retreat

**ad·vanced** /əd'vænst/ adjective

**1** using very modern ideas or equipment: *Our company uses the most advanced computer systems, so we are confident we can do the best job.*

**2** working at a difficult level in a subject: *This class is for advanced students who have taken at least three years of English.*

**ad·van·tage** /əd'væntɪdʒ/ noun

**1** a skill or quality that helps you to be successful: *If you speak Spanish, it's an advantage, because we do a lot of work in Latin America.* **ANTONYM** disadvantage

**2** something that is good about a place, situation, etc.: *We live close to the kids' school, which is an advantage.* **ANTONYM** disadvantage

**3 take advantage of something** = to use an opportunity: *If you get the opportunity to go to Japan, you should take advantage of it.*

**4 take advantage of someone** = to use a person in a way that is not fair: *I sometimes feel that they take advantage of me at work, asking me to work extra hours without pay.*

**ad·ven·ture** /əd'ventʃə/ noun

an exciting thing that you do, when new things happen to you: *Our trip to Africa was a real adventure.*

**ad·verb** /'ædvərb/ noun

in grammar, a word that tells you more about a verb, an adjective, another adverb, or the whole sentence: *In the sentence "He walked slowly," "slowly" is an adverb.*

**ad·ver·tise** /'ædvə'taɪz/ verb

**1** if a business advertises, it tries to make people buy its products or use its services,

using pictures, short movies, etc.: *The company advertises on TV and the Internet.*

**2** to put a notice in a newspaper, magazine, etc. to try and find someone to do a job, share an apartment, etc.: *The school is advertising for a new principal.*

—**advertising** noun the business of advertising things on television, in newspapers, etc.: *I'd really like to work in advertising.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **advertise** verb

→ **advertisement** noun

→ **advertising** noun

**ad·ver·tise·ment** /,ædvə'taɪzmənt/ noun

**1** a picture, short movie, etc. which tries to make people buy a product or use a service: *I like that new advertisement for shampoo on TV.* **SYNONYM** ad

**THESAURUS: advertisement**

**commercial** an advertisement on TV or radio: *a funny commercial for cat food*

**billboard** a very large sign at the side of a road or on a building, used as an advertisement: *Billboards lined the streets, advertising cars and movies.*

**poster** an advertisement printed on a large piece of paper, often with a picture on it: *a movie poster outside the theater*

**flier** a piece of paper with an advertisement on it, often given to you in the street: *They were handing out fliers for the restaurant.*

**junk mail** letters that companies send to your house in order to advertise something, that you get even though you do not want them: *We seem to get so much junk mail!*

**spam** emails that are advertising something, that you get even though you do not want them: *Is there a way to stop spam arriving in my inbox?*

**2** a notice in a newspaper, magazine, etc. that is trying to find someone to do a job, share an apartment, etc.: *There are lots of advertisements for computer programmers in the paper.*

**ad·vice** /əd'vaɪs/ noun

ideas that help someone to decide what he or she should do: *I need some good advice*



on how to cut my hair. | Can you give me some advice?

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **advice** noun
- **advise** verb
- **adviser** also **advisor** noun

**ad·vise** /əd'vaɪz/ verb

to tell someone what you think he or she should do: *His doctor advised him to stop smoking.*

—**adviser** also **advisor** noun someone whose job is to advise people, for example about money, the law, etc.: *I went to see a career adviser about what jobs were available.*

**ae·ro·bics** /e'roubɪks/ noun

exercise that you do with music: *I do aerobics in a class at the gym once a week.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **exercise**<sup>2</sup>

**aer·o·sol** /'erə,sɒl/ noun

a container with liquid inside. You press a button on the container to force out the liquid at high pressure

**af·fair** /ə'fer/ noun

**1** a sexual relationship between two people who are not married to each other: *He was having an affair with another man's wife.*

**2** a special event such as a party or wedding: *Thanksgiving is usually a family affair* (=only for members of the family).

**3** **affairs** = events and activities relating to a particular subject: *In tonight's speech, the president will speak about foreign affairs* (=situations in countries around the world and relationships between governments).

→ **love affair**

**af·fect** /ə'fekt/ **Ac** verb

to make someone or something change, especially in a bad way: *The medicine may affect your ability to stay awake, so do not drive after you take it.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **effect** noun

**af·fec·tion** /ə'fekʃən/ noun

a feeling that you like or love someone you know well: *Bart had a great affection for her* – *they'd been friends for years.*

—**affectionate** adjective showing that you like or love someone: *My father was never very affectionate and we did not have a close relationship.*

—**affectionately** adverb in an affectionate way: *She smiled at him affectionately.*

**af·flu·ent** /'æfluənt/ adjective, formal  
having a lot of money: *The kids are from affluent families, so they never worry about money.* **SYNONYM** **rich**, **wealthy**

—**affluence** noun the state of being rich

**af·ford** /ə'fɔrd/ verb

to have enough money to buy or do something: *I can't afford to buy a new car – I only have \$600.*

**af·ford·a·ble** /ə'fɔrdəbəl/ adjective

affordable prices, rents, etc. are not too expensive: *The restaurant serves fresh food at affordable prices, so it's always very busy.*

**a·fraid** /ə'freɪd/ adjective

**1** frightened of something that may hurt you or be dangerous: *A lot of people are afraid of spiders.* | *Mary's afraid to walk home alone at night, so I drove her home.* **SYNONYM** **scared**, **frightened**

**2** worried about something that may happen in the future: *She loved him and she was afraid of losing him.* | *Joey was afraid (that) the other kids would laugh at him.*

**3** **I'm afraid** = used in order to politely tell someone something that may annoy or upset them: *I'm afraid (that) there are no more tickets left.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **frightened**

→ See picture on page A23

**Af·ri·can** /'æfrɪkən/ noun

someone from Africa

—**African** adjective relating to Africa: *African art*

**African A·merican** noun

an American with dark skin, whose family first came to the U.S. from Africa

—**African-American** adjective being or relating to an African American

**af·ter** /'æftə/ preposition, conjunction, adverb

**1** later than something else: *Let's go have dinner after the movie.* | *I went straight home after I left the party.* | *I can come tomorrow or the day after* (=the day after tomorrow).

**THESAURUS: after**

**afterward** after an event or time that has been mentioned: *He said afterward that it had been the scariest experience of his life.*



**next** after now, or after you have done something else: *What should we do next?*

**later** after the time now, or after the time you are talking about: *We can clean up later.*

**subsequently** *formal* after an event in the past: *I met her subsequently at a meeting in Seattle.*

**2** moving behind and toward someone or something: *"Stop!" he shouted, running after the man.*

**3** **five/ten/a quarter, etc. after** = used to say how many minutes past the hour it is: *"What time is it?" "It's twenty after two (=2:20)."* **SYNONYM** **past**; **ANTONYM** **to**

**4** **after all** = used in order to say that something you expected to happen did not happen: *We brought our umbrellas, but it didn't rain after all.*

**af·ter·noon** /ˌæftəˈnuːn/ *noun*

the time between 12 noon and the evening: *I have two classes in the afternoon, but I'm free until noon. | We went to the park on Friday afternoon. | Would you like to come to my house this afternoon (=today in the afternoon)?*

**af·ter·shave** /ˌæftəˈʃeɪv/ *noun*

a liquid with a nice smell that a man puts on his face after he **SHAVES**

**af·ter·ward** /ˌæftəˈwɔːd/ *also* **afterwards** *adverb*

after an event or time: *They met in 1983 and got married soon afterward.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **after**

**a·gain** /əˈɡeɪn/ *adverb*

if you do something again, you repeat what you have done: *Could you say that again? I didn't hear you. | I've tried calling her again and again (=repeating it many times) but she's never there. | My computer crashed, so I had to start my paper all over again (=from the beginning).*

**a·gainst** /əˈɡeɪnst/ *preposition*

**1** next to the surface of something, or touching it: *Let's put the couch against that wall.*

**2** if you are against an idea, plan, etc., you do not agree with it and you do not want it to happen: *John was against the idea of selling the house – he wanted to keep it.* **ANTONYM** **for**

**3** if you are playing against a team, you are competing with that team in a game: *The team will play against the Cowboys on Saturday.*

**4** if you fight against a country or against a bad situation, you try to defeat that country or stop that situation: *They fought against the Russians during the war. | the war against crime*

**5** **against the law/the rules** = not allowed by the law or the rules: *It's against the law to smoke in here.*

**age** /eɪdʒ/ *noun*

**1** the number of years that you have lived: *Children usually start school at the age of 5 (=when they are 5 years old). | Paul's younger than I am, but Patrick is my age (=the same age as I am).*

**2** a time in someone's life: *Everyone should save some money for their old age (=the time when they are old).*

**3** a period of time in history: *We are living in the computer age.*

**4** **ages** *informal* = a long time: *I've lived in this town for ages.*

**5** the state of being old: *The photograph was brown with age.*

**a·gen·cy** /ˈeɪdʒənsi/ *noun* plural **agen-cies**

**1** a business that helps people to arrange something or find something they need: *We got the flights and hotel through a travel agency (=a business that helps people arrange their travel).*

**2** a part of a government that does a special job: *NASA is the name of the U.S. space agency.*

**a·gen·da** /əˈdʒendə/ *noun*

**1** a list of the subjects that the people at a meeting will discuss: *Money for the new hospital is the first thing on the agenda, so that is what we will discuss first.*

**2** a list of things that an organization is planning to do: *More training for teachers is high on the agenda (=it is an important thing on the list).*

**a·gent** /ˈeɪdʒənt/ *noun*

**1** a person or company that arranges things or does work for other people: *A travel agent found the hotel for us.*



**2** someone whose job is to get secret information about another country, organization, or person: *an FBI agent*  
→ **real estate agent**

**ag·gra·vate** /'ægrə'veɪt/ verb

**1** formal to make an illness, injury, or bad situation worse: *Exercise may aggravate your injury, so wait until it is healed before exercising.*

**2** to annoy someone: *Sometimes my sister really aggravates me. She talks too much.*

SYNONYM **irritate**

**ag·gres·sive** /ə'gresɪv/ adjective

**1** a person or animal that is aggressive gets angry or violent easily: *Girls are usually less aggressive than boys.*

**2** an aggressive way of doing something is forceful and shows that you are determined to succeed: *Their plan for raising money is very aggressive: they plan to call and email every one in the neighborhood.*

—**aggression** /ə'greɪʃən/ noun the quality of being aggressive: *His voice was loud and full of aggression.*

**ag·ile** /'ædʒəl/ adjective, formal

able to move quickly and easily: *He was young and agile, and climbed the fence easily.*

**ag·i·tat·ed** /'ædʒə'teɪtɪd/ adjective

very worried or upset: *I saw that the boy was becoming agitated and tried to calm him down.*

**a·go** /ə'gou/ adverb

**5 minutes/1 hour/2 years, etc. ago** = five minutes, one hour, etc. before now: *The show started 10 minutes ago. | We went there a long time ago (=a long time before now).*

#### GRAMMAR: ago

##### ago, for, since

**Ago**, **for**, and **since** are all used to talk about time.

**Ago** is used to say how far back in the past something happened. It comes after a length of time: *My grandfather died two years ago.*

**For** is used to say how long something has lasted. It comes before a length of time: *My aunt has been here for three days. | The meeting continued for five hours.*

**Since** is used to say when something started. The exact day, date, or time comes after it: *He's been here since Sunday. | I've been going to school here since 2006.*

**ag·o·ny** /'ægəni/ noun plural **agonies**

formal

very bad pain: *He was screaming in agony.*

—**agonizing** /'ægə'naɪzɪŋ/ adjective, formal very painful: *She had an agonizing pain in her chest.*

**a·gree** /ə'gri/ verb

**1** if you agree with someone, you think that what they say is right: *I agree with you. It's too expensive. | Most people agree (that) this is a serious problem. | We don't agree on how to deal with money. He says I spend too much.* ANTONYM **disagree**

**2** to say that you will do something: *Dad agreed to give us a ride into town.* ANTONYM **refuse**

**3** to decide something: *Can we all agree on a date for the next meeting?*

PHRASAL VERB

**agree with something**

to think that something is right: *I don't agree with their decision – I don't think it's fair.*

**a·gree·a·ble** /ə'griəbəl/ adjective, formal

**1** pleasant and nice to be with: *He was an agreeable old man, and people enjoyed talking with him.*

**2** if someone is agreeable to an idea, they agree to it: *He was agreeable to trying a different restaurant, so we went to the new Thai place.*

**a·gree·ment** /ə'grɪmənt/ noun

**1** an arrangement or promise between organizations, countries, people, etc.: *The company has reached an agreement (=made an agreement) with the bank to borrow money. | Both countries wanted a peace agreement (=agreement not to fight each other anymore).*

**2** a situation in which people agree about an idea: *All of us were in agreement about what we should do next.* ANTONYM **disagreement**

**ag·ri·cul·ture** /'ægrɪ,kʌltʃə/ noun

the activity of growing crops and raising animals for people to eat: *Most of the people outside the cities and towns work in agriculture.* SYNONYM **farming**



—**agricultural** /ˌægrɪˈkʌltʃərəl/ *adjective*  
relating to agriculture

**a-head** /əˈhed/ *adverb*

**1** in front of someone or something: *Mom was walking ahead of us, so she didn't see what happened. | He looked straight ahead (=directly in front of him).*

**2 go ahead** *informal* = if you tell someone to go ahead, you are saying that he or she can do something: *"Can I make some coffee?" "Go ahead."*

**3** in the future: *The problem will become worse in the years ahead. | Try to plan ahead (=plan for the future).*

**4** if you get ahead, you are successful in your work or life: *You need to work hard if you want to get ahead.*

**5 ahead of schedule/time** = earlier than people had planned: *Everything was ready ahead of schedule. Even the food arrived early.*

**aid**<sup>1</sup> /eɪd/ **Ac** *noun*

help, such as money, food, or equipment, for people who need it: *The U.S. is sending aid to the refugees.*

**aid**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

*formal* to help someone: *Murphy had aided the prisoner to escape.*

**AIDS** /eɪdz/ *noun*

**Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome** a very bad disease that makes your body unable to fight other diseases

**aim**<sup>1</sup> /eɪm/ *noun*

**1** the thing that you are trying to achieve: *What is the main aim of your research?*

**SYNONYM** **goal**

**2 take aim** = to point a gun in the direction of someone or something and get ready to shoot: *He took aim and fired the gun.*



**aim**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to plan or intend to do something: *We aim to finish by Friday.*

**2** to point something in the direction of someone or something and get ready to fire it or throw it at them: *The man aimed his gun at the target.*

**3 be aimed at someone** = to be made or intended for a particular person or group: *The magazine is aimed at teenagers.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **purpose**

**air**<sup>1</sup> /er/ *noun*

**1** the gases around the Earth, which we breathe: *There wasn't a lot of air in the room and it was hard to breathe. | fresh air*

**2 the air** = the space above you: *The balloon went up into the air.*

**3 by air** = using an airplane: *The quickest way to get there is by air.*

**4 be on the air** = to be broadcasting on television or radio: *Quiet everyone! We'll be on the air in a few seconds.*

**air**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to broadcast a program on television or radio: *The show will air at 9 tomorrow night.*

**2 air your views/opinions** = to tell people what you think about something: *Everyone will have a chance to air his or her views and ask questions.*

**'air con, ditioner** *noun*

a machine that makes the air in a room, car or building stay cool

**'air con, ditioning** *noun, abbreviation*  
**AC**

a system of machines that makes the air in a room, car or building stay cool: *It's very hot here in the summer, so it's good to have a car with air conditioning.*

—**air-conditioned** *adjective*: an air-conditioned office

**air-craft** /'erkræft/ *noun* plural **aircraft**

an airplane or other vehicle that can fly: *The aircraft can carry 600 passengers.*

**air-fare** /'erfer/ *noun*

the price of an airplane ticket

**'air force** *noun*

the part of a country's military that uses airplanes to fight: *He learned to fly planes while he was in the air force.*

**air-line** /'erlain/ *noun*

a company that takes passengers and goods to different places by airplane: *The major airlines have raised their prices for flights this summer. | an airline pilot*

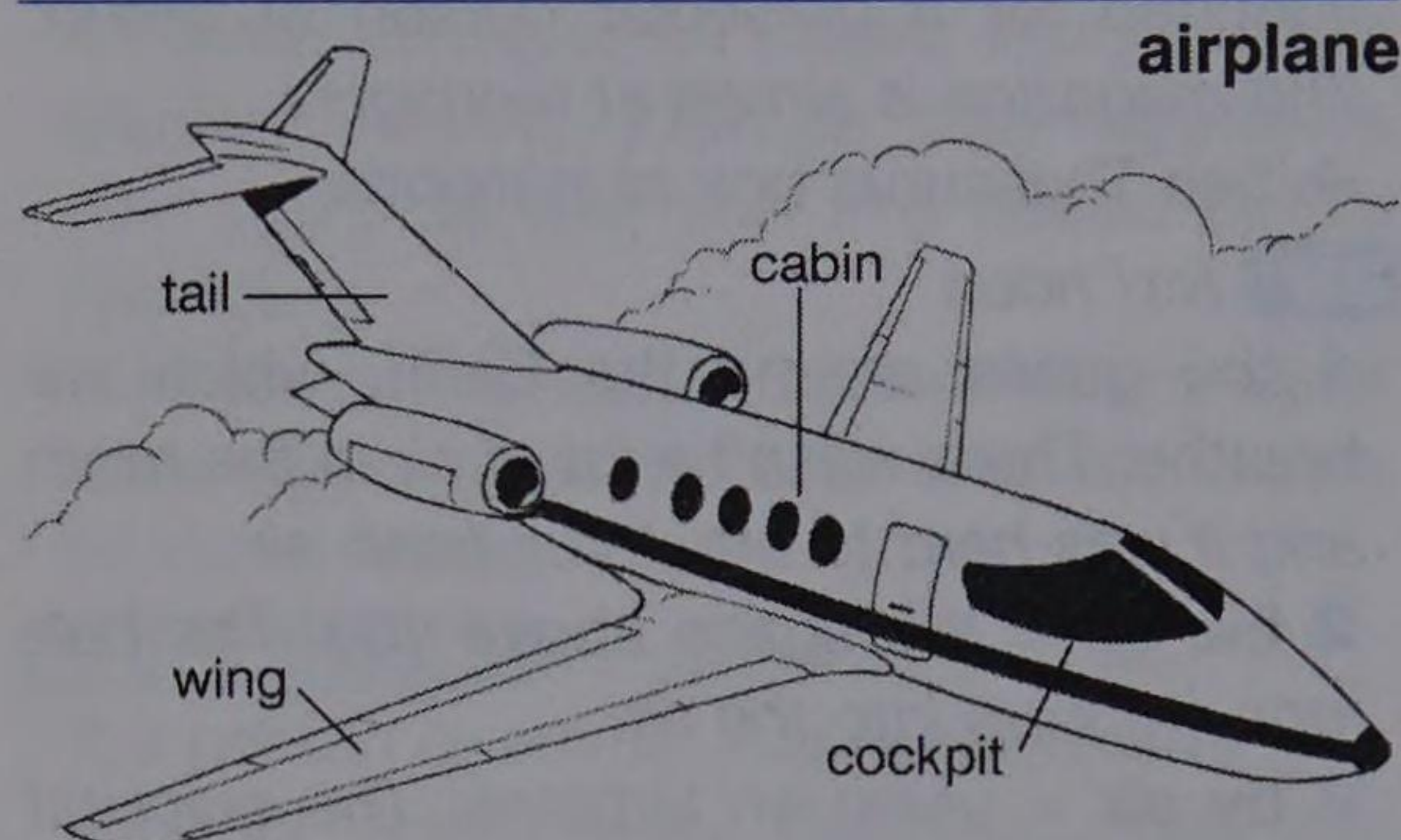


## A

**air-mail** /'ermeɪl/ *noun*

the system of sending letters, packages, etc. to another country by airplane

—**airmail** *adjective, adverb* using or relating to airmail: *She sent the book airmail.*



airplane

**air-plane** /'erpleɪn/ *noun*

a vehicle that flies through the air: *We flew on a small airplane between Detroit and Chicago.* **SYNONYM** plane

**air-port** /'erpɔ:t/ *noun*

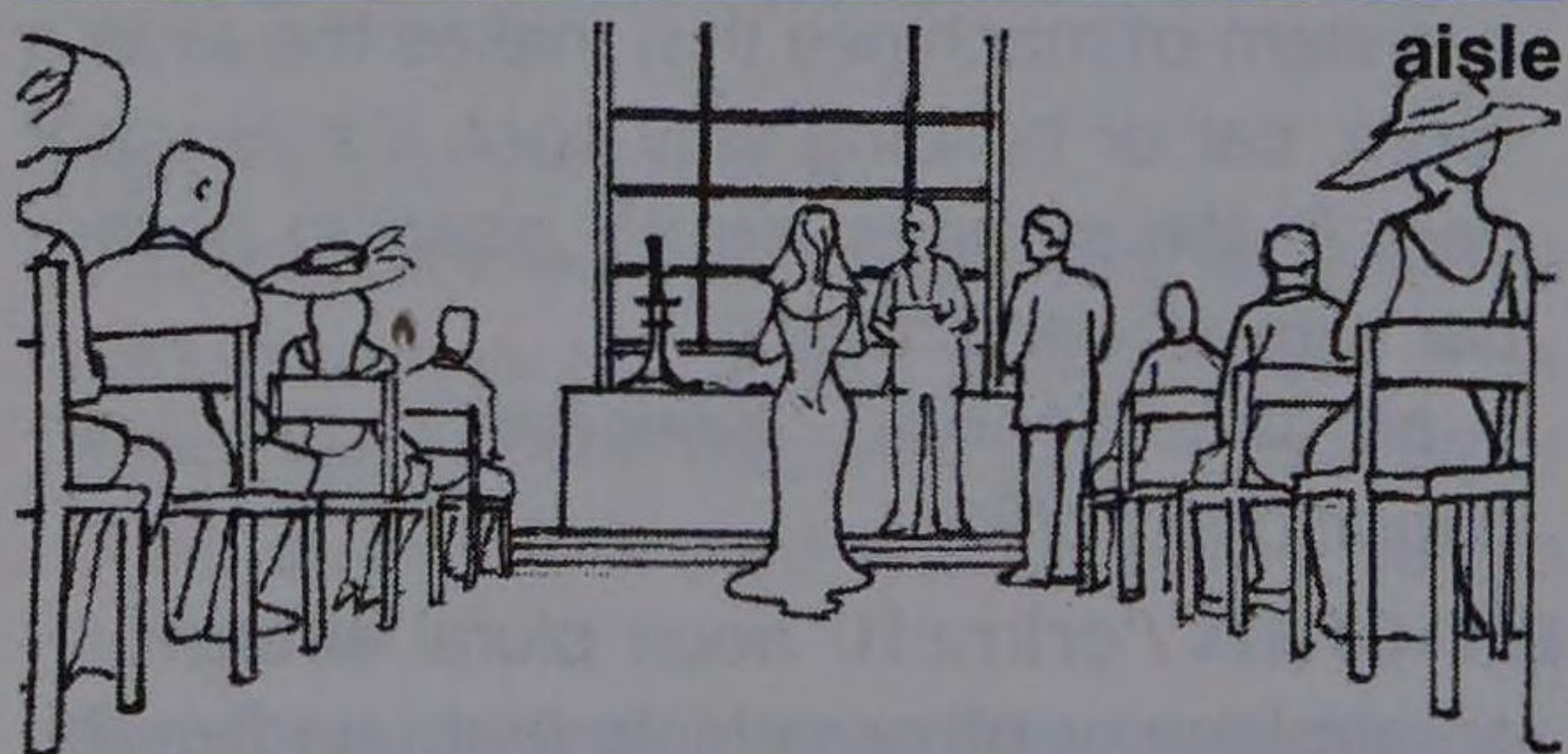
a place where airplanes take off and land, that has buildings for passengers to wait in: *The plane landed at Los Angeles airport.*

**'air raid** *noun*

an attack in which bombs are dropped from airplanes

**air-y** /'eri/ *adjective*

an airy room or building has a lot of space and fresh air: *The house was bright and airy with lots of windows.*



aisle

**aisle** /aɪl/ *noun*

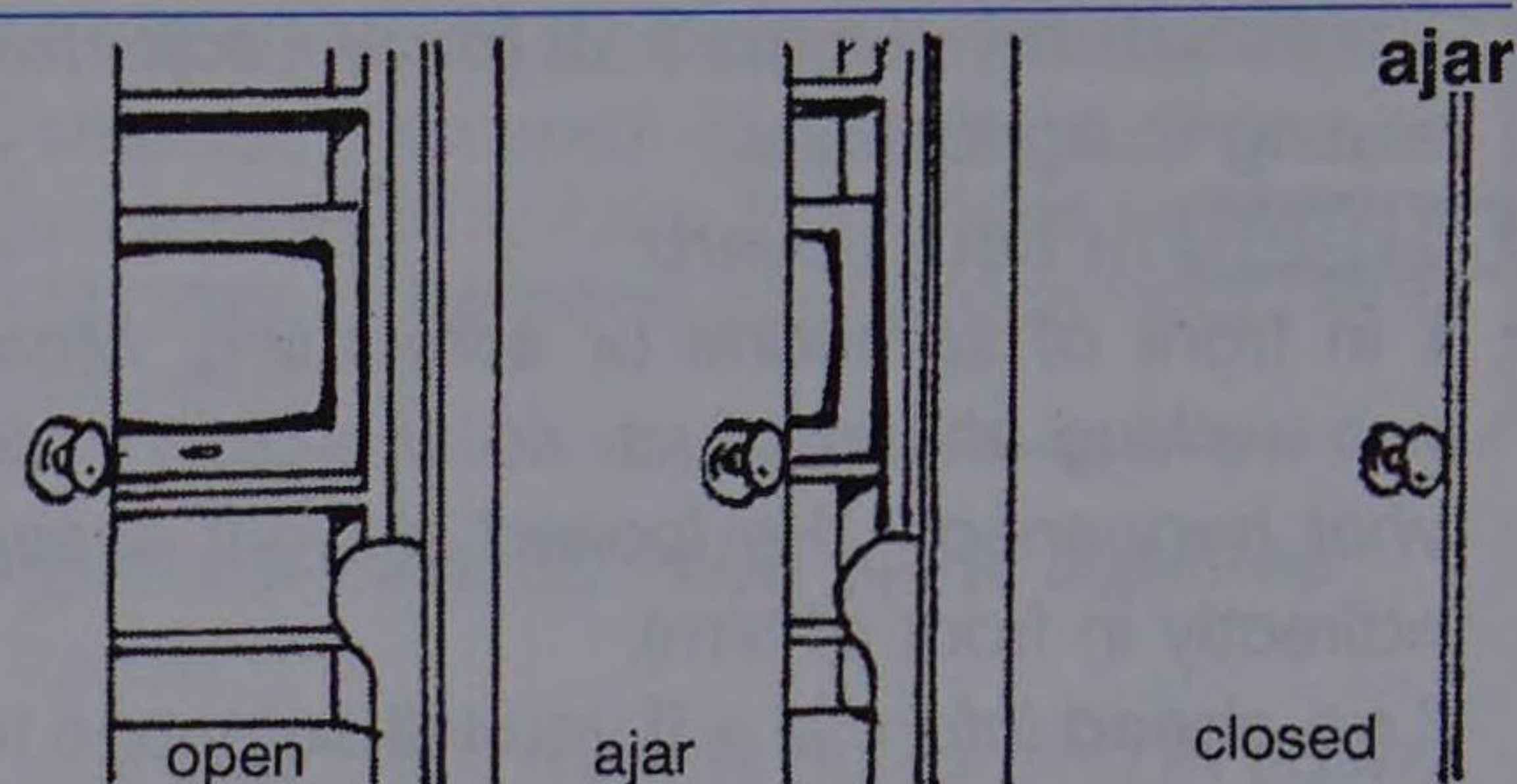
a long passage between rows of seats in a theater, airplane, church, etc.: *The bride and her father walked down the aisle to the front of the church.*

**a-jar** /ə'dʒɑ:r/ *adjective*

a door or window that is ajar is not completely closed: *He left the door ajar so that he could hear the phone.*

**a-larm¹** /ə'lɑ:rm/ *noun*

**1** a piece of equipment that makes a noise to warn people of danger: *a fire alarm* |



*Someone accidentally set off the car alarm (=made it start making a noise).*

**2** the part of an ALARM CLOCK that makes a noise to wake you up: *The alarm went off at 6 and woke me up.*

**alarm²** *verb, formal*

to make someone feel very worried or frightened: *I don't want to alarm you, but there's some smoke coming from the hall.*

—**alarmed** *adjective* worried or frightened about something: *She seemed alarmed by the news that her daughter had not called.*

**a-larm clock** *noun*

a clock that will make a noise at a particular time to wake you up: *I set the alarm clock for 7:00.*

→ See picture on page A10

**al-bum** /'ælbəm/ *noun*

**1** a group of songs or pieces of music on a CD, record, etc.: *Have you heard the band's new album?*

**2** a book in which you put photographs, stamps, etc. that you want to keep: *a photo album*

**al-co-hol** /'ælkə,hɒl/ *noun*

drinks such as beer or wine that can make you drunk: *You're not allowed to drink alcohol unless you're over 21.*

**al-co-hol-ic¹** /,ælkə'hɒlɪk/ *adjective*

**1** containing alcohol or relating to alcohol: *an alcoholic beverage* (=a drink that contains alcohol)

**2** used for describing someone who is an alcoholic: *Her alcoholic husband could not keep a job.*

**alcoholic²** *noun*

someone who cannot control how much alcohol he or she drinks

—**alcoholism** /'ælkəhɒl,ɪzəm/ *noun* a serious medical problem in which someone cannot control how much alcohol he or she drinks



**a.lert** /ə'lɜ:t/ adjective

always watching and ready to notice anything unusual, dangerous, etc.: *It's important to stay alert when you're driving.*

**al.gae** /'ældʒi/ noun

a very simple plant without stems or leaves that lives in or near water

**al.ge.bra** /'ældʒəbrə/ noun

a type of mathematics that uses letters and symbols to represent numbers and amounts

**al.i.bi** /'æləbaɪ/ noun

something that proves that someone was not where a crime happened and is therefore not guilty of the crime: *The man had an alibi for where he was during the crime, and the police had to release him.*

**a.li.en** /'eɪliən/ noun

**1** formal a foreigner who is visiting or living in a country: *Every year thousands of illegal aliens (=a foreigner who is in a country illegally) cross the border.*

**2** a creature from another world: *In the movie, the aliens try to take over the Earth.*

**a.li.en.ate** /'eɪliə,neɪt/ verb, formal

to do something that makes someone unfriendly or unwilling to support you: *High ticket prices for football games have alienated many fans.*

**a.like** /ə'laɪk/ adjective, adverb

very similar: *Sarah and her sister look very much alike.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **similar**

**al.i.mo.ny** /'ælə,məʊni/ noun

money that someone has to pay regularly to his or her former wife or husband after a DIVORCE

**a.live** /ə'laɪv/ adjective

living and not dead: *He was lost in the mountains for days, but he stayed alive by eating berries and leaves.*

**all<sup>1</sup>** /ɔ:l/ adjective, pronoun

**1** the whole amount of something: *Have you done all your homework so that you're ready for school tomorrow? | I've spent all of the money, and I don't have any left.*

**2** every one of a group of things or people: *Someone ate all the cookies, so I didn't get one. | He's 90 and older than all of us.*

**USAGE: all**

**All**, **each**, and **every** are all used to talk about every person or thing in a group.

When you are thinking about the whole group together, use **all**: *All the children were given balloons.*

When you are thinking about the people or things in the group separately, use **every** or **each**: *Every child at the party was given a balloon. | Each child at the party was given a balloon.*

**3 not ... at all** = used when you want to emphasize a negative sentence: *He's not like you at all* (=he's very different from you).

**4 all kinds/sorts** = very many different types of things or people: *She has acted in all kinds of movies: action, mystery, romance, etc.*

**all<sup>2</sup>** adverb

**1** completely or entirely: *The house is all clean and neat so don't make it messy. | I'm glad it's all over* (=completely finished).

**2 all over** = everywhere: *I've been looking all over for you. Where were you?*

→ **after all** at **after**, **all of a sudden** at **sudden**

**al.lege** /ə'ledʒ/ verb, formal

to say that something is true or someone has done something wrong, although it has not been proved: *He alleged that police officers punched and beat him.*

**al.ler.gy** /'ælədʒi/ noun plural **allergies**

a condition that makes you sick when you eat, touch, or breathe a particular thing: *He has an allergy to cats, so he can't be around them.*

—**allergic** /ə'lɜ:dʒɪk/ adjective having an allergy: *I'm allergic to nuts, so I have to be careful not to eat them.*

**al.ley** /'æli/ also **al.ley.way** /'æli,weɪ/ noun

a narrow street between buildings

**al.li.ance** /ə'laɪəns/ noun

an agreement between countries, groups, etc. to work together or fight together: *The alliance between the United States and Britain is strong and has lasted through several wars.*



## A

**al·li·ga·tor** /'ælə,geɪtə/ *noun*

a large animal with a long body and a big mouth with sharp teeth: *Alligators live in hot wet places like Florida.*

**al·lo·cate** /'ælə,keɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*  
to decide to use money, time, etc. for a particular purpose: *The money was allocated for the construction of a new swimming pool.*

—**allocation** /,ælə'keɪʃən/ *noun* the action or result of allocating money, time, etc.

**al·low** /ə'lau/ *verb*

to say that someone can do something: *Smoking is not allowed in public buildings. | Her parents don't allow her to stay out late – she has to be home by 8:00.* **ANTONYM** **forbid**

**THESAURUS: allow**

**Allow** is used in both formal and informal English: *You're not allowed to use a calculator during the test.*

**Let** is informal and is used a lot in spoken English: *Will your mom let you come to the party?*

**Permit** is formal and is mainly used in written English: *Smoking is not permitted in this building.*

**al·low·ance** /ə'lauəns/ *noun*

money that you are given regularly or for a special reason: *The kids get an allowance of two dollars every week.*

**all 'right** *adjective, adverb*

**1** used to say “yes”, when someone asks or suggests something: *“Can I borrow your pen?” “All right.”* **SYNONYM** **OK**

**2** good enough, but not excellent: *“How was the movie?” “It was all right.”* **SYNONYM** **OK**

**3** not sick, in pain, or upset: *“Do you feel all right?” “I'm fine, thanks.”* **SYNONYM** **OK**

**4** **it's all right** = used when telling someone not to be afraid or worried: *It's all right now. Mommy's here.*

**5** **is it all right ... ?** = used when asking if you can do something: *Is it all right if I close the window?*

**6** **that's all right** = used in order to tell someone that you are not angry when they say they are sorry to you: *“Sorry, I'm late!” “That's all right.”*

**7** used in order to say you are happy about something: *“I got the job!” “All right!”*

**al·ly** /ə'laɪ/ *noun plural allies*

a person or country that helps another, especially in war: *The U.S. and Canada were allies in World War II.*

**al·mond** /'ɑmənd/ *noun*

a flat white nut with pale brown skin and a slightly sweet taste

→ See picture on page A13

**al·most** /'ɔlmoust/ *adverb*

nearly but not quite: *The house is almost finished. We just have to paint it. | He ate almost all the cake – there was only a little piece left. | We see each other almost every day.*

**a·lone** /ə'loun/ *adjective, adverb*

**1** without any other people: *The old man lived alone and had no one to talk to. | They leave the dog alone in the house all day.*

**THESAURUS: alone**

**on your own** without anyone helping you: *Did you make this on your own?*

**(all) by yourself** without anyone helping you: *She raised four children by herself.*

**solo** done alone, without anyone else helping you: *Charles Lindbergh made the first solo flight across the Atlantic Ocean.*

**2** *formal* only that person or thing: *She alone knows the truth.*

→ **leave someone alone, leave something alone at leave<sup>1</sup>**

**a·long** /ə'lɒŋ/ *adverb, preposition*

**1** moving forward on a road, path, line, etc. toward one end of it: *We took a walk along the river.* **SYNONYM** **down**

**2** next to something: *An old stone wall runs along (=is in a position next to) the road for more than a mile.* **SYNONYM** **beside**

**3** with someone: *Can I bring a friend along (=with me)?*

**a·long·side** /ə,lɒŋ'saɪd/ *adverb, preposition*

next to the side of something: *A big ship came alongside our boat.*

**a·loud** /ə'laʊd/ *adverb*

in a voice that you can hear: *His mother read the story aloud to him.*

**al·pha·bet** /'ælfə,bet/ *noun*

the letters of a language: *The last letter of the English alphabet is “Z.”*

—**alphabetical** /,ælfə'betɪkəl/ *adjective* in



the order of the letters of the alphabet: *The books are arranged in alphabetical order.*

**al·read·y** /ɔl'redi/ *adverb*

**1** before now: *I've seen that movie twice already.*

**2** before the time when something happens: *By the time we arrived, the plane had already left.*

**3** used when you are surprised because something happens sooner than you expected: *Is it 5:30 already? I thought it was only about 4.*

**USAGE: already**

**Already** is used in order to talk about something that has happened: *I've already read the book we're studying in my English class.*

**All ready** is used in order to say that someone is ready to do something, or that something is completely prepared: *Are you all ready to go? | Dinner is all ready.*

**al·so** /'ɔlsou/ *adverb*

used when you want to say that another thing is true about someone or something: *Mike speaks French. He can also speak a little Spanish. | The food is not only delicious, but also inexpensive.* **SYNONYM** **too**

**USAGE: also**

**Also**, **too**, and **as well** mean the same thing, but you use them in different ways.

**Also** is more formal than **too**, and is used more often in writing than in speech: *Tom was very tired, and he was also hungry.*

**Too** and **as well** are less formal and you use them more often in spoken English: *Tom's hungry, and I am too. | Oh, are you coming as well?*

In sentences with "not" or "nothing," use **either** rather than **also** or **too**. Do not say "Tom was also not hungry." or "Tom was not hungry too." Say "Tom was not hungry either."

**GRAMMAR: also**

Use **also** before a verb, unless the verb is "be": *Dave also plays baseball.*

Use **also** after the verb "be": *His sister is also tall.*

If there are two or more verbs together, **also** comes after the first one: *Gina can also play the piano.*

**al·tar** /'ɔltə/ *noun*

a table or other flat surface, used by the priest in religious ceremonies

**al·ter** /'ɔltə/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to change something: *We had to alter our plans because of the rain.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **change**<sup>1</sup>

**al·ter·nate**<sup>1</sup> /'ɔltə,neɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

if you alternate between two things, you do one thing first, then you do the second thing, then you do the first thing again, etc.: *She alternated between feeling happy and feeling sad.*

**al·ter·nate**<sup>2</sup> /'ɔltəneɪt/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

used instead of someone or something else: *The road was closed and so we had to take an alternate route.* **SYNONYM** **alternative**

**al·ter·na·tive**<sup>1</sup> /ɔl'tə'nətiʋ/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** an alternative plan, way of doing something, etc. can be used instead of another one: *There may be an alternative way of dealing with the problem.*

**2** different from the usual way of doing something: *She believes in alternative medicine, and takes herbs instead of regular medicine.*

—**alternatively** *adverb* used when you are mentioning a different possibility: *You could visit one of the city's museums. Alternatively, you could spend the day in Central Park.*

**alternative**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

something you can choose to do or use instead of something else: *There are a lot of alternatives to using your car: you can take the bus or ride a bicycle.*

**al·though** /ɔl'dʒu/ *conjunction*

used when something seems surprising, considering something else you are saying: *Although he's over 60, he still goes running every day.*

**al·ti·tude** /'æltə,tud/ *noun*

the height of something above sea level: *They were flying at an altitude of 30,000 feet.*

**al·to·geth·er** /,ɔltə'geðə/ *adverb*

**1** including everyone or everything: *The trip cost \$2,000 altogether.*

**2** completely – used when you want to emphasize what you are saying: *She wants*



to stop working altogether and just stay at home.

**a.lu.mi.num** /ə'lumənəm/ *noun*

a very light silver-gray metal, used to make cans

**al.ways** /'ɔlweɪz/ *adverb*

**1** every time, or at all times: *He always goes to bed before midnight. | It's always very cold in the Arctic.*

#### THESAURUS: always

**permanently** forever or for a very long time: *His eyesight may be permanently damaged.*

**forever** for all time in the future: *It's so nice here that I'd like to stay forever.*

**for good** used to say that a change is permanent: *I've given up smoking for good.*

#### USAGE: always

**Always** means "all the time" or "every time": *Her clothes are always so nice. | I always see him on Tuesdays.*

**Still** is used to say that a situation that began in the past has not changed and is continuing: *He still lives with his parents.*

**Yet** is used in sentences with "not" in them and in questions to talk about something that you expect to happen, but which has not happened: *I haven't finished the book yet. | Is Mark back from lunch yet?*

**2** for a very long time: *I've always wanted to go to New York – ever since I was a little kid.*

**3 you can/could always...** = used when suggesting that someone should do something: *You could always drive instead of flying.*

#### GRAMMAR: always

Use **always** before a verb, unless the verb is "be": *We always eat dinner together.*

Use **always** after the verb "be": *Jeff is always late for school.*

If there are two or more verbs together, **always** comes after the first one: *I have always lived in this town.*

**am** /əm; strong æm/ *verb*

the form of the verb BE that is used with "I". "I am" is often shortened to "I'm": *I am so happy that she won.*

**a.m.** /,eɪ 'em/

used to show that a time is in the morning: *I start work at 9:00 a.m.*

**am.a.teur** /'æmətʃə/ *adjective*

doing something for enjoyment, not for money and not as a job: *The competition is for amateur athletes, not professionals.* **ANTONYM** **professional**

**a.maze** /ə'meɪz/ *verb*

to surprise or impress someone very much: *It amazes me that they're still married – they argue so much.*

—**amazed** *adjective* very surprised or impressed: *I was amazed at how much it all cost.*

—**amazing** *adjective* very surprising or impressive: *The movie was amazing – I've never seen anything like it.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **amazed** *adjective*
- **amazing** *adjective*
- **amaze** *verb*
- **amazement** *noun*

**a.maze.ment** /ə'meɪzmənt/ *noun*

the feeling you have when you are very surprised or impressed: *They all looked at the boy in amazement as he stood up and began to sing.*

**am.bas.sa.dor** /æm'bæsədə/ *noun*

an important official who represents his or her country in another country: *the U.S. ambassador to France*

**am.big.u.ous** /æm'bigyuəs/ **Ac**

*adjective*

something that is ambiguous is not clear because it can be understood in more than one way: *The question was ambiguous, and I wasn't sure how to answer.*

**am.bi.tion** /æm'bɪʃən/ *noun*

**1** something that you want very much to do: *My ambition is to become a writer someday.*

**2** the feeling that you want to try to be successful, rich, etc.: *Craig has a lot of ambition, and I'm sure he'll be very successful in his career.*



**am·bi·tious** /æm'biʃəs/ adjective

wanting very much to be successful: *She was very ambitious and decided to start her own company.*

**am·bu·lance** /'æmbyələns/ noun

a special vehicle for taking sick or injured people to the hospital: *Can someone call an ambulance? I think this man is really sick.*

→ See picture on page A26

**am·bush** /'æmbuʃ/ noun

a sudden attack by someone who has been secretly waiting in a hidden place: *Three U.S. soldiers were killed in an ambush.*

—**ambush** verb to suddenly attack someone after secretly waiting in a hidden place

**a·mend** /ə'mend/ **Ac** verb, formal

to make small changes or improvements to the words of a law: *The law needs to be amended so that it helps more people.*

—**amendment** noun a change to the words of a law: *an amendment to the Constitution*

**A·mer·i·can** /ə'merikən/ adjective

from the U.S.: *My wife is American. I an American company*

—**American** noun someone from the U.S.

**A,merican 'dream** noun

**the American Dream** = the idea that everyone in the U.S. has the opportunity to become successful if he or she works hard

**am·mu·ni·tion** /,æmyə'niʃən/ noun

things such as bullets, bombs, etc. that are fired from guns

**am·nes·ty** /'æmnəsti/ noun plural

**amnesties** formal

an official order that allows prisoners to be free, or that allows people not to be punished for a crime

**a·moe·ba** /ə'mibə/ noun

a very small creature that has only one cell

**a·mong** /ə'mʌŋ/ also **a·mongst**

/ə'mʌŋst/ preposition

**1** included in a larger group of people or things: *Brad was among the ten students who received the award.*

**2** in the middle of a lot of people or things: *The rabbit disappeared among some trees.*

**USAGE: among**

**Among** and **between** are both used to talk about where someone or something is.

Use **among** when there are two or more people or things on each side or all sides of someone or something: *Denise was among a group of her friends.*

Use **between** when there is one other person or thing on each side of someone or something: *I sat between Alex and Sarah.*

**3** happening to or relating to a group of people: *Heart disease is common among men over the age of 50.*

**a·mount** /ə'maʊnt/ noun

a quantity of something: *\$80,000 is a very large amount of money.*

**USAGE: amount**

Use **amount** with nouns that are things you cannot count: *a large amount of water*

Use **number** with nouns that are things you can count: *a large number of cars*

**amp** /æmp/ also **am·pere** /'æmpɪr/ noun

a unit for measuring an electric current

**am·phib·i·an** /æm'fibiən/ noun

an animal such as a FROG that can live on land and in water

**am·ple** /'æmpəl/ adjective

more than enough: *The car has ample room for five people, so four people will not be a problem.*

**am·pu·tate** /'æmpyə'teɪt/ verb, formal

to cut off a part of someone's body for medical reasons: *He was wounded in the left leg, and the doctors had to amputate it.*

—**amputation** /,æmpyə'teɪʃən/ noun, formal the act of cutting off part of someone's body

**a·muse** /ə'myuz/

verb

to make someone laugh or smile: *My joke seemed to amuse him.*

—**amused** adjective if you are amused, you think that something is funny: *She listened to his speech, looking amused.*

amuse





A

**a·muse·ment** /ə'myuzmənt/ *noun*

the feeling you have when you think something is funny: *They looked at each other and smiled in amusement.*

**a'musement ,park** *noun*

a place where people go to enjoy themselves by riding on large machines

**a·mus·ing** /ə'myuzɪŋ/ *adjective*

funny and entertaining: *an amusing story* | *I didn't find his remarks very amusing although some other people laughed.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **funny**<sup>1</sup>

**an** /ən; strong æn/ *indefinite article*

used instead of "a" when the following word begins with a vowel sound: *an animal* | *an X-ray* | *an hour*

**GRAMMAR: an**

**an, a**

Use **an** if the word that is after it starts with a vowel sound (the sounds shown by the letters a, e, i, o, or u): *an apple* | *an orange sweater* | *I waited an hour.*

Use **a** if the word that is after it starts with a consonant sound: *a car* | *a white egg* | *a house* | *I bought a CD today.*

**a·nal·o·gy** /ə'nælədʒi/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**make/draw an analogy** = if you make an analogy between two situations, you say that they are similar in some ways: *We can make an analogy between a brain and a computer – both take in information and process it.*

**a·nal·y·sis** /ə'næləsis/ **[Ac]** *noun*

careful examination of something in order to understand it or to find out what it contains: *Scientists have made a detailed analysis of the problem.*

**an·a·lyst** /'ænl-ɪst/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** someone whose job is to analyze things: *a financial analyst*

**2** another word for a PSYCHOANALYST

**an·al·yze** /'ænl,aɪz/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to examine something carefully in order to understand it or to find out what it contains: *We did the experiment in class and then analyzed the results for homework.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **analyze** *verb*
- **analysis** *noun*
- **analyst** *noun*

**a·nat·o·my** /ə'nætəmi/ *noun*

**1** the scientific study of the structure of the body: *The biology course contains a section on anatomy.*

**2** the structure of the body of a person or animal: *The human anatomy is very complex.*

—**anatomical** /,ænə'tamɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to anatomy

**an·ces·tor** /'æn,sestə/ *noun*

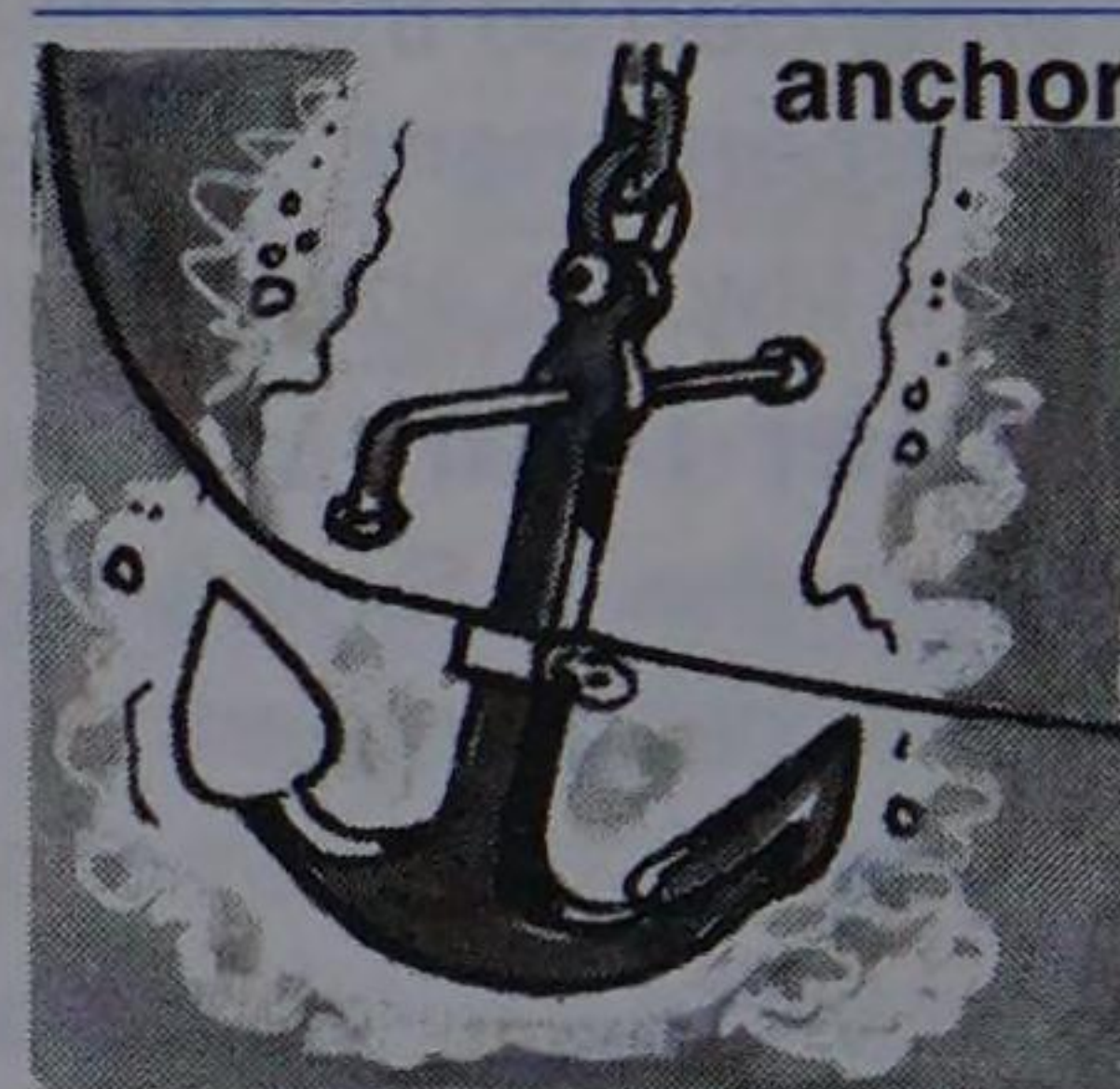
a member of your family who lived a long time before you were born: *His ancestors came to the U.S. from Germany over a hundred years ago.*

**an·chor** /'æŋkə/

*noun*

**1** someone who reads the news on television or radio and introduces news reports: *the evening news anchor on CNN*

**2** a heavy metal object that is lowered into the water to prevent a ship or boat from moving



**an·cient** /'eɪnfənt/ *adjective*

thousands of years old: *an ancient city* | *People have been living on the Nile since ancient times.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **old**

**and** /ən, ənd; strong ænd/ *conjunction*

a word used for joining two words or parts of a sentence: *They have a cat and a dog.* | *We saw a movie, and then we went to a restaurant.*

**an·ec·dote** /'ænik,dout/ *noun, formal*

a short story that you tell people about something interesting or funny that happened to you: *The book is full of anecdotes about his life in Paris.*

**a·ne·mi·a** /ə'nimɪə/ *noun*

a medical condition in which there are not enough red cells in your blood: *Sometimes teenagers get anemia because they don't eat enough healthy food.*

—**anemic** *adjective* having anemia



**an·es·thet·ic** /,ænəs'θetɪk/ *noun*

a drug that stops you from feeling pain during a medical operation: *The doctor gave her a general anesthetic (=affecting all of her body) for the surgery.*

—**anesthesia** /,ænəs'θiːzə/ *noun* the use of drugs to stop someone from feeling pain during a medical operation: *He was under anesthesia (=he had been given a drug to stop him feeling any pain).*

**an·gel** /'eɪndʒəl/ *noun*

a spirit who lives with God in heaven, usually shown in pictures as a person with wings

—**angelic** /æn'dʒelɪk/ *adjective* like an angel, or relating to angels

**an·ger**<sup>1</sup> /'æŋgə/ *noun*

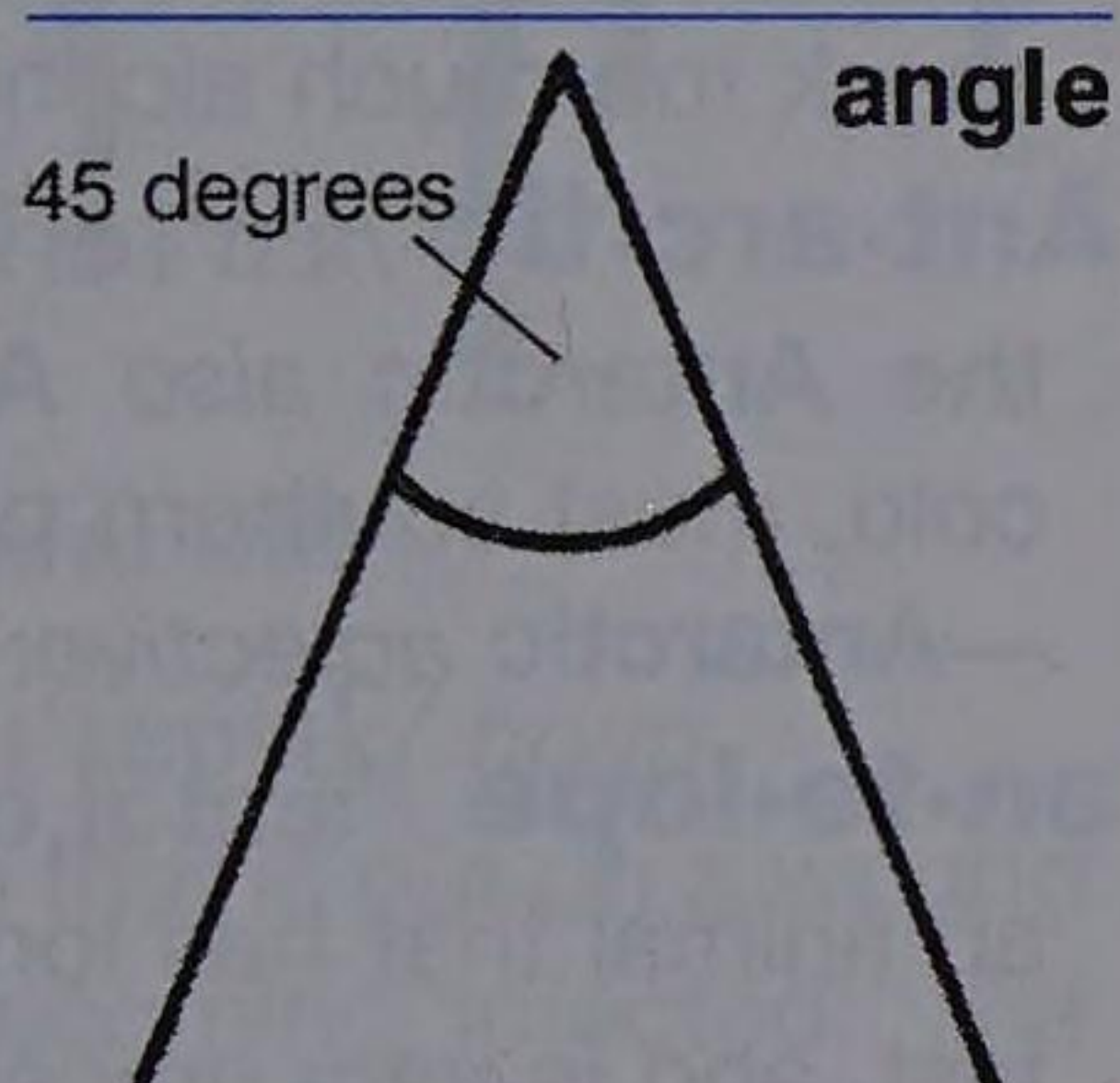
a strong feeling that you have when you think someone has behaved very badly or a situation is very unfair: *Her voice was full of anger.*

**anger**<sup>2</sup> *verb, formal*

to make someone angry: *His rude behavior angered me.*

**an·gle** /'æŋɡəl/ *noun*

the shape that is formed when two straight lines meet each other: *A square has four angles of 90 degrees.*



**an·gry** /'æŋɡri/ *adjective* **angrier, angriest** feeling a strong emotion because you think someone has behaved very badly or a situation is very unfair: *I was angry at him for treating me like a child. | She still feels angry about the lies he told her. | The man suddenly got angry and started yelling.*

→ See picture on page A23

—**angrily** *adverb*: *"I don't need any more advice from you," he said angrily.*

### THESAURUS: angry

**annoyed** a little angry: *I get annoyed with the kids when they don't help around the house.*

**irritated** feeling annoyed and not patient with people or things: *Everyone was talking at once, and I started to feel irritated.*

**furious** very angry: *I was furious with my sister for not telling me something so important.*

**mad** *informal* angry: *She got really mad when he wouldn't listen.*

### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **angry** *adjective*
- **angrily** *adverb*
- **anger** *noun*
- **anger** *verb*

**an·guish** /'æŋɡwɪʃ/ *noun, formal*

a feeling of great unhappiness because something very bad has happened to you or because you feel very worried: *"Don't hurt my daughter," she cried in anguish.*

**an·i·mal** /'ænəmə/ *noun*

a living moving creature that is not a human: *The zoo has many large animals, such as elephants and lions.*

**an·i·ma·tion** /,ænə'meɪʃən/ *noun*

the process of making movies that use drawings: *They use a lot of computer animation in the movie to make it look like the house is flying.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**an·kle** /'æŋkəl/ *noun*

the joint between your foot and your leg: *My foot twisted to one side and I hurt my ankle.*

→ See picture on page A2

**an·ni·ver·sa·ry** /,ænə'vɜːsəri/ *noun*

plural **anniversaries**

the date when you celebrate something important that happened on the same day in a previous year: *Our wedding anniversary is in June.*

**an·nounce** /ə'naʊns/ *verb*

to tell people about an important plan or decision: *The coach announced (that) he was leaving the team.*

**an·nounce·ment** /ə'naʊnsmənt/ *noun*

an official public statement that tells people some important news: *The principal will make an important announcement this afternoon.*

**an·noy** /ə'noɪ/ *verb*

to make someone feel a little angry: *His bad singing was starting to annoy me.* **SYNONYM** **irritate**

—**annoying** *adjective* something that is



A

annoying makes you feel a little angry: *The woman had an annoying high voice.*

**an·noy·ance** /ə'noɪəns/ *noun*, formal  
the feeling of being slightly angry: *Her annoyance at his stupid jokes was obvious.*  
SYNONYM **irritation**

**an·noyed** /ə'noɪd/ *adjective*  
slightly angry: *I was annoyed that no one had told me about the change. | I was getting annoyed with her because she wasn't listening.* SYNONYM **irritated**  
→ See Thesaurus box at **angry**

**an·nu·al** /'ænyuəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*  
happening once a year: *the annual meeting*  
—**annually** *adverb*

**a·non·y·mous** /ə'nɒnəməs/ *adjective*  
someone who is anonymous does not tell you his or her name: *an anonymous letter* (=from someone who does not give his or her name)  
—**anonymously** *adverb*

**a·no·rex·i·a** /,ænə'reksɪə/ *noun*  
a mental illness that makes people stop eating because they think they are fat  
—**anorexic** *adjective* having anorexia

**an·oth·er** /ə'nʌðə/ *adjective, pronoun*  
**1** one more person or thing of the same kind: *Do you want another cup of coffee? | Do you like it? I can buy another one for you.*  
**2** a different person or thing: *Is there another room we could use? This one is too small.*  
**3** more of something, for example time or money: *Let's wait another ten minutes – I'm sure he'll be here soon.*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **more**<sup>2</sup>

**an·swer**<sup>1</sup> /'ænsə/ *verb*  
**1** to say or write something after you have been asked a question: *"Did you see anyone else?" "No," she answered. | I couldn't answer all the questions on the test.*

**THESAURUS: answer**

**reply** to answer someone – used especially in written English: *"Are you coming?" "Yes," she replied.*

**respond** formal to answer someone, especially in a way that gives a lot of details: *The speaker will respond to questions at the end of his talk.*

**2 answer the phone/door** = to pick up the telephone when it rings, or go to the door

when someone knocks or rings a bell: *Let me answer the phone if it rings.*

**answer**<sup>2</sup> *noun*  
**1** something that you say or write when someone asks you a question: *His answer to my question was "no." | Can you give me an answer as soon as possible? | What was the answer (=the correct answer on a test) to question number 3?*  
**2** something that solves a problem: *There are no easy answers to the problem of crime* (=it is difficult to find a solution). SYNONYM **solution**

**'answering ma·chine** *noun*  
a machine that records messages from people calling you when you cannot answer your telephone: *I left a message on his answering machine asking him to call me.*

**ant** /ænt/ *noun*  
a common small black or red insect that lives in groups

**an·tac·id** /,ænt'æsɪd/ *noun*  
a drug that stops the burning feeling in your stomach when you have eaten too much, drunk too much alcohol, etc.

**Ant·arc·tic** /æn'tɑːktɪk/ *noun*  
**the Antarctic** also **Antarctica** = the very cold, most southern part of the world  
—**Antarctic** *adjective*: *Antarctic explorers*

**an·te·lope** /'æntələʊp/ *noun*  
an animal that has long horns, can run very fast, and is very graceful: *A herd of antelope ran quickly across the field.*

**an·ten·na** /æn'tenə/ *noun*  
**1** a piece of equipment on a television, car, roof, etc. for receiving radio or television signals  
**2** plural **antennae** /-ni/ one of two long thin things on an insect's head that it uses to feel things  
→ See picture on page A28

**an·ti·bi·ot·ic** /,æntɪbaɪ'atɪk/ *noun*  
a medicine that kills BACTERIA and cures infections

**an·tic·i·pate** /æn'tɪsə,peɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*, formal  
to expect that something will happen: *The team has practiced hard for the game tomorrow, so I do not anticipate any problems.*  
—**anticipation** /æn,tɪsə'peɪʃən/ *noun* the idea or feeling you have when you expect



something to happen: *The audience waited for the singer with great anticipation.*

**an·ti·freeze** /'æntɪˌfrɪz/ *noun*

a substance that is put in the water in car engines to stop it from freezing

**an·ti·his·ta·mine** /,æntɪ'hɪstəˌmɪn/ *noun*

a medicine that is used to treat an ALLERGY (=a bad physical reaction to a substance): *I take antihistamines to help me stop sneezing.*

**an·ti·per·spi·rant** /,æntɪ'pəspərənt/ *noun*

a substance that you put under your arms to stop you from SWEATING

**an·tique** /,æn'tɪk/ *noun*

an old piece of furniture or other object that is usually valuable: *His house was full of beautiful antiques and old paintings.*

—**antique** *adjective*: antique furniture

→ See Thesaurus box at **old**



**an·ti·sep·tic** /,æntɪ'septɪk/ *noun*

a chemical substance that is put on a wound to prevent it from becoming infected: *The hospital smelled like antiseptic.*

—**antiseptic** *adjective* helping to prevent infection: *an antiseptic cream*

**ant·ler** /'æntlə/ *noun*

one of the horns that look like tree branches which animals such as DEER have

**an·to·nym** /'æntəˌnɪm/ *noun, formal*

a word that means the opposite of another word: "Long" is an antonym of "short." **ANTONYM** *synonym*

**anx·i·e·ty** /æŋ'zaɪəti/ *noun, formal*

a strong feeling of worry about something: *There is a lot of anxiety about final exams, which start next week.* **SYNONYM** *worry*

**anx·ious** /'æŋkʃəs/ *adjective, formal*

**1** very worried about something: *She was anxious about her baby being sick.* **SYNONYM** *worried*

**2** feeling strongly that you want to do something or want something to happen: *I was anxious to know if she had won the race.*

**SYNONYM** *eager*

—**anxiously** *adverb*: *They waited anxiously for news.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **worried**

**an·y<sup>1</sup>** /'eni/ *adjective, pronoun*

**1** some – used in questions and negative statements: *Is there any ice cream left? | I don't have any friends at school. No one talks to me. | I haven't read any of his books.*

#### GRAMMAR: any

##### any, a

Use **any** with nouns that you cannot count or nouns that show that there is more than one thing: *Do you have any money? | There weren't any books that I wanted to read.*

Use **a** when there is only one thing: *Do you have a car?*

→ **a**

**2** used when something is true about every thing or person in a group: *You can buy it at any book store. | Any of these women could do the job – just pick one.*

**any<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

even a small amount – used in questions and negative statements: *Are you feeling any better? | She couldn't walk any farther.*

**an·y·bod·y** /'eniˌbɒdi/ *pronoun, informal*  
another word for ANYONE

**an·y·how** /'eniˌhaʊ/ *adverb, informal*  
another word for ANYWAY

**an·y·more** also **any more** /,eni'mɔː/ *adverb*

**not anymore** = used to say that something that happened or was true does not happen now or is not true now: *He doesn't work here anymore. He quit last month.*

**an·y·one** /'eniˌwʌn/ *pronoun*

**1** someone or a person – used in questions and negative statements: *I didn't know anyone was in here. | Is anyone else (=any other person) coming?*



**GRAMMAR: anyone**

**someone, anyone**

In questions and sentences with “not” in them, we usually use **anyone** and not **someone**: *Have you told anyone about this? | I didn't see anyone there.*

In other sentences, we use **someone**: *There's someone here to see you.*

**2** any person, it does not matter who: *The game is so simple that anyone can play it.*

**an.y.place** /'eni,pleɪs/ *adverb, informal*  
another word for ANYWHERE

**an.y.thing** /'eni,θɪŋ/ *pronoun*

**1** something or a thing – used in questions and negative statements: *We don't know anything about her. | Do you need anything else (=any other thing)?*

**GRAMMAR: anything**

**something, anything**

In questions and sentences with “not” in them, we usually use **anything** and not **something**: *Did you see anything you liked? | I didn't have anything to eat.*

If you are offering someone some food, a drink, etc., it sounds more polite to use **something**: *Would you like something to eat?*

**2** used when you are saying that someone does not care which thing they choose, use, etc.: *My dog will eat anything, so I have to keep him away from harmful things.*

**3** or **anything** *informal* = or something else of the same kind: *I hope it isn't cancer or anything.*

**an.y.time** also **any time** /'eni,taim/ *adverb*

at any time: *You can call me anytime. Don't worry if it's too late or too early.*

**an.y.way** /'eni,weɪ/ *adverb*

**1** in spite of something: *It's probably not serious, but you should see a doctor anyway.*

**2** used to change the subject of a conversation, or return to the main subject or story: *Anyway, where do you want to go for lunch?*

**3** used when you are mentioning a more important fact: *I haven't been invited to the party, but I didn't want to go anyway.*

**4** used when you are adding something that

limits what you have said: *I can't help you. Not right now, anyway.*

**an.y.where** /'eni,wer/ *adverb*

**1** in or to any place: *I can't find my keys anywhere – I've looked all over the house. | Have you been anywhere else (=to any other place)? | You can go anywhere you want in the building.*

**GRAMMAR: anywhere**

**somewhere, anywhere**

In questions and sentences with “not” in them, we usually use **anywhere** and not **somewhere**: *I haven't seen it anywhere.*

In other sentences, we use **somewhere**: *He lives somewhere near here.*

**2** **anywhere from one to ten, etc.** = between one and ten, etc.: *These trips lasted anywhere from one to three days.*

**a.part** /ə'pɑ:t/ *adverb*

**1** separated by distance or time: *The two cities are six miles apart. | Our birthdays are only two days apart.*

**2** separated into many pieces: *He had to take the camera apart to fix it. | The plane's left engine began to come apart.*

→ **fall apart** at **fall**<sup>1</sup>

**3** **apart from someone or something** = besides or except for something: *Apart from one terrible singer, the concert was excellent.*

**a.part.ment** /ə'pɑ:tment/ *noun*

a place to live that consists of a set of rooms in a large building: *She lives in a one-bedroom apartment. | a large apartment building (=building containing apartments)*

**ap.a.thy** /'æpəθi/ *noun, formal*

the feeling of not being interested in something or not caring enough about something to take action: *There is a lot of apathy among young people about the election – no one really cares.*

—**apathetic** /,æpə'tætɪk/ *adjective, formal*  
not interested in something or not caring about something

**ape** /eɪp/ *noun*

a large animal like a monkey but with no tail or a very short tail: *Gorillas and chimpanzees are apes.*

**a.piece** /ə'pi:s/ *adverb*

for each: *The apples are 25 cents apiece.*

SYNONYM **each**



**a.pol.o.gize** /ə'pɒlə,dʒaɪz/ verb

to say that you are sorry about something that you have done: *He apologized for being late.* | *She was very upset. I think you should apologize to her.*

—**apologetic** /ə,pələ'dʒetɪk/ adjective, formal saying or showing that you are sorry about something: *When I showed them the mistake, they were very apologetic.*

**a.pol.o.gy** /ə'pɒlədʒi/ noun plural**apologies**

something that you say or write to show that you are sorry about something that you have done: *The senator made a public apology for his mistakes.* | *She lied to me. I think she owes me an apology.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **apology** noun
- **apologize** verb
- **apologetic** adjective

**a.pos.tro.phe** /ə'pɑstrəfi/ noun

the mark ', which is used to show that letters or figures have been left out, or used with "s" to show that something belongs to or is connected with someone: *don't* (=do not) | *'96* (=1896/1996, etc.) | *Sarah's book* (=the book that belongs to Sarah)

**ap.palled** /ə'pɒld/ adjective

very shocked and upset: *The boy's mother was appalled at the violence he was watching on TV.*

**ap.pa.rat.us** /,æpə'rætəs/ noun plural

**apparatus** or **apparatuses** formal tools or equipment used for a particular purpose, especially for something scientific or technical: *The divers are using a new apparatus for breathing under water.*

**ap.par.ent** /ə'pærənt/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1** easily seen or understood: *He was having trouble breathing, and it was apparent that he needed medical help.* **SYNONYM** **clear, obvious**

**2** seeming to be true or real: *She was upset by his apparent lack of sympathy.*

**ap.par.ent.ly** /ə'pærəntli/ **[Ac]** adverb

used when mentioning something that you have heard is true, although you are not completely sure about it: *He was late for school today. Apparently, he overslept.*

**ap.peal<sup>1</sup>** /ə'pil/ verb

**1** formal to ask someone, especially the public, for money, help, information, etc.: *The organization is appealing for money to help the earthquake victims.* | *City officials appealed to everyone to use less water because supplies were low.*

**2** to formally ask a more important court to change a decision that a less important court made: *His lawyers appealed the court's decision.*

**PHRASAL VERB****appeal to someone**

to seem attractive or interesting to someone: *The idea of going to college did not appeal to him. He wanted to get a job instead.*

**appeal<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** formal a strong request for money, help, information, etc. to the public or other group of people: *The teachers made an appeal to parents for money and help.*

**2** the act of asking a more important court to change a decision that a less important court has made: *His appeal of the court's decision was unsuccessful.*

**3** the quality that makes you like something: *The band's music has a lot of appeal for young people.*

**ap.peal.ing** /ə'pilɪŋ/ adjective

attractive or interesting: *They try to make their products appealing to kids by using cartoon characters and bright colors.*

**ap.pear** /ə'piə/ verb

**1** to seem: *The man appeared to be asleep.* | *She appeared nervous.*

**2** to begin to be seen: *A face appeared at the window.*

**3** to take part in a movie, television program, play, etc.: *He appeared in several horror movies.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **appear** verb
- **disappear** verb
- **appearance** noun
- **disappearance** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **seem**

**ap.pear.ance** /ə'piərəns/ noun

**1** the way someone or something looks to other people: *Don't try and change your appearance – you look great.*

**2** a time when someone or something



arrives somewhere or when you can see someone or something in a place: *This was his first appearance in court.*

**ap·pen·di·ci·tis** /əˌpendə'saɪtɪs/ *noun*  
an illness in which your appendix gets bigger, becomes painful, and often has to be taken out

**ap·pen·dix** /ə'pendɪks/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
**1** a small closed tube that is part of your BOWEL which can become swollen and painful: *He had an operation to take out his appendix.*

**2** plural **appendixes** or **appendices** /-dɪsɪz/ a part at the end of a book that has additional information: *There is an appendix at the back of the book with a list of other books on this subject.*

**ap·pe·tite** /'æpəˌtaɪt/ *noun*  
the feeling that you want to eat something: *When I was sick, I lost my appetite and hardly ate anything.*

**ap·plaud** /ə'plɒd/ *verb, formal*  
to hit your hands together many times, for example to show that you enjoyed a play, concert, speech, etc.: *When she finished the song, the audience applauded for a long time.*



SYNONYM **clap**

**ap·plause** /ə'plɔʊz/ *noun*  
the sound of people hitting their hands together many times to show that they enjoyed something or think someone is good: *The team gave Ted a round of applause (=they applauded for a short time).*

**ap·ple** /'æpəl/ *noun*  
a hard round red or green fruit that is white inside: *apple pie* | *an apple tree*  
→ See picture on page A13

**ap·ple·sauce** /'æpəlˌsɔːs/ *noun*  
a thick smooth food made from cooked apples

**ap·pli·ance** /ə'plaɪəns/ *noun*  
a piece of electrical equipment such as a REFRIGERATOR or a DISHWASHER that is used

in someone's home: *kitchen appliances*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **machine**<sup>1</sup>

**ap·pli·ca·tion** /ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən/ *noun*  
**1** a formal written request for a job, a place at a college, etc.: *a job application* | *Please fill out an application if you are interested in the class.* | *The club president gave me an application for membership.* | *I sent in my application form for the M.A. program.*  
**2** a piece of SOFTWARE: *My computer can run almost any application.*

**ap·ply** /ə'plai/ *verb* **applied**, third person singular **applies**  
**1** to formally ask for something in writing, such as a job or a chance to go to a college: *Fifteen people applied for the job.* | *He applied to law school.*  
**2** to affect or be true for a particular person or thing: *The rules apply to every student at this school.*

**3** formal to spread something such as paint on a surface: *She applied her lipstick.*  
—**applicant** /'æplɪkənt/ *noun* someone who is applying for a job, the chance to go to a college, etc.

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **apply** *verb*
- **application** *noun*
- **applicant** *noun*

**ap·point** /ə'pɔɪnt/ *verb*  
to choose someone for a job or position: *She was appointed to the position by the president.* | *He appointed John Mason as chairman.*

**ap·point·ment** /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ *noun*  
**1** a meeting that has been arranged for a particular time and place: *I'd like to make an appointment with Dr. Hanson on Tuesday.* | *I have an appointment at six.*  
**2** the act of choosing someone for a job or position: *the appointment of a new Supreme Court Justice*

**ap·pre·ci·ate** /ə'priʃiˌeɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*  
**1** to be grateful for something: *We really appreciate your help.* | *Thanks for meeting with me. I appreciate it.*  
**2** formal to understand a situation or problem: *I appreciate that learning a new language quickly is very difficult.*  
WORD FAMILY → **appreciation** *noun*



**ap·pre·ci·a·tion** /əˌprɪʃi'eɪʃən/ **[Ac]**

noun

the feeling of being grateful for something: *They showed their appreciation for her support by giving her a gift.*

**ap·pren·tice** /əˈprentɪs/ noun

someone who is learning how to do a job such as being a MECHANIC or a PLUMBER, by doing the job with someone who teaches him or her how to do it: *He started as an apprentice and in time became a skilled mechanic.*

**ap·proach**<sup>1</sup> /əˈprəʊtʃ/ **[Ac]** verb

**1** to move closer to someone or something: *A woman approached me in the street to ask me a question.*

**2** if something is approaching, it will happen soon: *Winter was approaching and the weather was getting colder.*

**approach**<sup>2</sup> noun

a way of dealing with a problem or a difficult situation: *We need a new approach to the way we teach math. Our old ways of teaching it aren't working.*

**ap·pro·pri·ate** /əˈprəʊpriɪt/ **[Ac]** adjective

correct or good for a particular person, situation, time, etc.: *Is the movie appropriate for young children? | It is not appropriate to call someone just after a funeral.* **ANTONYM** inappropriate

—**appropriately** adverb

**ap·prov·al** /əˈprʊvəl/ noun

**1** official permission: *The teacher gave his approval to the students' plans for their science project and told them to get started.*

**2** the belief that someone or something is good or is doing something right: *She tried very hard to win her parents' approval (=make her parents like her and praise her).*

**ap·prove** /əˈprʊv/ verb

**1** to think that something or someone is good or right: *Do her parents approve of her new boyfriend?* **ANTONYM** disapprove

**2** to give official permission for something: *The plan was approved by California voters.*

**ap·prox·i·mate·ly** /əˈpræksəmətli/ **[Ac]**

adverb

used when saying that a number or amount is not exact: *The plane will land in approximately 20 minutes.*

—**approximate** adjective not exact

→ See Thesaurus box at **about**

**ap·ri·cot** /ˈeɪprɪˌkɒt/ noun

a small soft yellow-orange fruit with a single large seed

→ See picture on page A13

**A·pril** /ˈeɪprəl/ noun, written abbreviation **Apr.**

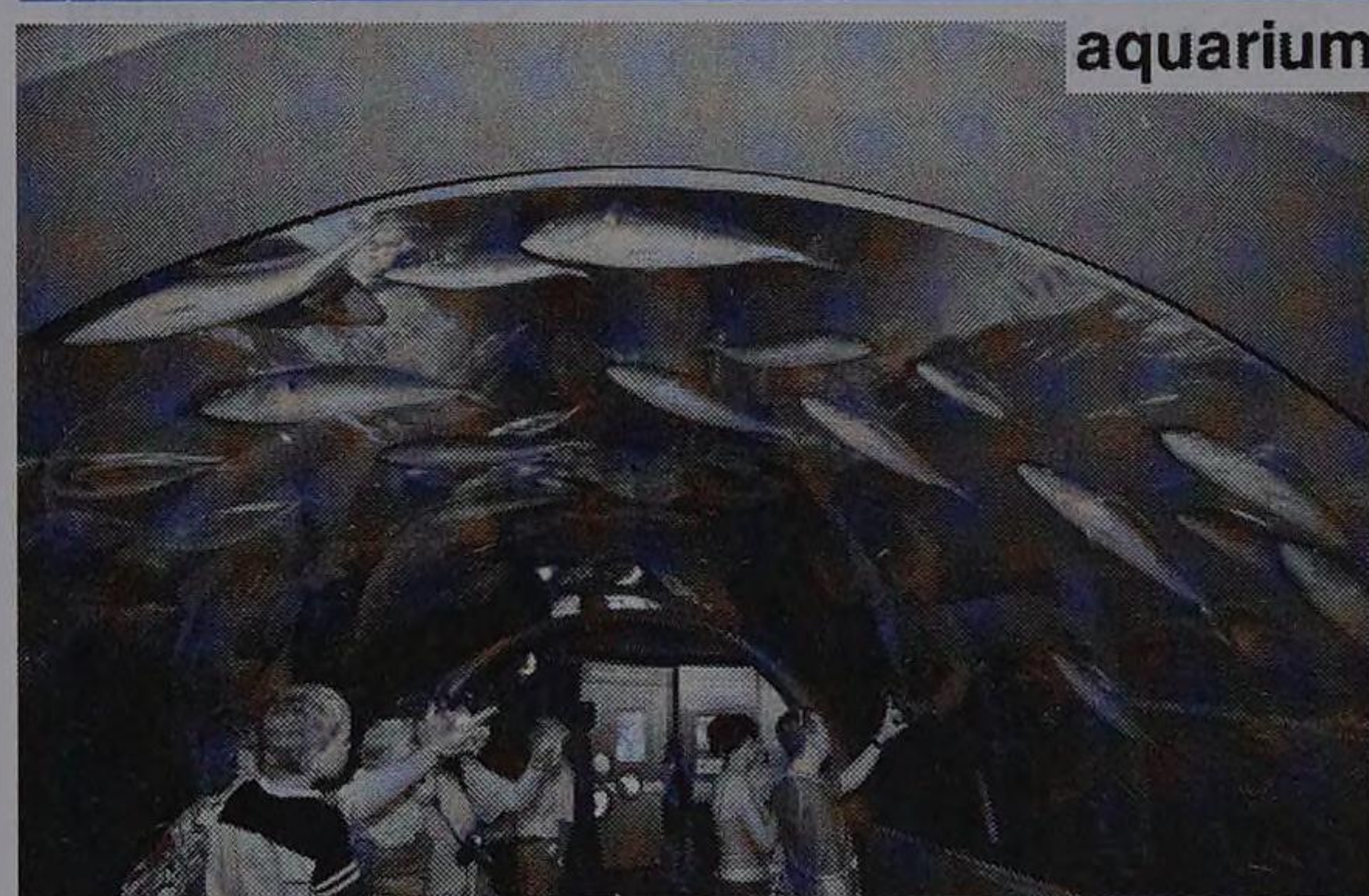
the fourth month of the year, between March and May: *Lucy's birthday is on April 5th. | The flowers start to bloom in April. | We went to California last April. | We're going to see my aunt next April.*

**a·pron** /ˈeɪprən/ noun

a piece of clothing that you wear over your other clothes in order to keep them clean, especially when you are cooking

**ap·ti·tude** /ˈæptəˌtʊd/ noun, formal

a natural ability that makes you good at learning how to do something: *I didn't play football in high school, because I never had much aptitude for sports.*

**a·quar·i·um** /əˈkwəriəm/ noun

**1** a glass container for keeping fish in

**2** a building where people go to look at fish or other water animals

**A·quar·i·us** /əˈkwəriəs/ noun

**1** the 11th sign of the ZODIAC, represented by someone carrying water

**2** someone born between January 20 and February 18

**Ar·ab** /ˈærəb/ adjective

from the Middle East or North Africa: *a group of Arab women*

—**Arab** noun someone from the Middle East or North Africa

**Ar·a·bic** /ˈærəbɪk/ noun

the language spoken in the Middle East and North Africa



**ar·bi·trar·y** /'arbə, treri/ **[Ac]** adjective

decided without any reason or planning, in a way that seems unfair or wrong: *The principal should not make arbitrary decisions. We expect him to have good reasons for his actions.*

**arc** /ɑrk/ noun

a curved line, especially one that forms part of a circle: *The sun moves across the sky in a big arc.*

**ar·cade** /ɑr'keɪd/ noun

a special room or small building where people go to play VIDEO GAMES

**arch** /ɑrtʃ/ noun plural **arches**

a curved shape at the top of a door, window, bridge, etc.: *The roof of the church was supported by huge arches.*

**ar·chae·ol·o·gy** also **archeology**

/,ɑrki'ælədʒi/ noun

the study of ancient societies, by looking at bones, tools, and other objects that have been buried in the ground for a long time

—**archaeologist** noun someone who studies ancient societies, by looking at the remains of bones, tools, and other objects: *Archaeologists are still digging in parts of the old city.*

—**archaeological** /,ɑrkiə'lədʒɪkəl/ adjective relating to archaeology

**ar·chi·tect** /'ɑrkə,tekt/ noun

someone whose job is to design buildings: *My brother wants to be an architect – he's always loved to draw buildings.*

**ar·chi·tec·ture** /'ɑrkə,tektʃə/ noun

the style and design of a building or buildings: *The city is famous for its architecture. Many of its buildings are well-known around the world.*

**Arc·tic** /'ɑrktɪk/ noun

**the Arctic** = the most northern part of the Earth, including parts of Alaska and Greenland, and the Arctic Ocean

**are** /ə; strong ɑr/ verb

the present tense plural of BE

**ar·e·a** /'eriə/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a particular part of a place, city, country, building, etc.: *There are many computer companies in the Seattle area (=in the part of the U.S. near Seattle). | This is the dining area (=the part of a building where people eat).*

#### THESAURUS: area

**region** a large area of a country or the world: *the northwest region of Russia*

**zone** an area that is different in a particular way from the areas around it: *a no-parking zone*

**district** a particular area of a city or the country: *San Francisco's Mission District*

**neighborhood** an area of a town where people live: *a friendly neighborhood*

**suburb** an area outside the center of a city where people live: *a suburb of Boston*

**2** a subject or part of a subject: *The two scientists were involved in very different areas of research.*

**3** the size of a flat surface or shape: *You measure the area of a room by multiplying the length by the width.*

**'area ,code** noun

in the U.S. and Canada, the three numbers before a telephone number that you use to call someone who lives outside your local area

**a·re·na** /ə'rinə/ noun

a large building used for watching sports games, listening to concerts, or other events: *Hundreds of people were waiting to enter the sports arena for the game.*

**aren't** /'ɑrənt/ verb

**1** the short form of "are not": *They aren't coming to the party.*

**2** the short form of "am not", used in questions: *I'm next, aren't I?*

**ar·gue** /'ɑrgyu/ verb

to disagree with someone, usually by talking or shouting in an angry way: *My parents were always arguing with each other. | We used to stay up late arguing about politics.*

#### THESAURUS: argue

**argue** or **have an argument**: *My parents were arguing about money. | We've had arguments before, but they've never been very serious.*

**fight** or **have a fight** informal to argue with someone: *My brothers are always fighting. | The neighbors had a huge fight.*



**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **argue** verb
- **argument** noun
- **argumentative** adjective

**ar·gu·ment** /'ɑrɡyəmənt/ noun

**1** a disagreement, especially one in which people are angry and shout: *I had an argument with my mom last night about getting home late.*

**2** a reason or set of reasons that you give to support an opinion: *We had to write a paper about the arguments for and against the death penalty (=the reasons why you think it is a good or a bad system).*

**ar·gu·men·ta·tive** /,ɑrɡyə'mentətɪv/ adjective, formal

someone who is argumentative often argues with people: *He is very argumentative in class and it makes the other students uncomfortable.*

**ar·id** /'æɪd/ adjective, formal

getting very little rain, and therefore very dry: *the hot, arid regions of Central Africa*

**Ar·ies** /'erɪz/ noun

**1** the first sign of the ZODIAC, represented by a RAM

**2** someone born between March 21 and April 19

**a·rise** /ə'reɪz/ verb arose /ə'rouz/ arisen /ə'rɪzən/ arising formal

to happen or appear: *Some difficult questions arose during the meeting.*

**a·rith·me·tic** /ə'rɪθmətɪk/ noun

the science of numbers involving adding, dividing, multiplying, etc.

**arm<sup>1</sup>** /ɑrm/ noun

**1** the part of your body between your shoulder and your hand: *The nurse stuck the needle into his arm. | She held the baby in her arms.*

**2** the part of a chair, SOFA, etc. that you rest your arms on: *I put my drink on the arm of the chair.*

→ **arms**

→ See picture on page A2

**arm<sup>2</sup>** verb

to provide someone with weapons: *The money is being used to arm terrorist groups.*

**ar·ma·dil·lo** /,ɑrmə'dɪləʊ/ noun

a small animal with a pointed nose and a hard shell that lives in hot dry parts of North and South America

**arm·chair** /'ɑrmtʃer/ noun

a chair with sides that you can rest your arms on

→ See picture at **seat**

**armed** /ɑrmd/ adjective

having a weapon: *An armed policeman guarded the door.*

**armed 'forces** plural noun

a country's army, navy, air force, etc.: *the Canadian armed forces*

**ar·mor** /'ɑrmə/ noun

a cover that protects a person or a vehicle from attack: *The soldiers were wearing body armor to protect themselves from bullets.*

—**armored** adjective having armor: *an armored truck*

**arm·pit** /'ɑrm,pɪt/ noun

the hollow place under your arm where it joins your body

**arms** /ɑrmz/ plural noun

weapons such as guns and bombs: *He ordered the men to put down their arms.*

**ar·my** /'ɑrmi/ noun plural **armies**

a military force that fights wars on land: *My father was in the army. | After high school she joined the army (=became a member of the army).*

**a·ro·ma** /ə'roumə/ noun, formal

a strong pleasant smell: *I could smell the delicious aroma of fresh coffee.*

—**aromatic** /,æɪə'mætɪk/ adjective, formal having a strong pleasant smell

→ See Thesaurus box at **smell<sup>1</sup>**

**a·rose** /ə'rouz/ verb

the past tense of **ARISE**

**a·round** /ə'raʊnd/ adverb, preposition

**1** surrounding something or someone: *He put his arms around her. | There is a high fence all around the prison.*

**2** in or to many parts of a place: *They walked around the old part of the city.*

**3** in or near a particular place: *Is there a bank around here?*

**4** in a circular movement: *The earth goes around the sun.*

**5** used when saying that a number, amount,



or time is not exact: *We got back home around 10 o'clock.* **SYNONYM** **about**

**6** in the opposite direction: *I need to turn the car around and go back the other way.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **about**

**a·rouse** /ə'raʊz/ verb, formal

to make someone have a particular feeling: *Her strange behavior aroused the suspicions of the police* (=made them think something was wrong).

**ar·range** /ə'reɪndʒ/ verb

**1** to put a group of things or people in a particular order or position: *She arranged the flowers in the vase.*

**2** formal to make plans to do something: *We arranged to meet outside the restaurant.*

**ar·range·ment** /ə'reɪndʒmənt/ noun

the things that you do in order to prepare for something to happen: *We have to make all the arrangements for the party – I'll buy the food and drinks, and you reserve the room and get the decorations.*

**ar·rest** /ə'rest/ verb

if the police arrest someone, they take the person away because the police think that he or she has done something illegal: *The police arrested him and charged him with murder.*

—**arrest** noun a situation in which the police stop someone and take him or her away: *After his arrest, the officers took him to the police station.*

**ar·riv·al** /ə'raɪvəl/ noun

**1** the act of arriving somewhere: *Soon after his arrival in New York he got a job on a newspaper.* **ANTONYM** **departure**

**2** a person or thing that has arrived recently: *The principal welcomed the new arrivals to the school.*

**ar·rive** /ə'raɪv/ verb

to get to a place: *What time does the plane arrive in Chicago?* | *The letter arrived yesterday and I read it immediately.*

#### THESAURUS: arrive

**get to** informal to arrive at a particular place: *What time will you get to Atlanta?*

**reach** to arrive at a particular place: *The climbers reached the top of Mt. Everest.*

**come** if someone comes, he or she arrives at the place where you are: *She came home yesterday.*

**turn up** also **show up** to arrive somewhere – used when someone is waiting for you: *Lee turned up an hour late for the meeting.*

**land** to arrive somewhere in an airplane or boat: *Marie's flight landed at 10:15.*

**ar·ro·gance** /'ærəgəns/ noun

a rude and unfriendly attitude that shows that a person thinks that he or she is better than other people: *She hated his arrogance and the disrespect he showed for other people.*

**ar·ro·gant** /'ærəgənt/ adjective

behaving in a rude and unfriendly way because you think that you are more important than other people: *He was an arrogant young man who never listened to other people's advice.*

—**arrogantly** adverb

→ See Thesaurus box at **proud**

**ar·row** /'ærou/ noun

a long thin piece of wood or metal, with a point at one end and feathers at the other end, that you shoot from a BOW

**ar·son** /'ɑrsən/ noun

the crime of deliberately making a building start burning

**art** /ɑrt/ noun

**1** things such as paintings, drawings, or photographs, that are created for people to look at and enjoy: *Several famous works of art were stolen from the museum.* | *Do you like modern art?*

#### THESAURUS: art

##### Types of Art

**painting** a picture that you make using paint

**drawing** a picture that you make using a pen or pencil

**photograph** a picture that you take using a camera

**sculpture** an object that you make out of stone, wood, or clay

**2** the activity of creating paintings, drawings, etc. for people to look at and enjoy: *She's studied art in college.*

**3 the arts** = painting, music, literature, etc., all considered together



**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **art** noun
- **artist** noun
- **artistic** adjective

**ar·ter·y** /'ɑrtəri/ noun plural **arteries**

one of the tubes that carries blood from your heart to the rest of your body: *Your arteries will become blocked if you eat too much fatty food.*

**ar·thri·tis** /ɑr'θraɪtɪs/ noun

a disease that causes pain and swelling in the joints of your body: *My grandmother has arthritis in her knees, and she finds it hard to walk.*

**ar·ti·choke** /'ɑrtɪ,tʃoʊk/ noun

a round green vegetable with short thick pointed leaves

→ See picture on page A12

**ar·ti·cle** /'ɑrtɪkəl/ noun

**1** a piece of writing in a newspaper, magazine, etc.: *I read an article on him in "Time Magazine."*

**2** a thing, especially one of a group of things: *The police found several articles of clothing in the bushes.*

**3** in grammar, the word "the" is called "the definite article," and "a" or "an" is called "the indefinite article"

→ See Thesaurus box at **thing**

**ar·ti·fi·cial** /,ɑrtə'fɪʃəl/ adjective

not real or natural, but made by people: *Many foods contain artificial coloring. | She has an artificial leg.*

—**artificially** adverb

**art·ist** /'ɑrtɪst/ noun

someone who produces art: *Picasso was an amazing painter and one of the world's greatest artists.*

→ See picture on page A16

**ar·tis·tic** /ɑr'tɪstɪk/ adjective

**1** good at making art: *My sister's very artistic – she is especially good at drawing.*

**2** relating to art: *The country has a long cultural and artistic history.*

**as** /əz; strong æz/ adverb, preposition, conjunction

**1** **as... as** = used to compare people or things: *I'm not as old as you. | This one is just as good as the other one.*

**2** used to say what someone's job is, or

what something is used for: *She works as a teacher. | We can use this box as a table.*

**3** while something is happening: *The phone rang just as I was leaving.*

**4** **as if/as though** = used when you are saying how someone or something seems: *Her eyes were red and she looked as if she had been crying.*

**5** formal because: *He decided not to go out, as it was already late.* **SYNONYM** **since**

**ASAP** also **a.s.a.p.** adverb, informal

**as soon as possible**: *Finish your classwork ASAP.*

**as·cend** /ə'send/ verb, formal

to go up higher: *The plane ascended into the clouds.* **SYNONYM** **rise**; **ANTONYM** **descend**

—**ascent** noun, formal the act of going up higher: *The ascent of the mountain took six hours.*

**ash** /æʃ/ noun

the gray powder that is left after something has burned: *A cloud of smoke and ash rose up from the burning building.*

**a·shamed** /ə'ʃeɪmd/ adjective

if you are ashamed, you feel guilty about something you have done: *I felt ashamed that I had been so mean. | Ben had lied to her, and he was ashamed of himself (=ashamed of his behavior).*

**a·shore** /ə'ʃɔr/ adverb, formal

onto the land beside the ocean or a lake: *The ship stopped in Miami, and we all went ashore.*

**ash·tray** /'æʃtreɪ/ noun

a small dish that you use for cigarette ASHes, when you are smoking

**A·sia** /'eɪʒə/ noun

one of the seven CONTINENTS, with countries such as China, Russia, India, Pakistan, and Saudi Arabia in it

**A·sian** /'eɪʒən/ adjective

from Asia, especially East Asia: *an Asian woman*

—**Asian** noun someone from Asia

**a·side** /ə'saɪd/ adverb

to one side: *Jack stepped aside so I could pass. | Remove the meat from the pan and set it aside.*

**ask** /æsk/ verb

**1** to say something that is a question, in order to get information, help, etc.: *"What's*



A

your name?" she asked. | Can I ask a question? | Why don't you ask your teacher for help? | If you need anything, just ask.

**THESAURUS: ask**

**order** to ask for food or drinks in a restaurant: *Dave ordered a hamburger.*

**demand** to ask for something in a strong or angry way: *He demanded to be paid for the hours he had worked.*

**request** formal to ask for something officially or in a polite way: *Visitors are requested not to smoke in the hospital.*

**beg** to ask for something that you want very much, often when you ask many times: *"Please can I have one?" she begged.*

**question** if the police question someone, they ask them a lot of questions in order to get information: *The police questioned two men about the robbery.*

**2** to invite someone to go somewhere: *If I ask Tracy to the party, do you think she'll go with me?*

**a.sleep** /ə'slip/ adjective

sleeping: *The kids are already asleep, so don't make a lot of noise. | I was so tired that I fell asleep (=started sleeping) after dinner.*

ANTONYM **awake**

**as.par.a.gus** /ə'spærəgəs/ noun

a long thin green vegetable with a pointed top

→ See picture on page A12

**as.pect** /'æspekt/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

one of the parts of a situation or problem: *Learning to write clearly is an important aspect of the class.*

**as.phalt** /'æs,fɔlt/ noun

a hard black substance used for covering roads

**as.pirin** /'æsprɪn/ noun plural **aspirins** or **aspirin**

a medicine that makes you feel less pain: *If you have a headache, take an aspirin.*

**ass** /æs/ noun

a type of DONKEY

**as.sas.sin** /ə'sæsən/ noun

someone who kills an important person

**as.sas.si.nate** /ə'sæsə,neɪt/ verb

to kill an important person: *President Lincoln was assassinated by a man who was angry*

*that the South had lost the Civil War.*

—**assassination** /ə,sæsə'neɪʃən/ noun the act of killing an important person: *the assassination of Martin Luther King Jr.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **kill**

**as.sault** /ə'sɔlt/ verb, formal

to attack and hurt someone: *He was arrested for assaulting a police officer.* **SYNONYM** **attack**

—**assault** noun, formal an act of assaulting someone: *She had to go to the hospital after she was injured in an assault downtown.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **crime**

**as.sem.ble**

/ə'sembəl/ **[Ac]**

verb

**1** to put the different parts of something together: *This picture shows you how to assemble the bed.* **SYNONYM**

**put together**

**2** if people assemble, they come together in a group: *All the students assembled in front of the school.*

**as.sem.bly** /ə'sembli/ **[Ac]** noun plural

**assemblies**

**1** a meeting of a large group of people: *I had to give a talk during a school assembly.*

**2** formal the process of putting something together: *The instructions make assembly of the table easy.*

**as.ser.tive** /ə'sətɪv/ adjective, formal

if you are assertive, you act in a confident way and say what you think: *We try to teach our students to be assertive in a group and state their opinions openly.*

—**assertively** adverb

—**assertiveness** noun

**as.sess** /ə'ses/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to make a judgment about a person or situation: *The teacher must assess each child's progress and write a report for the parents.*

—**assessment** noun the judgment that you make about a person or situation: *What's your assessment of the problem?*

**as.set** /'æset/ noun

someone or something that helps you to be successful: *Craig is an asset to the company, and I think we should be paying him more.*





**as·sign** /ə'saɪn/ **[Ac]** verb

to give someone a job to do: *The soldiers were assigned to guard the bank.*

**as·sign·ment** /ə'saɪnmənt/ **[Ac]** noun

a piece of work that someone has told you to do: *Did the teacher give you a homework assignment (=school work to do at home)? I The reporter was on assignment in China (=doing some work there).*

**as·sist** /ə'sɪst/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to help someone do something: *You can take extra classes to assist you in improving your English.* **SYNONYM** help

**as·sist·ance** /ə'sɪstəns/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

help for someone: *The government gives financial assistance (=help with money) to students who do not have enough money for college. I Can I be of any assistance (=can I help you)?* **SYNONYM** help

**as·sist·ant** /ə'sɪstənt/ **[Ac]** noun

someone whose job is to help a more important person with their work: *The managers have assistants to make appointments for them.*

**as·so·ci·ate**<sup>1</sup> /ə'souʃi,et/ verb, formal

**1** to make a connection between two things or ideas in your mind: *My grandfather died when I was away in California, so I'll always associate California with feeling sad.*

**2** to spend time with someone, either because you work in the same place or because you are friends with him or her: *When he went to New York, he began associating with artists and writers.*

**as·so·ci·ate**<sup>2</sup> /ə'souʃiɪt/ noun, formal

someone that you work with: *The research was done by Professor Gray and his associates. I a business associate (=someone you do business with)*

**as·sociate de'gree** noun

a DEGREE that you can get after two years of study at a college in the U.S.

**as·so·ci·a·tion** /ə,souʃi'eɪʃən/ noun

an organization of people who do the same type of work or are similar in another way: *the International Association of Firefighters*

**as·sort·ed** /ə'sɔrtɪd/ adjective

of various different types: *I got a bag of assorted candy because I wanted to have a variety.*

**as·sume** /ə'sʊm/ **[Ac]** verb

to think that something is probably true: *I assumed that they were sisters because they look so much alike.*

—**assumption** /ə'sʌmpʃən/ noun, formal  
the act of assuming that something is true

**as·sure** /ə'ʃʊr/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to tell someone something in order to take away any doubts he or she has: *The doctor assured me that I was fine and that I didn't need to worry.*

—**assurance** noun something that someone tells you to take away any doubts that you have

**as·ter·isk** /'æstərɪsk/ noun

a mark like a star (\*), used in writing. It usually shows that there is more information at the bottom of the page or in another place.

**asth·ma** /'æzmə/ noun

a medical problem that sometimes makes it difficult to breathe normally

—**asthmatic** /æz'mætɪk/ adjective having asthma or relating to asthma: *My son is asthmatic so he has trouble running long distances.*

**as·ton·ish** /ə'stʌnɪʃ/ verb

to surprise someone very much: *The team's win astonished everyone – no one expected it.*

—**astonished** adjective very surprised: *We were astonished by the mean things he said.*

—**astonishing** adjective very surprising

**as·ton·ish·ment** /ə'stʌnɪʃmənt/ noun, formal

great surprise: *Ken looked at her in astonishment when she took off her wig.*

**as·trol·o·gy** /ə'strɒlədʒi/ noun

the study of how the position of the stars and PLANETS may affect people's lives

—**astrologer** noun someone who tells people how astrology might affect their lives

**as·tro·naut** /'æstrə,nɒt/ noun

someone who travels in space: *There were three astronauts living on the space station.*

**as·tron·o·my** /ə'strɒnəmi/ noun

the science that studies stars, PLANETS, space, etc.: *Nick always liked stars, so he decided to study astronomy.*

—**astronomer** noun a scientist who studies astronomy



## A

**as·tute** /ə'stut/ *adjective, formal*

able to understand things quickly: *Brandon was an astute politician and able to deal with difficult situations quickly.*

—**astutely** *adverb*

**at** /ət; strong æt/ *preposition*

**1** in a particular place: *Meet me at my house. | John's at school but he'll be home in an hour. | Write your name at the top of the page.*

**2** used for saying when something happens: *The movie starts at 8:00. | At night, the streets are empty.*

**3** toward someone or something: *All the children were looking at the teacher. | Jake smiled at me.*

**4** used for talking about the age, price, speed, etc. where something happens: *I started school at age five. | You shouldn't be driving at this speed (=so fast). | I bought these jeans at half price (=half the normal price).*

**5** **good/bad, etc. at something** = able or not able to do something well: *Debbie is good at math, so she can figure it out for you.*

**6** **at lunch/dinner** = not working because you are eating lunch or dinner: *I didn't answer the phone because I was at lunch when you called.*

**7** used to say @, the symbol in email addresses

**ate** /eɪt/ *verb*

the past tense of EAT

**a·the·ist** /'eɪθiɪst/ *noun*

someone who does not believe that there is a god

—**atheism** *noun* the belief that there is no god

**ath·lete** /'æθlit/ *noun*

someone who is good at sports and often plays sports: *You can earn a lot of money as a professional athlete (=someone who is paid to play a sport).*

**ath·let·ic** /æθ'letɪk/ *adjective*

**1** relating to sports: *Basketball is part of the school's athletic program.*

**2** able to play sports very well: *Bobby was very athletic and played football, basketball, and baseball.*

**At·lan·tic** /ət'læntɪk/ *noun*

**the Atlantic** = the ocean that is between America and Europe: *The ship was sailing across the Atlantic from England to America.*

**at·las** /'ætləs/ *noun*

a book with maps in it: a *world atlas* (=with maps of every country in the world)

**ATM** *noun*

**Automated Teller Machine**

a machine, usually in a wall, that you can use to get money from your bank



**at·mos·phere**

/'ætməs,fɪr/ *noun*

**1** the feeling that a place or situation gives you: *The hotel has a friendly atmosphere. | Before the game, there was an atmosphere of excitement.*

**2** the air around the Earth or another PLANET: *Most of the Earth's atmosphere is nitrogen and oxygen.*

—**atmospheric** /,ætməs'ferɪk/ *adjective* relating to an atmosphere

**at·om** /'ætəm/ *noun*

the smallest part of a chemical substance that can exist alone: *Water is made of two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen.*

**a·tom·ic** /ə'təmɪk/ *adjective*

relating to atoms: *atomic particles* (=the small things that make up atoms) | *the atomic bomb* (=a very powerful bomb made by dividing atoms)

**a, tomic 'energy** also **atomic power** *noun*

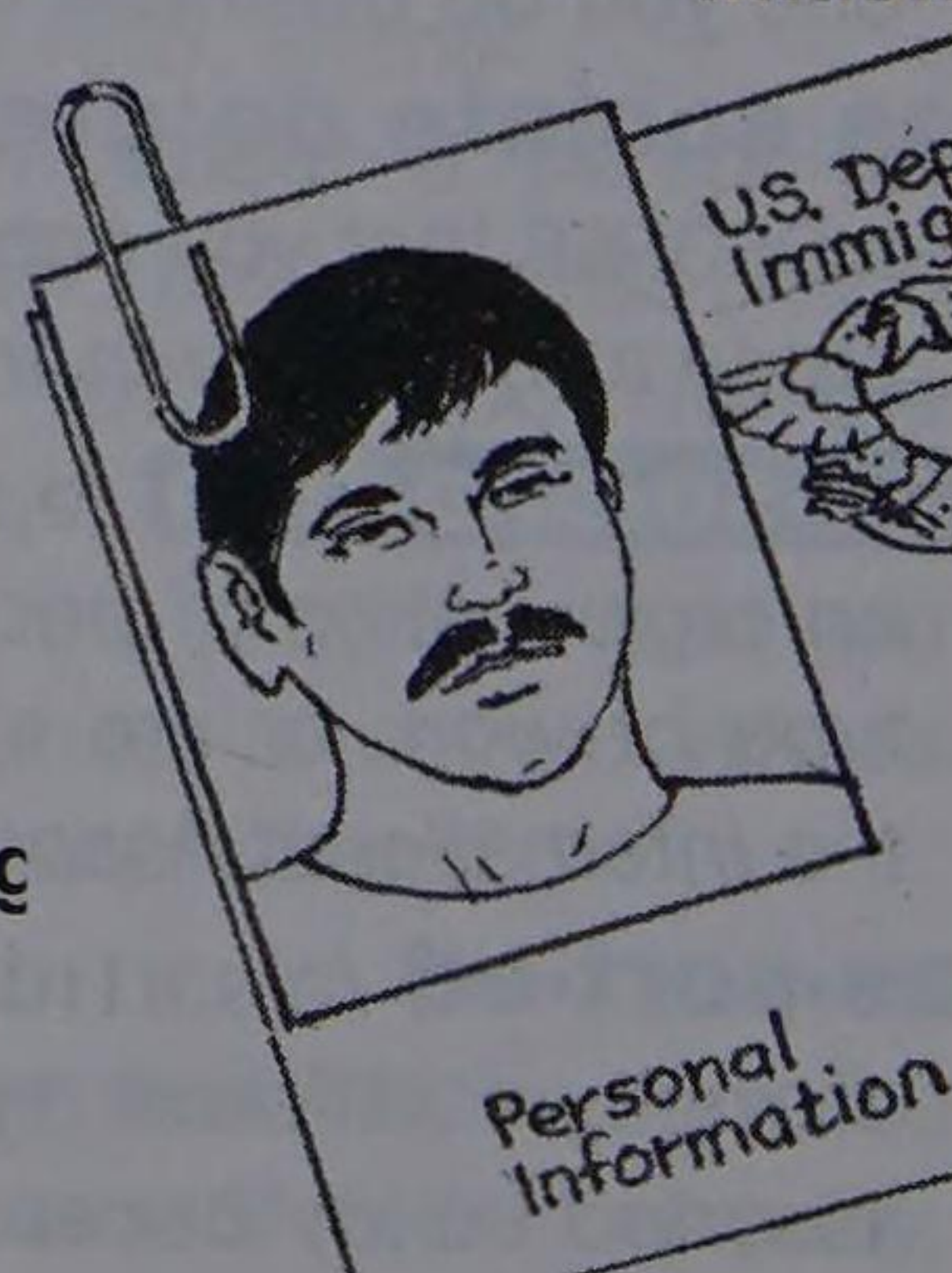
the power that comes from dividing atoms, and is used for making electricity

**at·tach** /ə'tætʃ/

**Ac** *verb*

**1** to fasten one thing to another: *Please attach a photograph to your application form.*

**2** **be attached to someone/something** = to feel that you like or love a person, animal, home, etc. that you have



**attach**



known for a long time: *People often get very attached to their pets.*

**3** to connect a document to an email in order to send them together: *I've attached a report of the meeting.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **attach** verb
- **attachment** noun
- **detach** verb

→ See Thesaurus box at **fasten**

**at·tach·ment** /ə'tætʃmənt/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a strong feeling that you like or love someone or something: *She felt a strong attachment to her youngest sister and was very protective of her.*

**2** a document, picture, etc. that you connect to an email and send with it: *I sent the pictures as an attachment.*

**at·tack**<sup>1</sup> /ə'tæk/ noun

an action using violence to try and hurt someone or something: *There were two attacks on policemen in the neighborhood.*

→ **heart attack**

—**attacker** noun someone who attacks another person

**attack**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to try to hurt someone: *The man attacked him with a knife.*

**2** if a group such as an army attacks a place, it fights the people in it and damages buildings: *The army attacked the city from the south.*

**3** to say bad things about someone or something: *All the newspapers attacked the President.* **SYNONYM** criticize

**at·tain** /ə'teɪn/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to achieve something you want: *He finally attained his dream of becoming a U.S. citizen.*

—**attainment** noun, formal the act of attaining something

**at·tempt**<sup>1</sup> /ə'tempt/ noun

the act of trying to do something difficult or new: *Several people had made an attempt to climb the mountain and failed. | My first attempt at skiing did not go very well.*

**attempt**<sup>2</sup> verb

to try to do something difficult or new: *A prisoner had attempted to escape by climbing the wall.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **try**<sup>1</sup>

**at·tend** /ə'tend/ verb, formal

**1** to be at a meeting, special event, etc.: *I am not able to attend the meeting next week.*

**2** attend school/college = to be a student at a school or college: *My daughter plans to attend college next Fall.*

**at·tend·ance** /ə'tendəns/ noun, formal  
the act of going regularly to school, a class, a meeting, etc.: *She has a very good attendance record in this class (=she goes to class regularly).*

**at·tend·ant** /ə'tendənt/ noun

someone whose job is to take care of customers on an airplane, at a gas station, etc.: *A friendly flight attendant brought us our drinks.*

**at·ten·tion** /ə'tenʃən/ noun

**1** the act of listening or looking carefully: *Now, class, I want you all to pay attention (=listen and look). | I was too far away, and I couldn't get the kids' attention (=make them listen and look).*

**2** care or treatment that you give to someone or something: *Some of the people needed medical attention (=treatment from a doctor).*

**at·ten·tive** /ə'tentɪv/ adjective

an attentive person listens and looks carefully: *Students who are attentive have higher test scores.*

**at·tic** /'ætɪk/ noun

a space or room under the roof of a house: *There are a lot of old toys up in the attic.*

**at·ti·tude** /'ætə,tud/ **[Ac]** noun

the way you think or feel about someone or something: *Later, my attitude toward him changed, and I began to like him more. | You'll work better if you have a positive attitude (=good feeling about your work).*

**at·tor·ney** /ə'tɔːni/ noun plural **attorneys**  
another word for a LAWYER: *My attorney advised me not to sign the contract.*

**at·tract** /ə'trækt/ verb

**1** to make someone like or feel interested in something: *The TV networks are trying to*



## A

attract more viewers to the show. | I didn't want to attract attention, so I stayed very quiet.

**2** if a place or thing attracts people or animals, they go to it because it is interesting, good, etc.: Disneyland attracts many visitors every year.

**3** be attracted to someone = to like someone in a sexual way

## WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **attract** verb
- **attraction** noun
- **attractive** adjective
- **unattractive** adjective

**at·trac·tion** /ə'trækʃən/ noun

**1** the feeling of liking someone or something very much: She felt a strong attraction to the handsome young man who had helped her.

**2** something that is interesting or fun to see or do: The statue is one of the city's main tourist attractions (=places that many tourists visit).

**3** a quality or feature that makes you like something: The main attraction of sailing is the feeling of freedom.

**at·trac·tive** /ə'træktɪv/ adjective

**1** pretty or nice to look at: She's a very attractive woman, and men are always trying to meet her. | They live in a neat, attractive house. **ANTONYM** unattractive

**2** something that is attractive is interesting or is something that you want: It's a very attractive offer, and I think I will probably accept it. | Advertising makes alcohol seem attractive to young people. **ANTONYM** unattractive

→ See Thesaurus box at **beautiful**

**a·typ·i·cal** /eɪ'tɪpɪkəl/ adjective, formal  
not typical or usual: He was an atypical teenager who loved listening to classical music. **SYNONYM** unusual; **ANTONYM** typical

**auc·tion** /'ɔ:kʃən/ noun

an event at which things are sold to the person who offers the most money: He bid \$500 for the painting at an auction.

—**auction** verb to sell something at an auction

—**auctioneer** /'ɔ:kʃə'nɪr/ noun a person whose job is to sell things at auctions

**au·di·ence** /'ɔ:diəns/ noun

the people watching or listening to a play, concert, speech, etc.: The audience stood up and clapped after she sang. | Several members of the audience left the theater in the middle of the play.

**au·di·o** /'ɔ:diu/ adjective

relating to recording and broadcasting sound: The audio equipment wasn't working and we couldn't hear anything.

**au·di·o·vis·u·al** /'ɔ:diu'vɪʒuəl/

adjective

showing and playing recorded pictures and sound: We sell audiovisual products such as CD-ROMs.

**au·dit** /'ɔ:dɪt/ verb

to officially examine a company's financial records to check that they are correct: The company's accounts were audited last year and no problems were found.

—**audit** noun an act of auditing something

—**auditor** noun someone who audits companies

**au·di·tion** /ɔ'dɪʃən/ verb

if a performer auditions, he or she does a short performance so that someone can decide if the performer is good enough to be in a play, show, etc.: He auditioned for a part in the Broadway show, "Oklahoma!," but he didn't get the part.

—**audition** noun an action of auditioning for something: She had an audition for a soap commercial.

**au·di·to·ri·um** /'ɔ:di'tɔ:riəm/ noun

a large building or room used for concerts or public meetings

**Au·gust** /'ɔ:gəst/ noun, written abbreviation **Aug.**

the eighth month of the year, between July and September: My birthday is on August 19th. | They sold their house in August. | It was very hot here last August. | Next August, we're going to Mexico.

**aunt** /ænt/ noun

the sister of your mother or father, or the wife of your uncle: My favorite aunt is my Aunt Jean.

**au·then·tic** /ɔ'thentɪk/ adjective

real: The restaurant is owned by Mexicans and serves authentic Mexican food. | The painting looks like it was done by Picasso,



but is it authentic?

—**authenticity** /ˌɔθən'tɪsəti/ *noun* the quality of being authentic

**au·thor** /'ɔθə/ **[Ac]** *noun*

someone who has written a book: *He is the author of three books about American history.*

**au·thor·i·tar·i·an** /ɔr,θɔrə'terɪən/ *adjective*

forcing people to obey strict rules: *The authoritarian government did not allow anyone to criticize the president.*

**au·thor·i·ta·tive** /ə'θɔrə'teɪv/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

an authoritative piece of writing is respected because the person who wrote it knows a lot about the subject: *She has written an authoritative book on China. Anyone who is truly interested in China should read it.*

**au·thor·i·ty** /ə'θɔrəti/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** the power that someone has because of his or her official position: *You're not my boss – you have no authority over me. | He does not have the authority to fire people.*

**2** the authorities = the people who are in charge of a particular place: *If you know anything about the accident, please report it to the authorities (=tell them about it).*

**3** someone who knows a lot about a subject: *Dr. Ballard is an authority on politics in Russia.*

**au·thor·ize** /'ɔθəraɪz/ *verb*

to give official permission for something: *I have not been authorized to give you any information. You'll have to talk to my supervisor.*

—**authorization** /ˌɔθərə'zeɪʃən/ *noun* official permission to do something: *You'll need authorization from the principal to do that.*

**au·to** /'ɔtə/ *adjective*

relating to cars: *the auto industry* (=all the companies that make cars)

**au·to·bi·og·ra·phy** /ˌɔtəbaɪ'ɑgrəfi/ *noun plural autobiographies*

a book that someone writes about his or her own life: *She has described her unhappy childhood in her autobiography.*

—**autobiographical** /ˌɔtəbaɪə'græfɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to autobiographies

**au·to·graph** /'ɔtəgræf/ *noun*

a famous person's name, written by him or her: *A fan came up and asked for the singer's autograph.*

—**autograph** *verb* to write your autograph on something

**au·to·mat·ed** /'ɔtəmeɪtɪd/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

using machines to do a job, rather than people: *The factory is almost completely automated, and there are not many people working there now.*

—**automation** /ˌɔtə'meɪʃən/ *noun* the use of machines to do a job, rather than people

**au·to·mat·ic** /ˌɔtə'mætɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** an automatic machine works by itself after being started: *When the fire started, an automatic alarm system made the train stop.*

**2** done without thinking: *Her scream was an automatic response to the shocking picture.*

**au·to·mat·i·cally** /ˌɔtə'mætɪkli/ *adverb*

**1** without thinking: *She automatically assumed that he was poor because his clothes were old and dirty.*

**2** if a machine does something automatically, it does it without being operated by someone: *The doors opened automatically as we walked into the building.*

**au·to·mo·bile** /ˌɔtəmə'bil/ *noun, formal*  
a car

**au·top·sy** /'ɔ,təpsi/ *noun plural autopsies*

an official examination of a dead body to discover the cause of death: *An autopsy showed that she had died of a heart attack.*

**au·tumn** /'ɔtəm/ *noun, formal*

the season before winter, when the leaves fall off the trees: *The tree's leaves turn red in the autumn.* **SYNONYM** fall

**a·vail·a·ble** /ə'veɪləbəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

if something is available, you can have it, buy it, or use it: *There is little food available to people in the region because there has been no rain. | There is a lot of money available for research. | The tools you need are readily available (=easy to get or find) at any hardware store.*

—**availability** /ə'veɪlə'bɪləti/ *noun* the state of being available: *The availability of guns in the U.S. is surprising to many foreigners.*



A

**av·a·lanche** /'ævə,læntʃ/ *noun*

a large amount of snow or rocks that falls down a mountain

**av·e·nue** also **Avenue** /'ævənu/ *noun*

written abbreviation **Ave.** used in the names of streets in a town or city: *He lives on Melrose Avenue.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **road**

**av·erage**<sup>1</sup> /'ævrɪdʒ/ *adjective*

**1** calculated by adding several numbers together and dividing the total by the number of numbers you added together: *The average age of the students is 20.*

**2** typical or ordinary: *How will these changes affect the average American worker?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **normal**

**average**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** the amount that you get by adding several numbers together and then dividing the total by the number of numbers you added together: *The average of 2, 9, and 10 is 7 (=because 2+9+10=21, divided by 3=7).*

**2 on average** = usually: *On average, women live longer than men.*

**3 above/below average** = higher or lower than the usual number or level: *Her test scores were well above average (=much higher than the usual level).*

—**average** *verb* to be or have a particular number as an average: *He is averaging 17 points a game.*

**a·vi·a·tion** /,eɪvi'eɪʃən/ *noun, formal*

the activity of flying or making aircraft: *The plane crash was one of the worst accidents in the history of aviation.*

**av·id** /'ævɪd/ *adjective*

doing something a lot, because you like doing it: *She is an avid reader – she always has a book with her.*

**av·o·ca·do** /,ævə'kɑdɒ/ *noun plural*

**avocados**

a fruit with a green or dark purple skin and a large seed, eaten as a vegetable

**a·void** /ə'vɔɪd/ *verb*

**1** to stay away from someone or something: *Paul's been avoiding me all day – I think he's mad at me.*

**2** to not do or be involved in something, usually something bad: *He had to stop the car suddenly to avoid hitting a child on a bike.*

—**avoidable** *adjective* able to be avoided: *an avoidable mistake*

—**avoidance** *noun* the act of avoiding something

**a·wait** /ə'weɪt/ *verb, formal*

to wait for something: *The soldiers made a camp and awaited their orders.*

**a·wake**<sup>1</sup> /ə'weɪk/ *adjective*

not asleep: *I have trouble staying awake in class if I go to bed too late the night before. | The kids were still wide awake (=completely awake) at midnight.*

**awake**<sup>2</sup> *verb* **awoke** /ə'wɒk/ **awoken**

/ə'wɒkən/ *formal*

to wake up: *I awoke as usual at 6 a.m.*

**a·ward**<sup>1</sup> /ə'wɔːd/ *noun*

a prize given to someone for doing something good: *Sam won an award for the best poem.* **SYNONYM** **prize**

**award**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to give someone an award: *He was awarded the Nobel Prize for physics.*

**a·ware** /ə'wer/ **Ac** *adjective*

if you are aware of a fact or situation, you know about it: *Are you aware of the dangers of smoking? | He was aware (that) someone was following him, and he started to walk faster.* **ANTONYM** **unaware**

—**awareness** *noun*: *They want to raise public awareness about the disease through advertisements and TV programs.*

**a·way** /ə'weɪ/ *adverb*

**1** if you go away, you move further from a person, place, or thing: *Go away! | He quickly moved away from the window.*

**2 3 miles/40 feet, etc. away** = used to say how far it is to a place, person, or thing: *The nearest city is five miles away. | I was standing about 10 feet away from him.*

**3** not at home, at work, or in school: *I'm sorry, Ms. Parker is away this week.*

**4 2 weeks/5 years, etc. away** = used to say how much time will pass before something happens: *Christmas is only a month away. Are you ready?*

**5** into a safe place: *It's time to clean up. Put all your toys away now, please.*

**awe** /ɔ/ *noun*

a feeling of great respect or admiration: *We were in awe of our father (=had great respect for him).*



**awe-some** /'ɔsəm/ adjective

**1** informal extremely good: *This pie's awesome! Can I have some more?*

**2** very great or impressive: *the awesome power of the huge waterfall*

**aw-ful** /'ɔfəl/ adjective

**1** very bad: *an awful movie* | *The weather was awful and we had to stay inside the whole week.* | *I'm going home because I feel awful (=I feel sick).*

**2** an **awful lot** informal = very much or a very great amount: *The shoes cost an awful lot of money, and I couldn't afford them.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **bad**

**aw-fully** /'ɔfli/ adverb, informal

very: *She looked awfully tired.*

**a-while** /ə'waɪl/ adverb

for a short time: *I waited awhile, then rang the bell again.*

**awk-ward** /'ɔkwəd/ adjective

**1** moving or behaving in a way that does not seem relaxed or comfortable: *I felt awkward and shy, and didn't want to talk to anyone.*

**2** embarrassing or difficult: *You're asking me to criticize my teacher, and that puts me in a very awkward position (=difficult situation).*

**3** difficult to use or handle: *The camera is so small that it is awkward to use.*

—**awkwardly** adverb: *They hugged awkwardly, as if they had never met before.*

—**awkwardness** noun

**awn-ing** /'ɔniŋ/ noun

a sheet of material, especially outside a store, that keeps the sun or the rain off

**a-woke** /ə'wouk/ verb

the past tense of AWAKE

**ax** also **axe** /æks/ noun

a tool with a metal blade on a long handle, used for cutting wood: *He was chopping up logs with an ax.*

**ax-is** /'æksɪs/ noun plural **axes** /'æksɪz/

**1** a line at the side or bottom of a GRAPH, where you put a series of numbers. The line that goes from top to bottom is the vertical or "y" axis, and the line that goes across from side to side is the horizontal or "x" axis.

**2** an imaginary line through the middle of something that is turning, for example the Earth

**ax-le** /'æksəl/ noun

the bar that connects two wheels on a vehicle



# Bb

## B /bi/ noun

**1** a GRADE that you get on a test or in a class for doing work that is good, but not excellent: *I got a B on the quiz, but I know I can get an A next time.*

**2** the seventh note in the musical SCALE of C, or the musical KEY based on this note

## B.A. noun

**Bachelor of Arts** a university degree in a subject such as History or Art: *He has a B.A. in English Literature.*

## ba·boon /bə'bu:n/ noun

a large monkey that lives in Africa and south Asia

## ba·by /'beɪbi/ noun plural babies

a very young child: *The baby's crying.* | *She had a baby (=gave birth to a baby) last year.* | *a baby girl*

→ See Thesaurus box at **child**

## 'baby ,carriage also 'baby ,buggy noun

a thing with wheels, in which a baby can lie and be pushed along

## ba·by·sit /'beɪbi,sɪt/ verb babysat /'beɪbi,sæt/ babysitting

to take care of a child while his or her parents are not at home: *Will you babysit for me tonight (=take care of my child tonight)?*

—**babysitting** noun the activity of taking care of a child while his or her parents are not at home: *Babysitting is a good way for teenagers to earn money.*

## ba·by·sit·ter /'beɪbi,sɪtə/ noun

someone who is paid to babysit a child: *The babysitter is coming at 6:00 because we need to leave by 6:15.*

## bach·e·lor /'bætʃələ/ noun

a man who has never been married: *He was 42, and still a bachelor.*

## 'bachelor's de,gree noun

a degree you get from a college or university after successfully completing four years of study: *I got my bachelor's degree from Hunter College.*

## back<sup>1</sup> /bæk/ noun

**1** the part of your body between your neck and your waist which is the other side from your chest and stomach: *His back was hurting from lifting boxes all morning.* | *I lay on my back, looking up at the clouds.*

**2** the part of something that is farthest from the front: *The answers to the questions are in the back of the book.* | *The pool's in back of (=behind) the house.* **ANTONYM** **front**

**3** **behind someone's back** = if you do something bad or unkind behind someone's back, you do it without him or her knowing: *You shouldn't say mean things about her behind her back.*

**4** **in the back of your mind** = a thought or feeling in the back of your mind is one that affects you, even though you are not thinking about it all the time: *There was always a slight fear that something bad was going to happen in the back of his mind.*

**5** **get off someone's back** informal = to stop annoying someone after telling them to do something again and again: *I'll do it in a minute. Just get off my back!*

## back<sup>2</sup> adverb

**1** to or in the place where someone or something was before: *Put the milk back in the refrigerator when you're done with it.* | *I'll be back home in an hour.*

**2** into or in the condition that someone or something was in before: *I woke up at 5 a.m. and couldn't get back to sleep.*

**3** in the direction that is behind you: *I looked back over my shoulder.*

**4** doing the same thing to someone that he or she has done to you: *Sarah smiled, and the boy smiled back.*

**5** away from someone or something: *She pulled back the curtains to let the sun in.*

**6** **back and forth** = in one direction and then in the opposite direction several times: *He walked back and forth across the floor.*

## back<sup>3</sup> verb

**1** also **back up** to move backward, or to make a vehicle move backward: *We slowly backed away from the snake.* | *She backed the car into the garage.*

**2** to support someone or something: *Several environmental groups backed the new law.*



## PHRASAL VERBS

**back down**

to admit that you are wrong or to not continue with what you intended to do, when people oppose you: *She was yelling at me, but she backed down when she realized she was wrong.*

**back off**

informal to stop telling someone what to do: *Back off! I don't need your advice.*

**back out**

to decide not to do something you promised to do: *They backed out of the deal at the last minute.*

**back someone or something up**

to say or show that what someone is saying is true: *There is no evidence to back up what he says.*

**back<sup>4</sup>** adjective

- 1** in or on the back of something: *The back door was open.* **SYNONYM** rear; **ANTONYM** front  
**2** a back street/road = a street or road that is not a main one

**back·ache** /'bækeɪk/ noun

a pain in your back: *She had a backache from moving furniture.*

**back·bone** /'bækboun/ noun

- 1** the line of bones down the middle of your back **SYNONYM** spine  
**2** courage and determination: *Peter doesn't have the backbone to be a good manager and make difficult decisions.*  
 → See picture on page A2

**back·break·ing** /'bæk,breɪkɪŋ/ adjective

backbreaking work is very difficult physical work

**back·ground** /'bækgraʊnd/ noun

- 1** someone's education, family, and experience: *We come from very different backgrounds; his family was wealthy and mine was poor. | He has a background in accounting, so I'm sure he can do the job.*  
**2** the area that is behind the main things or people in a picture: *Here's a picture of Mary with our house in the background.*  
**3** the conditions or past events relating to something: *I'll tell you a little more about the background of the problem so you'll understand it better.*

**back·log** /'bæklɒg/ noun

an amount of things that you have not yet been able to deal with: *The company has a huge backlog of orders, and customers have to wait months to receive their goods.*

**back·pack** /'bækpæk/ noun

a bag that you carry on your back  
 → See picture at bag

**back·pack·ing** /'bæk,pækɪŋ/ noun

the activity of walking or traveling carrying a backpack: *We went backpacking in the Rockies.*

—**backpacker** noun a walker or traveler with a backpack

**back·stage** /,bæk'steɪdʒ/ adverb

behind the stage in a theater: *He was allowed to go backstage after the concert to meet the band.*

**back·stroke** /'bækstroʊk/ noun

a way of swimming on your back, in which you move one arm up and then the other

**back·up** /'bækʌp/ noun

a copy or another thing that you can use if necessary: *Make a backup of any work you do on the computer in case the computer crashes. | I always have a backup plan for when something goes wrong.*

**back·ward<sup>1</sup>** /'bækwəd/ also **backwards** adverb

- 1** in the direction that is behind you: *She took a step backward away from me.*  
**ANTONYM** forward

**2** toward the beginning: *Count backward from 10 to 1.* **ANTONYM** forward

**3** with the back part in front: *You have your T-shirt on backward – turn it around.*

**backward<sup>2</sup>** adjective

- 1** toward the direction that is behind you: *She left without a backward glance.* **ANTONYM** forward  
**2** developing more slowly than others: *It was a backward area with no running water or telephones.*

**back·yard** also **back yard** /'bæk,yard/ noun

the area of land behind a house: *He was sitting under a tree in the backyard.*

**ba·con** /'beɪkən/ noun

meat from the back or sides of a pig which



has been put in salt or smoke: *bacon and eggs*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meat**

B

**bac·te·ri·a** /bæk'tɪriə/ plural noun  
singular **bacterium** /-rɪəm/ formal  
very small living things that sometimes cause disease: *Cook meat well to kill any bacteria.*

**bad** /bæd/ adjective **worse** /wɜːs/ **worst** /wɜːst/

**1** not nice or enjoyable: *I'm sorry, but I have some bad news.* | *There was a bad smell coming from his gym shoes.* **ANTONYM** **good**

#### THESAURUS: bad

**awful** very bad: *The weather was awful.*

**terrible** very bad or serious: *The food was terrible.* | *a terrible accident*

**horrible** very bad or upsetting: *I had a horrible weekend. Everything went wrong.*

**lousy** informal very bad in quality: *It was a lousy movie.*

**2** not able to do something well: *a bad driver* | *Brian is really bad at sports – he can't even catch a ball.* **ANTONYM** **good**

**3** of low quality: *Her handwriting is so bad I can't read it.* **ANTONYM** **good**

**4** damaging or harmful: *Smoking is bad for you.* **ANTONYM** **good**

**5** serious or severe: *He couldn't go out because he had a bad cold.* | *The problem is getting worse.*

**6** morally wrong or evil: *I'm not a bad person, but I have made some mistakes.* **ANTONYM** **good**

**7 too bad** informal = used to say that you are sorry about a sad or unpleasant situation: *It's too bad you can't stay any longer.*

**8 feel bad** = to feel ashamed or sorry about something: *I felt bad about lying to him.*

**9 not bad** informal = acceptable or fairly good: *The pay isn't bad and I enjoy the work.*

**10 a bad time** = a time that is not appropriate or convenient: *Is this a bad time to call?*

**11** food that is bad is not safe to eat because it is not fresh: *The milk has gone bad.*

**badge** /bædʒ/ noun

a small piece of metal or plastic that you wear or carry to show people that you work for a particular organization: *a police badge*

**bad·ly** /'bædli/ adverb **worse** /wɜːs/ **worst** /wɜːst/

**1** in a way that is not good or satisfactory: *The book is badly written and difficult to understand.* | *The team played very badly and lost the game.* **ANTONYM** **well**

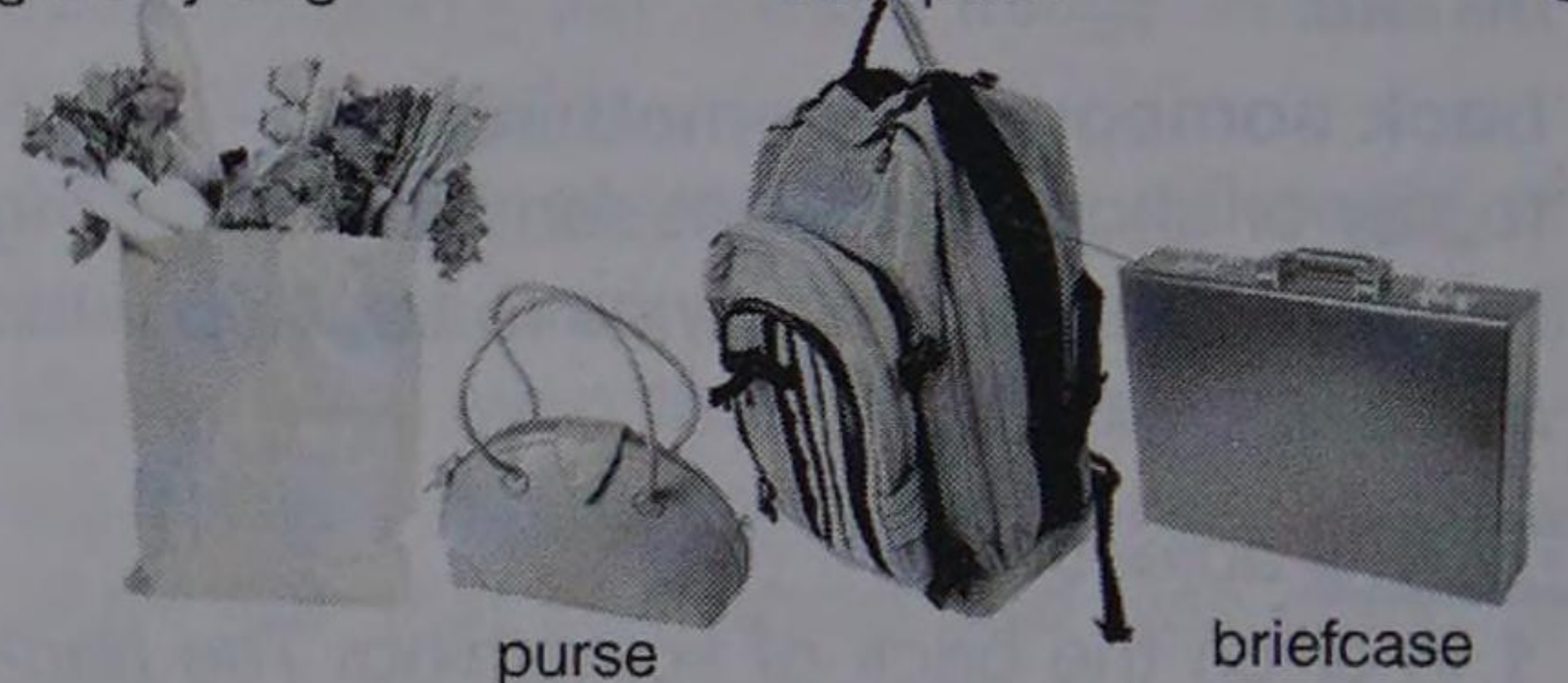
**2** very severely: *Our house was badly damaged during the storm.*

**baf·fled** /'bæfəld/ adjective, formal  
if you are baffled by something, you cannot understand it: *She was baffled by his strange reaction.*

grocery bag

backpack

bag



purse

briefcase

**bag** /bæg/ noun

a container made of paper, plastic, cloth, or leather: *a bag of potatoes* | *She was carrying two grocery bags full of food.*

**ba·gel** /'beɪɡəl/ noun

a type of bread that is shaped like a ring

→ See picture at **bread**

**bag·gage** /'bæɡɪdʒ/ noun

the bags that you take with you when you travel on an airplane, train, or bus: *We saw the baggage being taken off the plane.*

**bag·gy** /'bæɡi/ adjective

baggy clothes are big and loose **ANTONYM** **tight**

**bail<sup>1</sup>** /beɪl/ noun

money left with a court of law so that someone does not have to stay in prison until his or her TRIAL: *He was released on bail (=let out of prison when bail was paid).*

**bail<sup>2</sup>** verb

#### PHRASAL VERB

**bail someone out**

to help a person or organization get out of trouble: *Young people often expect their parents to bail them out by paying the money they owe.*

**bait** /beɪt/ noun

food that you use to attract fish or animals so that you can catch them: *We used worms for bait, but we didn't catch any fish.*



**bake** /beɪk/ verb

to cook something such as bread or cakes in an OVEN: *Bake the rolls for 15 minutes.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cook**<sup>1</sup>

**bak·er·y** /'beɪkəri/ noun plural **bakeries**

a place where bread, cakes, etc. are made or sold

—**baker** noun someone whose job is making bread, cakes, etc.

**bal·ance**<sup>1</sup> /'bæləns/ noun

**1** the ability to stand or walk steadily, without falling: *When the bus stopped suddenly, she almost lost her balance (=was unable to stay standing). | He hit me again when I was still off balance (=not standing steadily) and I fell down.*

**2** a situation in which different things are in the right amounts or have the right amount of importance: *He was finding it difficult to strike a balance between family and work (=make sure that they had equal importance in his life).*

**3 on balance** = used when telling someone your opinion after considering all the facts: *On balance, I'd say it was a fair decision.*

**balance**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to put or have something in a steady position, or to be in a steady position: *She was balancing a plate of food on her knees and trying not to spill anything. | He turned slowly, trying to balance on one foot.*

**2** to make sure that different things are in the right amounts or have the right amount of importance: *My mother was trying to balance her children's needs with the needs of her parents.*

**bal·anced** /'bælənst/ adjective

including different things in the right amounts: *You should eat a healthy balanced diet with plenty of protein, fruits, and vegetables.*

**bal·co·ny** /'bælkəni/ noun plural**balconies**

**1** a structure on the outside of a building, above ground level, where people can stand or sit: *She stood on the balcony looking up at the mountains.*

**2** the seats upstairs in a theater

**bald** /bɔld/ adjective

if you are bald, you have little or no hair on your head: *He was going bald (=becoming*

*bald) and decided to shave off all of his hair.*

**'bald ,eagle** noun

a large North American bird with a white head and neck: *The bald eagle is a symbol of the United States.*

**bale** /beɪl/ noun

a large amount of something such as paper or HAY that is tied tightly together: *a bale of hay*

**ball** /bɔl/ noun

**1** a round object that you throw, hit, or kick in some games: *tennis balls | He threw the ball to Michael.*

**2** something made into a round shape: *a ball of string*

**3** in baseball, a time when a ball is thrown and the hitter does not try to hit it because it is not in the correct area

**4 be on the ball informal** = to be able to think or act quickly: *We need an assistant who's really on the ball.*

**5** a large important party at which people dance

**bal·le·ri·na** /,bælə'rinə/ noun

a woman who dances in ballets: *She stood on her toes like a ballerina.*

**bal·let** /bæ'leɪ/ noun

a performance in which a story is told using dancing and music, without words: *We went to see the ballet "Swan Lake." | a ballet dancer*

**bal·loon** /bə'lun/ noun

a small colored rubber bag that can be filled with air or gas: *Before my birthday party, we blew up lots of balloons (=blew air into them).*

**bal·lot** /'bælət/ noun

a piece of paper that is used for voting: *Today voters will be casting their ballots (=voting) for a new representative.*

**ball·park** /'bɔl,park/ noun, informal

a place for playing baseball

**ball·point pen** /,bɔlpoint 'pen/ noun

a pen with a small ball at the end that rolls ink onto the paper

**ball·room** /'bɔlrum/ noun

a large room for formal dances: *A band was playing in the ballroom.*

**ba·lo·ney** /bə'louni/ noun, informal

**1** something that is said that is silly or not true: *"Things are getting better. "That's*



## B

*baloney!*" (=said when you think something is silly or not true) **SYNONYM nonsense**

**2** another spelling of BOLOGNA: *a baloney sandwich*

**bam·boo** /ˌbæm'bu/ *noun*

a tall plant with hard hollow stems, often used for making things such as furniture, especially in Asia

**ban<sup>1</sup>** /bæn/ *noun*

an official order saying that something is not allowed: *Should Congress lift the ban on (=end it) some illegal drugs?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **forbid**

**ban<sup>2</sup>** *verb banned, banning*

to say officially that something is not allowed: *They want to ban chemical weapons. | He was banned from the club after the fight.*

**ba·nan·a** /bə'nænə/ *noun*

a long curved fruit with a yellow skin

→ See picture on page A13

**band** /bænd/ *noun*

**1** a group of musicians that plays popular music: *He used to play in a rock band.*

**2 formal** a small group of people who do something together: *They were attacked by a band of armed men.* **SYNONYM group**

**3** a narrow piece of something which goes around something else to hold it or decorate it: *She ties her hair back with a rubber band.*

**ban·dage** /'bændɪdʒ/ *noun*

a long piece of cloth that you put around a wound: *Her head was wrapped in a bloody bandage.*

—**bandage** *verb* to put a bandage around a wound: *A nurse bandaged my injured leg.*

**'Band-Aid** *noun, trademark*

a small piece of material that you stick over a small cut on your skin

**ban·dan·na** also **bandana** /bæn'dænə/ *noun*

a square piece of colored cloth that you wear around your head or neck

**ban·dit** /'bændɪt/ *noun*

someone who robs people who are traveling: *The train was attacked by bandits.*

**bang<sup>1</sup>** /bæŋ/ *verb*

**1** to make a loud noise by hitting something: *He banged on the door with his hands.*

**2** to hit a part of your body on something by

accident: *I banged my knee on the corner of the bed.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hit<sup>1</sup>**

**bang<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a sudden loud noise like the noise made by a gun: *The door slammed shut with a bang.*

**bangs** /bæŋz/ *plural noun*

hair that is cut short across your FOREHEAD

**ban·is·ter** /'bænəstə/ *noun*

a row of wooden posts with a BAR along the top that you hold onto when you use stairs

**ban·jo** /'bændʒou/ *noun plural banjos*

a musical instrument like a GUITAR, but with a circular main part

→ See picture on page A21

**bank<sup>1</sup>** /bæŋk/ *noun*

**1** the company or place where you can keep your money or borrow money: *I went to the bank to get some money. | I don't have much money in the bank.*

**2** the land along the side of a river or lake: *The city is on the banks of the Hudson River.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shore**

**bank<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to use a particular bank: *She banks with First National.*

**'bank ac, count** *noun*

an agreement with a bank that allows you to keep money there and take money out: *How much money do you have in your bank account?* **SYNONYM account**

**bank·er** /'bæŋkə/ *noun*

someone who has an important job in a bank

**bank·ing** /'bæŋkɪŋ/ *noun*

the business of banks, which involves lending and borrowing money

**bank·rupt** /'bæŋkrʌpt/ *adjective*

unable to pay your debts, so that you have to close your business: *Many small stores have gone bankrupt because they cannot compete with the big supermarkets.*

—**bankruptcy** *noun* a situation in which a person or company is bankrupt

**ban·ner** /'bænə/ *noun*

a long piece of cloth with writing on it: *The protesters were carrying banners that said "Peace Now."*



**ban·quet** /'bæŋkwɪt/ *noun*

a formal meal for many people: *There was a formal banquet at the conference with all kinds of food.*

**bap·tism** /'bæptɪzəm/ *noun*

a Christian ceremony in which someone is touched or covered with water, in order to become a member of a Christian church

—**baptize** /'bæptɑɪz/ *verb* to put water on someone in a religious ceremony, to make that person a member of a Christian church. When babies are baptized, they are also officially given their name

**bar<sup>1</sup>** /bar/ *noun*

**1** a place that sells alcoholic drinks and where you can stay to drink them: *We went out for a drink at a bar.*

**2** a COUNTER where alcoholic drinks are served: *He was standing at the bar getting beer.*

**3** a small block of something: *a bar of soap | a candy bar*

**4** a long narrow piece of metal or wood: *an iron bar*

**5** **behind bars** = in prison  
→ **snack bar**

**bar<sup>2</sup>** *verb* barred, barring

**1** to officially stop someone from doing something: *Photographers are barred from taking pictures inside the courtroom.*

**2** to put a piece of wood or metal across a door or window to stop people from going in or out: *She barred the door and called the police.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **forbid**

**bar·be·cue** /'bɑːbi,kju/ *noun*

a meal or party where you cook food outside: *We're having a barbecue on Saturday and making hotdogs and hamburgers.*

SYNONYM **cookout**

→ See Thesaurus box at **meal**

**barbed 'wire** *noun*

wire with short sharp points on it, used for making fences: *The prison was surrounded by high barbed wire fences.*

**bar·ber** /'bɑːbər/ *noun*

a man whose job is to cut men's hair

—**barbershop** *noun* a store where men's hair is cut

**bare** /ber/ *adjective*

**1** if part of someone's body is bare, it is not covered by clothes: *The children were running around in bare feet.*

**2** if a room or cupboard is bare, it has nothing in it: *The cupboard was bare and she had nothing to feed her children.*

SYNONYM **empty**

**3** without any decoration: *bare white walls*

SYNONYM **plain**

**4** basic and with nothing extra: *We only had enough money for the bare necessities (=the most basic things that you need to live).*

**bare·foot** /'berfʊt/ *adjective, adverb*

not wearing any shoes or socks: *We walked barefoot in the sand.*

**bare·ly** /'berli/ *adverb*

only just: *She was very sick and barely able to walk.*

**bar·gain<sup>1</sup>** /'bɑːɡən/ *noun*

something that is surprisingly cheap and is much less than its usual price: *I got the car for \$2,000, which was a real bargain.*

**bargain<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to try to persuade someone to lower the price of something: *I had to bargain with him to get a good price.*

**barge** /bɑːdʒ/ *noun*

a boat with a flat bottom, used for carrying goods on a CANAL or river: *The coal was taken up the river by barge.*

**bark<sup>1</sup>** /bɑːk/ *verb*

if a dog barks, it makes a short loud sound: *The dog barked at us as we walked past.*

**bark<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** the sound a dog makes

**2** the outer covering of a tree

**bar·ley** /'bɑːli/ *noun*

a grain used for making food and alcohol

**barn** /bɑːn/ *noun*

a large building on a farm for storing crops or keeping animals in

**bar·rel** /'bærəl/ *noun*

**1** a large container with curved sides and a flat top and bottom: *a barrel of beer*

**2** the part of a gun that the bullets are shot through

**bar·ren** /'bærən/ *adjective, formal*

land that is barren cannot grow plants: *a barren desert*



**bar·ri·cade** /'bærə,keɪd/ *noun*

something that is put across a road to prevent people from going past: *Police set up barricades on all the roads out of the city to try to catch the men.*

**bar·ri·er** /'bæriə/ *noun*

**1** a problem that stops people from doing something: *A lack of education is a barrier to many good jobs.*

**2** a fence or wall that stops people from entering a place: *The police put up barriers to hold back the crowds.*

**bar·ri·o** /'bæri,ou/ *noun* plural **barrios**

an area in a city where many poor Spanish-speaking people live: *He grew up in the barrio and didn't learn English until he went to school.*

**bar·tend·er** /'bɑː,tendə/ *noun*

someone whose job is to make and serve drinks in a bar

**base<sup>1</sup>** /beɪs/ *noun*

**1** the lowest part or surface of something: *The maker's name is written on the base of the clock.*

**2** the main place where someone works or lives: *The company's base is in Atlanta.*

**3** a place where people in the army, navy, etc. live and work: *an army base*

**4** one of the four places that a player must touch in order to score a point in baseball: *He ran to second base.*

**base<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to have your main office, home, etc. in a particular place: *The company is based in New York.*

**PHRASAL VERB****base something on something**

**1** to use something as the model for developing something else: *They based the movie on the book by Dan Brown.*

**2** to use something as a reason for doing something: *She based her decision on her experience as a teacher.*

**base·ball** /'beɪsbɔːl/ *noun*

**1** a game in which two teams try to score points by hitting a ball and running around four bases: *I used to play baseball when I was in high school.*

**2** the ball used in this game

→ See picture on page A24

**base·ment** /'beɪsmənt/ *noun*

the part of a building that is below the level of the ground: *We keep our bikes in the basement during the winter.*

**bas·es** /'beɪsɪz/ *noun*

the plural of BASIS

**bash** /bæʃ/ *noun*

informal a party: *We're having a big bash for his birthday.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **party**

**bash·ful** /'bæʃfəl/ *adjective*

shy and embarrassed, and not wanting to talk to other people: *When she asked him to dance, he gave her a bashful smile.* **SYNONYM**

**shy**

→ See Thesaurus box at **shy**

**ba·sic** /'beɪsɪk/ *adjective*

**1** relating to the simplest and most important parts of something: *The basic problem is that we don't have enough money. | He doesn't understand the basic principles of mathematics.*

**2** very simple and not advanced: *The equipment in the hospital was very basic.*

→ **basics**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **basic** *adjective*

→ **base** *verb*

→ **base** *noun*

→ **basis** *noun*

→ **basically** *adverb*

→ **the basics** *noun*

**ba·si·cally** /'beɪsɪkli/ *adverb*

**1** informal used when you are giving a simple explanation of a situation: *Basically, he needs to lose weight.*

**2** in the most important ways, without considering small details: *The two pictures are basically the same; I had to look carefully to see any differences.*

**basics** /'beɪsɪks/ *noun*

**the basics** = the most important facts or things that you need to know: *My mom taught me the basics of cooking.*

**ba·sil** /'beɪzəl/ *noun*

a plant with sweet-smelling green leaves, used in Italian cooking

**ba·sin** /'beɪsən/ *noun*

**1** a large area of land that is lower in the middle than at the edges: *the Amazon basin*



**2** a large bowl, especially one for water: *She poured the water into a basin and used it to wash her face.*

**ba-sis** /'beɪsəs/ noun plural **bases** /'beɪsɪz/

**1** on a daily/weekly/monthly, etc. basis  
formal = every day, week, month, etc.: *We meet here on a daily basis, usually at 10.*

**2** on the basis of something = because of a particular fact or situation: *People are sometimes rejected for jobs on the basis of their age (=because they are too young or too old).*

**3** the information or ideas from which something develops: *The idea of "less government" was the basis of his campaign for president.*

**bas-ket** /'bæskɪt/ noun

**1** a container made of thin pieces of wood, plastic, or wire, used for carrying or holding things: *They took the food to the park in a picnic basket. | a shopping basket*

**2** a round metal ring with a net hanging off it, used when playing basketball: *Try to shoot the ball through the basket.*

**bas-ket-ball** /'bæskɪt,bɒl/ noun

**1** a game between two teams, in which each team tries to throw a ball through a net

**2** the ball used in this game  
→ See picture on page A24

**bass** /beɪs/ noun

**1** also **bass guitar** a GUITAR that plays low notes

**2** another word for a DOUBLE BASS  
→ See picture on page A21

**bas-oon** /bə'sun/ noun

a very long wooden musical instrument with a low sound that you play by blowing into it  
→ See picture on page A21

**bat**<sup>1</sup> /bæt/ noun

**1** a long wooden stick used for hitting the ball in baseball

**2** an animal with wings that flies at night

**bat**<sup>2</sup> verb **batted**, **batting**

to hit a ball with a bat: *The crowd was silent as he came up to bat.*

**batch** /bætʃ/ noun

a group of things or people that are made, arrive, or are dealt with at the same time: *I baked another batch of cookies.*

**bath** /bæθ/ noun plural **baths** /bæðz/

if you take a bath, you wash your body while sitting in a BATHTUB: *The kids take a bath almost every day.*

**bathe** /beɪð/ verb, formal

to wash yourself or someone else in a bath

**bathing suit** /'beɪðɪŋ ,sut/ noun

a piece of clothing that you wear for swimming: *She was wearing a blue one-piece bathing suit.*

**bath-robe** /'bæθroub/ noun

a loose piece of clothing that ties around your waist that you wear after you take a bath or SHOWER

**bath-room** /'bæθrum/ noun

a room where there is a toilet and usually a bathtub or a SHOWER: *Mommy, I have to go to the bathroom! (=I want to use the toilet)*

**bath-tub** /'bæθtʌb/ noun

a long container that you fill with water and wash yourself in

→ See picture on page A11

**bat-ter**<sup>1</sup> /'bætə/ noun

**1** a mixture of flour, eggs, milk, etc. that is used for making cakes and similar things: *pancake batter*

**2** the person who is trying to hit the ball in baseball

**batter**<sup>2</sup> verb

to hit someone or something very hard many times: *The waves battered against the rocks.*

**bat-tered** /'bætəd/ adjective

old and not in good condition: *a battered old guitar*

**bat-ter-y** /'bætəri/ noun plural **batteries**

an object that provides electricity for a radio, camera, toy, etc.: *The battery in the camera is dead (=it has no power left).*

→ See picture on page A28

**bat-tle**<sup>1</sup> /'bætl/ noun

**1** a fight between two armies or groups, especially during a war: *Hundreds of soldiers were killed in the battle.*

**2** a situation in which people are arguing or struggling to win or achieve something: *He finally won his case after a long legal battle. | She died last year after a long battle with cancer.*



**B** **battle**<sup>2</sup> verb

to try hard to achieve something or deal with something: *Doctors battled for six hours to save his life.*

**bat·tle·ship** /'bætlʃɪp/ noun

a very large ship used in wars

**bawl** /bɔːl/ verb, informal

to cry loudly: *The baby was bawling in the back of the car.*

**bay** /beɪ/ noun

an area of an ocean or lake that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land: *She swam across the bay in 30 minutes. | the San Francisco Bay*

**B.C.**

**Before Christ** used when a year came before the birth of Jesus Christ: *He was killed in 44 B.C.*

**be** /bi/ verb was, were, been

**1** used to describe and give information about people or things: *The room was blue and white. | My mother is a teacher.*

**2** used with the -ing form of another verb when saying that something is happening now: *I am painting a picture. | It's raining.*

**3** used with the -ing form of another verb when saying that you have made plans to do something in the future: *We are going to Hawaii on vacation next month.*

**4** used with the past participle of verbs when saying that something happens to someone or something: *The house was built 50 years ago.*

**5 there is/are/were, etc.** = used when saying that something exists or happens: *There was a beautiful view from the top of the mountain. | There are three apples in the kitchen.*

**6 be good/be careful, etc.** = used when telling someone to behave in a particular way: *Be careful! The knife's very sharp.*

**7 someone is to do something formal** = used when saying strongly that someone must do something: *You are to be home by 10 o'clock.*

**beach** /bitʃ/ noun

an area of sand or small stones at the edge of an ocean or a lake: *Do you want to go to the beach? | We spent the day at the beach swimming and lying in the sun.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shore**

**bea·con** /'bikən/ noun

a light or electronic signal used to guide boats, airplanes, etc.

**bead** /bid/ noun

a small ball of plastic, wood, glass, etc. used for making jewelry: *The necklace was made of colored glass beads.*

**beak** /bik/ noun

the hard pointed mouth of a bird: *The bird held a worm in its beak.*

**beak·er** /'bikə/ noun

a glass cup with straight sides used in chemistry for measuring liquids

**beam**<sup>1</sup> /bim/ noun

**1** a line of light or energy: *A beam of light from his flashlight shone through the window.*

**2** a long piece of wood or metal used when building houses, bridges, etc.: *The roof was supported by thick wooden beams.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **smile**<sup>1</sup>

**beam**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to smile in a happy way: *He beamed proudly after his son scored the goal.*

**2** to send out light, radio signals, or television signals: *The TV shows are beamed across the world by satellite.*

**bean** /bin/ noun

**1** a seed or a seed container of a plant that you cook and eat as a vegetable: *green beans*

**2** a dried seed that is made into a powder in order to make drinks such as coffee and some foods: *coffee beans*

→ See picture on page A12

**bear**<sup>1</sup> /ber/ noun

a large strong animal with thick fur and sharp CLAWS: *Bears live in the woods near our*



house.

→ **polar bear, teddy bear**

**bear<sup>2</sup>** verb bore /bɔr/ borne /bɔrn/

**1** formal to accept something that is very painful or very difficult: *She didn't think she could bear the pain any longer.* **SYNONYM** stand

**2** bear the responsibility/blame for something formal = to be responsible for something bad that has happened: *The company must bear responsibility for the accident.*

**3** bear left/right = to turn toward the left or right

**4** formal bear in mind = to consider a fact when you are deciding what to do or when making a judgment: *Bear in mind that he is only 8 years old, so he will not understand everything.* **SYNONYM** remember

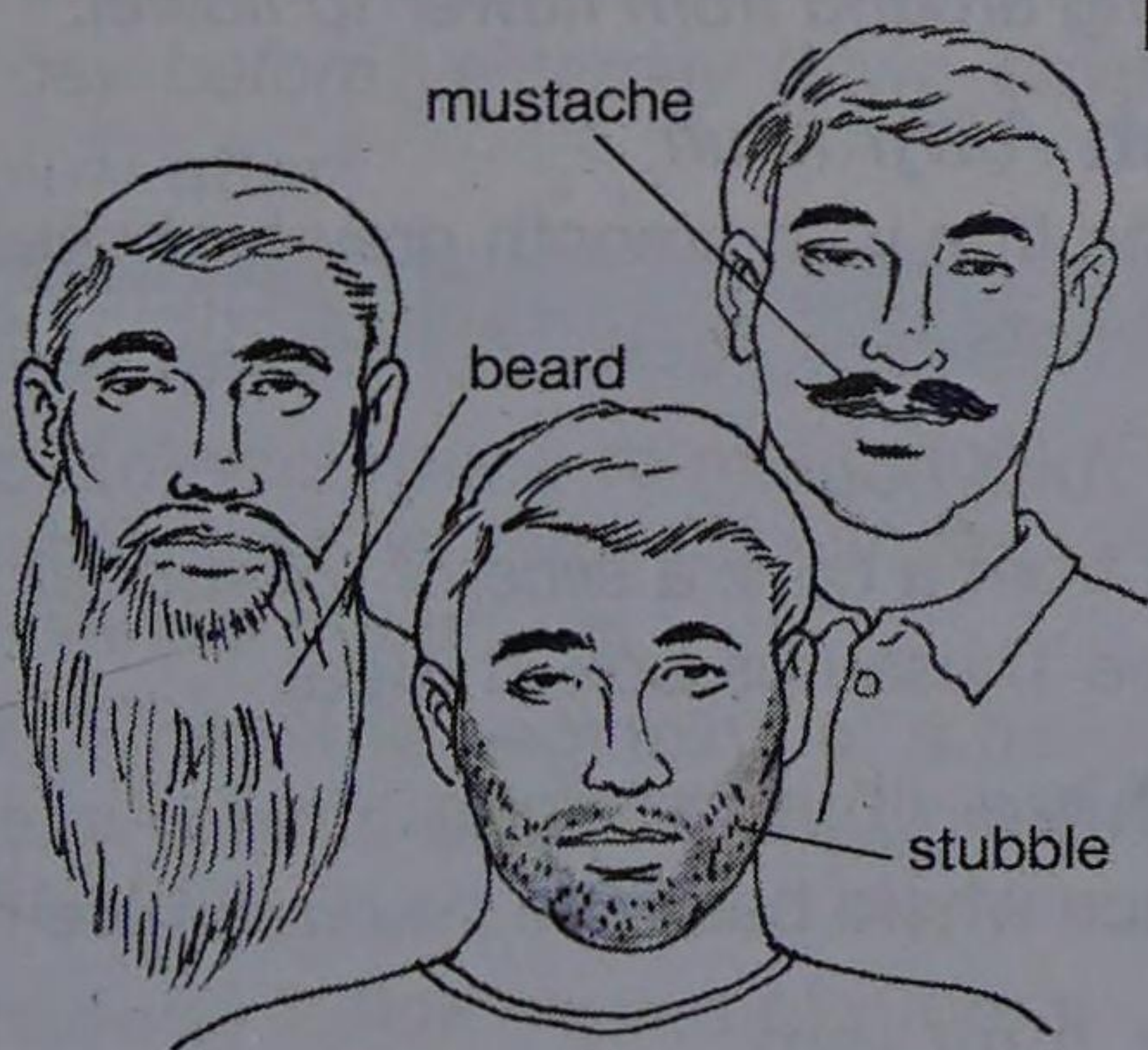
**5** bear the weight of something = to support the weight of something: *The ice wasn't thick enough to bear his weight.* **SYNONYM** hold

**6** formal to bring or carry something: *They came bearing gifts.*

**bear·a·ble** /'berəbəl/ adjective

if a situation is bearable, it is difficult but you can accept it: *His friendship was the only thing that made my life bearable.*

beard



**beard** /bɪrd/ noun

the hair that grows on a man's chin: *The old man had a long white beard.*

**beast** /bɪst/ noun, formal

an animal, especially one that is dangerous or strange: *The jungle was full of all kinds of wild beasts.*

**beat<sup>1</sup>** /bit/ verb beat, beaten /'bitn/

**1** to get more points, votes, etc. than other people in a game or competition: *New York*

*beat Boston 4-1. | She often beats me at tennis.*

**2** to hit someone or something many times: *My father used to beat me with a big stick. | The waves were beating against the rocks.*

**3** to make a regular sound: *She could feel her heart beating.*

**4** to mix foods together quickly using a fork or a kitchen tool: *Beat the eggs.*

**5** beat it! informal = an impolite way to tell someone to leave immediately

→ See Thesaurus box at **hit<sup>1</sup>, mix<sup>1</sup>, win<sup>1</sup>**

→ See picture on page A14

**beat<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the pattern of sounds in a piece of music: *I could hear the beat of the music from the party downstairs.*

**2** one of a series of regular movements or sounds: *His heart rate went up to 120 beats a minute.*

**beau·ti·ful** /'byutəfəl/ adjective

**1** very nice to look at. You use beautiful especially about a woman, a place, or an object: *She is a very beautiful woman. | The views from the top of the mountain were beautiful. | a beautiful Chinese vase*

**THESAURUS: beautiful**

**attractive** used about a man or woman who is nice to look at: *She's a very attractive woman.*

**good-looking** used about anyone who is nice to look at: *a tall good-looking man*

**beautiful** used about a woman, girl, or baby who is very nice to look at: *Elena looked beautiful in her blue dress.*

**pretty** used about a girl or woman who is nice to look at: *a pretty girl with long brown hair*

**handsome** used about a man or boy who is nice to look at: *Dad looked really handsome in his suit.*

**cute** used about a baby, child, or young person who is nice to look at: *I think Todd's really cute. | What a cute baby!*

**2** a beautiful song, book, poem, etc. gives you a lot of pleasure: *The music was beautiful.*

—**beautifully** adverb in a way that looks or sounds very good: *He plays the piano beautifully.*



**beau·ty** /'byuti/ noun plural **beauties**

**1** the quality of being beautiful to look at: *The mountains in Yosemite are famous for their beauty.* | *She was a woman of great beauty.*

**2** the quality that a very good poem, painting, piece of music, etc. has when it gives you a lot of pleasure: *the beauty of his music*

**bea·ver** /'bivə/ noun

a North American animal that has thick fur and a wide flat tail and lives in houses made of sticks in the water: *The beavers are building a dam in the stream.*

**be·came** /bi'keim/ verb

the past tense of BECOME

**be·cause** /bi'kɔz/ conjunction

used when you are giving the reason for something: *She was tired because she had been standing up all day.* | *The game was canceled because of the rain.*

**be·come** /bi'kʌm/ verb **became** /bi'keim/, **become**

**1** to begin to be something: *The weather is becoming cooler as fall begins.* | *It became clear that she was lying.*

**USAGE: become**

**Become**, **get**, and **go** can all mean “to begin to be something,” but they are used in different ways.

**Become** is used in both written and spoken English: *He's becoming a very good tennis player.* | *The area has become popular with mountain bikers.*

**Get** and **go** are less formal than **become**, and are used more often in spoken English: *I got very hungry.* | *Have you gone crazy?*

**Become** can be used in front of an adjective (=word that describes something) or a noun: *It became clear that Scott was not doing his work.* | *The noise from the airport is becoming a problem.*

**Get** and **go** are used only in front of an adjective: *It's getting dark.* | *Beethoven went deaf when he was 40 years old.*

**2** to start to have a job or position: *She wants to become a doctor.* | *Bush became president in 2000.*

**bed** /bed/ noun

**1** a piece of furniture for sleeping on: *I usually go to bed around ten o'clock.* | *She*

*was lying in bed reading.* | *Go upstairs, it's time for bed* (=it is time to go to sleep). | *He never makes his bed* (=he never puts the sheets neatly back on his bed). | *a double bed* (=a bed for two people)

**2** the ground at the bottom of the ocean, a river, or a lake: *The river bed is sandy.*

**3** an area of ground that has been prepared for plants to grow in: *The flower beds are full of roses.*

→ See picture on page A10

**bed and 'breakfast** also **B&B** /,bi: and 'bi: / noun

a house or a small hotel where you pay to sleep and have breakfast

**bed·room** /'bedrum/ noun

a room for sleeping in: *This is Mark's bedroom.* | *a three-bedroom house*

**bed·spread** /'bedspred/ noun

a large cover that goes on top of a bed

→ See picture on page A10

**bed·time** /'bedtaim/ noun

the time when you usually go to bed: *It's past your bedtime! Get upstairs now.*

**bee** /bi/ noun

a yellow and black insect that flies, makes HONEY, and can sting you: *The bees were buzzing around from flower to flower.*

**beech** /bitʃ/ noun

a large tree with smooth gray branches and small nuts

**beef** /bif/ noun

meat from a cow: *a slice of roast beef*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meat**

**bee·hive** /'bihaiv/ noun

a place where bees live **SYNONYM** **hive**

**been** /bin/ verb

**1** the past participle of BE

**2 have been to** = to have gone to a place and come back: *Have you ever been to Mexico?*

**GRAMMAR: been**

**been and gone**

**Been** and **gone** are past participles of **go**. A past participle is a form of a verb that shows an action happening in the past.



**Has been** is the way you say that someone has visited a place in the past: *George has been to Denver* (=George has visited Denver before, but is not there now).

**Has gone** is the usual way to say that someone has traveled to a place in the past: *George has gone to Denver* (=George has traveled to Denver and is there now).

**beep** /bip/ verb

if an electronic machine or a car horn beeps, it makes a sound: *The computer beeps when you press the wrong key.* | *Some guy beeped his horn at me.*

—**beep** noun the sound that an electronic machine or a car horn makes

**beer** /bir/ noun

a yellow or brown alcoholic drink: *a glass of beer* | *Would you like a beer?*

**beet** /bit/ noun

a round dark red vegetable that grows under the ground

**bee-tle** /'bitl/ noun

an insect with a hard round back

**be-fore**<sup>1</sup> /bɪ'fɔr/ preposition, conjunction

**1** earlier than something or someone: *I usually take a shower before breakfast.* | *The other students finished the test before me.* | *She started school before I did.* | *He arrived the day before yesterday* (=two days ago).

ANTONYM **after**

#### THESAURUS: before

**prior to something** formal before: *Please be at the gate at least 30 minutes prior to the plane's departure.*

**earlier** near the beginning of a period of time, an event, or a process: *I saw Kim earlier today.*

**previously** before now, or before a particular time: *We had passed the building about ten minutes previously.*

**2** in front of someone or something else in a list or order: *S comes before T in the alphabet.* ANTONYM **after**

**3** if one place is before another as you go toward it, you will reach it first: *Turn right just before the stop light.* ANTONYM **after**

**4** formal in a place that is in front of someone or something: *The speaker stood before the crowd.*

**before**<sup>2</sup> adverb

at an earlier time: *Have you two met each other before?* | *I had seen the same man the day before* (=the previous day).

**be-fore-hand** /bɪ'fɔr,hænd/ adverb

before something happens: *The teacher had warned us beforehand that the test was going to be difficult.*

**beg** /beg/ verb begged, begging

**1** to ask someone for food or money because you are very poor: *People had to beg for food.*

**2** to ask for something in a way which shows you want it very much: *She begged them to help her.*

**3** **I beg your pardon** formal **a)** you use this to ask someone politely to say something again: *"It's 5 dollars."* *"I beg your pardon?"* *"I said it's 5 dollars."* SYNONYM **excuse me** **b)** you use this to say you are sorry: *Oh, I beg your pardon, did I hurt you?* SYNONYM **sorry**  
→ See Thesaurus box at **ask**

**be-gan** /bɪ'gæn/ verb

the past tense of BEGIN

**beg-gar** /'begə/ noun

someone who asks people for food and money in order to live: *A beggar asked him if he had a dollar.*

**be-gin** /bɪ'gɪn/ verb began /bɪ'gæn/ begun /bɪ'gʌn/ beginning

**1** to start: *The concert will begin at 8:00.* | *The musicians began playing.* | *It's beginning to rain.* | *Let's begin with exercise 5.* | *The word "psychology" begins with a "p."* (=“p” is the first letter) ANTONYM **end, stop, finish**

**2** **to begin with** = used when talking about the first part of something: *She wasn't very good at the game to begin with.*

**be-gin-ner** /bɪ'gɪnə/ noun

someone who is starting to do something or learn something: *a guitar class for beginners*

**be-gin-ning** /bɪ'gɪnɪŋ/ noun

the start or first part of something: *The beginning of the movie is really exciting, but it gets boring later.* | *Everyone has to take a test at the beginning of the year. Then at the end of the year, we can see if we improved.* | *In the beginning I didn't like him very much, but now I think he's great.* SYNONYM **start**; ANTONYM **end**



**be-gun** /bɪ'gʌn/ verb  
the past participle of BEGIN

B

**be-half** /bɪ'hæf/ **[Ac]** noun, formal  
**on behalf of someone/on someone's behalf** = speaking or doing something instead of someone because that person has asked you to speak or do something: *Her lawyer spoke on her behalf.* **SYNONYM** for

**be-have** /bɪ'heɪv/ verb

**1** to do or say things in a particular way: *Lions in a zoo do not behave like lions in the wild.*

**2** **behave (yourself)** to be polite and do things in a way other people think is good: *His mother told him to behave.* | *If you behave yourself, you can stay up late.*

**ANTONYM** misbehave

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **behave** verb
- **behaviour** noun
- **well-behaved** adjective

**be-hav-ior** /bɪ'heɪvɪə/ noun

the things that a person or animal does: *Did you notice anything unusual about his behavior?* | *It's important to reward children for good behavior.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **behave** verb

**be-hind** /bɪ'hænd/ preposition, adverb

**1** at the back of someone or something: *The drugstore is behind the supermarket.* | *She was sitting behind me and throwing things at the back of my head.*

**2** not as successful as someone or something: *Our team was behind the other team at half time, but we beat them in the second half.*

**3** supporting a person, idea, etc.: *All of his friends were behind him so he felt very confident.*

**4** late in doing the things that you have to do: *I'm sorry to keep you waiting. I'm running behind today* (=I'm late and I have not done everything that I have to do).

**5** responsible for causing something: *The police believe a local gang is behind the killings.*

**beige** /beɪʒ/ noun

a pale brown color

—**beige** adjective: *a beige sweater*

**be-ing**<sup>1</sup> /'bi-ɪŋ/ verb  
the present participle of BE

**being**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a living thing: *The movie is about strange beings from outer space.*

**2** **come into being** formal = to start to exist: *The country came into being at the beginning of the last century.*

**be-lief** /bə'lɪf/ noun

a strong feeling that something is definitely true or right: *It is important to respect other people's religious beliefs.* | *He has a strong belief in God.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **religion**

**be-lieve** /bə'liv/ verb

**1** to be sure that something is true or that someone is telling the truth: *Don't believe everything that you read in the newspapers.* | *Do you believe in God?* (=Do you believe that God exists?)

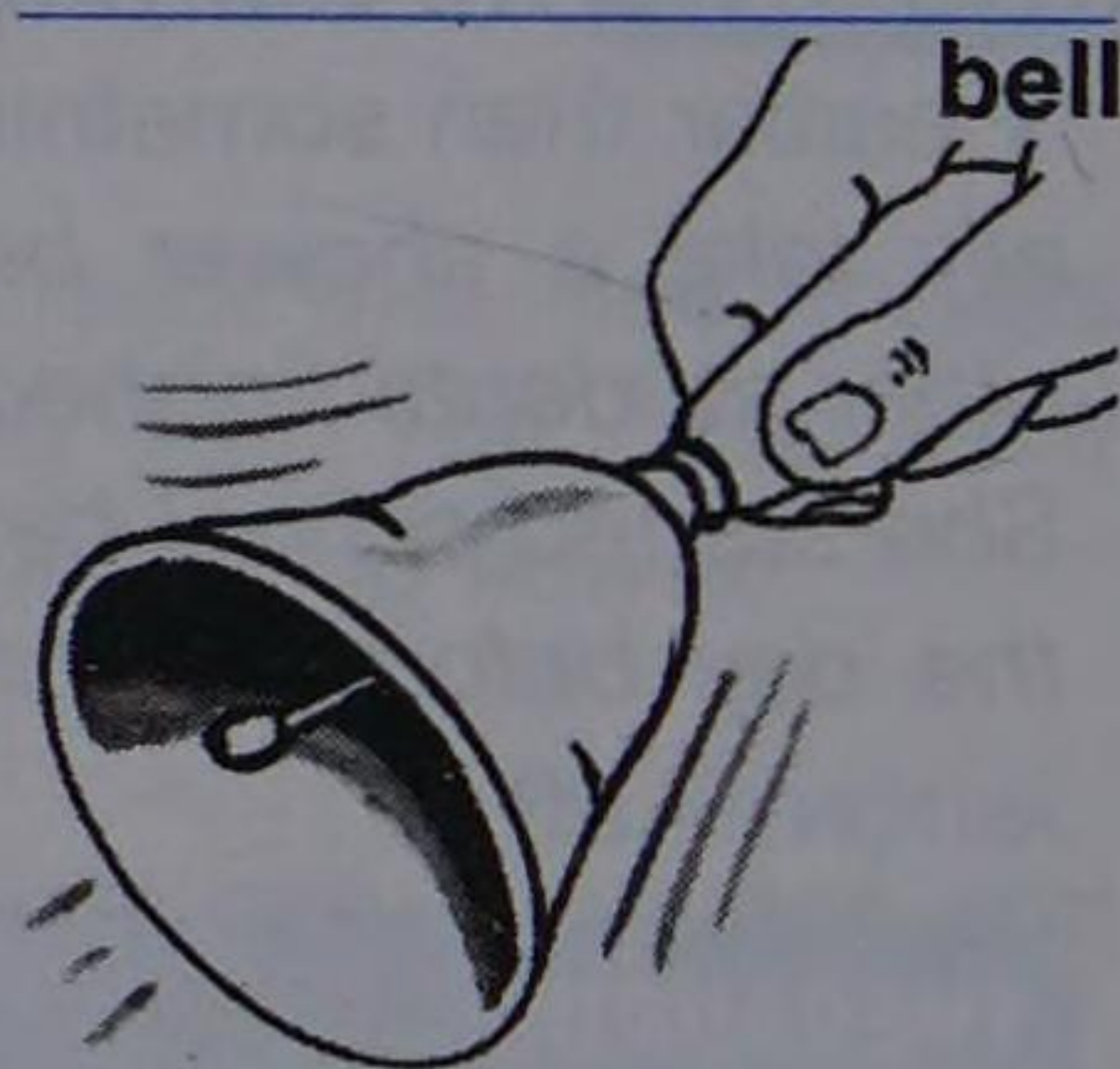
**2** to think that something is true, although you are not completely sure: *I believe she will be back on Monday, but I could be wrong.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **think**

**bell** /bel/ noun

**1** a metal object that makes a ringing sound when you hit it or shake it: *The church bells were ringing.*

**2** a piece of electrical equipment that makes a ringing sound: *She rang the door bell.*



**bel-ly** /'beli/ noun plural **bellies** informal  
your stomach: *He had a big belly from drinking too much beer.*

**'belly, button** noun, informal  
the small hollow place in the middle of your stomach **SYNONYM** navel

**be-long** /bɪ'lɒŋ/ verb

if something belongs somewhere, that is where it is usually kept: *The plates don't belong in this cupboard. They should be over there.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**belong to**

**1** **belong to someone** = if something belongs to you, you own it: *The land belongs*



to me and my family, and we can use it for whatever we want. | Who does this book belong to?

**2 belong to something** = to be a member of a group or organization: *He belongs to a private golf club.*

**be-long-ings** /bɪ'lɒŋɪŋz/ plural noun  
the things that you own, for example clothes, pens, or books: *Remember to take all your personal belongings with you when you leave the plane.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **property**

**be-loved** /bɪ'lʌvɪd/ adjective, formal  
used about someone who you love very much: *His beloved wife had died many years earlier.*

**be-low** /bɪ'ləʊ/ adverb, preposition

**1** in a lower place or position than someone or something else: *Her apartment is below mine, so she can hear me walking around. | Read the story and then answer the questions below.* **SYNONYM** under; **ANTONYM** above

**2** less than a particular number or amount: *It's 10 degrees below zero outside!* **ANTONYM** above

**3** lower in rank: *She never talks to people below her in the company.* **ANTONYM** above

**belt** /belt/ noun

**1** a band of leather or cloth that you wear around your waist and that holds up your pants: *a brown leather belt | He buckled his belt (=fastened it).*

**2** a circular band of material such as rubber that moves parts of a machine: *The belt makes the wheels in the machine turn around.*

→ **conveyor belt**, **seat belt**

→ See picture on page A6

**bench** /bentʃ/ noun

a long seat for two or more people, often one that does not have a back: *They sat together on a bench in the park and watched the pigeons.*

→ See picture at **seat**

**bend<sup>1</sup>** /bend/ verb **bent** /bent/

**1** to move a part of your body so that it is not straight or so that you are not standing upright: *Bend your knees, but keep your back straight. | He bent down to tie his shoelace.*

**2** to push or press something so that it is no

longer flat or straight: *He bent the stick with his hands.*

→ See picture on page A4

**bend<sup>2</sup>** noun

a curve in something such as a road or river: *There was a sharp bend in the road and we had to slow down.*

**be-neath** /bɪ'niθ/ adverb, preposition, formal

under or below something: *She could feel the warm sand beneath her feet.* **SYNONYM** under

**ben-e-fi-cial** /ˌbenə'fɪʃəl/ **Ac** adjective  
if something is beneficial, it has a good or helpful effect: *More exercise will be beneficial for your health.*

**ben-e-fit<sup>1</sup>** /'benəfɪt/ **Ac** noun

**1** an advantage or other useful thing that you get from something: *Now we have the benefits of modern science to help us do things quickly.*

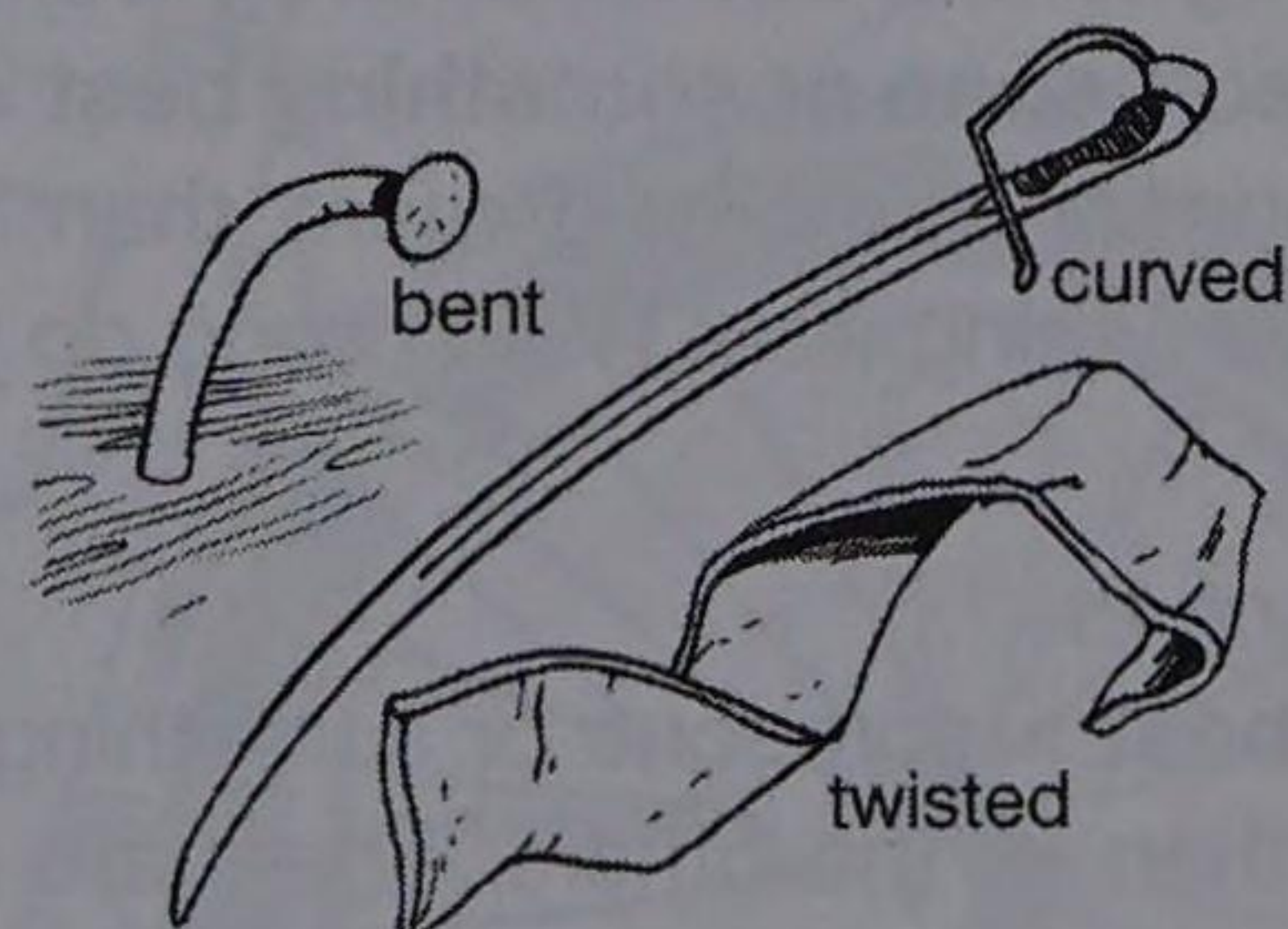
**2** money or other things that you get because you work for a company, belong to a government system, etc.: *The company provides medical benefits for all its workers.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **benefit** noun
- **benefit** verb
- **beneficial** adjective

**benefit<sup>2</sup>** verb benefitted or benefited, benefitting or benefiting

if you benefit from something or if it benefits you, it helps you: *Most people will benefit from the changes to the tax system.*



bent

**bent<sup>1</sup>** /bent/ verb

the past tense and past participle of BEND

**bent<sup>2</sup>** adjective

not straight – use this about things that are usually straight: *a bent nail*



**ber·ry** /'beri/ *noun* plural **berries**

a type of small soft fruit with very small seeds: *We picked some wild berries in the woods.*

**ber·serk** /bə'sɜ:k/ *adjective*

**go berserk** *informal* = to suddenly become very angry or violent: *The man went berserk and started hitting her.*

**be·side** /bi'saɪd/ *preposition*

**1** next to or very close to someone or something: *He sat down beside her and started talking to her.*

**2** used when you are comparing two people or things: *So many bad things had happened to her that my problems seemed small beside hers.*

**3 be beside the point** = to not be important compared to something else: *"He's very good-looking." "That's beside the point – we need a good actor!"*

**be·sides** /bi'saɪdz/ *preposition, adverb*

**1** in addition to something or someone: *Besides going to college, she works 15 hours a week. | Who's going to be there besides David and me?*

**2 informal** used when giving another reason: *It doesn't take long to walk to my house. Besides, I need some exercise.*

**best<sup>1</sup>** /best/ *adjective*

better than anyone or anything else: *He's the best player on the team – no one can play as well as he can. | This is the best ice cream I've ever eaten. | She's my best friend (=the friend that you like better than anyone else).*

ANTONYM **worst**

**best<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

**1** in a way that is better than any other: *They are trying to find out which drug works best.*

**2 like someone or something best** = to like someone or something more than anyone else or anything else: *Which song do you like best?*

**best<sup>3</sup>** *noun*

**1 the best** = someone or something that is better than all the others: *There are a lot of good players on the team, but he is the best. | She always wants her children to have the best of everything (=the best things).*

**2 do your best** = to try as hard as you can to do something: *I did my best on the test, but I don't know if I passed.*

**3 at best** = the most that you can expect: *At best he will get an 85 on the exam.*

**best 'man** *noun*

a male friend who helps a man who is getting married and stands next to him during the wedding. The best man usually gives a speech at the meal after the wedding

**bet<sup>1</sup>** /bet/ *verb* bet, betting

**1** to try to win money by guessing the result of a race, game, competition, etc.: *She bet all her money on a horse race.* **SYNONYM**

**gamble**

**2 I bet...** *informal* = used when saying that you think something is true or likely to happen: *I bet he'll be late.*

**3 you bet!** *informal* = used in order to emphasize that you really mean "yes" when someone asks you a question: *"Is the prize really \$20,000?" "You bet it is!"*

**bet<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

an agreement to risk money on the result of a race, game, competition, etc.: *He placed a bet on a horse (=he tried to win money by saying that the horse would win the race).*

**be·tray** /bi'treɪ/ *verb*

**1** to do something that will harm your country or group: *He was put in prison for betraying his country by giving secret information to the enemy.*

**2** to behave dishonestly toward someone who trusts you or loves you: *Her husband betrayed her and went to live with another woman.*

**bet·ter<sup>1</sup>** /'betə/ *adjective*

**1** of a higher skill, quality, or standard than someone or something else: *His car is much better than mine, but it cost a lot more too. | She's better at video games than I am so she always wins when we play. | Your English is getting better (=improving).* **ANTONYM worse**

**2** if you feel better, you feel less sick than before: *He had a sore throat yesterday, but he says that he's feeling better today.*

ANTONYM **worse**

→ See Thesaurus box at **healthy**

**bet·ter<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

**1** in a way that is more skillful than someone or something else: *My sister can sing much better than me.*

**2 like someone or something better** = to



like someone or something more than someone or something else: *I like the blue shirt better, but the green one's okay too.*

**3 had better do something** = used when saying that someone should do something: *You'd (=you had) better go home now – your mom is probably worried.*

**4 be better off** = to have more money, or a better position or job, than you had before: *Most people are better off than they were 10 years ago.*

**be-tween** /bɪ'twiːn/ preposition, adverb

**1** in the space in the middle of two things, people, etc.: *I was sitting between two people I didn't know and felt uncomfortable.*

#### USAGE: between

**Between** and **among** are both used to talk about where someone or something is.

Use **between** when there is one other person or thing on each side of someone or something: *I sat between Alex and Sarah.*

Use **among** when there are two or more people or things on each side or all sides of someone or something: *Denise was among a group of her friends.*

**2** in the period after one time, age, or event

and before another: *The library is open between 9 and 5 o'clock.*

**bev-er-age** /'bevərɪdʒ/ noun, formal  
a drink: *The restaurant sells alcoholic beverages.*

**be-ware** /bɪ'weɪə/ verb

used when you are warning someone to be careful about something: *The sign on the gate said "Beware of the dog!"*

**be-wil-dered** /bɪ'wɪldəd/ adjective

very confused and not sure what to do or think: *She was bewildered by all their questions.*

—**bewildering** adjective making you feel confused and not sure what to do or think

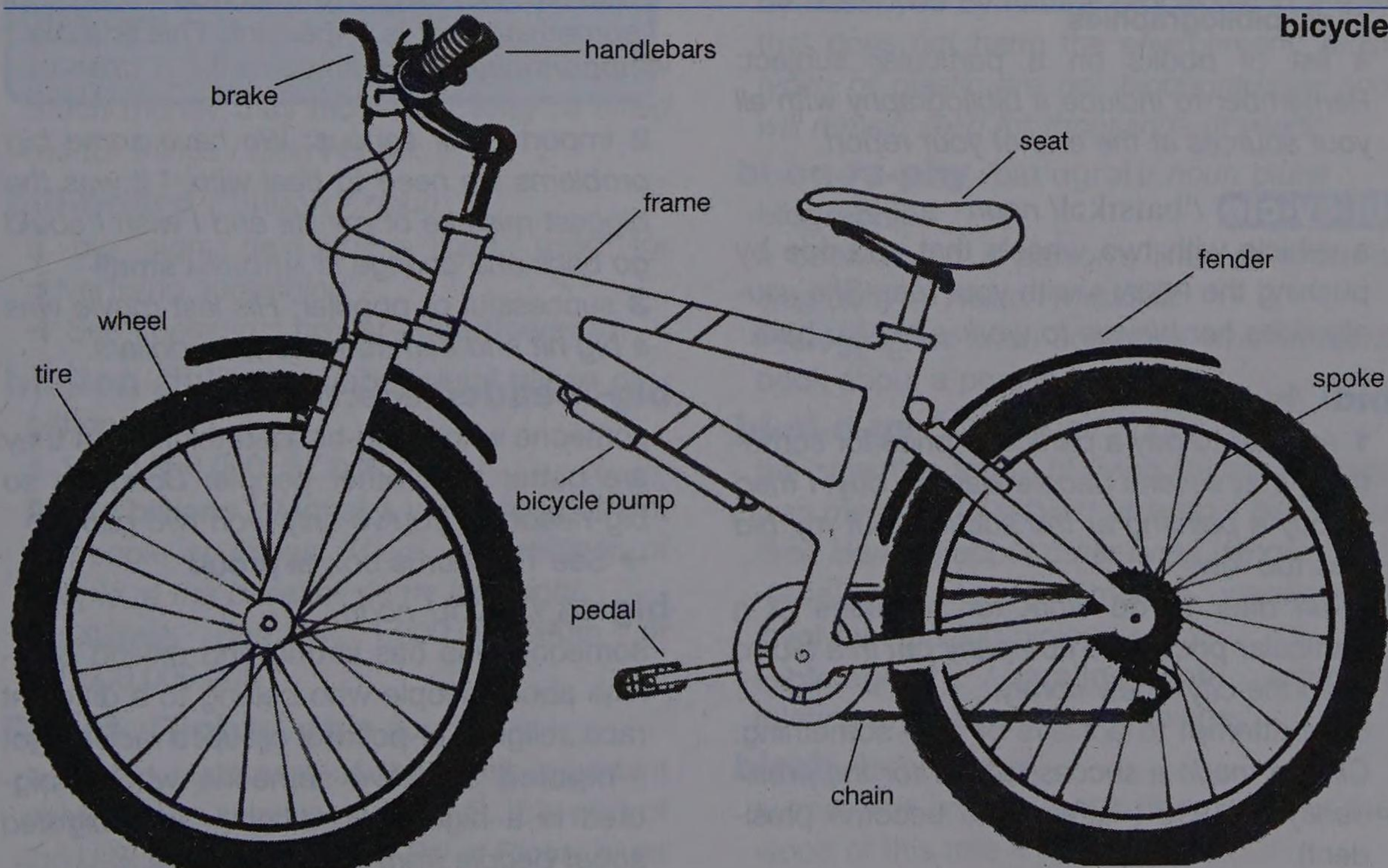
**be-yond** /bɪ'yɒnd/ preposition, adverb, formal

**1** on the other side of something: *Beyond the river, I could see the woods.*

**2** later than a particular time, date, etc.: *We need to plan beyond the end of this year.*

**3** more than a particular amount, level, or limit: *The price was beyond the amount that they could afford.*

**4 be beyond someone** = to be too difficult for someone to understand: *The science was all beyond him and he couldn't understand any of the discussion.*



bicycle



**bi·as** /'baɪəs/ *noun*

an opinion about a person, group, or idea that makes you treat them unfairly or differently: *Some employers have a bias against women* (=treat women unfairly).

—**bias** *verb* to influence someone or something in an unfair way: *I don't want to bias you by telling you my opinion of his work.*

—**biased** *adjective* unfairly preferring one person, group, or idea over another: *I thought the article was very biased toward Democrats* (=unfairly in favor of Democrats).

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **bias** *noun*
- **bias** *verb*
- **biased** *adjective*
- **unbiased** *adjective*

**bib** /bɪb/ *noun*

a piece of cloth or plastic that you tie under a baby's chin to stop food from falling on his or her clothes

**Bi·ble** /'baɪbəl/ *noun*

**the Bible** = the Holy book of the Jewish or Christian religions: *He believes everything that's in the Bible.*

—**biblical** /'bɪblɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to the Bible

**bib·li·og·ra·phy** /,bɪbli'ɑgrəfi/ *noun*

plural **bibliographies**

a list of books on a particular subject: *Remember to include a bibliography with all your sources at the end of your report.*

**bi·cy·cle** /'baɪsɪkəl/ *noun*

a vehicle with two wheels that you ride by pushing the PEDALS with your feet: *She usually rides her bicycle to work.* **SYNONYM** **bike**

**bid<sup>1</sup>** /bɪd/ *noun*

**1** an offer to pay a particular price for something that several people want to buy: *I tried to buy a painting at the auction, but my bid was too low.*

**2** an offer to do work for someone at a particular price: *The company put in a bid to build the city's new library.*

**3** an attempt to achieve or gain something: *Clinton made a successful bid for the presidency in 1992* (=attempt to become president).

**bid<sup>2</sup>** *verb* bid, bidding

**1** to offer to pay a particular price for something that several people want to buy: *He bid \$150,000 for the painting, but someone bid even higher.*

**2** to offer to do work for someone at a particular price: *Companies were invited to bid for the contract to clean the offices.*

—**bidder** *noun* someone who makes a bid: *The property will go to the highest bidder.*

**big** /bɪg/ *adjective* **bigger, biggest**

**1** large: *She lives in a big house with six bedrooms.* **ANTONYM** **small**

**THESAURUS: big**

**large** big or bigger than usual in size or amount: *New York is the largest city in America.* | *Large numbers of people watched the game.*

**huge** very big: *He ate a huge amount of food.* | *a huge television set*

**enormous** very big: *Their cat is enormous!* | *a park full of enormous trees*

**gigantic** extremely big or tall: *The airport is gigantic.* | *a gigantic wave*

**Big** and **large** mean the same thing, but **large** is slightly more formal: *That's a big piece of cake!* | *It's the largest building in Chicago.*

Use **large**, not **big**, to describe amounts: *Kelly gets large amounts of homework.*

Use **big**, not **large**, to describe something that is important: *This is a big opportunity for me.*

**2** important or serious: *We have some big problems we need to deal with.* | *It was the biggest mistake of my life and I wish I could go back and change it.* **ANTONYM** **small**

**3** successful or popular: *His last movie was a big hit and earned millions of dollars.*

**big-·headed** *adjective, informal*

someone who is big-headed thinks that they are better than other people: *Don't be so big-headed – you've only won two games.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **proud**

**big·ot** /'bɪgət/ *noun*

someone who has strong and unkind opinions about people who belong to a different race, religion, or political group: *a racist bigot*  
—**bigoted** *adjective* someone who is bigoted is a bigot: *My father is very bigoted about people from other countries.*



—**bigotry** *noun* behavior that is typical of a bigot

→ See Thesaurus box at **prejudice**

**bike** /baɪk/ *noun, informal*

**1** a bicycle: *The kids were riding their bikes around the neighborhood.*

**2** a MOTORCYCLE

—**biker** *noun* someone who rides a bike or a MOTORCYCLE

**bi·ki·ni** /bɪ'kini/ *noun*

a piece of clothing in two parts that women wear on the beach when it is hot

**bi·lin·gual** /baɪ'liŋgwəl/ *adjective*

**1** able to speak two languages: *Their kids are bilingual – they speak both Spanish and English.*

**2** written or spoken in two languages: *a bilingual dictionary*

**bill<sup>1</sup>** /bɪl/ *noun*

**1** a list of things that you have bought or that someone has done for you, showing how much you have to pay for them: *Have you paid the electric bill? | The bill for the repairs was \$600.*

**2** a piece of paper money: *a ten-dollar bill*

**3** a plan for a new law: *The House of Representatives passed a new gun-control bill (=made it a law).*

**4** a bird's beak: *a duck's bill*

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**bill<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to send a bill to someone to tell them how much money they must pay: *They've billed me for things I didn't order.*

**bill·board** /'bɪlbɔːrd/ *noun*

a big sign, next to a road, used for advertising something

→ See Thesaurus box at **advertisement**

**bil·lion** /'bɪljən/ *number plural billion or billions*

**1** 1,000,000,000: *\$7 billion*

**2** also **billions** *informal* a very large number of people or things: *There were billions of people at the baseball game last night.*

—**billionth** *number* 1,000,000,000th or 1/1,000,000,000

**Bill of 'Rights, the** *noun*

a written statement of the most important rights of the citizens of the U.S. It is part of the U.S. Constitution: *The Bill of Rights gives*

*people the freedom to follow whatever religion they choose.*

**bin** /bɪn/ *noun*

a large container for storing things: *a flour bin*

**bind** /baɪnd/ *verb bound* /baʊnd/

to tie someone or something with rope or string: *They bound his arms and legs with a rope so that he wouldn't escape.*

**binge** /bɪndʒ/ *noun, informal*

an occasion when you eat too much or drink too much alcohol in a very short time: *He went on a drinking binge last Saturday and was sick all day Sunday.*

—**binge** *verb* to eat or drink a lot in a very short time: *Whenever she feels sad, she binges on chocolate.*

**bin·go** /'bɪŋɡəʊ/ *noun*

a game played for money or prizes in which someone picks numbers from a box and says what they are. If you have the right numbers in a line on your card, you win

**bin·oc·u·lars** /bɪ'nɒkjələʊz/ *plural noun*

an object like a large pair of special glasses that you hold up and look through to see things that are far away: *He watched the football game through a pair of binoculars.*

**bi·o·de·grad·a·ble**

/,baɪəʊdɪ'ɡreɪdəbəl/ *adjective*

something that is biodegradable is able to be destroyed by natural processes in a way that does not harm the environment: *Most types of plastic are not biodegradable and will remain solid for thousands of years.*

**bi·og·ra·phy** /baɪ'ɑːɡrəfi/ *noun plural*

**biographies**

a book about a person's life: *He wrote a biography of Nelson Mandela.*

—**biographer** *noun* someone who writes a book about a person's life

**bi·ol·o·gy** /baɪ'ələdʒi/ *noun*

the scientific study of living things: *Biology was my favorite subject at school because I liked learning about other living things.*

—**biologist** *noun* someone whose job involves studying biology

—**biological** /,baɪə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to biology or living things

**birch** /bɜːtʃ/ *noun*

a tree with smooth BARK like paper, or the wood of this tree



**bird** /bɜːd/ *noun*

an animal with wings and feathers that can usually fly. Female birds produce eggs

**birth** /bɜːθ/ *noun*

**1 give birth** = if a woman gives birth, she produces a baby from her body: *Sue gave birth to a healthy baby girl on Tuesday.*

**2** the time when a baby comes out of its mother's body: *The baby weighed seven pounds at birth* (=when she was born).

**3** the character, language, social position, etc. that you have because of the family or country you come from: *Her father was Mexican by birth* (=he was born in Mexico), *but later became a U.S. citizen.*

**4 the birth of something** = the time when something new starts: *the birth of television in 1927*

**'birth cer,tificate** *noun*

an official document that shows when and where you were born

**'birth con,trol** *noun*

ways of stopping a woman from becoming PREGNANT (=having a baby growing inside her body) **SYNONYM** **contraception**

**birth·day** /'bɜːθdeɪ/ *noun*

the date of the day when you were born: *My birthday is April 10. | I got ten birthday cards. | Happy Birthday!* (=you say this to someone on his or her birthday)

**birth·place** /'bɜːθpleɪs/ *noun*

the place where someone was born: *Westmoreland County, Virginia, is the birthplace of George Washington.*

**bis·cuit** /'bɪskɪt/ *noun*

a type of bread that you bake in small round shapes

**bi·sect** /'baɪsekt/ *verb, formal*

to divide something into two equal parts: *The city is bisected by a freeway.*

**bish·op** /'bɪʃəp/ *noun*

a priest with a high rank who is in control of the churches and priests in a large area

**bi·son** /'baɪsən/ *noun* plural **bison** or **bisons**

a North American wild animal that looks like a large cow with thick hair on its neck and shoulders

**bit**<sup>1</sup> /bɪt/ *noun*

**1 a (little) bit** = slightly: *I felt a little bit tired, so I took a break.*

**2** a small piece or amount of something: *The floor was covered with bits of broken glass.*

**3 quite a bit** = a large amount: *He got quite a bit of help from his brother on the project.*

**4** the smallest unit of information that a computer uses

**bit**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

the past tense of BITE

**bite**<sup>1</sup> /baɪt/ *verb* **bit** /bɪt/ **bitten** /'bɪtn/ **biting**

**1** to cut or crush something with your teeth: *The dog bit him when he tried to pet it. | Jim bit into the apple.*

**2** if an insect bites you, it puts a small amount of poison into your body so that you have a lump or red mark on your skin: *Ouch! A mosquito bit me.*

**bite**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** the act of cutting or crushing something with your teeth: *He took a bite of the cake.*

**2** a wound made when an animal or insect bites you: *a mosquito bite*

**3 a bite (to eat)** *informal* = a quick meal: *We can grab a bite before we leave.*

**bit·ten** /'bɪtn/ *verb*

the past participle of BITE

**bit·ter** /'bɪtə/ *adjective*

**1** angry for a long time because you feel something bad or unfair has happened to you: *She felt very bitter about losing her job.*

**2** having a strong taste that is not sweet, like coffee without sugar: *The fruit tasted bitter, so I threw it out.*

**3** making you feel very unhappy and upset: *Losing the game was a bitter disappointment*

**4** bitter weather is extremely cold: *a bitter wind*

—**bitterly** *adverb* in a way that shows you are very angry, upset, or unhappy: *Fans were bitterly disappointed by the team's loss.*

—**bitterness** *noun*

**bi·week·ly** /baɪ'wikli/ *adjective, adverb*

happening or done every two weeks: *a biweekly meeting | The magazine is published biweekly.*

**bi·zarre** /bɪ'zɑː/ *adjective*

very unusual and strange: *His bizarre behavior was caused by his illness.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **strange**<sup>1</sup>



**black<sup>1</sup>** /blæk/ adjective

**1** having a color that is darker than every other color, like the sky at night: *a black horse*

**2** also **Black** someone with dark-colored skin whose family originally came from Africa: *Black kids and white kids worked together to plan the event.*

—**blackness** noun the quality of being black or very dark

**black<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the darkest color, like the color of the sky at night: *She was wearing black.*

**2** **blacks** also **Blacks** = people with dark-colored skin whose families originally came from Africa

**black-ber-ry** /'blæk,beri/ noun plural

**blackberries**

a small sweet dark purple fruit that grows on a bush

→ See picture on page A13

**black-bird** /'blækbɜ:d/ noun

a common American and European bird. The male blackbird is completely black

**black-board** /'blæk,bɔ:rd/ noun

a dark smooth board, usually in a school, that you write on with CHALK: *The teacher wrote the date on the blackboard.*

**black-mail** /'blækmeɪl/ noun

the practice of making someone do what you want by saying that you will tell secrets about them: *"Give me the money, or I'll tell your wife."* *"This is blackmail!"*

—**blackmail** verb to use blackmail: *He tried to blackmail her by threatening to tell the police about the stolen money.*

—**blackmailer** noun someone who uses blackmail

**black 'market** noun

the system in which people buy and sell things illegally: *During the war some types of food could only be bought on the black market.*

**black-out** /'blækaut/ noun

**1** a period of darkness in an area of buildings or houses, when the electricity stops working: *Our neighborhood had a blackout last night so we couldn't watch TV.*

**2** if you have a blackout, you cannot see, hear, or feel anything because you are ill or have hit your head: *Since the accident, Sam*

*has suffered from blackouts and he can't remember later what happened.*

**blad-der** /'blædɜ:/ noun

the part of your body where URINE (=liquid waste) stays before it leaves your body

→ See picture on page A2

**blade** /bleɪd/ noun

**1** the flat cutting part of a knife, tool, or weapon: *The blade on this knife is very sharp.*

**2** a single piece of grass: *a blade of grass*

**blame<sup>1</sup>** /bleɪm/ verb

**1** if you blame someone, you say or think that he or she is responsible for something bad that has happened: *The fans blamed the coach for the team's defeat.* | *He's blaming all his problems on me.*

**2** **I don't blame you/her/them, etc.** = you say this when you think that what someone is doing or thinking is reasonable: *"She got really mad at him for being so late."* *"I don't blame her!"*

**blame<sup>2</sup>** noun

responsibility for a mistake or for something bad: *I always get the blame when things go wrong.* | *He tried to put the blame for the broken window on his brother (=say his brother broke the window).*

**bland** /blænd/ adjective

**1** without any excitement, strong opinions, or special qualities: *The group's latest CD is pretty bland; all the songs sound the same.*

**2** bland food has very little taste: *The food was bland – it had no flavor.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **taste<sup>1</sup>**

**blank<sup>1</sup>** /blæŋk/ adjective

**1** a blank sheet of paper, tape, etc. has nothing written or recorded on it: *She started writing on a blank page.* | *Do we have any blank CDs? I want to download some music.*

**2** **go blank** = if your mind goes blank, you suddenly cannot remember something: *I was so nervous that my mind went blank when I stood up to speak.*

**3** a blank expression or look shows no emotion, understanding, or interest: *I said hello, but she just gave me a blank look as if she did not know me.*

—**blankly** adverb if you look at someone or something blankly, you do not show any emotion, understanding, or interest: *I asked*



the boy where his mother was, but he just stared at me blankly.

B

**blank<sup>2</sup>** noun

an empty space on a piece of paper where you are supposed to write a word or letter: *Answer the test questions by filling in the blanks (=writing in the spaces).*

**blan-ket** /'blæŋkɪt/ noun

**1** a thick cover that keeps you warm in bed: *I put another blanket on the bed because I was cold.*

**2** a blanket of fog/cloud/snow, etc. = a thick layer of something that covers something: *The ground was covered in a thick blanket of snow.*

→ See picture on page A10

**blare** /bler/ verb

to make a very loud unpleasant noise: *Music was blaring from the car radio and everyone nearby could hear it.*

**blast<sup>1</sup>** /blæst/ noun

an explosion: *Three soldiers died in the blast that destroyed the building.*

**blast<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to break something into pieces by making it explode: *The buildings had been blasted by terrorist bombs.*

**2** if music or another sound blasts, it makes a very loud noise: *Music was blasting from two huge speakers, and it hurt my ears.*

**bla-tant** /'bleɪtənt/ adjective

very noticeable and shocking: *She told a blatant lie that we all knew wasn't true.*

SYNONYM **obvious**

**blaze<sup>1</sup>** /bleɪz/ verb

to burn or shine very brightly and strongly: *A fire was blazing in the room.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fire<sup>1</sup>**

**blaze<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the strong bright flames of a fire: *The blaze burned several buildings and caused thousands of dollars of damage.*

**2** a very bright light or color: *They walked out of the house into a blaze of sunshine.*

**bleach** /blɪtʃ/ noun

a strong chemical used to make clothes white, or to kill GERMS

—**bleach** verb to make something whiter or lighter in color: *Her hair isn't naturally blond – she bleaches it.*

**bleach-ers** /'blɪtʃəz/ plural noun

rows of seats where people sit to watch sports

**bleak** /blik/ adjective

**1** without anything to make you feel happy or hopeful: *She had no job, and her future seemed bleak.* ANTONYM **bright**

**2** a bleak day is cold, gray, and often cold: *a bleak day in the middle of winter* ANTONYM **bright**

**blear-y** /'bliəri/ adjective

unable to see clearly because you are tired or have been crying: *My eyes were bleary from lack of sleep.*

**bleed** /blɪd/ verb

bled /bled/

**1** if part of your body bleeds, blood comes out of it: *His knee was bleeding after he fell off his bike.*

**2** if colors bleed when they get wet, they mix together: *Wash brightly colored clothes separately, in case the colors bleed.*

WORD FAMILY → **blood** noun

**blem-ish** /'blemɪʃ/ noun

a small mark that spoils the appearance of something or someone: *The makeup is good for covering up blemishes on your skin.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **mark<sup>2</sup>**

**blend<sup>1</sup>** /blend/ verb

to mix things together, especially foods: *Blend the milk and the eggs until the mixture is smooth.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **mix<sup>1</sup>**

**blend<sup>2</sup>** noun

a mixture of two or more things or people: *The city has an interesting blend of old and new buildings.*

**blend-er** /'blendə/ noun

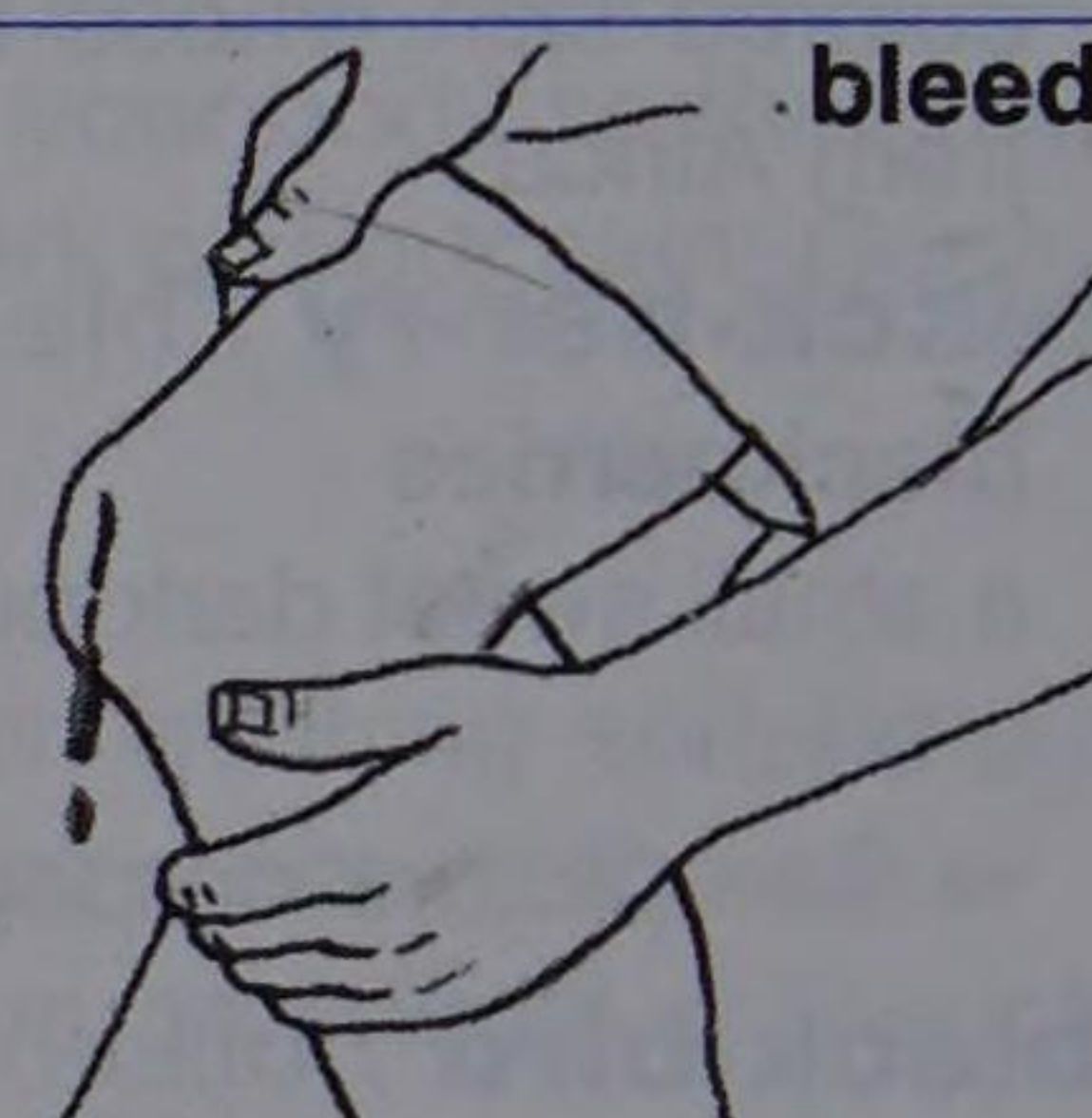
a small electric machine that you use to mix liquids together

**bless** /bles/ verb

**1** **Bless you!** = said when someone SNEEZES

**2** if God blesses someone, he helps and protects that person: *May God bless you and keep you safe.*

**3** to make something holy: *The priest blessed the bread and the wine.*





**bless·ing** /'blesɪŋ/ *noun*

**1** something good that improves a situation and makes you happy: *The cool breeze was a blessing on such a hot day.*

**2** if you give someone your blessing, you say that you agree with what that person is doing and want him or her to be successful: *She got married with her parents' blessing – they were very happy for her.*

**3** protection and help from God, or a prayer asking for this: *They asked for God's blessing on their journey.*

**blew** /blu/ *verb*

the past tense of BLOW

**blimp** /blɪmp/ *noun*

an aircraft without wings that is filled with gas and looks like a very large BALLOON

**blind**<sup>1</sup> /blaɪnd/ *adjective*

unable to see: *A dog was leading a blind man across the street. | When she was two, she went blind (=became blind).*

—**blindness** *noun*

**blind**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to make someone unable to see: *He was blinded by the explosion, and could not see anything for a few hours.*

**blind**<sup>3</sup> *noun*

a piece of cloth or other material that you pull down to cover a window: *Is it OK if I close the blinds? The sun is so bright.*

→ See picture on page A9

**blind·fold** /'blaɪndfəʊld/ *noun*

a piece of cloth that you use to cover someone's eyes so that she or he cannot see

—**blindfold** *verb* to cover someone's eyes with a blindfold

**blink** /blɪŋk/ *verb*

**1** to open and close your eyes very quickly: *The boy blinked and rubbed his eyes.*

**2** if a light blinks, it quickly goes on and off: *A light on her computer kept blinking.*

**blink·er** /'blɪŋkə/ *noun*

a light that goes on and off to show that a car is turning left or right

→ See picture on page A28

**bliss** /blɪs/ *noun, formal*

perfect happiness: *When they first married, they lived a life of complete bliss.*

—**blissful** *adjective* very happy

—**blissfully** *adverb*

**blis·ter** /'blɪstə/ *noun*

a raised area of skin that is filled with liquid and is usually caused by rubbing or burning: *New shoes always give me blisters.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **mark**<sup>2</sup>

**bliz·zard** /'blɪzəd/ *noun*

a very bad storm with a lot of snow and wind

→ See Thesaurus box at **snow**<sup>1</sup>

**bloat·ed** /'bləʊtɪd/ *adjective*

if you feel bloated, your stomach feels too full and too big: *I felt bloated after eating so much meat.*

**blob** /blɒb/ *noun*

a small drop of a thick liquid such as paint or ice cream: *There was a blob of paint on the end of his nose.*

**block**<sup>1</sup> /blɒk/ *noun*

**1** an area or distance in a city from the place where two streets cross to the next place where two streets cross: *We walked for two or three blocks until we saw the park.*

**2** a solid piece of wood, stone, etc.: *Before electricity, people kept food cold using blocks of ice.*

**3** one of a set of solid wooden shapes that children build things with: *My little sister was building a tower with her blocks.*

**4** a group of things of the same kind or an amount of something, considered as a single unit: *I bought a block of tickets for the concert so that we could all sit together.*

**block**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to stop people or things from moving through or along something: *A big truck was blocking the road.*

**2** **block someone's view** = if something blocks your view, it stops you from being able to see in front of you: *A tall man in front of me was blocking my view.*

**3** to stop something from happening, developing, or succeeding: *Congress blocked the president's plan.*

**block·age** /'blɒkɪdʒ/ *noun*

something that stops other things from moving through a pipe, tube, etc.: *I think there's a blockage in the pipe under the sink – the water's not going down.*

**blond** also **blonde** /blɒnd/ *adjective*

blond hair is light yellow in color: *She had long blond hair.*



B

—**blonde** *noun* a woman who has pale yellow hair

**blood** /blʌd/ *noun*

the red liquid that your heart pumps through your body: *After the accident her face was covered in blood.*

**'blood pressure** *noun*

the force with which blood moves around your body. If your blood pressure is high, it can make you more likely to have a heart attack: *My father has high blood pressure, so he has to be careful not to eat too much salt.*

**blood-shed** /'blʌdʃed/ *noun*

the killing of people in fighting or a war

**blood-stream** /'blʌdstrim/ *noun*

blood as it flows around the body: *It takes a few minutes for the drug to enter the bloodstream (=go into your blood).*

**blood-thirsty** /'blʌd,θɜːsti/ *adjective*

enjoying killing and violence: *The man was attacked and beaten by a bloodthirsty crowd.*

**'blood vessel** *noun*

one of the tubes through which blood flows in your body

**blood-y** /'blʌdi/ *adjective*

- 1** covered in blood: *He had a bloody nose.*
- 2** with a lot of killing and violence: *Hundreds were killed in the bloody battle.*

**bloom**<sup>1</sup> /blu:m/ *verb*

if a plant blooms, its flowers are open: *The spring flowers were blooming in the fields.*

**bloom**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

- 1 be in bloom** = if a plant is in bloom, its flowers are open: *The sunflowers are in bloom at this time of year.*
- 2** a flower: *The rose has beautiful pink blooms.* **SYNONYM** blossom

**blos-som**<sup>1</sup> /'blasəm/ *noun*

a flower on a tree or bush: *In April the cherry trees are covered in blossoms.*

**blossom**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

if a tree or a bush blossoms, it produces flowers: *The apple trees are already starting to blossom.*

**blot**<sup>1</sup> /blat/ *verb* blotted, blotting

to press soft paper or cloth onto a wet surface in order to dry it: *I used a tissue to blot the coffee that spilled on the desk.*

**blot**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a mark or spot that spoils something or makes it dirty

**blouse** /blaʊs/ *noun*

a shirt for a woman or girl: *She is wearing a white blouse and a blue skirt.*

→ See picture on page A6

**blow**<sup>1</sup> /bləʊ/ *verb* blew /blu/ blown /bləʊn/

**1** if the wind blows, it makes the air move: *A cold wind was blowing from the east. | The wind blew the leaves off the trees (=it made the leaves fall off the trees).*

**2** to send out air or smoke through your mouth: *She blew on her soup to cool it.*

**3** to cause a whistle, car horn, etc. to make a sound: *The man in the car behind me started blowing his horn to get me to move.*

**4 blow your nose** = to clear your nose by blowing air through it into a piece of cloth or TISSUE

**5 blow it informal** = to be unsuccessful when you are doing something, because you make a mistake: *I should have gotten an A on the test, but I blew it and got a D.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**blow something out**

to blow air on a flame and make it stop burning: *She blew out all the candles on her birthday cake.*

**blow up**

**1 blow (something) up** = if something blows up, it is destroyed in an explosion: *The soldiers blew up the bridge using dynamite.*

**2 blow something up** = to fill something with air or gas, especially a BALLOON: *We blew up the balloons for the party.*

**blow**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** something very sad and shocking that happens to you: *Her father's death was a terrible blow to her.*

**2** a hard hit with a hand, tool, or weapon: *He was killed by a blow to the side of his head.*

**'blow dry** *verb* third person singular

blow-dries, blow-dried

to dry hair using a machine that blows hot air

**'blow dryer** *noun*

a piece of equipment that you hold in your hand and use to dry your wet hair



**blown** /bloun/ verb

the past participle of BLOW

**blue<sup>1</sup>** /blu/ adjective

**1** having the same color as a clear sky during the day: *She has beautiful blue eyes.*

**2** informal sad: *Why are you feeling blue? Did something bad happen?*

**blue<sup>2</sup>** noun

the color of the sky on a clear day: *She was dressed in blue* (=she was wearing blue clothes).

**blue-ber-ry** /'blu,beri/ noun plural

**blueberries**

a small dark blue round BERRY that has a sweet taste: *blueberry muffins*

**blue-bird** /'blu,bɜ:d/ noun

a small North American wild bird that sings and has a blue back and wings

**blue-'collar** adjective

blue-collar workers do physical work, rather than working in offices

**blues** /bluz/ noun

**the blues** = a style of music that came from the African-American culture in the southern U.S. Blues songs often tell about the sad or difficult things in someone's life

**bluff<sup>1</sup>** /blʌf/ verb

to pretend that something is true, in order to get an advantage for yourself: *He told me that someone else had offered him more money for the car, but I knew he was bluffing. He was just trying to get me to pay more.*

**bluff<sup>2</sup>** noun

an attempt to make someone believe that you will do something, even though this is not true: *She's threatening to leave her job, but I'm sure it's a bluff. She'll never quit.*

**blunt** /blʌnt/ adjective

**1** speaking in a very direct and honest way which may upset people: *I didn't expect such a blunt answer – she didn't even give an explanation.*

**2 a blunt object/instrument** = an object that is not sharp and is used to hit someone: *Police say the man was hit on the head with a blunt instrument.*

—**bluntly** adverb: *"He's not coming with us because I don't like him," she replied bluntly.*

**blur** /blɜ:/ noun

if something is a blur, you cannot see or remember it clearly: *So much has happened this past year, it's all a blur when I try to remember it.*

**blurred** /blɜ:d/ adjective

**1** also **blurry** having a shape that is not clear: *a blurry old photograph of his grandmother*

**2** if your EYESIGHT is blurred, you cannot see clearly

**blurt** /blɜ:t/ verb

also **blurt out** to say something suddenly and without thinking, usually because you are nervous or excited: *Another student blurted out the answer before I could say anything.*

**blush** /blʌʃ/ verb

if you blush, your face becomes red, usually because you are embarrassed: *She blushed when he told her she was beautiful.*

**Bld.**

the written abbreviation of **boulevard**

**board<sup>1</sup>** /bɔ:d/ noun

**1** a large wide piece of wood, plastic, etc., that you use for writing or doing things on: *The new teacher wrote her name on the board. | a chess board | a cutting board* (=for cutting food on)

**2** a long thin flat piece of wood used for making floors, walls, fences, etc.: *He cut two six-foot boards in half with a saw.*

**3** a group of people in a school, company, etc. who make the rules and important decisions: *The school board decided to build a new gym at the high school.*

**4 on board** = on an airplane, ship, etc.: *There were over 500 passengers on board when the boat sank.*

**5** the meals that are provided for you when you pay to stay somewhere: *College students have to pay tuition as well as room and board* (=a place to live and eat food).

**board<sup>2</sup>** verb, formal

to get on an airplane, ship, train, etc. in order to travel somewhere: *The passengers were waiting to board the plane.* **SYNONYM** **get on**

**PHRASAL VERB****board something up**

to cover a window or door with wooden



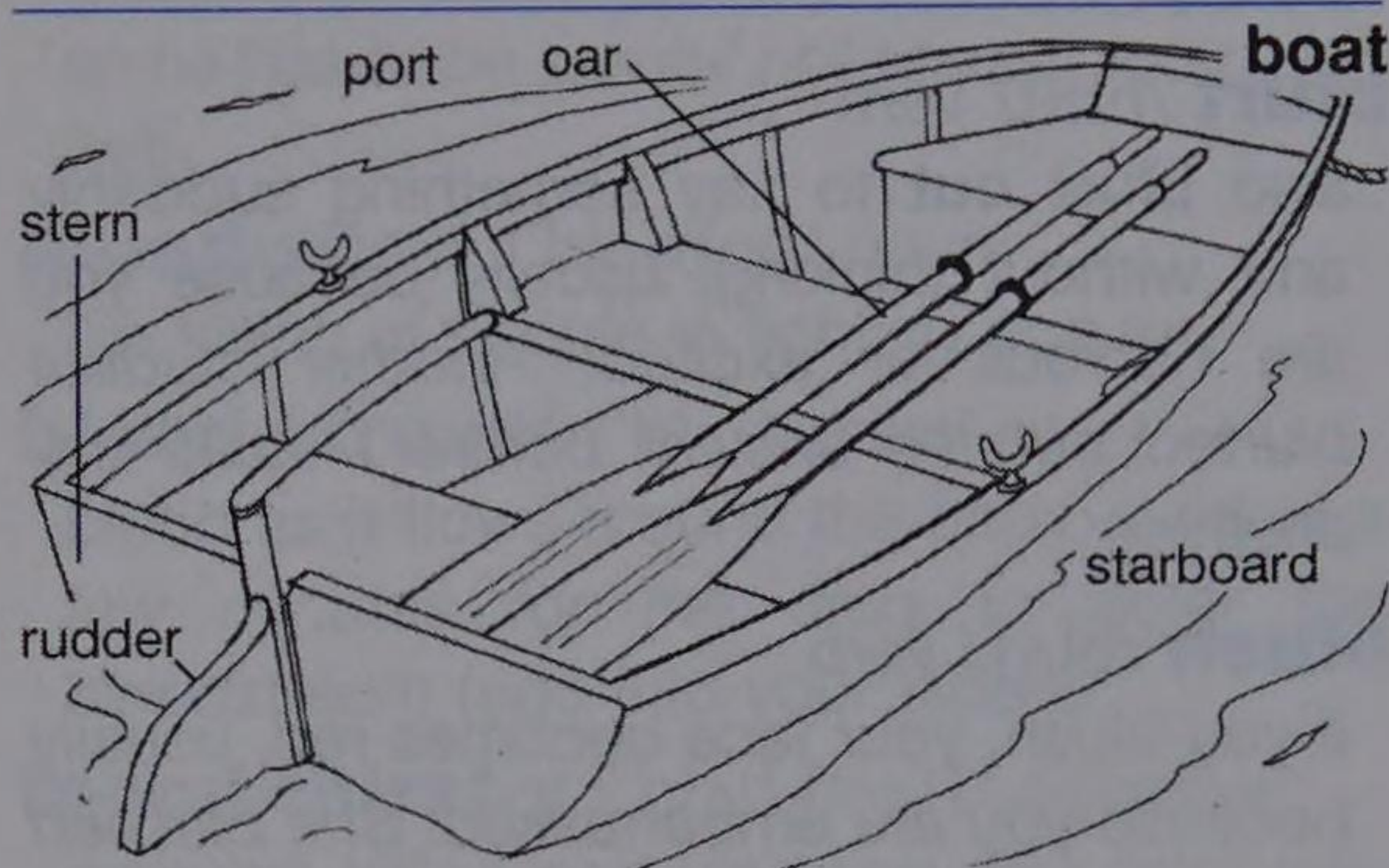
boards: *They boarded up all the doors to stop people from getting into the building.*

## B

**boast** /boʊst/ verb

to talk too proudly about what you have done, what you own, etc.: *Scott kept boasting about winning the game, and it was starting to annoy us.* **SYNONYM** brag

—**boastful** adjective talking too proudly about what you have done, what you own, etc.

**boat** /bout/ noun

a small ship: *You can only get to the island by boat.* | a fishing boat (=for fishing on the ocean)

**bob** /bʌb/ verb bobbed, bobbing

to move up and down quickly on water: *Boats were bobbing up and down on the waves.*

**bob-cat** /'bʌbkæt/ noun

a wild cat that has no tail and lives in North America

**bod-y** /'bɒdi/ noun plural **bodies**

**1** the physical structure of a person or animal: *Exercise is good for your body.* | *He made a drawing of the human body and wrote the names of all the parts on it.*

**2** the main part of a person or animal, not the head, arms, or legs: *She has a short body and long legs.*

**3** a dead person: *They found a body in the woods and called the police.* **SYNONYM** corpse

**4** the main part of something: *The body of the airplane was not damaged in the crash.*

**'body building** noun

hard exercise that some people do to get big muscles

—**body builder** noun someone who does body building

**bod-y-guard** /'bɒdi,gɑrd/ noun

someone whose job is to stop another person getting attacked or hurt: *The president's bodyguards go with him wherever he goes.*

**bo-gus** /'bɒgəs/ adjective

not real or honest: *These results are based on a bogus study, so we cannot accept them.* **SYNONYM** fake

**boil** /bɔɪl/ verb

**1** if a liquid boils, it gets very hot and produces BUBBLES and steam: *Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.* | *I boiled some water and added the spaghetti.*

**2** to cook food in very hot water: *Boil the potatoes for 25 minutes.*

—**boiling point** noun the temperature of a liquid when it begins to boil

→ See Thesaurus box at **cook**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A14

**boil-er** /'bɔɪlə/ noun

a big container that heats the water for a building

**bois-ter-ous** /'bɔɪstərəs/ adjective, formal

noisy and full of energy: *A boisterous crowd was yelling and throwing things as they watched the game.*

**bold** /bəʊld/ adjective

**1** a bold action, plan, etc. shows that you are not afraid to do something dangerous or new: *It was a bold move for the coach to hire so many new players.*

**2** bold colors, flavors, letters, etc. are very strong and clear: *She painted her bedroom in bright bold colors.*

**bo-lo-gna** also **baloney** /bə'louni/ noun

a type of SAUSAGE used for making sandwiches

**bolt**<sup>1</sup> /bəʊlt/ noun

**1** a piece of metal that slides across to lock a door

**2** a type of screw that goes inside a NUT (=round circle of metal) and is used for holding two things together

**3** a bolt of lightning/a lightning bolt = a sudden flash of bright light in the sky during a storm

**bolt**<sup>2</sup> verb

to lock a door with a bolt: *She closed the door and bolted it so no one could get in.*



**bolt<sup>3</sup>** *adverb*

**sit/stand bolt upright** = to sit or stand with your back very straight because you are frightened: *She heard a noise and sat bolt upright in bed.*

**bomb<sup>1</sup>** /bʌm/ *noun*

a weapon that explodes and causes damage: *The bomb went off (=exploded) near the airport and damaged some small buildings.*

**bomb<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**1** to attack a place with bombs: *Enemy aircraft bombed the city, destroying many homes.*

**2** *informal* if a play, movie, etc. bombs, it is not successful: *His second movie bombed – almost no one went to see it.*

**bom-bard** /bʌm'bɑːd/ *verb, formal*

to attack a place for a long time with guns and bombs: *For three days, the army bombarded the city until much of it was destroyed.*

—**bombardment** *noun* the act of bombarding a place

**bomb-er** /'bʌmər/ *noun*

**1** an airplane that drops bombs on a place

**2** someone who puts a bomb somewhere

**bond** /bʌnd/ **Ac** *noun, formal*

a strong feeling of love or trust that people have for each other: *There was a special bond between Carlos and his younger brother.*

**bone** /boʊn/ *noun*

one of the hard parts that form the frame of the body: *Sam fell and broke a bone in his arm.*

**bon-fire** /'bʌn,faɪər/ *noun*

a large outdoor fire: *The kids wanted to make a bonfire with the branches to cook hotdogs.*

**bo-nus** /'boʊnəs/ *noun*

**1** some money that you get from your employer that is more than your regular pay: *If employees work hard, they get a bonus at the end of the year.*

**2** something good that is more than you expected: *He's very nice, and he's good-looking, which is a bonus!*

**bon-y** /'boʊni/ *adjective*

**1** very thin: *He had long bony fingers.*

**2** bony fish has a lot of small bones in it

**boo<sup>1</sup>** /bu/ *verb*

to shout "BOO" to show that you do not like a play, performer, etc.: *The crowd booed when he announced that the game had been canceled.*

**boo<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** a word people shout to show that they do not like a play, performer, etc.: *There were boos from the audience when the singer forgot the words to the song.*

**2** a word you shout as a joke, to surprise someone who does not know you are there: *Tammy hid behind the door, ready to yell "Boo!"*

**boo-by trap** /'bubi træp/ *noun*

a bomb that is hidden and that explodes when you touch something connected to it

**book<sup>1</sup>** /bʊk/ *noun*

**1** something that you read that has a lot of pages inside a cover: *I'm reading a good book. | Do you like books by William Faulkner (=written by him)? | The book is about hip hop music.*

**THESAURUS: book****Types of book**

**nonfiction** books which talk about real things, people, or events: *I like reading nonfiction, especially history and biography.*

**fiction** books which describe people and events that have not really happened: *It's fiction, but it gives you an idea about what life as a slave was like.*

**literature** fiction that people think is important: *My class on American Literature is reading "Huckleberry Finn."*

**reference book** a book such as a dictionary or encyclopedia that you look at to find information: *I checked a reference book to see when the Civil War ended.*

**textbook** a book that is used in the classroom: *a science textbook*

**novel** a book about people and events that have not really happened: *All three novels are about the same characters.*

**2** pieces of paper fastened together in a cover for writing on: *an address book* (=for writing down people's addresses)

**3 a book of stamps/tickets** = a number of stamps or tickets inside a cover



**book<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** if someone is booked for a crime, the police write a formal statement saying that he or she may be guilty of the crime: *Newton was arrested and booked for robbery.*

**2** if you book a seat on an airplane, a hotel room, etc. it is kept for you until you use it: *I booked a flight to Houston.*

**book-case** /'buk-keɪs/ noun

a piece of furniture with shelves for books

→ See picture on page A8

**book-keep-er** /'buk,kipə/ noun

someone whose job is keeping a record of the money that a business receives and spends **SYNONYM accountant**

**book-keep-ing** /'buk,kipɪŋ/ noun

the job of keeping a record of the money that a business receives and spends **SYNONYM accounting**

**book-let** /'buklət/ noun

a very short book that has information about something: *The eight-page booklet is full of advice for travelers.*

**book-shelf** /'bukʃelf/ noun plural

**bookshelves** /'bukʃelvz/

a shelf that you keep books on

→ See picture on page A10

**book-store** /'bukstɔː/ noun

a store that sells books

**boom<sup>1</sup>** /bum/ noun, formal

**1** a deep loud sound, like the sound of guns or drums: *At night we could hear the boom of the big guns.*

**2** a time when businesses suddenly make a lot more money: *Recently, there has been a boom in tourism as more and more people travel.* **ANTONYM slump**

**boom<sup>2</sup>** verb

to make a deep loud sound, like the sound of guns or drums: *Guns boomed in the distance, and we were all scared.*

**boost** /bust/ verb

to increase or improve something: *If we practice hard, we boost our chances of winning.*

—**boost** noun an act of increasing or improving something: *The movie's success gave his career a boost (=improved his career).*

**boot<sup>1</sup>** /but/ noun

a shoe that covers your foot and sometimes part of your leg: *If it's snowing outside, you'll have to wear your boots.*

→ See picture at **shoe**

**boot<sup>2</sup>** also **boot up** verb

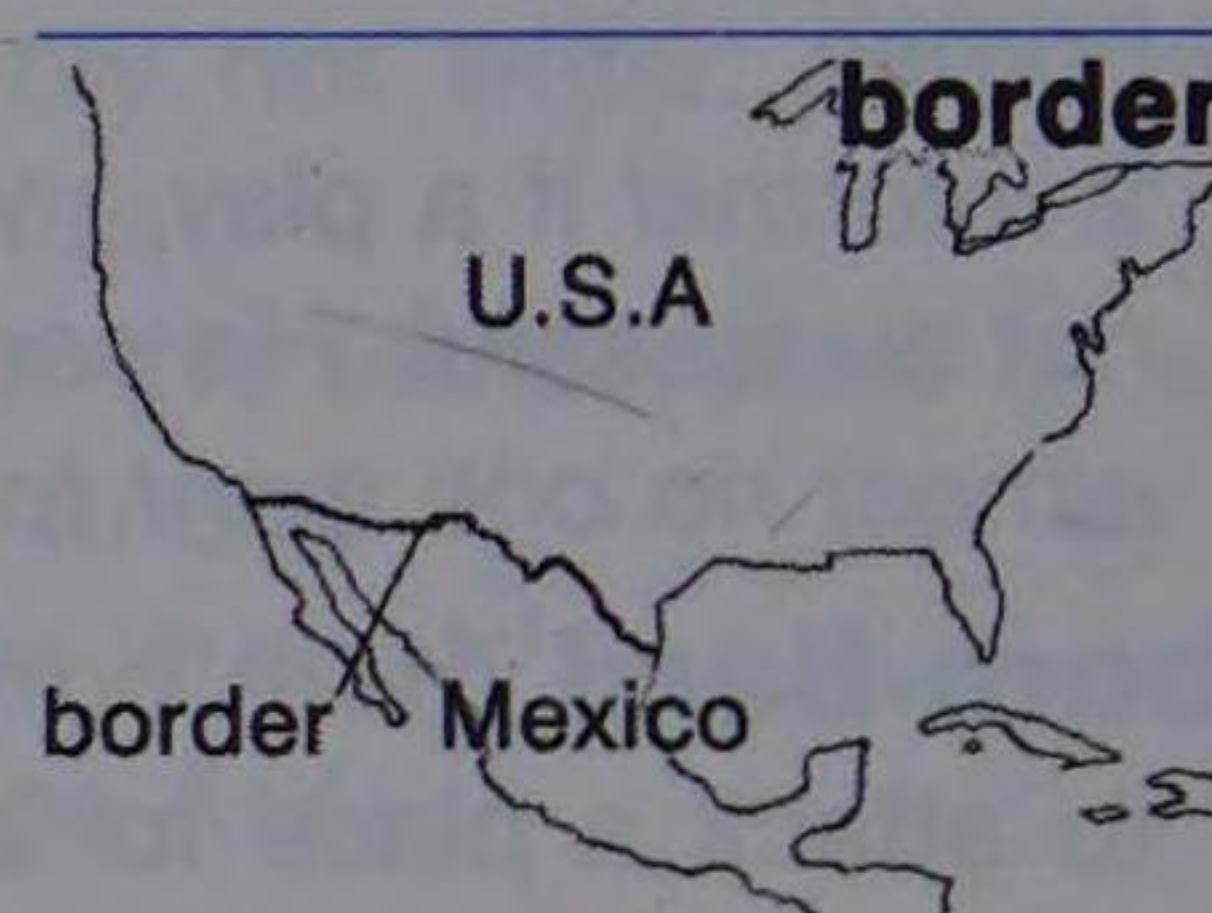
to start the program that makes a computer ready to use: *I made coffee while my computer was booting up.*

**booth** /buθ/ noun

a small place where one person goes to do something: *You can go into a booth in the store to listen to the music. I a phone booth*

**bor-der** /'bɔːdər/ noun

**1** the line between two states or countries: *We crossed the border between the U.S. and Mexico.*



**2** a narrow area of a different color around the edge of something: *She was wearing a black skirt with a red border.*

**bore<sup>1</sup>** /bɔːr/ verb

the past tense of BEAR

**bore<sup>2</sup>** verb

if something bores you, you are not interested in it: *The movie really bored me, so I left.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **bore** noun
- **bore** verb
- **bored** adjective
- **boring** adjective
- **boredom** noun

**bore<sup>3</sup>** noun

someone or something that is not interesting: *This homework is a bore!*

**bored** /bɔːd/ adjective

if you are bored, you feel that what you are doing is not interesting: *Lisa felt bored with her life and wanted to do something new and exciting.*

—**boredom** noun the state of feeling bored

→ See picture on page A23

**bor-ing** /'bɔːrɪŋ/ adjective

not interesting: *We watched a boring show on TV and I almost fell asleep.*



**THESAURUS: boring**

**dull** not interesting or exciting: *The book was really dull.*

**tedious** formal boring, and continuing for a long time: *Typing the lists was tedious work.*

**not interesting:** *The movie wasn't very interesting.*

**born** /bɔːn/ adjective

**1 be born** = to begin life when you come out of your mother's body: *I was born in Guatemala in 1999.*

**2 a born leader/athlete, etc.** = someone who is naturally good at being a leader, good at sports, etc.: *Michelle was a born actress – she's been acting since she was a little girl.*

**borne** /bɔːn/ verb

the past participle of BEAR

**bor-ough** /'bɒrəʊ/ noun

an area of a large city with its own government that is responsible for the schools, hospitals, roads, etc. in the area: *There are five boroughs in New York City.*

**bor-row** /'bɒrəʊ/ verb

**1** to use something that belongs to another person and give it back later: *Can I borrow your bike? I need to go to the library.*

**USAGE: borrow**

If you **borrow** something from someone, you take something that someone gives you for a short time, and then you give it back: *Can I borrow your pen?*

You cannot say "Can I lend your pen?"

If you **lend** something to someone, you give it to him or her so that she or he can use it for a short time: *I lent that DVD to Rick. | Mom, could you lend me some money?*

You cannot say "Could you borrow me some money?"

**2** if you borrow money from a bank, the bank gives you the money and you promise to pay it back: *Ellen borrowed \$5,000 from the bank to pay for the car.*

**bor-row-er** /'bɒrəʊə/ noun, formal  
someone who borrows money from a bank

**boss<sup>1</sup>** /bɒs/ noun

a person at work who has a higher position than you and who directs your work: *Danny asked his boss if he could leave work early.*

**boss<sup>2</sup>** verb

**boss someone around** = to tell someone what to do in an annoying way: *My brother's always bossing me around and I don't like it.*

**boss-y** /'bɒsi/ adjective

someone who is bossy often tells other people what to do in an annoying way: *I don't like Marcia. She's so bossy and always thinks she's right.*

**bot-a-ny** /'bɒtn-i/ noun

the study of plants: *If you like plants, maybe you should study botany.*

—**botanist** noun a scientist who studies plants

**both** /bəʊθ/ adjective, pronoun

used for talking about two people or things: *John and Reggie are both very tall. | "Which of these two dresses do you like?" "I like both." | Hold the bowl in both hands.*

**GRAMMAR: both****both, both of**

Do not say "The both men were from Los Angeles." Say: *Both of the men were from Los Angeles, both men were from Los Angeles, or both the men were from Los Angeles.*

Do not say "his both sisters." Say: *both of his sisters or both his sisters.*

**both-er<sup>1</sup>** /'bɒðə/ verb

**1** to annoy someone by wanting attention when he or she is busy: *Don't bother your dad; he's working.*

**2** to make someone feel worried or upset: *When I get bad grades, it really bothers me.*

**3** to make an effort to do something: *Pete didn't bother to answer her – he just kept talking. | I'll never get the job, so why bother to apply?*

**4** if a part of your body bothers you, it hurts a little: *My ankle's bothering me – maybe I should go to the doctor.*

**bother<sup>2</sup>** noun

something or someone that annoys or upsets you: *I don't want to be a bother, but could I ask for some help?*



**bot·tle** /'batl/ noun

something that you buy or keep liquids in, usually made of glass or plastic: *I bought a bottle of soda.*

—**bottled** adjective bottled water, beer, etc. is water or beer that you buy in a bottle

**bot·tom** /'batəm/ noun

**1** the lowest part or side of something: *Look at the picture at the bottom of the screen. | There's some mud on the bottom of your shoes.* **ANTONYM** top

**2** the ground under an ocean or river: *The bottom of the river is rocky. | The ship sank and it's now at the bottom of the ocean.*

**3** informal the part of your body that you sit on

**4** the lowest position in a class, company, etc.: *His grades are bad, and he's always at the bottom of the class.* **ANTONYM** top

**bottom**<sup>2</sup> adjective

the bottom shelf, drawer, etc. is the lowest one: *We keep the toys on the bottom shelf so the kids can reach them.*

**bought** /bɒt/ verb

the past tense and past participle of **BUY**

**boul·der** /'bouldə/ noun

a large rock: *A huge boulder rolled off the mountain onto the beach.*

**bou·le·vard** /'buləvɑrd/ noun

a wide road in a city: *We drove down Sunset Boulevard.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **road**

**bounce**<sup>1</sup> /baʊns/ verb

**1** if a ball bounces, it hits the ground, a wall, etc. and moves up or away again: *He waited on the street, bouncing his basketball. | The ball bounced off the wall and hit me in the head.*

**2** to move up and down because you are walking or jumping on something soft: *Stop bouncing on the bed!*

→ See picture at **jump**

**bounce**<sup>2</sup> noun

an act of bouncing: *Catch the ball on its first bounce.*

**bounc·er** /'baʊnsə/ noun

someone whose job is making people leave clubs and bars if they are too noisy or violent

**bounc·y** /'baʊnsi/ adjective

**1** a bouncy ball moves quickly up and away after it hits something

**2** full of energy: *His walk was quick and bouncy.*

**bound**<sup>1</sup> /baʊnd/ verb

the past tense and past participle of **BIND**

**bound**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** **be bound to do something** = to be sure to do something: *Our team is bound to win – we have the best players.*

**2** formal going toward a place: *The plane was bound for Miami.*

**3** formal having a duty to do something: *We are all bound by the law (=must do what the law says).*

**bound**<sup>3</sup> verb, formal

**1** **be bounded by something** = if a place is bounded by a wall, river, road, etc., the wall, etc. goes around it: *The city is bounded by the river on two sides.*

**2** to move or jump with a lot of energy: *George bounded down the stairs and ran out the door.*

**bound**<sup>4</sup> noun, formal

a big jump into or over something: *With one bound he was over the gate.*

**bound·a·ry** /'baʊndəri/ noun plural boundaries

**1** the line that divides two areas of land: *Lake Ontario is on the boundary between New York State and Canada.*

**2** the limit of what is possible or normal: *His behavior was outside the boundaries of what the school says is acceptable (=his behavior was not acceptable at school).*

**bound·less** /'baʊndləs/ adjective, formal something that is boundless seems to have no limit: *He's a writer with a boundless imagination – his books are all different but very interesting.*

**boun·ti·ful** /'baʊntɪfəl/ adjective, formal if something is bountiful, there is a lot of it: *There was a bountiful crop of rice that year and everyone had enough to eat.*

**bou·quet** /bou'keɪ/ noun

some flowers that are tied together to give as a present or to carry: *a bouquet of roses*

**bout** /baʊt/ noun

**1** a short period of illness or activity: *I had a bout of the flu. | A bout of very cold weather killed many plants.*

**2** a **BOXING** or **WRESTLING** match



**bou-tique** /bu'tik/ *noun*

a small store that sells fashionable clothes

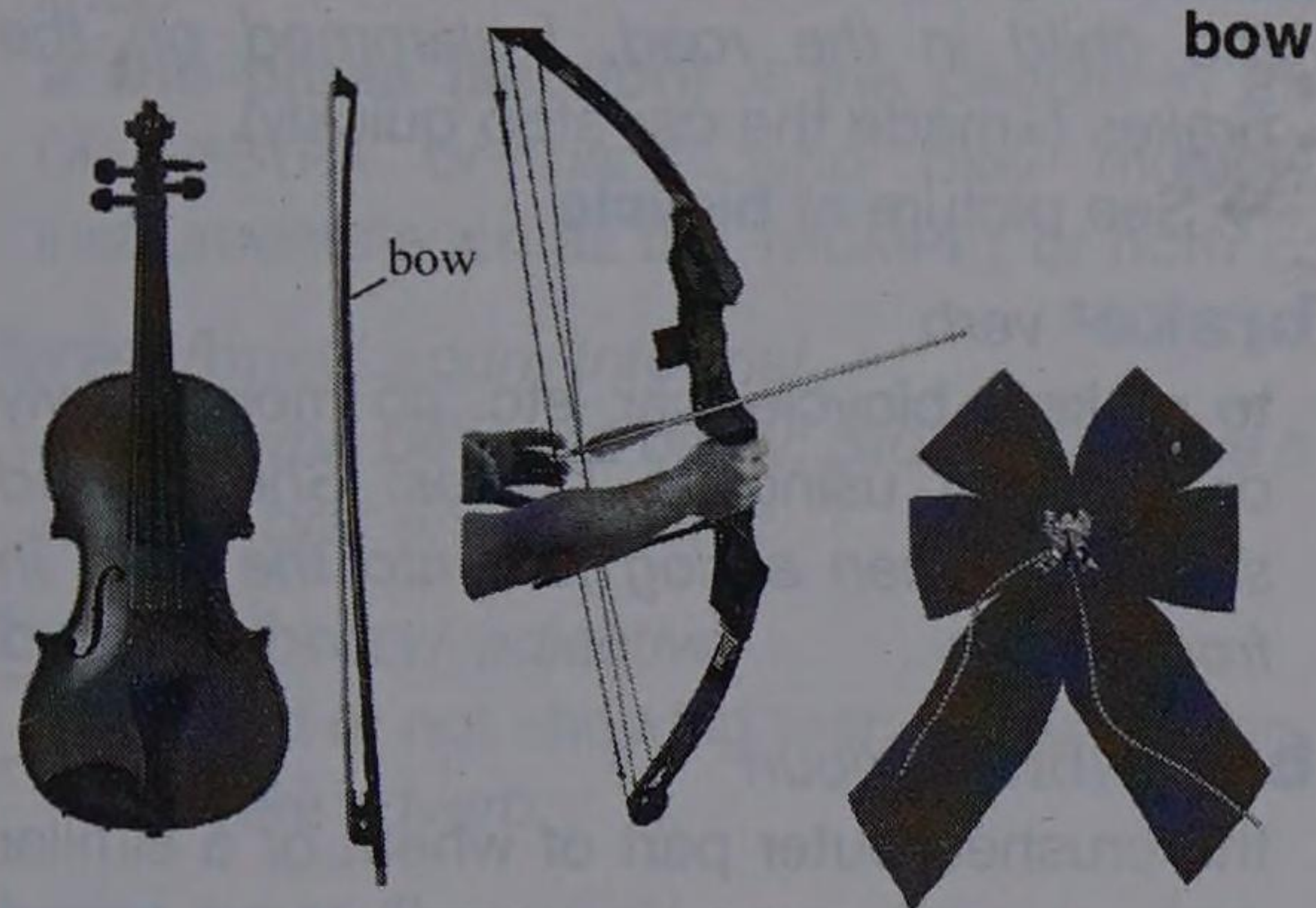
**bow<sup>1</sup>** /bau/ *verb*

to bend your head or the top part of your body forward, in order to show respect or thank an AUDIENCE: *The conductor bowed as the audience applauded.* | *David bowed his head in prayer.*

**bow<sup>2</sup>** /bau/ *noun*

**1** an act of bowing: *The actors took a bow (=bowed) and the curtain came down.*

**2** the front part of a ship or boat: *He sat in the bow of the boat.*

**bow<sup>3</sup>** /bou/ *noun*

**1** a piece of cloth, string, etc. tied in a knot with two LOOPS and two free ends: *The girl had a pretty pink bow in her hair.*

**2** a long thin piece of wood held in a curve by a tight string, used for shooting ARROWS: *Native Americans hunted with bows and arrows.*

**3** a long thin piece of wood with hair stretched from one end to the other, used for playing string instruments such as the VIOLIN

**bow-el** /'bauəl/ *noun*

the long tube inside your body through which food goes after it leaves your stomach

SYNONYM **intestine**

**bowl** /boul/ *noun*

a deep round dish or container: *He ate a bowl of cereal.*

**bowling** /'bouliŋ/ *noun*

an indoor game in which you try to knock down a group of objects by rolling a heavy ball at them: *The kids and I went bowling yesterday.*

**bow tie** /'bou taɪ/ *noun*

a man's tie which has a knot with two LOOPS and two free ends

**box<sup>1</sup>** /baks/ *noun*

**1** a container with four sides, usually made of CARDBOARD (=stiff thick paper) or wood: *I put all her clothes in a box and sent them to her.* | *a box of chocolates*

**2** a small area on an official form for people to write information in: *Write your name in the box at the top of the form.*

**box<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to fight someone as a sport while wearing big leather GLOVES

**box-er** /'baksə/ *noun*

someone who boxes as a job

**box-ing** /'baksiŋ/ *noun*

the sport of fighting while wearing big leather GLOVES: *He performed well today in the boxing ring (=the area where boxers fight).*

→ See picture on page A24

**'box ,office** *noun*

a place in a theater, concert hall, etc. where you can buy tickets: *Tickets are on sale now at the box office.*

**boy** /bɔɪ/ *noun*

a male child or a young man: *He likes most of the boys in his class.* | *How old is your little boy (=your young son)?*

—**boyish** *adjective* looking or behaving like a boy: *He's 30 but still has a boyish face.*

—**boyhood** *noun*, *formal* the time when someone is a boy: *a boyhood friend* (=a friend he had when he was a boy)

**boy-cott** /'bɔɪkɒt/ *verb*

to refuse to buy something, use something, or do something, as a way of protesting: *Several countries will boycott the competition because they believe it is unfair.*

—**boycott** *noun*: *The group organized a boycott of the company's products to try to improve conditions for the company's workers.*

**boy-friend** /'bɔɪfrend/ *noun*

a boy or man that someone has a romantic relationship with: *Carol and her boyfriend went to a movie on Friday.*

**'Boy Scouts** *plural noun*

an organization for boys that teaches them practical skills

—**Boy Scout** *noun*

**bra** /bra/ *noun*

a piece of underwear that a woman wears to support her breasts



**brace-let** /'breɪslət/ noun

a piece of jewelry that you wear around your wrist

→ See picture at **jewelry**

**brac-es** /'breɪsɪz/ plural noun

wires which some people have on their teeth to make them straight

**brack-et** /'brækɪt/ noun

**1** one of the pair of marks [ ] put around extra information: *What do the numbers in brackets mean?*

**2 age/income, etc. bracket formal** = a particular range of ages, incomes, etc.: *people in the 18–24 age bracket* (=people who are between 18 and 24 years old)

**brag** /bræg/ verb bragged, bragging

to talk too proudly about what you have done, what you own, etc.: *He was bragging about the cool things he got for his birthday and trying to make us jealous.* **SYNONYM** boast

**braid<sup>1</sup>** /breɪd/ verb

to twist together three amounts of hair, pieces of rope, etc. so that they form one piece: *Her mother was braiding her long hair.*

**braid<sup>2</sup>** noun

three amounts of hair twisted together into a shape like a rope: *She wore her hair in braids.*

**braille** /breɪl/ noun

raised round marks that blind people can read by touching them: *The labels on the chemicals are in braille so blind people can read them.*

**brain** /breɪn/ noun

the part inside your head that controls how you think, feel, and move: *Which part of the brain controls how we move?* | *The drug can cause brain damage.*

→ See picture on page A2

**brains** /breɪnz/ plural noun, informal

the ability to think well: *The kid's definitely got brains – he always gets perfect scores on his tests.*

**brain-storm** /'breɪn, stɔːrm/ verb

if a group of people brainstorms, they try to think of many different ways of doing something in order to solve a problem: *We were brainstorming about new ways to get children to read.*

**brain-wash** /'breɪnwɒʃ/ verb

to make someone believe something that is not true, by repeating it many times and making him or her unable to think clearly: *They claim that the group brainwashes its members to get money from them.*

**brain-y** /'breɪni/ adjective, informal

able to think well and learn quickly: *He's a brainy little boy who always knows the right answer.*

**brake<sup>1</sup>** /breɪk/ noun

the part of a bicycle, car, etc. that you use to make it go more slowly or stop: *When I saw the child in the road, I slammed on the brakes* (=made the car stop quickly).

→ See picture at **bicycle**

**brake<sup>2</sup>** verb

to make a bicycle, car, etc. go more slowly or stop by using its brakes: *She braked suddenly when a dog ran into the road in front of her.*

**bran** /bræn/ noun

the crushed outer part of wheat or a similar grain

**branch<sup>1</sup>** /bræntʃ/ noun

**1** a part of a tree that grows out from the main part: *He climbed up into the lowest branches of the tree.*

**2** a store, bank, group, etc. that is part of a large organization: *The bank has branches all over the country.*

**3** one part of a large subject of study or knowledge: *Geometry is a branch of mathematics.*

**branch<sup>2</sup>** verb**PHRASAL VERB****branch out**

to do something new in addition to what you usually do: *She designs clothes for women, but she has recently branched out into men's clothing.*

**brand** /brænd/ noun

a type of product made by a particular company: *What brand of soap do you use?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **type<sup>1</sup>**

**bran-dish** /'brændɪʃ/ verb, formal

to wave something around in a threatening way: *He ran into the store brandishing a knife and demanding money.*



**brand-'new** adjective

new and never used before: *I've never had a brand-new car – I always buy used cars.*

**bran-dy** /'brændi/ noun plural brandies

a strong alcoholic drink made from wine

**brash** /bræʃ/ adjective

behaving and talking too confidently: *He was a brash young salesman who sometimes offended customers.*

**brass** /bræs/ noun

**1** a very hard bright yellow metal that is a mixture of COPPER and ZINC: *a brass door-knob*

**2 the brass (section)** = the people in an ORCHESTRA or band who play musical instruments such as the TRUMPET or horn

**brat** /bræt/ noun, informal

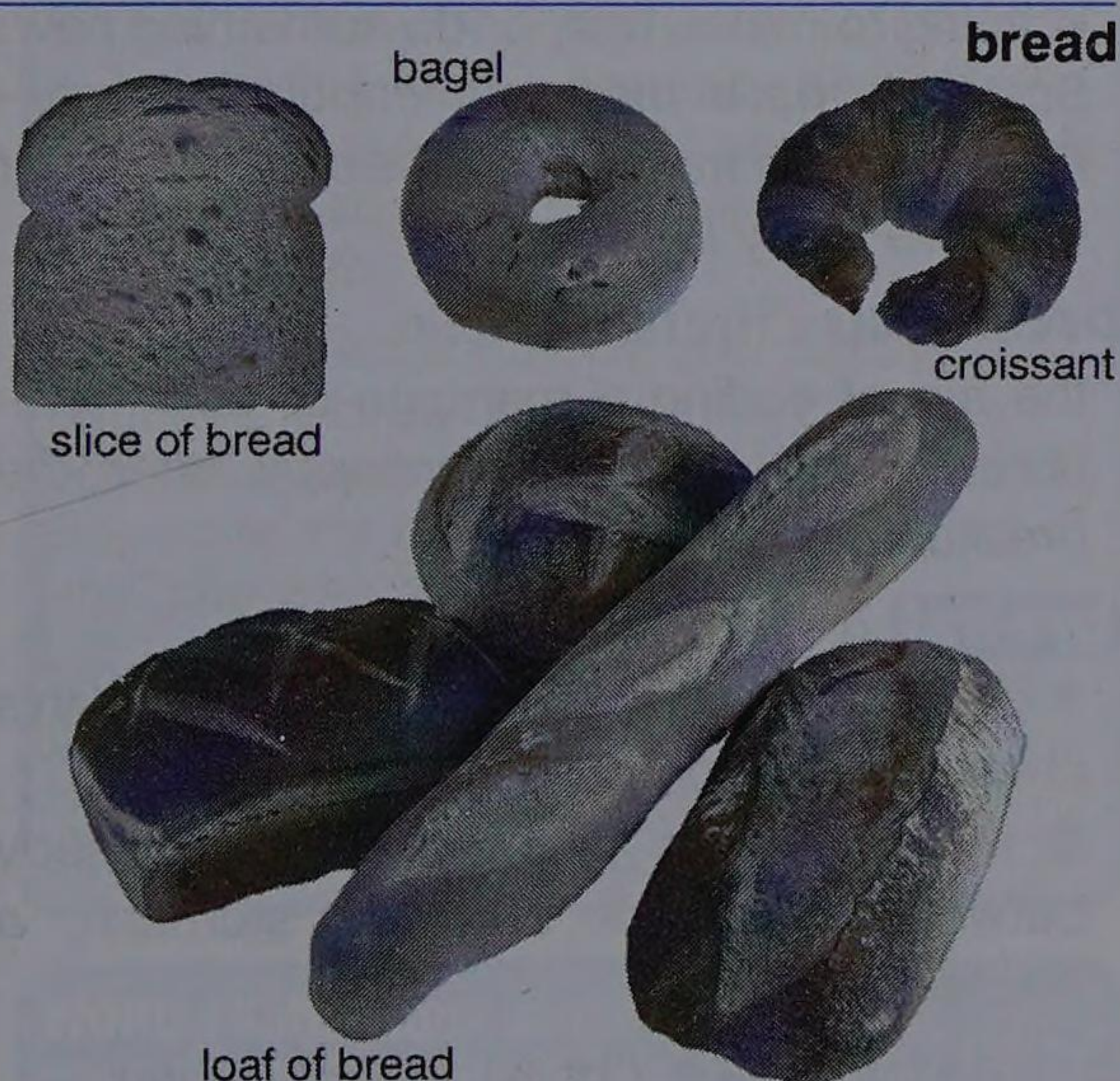
a child who behaves badly: *Stop acting like a spoiled brat and help me.*

**brave** /breɪv/ adjective

not afraid or not showing fear: *brave soldiers* —**bravely** adverb

**brav-er-y** /'breɪvəri/ noun, formal

brave behavior, or the quality of being brave: *He showed great bravery in the battle and saved many other men.* **SYNONYM** courage; **ANTONYM** cowardice

**bread** /bred/ noun

a food made by mixing flour, water, and YEAST, and then baking it: *white bread* | *She cut me a slice of bread* (=one thin piece). | *a loaf of bread* (=an amount of bread that you can cut slices from)

**breadth** /bredθ/ noun, formal

**1** the distance from one side of something to the other: *The wall is one foot in breadth.*

**SYNONYM** width

**2** the fact that something includes a large number of different things: *They were impressed by his breadth of knowledge* (=the fact that he knew many different things).

**break<sup>1</sup>** /breɪk/ verb broke /brəʊk/ broken /'brəʊkən/

**1** if something breaks, or if you break it, it separates into pieces, especially when it is hit or dropped: *The plate fell on the floor and broke.* | *Who broke that window?* | *I broke my leg* (=broke the bone in my leg). | *Break up the ice with a hammer* (=break it into many pieces).

**THESAURUS: break**

**smash** used when a plate, glass, or window breaks because it has been hit with a lot of force: *The baseball hit the window and smashed it.*

**shatter** used when a plate or glass breaks into a lot of small pieces: *I dropped a glass, and it shattered everywhere.*

**crack** used when a plate, glass, window, etc. is broken so that there is a line between two parts of it: *This cup is cracked.*

**tear** used about paper or cloth: *I tore my jeans when I fell down.*

**snap** used about something that breaks into two pieces, making a loud noise: *The stick snapped in two.*

**burst** used when something with liquid inside it breaks: *Our pipes had burst in the freezing weather.*

**pop** used when a bubble or balloon breaks: *The game is to pop the balloons by sitting on them.*

**2** to damage a machine so that it does not work: *Jimmy broke the DVD player.*

**3** to do something that a law or rule says you must not do: *Students who break the rules will have to stay after school.*

**4 break a promise** = to not do what you promised to do: *I said I wouldn't tell anyone her secret, but I broke my promise.*

**5 break a record** = to do something faster or better than it has ever been done before:



*He broke the world record in the 400 meters.*

**6 break the news to someone** = to tell someone about something bad that has happened: *She began to cry as the police broke the news to her.*

**7 break for lunch/coffee, etc.** = to stop working in order to eat or drink something

**8 break free** = to escape from a person who is holding you or from a situation: *She managed to break free from the man and run away.*

**9 break even** = to neither make a profit nor lose money: *We broke even in our first year of business.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### break down

**1** if a car or a large machine breaks down, it stops working: *My car broke down on the highway.*

**2** to be unable to stop yourself from crying: *She broke down during the funeral.*

##### break in/break into something

to use force to get into a building, usually in order to steal things: *They broke into the house through the back window.*

##### break something off

to end a relationship or discussion: *They've broken off their engagement.*

##### break out

**1** if something bad such as a fire, war, or disease breaks out, it begins to happen: *The fire broke out at two o'clock in the morning.*

**2** to begin to have red spots on your skin either from ACNE or because of an illness: *The girl had broken out in a rash (=started to have red spots from an illness). I Chocolate makes me break out.*

##### break up

to end a relationship with a boyfriend or girlfriend: *She'd just broken up with Joe.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **stop<sup>1</sup>**, **vacation**

##### break<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a period of time when you stop working, studying, etc.: *I'm tired. Let's take a break. I She's on her lunch break. (=not working because she is eating lunch). I Spring break (=spring vacation from college) is at the end of March.*

**2** a period of time when something stops for a while and then starts again: *She waited for a break in the conversation.*

**3 give someone a break informal** = to stop

annoying or criticizing someone: *Give me a break! I've heard enough jokes about me today.*

**4** a chance to become successful: *The band's big break came when they sang on a national TV show.*

**5** a space between two parts of something: *a break in the clouds*

##### break-down /'breɪkdaʊn/ noun

**1** another word for a NERVOUS BREAKDOWN: *My father had a breakdown when I was eleven and had to quit his job and spend time in a hospital.*

**2** the failure of a relationship or system: *There was a breakdown in the peace talks and the fighting began again.*

**3** an occasion when a car or a piece of machinery stops working

##### break-fast /'breɪkfəst/ noun

the first meal of the day: *I had bacon and eggs for breakfast.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meal**

##### 'break-in noun

an occasion when someone uses force to get into a building in order to steal things: *There was a break-in at the office and several computers were stolen.*

##### break-through /'breɪkθruː/ noun

an important achievement by someone who is trying to make, find, or do something new: *Scientists have made an important breakthrough in the treatment of heart disease that will save many lives.*

##### break-up /'breɪkʌp/ noun

the act of ending a marriage or other relationship: *He was very unhappy after the breakup of his marriage.*

##### breast /breɪst/ noun

**1** one of the two round parts on a woman's chest that can produce milk

**2** the part of a bird's or person's body between the neck and the stomach: *a chicken breast*

##### breast-stroke /'breɪst,straʊk/ noun

a way of swimming in which you push your arms forward and then move them around to your sides

##### breath /breθ/ noun

**1** the air that you take in and let out when you breathe: *Take a deep breath (=breathe*



in a lot of air once). | *He had bad breath* (=his breath smelled bad).

**2 hold your breath** = to deliberately not breathe for a while, after breathing in: *I stayed under water until I couldn't hold my breath anymore.*

**3 be out of breath** = to be having difficulty breathing because you have been running or exercising: *I was out of breath from climbing so many stairs.*

**4 catch your breath** = to begin breathing normally again after you have been running or exercising: *I had to sit down to catch my breath.*

**5 under your breath** *formal* = in a quiet voice: *He swore under his breath.*

### **breathe** /brið/ verb

to take air into your body through your nose or mouth and let it out again: *He's not dead – he's still breathing.* | *I don't want to breathe your cigarette smoke.* | *OK, now breathe out slowly* (=let the air come out of your body slowly).

—**breathing** noun: *His breathing was very loud.*

#### **THESAURUS: breathe**

**pant** to breathe quickly with short breaths, especially after exercising: *The boys were panting after the race.*

**be out of breath** if you are out of breath, it is hard to breathe normally because you have been exercising or you are sick: *She has a disease that makes her feel out of breath.*

**gasps** to breathe quickly and loudly, because it is hard to breathe because you have been exercising or you are sick: *She rode the bike as fast as she could, until she was gasping for breath.*

**wheeze** to breathe with a noise in your throat and chest, because you are sick: *He has the flu and is wheezing and coughing.*

#### **WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **breathe** verb
- **breath** noun
- **breathing** noun

### **breath-less** /'breθləs/ adjective

if you are breathless, you are having trouble breathing: *I was breathless from running.*

### **breath-tak-ing** /'breθ,tɜ:kɪŋ/ adjective, *formal*

extremely beautiful, impressive, or surprising: *Our hotel room had a breathtaking view of the mountains.*

### **breed**<sup>1</sup> /brɪd/ noun

one type of an animal that is kept as a pet or on a farm: *What is your favorite breed of dog? I like poodles.*

### **breed**<sup>2</sup> verb bred /bred/

**1** if animals breed, they have babies

**2** to keep animals in order to produce young ones: *He breeds horses.*

### **breeze** /brɪz/ noun

a light gentle wind: *There was a nice cool breeze blowing through the window.*

—**breezy** adjective with the wind blowing: *a breezy day*

→ See Thesaurus box at **wind**<sup>1</sup>

### **brew** /bru/ verb

**1** to make a drink by leaving tea leaves or crushed coffee beans in boiling water: *She brewed a pot of coffee.*

**2** to make beer

**3 be brewing** = if something bad is brewing, it will happen soon: *Trouble was brewing, and I knew something bad was going to happen.*

—**brewery** noun a place where beer is made

### **bribe** /braɪb/ verb

to give money or a gift to someone so that they will do something illegal or dishonest for you: *He bribed the guard to leave the door unlocked so he could escape.*

—**bribe** noun money or a gift that is used to bribe someone: *Three police officers have been accused of taking bribes* (=accepting money to do something dishonest).

—**bribery** noun the action of bribing someone

### **brick** /brɪk/ noun

a hard block of baked clay, used for building

### **bride** /braɪd/ noun

a woman who is getting married or who has just gotten married: *The bride and groom were just leaving the church.*

—**bridal** adjective relating to a bride or a wedding: *a bridal gown*

### **bride-groom** /'braɪdgrʊm/ noun

another word for GROOM



**B**  
**brides·maid** /'braɪdzmeɪd/ *noun*

a girl or woman who helps a bride at her wedding



bridge

**bridge** /brɪdʒ/ *noun*

**1** a structure built over a river, road, etc. so that people or vehicles can go from one side to the other: *We looked down at the water as we drove across the Golden Gate Bridge.*

**2** a card game for four people

**brief** /brɪf/ **Ac** *adjective, formal*

**1** continuing for a short time: *After a brief period without work, he found another job.*

ANTONYM **long**

**2** using only a few words: *He gave a brief description of the man, but he couldn't describe him exactly.*

—**briefly** *adverb*: *She spoke briefly to reporters this morning but did not say anything new.*

**brief·case** /'brɪfkeɪs/ *noun*

a flat box or bag with a handle, used for carrying papers

→ See picture on page A6

**brief·ing** /'brɪfɪŋ/ **Ac** *noun*

an occasion when someone gives you all the information you need about a situation: *A White House spokesman explained the situation at a press briefing (=an occasion when information is given to reporters).*

**bright** /braɪt/ *adjective*

**1** having or producing a lot of light: *a bright sunny day | the bright lights in the football stadium*

**2** bright colors are strong and easy to see: *a bright red sweater*

**3** quick at learning things: *Susan is a very bright child.* **SYNONYM** **intelligent**

—**brightly** *adverb*: *The sun shone brightly. | brightly colored ribbons*

—**brightness** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **intelligent**

**bright·en** /'braɪtn/ also **brighten up**

*verb*

**1** to become brighter or lighter: *The sky was brightening.*

**2** to make something look more colorful and attractive: *Flowers would brighten up this room.*

**3** *formal* to become or look happier: *His face brightened when he heard the good news.*

**bril·liant** /'brɪljənt/ *adjective*

**1** extremely intelligent or good at your work: *a brilliant scientist*

**2** a brilliant light or color is very bright: *The sky was a brilliant blue.*

—**brilliantly** *adverb*

—**brilliance** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **intelligent**

**brim<sup>1</sup>** /brɪm/ *noun*

**1** the part of a hat that sticks out around your head: *a hat with a wide brim*

**2** **the brim** = the top of a container, such as a glass: *The glass was filled to the brim (=completely full).*

**brim<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**be brimming with something** = to be full of something: *She was brimming with confidence after her win.*

**bring** /brɪŋ/ *verb* **brought** /brɒt/

**1** to take someone or something with you to a place or person: *Will you bring me a glass of water? | Can I bring a friend to the party? | My father brought this doll back from Japan. | She brought her daughter along (=with her).*

**THESAURUS: bring**

**bring** to take something or someone to a place: *You should bring her some flowers. | Elise brought her friend with her to the party.*

**take** to move something from one place to another, or help someone go from one place to another: *You'd better take your jacket – it's getting cold. | I can take you home after the concert.*

**get** to go to another place and come back with something or someone: *Just a minute while I get my jacket.*

**2** to make something happen or come: *Every change brings new problems. | Her*



songs have brought pleasure to millions of people.

**3** to cause something to be in a particular position or state: *The injury brought his career in baseball to an end* (=ended his career). | *We want to bring down* (=reduce) *our costs*.

**4 cannot bring yourself to do something** = to not be able to make yourself do something: *I couldn't bring myself to talk about my mother's death for a long time*.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### bring something about

*formal* to make something happen: *How can we bring about these changes?*

##### bring someone in

to ask someone to help or become involved in a situation: *The local police brought in the FBI to help with the case*.

##### bring something on

to make something bad begin, for example an illness: *Stress can bring on a heart attack*.

##### bring something out

**1** to make something easier to notice, see, taste, etc.: *The color of the shirt brings out the blue in your eyes*.

**2 bring out the best/worst in someone** = to make someone behave in the best or worst way that he or she can: *Becoming a father has brought out the best in Dan*.

##### bring up

**1 bring someone up** = to care for and educate a child: *She brought up three children by herself*. **SYNONYM** *raise*

**2 bring something up** = to mention a particular subject in a conversation or discussion: *That's a good idea. I'll bring it up at the meeting*. **SYNONYM** *raise*

#### brink /brɪŋk/ noun

**the brink (of something)** *formal* = a situation in which something, usually something bad, will soon happen, if it is not prevented: *The country is on the brink of war, but leaders are trying to avoid it*.

#### brisk /brɪsk/ adjective

quick and full of energy: *We took a brisk walk to get our hearts pumping*.

—**briskly** *adverb*

#### bris-tle /'brɪsəl/ noun

a short stiff hair, wire, etc.: *a brush with short bristles*

#### Brit-ish¹ /'brɪtɪʃ/ adjective

from Great Britain: *the British government*

#### British² noun

**the British** = people from Great Britain: *The British love soccer*.

#### brit-tle /'brɪtl/ adjective

hard but easily broken: *Her bones are very brittle, so her hip broke easily when she fell*.

#### broad /brɒd/ adjective

**1** wide: *He has very broad shoulders and looks very strong*. | *a broad smile* **ANTONYM** *narrow*

**2** including many different kinds of things or people: *The college offers a broad range of classes, from carpentry to literature*. **ANTONYM** *narrow*

**3 in broad daylight** = during the day when it is light: *He was attacked in broad daylight*.

**broad-cast** /'brɒd,kæst/ verb broadcast  
to send out a radio or television program: *The music awards will be broadcast on national television*.

—**broadcast** noun a program on the radio or television: *a news broadcast*

—**broadcaster** noun someone who speaks on radio or television programs

#### broad-ly /'brɒdli/ adverb, formal

**1** in a general way: *I know broadly what to expect, but I would like to know more specific details*. **SYNONYM** *generally*

**2 smile/grin broadly** = to have a big smile on your face

#### Broad-way /'brɒdweɪ/ noun

an area of New York City where there are many theaters: *The show opens on Broadway next month*.

#### broc-co-li /'brɒkəli/ noun

a vegetable with groups of small green flower BUDS on thick stems

→ See picture on page A12

#### bro-chure /brɒʃʃʊr/ noun

a thin book that gives information or advertises something: *a travel brochure* (=a brochure giving information about places for vacations)

#### broil /brɔɪl/ verb

to cook something under or over direct heat: *She broiled the chicken in the oven*.

#### broke¹ /brɒk/ verb

the past tense of BREAK



**broke**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** if you are broke, you have no money at all: *I'd like to lend you the money, but I'm broke.*

**2 go broke** informal = if a business goes broke, it can no longer continue because it has no money

→ See Thesaurus box at **poor**

**bro·ken**<sup>1</sup> /'brʊkən/ verb

the past participle of BREAK

**broken**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** something that is broken is damaged or in pieces because it has been hit, dropped, etc.: *Don't move him – I think his leg is broken.* | *There was broken glass on the floor from the window.*

**2** not working correctly: *What time is it? My watch is broken.*

**bronze** /branz/ noun

a brownish metal made by mixing COPPER and TIN: *a bronze statue*

**brook** /brʊk/ noun

a small stream

**broom** /brʊm/ noun

a brush with a long handle, used for sweeping floors

**broth** /brɒθ/ noun

a clear soup: *chicken broth*

**broth·er** /'brʌðə/ noun

a boy or man who has the same parents as you: *This is my little brother* (=younger brother) *Charlie.*

—**brotherly** adjective kind, loyal, etc., like the behavior of a brother should be: *brotherly love*

**brother-in-law** noun

**1** the brother of your husband or wife

**2** the husband of your sister

**brought** /brɒt/ verb

the past tense and past participle of BRING

**brown** /braʊn/ adjective, noun

the color of coffee, wood, or soil: *dark brown hair*

**browse** /braʊz/ verb

**1** to look at things in a store, or at pages of a magazine, when you do not have a particular purpose: *She likes browsing through fashion magazines.*

**2** to search for information on the Internet: *People can now browse the Internet even faster.*

**bruise** /brʊz/

noun

a dark mark on your skin where it has been hit: *She had a big bruise on her arm where she had bumped into the door.*

—**bruised** adjective having one or more bruises: *She cried when she saw his bruised and bloody face.*

—**bruise** verb to get a bruise: *He bruised his knee in this afternoon's game.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **injury**, **mark**<sup>2</sup>

**brunch** /brʌntʃ/ noun

a meal that you eat in the late morning, as a combination of breakfast and LUNCH: *Let's meet at the restaurant and have brunch at about 11:30.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meal**

**bru·nette** /bru'net/ noun

a woman with dark brown hair

**brunt** /brʌnt/ noun

**bear/take the brunt of something** = to be affected most severely by something: *The front part of the truck bore the brunt of the collision.*

**brush****brush**<sup>1</sup> /brʌʃ/ noun

an object consisting of strong hairs fastened to a handle, used for cleaning, painting, etc.

→ **hairbrush**, **paintbrush**, **toothbrush**

→ See Thesaurus box at **touch**<sup>1</sup>

**brush**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to clean your teeth or make something such as hair look neat using a brush: *Have you brushed your teeth today?* | *She was brushing her hair in front of the mirror.*

**2** to remove something from a surface by moving a brush or your hand across the surface: *She brushed the crumbs off her lap.*



**3** to touch someone or something lightly as you go past: *Her sleeve brushed my arm as she walked past.*

**bru-tal** /'brʊtl/ *adjective*

very cruel or violent: *a brutal attack*

—**brutally** *adverb*: *He was brutally murdered.*

—**brutality** /bru'tæləti/ *noun* the quality of being brutal

**B.S.** *noun*

**Bachelor of Science** a university degree in a science subject

**bub-ble**<sup>1</sup> /'bʌbəl/ *noun*

a ball of air in a liquid: *soap bubbles | the bubbles in a glass of soda*

**bubble**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

if a liquid bubbles, it produces bubbles, usually because it is boiling: *Heat the sauce until it starts to bubble.*

**buck** /bʌk/ *noun*

**1** *informal* a dollar: *It costs 75 bucks.*

**2** a male DEER or rabbit

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**buck-et** /'bʌkɪt/ *noun*

an open container with a handle, used for carrying and holding liquids: *He put the fire out with a bucket of water.*

**buck-le** /'bʌkəl/ *noun*

a metal object used to fasten a belt, shoe, bag, etc.

—**buckle** *verb* to fasten something using a buckle: *He got into the car and buckled his seat belt.*

→ See picture at **watch**<sup>2</sup>

**bud** /bʌd/ *noun*

a young flower or leaf that has not yet opened: *The buds on the rose bushes were just starting to open.*

**Bud-dhis-m** /'bʊdɪzəm/ *noun*

a religion based on the teachings of Buddha. It includes the belief that if people stop wanting things, they will no longer suffer.

—**Buddhist** *noun* someone whose religion is Buddhism

**bud-dy** /'bʌdi/ *noun* plural **buddies**

*informal*

a friend: *He's one of Mike's buddies from school.*

**budge** /bʌdʒ/ *verb*

**not budge** = if people or things do not budge, they do not move at all when someone wants them to move: *I pulled, but the dog wouldn't budge.*

**budg-et**<sup>1</sup> /'bʌdʒɪt/ *noun, formal*

an amount of money that a person or organization can spend: *The company has a budget of \$35 million this year.*

**budget**<sup>2</sup> *verb, formal*

to plan how much money you can spend: *We budgeted \$1,500 for our vacation.*

**buf-fa-lo** /'bʌfəˌloʊ/ *noun* plural

**buffaloes** or **buffalo**

a North American wild animal that looks like a large cow with thick hair on its neck and shoulders **SYNONYM** **bison**

**buf-fet** /bə'feɪ/ *noun*

a meal when people go to get the food they want from a table with lots of different kinds of food on it: *There was a lunch buffet with lots of salads, pasta, and sandwiches.*

**bug**<sup>1</sup> /bʌg/ *noun*

**1** *informal* an insect

**2** *informal* an illness that passes from one person to another easily: *Three kids in my class had a stomach bug and stayed home from school.*

**3** a small problem in a computer program that stops it from working well: *There must be a bug in the software – it's not working right.*

**bug**<sup>2</sup> *verb* **bugged**, **bugging** *informal*

to annoy someone: *That music is really bugging me. Can you turn it off?*

**build** /bɪld/ *verb* **built** /bɪlt/

**1** to make a building, a bridge, etc.: *My grandfather built this house himself. | The church was built of wood (=made from wood).*

**2** *also* **build up** to make something develop and get stronger: *Exercise will help to build up your muscles.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **build** *verb*

→ **builder** *noun*

→ **building** *noun*



**build·er** /'bɪldə/ *noun*

a company or person whose job is building things: *The company is the nation's largest home builder.*

**build·ing** /'bɪldɪŋ/ *noun*

**1** a house, school, or anything with a roof and walls: *a twenty-story building (=one with twenty levels) | We have a pool at our apartment building (=building in which there are many places to live). | The office was in a tall building on Main Street.*

**2** the process of making a house, school, road, etc.: *The building of the railroad took years.* **SYNONYM** construction

**build·up** /'bɪldʌp/ *noun*

a gradual increase: *There was a buildup of troops along the border.*

**built** /bɪlt/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of BUILD

**bulb** /bʌlb/ *noun*

the glass part of an electric light: *We need a new bulb in the bedroom.*

**SYNONYM** light bulb



bulb

**bulge** /bʌldʒ/ *verb*

if something bulges, it curves out because there is something inside or under it: *His pockets were bulging with money.*

—**bulge** *noun* the curved shape something makes when it bulges

**bulk** /bʌlk/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** the bulk (of something) = most of something: *The bulk of the work has been done.*

**2** the large size of something or someone: *The dinosaurs moved slowly because of their bulk.*

**bulk·y** /'bʌlki/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

big and heavy: *He was wearing a bulky black sweater over his shirt.*

**bull** /bʊl/ *noun*

a male cow, or the male of some other big animals

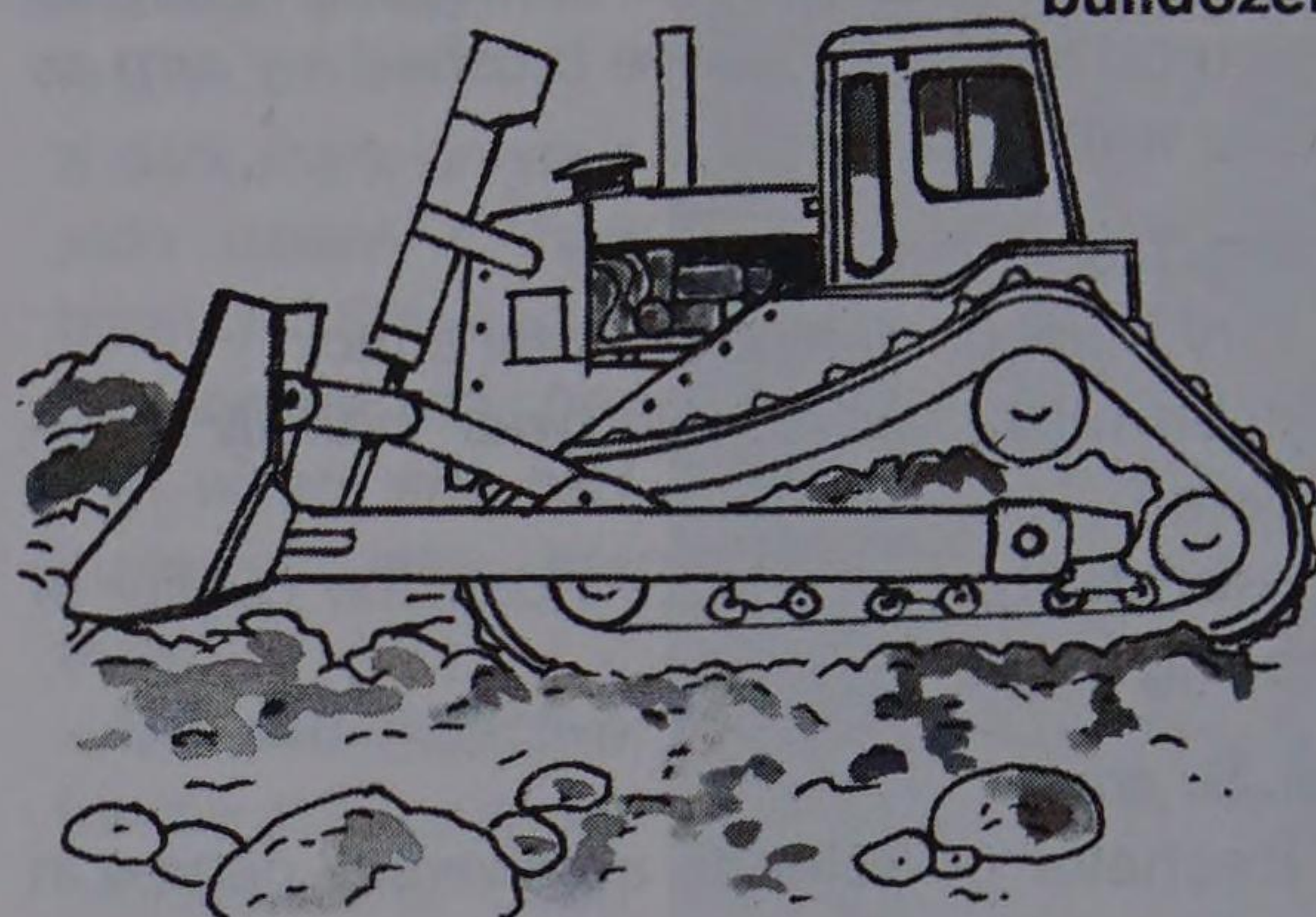
**bull·dog** /'bʊldɔg/ *noun*

a type of dog with a strong body and chest and short fur

**bull·doz·er** /'bʊldoʊzə/ *noun*

a powerful vehicle used for moving dirt and rocks

bulldozer



**bul·let** /'bʊlɪt/ *noun*

a small piece of metal that comes out of a gun when you fire it: *Who fired the bullet that killed him?*

**bul·le·tin** /'bʊlətɪn/ *noun*

information given in a short report or letter: *The church sends out a weekly bulletin to all its members.*

**'bulletin ,board** *noun*

**1** a board on a wall where people put information: *There's more information on the bulletin board in the cafeteria.*

**2** a place on a system of computers where you can leave messages for other people to read: *I posted a message on the bulletin board on the company's website.*

→ See picture on page A18

**bul·let·proof** /'bʊlɪt,pruf/ *adjective*

something that is bulletproof is made of material that stops bullets passing through it: *The windows in the bank were made of bulletproof glass.*

**'bull's-eye** *noun*

the center of a TARGET, that you aim at when you shoot

**bul·ly** /'bʊli/ *noun* plural bullies

someone who frightens or hurts people in order to make them do things

—**bully** *verb* to frighten or hurt people in order to make them do things: *He bullied me into giving him my money.*

**bum** /bʌm/ *noun, informal*

someone who is very lazy or does no work: *Get up, you lazy bum!*



**bum·ble** /'bʌmbəl/ also **bumble around**  
verb

to move around in a way that is not steady: *Josh was bumbling around in the dark, trying to find the light switch.*

**bum·ble·bee** /'bʌmbəl,bi/ noun  
a large BEE

**bump**<sup>1</sup> /bʌmp/ verb

to hit something by accident: *Joey fell and bumped his head on the table. | I hurt my arm when I bumped into the door.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**bump into someone** informal

to meet someone you know when you are not expecting it: *I bumped into a friend who I hadn't seen in five years.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **injury**

**bump**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a raised area on your skin where you hit it on something: *How did you get that bump on your head?*

**2** a raised area on the ground: *There were a lot of bumps in the road, so we drove slowly.*

**bump·er** /'bʌmpə/ noun

the part at the front and back of a car that protects it if it hits anything

→ See picture on page A28

**bump·y** /'bʌmpi/ adjective

a bumpy road is not smooth to drive on: *Their ranch was at the end of a bumpy dirt road.*

**bun** /bʌn/ noun

a small round type of bread for one person: a *hamburger bun*

**bunch** /bʌntʃ/ noun

**1** a **bunch of bananas/flowers/grapes, etc.** = a group of bananas, flowers, etc.: *He gave me a bunch of roses.*

**2** informal a lot of something: *I went to the mall with a bunch of my friends. | The doctor asked me a whole bunch of questions.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group**<sup>1</sup>

**bun·dle** /'bʌndl/ noun

a **bundle of papers/letters/clothes/sticks** = a group of papers, etc. that are usually tied together: *She went to her desk and took out a bundle of old letters.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group**<sup>1</sup>

**bun·gle** /'bʌŋɡəl/ verb

to do something badly: *He bungled a kick early in the game, and they lost by one point.*

**bunk** /bʌŋk/ noun

**1** one of two beds that are attached together, one on top of the other: *At camp, I slept on the top bunk.*

**2** a narrow bed on a ship or train, joined to the wall

**'bunk beds** noun

two beds that are built one on top of the other

**bun·ny** /'bʌni/ also **'bunny ,rabbit** noun  
plural **bunnies**

a word used by children to mean "rabbit"

**buoy** /'bui/ noun

an object that floats on water, used for showing which parts of an area of water are safe or dangerous: *The buoys mark the areas where boats can go.*

**bur·den** /'bɜːdn/ noun, formal

something you are responsible for that is difficult or that worries you: *My father's long illness was a burden on my mother.*

—**burdensome** adjective, formal difficult or worrying to deal with: *burdensome debts*

**bu·reau** /'byʊrou/ noun

**1** a government department: *the Federal Bureau of Investigation*

**2** an organization that collects or provides information: *I worked as a reporter for the Chicago City News Bureau.*

**bu·reauc·ra·cy** /byu'rəkrəsi/ noun, formal

official systems that are annoying because there are a lot of rules and it takes a long time to do things: *It took three months to get a visa because of all the bureaucracy.*

—**bureaucratic** /,byʊrə'krætɪk/ adjective relating to bureaucracy: *a bureaucratic government department*

**bur·glar** /'bɜːɡlɜː/ noun

someone who goes into houses, cars, etc. to steal things: *Burglars broke into the house and stole the TV.*

—**burglary** noun an occasion when someone steals things from a house, car, etc.: *There have been several burglaries in our neighborhood recently.*

—**burglarize** verb to go into a house, car, etc. and steal things



**B**  
**bur·i·al** /'beriəl/ noun, formal

the act of putting a dead person into the ground: *The tombs were used for burial of important people.*

**burn**<sup>1</sup> /bɜ:n/ verb burned or burnt /bɜ:nt/

**1** to destroy or damage something with fire: *We burned all the trash. | Many buildings are still burning in the city.*

**2** to hurt your body with fire or something hot: *Ricky burned his hand on the stove.*

**3** if a fire is burning, it is producing flames and heat: *A fire was burning in the fireplace.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****burn something down**

if a building burns down, fire destroys it: *The old hotel burned down a few years ago. | The police say that the two men burned the building down.*

**burn up**

to be destroyed by great heat: *The satellite will burn up as it falls back to Earth.*

**burn**<sup>2</sup> noun

an injury or mark caused by fire or heat: *She was taken to the hospital and treated for burns.*

**burn·out** /'bɜ:naʊt/ noun

the state of being extremely tired and unable to work any longer: *He stopped coaching in 2003 because of burnout.*

**burnt** /bɜ:nt/ verb

a past tense and past participle of BURN

**burp** /bɜ:p/ verb

if you burp, gas comes up from your stomach through your mouth and makes a noise: *Ross finished his dinner and burped loudly.*

—**burp** noun the noise you make when you burp

**bur·row** /'bɜ:rou/ noun

a hole in the ground that a rabbit or another small animal digs and lives in

—**burrow** verb if an animal burrows, it digs a hole in the ground

**burst**<sup>1</sup> /bɜ:st/ verb burst

**1** to break open suddenly because of pressure from air, water, etc. inside: *The balloon burst with a loud bang. | Don't burst the balloon – you'll scare the kids.*

**2 burst into tears** = to start crying suddenly: *"I hate you!" she shouted, and burst into tears.*

**3 burst out laughing** = to start laughing

suddenly: *"Look at his big ears," she said, and burst out laughing.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **break**<sup>1</sup>

**burst**<sup>2</sup> noun

**a burst of something** = a short period when there is suddenly more activity, noise, strong feelings, etc.: *He won the race in a final burst of speed. | The concert finished, and there was a loud burst of applause.*

**bur·y** /'beri/ verb buried, third person singular buries

**1** to put a dead person into the ground: *My grandfather was buried in the city graveyard.*

**2** to hide something by putting it in the ground or covering it with something: *The pirates buried their treasure on this island.*

**bus** /bʌs/ noun plural buses

a large vehicle that people pay to travel on: *Are you going to drive or go by bus? | Five people got on the bus.*

→ See picture on page A26

**bush** /bʊʃ/ noun

a plant like a small tree: *a rose bush*

**bush·el** /'bʊʃəl/ noun

a unit for measuring dry food, equal to 8 gallons or 36.4 liters

**bush·y** /'bʊʃi/ adjective

bushy hair or fur is thick and strong: *The man had a large nose and bushy eyebrows.*

**bus·i·ly** /'bɪzəli/ adverb

in a busy way: *Dad was in the kitchen, busily cooking breakfast.*

**busi·ness** /'bɪznɪs/ noun

**1** the work of buying and selling goods or providing services: *These days, we can do business over the Internet. | I'd love to have a job in the music business (=work relating to music). | He travels all over the world on business (=doing his work).*

**2** a company that earns money by selling things or providing services: *My brother started his own business, repairing computers.*

**3 mind your own business informal** = used when telling someone in a rude way that they should not ask you about something because it is private: *"Do you love Craig?" "Mind your own business!"*

**4 none of your business informal** = if something is none of your business, you should not expect to know about it: *It's none*



of his business, how much money I earn.

→ See Thesaurus box at **company**

**busi·ness·man** /'biznis,mæn/ *noun*  
plural **businessmen** /'biznis,men/  
someone who works in business or who owns a business: *Perry was a very successful businessman and owned his own company.*

**busi·ness·wom·an** /'biznis,wumən/ *noun* plural **businesswomen**  
/ 'biznis,wimin/  
a woman who works in business or who owns a business

**'bus ,station** *noun*  
a place where buses start and finish their trips

**'bus stop** *noun*  
a place where buses stop so people can get on and off: *I'm getting off at the next bus stop.* **SYNONYM** **stop**  
→ See picture on page A26

**bust<sup>1</sup>** /bʌst/ *noun*  
**1** a model of someone's head, shoulders, and upper chest: *a bust of Beethoven*  
**2** the size of a woman's chest area: *This shirt is good for women with a large bust.*

**bust<sup>2</sup>** *adjective, informal*  
**go bust** = a business that goes bust stops working because it does not have enough money: *During that time, a lot of small businesses went bust.*

**bus·tle** /'bʌsəl/ *verb, formal*  
**1** if a place bustles with activity, life, etc., it is full of people and activity: *The streets of the city were bustling with people shopping.*  
**2** to move around in a busy way: *I could hear Mom bustling around downstairs, making breakfast.*

**bus·y** /'bizi/ *adjective* **busier, busiest**  
**1** someone who is busy is working or has a lot to do: *Can we talk later? I'm busy right now.*  
**2** if a telephone line is busy, someone is talking on it when you try to call them: *I called her earlier, but her line was busy.*  
**3** a busy place or time is full of things happening and people working hard: *There are 900 students at the school, so it's a pretty busy place. | The summer is always a busy time of year because of the tourists.*  
**ANTONYM** **quiet**

**bus·y·bod·y** /'bizi,badi/ *noun* plural **busybodies**  
someone who wants to know about other people's private lives, in a way that is annoying: *She's such a busybody – she's always watching me.*

**but<sup>1</sup>** /bət; strong bʌt/ *conjunction*  
**1** used before you say something that is a little unexpected: *We all felt tired but happy. | Dan's young, but he's not stupid.*  
**2** used before you give the reason why you cannot do something: *I'd love to come to your house, but I have homework to do.*  
**3** except for: *This weekend we did nothing but watch movies and eat!*  
**4** used after "excuse me" and "I'm sorry": *Excuse me, but I didn't hear what you said.*

**but<sup>2</sup>** *preposition*  
except for someone or something: *There's nobody here but me.*

**butch·er<sup>1</sup>** /'bʊtʃə/ *noun*  
a person or store that sells meat  
→ See picture on page A16

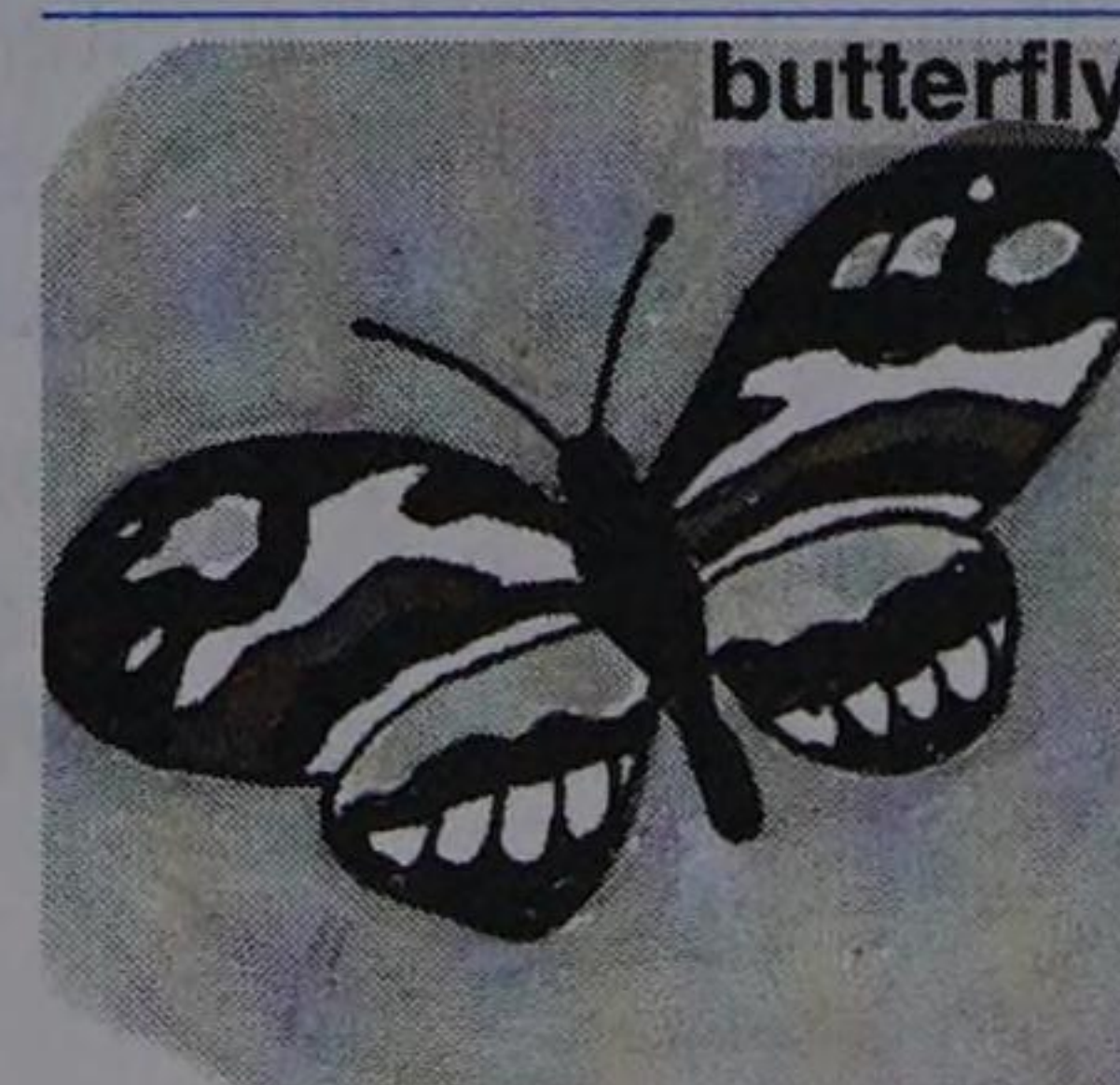
**butcher<sup>2</sup>** *verb*  
to kill animals in order to use or sell the meat

**butt<sup>1</sup>** /bʌt/ *noun*  
**1** *informal* the part of your body that you sit on **SYNONYM** **buttocks**  
**2** the end of a cigarette after most of it has been smoked: *The ashtray was full of cigarette butts.*

**butt<sup>2</sup>** *verb*  
**PHRASAL VERB**  
**butt in**  
to interrupt someone when he or she is speaking, or try to get involved in what someone is doing: *Julie kept butting in as I was trying to tell my story.*

**but·ter** /'bʌtə/ *noun*  
a yellow substance made from milk that you spread on bread or use in cooking: *Do you want some butter on your bread?*

**but·ter·fly**  
/ 'bʌtə,flaɪ/ *noun* plural **butterflies**  
an insect with large and usually colored wings





**but·ter·milk** /'bʌtə,mɪlk/ *noun*

the liquid that is left after butter has been made, which you can drink or use in cooking

**but·ter·scotch** /'bʌtə,skɒtʃ/ *noun*

a type of candy made from butter and sugar boiled together

**but·tocks** /'bʌtəks/ *plural noun, formal*

the part of your body that you sit on **SYNONYM** **butt**

**but·ton** /'bʌtn/ *noun*

**1** a small round object on your shirt, coat, etc. that you push through a hole to fasten it: *He sewed the button back on his shirt.*

**2** a small part of a machine that you press to make it work: *She pushed the pause button on the DVD player.*

**3** a small metal or plastic pin with a message or picture on it: *Should teachers wear buttons with political messages on them to class?*

—**button** *verb* to fasten clothing using buttons: *She buttoned her jacket and went outside.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fasten**

→ See picture on page A6

**buy** /baɪ/ *verb* **bought** /bɒt/

to get something by paying money for it: *Her parents bought her a new car. | I bought a nice sweater from that store. | They're buying new computers for the school.*

**THESAURUS: buy**

**purchase** *formal* to buy something: *You can purchase tickets by phone.*

**acquire** *formal* to buy a company or property: *The group acquires land to protect the plants and animals on it.*

**get** to buy or obtain something: *I never know what to get Dad for his birthday.*

—**buyer** *noun* someone who wants to buy something from another person: *He has found a buyer for his boat.*

**buzz<sup>1</sup>** /bʌz/ *verb*

**1** to make a continuous noise like the sound of a BEE: *Insects buzzed around my face.*

**2** if a group of people or a place is buzzing, there is a lot of excitement, talk, or activity: *The crowd was buzzing with excitement before the band came in.*

**buzz<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a noise like the sound of a BEE: *I could hear the buzz of voices in the next room.*

**buz·zard** /'bʌzəd/ *noun*

a large wild bird that eats dead animals

**SYNONYM** **vulture**

**buzz·er** /'bʌzə/ *noun*

a button that makes a buzzing sound when you press it: *Press the buzzer to let them know you're here.*

**by<sup>1</sup>** /baɪ/ *preposition*

**1** near or beside: *He was standing by the window and looking out.*

**2** past: *She walked by me without saying hello.*

**3** used for showing who or what does something: *Her cat was hit by a truck. | a play by Shakespeare*

**4** used for saying what someone uses to do something, or how someone achieves something: *Your tickets will be delivered by mail. | We came back by bus. | You can save money by eating more meals at home.*

**5** not later than a particular time: *I have to be back by 6:00.*

**6** used for saying which part of something someone holds: *She grabbed him by the arm.*

**7** used when giving the two parts of a measurement: *The room is 24 feet by 36 feet.*

**8 (all) by yourself** = alone or without help: *I was scared to go there by myself.*

→ **by the way** at **way**

**by<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

**1** past: *We watched the cars go by.*

**2 by and large** *formal* = used when talking generally about something: *By and large, the new system is working well, but there are a few small problems.*

**bye** /baɪ/ also **bye-'bye** *informal*

another word for GOODBYE

**by·pass** /'baɪpæs/ *noun*

a medical operation that is done so that blood can flow through different tubes when tubes in the heart are blocked: *a heart bypass operation*

**by·stand·er** /'baɪ,stændə/ *noun*

someone who is present when something happens: *The men also shot two innocent bystanders (=people who they did not intend to shoot and who were not part of the trouble).*

**byte** /baɪt/ *noun*

a unit for measuring the amount of information a computer can use, equal to 8 BITS: *There are one million bytes in a megabyte.*



# Cc

## C<sup>1</sup>

the written abbreviation of **Celsius** or **Centi-grade**: *Water boils at 100° C.*

## C<sup>2</sup> /si/ noun

**1** a GRADE that you get on a test or in a class for doing average work: *Carol got a C in math.*

**2** the first note in the musical SCALE of C, or the musical KEY based on this note

## **cab** /kæb/ noun

**1** a car driven by someone who people pay to take them to places: *I took a cab to the airport.* **SYNONYM** taxi

**2** the part of a truck or train where the driver sits

→ See picture on page A26

## **cab·bage** /'kæbɪdʒ/ noun

a large round vegetable with thick green or purple leaves

→ See picture on page A12

## **cab·driv·er** /'kæb,draɪvə/ noun

someone who drives a taxi

## **cab·in** /'kæbɪn/ noun

**1** a small house made of wood, usually in a forest or the mountains: *He lived in a log cabin in the woods.*

**2** a small room in which you sleep on a ship

**3** the area inside an airplane where the passengers sit

→ See picture at **airplane**

## **cab·i·net** /'kæbənɪt/ noun

**1** a piece of furniture with doors and shelves, or drawers: *He looked in the kitchen cabinets for something to eat.*

→ **file cabinet**

→ See picture on page A9 and A11

**2** an important group of politicians who help the leader of a government: *The cabinet members discussed the problem with the president.*

## **ca·ble** /'keɪbəl/ noun

**1** several wires carrying electricity, telephone signals, etc., covered with rubber or plastic: *I*

*connected my computer to my printer with a cable.*

**2** television that is broadcast using cables and is paid for by the person watching it: *a football game on one of the cable channels*

**3** a thick strong metal rope: *The bridge is supported by steel cables.*

## **cac·tus** /'kæktəs/ noun plural **cacti**

/'kæktɑɪ/ or **cactuses**

a desert plant that has thick stems covered with sharp points

## **ca·fe** also **café** /kæ'feɪ/ noun

a restaurant where you can buy drinks and simple meals: *We stopped at a cafe for coffee.*

## **caf·e·te·ri·a** /,kæfə'tɪriə/ noun

a restaurant in a factory, school, etc., where people take food from a COUNTER: *All the employees eat in the same cafeteria.*

## **caf·feine** /kæ'fin/ noun

a substance in coffee, tea, and some other drinks that makes people feel more active

## **cage** /keɪdʒ/ noun

a structure made of wires or bars in which birds or animals can be kept: *Go clean out the rabbit cage.*

## **cake** /keɪk/ noun

**1** a sweet food made by baking a mixture of flour, fat, sugar, and eggs: *Do you want a piece of cake? I She made him a birthday cake with 11 candles on it.*

**2** a **salmon/rice/potato, etc. cake** = fish, rice, etc. that has been formed into a flat round shape and cooked

**3** **be a piece of cake informal** = to be very easy: *This job should be a piece of cake.*

## **cal·ci·um** /'kælsiəm/ noun

an ELEMENT that helps form teeth, bones, and CHALK: *Calcium makes bones strong.*

## **cal·cu·late** /'kælkyə,leɪt/ verb

to find out something by adding numbers together, multiplying them, etc.: *Calculate how much money you will need to spend.*

### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

→ **calculate** verb

→ **calculation** noun

→ **calculator** noun

## **cal·cu·la·tion** /,kælkyə'leɪʃən/ noun

the act of adding numbers together, multiplying them, etc.: *The teacher did a few*



calculations to find the answer to the math problem.

**cal·cu·la·tor** /'kælkya,leɪtə/ *noun*

a small machine that can add numbers together, multiply them, etc.

→ See picture on page A18

**cal·en·dar** /'kæləndə/ *noun*

a set of pages that show the days in a year: *Mark the day of the party on your calendar.*

→ See picture on page A18

**calf** /kæf/ *noun* plural **calves** /kævz/

**1** a young cow or BULL

**2** the back of your leg between your knee and your foot

→ See picture on page A2

**call<sup>1</sup>** /kɔl/ *verb*

**1** to telephone someone: *I'll call you tomorrow. | I called them up and explained the problem.*

**2** to give someone or something a name or description: *She was from a small town called Irondale (=whose name was Irondale). | Are you calling me a liar (=saying that I lied)?*

**3** to ask or order someone to come to you: *The doctor called her into his office. | Call an ambulance!*

**4** to say or shout something so that someone can hear you: *"I'm coming!" Paula called. | I called out his name.*

**5** *formal* to ask publicly for something to be done: *The group is calling for tougher laws to protect the environment. | Some people are calling on him to resign (=strongly asking him to resign).*

**6** **call the shots** *informal* = to be the person who decides what will be done in a situation

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**call (someone) back**

to telephone someone again, or to telephone someone who tried to telephone you earlier: *Can I call you back later?*

**call someone in**

to ask or order someone to come and help you with a difficult situation: *the Governor called in the army to stop the violence.*

**call something off**

to decide that a planned event will not happen or will not continue: *The game was called off because of the rain.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shout<sup>1</sup>**

**call<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** an action of talking to someone by telephone: *I got a call yesterday from Teresa. | Ask her to give me a call. | I'll make a few phone calls.*

**2** **be on call** = to be ready to go to work if you are needed: *The doctors are on call 24 hours a day.*

**3** a request or demand for someone to do something: *There have been calls for him to resign.*

**4** *informal* a decision: *It's a tough call.*

**5** the high sound that a bird or animal makes

**call·er** /'kɔlə/ *noun, formal*

someone who is making a telephone call: *Several callers said they really liked the new radio show.*

**calm<sup>1</sup>** /kɑm/ *adjective*

**1** not angry or upset: *Try to stay calm, even if other people are getting angry.*

**2** if an area of water is calm, it is still or is not moving very much: *The wind had stopped, and the lake was calm again.*

—**calmly** *adverb*

—**calmness** *noun*

**calm<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

#### PHRASAL VERB

**calm down**

to become calmer, or to make someone calmer: *Calm down. We have plenty of time left.*

**cal·o·rie** /'kæləri/ *noun*

a unit for measuring the amount of energy a particular food can produce: *A potato has about 90 calories.*

**calves** /kævz/ *noun*

the plural of CALF

**cam·cord·er** /'kæm,kɔrdə/ *noun*

a small piece of equipment that you can use to record moving pictures and sound

**came** /keɪm/ *verb*

the past tense of COME

**cam·el** /'kæməl/ *noun*

a large animal with one or two HUMPS (=large raised parts) on its back that lives in the desert and carries goods or people: *Camels can survive without water for many days.*

**cam·er·a** /'kæməɾə/ *noun*

a piece of equipment used for taking photographs, or for making movies or television



programs: a digital camera | I used my father's camera to take the picture.

**cam·er·a·man** /'kæməɾəmæn/ noun

someone whose job is to use a movie or television camera

**'camera phone** noun

a CELL PHONE with a camera: Sally took a picture at the concert with her camera phone.

**cam·ou·flage** /'kæmə,flɑ:ʒ/ noun

clothes, colors, etc. that hide people, animals, or things by making them look like the things around them: The soldiers were dressed in camouflage and they were difficult to see in the field.

—**camouflage** verb to hide people, animals, or things by making them look like the things around them

**camp**<sup>1</sup> /kæmp/ noun

**1** a place where people stay in tents for a short time: We hiked back to camp and started a fire for dinner.

**2** a place where children stay and do special activities during their vacation: The kids are going to a summer camp on the lake.

**camp**<sup>2</sup> verb

to set up a tent and stay in it for a short time: We camped on the shore of the lake.

**cam·paign**<sup>1</sup> /kæm'peɪn/ noun

a series of actions in business, politics, etc. that are intended to achieve something: She began a campaign against drug use in schools. | the senator's 2008 presidential campaign (=campaign to become president)

**campaign**<sup>2</sup> verb

to try to persuade politicians or the public to do something: The governor is campaigning for re-election.

**camp·er** /'kæmpə/ noun

**1** a vehicle which you can live in while you are on vacation

**2** someone who is staying in a tent on vacation: Yellowstone National Park is popular with hikers and campers.

**camp·ing** /'kæmpɪŋ/ noun

the activity of living in a tent for a short time: Do you want to go camping in the mountains this weekend?

**camp·site** /'kæmpsait/ noun

a place where people can camp: The park has about 300 campsites.

**cam·pus** /'kæmpəs/ noun

the land or buildings of a college: Many students live on campus, but some live in nearby apartment buildings.

**can**<sup>1</sup> /kən; strong kæn/ verb

**1** to be able to do something: She can speak French because she lived in France for five years.

**2** to be allowed to do something: You can leave when you finish your work.

**3 Can you...?** = used for asking someone to do something for you: Can you pass me the salt?

**can**<sup>2</sup> /kæn/ noun

a metal container in which food or a liquid is sold: I opened up a can of soup.

**Ca·na·di·an** /kə'neɪdiən/ adjective

from Canada

—**Canadian** noun someone from Canada

**ca·nal** /kə'næl/ noun

a long narrow hole full of water that has been dug so that boats or water can go from one place to another: The Panama Canal connects the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

**ca·nar·y** /kə'neri/ noun plural **canaries**

a small yellow bird that sings and is often kept as a pet

**can·cel** /'kænsəl/ verb

to stop something that you had planned or arranged: We had to cancel our trip, because Jen got sick.

—**cancellation** /,kænsə'leɪʃən/ noun the act of canceling something: The snow forced the cancellation of many flights.

**can·cer** /'kænsə/ noun

a serious illness in which cells in one part of the body grow in a way that is not normal: She used to smoke a lot, and now she has lung cancer.

**Can·cer** /'kænsə/ noun

**1** the fourth sign of the ZODIAC, represented by a CRAB

**2** someone born between June 22 and July 22

**can·di·date** /'kændə,deɪt/ noun

someone who wants to be chosen for a job: Who was the Democratic candidate for president in 2000?



**can·dle** /'kændl/ *noun*

a piece of WAX with a piece of string through the middle that you burn to produce light: *I lit some candles when the lights went out.*

→ See picture at **light**<sup>1</sup>

**can·dy** /'kændi/ *noun* plural **candies**

one or more pieces of sweet food made of sugar or chocolate: *I gave her a piece of candy.*

**'candy bar** *noun*

a long narrow piece of candy, usually covered with chocolate

**cane** /keɪn/ *noun*

a thin stick that you can lean on when you walk: *He injured his leg and now walks with a cane.*

**canned** /kænd/ *adjective*

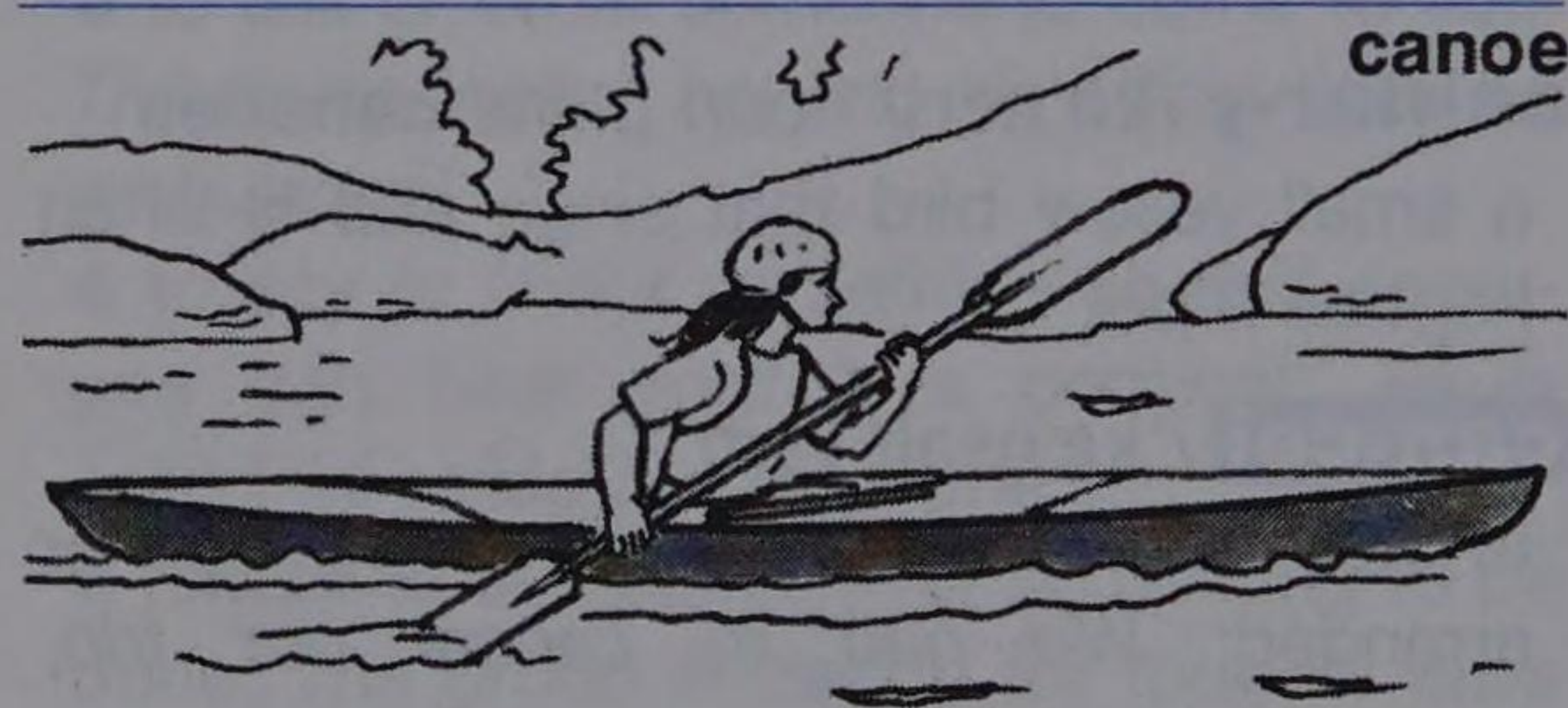
canned food is sold in a can: *canned tomatoes*

**can·non** /'kænən/ *noun*

a large gun, usually on wheels, used in past times: *They attacked the fort with cannons.*

**can·not** /'kænat/ *verb*

can not: *Thank you for the offer, but I cannot accept it.* **SYNONYM** **can't**

**ca·noe** /kə'nu/ *noun*

a light narrow boat which you move by using a PADDLE (=piece of wood with a wide flat end): *They paddled up the river in their canoe.*

—**canoeing** *noun* the activity of traveling in a canoe

**can't** /kænt/ *verb*

the short form of "cannot": *I know you told me his name, but I can't remember it*

**can·ta·loupe** /'kæntəl,oup/ *noun*

a sweet MELON (=large fruit) that is orange inside

→ See picture on page A13

**can·vas** /'kænvəs/ *noun*

**1** a type of strong cloth that is used to make tents, sails, bags, etc.: *The tent was made out of canvas.*

**2** a piece of canvas on which a picture is painted

**can·yon** /'kænjən/ *noun*

a deep valley with very steep sides: *The Colorado River flows through the Grand Canyon.*

**cap** /kæp/ *noun*

**1** a cloth hat with a curved part sticking out at the front: *a baseball cap*

**2** a cover that closes a bottle, tube, etc. or goes on the end of a pen: *She took the cap off the bottle of aspirin.*

→ **kneecap**

→ See picture on page A6

**ca·pa·ble** /'keɪpəbəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** **be capable of (doing) something** = to have the abilities or qualities that are needed to do something: *He's very fast – I think he's capable of winning a gold medal.* **ANTONYM** **incapable**

**2** able to do a job well: *She's a very capable lawyer. She's won every one of her cases in the last three years.*

—**capability** /,keɪpə'bɪləti/ *noun* the ability to do something: *With its strong military, the country has the capability to protect itself.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **capable** *adjective*
- **incapable** *adjective*
- **capability** *noun*

**ca·pac·i·ty** /kə'pæsəti/ **[Ac]** *noun* plural **capacities** *formal*

**1** the amount that something can contain: *The tank has a capacity of 20 gallons (=it can hold 20 gallons of liquid).*

**2** the ability to do or produce something: *Young children have a great capacity for learning.*



**cape** /keɪp/ *noun*

**1** a long loose piece of clothing without SLEEVES that fastens around your neck: *Batman wears a black cape.*

**2** an area of land surrounded on three sides by the sea: *She lives on Cape Cod on the coast of Massachusetts.*

**cap·i·tal** /'kæpətəl/ *noun*

**1** the city where a country's or state's main government is: *Rome is the capital of Italy.*

**2** also **capital letter** the large form of a letter, used for example to begin a name or sentence: *"T" is a capital letter. | Please write your name in capitals.*

**3** formal money that you use to start a business or to make more money: *He needed capital to buy a factory and equipment.*

**cap·i·tal·ism** /'kæpətəlɪzəm/ *noun*

a system in which businesses belong mostly to private owners, not to the government: *Under capitalism, companies compete with each other.*

—**capitalist** *adjective* relating to capitalism: *a capitalist economy*

**capital 'punishment** *noun, formal*

the punishment of legally killing someone for a crime: *The state doesn't have capital punishment, so he won't be executed.* **SYNONYM** *death penalty*

**cap·puc·ci·no** /,kæpə'tʃɪnoʊ/ *noun*

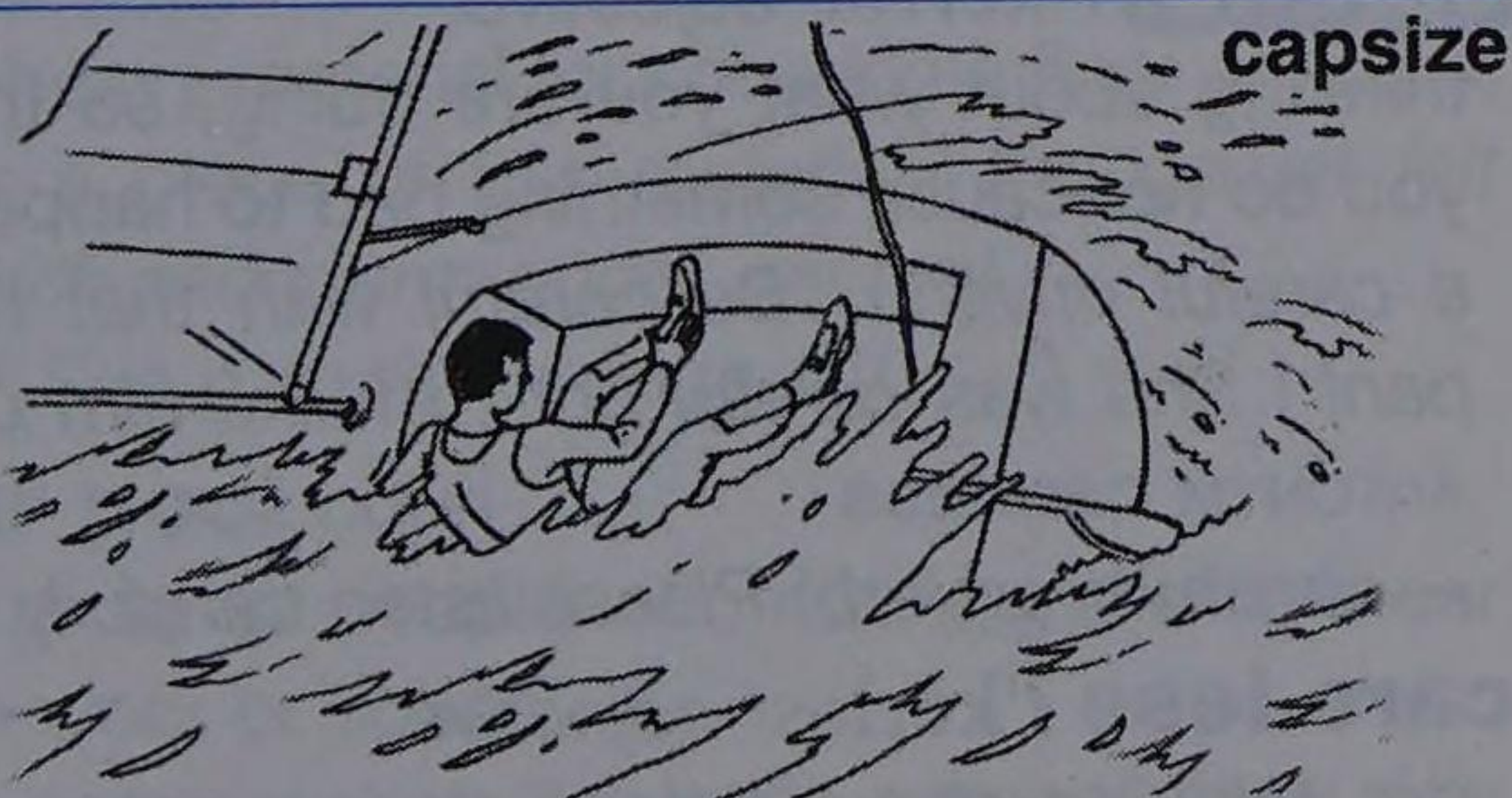
plural **cappuccinos**

coffee made with hot milk with bubbles

**Cap·ri·corn** /'kæprɪ,kɔrn/ *noun*

**1** the tenth sign of the ZODIAC, represented by a GOAT

**2** someone born between December 22 and January 19

**cap·size** /'kæpsaɪz/ *verb, formal*

if a boat capsizes, it turns over in the water: *Fourteen people died when the boat capsized in freezing water.*

**cap·sule** /'kæpsəl/ *noun*

a very small object with medicine inside that you swallow whole

→ See Thesaurus box at **medicine**

**cap·tain** /'kæptən/ *noun, written abbreviation Capt.*

**1** someone who is in charge of a ship or airplane: *The captain ordered the men to leave his ship.*

**2** an officer in the army, air force, etc.: *Captain Smith was flying the plane.*

**3** someone who leads a sports team: *Troy was chosen to be the captain of the football team.*

**cap·tion** /'kæpʃən/ *noun*

words above or below a picture in a newspaper, book, etc. that give information about it: *The caption said that the man in the picture was a tourist.*

**cap·tive** /'kæptɪv/ *noun, formal*

someone who is kept as a prisoner, especially in a war: *The men refused to free their captives.*

**cap·tiv·i·ty** /kæp'tɪvəti/ *noun, formal*

the state of being kept somewhere so that you are not free: *The elephants were born in captivity (=in a zoo) and have never been free.*

**cap·ture** /'kæptʃə/ *verb*

**1** to catch a person or animal in order to keep him, her, or it somewhere: *Police have captured the gang leader.* **SYNONYM** *catch*

**2** to get control of a place during a war: *The town was captured by enemy soldiers.*

—**capture** *noun* the act of capturing someone or something: *We heard about the capture of the terrorists on the radio.*

**car** /kɑr/ *noun*

**1** a vehicle with four wheels and an engine that carries a small number of people: *She got into the car and drove away. | You can't park your car in front of the driveway.*

**2** a part of a train for passengers or goods: *The train had several freight cars (=carrying goods).*

→ See picture on page A28

**car·a·mel** /'kærəməl/ *noun*

candy made of cooked sugar, butter, and milk



**car·bo·hy·drate** /,kɑrboʊˈhaɪdreɪt/

noun

a substance in foods such as sugar, rice, bread, or potatoes that gives your body energy: *Bread is a good source of carbohydrates.*

**car·bon** /ˈkɑrbən/ noun

a chemical ELEMENT that DIAMONDS are made of, and that is contained in coal

**carbon di·ox·ide** /,kɑrbən daɪˈɑksaɪd/

noun

the gas that people breathe out

**carbon mo·nox·ide** /,kɑrbən

məˈnɒksaɪd/ noun

a poisonous gas that is produced when engines burn gasoline

**card** /kɑrd/ noun

**1** a folded piece of stiff paper with a picture on the front that you send to people at special times: *I have to buy a birthday card for my sister.*

**2** a small piece of plastic or stiff paper that has information about someone or something: *My phone number and email address are on my business card.*

**3** one of a set of 52 pieces of stiff paper that are used for playing games: *a deck of cards* (=set of cards)

**4 cards** = a game in which people use a set of cards: *Let's play cards.*

→ **credit card**, **postcard**

**card·board** /ˈkɑrdbɔrd/ noun

very thick stiff paper: *She packed her things in cardboard boxes.*

**car·di·nal** /ˈkɑrdənəl/ noun

**1** a priest of very high rank in the Roman Catholic Church

**2** a bright red bird

**care¹** /ker/ verb

**1** if you care about someone or something, that person or thing is important to you: *He cares deeply about his children. | I don't care what you do.*

**2 who cares?** = used for saying that you do not think something is important: *"It's pretty expensive." "Who cares? It'll be fun!"*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**care for someone or something**

**1** to do things for someone who is old or sick, or for a young child: *She took time off to care for her sick mother.*

**2 not care for someone or something**  
*formal* = to not like someone or something: *I don't really care for yogurt.*

**care²** noun

**1** the activity of doing things for someone who is old or sick, or for a young child: *Your father is very sick. He will need constant medical care. | Who's taking care of (=caring for) the baby?*

**2 take care of something a)** to keep something in good condition: *Karl will take care of the house while we're on vacation. b)* to deal with something and do what needs to be done: *Her husband took care of all the bills (=paid them).*

**3** the quality of being very careful: *They checked the measurements with great care to make sure there were no mistakes.*

**4 take care** *informal* used when saying "goodbye" to someone you know: *"OK, I'll talk to you soon." "Yeah, take care."*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **care** noun
- **careful** adjective
- **carefully** adverb
- **careless** adjective
- **carelessly** adverb
- **carelessness** noun
- **carefree** adjective

**ca·reer** /kəˈrɪr/ noun

a job that you know a lot about and that you do for a long time: *During her career as an actress, she appeared in 42 movies. | I enjoyed my career in journalism.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **job**

**care·free** /ˈkerfri/ adjective, *formal*

without any problems or worries: *He remembered the carefree days of his childhood.*

**care·ful** /ˈkerfəl/ adjective

thinking about what you are doing, so that you do not cause something bad to happen: *a careful driver | Be careful with that hot pan! | She was careful not to wake him up.*

**ANTONYM** **careless**

—**carefully** adverb: *Please listen carefully.*

**care·less** /ˈkerləs/ adjective

not thinking about what you are doing so that something bad may happen: *Careless driving causes accidents. | I got three questions wrong on the test because of careless mistakes (=mistakes made because you are*



not thinking carefully). **ANTONYM** **careful**

—**carelessly** *adverb*

—**carelessness** *noun*

**ca·ress** /kə'res/ *verb, formal*

to gently touch or kiss someone in a way that shows love: *She caressed the baby's face.*

—**caress** *noun* an act of caressing someone

→ See Thesaurus box at **touch**<sup>1</sup>

**car·go** /'kɑrgoʊ/ *noun* plural **cargoes**

the things that a ship, plane, etc. is carrying: *The ship was carrying a cargo of oil.*

**Car·ib·be·an** /,kærə'biən/ *adjective*

from the islands in the Caribbean Sea, such as the Bahamas and Jamaica

**car·ni·val** /'kɑrnəvəl/ *noun*

**1** an outdoor event where people can ride on special machines and play games for prizes: *The kids had fun on the rides at the carnival.* **SYNONYM** **fair**

**2** a public event at which people play music, wear special clothes, and dance in the streets: *It was carnival time in Rio.*

**car·ni·vore** /'kɑrnə,vɔr/ *noun, formal*

an animal that eats meat: *Dogs are carnivores.*

—**carnivorous** /kɑr'nɪvərəs/ *adjective* carnivorous animals eat meat

**car·ol** /'kærəl/ *noun*

a Christmas song: *A choir sang Christmas carols at the concert.*

**car·pen·ter** /'kɑrpəntər/ *noun*

someone whose job is making things out of wood: *The carpenter was making some shelves.*

—**carpentry** *noun* the activity of making things out of wood

**car·pet** /'kɑrpɪt/ *noun*

a heavy material for covering a floor or stairs, or a piece of this material: *The carpet felt thick and warm under my feet.*

→ See picture on page A10

**'car pool** *noun*

a group of people who ride together in a car to work or school

—**carpool** *verb* if people carpool, they ride together in a car to go to work or school

**car·riage** /'kærɪdʒ/ *noun*

a vehicle for people to ride in that is pulled by horses

**car·rot** /'kærət/ *noun*

a long orange vegetable that grows under the ground

→ See picture on page A12

**car·ry** /'kæri/ *verb* carried, third person singular carries

**1** to have something in your hands, arms, pocket, etc. as you go somewhere: *They carried the boxes out of the house. | She was carrying a grocery bag. | He always carries a gun.*

**2** if a vehicle, pipe, wire, etc. carries something, it takes it from one place to another: *The bus was carrying 25 passengers.*

**3** if you carry a disease, you can pass it to others: *Many diseases are carried by insects.*

**4** **be/get carried away** = to be so excited that you do something that is not sensible: *Don't get carried away – we're not sure that we've won.*

**5** *formal* to have or involve something: *Any job in a hospital carries certain risks.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**carry out something**

to do something in a planned and organized way: *Who carried out this attack?*

→ See picture on page A4

**cart** /kɑrt/ *noun*

**1** a metal basket or table on wheels: *I pushed the shopping cart to the checkout counter.*

**2** a vehicle pulled by a horse, used for carrying heavy things: *The farmer loaded the hay into the cart.*

**car·ton** /'kɑrtɪn/ *noun*

a small CARDBOARD box that contains liquid food or a drink: *a carton of milk*

**car·toon** /kɑr'tun/ *noun*

**1** a movie or television program with characters that are drawn and not real: *Who is your favorite cartoon character? I like Mickey Mouse.*

**2** a funny drawing in a newspaper

—**cartoonist** *noun* someone who draws cartoons

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**, **picture**<sup>1</sup>, **television**

**car·tridge** /'kɑtrɪdʒ/ *noun*

a small container that you put inside a machine or gun to make it work: *The printer needs a new ink cartridge.*



**carve** /kɑrv/ verb

**1** to cut a piece of wood or stone into a particular shape, or to cut lines into the surface: *He carved a little statue out of wood.*

**2** to cut pieces from a large piece of cooked meat: *Dad always carves the turkey.*

—**carving** noun an object or decoration made by carving wood or stone: *a carving of an owl*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cut**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A14

**'car wash** noun

a place where you can take your car to be washed

**case** /keɪs/ noun

**1** an example of a particular event or thing: *Parents are supposed to sign report cards, but in some cases students never show them to their parents. | It wasn't my fault – it was a case of being in the wrong place at the wrong time.*

**2** the situation that exists: *We live far apart now, but that won't always be the case. | "I'll be home late tonight." "Well, in that case (=since that is the situation), I won't cook dinner."*

**3 (just) in case** = in order to be prepared for something that might happen: *I'll take an umbrella in case it rains.*

**4** a crime that the police are trying to find out the truth about: *The police are trying to solve a murder case.*

**5** something that a court of law deals with: *He thought he would win the court case, but the judge ruled against him.*

**6 in any case** = used when mentioning a more important fact: *He wouldn't listen to us. In any case, it's too late now.* **SYNONYM anyway**

**7** an argument that someone or something is good or bad: *There is a good case for changing the rule, so I think we should do it.*

**8** a container for storing something: *a violin case*

→ **upper case, lower case**

**cash**<sup>1</sup> /kæʃ/ noun

the coins and paper money that you use for buying things: *I don't have any cash – I'll have to use my credit card.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**cash**<sup>2</sup> verb

**cash a check** = to get paper money by giving the bank, a hotel, etc. a check for the same amount: *I need to cash this check at the bank.*

**cash-ier** /kæ'ʃɪr/ noun

someone whose job is taking the money that customers pay: *Bill worked as a cashier at the gas station.*

**'cash ,register** noun

a machine in a store that shows how much customers have to pay and where money is kept

**ca-si-no** /kə'sɪnoʊ/ noun plural **casinos**

a place where people try to win money by playing games: *the casinos of Las Vegas*

**cas-ket** /'kæskɪt/ noun

a box in which a dead body is buried  
**SYNONYM coffin**

**cas-se-role** /'kæsə,roul/ noun

a meal made of a combination of different foods that are cooked slowly together in an OVEN: *The recipe is for a fish casserole made with potatoes and other vegetables.*

**cas-sette** /kə'set/ noun

a small plastic case with tape inside, used for playing or recording music, movies, etc.: *I need a blank video cassette to record the show on.* **SYNONYM tape**

**cast**<sup>1</sup> /kæst/ verb cast

**1** to choose an actor for a part in a movie, play, etc.: *They cast a famous actor in the leading role.*

**2 cast your ballot/vote** = to vote in an election: *You can cast your ballot at 12 places across the city.*

**cast**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a hard cover that doctors put around a broken bone until it gets better: *His left arm was in a cast for six weeks after he broke it.*

**2** all the actors in a play or movie: *There was a party after the play was over for all the cast members.*

**cas-tle** /'kæsəl/ noun

a large building with high walls that was built to protect the people inside from attack: *The castle was built on a hill above the city.*



**cas·u·al** /'kæʒuəl/ adjective

**1** casual clothes are not formal, and you usually wear them when you are not working: *The new store sells casual clothes like jeans and sweatshirts.*

**2** relaxed and not worried about things: *She has a very casual attitude about everything and doesn't take anything very seriously.*

—**casually** adverb: *Jon was casually dressed in a T-shirt and jeans.*

**cas·u·al·ty** /'kæʒuəlti/ noun plural

**casualties** formal

someone who is hurt or killed in an accident or war: *The fighting lasted for 12 hours, and there were heavy casualties (=a lot of people hurt or killed).*

**cat** /kæt/ noun

**1** a small animal that people often keep as a pet: *At home we have two cats and a dog.*

**2** any large wild animal that is related to cats: *Big cats such as lions often live in groups.*

→ See picture at **pet**

**cat·a·log** also **catalogue** /'kætɪˌɒɡ/ noun

a book with pictures and information about things you can buy from a company: *I looked through a catalog to find some clothes to order.*

**ca·tas·tro·phe** /kə'tæstrəfi/ noun, formal

something terrible that happens and causes very serious problems or damage: *The earthquake was the worst catastrophe in the history of the country.* **SYNONYM** **disaster**

—**catastrophic** /ˌkætə'strəfɪk/ adjective, formal causing very serious problems or damage: *The whole area was hit by catastrophic floods, and much of the city was destroyed.*

**catch<sup>1</sup>** /kætʃ/ verb caught /kɒt/

**1** to stop something that is moving through the air, using your hands: *Sammy caught the ball and threw it to me.* **ANTONYM** **drop**

**2** to stop a person or animal that wants to escape from you: *A police officer ran after the thief and caught him.*

**3** to get a fish or animal by using a net, hook, or trap: *How many fish did you catch?*

**4** **catch a train/plane/bus** = to get on a train, etc. to go somewhere: *I catch the 7:30 train to work.*

**5** to get an illness: *If you catch a cold, you should stay at home.*

**6** to get stuck on something by mistake: *His shirt caught on the fence and tore.*

**7** **catch your breath** = to begin to breathe normally again after you have been breathing faster than usual: *It was a steep climb, so we stopped to catch our breath.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****catch on**

**1** to understand something: *Some of the kids in the class catch on fast, but others have more trouble learning.*

**2** if a new idea, thing, etc., catches on, it becomes popular: *I don't think electric cars will ever catch on.*

**catch up**

to reach the same place as a person, car, etc. that was in front of you: *I had to run to catch up with her.*

→ See picture on page A4

**catch<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the act of catching a ball: *That was a great catch! Did you see how high he jumped?*

**2** a hook for fastening something: *The catch on my necklace broke.*

**3** a hidden problem in a situation that seems to be very good: *The shows are on TV every day without advertising. But there's a catch – they are only shown between 1 and 3 a.m.*

**4** **play catch** = to play a game of throwing a ball between people: *The kids were in the yard playing catch.*

**catch·y** /'kætʃi/ adjective

a catchy tune is nice and easy to remember: *That song's really catchy – I've been singing it all day.*

**cat·e·go·ry** /'kætəˌɡɔːri/ **Ac** noun plural **categories**

a group of people or things that are like each other in some way: *Guns, knives, and swords all belong in the category of weapons.*

—**categorize** /'kætəˌɡɔːraɪz/ verb to put people or things into groups by deciding that they are like each other in some way: *The students are categorized according to their ability.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **type<sup>1</sup>**

**ca·ter·ing** /'keɪtərɪŋ/ noun

the job of providing and serving food and drinks at parties, meetings, etc.: *Who is*



doing the catering for the wedding? What kind of food are they serving?

**cat·er·pil·lar** /'kætəˌpɪlər/ *noun*

the young form of some insects, with a small round body and many legs: *Soon the caterpillar will turn into a butterfly.*

**cat·fish** /'kætfɪʃ/ *noun*

a fish with long hairs around its mouth, that lives mainly in rivers and lakes

**ca·the·dral** /kə'θɪdrəl/ *noun*

a big important church: *We visited some beautiful old cathedrals in Europe.*

**Cath·olic** /'kæθlɪk/ *adjective*

belonging to the part of the Christian religion that has the Pope as its leader: *the Catholic church* (=the Catholic religion) **SYNONYM** **Roman Catholic**

—**Catholic** *noun* someone who believes in the Catholic religion

—**Catholicism** /kə'θɒləˌsɪzəm/ *noun* the Catholic religion

**cat·sup** /'ketʃəp/ *noun*

another spelling of KETCHUP

**cat·tle** /'kætəl/ *plural noun*

cows and BULLS that are kept on a farm: *In the field, there was a herd of cattle* (=a large group of cows).

**Cau·ca·sian** /kə'keɪʒən/ *noun, formal*

a person who has pale skin **SYNONYM** **white**

—**Caucasian** *adjective* having pale skin: *a Caucasian man with blond hair and blue eyes*

**caught** /kɔt/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of CATCH

**cau·li·flow·er** /'kɒliˌflaʊər/ *noun*

a white vegetable with green leaves around the outside

**cause<sup>1</sup>** /kɔz/ *noun*

**1** a person or thing that makes something happen: *It seems likely that a bomb was the cause of the plane crash.*

**2** something good that a group of people believe should happen: *The men were prepared to fight for a good cause.*

**cause<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to make something happen, especially something bad: *Heavy traffic is causing long delays.*

**cau·tion** /'kɔʃən/ *noun*

if you do something with caution, you are careful because it could be dangerous: *You*

*should always approach big animals with caution.*

**cau·tious** /'kɔʃəs/ *adjective*

careful about something that could be dangerous, unpleasant, etc.: *Young children are often cautious about trying new food.*

—**cautiously** *adverb*: *Lizzy cautiously put one foot in the water.*

—**cautiousness** *noun*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **cautious** *adjective*
- **cautiously** *adverb*
- **cautiousness** *noun*
- **caution** *noun*

**cav·al·ry** /'kævəlri/ *noun*

soldiers in the past who fought while they were on horses

**cave** /keɪv/ *noun*

a big hole in the side of a cliff or under the ground: *The cave goes 500 feet into the side of the mountain.*

**cav·i·ty** /'kævəti/ *noun plural cavities*

a hole inside something: *The dentist told me that I have a cavity in my tooth that needs to be filled.*

**cc** *abbreviation*

**1 cubic centimeter**: *a 2,000 cc engine*

**2** used for showing that you are sending a copy of an email or business letter to someone else

**CD** *noun*

**compact disc** a small round piece of plastic that records and plays music or computer information: *Do you want to listen to my new CD? The music is really good.*

**C'D ,player** *noun*

a piece of equipment used for playing music on CDs

→ See picture on page A28

**CD-ROM** /ˌsi di 'rɒm/ *noun*

a CD that stores a large amount of computer information: *You can buy the dictionary as a book, or you can buy it on CD-ROM.*

**cease** /sis/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to stop: *By noon, the rain had ceased.*

—**ceaseless** *adjective, formal* happening without stopping: *He listened to the ceaseless noise of the wind.*



**cease-fire** /'sis,faiə/ noun

a time during a war when the enemies agree to stop fighting: *Both sides agreed to a ceasefire during the peace talks.*

**ce-dar** /'sidə/ noun

a tall tree with thin leaves like needles, or the wood from this tree: *She kept extra blankets in a cedar chest.*

**ceil-ing** /'silɪŋ/ noun

the top part of a room above your head: *It's a big old house with high ceilings.*

→ See picture on page A8

**cel-e-brate** /'selə,breɪt/ verb

to do something special because it is a special occasion: *All our tests are over, so let's have a party to celebrate!*

WORD FAMILY → **celebration** noun

**cel-e-brat-ed** /'selə,breɪtɪd/ adjective, formal

famous: *His father was a celebrated pianist.*

**cel-e-bra-tion** /,selə'breɪʃən/ noun

something special you do on a special occasion, especially a party: *You are all invited to my son's 21st birthday celebration!*

→ See Thesaurus box at **party**

**ce-leb-ri-ty** /sə'lebrəti/ noun plural **celebrities**

a famous person: *Everyone likes reading about the lives of actors, athletes, and other celebrities.*

**cel-er-y** /'seləri/ noun

a vegetable with long green stems that you can eat uncooked

→ See picture on page A12

**cell** /sel/ noun

**1** the smallest part that forms an animal or plant: *Billions of cells make up the human body.* | *brain cells* (=that form the brain)

**2** a small room where a prisoner is kept: *The prisoners spend most of the day in their cells.*

**cel-lar** /'selə/ noun

a room under a house where things are stored: *There are some old chairs down in the cellar.* | *a wine cellar*

**cel-lo** /'tʃeləu/ noun

a big musical instrument that you hold between your knees and play with a BOW (=type of stick)

—**cellist** noun someone who plays the cello

→ See picture on page A21

**cell phone** also**cell-u-lar phone**

/,selyələ 'fəʊn/ noun

a small telephone that you carry with you: *The man next to me was talking on his cell phone.*

cell phone

**Cel-si-us** /'selsiəs/ noun written abbreviation **C**

a temperature scale in which water freezes at 0° and boils at 100°: *In summer, temperatures reach 40 degrees Celsius.* **SYNONYM Centigrade**

**ce-ment** /sɪ'ment/ noun

a material used for building made of a powder mixed with water and sand, that becomes hard when it is dry: *The floors of the building were made of cement.*

**cem-e-ter-y** /'semə,teri/ noun plural **cemeteries**

an area of land where dead people are buried: *My father's grave was in the middle of the cemetery.*

**cen-sor** /'sensə/ verb

if people in authority censor newspapers, books, movies, etc. they take out any parts that they do not want people to see: *In some countries, newspapers are censored, and no criticism of the government is allowed.*

—**ensorship** noun the act of censoring books, movies, etc.: *Do you agree with the censorship of books?*

**cen-sus** /'sensəs/ noun plural **censuses**

an official act of counting all the people in a country and collecting information about them: *According to the census, 97% of all homes have telephones.*

**cent** /sent/ noun

an amount of money that is worth 1/100 of a dollar: *I gave the kids 75 cents for candy.*

**cen-ten-ni-al** /sen'teniəl/ also**cen-ten-a-ry** /sen'tenəri/ noun

a special day or year that is 100 years after something happened or began: *In 2001 the university celebrated its centennial – it was founded in 1901.*

**cen-ter** /'sentə/ noun

**1** the middle of something: *There was an old table in the center of the room with chairs around it.*



**2 a shopping/sports, etc. center** = a big building where people shop, play sports, etc.: *Why don't we look for some new clothes for you at the shopping center?*

**3 a business/banking/research, etc. center** = a place that is important for a particular activity: *Montreal is an important business center.*

**4** the player in basketball who plays near the BASKET: *Sophie was tall and usually played center on the basketball team.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **center** noun
- **central** adjective
- **centrally** adverb

**'center field** noun

the area in baseball in the center of the OUTFIELD

**Cen-ti-grade** /'sentə,greɪd/ noun

another word for CELSIUS

**cen-ti-me-ter** /'sentə,mɪtə/ noun,

written abbreviation **cm**

a unit for measuring length, equal to 1/100 of a meter or 0.39 inches: *He was 182 centimeters tall.*

**cen-ti-pede** /'sentə,pɪd/ noun

a creature like a long insect with many legs

**cen-tral** /'sentrəl/ adjective

in the center of an area: *Our apartment is in a central location and it's easy to get anywhere in the city.* | *Kazakhstan and other countries of Central Asia*

—**centrally** adverb: *The hotel is centrally located near the government buildings.*

**cen-tu-ry** /'sentʃəri/ noun plural **centu-ries**

a period of 100 years: *There were huge changes in technology during the last century (=1900–2000).* | *the 21st century*

**ce-ram-ics** /sə'ræmɪks/ plural noun

pots, plates, etc. made from clay

—**ceramic** adjective made of clay: *We used ceramic tiles for the kitchen floor.*

**ce-re-al** /'sɪriəl/ noun

food made from grain that people eat for breakfast with milk: *We had a breakfast of cereal and fruit.*

**cer-e-mo-ny** /'serə,məʊni/ noun plural

**ceremonies**

an important public or religious event that involves special words and actions: *It was a beautiful wedding ceremony (=when people get married).*

—**ceremonial** /,serə'məʊniəl/ adjective relating to a ceremony: *the ceremonial opening of Congress*

**cer-tain** /'səʔtɪn/ adjective

**1** if you are certain, you are sure about something: *I'm certain (that) I've seen that man before.* | *He was born in 1984 – I'm certain about that.* **SYNONYM** **sure**

**2 make certain** = to do what is necessary in order to be sure about something: *Just make certain that you don't miss your flight.*

**3 formal** if something is certain to happen, it is definitely going to happen: *It's almost certain to rain again tomorrow.*

—**certainty** noun the quality of being certain

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **certain** adjective
- **uncertain** adjective
- **certainly** adverb
- **uncertainly** adverb
- **certainty** noun
- **uncertainty** noun

**cer-tain-ly** /'səʔtɪnli/ adverb

**1** used when saying that something is definitely true: *The kids in this class are certainly smart. Their test scores are very high.* **SYNONYM** **definitely**

**2 formal** of course: *"Could you get us some water, please?" "Certainly."*

**cer-tif-i-cate** /sə'tɪfəkət/ noun

**a birth/marriage/death, etc. certificate** = an important piece of paper that shows when you were born, married, etc.: *You may need your birth certificate in order to get a visa.*

**cer-ti-fy** /'səʔtə,faɪ/ verb certified, third person singular certifies

to officially say that something is true: *Two doctors certified that the patient was dead.*

**ce-sar-e-an** /sɪ'zeriən/ also **ce,sarean** 'section noun

an operation in which doctors cut open a woman's body to take a baby out: *When her first baby was born, she had a cesarean.*



**chain<sup>1</sup>** /tʃeɪn/ noun

**1** a line of metal rings joined together: *Maria wore a silver chain around her neck.*

**2** a number of stores, hotels, etc. owned by the same person or company: *The company owns a chain of stores around the world.*

→ See picture at **bicycle**

**chain<sup>2</sup>** verb

to tie people or things together, using a metal chain: *The prisoners were chained together at the ankles.*

**chain-saw** /'tʃeɪnsɔ/ noun

a tool used for cutting wood, that works using a motor

**'chain store** noun

a store that belongs to a large group that a big company owns: *I try not to shop at chain stores if I can use a small local business instead.*

**chair** /tʃeə/ noun

**1** a piece of furniture for one person to sit on: *There were six chairs around the kitchen table.*

**2** another word for a CHAIRPERSON

→ See picture at **seat**

**chair-man** /'tʃeəmən/ plural **chairmen**

/'tʃeəmən/ noun

someone who controls a meeting, organization, or university department: *Randall became the new chairman of the committee.*

—**chairmanship** noun the position of being a chairman: *He took over the chairmanship in May.*

**chair-per-son** /'tʃeə,pə'sən/ noun plural

**chairpersons**

someone who controls a meeting, organization, or university department: *Ann Wright is chairperson of the technology committee.*

SYNONYM **chair**

**chair-wom-an** /'tʃeə,wʊmən/ noun

plural **chairwomen** /'tʃeə,wɪmɪn/

a woman who controls a meeting, organization, or university department

**chalk** /tʃɔk/ noun

a white stick that you use for writing or drawing: *Nick did a drawing on black paper using chalk.*

**chal-lenge<sup>1</sup>** /'tʃæləndʒ/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** something difficult that you need skill to do well: *I'm not looking for an easy job – I*

*want something that will be a challenge for me.*

**2** formal the act of asking questions about whether something is right, fair, or legal: *There will be legal challenges to the new law by groups who believe it is unfair to poor families.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **challenge** noun

→ **challenge** verb

→ **challenging** adjective

**challenge<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to ask someone to play a game or to fight against you: *They challenged us to a game of basketball.*

**2** to question whether something is right: *I encourage my students to challenge what I say.*

**chal-leng-er** /'tʃæləndʒə/ **[Ac]** noun

someone who is competing against another person to win a game, election, etc.: *There was only one real challenger for the presidency.*

**chal-leng-ing** /'tʃæləndʒɪŋ/ **[Ac]**

adjective

difficult in an interesting way: *Sometimes kids should read books that are challenging for them instead of just reading easy fun ones.*

**champ** /tʃæmp/ noun, informal

another word for a CHAMPION: *Ten years ago, he was an Olympic champ.*

**cham-pagne** /ʃæm'peɪn/ noun

a type of wine with a lot of BUBBLES in it: *It was a special occasion, so we had champagne.*

**cham-pi-on** /'tʃæmpiən/ noun

a person or team that has won a sports competition or game: *She was a world champion in gymnastics and rarely lost a competition.*

**cham-pi-on-ship** /'tʃæmpiən,ʃɪp/

noun, also **championships** plural noun

a competition to find the best player or team in a sport: *the National basketball championships*

→ See Thesaurus box at **competition**



**chance** /tʃæns/ noun

**1** an opportunity to do something: *I hope I get the chance to travel after I finish college.*

SYNONYM **opportunity**

**2** a possibility that something will happen: *Do you think there's a chance that I'll get on the team?*

**3 take a chance** = to do something that is a risk: *Don't take any chances when you are driving. Drive safely at all times.*

**4** the way that something surprising happens without anyone planning it: *By chance, we met again two years later when we were both staying at the same hotel.*

**chan·cel·lor** /'tʃænsələ/ noun

**1** the most important person in some universities

**2** the leader of the government in some countries: *the Chancellor of Germany*

**chan·de·lier** /,ʃændə'li:/ noun

a frame decorated with pieces of glass that holds lights and hangs from the ceiling: *A heavy chandelier hung over the dining table.*

**change**<sup>1</sup> /tʃeɪndʒ/ verb

**1** to become different: *My father changed after Ricky died. | The leaves change color in Fall.*

**THESAURUS: change**

**alter** formal to change something or to make something change: *I altered my schedule so that I could take the advanced Spanish class.*

**adapt** formal to change something to make it work better in a new situation: *The room has been adapted so that people in wheelchairs can use it.*

**adjust** formal to change something a little bit to make it better: *She adjusted the volume on the TV, to make it a little bit louder.*

**reform** formal to change a system or organization and make it better: *plans to reform the tax system*

**transform** formal to change the way something looks or does things completely: *They've completely transformed the downtown area.*

**2** to start having something different or new: *Do you think I should change my hairstyle? | The company changed its name to Cortland Capital.*

**3** to put on different clothes: *Remember to change your shirt before you go out. | I got changed for soccer practice.*

**4 change your mind** = to change your ideas about something: *I thought I liked Brandon, but I've changed my mind.*

**5 change a \$10/\$20, etc. bill** = to give a ten, twenty, etc. dollar bill to someone and get the same amount back in smaller bills or coins: *I'm going to change this \$50 bill at the bank.*

**6 change dollars/pounds, etc.** = to give dollars, pounds, etc. to someone and get the same amount back in money from a different country: *Where can I change my dollars into pesos?* SYNONYM **exchange**

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**change**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** something that is different: *I noticed a change in his behavior. He was more confident. | How about eating out for a change (=something different that is enjoyable)?*

**2** the money you get back in a store, when you pay more than something costs: *Here's your change, ma'am.*

**3** coins, not bills: *Do you have any change on you?*

**chan·nel** /'tʃænəl/ **Ac** noun

**1** a television station: *There's a good show on channel 2.*

**2** a long area of water that flows between two areas of land: *We crossed the English Channel and landed in France.*

**chant** /tʃænt/ verb

to say the same word or phrase many times: *People marched through the city chanting "Victory!"*

—**chant** noun something people say or sing many times: *The whole audience stood and joined in the chant.*

**cha·os** /'keɪəs/ noun, formal

a very confused situation: *Five bombs exploded, and the city was in chaos.*

—**chaotic** /keɪ'ɒtɪk/ adjective, formal without any order: *We have six children, so the house is pretty chaotic.*

**chap·el** /'tʃæpəl/ noun

a small church, or part of a church



**chap·e·rone** /'ʃæpə,roun/ *noun*, formal  
someone who goes somewhere with a young person to make sure they behave well: *Sara went to the dance with the kids as a chaperone.*

—**chaperone** *verb* to go with someone as a chaperone

**chap·ter** /'tʃæptə/ **Ac** *noun*

a part of a book: *There are ten chapters in the book, and I'm reading Chapter 5 now.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **part**<sup>1</sup>

**char·ac·ter** /'kæɪktə/ *noun*

**1** what a person, place, etc. is like: *"How would you describe Lilly's character?" "She's very quiet but very funny."*

**2** a person in a book, play, movie, etc.: *Esther is the main character (=the most important person) in the book.*

**3** good or interesting qualities that people have: *I liked him a lot – he had a lot of character.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **character** *noun*
- **characteristic** *noun*
- **characteristic** *adjective*

**char·ac·ter·is·tic** /,kæɪktə'rɪstɪk/ *noun*

a quality that is typical of someone or something: *"What are the characteristics of a good leader?" "He or she should be honest, intelligent, and strong."*

—**characteristic** *adjective* typical of someone or something: *This angry behavior is characteristic of many teenagers.*

**char·coal** /'tʃɑrkəʊl/ *noun*

a black substance used as FUEL, or for drawing: *Charcoal is the best fuel for barbecues.*

**charge**<sup>1</sup> /tʃɑrdʒ/ *noun*

**1** the amount of money you pay to do something: *There's no charge for entry to the museum (=it is free).*

**2** **be in charge of something** = to be the person who organizes or controls something: *Mr. Taylor is in charge of all school sports, so if you have a question, ask him.*

**3** a formal statement made by the police that someone has done something wrong:

*The theft charges against him turned out to be true.*

**4** the amount of electricity there is in something: *There's no charge left in the battery – you'll have to buy a new one.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cost**<sup>1</sup>

**charge**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** if you charge an amount of money for something, people must pay you that amount for it: *The swimming pool charges \$4 for adults.*

**2** to buy something with a CREDIT CARD: *"How would you like to pay?" "I'll charge it."*

**3** if the police charge someone, they say formally that he or she has done something wrong: *Police charged the boy with burglary when they found him with a stolen stereo.*

**4** to move forward very fast in an angry way: *The bull turned and charged toward us.*

**5** if a BATTERY charges, it takes in and stores electricity: *It takes three hours to charge the battery in the cell phone.*

**'charge card** *noun*

a CREDIT CARD that you use to buy things in a particular store

**cha·ris·ma** /kə'rɪzmə/ *noun*, formal

a special quality that makes a lot of people like you: *He had a lot of charisma and was a natural leader.*

—**charismatic** /,kæɪɪz'mætɪk/ *adjective* a charismatic person has charisma

**char·i·ta·ble** /'tʃærətəbəl/ *adjective*

relating to charities: *Many young people volunteer to do charitable work to help people in their communities.*

**char·i·ty** /'tʃærəti/ *noun* plural **charities**

an organization that gives money or help to people who need it: *The school collected \$1,000 and gave it to a charity.*

**charm**<sup>1</sup> /tʃɑrm/ *noun*

**1** an attractive quality or way of acting with other people: *She had a lot of charm and many friends.*

**2** something that may bring you good luck: *Ruby wore the silver bracelet as a charm.*

**charm**<sup>2</sup> *verb*, formal

to make people like you a lot, by the way you act: *José was good-looking and charmed all the girls.*



**charm·ing** /'tʃɑrmin/ adjective, formal  
very pleasing or attractive: *Everyone liked her and said she was a charming woman.*

**chart** /tʃɑrt/ **Ac** noun

**1** a drawing, series of numbers, etc. that shows information about something: *In class today, we measured our heights, and made a chart to show it.*

**2 the charts** = a list of the most popular songs, produced each week: *The song reached number 2 on the charts.*

**3** a map, especially of oceans or stars: *Long ago, sailors used these charts to find their way across the oceans.*

**chase** /tʃeɪs/ verb

to follow someone or something quickly, because you want to catch him, her, or it: *A police officer chased after the man, but he escaped.*

—**chase** noun an act of chasing: *The best part of the movie is the car chase through New York.*

**chat** /tʃæt/ verb chatted, chatting

**1** to talk with friends or in a friendly way: *All the girls were chatting about the party on Saturday night.*

**2** to send and receive messages in a chat-room on the Internet

—**chat** noun a friendly talk

→ See Thesaurus box at **talk**<sup>1</sup>

**'chat room** noun

a place on the Internet where you talk to people by writing messages to them, and they can reply immediately

**chat·ter** /'tʃætə/ verb

to talk a lot about unimportant things: *She chattered about the weather and her clothes.*

—**chatter** noun a lot of talk about unimportant things

**cheap** /tʃi:p/ adjective

**1** something that is cheap does not cost a lot of money: *I bought two pairs of jeans because they were really cheap.* **ANTONYM expensive**

**2** cheap material, furniture, wine, etc. is not good quality: *Don't buy cheap furniture – it doesn't last long.*

**3** someone who is cheap does not like to spend money: *He was too cheap to get her a birthday gift.* **ANTONYM generous**

**cheap·ly** /'tʃi:pli/ also **cheap** informal  
adverb

for a low price: *I know where you can get a computer really cheaply if you don't have a lot of money.*

**cheat**<sup>1</sup> /tʃi:t/ verb

**1** to do something that is not honest because you think it will help you succeed: *Molly cheated on the history test, and the teacher caught her.*

**2** to deceive someone, especially by taking too much money from them: *The salesman cheated me out of \$200 and I want to complain to someone.*

**cheat**<sup>2</sup> also **cheat·er** /'tʃi:tə/ noun

someone who does things that are not honest: *Gus was a liar and a cheat.*

**check**<sup>1</sup> /tʃek/ verb

**1** to look carefully at something to see if it is correct, good, etc.: *When you finish the test, don't forget to check your answers.*

**2** to ask someone about something: *If you're worried, why don't you check with your doctor?*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### check in

to go to the desk at a hotel, airport, etc. to say that you have arrived: *We got to the hotel, checked in, and went out to eat.*

##### check something off

to put a mark (✓) next to something on a list: *Check the kids' names off as they get on the bus.*

##### check out

**1** to pay the bill and leave a hotel: *You must check out before 12 o'clock.*

**2 check something out** to find out whether something is good or correct: *We wanted to check out the new sushi restaurant downtown.*

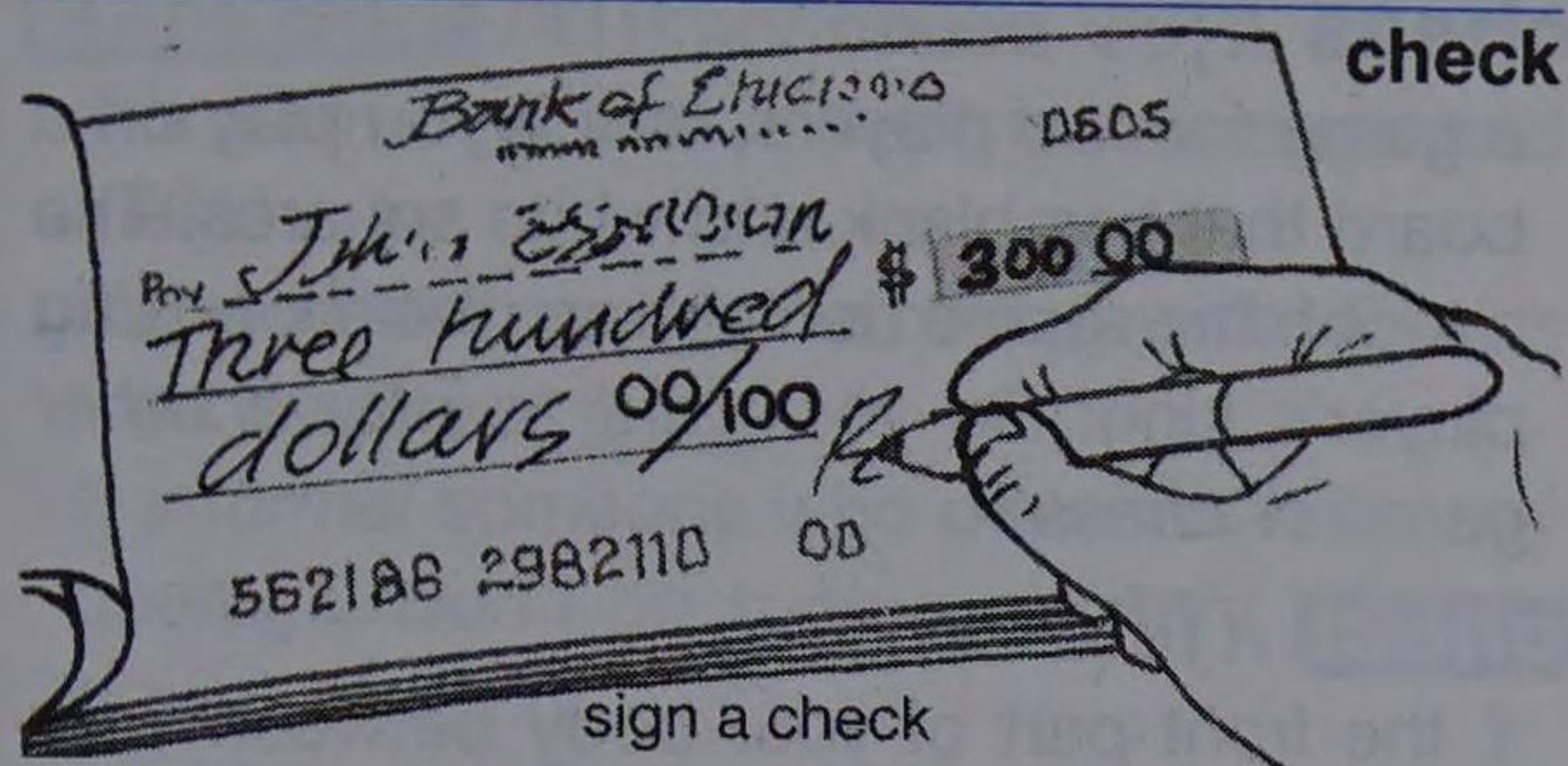
**3 check something out** to borrow a book from a library: *I went to the library and checked out a book on Japan.*

**check**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a piece of printed paper that you write an amount of money on and use to pay for things: *Can I pay by check? | I wrote a check for \$300.*

**2** a careful look at something to see if it is correct, good, etc.: *I did a quick check to make sure all the doors were locked.*





check

**3** a piece of paper you get in a restaurant, hotel, etc. that shows how much you must pay: *Can I have the check, please?* **SYNONYM** bill

**4** a mark (✓) that you put next to an answer to show that it is correct, or next to something on a list: *My teacher put a check by each right answer.*

**5** a pattern of squares on something: *He wore a shirt with blue and white checks.*

**check-book** /ˈtʃekbʊk/ *noun*

a book of checks that you use to pay for things

**check-er** /ˈtʃekə/ *noun*

something you can use on a computer to check something: *The software includes a spell checker and a grammar checker.*

**check-ered** /ˈtʃekəd/ *adjective*

having a pattern of squares in two different colors: *It was a little Italian restaurant with red and white checkered tablecloths.*

**check-ers** /ˈtʃekəz/ *noun*

a game for two people, who use 12 round pieces each on a board with a pattern of squares: *Let's play a game of checkers.*

**'check-in** *noun*

**1** the process of telling someone at a hotel, airport, etc. that you have arrived: *Please allow at least an hour for check-in before your flight.*

**2** a place at a hotel, airport, etc. where you go to say that you have arrived: *When I got to the check-in counter, I couldn't find my plane ticket.*

→ See picture on page A30

**'checking ac, count** *noun*

a bank account that you can use to write checks

**check-list** /ˈtʃek,lɪst/ *noun*

a list of things you have to do or remember: *I made a checklist of things I need to do before the trip.*

**check-out** /ˈtʃek-aʊt/ *noun*

**1** also **checkout counter** a place in a store where you pay for goods: *The store was busy and there was a long line at the check-out.*

**2** the time by which you must leave a hotel room: *Checkout is at noon.*

**check-up** also **check-up** /ˈtʃek-ʌp/ *noun*

an examination by a doctor or DENTIST to see if you are healthy: *You should have regular medical checkups.*

**ched-dar** /ˈtʃedə/ also **'cheddar** **cheese** *noun*

a smooth yellow cheese

**cheek** /tʃik/ *noun*

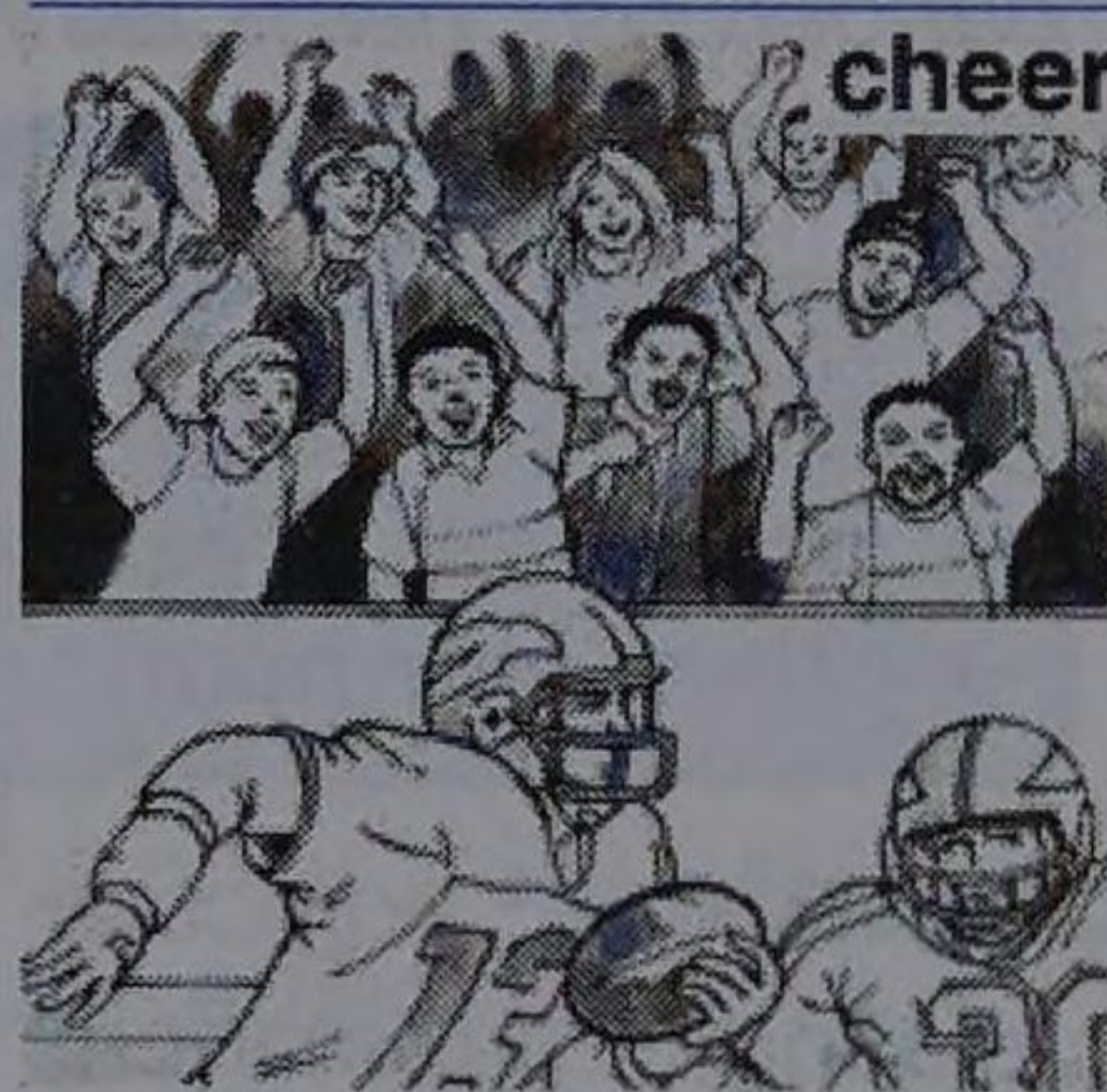
the soft round part of your face under your eyes: *She had bright blue eyes and pink cheeks.*

—**cheekbone** *noun* the bone in your cheek

→ See picture on page A2

**cheer<sup>1</sup>** /tʃɪr/ *verb*

to shout as a way of showing that you support or like someone or something: *The fans in the football stadium cheered loudly.*



**PHRASAL VERB**

**cheer up**

**1** to feel happier: *Cheer up – it's not so bad.*

**2** **cheer someone up** = to make someone feel happier: *I bought Mom some flowers to cheer her up.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shout<sup>1</sup>**

**cheer<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a shout that shows that you support or like someone or something: *Everyone gave a loud cheer when the band came on stage.*

**cheer-ful** /ˈtʃɪrfəl/ *adjective*

happy or seeming happy: *I like Sandra – she's always cheerful.*

—**cheerfully** *adverb*: *"Hi guys," Joey said cheerfully.*

—**cheerfulness** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **happy**

**cheer-lead-er** /ˈtʃɪr,lɪdə/ *noun*

someone who encourages a crowd to cheer at sports events



**cheese** /tʃiːz/ *noun*

a solid food made from milk: *Do you want cheese on your hamburger?*

**cheese-cake** /'tʃiːzkeɪk/ *noun*

a sweet cake made with soft white cheese

**chees-y** /'tʃiːzi/ *adjective, informal*

a cheesy movie, show, etc. is silly and has been made in a way that is not new or interesting: *Dad was watching a really cheesy game show on TV so I went to my room.*

**chee-tah** /'tʃiːtə/ *noun*

a wild cat with black spots in Africa that can run very fast

**chef** /ʃef/ *noun*

someone whose job is cooking in a restaurant: *He works as a chef in a big restaurant.*

→ See picture on page A16

**chem-i-cal**<sup>1</sup> /'kemɪkəl/ **Ac** *noun*

a substance used in chemistry or produced by a chemical process: *The river was full of dangerous chemicals from the factory.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **chemical** *noun*
- **chemical** *adjective*
- **chemistry** *noun*

**chemical**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

relating to substances that are made or used in chemistry: *The substances change in a chemical reaction when they are put together.*

**chem-ist** /'kemɪst/ *noun*

a scientist who does work related to chemistry

**chem-is-try** /'keməstri/ *noun*

the science of studying substances and the way that they change or combine with each other: *I want to study chemistry in college and then work for a drug company.*

**che-mo-ther-a-py** /,kimou'θerəpi/

*noun also* **che-mo** /'kimou/ *informal*

the treatment of CANCER using special drugs

**cher-ish** /'tʃeriʃ/ *verb, formal*

if you cherish something, it is very important to you: *I cherish the memories of when my children were little.*

**cher-ry** /'tʃeri/ *noun* plural **cherries**

a small round fruit with dark red skin and a long stem: *a cherry tree*

→ See picture on page A13

**chess** /tʃes/ *noun*

a game for two players, which you play on a board that has black and white squares. The aim of the game is to trap the opposing player's king: *Do you want to play another game of chess?*

**chest** /tʃest/ *noun*

**1** the front part of your body between your neck and stomach: *She felt a sudden pain in her chest and was afraid she was having a heart attack.*

**2** a large strong box that you use to keep things in: *Many of her possessions were in a large wooden chest.*

→ See picture on page A2

**chest-nut** /'tʃesnʌt/ *noun*

a type of nut that is red-brown on the outside and pale yellow on the inside, which you can cook and eat: *a chestnut tree*

**chest of 'drawers** *noun* plural **chests of drawers**

a piece of furniture with drawers that clothes can be kept in **SYNONYM** **dresser**

→ See picture on page A10

**chew** /tʃu/ *verb*

**1** to bite food several times with your teeth, in order to break it up so that you can swallow it: *The dog was chewing a piece of meat.*

**2** to bite something several times without eating it: *Students are not allowed to chew gum in the classroom.*

—**chewy** *adjective* food that is chewy has to be chewed a lot before it is soft enough to eat: *The meat was very chewy and hard to eat.*

**'chewing gum** *noun*

another word for GUM: *Do you want a piece of chewing gum?*

**chic** /ʃik/ *adjective*

fashionable and attractive to look at: *They stayed at a chic hotel in Manhattan.*

**Chi-ca-no** /tʃɪ'kanou/ *noun*

someone living in the U.S. who was born in Mexico or whose family came from Mexico

—**Chicana** *noun* a woman living in the U.S. who was born in Mexico or whose family came from Mexico

**chick** /tʃɪk/ *noun*

a baby bird: *a hen and her chicks*



**chick-en**<sup>1</sup> /'tʃɪkən/ noun

**1** a farm bird that is kept for its eggs and meat

**2** the meat from this bird: *His favorite food is fried chicken.*

**3** *informal* someone who does not have any courage: *Don't be such a chicken! You can do it.*

—**chicken** adjective, *informal* afraid to do something: *He was so chicken, he wouldn't even get in the water.*

**chicken**<sup>2</sup> verb

**PHRASAL VERB**

**chicken out**

to decide not to do something that you have said you will do because you are too afraid: *He said he wanted to go skiing with us, but then he chickened out at the last minute.*

**'chicken pox** also **chick-en-pox**

/tʃɪkən,paks/ noun

a disease that children often get, which causes ITCHY red spots on the skin and a fever

**chief**<sup>1</sup> /tʃiːf/ noun

**1** the leader of a group or organization: *the chief of police*

**2** the leader of a tribe: *an American Indian chief*

**chief**<sup>2</sup> adjective

most important: *Coffee is one of the country's chief exports.* **SYNONYM** main

**'chief 'justice** noun

the most important judge in a court of law, especially in the U.S. Supreme Court

**chief-ly** /tʃiːfli/ adverb

mainly: *The disease chiefly affects women, but some men also get it.*

**child** /tʃaɪld/ noun plural **children** /tʃɪldrən/

**1** a young person who is not yet fully grown: *Children love computer games. | We went there when I was a child, but that was many years ago.* **SYNONYM** kid

**THESAURUS: child**

**Child** is a word that you can use to talk about **young children** and **teenagers**. You do not normally use child to mean a **baby**.

**Kid** is an informal word for a **child**.

You are a **baby** when you are first born.

A very young baby who cannot walk or talk yet is called an **infant**.

You are a **teenager** between 13 and 19.

An **adolescent** is a child between about 11 and 17, when he or she is developing into an adult.

**2** a son or daughter: *They have three children: a daughter and two sons.* **SYNONYM** kid

**child-care** /tʃaɪld,keɪ/ noun

an arrangement in which someone takes care of children while their parents are at work: *Both of her children are in childcare since she works full time.*

**child-hood** /tʃaɪldhʊd/ noun

the time when you are a child: *We've been friends since childhood – we went to elementary school together.*

**child-ish** /tʃaɪldɪʃ/ adjective

**1** behaving in a silly way that makes you seem younger than you really are: *"I don't want to eat my vegetables." "Don't be so childish!"* **SYNONYM** immature

**2** suitable for a child, but not for an adult: *I'm an adult – I'm not interested in childish games.*

—**childishness** noun

**child-less** /tʃaɪdləs/ adjective

having no children: *a childless couple*

**chil-dren** /tʃɪldrən/ noun

the plural of CHILD

**chil-i** /tʃɪli/ noun plural **chilies**

**1** also **'chili ,pepper** a small thin type of red or green pepper with a very hot taste

**2** a dish made with beans, chilis, and usually meat

**chill**<sup>1</sup> /tʃɪl/ verb

**1** to make something cold: *Chill the dessert before you serve it.*

**2** also **chill out** *informal* to relax: *We were just chilling in front of the TV.*

**chill**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a feeling of being frightened: *He was the meanest person I'd ever met, and every time I saw him a chill ran down my spine (=I felt very frightened).*

**2** a feeling of coldness: *Take a sweater – there's a chill in the air.*

**3** **chills** = a feeling of being cold, caused by being sick: *First I had chills and then a fever.*



**chill-y** /'tʃɪli/ *adjective*

chilly weather or places are cold and make you uncomfortable: *a chilly day in March*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cold**<sup>1</sup>

**chime** /tʃaɪm/ *verb*

if a clock or bell chimes, it makes a ringing sound: *The clock chimes every hour.*

—**chime** *noun* the ringing sound of a clock or bell

**chim·ney** /'tʃɪmni/ *noun*

a pipe that takes smoke from a fire out through the roof of a building

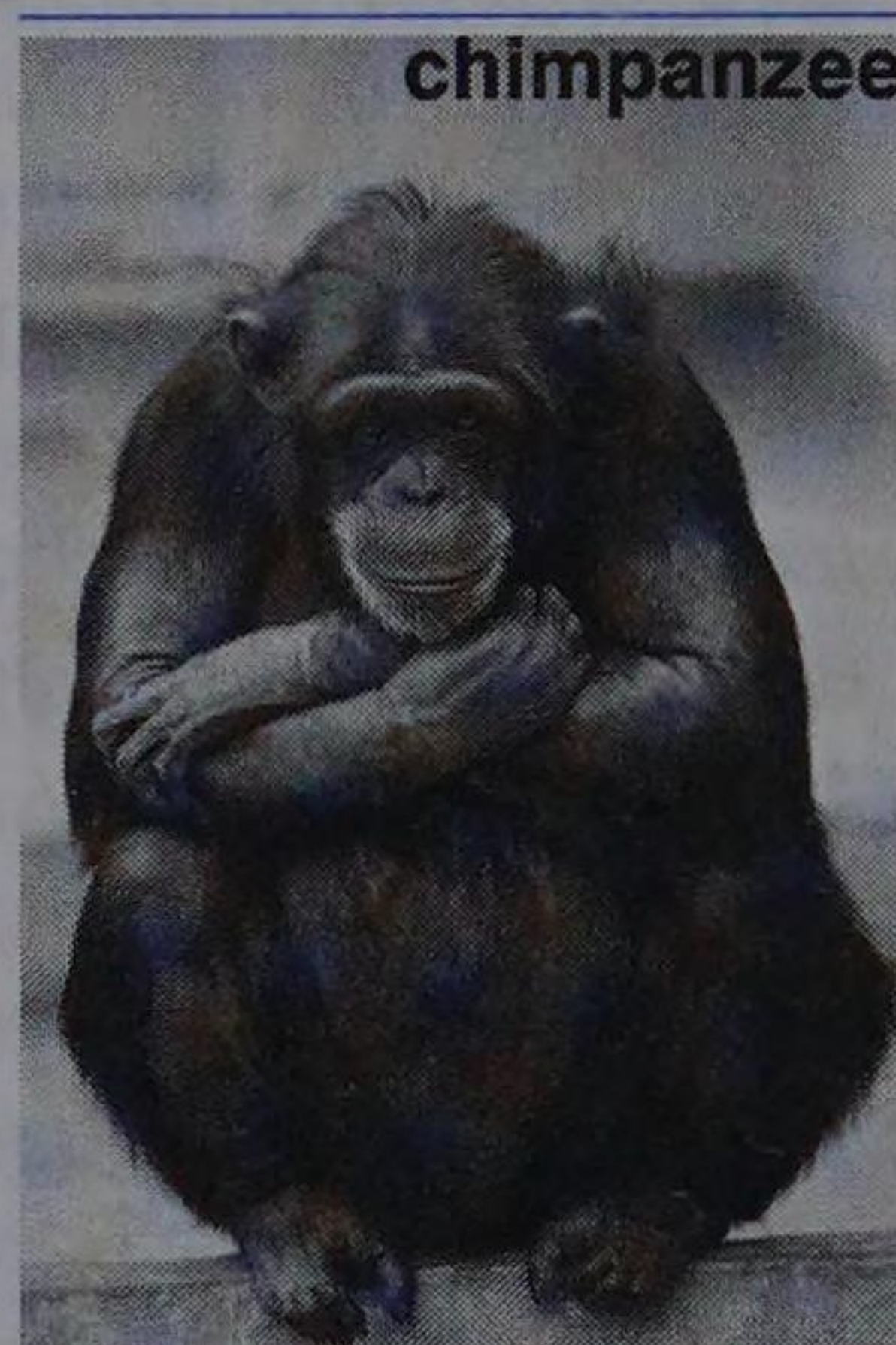
**chim·pan·zee**

/,tʃɪmpæn'zi/ *noun*

also **chimp**

/tʃɪmp/ *informal*

an African animal that is like a monkey without a tail: *Chimpanzees are very intelligent animals and can make simple tools.*



**chin** /tʃɪn/ *noun*

the front part of your face below your mouth: *She rested her chin on her hands.*

→ See picture on page A2

**chi·na** /'tʃaɪnə/ *noun*

plates, cups, etc. that are made from white clay of good quality: *a beautiful china teacup*

**Chi·nese**<sup>1</sup> /,tʃaɪ'nɪz/ *adjective*

from China: *a Chinese vase*

**Chinese**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** any of the languages that come from China, such as Mandarin or Cantonese

**2** the Chinese = people from China

**chip**<sup>1</sup> /tʃɪp/ *noun*

**1** a thin dry flat piece of potato or TORTILLA that has been fried in oil: *a bag of potato chips*

**2** a small piece of metal or plastic that a computer uses to store information or to work: *The new computer chip is ten times more powerful than the old one.*

**3** a small piece of something, such as wood, stone, or chocolate: *You can use the wood chips to make a fire.*

**4** a small hole, crack, or mark on a plate, cup, etc. where a piece has broken off: *This plate has a chip in it.*

**5** a small flat colored piece of plastic used in games instead of money: *a gambling chip*

**chip**<sup>2</sup> *verb* chipped, chipping

to break a small piece off something: *I chipped one of my fingernails opening the can.*

—**chipped** *adjective* with a piece broken off: *a chipped tooth*

**chip·munk** /'tʃɪpmʌŋk/ *noun*

a small brown animal that has black and white lines on its fur: *Chipmunks eat mainly nuts and seeds, and live in holes in the ground.*

**chi·ro·prac·tor** /'kaɪrə,præktə/ *noun*

someone who treats medical problems such as back pain by moving and pressing the muscles and bones

**chirp** /tʃɜ:p/ *verb*

if a bird or insect chirps, it makes short high sounds: *The birds were chirping in the trees.*

**chis·el** /'tʃɪzəl/ *noun*

a metal tool with a sharp edge that you use to cut wood or stone

**chlo·rine** /'klɔ:rɪn/ *noun*

a strong-smelling gas that is used to keep swimming pools clean

**choco·late** /'tʃəklɪt/ *noun*

**1** a sweet brown food that is eaten as candy or is used in cooking: *a chocolate cake* | *Most candy bars have chocolate in them.*

**2** a small candy that is made of or covered with chocolate: *a box of chocolates*

**chocolate 'chip** *noun*

a small piece of chocolate put in foods such as cookies and cakes: *chocolate chip cookies*

**choice** /tʃɔɪs/ *noun*

**1** the chance to choose between two or more things or people: *Voters have a choice between three people for mayor.* | *The restaurant offers a good choice of food.*

**2** the person or thing that someone has chosen: *I'm not sure if I made the right choice of career.*

**choir** /kwaɪə/ *noun*

a group of people who sing together: *She sings in the church choir.*

**choke** /tʃəʊk/ *verb*

**1** to have difficulty breathing because your throat is blocked or there is not enough air: *He choked on a piece of bread.*



**2** to press your hands around someone's throat so that he or she cannot breathe: *Let go of her throat! You're choking her!*

**chol·er·a** /'kʌlərə/ *noun*

a very serious disease of the stomach, which people usually catch by drinking dirty water, especially in tropical countries

**cho·les·ter·ol** /kə'lestə,rɒl/ *noun*

a substance in your blood that may cause heart disease: *Foods such as steak and eggs are high in cholesterol (=they contain a lot of cholesterol).*

**choose** /tʃuːz/ *verb* **chose** /tʃoʊz/ **chosen** /'tʃoʊzən/ *choosing*

**1** to decide which one of a group of things or people that you want: *She chose the black dress instead of the red one. | There are so many books to choose from.*

#### THESAURUS: choose

**pick** to choose something or someone from a group of people or things: *Danielle picked the green dress.*

**select** *formal* to choose something or someone by thinking carefully about which is the best: *John selected the music for our wedding.*

**decide on something** to choose one thing from many possible choices: *Have you decided on a name for the baby?*

**opt for something** *formal* to choose one thing instead of another: *Students in this area can opt for one of three different schools.*

**2** to decide to do something: *Many students are choosing to stay longer at college rather than graduating and looking for a job.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **decide**

**chop<sup>1</sup>** /tʃɒp/ *also chop up verb* **chopped**, **chopping**

to cut food, wood, etc. into smaller pieces: *Chop the onions into thin slices.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**chop something down**

to make a tree fall down by cutting it with a heavy sharp tool

**chop something off**

to remove something by cutting it with a sharp tool: *We chopped off the branches that were too close to the house.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cut<sup>1</sup>**

→ See picture on page A14

**chop<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a small flat piece of meat on a bone: *a pork chop*

**chop·sticks** /'tʃɒpstɪks/ *plural noun*

a pair of thin sticks that people in parts of Asia use for eating food

**chord** /kɔːrd/ *noun*

a combination of three or more musical notes played at the same time: *I can play a few chords on the guitar.*

**chore** /tʃɔːr/ *noun*

a job that you have to do: *I need to do some chores around the house like cleaning the bathroom.*

**cho·re·og·ra·phy** /,kɔːri'ɑːgrəfi/ *noun*

the art of arranging how dancers should move during a performance

**cho·rus** /'kɔːrəs/ *noun*

**1** the part of a song that is repeated after each VERSE: *I don't know all the words of the song. I only know the chorus.*

**2** a large group of people who sing together: *She used to sing in the school chorus.*

SYNONYM **choir**

**chose** /tʃoʊz/ *verb*

the past tense of CHOOSE

**chos·en** /'tʃoʊzən/ *verb*

the past participle of CHOOSE

**chow·der** /'tʃaʊdə/ *noun*

a thick soup made with milk, potatoes, and often fish: *clam chowder*

**chris·ten** /'krɪsən/ *verb*

to officially give a child its name at a Christian religious ceremony: *She was christened Mary Louise.*

—**christening** *noun* a Christian ceremony at which a child is given its name

**Chris·tian** /'krɪstʃən/ *adjective*

relating to the religion that is based on the teaching of Jesus Christ: *Christian beliefs*

—**Christian** *noun* someone who believes in the religion that is based on the teaching of Jesus Christ: *His parents are both Christians and go to church every Sunday.*

**Chris·ti·an·i·ty** /,krɪsti'ænəti/ *noun*

the religion that is based on the teaching of Jesus Christ

**Christ·mas** /'krɪsməs/ *noun*

**1** December 25, the day when Christians celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ: *I still have to buy Christmas presents for my family.*



**2** the period of time before and after this day: *My grandparents are coming to stay with us for Christmas.*

**Christmas 'Day** *noun*

December 25, the day when Christians celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ

**Christmas 'Eve** *noun*

December 24, the day before Christmas

**chrome** /kroum/ also **chro-mi-um**

/'kroumiəm/ *noun*

a shiny metal that is used as a covering for other metals on cars and furniture: *The table was made of chrome and glass.*

**chro-mo-some** /'kroumə,soum/ *noun*

a part of every living cell that contains the GENES that control the size, shape, color, etc. of a plant or animal: *Only males have Y chromosomes.*

**chron-ic** /'kranik/ *adjective*

a chronic illness, condition, or problem is one that continues for a long time and cannot be cured: *She has chronic back pain and is never comfortable.*

**chron-o-log-i-cal** /,kranl'adzɪkəl/

*adjective, formal*

arranged according to the order in which something happened: *The dates are listed in in chronological order starting in 1950 and continuing to the present.*

**chry-san-the-mum** /kri'sænθəməm/

*noun*

a garden plant with large brightly colored flowers

**chub-by** /'tʃʌbi/ *adjective*

slightly fat: *He was a chubby little boy, but now he's very thin.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fat**<sup>1</sup>

**chuck-le** /'tʃʌkəl/ *verb*

to laugh quietly: *She chuckled to herself when she read his funny letter.*

—**chuckle** *noun* a quiet laugh

→ See Thesaurus box at **laugh**<sup>1</sup>

**chunk** /tʃʌŋk/ *noun*

a large thick piece of something that does not have an even shape: *He broke a chunk off the chocolate bar.*

—**chunky** *adjective* thick and heavy

→ See Thesaurus box at **piece**

**church** /tʃɜ:tʃ/ *noun*

**1** a building where Christians go to have religious services: *She goes to church every Sunday.*

**2** also **Church** one of the separate groups within the Christian religion: *the Catholic Church*

**chute** /ʃut/ *noun*

a tube or sloping surface that things or people can slide down: *The old laundry chute leads to the basement.*

**ci-der** /'saɪdər/ also **'apple ,cider** *noun*

a drink made from apples

**ci-gar** /sɪ'gar/ *noun*

a thick tube of rolled tobacco leaves that people smoke: *He was smoking a smelly cigar.*

**cig-a-rette** /'sɪgə,ret/ *noun*

a thin tube of tobacco rolled in white paper that people smoke: *a pack of cigarettes*

**cin-e-ma** /'sɪnəmə/ *noun, formal*

movies in general: *We studied French cinema and learned about all the famous directors.*

**cin-na-mon** /'sɪnəmən/ *noun*

a sweet-smelling brown SPICE used in baking: *Sprinkle cinnamon on top of the cookies.*

**cir-cle**<sup>1</sup> /'sə:kəl/ *noun*

**1** a round shape like the letter O: *They sat in a circle around the fire.*

**2** a group of people who know each other and like the same things: *She has a large circle of friends.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **circle** *noun*
- **circle** *verb*
- **circular** *adjective*
- **semicircle** *noun*

→ See picture at **shape**<sup>1</sup>

**circle**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to draw a circle around something: *Circle the correct answer.*

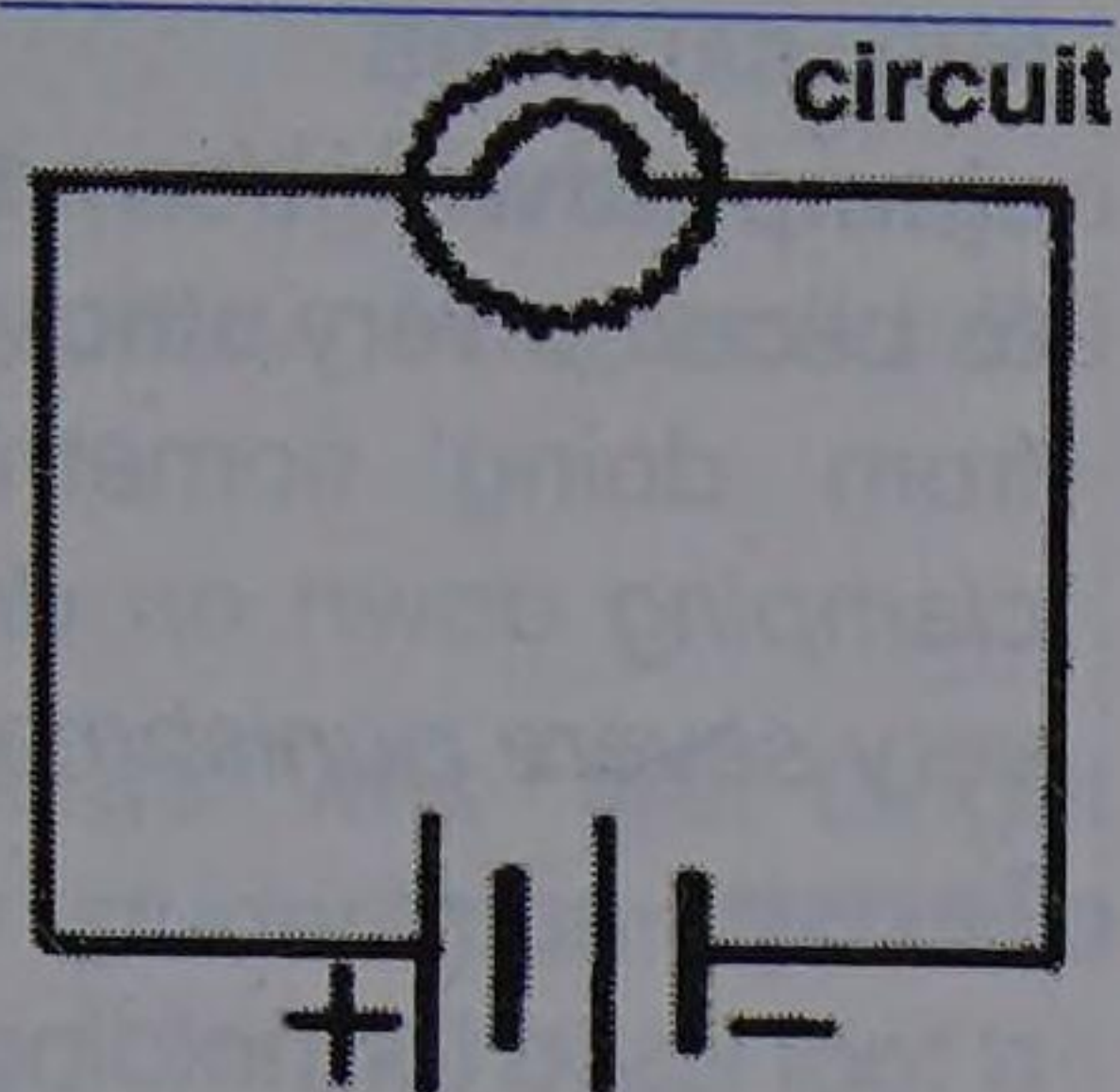
**2** to move in a circle around something: *The plane circled the airport before landing.*



**cir·cuit** /'səˌkɪt/

noun

the complete path that an electric current travels around:  
*an electrical circuit*

**cir·cu·lar**

/'səˌkjələ/ adjective

shaped like a circle:

*They sat around a circular table.*

**cir·cu·late** /'səˌkjəˌleɪt/ verb, formal

**1** to go around inside something: *Blood circulates around the body.*

**2** to send information to a group of people: *The report was circulated to everyone in the department.*

**cir·cu·la·tion** /,səˌkjəˌleɪʃən/ noun, formal

**1** the movement of blood around your body: *Exercise can improve your circulation.*

**2** the number of copies of a newspaper or magazine that are sold each time it is printed: *The newspaper has a daily circulation of 400,000.*

**cir·cum·ference** /səˈkʌmfrəns/ noun, formal

the distance around the outside of a circle or a round object: *Measure the circumference of your head by wrapping a string around it.*

→ See picture at **diameter**

**cir·cum·stan·ces** /'səˌkəmˌstænsɪz/

[Ac] plural noun

**1** the conditions or facts that are involved in an event or situation: *She had not been told about the circumstances of his death and she wanted to know what had happened. I'm not surprised that he was upset, under the circumstances (=because of the situation).*

**2 under no circumstances** = used for saying that something will or should never happen: *Under no circumstances should you lend him money. He'll never pay you back.*

**cir·cus** /'səˌkəs/ noun

a show, often in a large tent, that is given by a group of performers and sometimes animals that has come to a town: *We saw clowns and elephants at the circus.*

**cite** /saɪt/ [Ac] verb, formal

to mention something as an example, as proof of something else, etc.: *His bad attitude was cited as a reason for firing him from the job.*

**cit·i·zen** /'sɪtəzən/ noun

someone who lives in a particular town, state, or country and has legal rights there: *I have the same rights as any other American citizen. | She is a citizen of Canada.*

—**citizenship** noun the state of legally belonging to a particular country, and having rights and duties there: *She has applied for U.S. citizenship.*

**cit·rus** /'sɪtrəs/ also '**citrus** ,fruit noun, formal

fruits such as oranges or LEMONS, or the trees they grow on: *The drink had a citrus flavor.*

**cit·y** /'sɪti/ noun plural **cities**

a very large town: *I've always lived in big cities like New York and Los Angeles.*

**city** 'hall also **City Hall** noun

the local government of a city, or the building it uses as its offices: *The mayor held a news conference at City Hall yesterday.*

**civ·ic** /'sɪvɪk/ adjective, formal

relating to a city or the people who live in it: *The plan is supported by local civic leaders including the mayor and city council members.*

**civ·il** /'sɪvəl/ [Ac] adjective, formal

**1** relating to laws about business, property, etc. rather than crimes: *The company is facing three civil lawsuits.*

**2** not military or religious: *We were married in a civil ceremony, not in church.*

**3** polite but not very friendly: *Please try to at least be civil, even if you can't be friendly.*

—**civility** /səˈvɪləti/ noun, formal behavior that is polite but not very friendly

**civil engi'neering** noun

the activity of building roads, bridges, large buildings, etc.

**ci·vil·ian** /səˈvɪliən/ noun

anyone who is not in the army, navy, etc.: *Many innocent civilians were killed in the attack.*

—**civilian** adjective



**civ·i·li·za·tion** /ˌsɪvələˈzeɪʃən/ *noun*

a society that is well organized and developed: *the ancient civilizations of Greece and Rome*

**civ·i·lized** /ˈsɪvəˌlaɪzd/ *adjective*

**1** a civilized society is well organized, and has good laws and ways of living: *All civilized societies have some form of government.*

**2** behaving in a polite and sensible way: *Let's discuss this in a civilized way, without yelling at each other.*

**civil** **'liberties** *plural noun*

the right of citizens to do whatever they want if it does not harm the rights of other people

**civil** **'rights** *plural noun*

the legal rights that every citizen of a country has: *The civil rights movement of the 1960s worked for an end to unfair treatment for people of different races.*

**civil** **'war** *noun*

a war between groups of people who live in the same country: *Four hundred thousand people were killed in the civil war between the two regions of the country.*

**claim**<sup>1</sup> /kleɪm/ *verb*

**1** to say that something is true, even though it might not be: *He claims (that) he's 19, but he only looks about 16 to me.*

**2** to ask for something that belongs to you or that you have a right to have: *Lost items can be claimed between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m.*

**claim**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a statement that something is true, even though it might not be: *The company made false claims about the safety of its products. It actually knew they were dangerous.*

**2** an official request for something that you think you have a right to have: *He made an insurance claim after his house was destroyed in the storm.*

**clam** /klæm/ *noun*

a small ocean animal that has two rounded shells, or the meat from this animal: *We dug in the mud for clams.*

**clamp**<sup>1</sup> /klæmp/ *verb*

to hold or put something firmly in a particular position: *He clamped his hand over her mouth so she couldn't scream.*

**PHRASAL VERB****clamp down** *informal*

to become very strict in order to stop people from doing something: *The courts are clamping down on drunk drivers and giving very severe punishments.*

**clamp**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a tool used for holding things together tightly

**clan·des·tine** /klænˈdestɪn/ *adjective, formal*

secret: *Only a few people knew about the clandestine meeting.*

**clang** /klæŋ/ *verb*

to make a loud sound like metal being hit: *The gate clanged shut behind him.*

—**clang** *noun* a loud sound like metal being hit

**clap** /klæp/ *verb* **clapped, clapping**

to hit your hands together loudly to show that you like something: *The audience was clapping and cheering for the band.*

→ See picture on page A3

**clar·i·fy** /ˈklærəˌfaɪ/ **[Ac]** *verb* **clarified,** third person singular **clarifies** *formal*

to make something easier to understand: *Can you clarify these ideas in your paper? I'm not sure exactly what you mean.*

—**clarification** /ˌklærəfəˈkeɪʃən/ *noun* the action of clarifying something

**clar·i·net** /ˌklærəˈnet/ *noun*

a wooden musical instrument like a long black tube that you play by blowing into it

→ See picture on page A21

**clar·i·ty** /ˈklærəti/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

the quality of being clear and easy to understand: *Try to improve the clarity of your writing by using simple language and giving more details and examples.*

**clash**<sup>1</sup> /klæʃ/ *verb*

**1** *formal* to fight or argue with someone: *The police clashed with the angry crowd.*

**2** if colors or patterns clash, they look bad together: *The orange curtains clashed with the purple carpet.*

**clash**<sup>2</sup> *noun, formal*

a fight or argument: *The deaths were the result of a clash between two gangs.*

**clasp**<sup>1</sup> /klæsp/ *verb, formal*

to hold something tightly: *She clasped her hands tightly together as if she was praying.*



**clasp**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a small metal object used for fastening a bag, piece of jewelry, etc.: *She undid the clasp of her necklace.*

**class** /klæs/ *noun*

**1** a group of students who are taught together: *How many students are in your class? | He graduated in the class of '05* (=the group of students who finished in 2005).

**2** a period of time during which students are taught: *I loved all my science classes in high school. | Bob wasn't in class today.*

**3** a group of people in a society that earn a similar amount of money, have similar types of jobs, etc.: *Rich people pay higher taxes than the middle class.*

**4** *formal* a group of things that are similar in some way: *These four classes of weapons are illegal.*

**clas-sic**<sup>1</sup> /'klæsɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

very typical or good: *a classic rock song | This is a classic example of how hard work can bring success.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **old**

**classic**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a book, movie, or song which is very good and which people have liked for a long time: *"Moby Dick" is a classic of American literature.*

**clas-si-cal** /'klæsɪkəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** relating to classical music: *a classical pianist*

**2** relating to ancient Greece and Rome: *stories from classical mythology*

**classical 'music** *noun*

music by people such as Mozart and Beethoven that is considered to be serious and important

**classified 'ad** *noun*

a small advertisement that you put in a newspaper, for example offering to sell something or offering a job: *I looked in the classified ads every day to find an apartment.*

**clas-si-fy** /'klæsəˌfaɪ/ *verb* **classified**, third person singular **classifies** *formal*  
to decide which group something belongs to: *Whales are classified as mammals, not fish, because the babies are born alive and drink their mothers' milk.*

—**classification** /ˌklæsəfəˈkeɪʃən/ *noun* the process or result of classifying things

**class-mate** /'klæsmet/ *noun*

someone who is in the same class as you at school or college: *I'm younger than most of my classmates.*

**class-room** /'klæsrum/ *noun*

a room in a school where students are taught

**class-y** /'klæsi/ *adjective* **classier**, **classiest** *informal*

extremely good in quality or behavior: *It's a classy restaurant and the prices are pretty high.*

**clat-ter** /'klætə/ *verb*

if things clatter, they make several loud noises by hitting something: *The pans clattered to the floor.*

—**clatter** *noun* loud noises made by things hitting together

**clause** /kloʊz/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** in grammar, a group of words that contains a subject and a verb: *The sentence "I'll do it if I can" contains two clauses: "I'll do it" and "if I can."*

**2** a part of a legal document: *I read every clause in the contract very carefully.*

**claus-tro-pho-bi-a** /ˌkloʊstrəˈfoʊbiə/ *noun*

a strong fear of being in a small enclosed place

—**claustrophobic** *adjective* having a feeling of claustrophobia: *I get claustrophobic in elevators.*

**claw** /klo/ *noun*

a sharp curved nail on the foot of an animal or bird: *The cat dug its claws into the carpet.*

—**claw** *verb* if an animal claws something; it tears it with its claws

**clay** /kleɪ/ *noun*

sticky soil that is used for making pots or bricks: *a clay pot*

**clean**<sup>1</sup> /klin/ *adjective*

**1** not dirty: *Are your hands clean? | He put on a clean shirt.* **ANTONYM** **dirty**

**2** not involving sex, drugs, or anything illegal: *He was known for his clean and healthy lifestyle.*

**3** **come clean** *informal* = to tell the truth about something after keeping it a secret: *I*



finally came clean with my parents, and told them I had cheated on the test.

—**cleanliness** /'klenlɪnɪs/ *noun* the state of being clean and not dirty

C

**clean**<sup>2</sup> also **clean up** *verb*

to make something clean or neat: *I need to clean the bathtub.* | *She's cleaning up her room.*

**THESAURUS: clean**

**do the dishes/wash the dishes** to wash plates and pans after a meal: *It's Becky's turn to wash the dishes!*

**scrub** to clean something by rubbing it very hard: *The floor was so dirty I had to scrub it with a brush.*

**dry** to dry plates, dishes, etc. that have been washed: *If you wash the dishes, I'll dry them.*

**do the housework** to clean the house: *My mom and dad work all week, so we all help do the housework on Saturday.*

**dust** to clean small, light pieces of dirt off of furniture: *Even small children can help you dust.*

**vacuum** to clean carpets with a special machine: *Irma was vacuuming the living room.*

**sweep** to clean the dirt from the floor using a broom (=brush with a long handle): *I swept the kitchen floor.*

**mop** to clean the floor with water and a mop (=soft brush on a long handle): *Kenny spilled some juice, so I had to mop the floor.*

**do the laundry** to wash clothes: *I do a load of laundry every day.*

—**cleaning** *noun*: *I do all the cleaning.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**clean something out**

to make the inside of a room, cupboard, etc. clean or neat, especially by taking things out of it: *We cleaned out the garage last Sunday.*

**clean·er** /'klinə/ *noun*

**1** a machine or substance that is used to clean things: *a vacuum cleaner* | *a bottle of glass cleaner*

**2** someone whose job is to clean houses or other buildings

**3 the cleaners** = a DRY CLEANERS: *Could you pick up my suit from the cleaners?*

**cleanse** /klenz/ *verb, formal*

to make something completely clean: *Cleanse the cut with soap and water.*

SYNONYM **clean**

**cleans·er** /'klenzə/ *noun*

**1** a substance used for cleaning your skin

**2** a substance used for cleaning surfaces in a house, office, etc.

**clear**<sup>1</sup> /klɪr/ *adjective*

**1** easy to understand, hear, or read: *I gave him clear instructions on what to do.* | *She spoke in a clear voice.*

**2** impossible to doubt or make a mistake about: *It was clear (that) he was angry.* | *He made it clear (that) he wasn't interested.*

**THESAURUS: clear**

**noticeable** very easy to notice: *There was a noticeable difference in her behavior.*

**obvious** easy to notice: *It was obvious that Sally wanted to win.*

**conspicuous** very easy to notice, especially because something is different from other things: *I felt conspicuous in my red coat.*

**striking** unusual or interesting enough to be noticed: *The stories are a striking example of how well children can write.*

**3 be clear about something** = if you are clear about something, you understand it completely: *Are you clear about what I expect you to do?*

**4** if a substance is clear, you can see through it: *clear glass bottles* SYNONYM **transparent**

**5** having edges, shapes, and details that are easy to see: *The TV has a very clear picture.*

**6** a clear sky has no clouds: *The sky was clear and the sun was shining.* ANTONYM **cloudy**

**7** not blocked by anything: *Standing by the window, I had a clear view of everything that happened.*

**clear**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to move things from a place, especially a large space, so that it is neat or empty: *They cleared the land so that they could grow crops.* | *Patty helped clear the table (=take away the dirty dishes, forks, etc.).*

**2** to prove or say officially that someone has



not done something wrong: *The jury cleared Johnson of the murder charge.*

**3** to give or get official permission to do something: *It sounds like a good idea, but let me clear it with my boss.*

**4 clear the air** = to talk about a problem or disagreement, so that bad feeling does not continue: *I'm glad we've cleared the air.*

#### PHRASAL VERB

#### clear up

**1 clear something up** = to explain something or make it clearer: *There's a misunderstanding that I want to clear up.*

**2** if the sky clears up, the cloud goes away

#### clear·ance /'klɪərəns/ noun

official permission to do something: *The pilot was given clearance to land the plane.*

SYNONYM **permission**

#### clear·ing /'klɪrɪŋ/ noun

a small area in a forest where there are no trees

#### clear·ly /'klɪrli/ adverb

**1** without any doubt: *Clearly, we have a problem here.* SYNONYM **obviously**

**2** in a way that is easy to hear, see, or understand: *Please speak more clearly. I can't understand you.*

**3** if you cannot think clearly, you are confused

#### clench /klentʃ/ verb, formal

if you clench your hand or teeth, you close your hand or mouth tightly: *He clenched his fist like he wanted to hit me.*

#### cler·gy /'klɜːdʒi/ plural noun, formal

official religious leaders, such as priests: *Priests and other members of the clergy attended the meeting.*

#### cler·i·cal /'klerɪkəl/ adjective

relating to office work: *A clerical worker typed the report.*

#### clerk /klɜːk/ noun

**1** someone whose job is to keep records, accounts, etc. in an office

**2** someone who deals with people arriving at a hotel: *Please return your keys to the clerk at the front desk.*

→ **sales clerk**

#### clev·er /'kleɪvə/ adjective

intelligent and good at thinking of ideas: *She's a clever lawyer and very good at defending her clients.*

—**cleverly** adverb

—**cleverness** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **intelligent**

#### cli·ché /kli'ʃeɪ/ noun

a phrase or idea that has been used many times before, and so is now boring: *I didn't want to hear clichés like "Time heals all wounds."*

→ See Thesaurus box at **phrase**

#### click /klɪk/ verb

**1** to make a short hard sound: *The door clicked shut.*

**2** if you click on something on a computer screen, you press a button on the MOUSE to make the computer do something: *Click on the button at the bottom of the screen to open a new page.*

—**click** noun a clicking sound: *I heard the click of a light switch.*

→ See picture on page A22

#### cli·ent /'klaɪənt/ noun

someone who pays to use the services of a business, a lawyer, etc.: *Mr. Johnson is one of the law firm's most important clients.*

#### cli·en·tele /,klaɪən'tel/ noun, formal

the people who go to a particular store, restaurant, etc.: *It's a fashionable bar with a young clientele (=the people who go are young).*

#### cliff /klɪf/ noun

an area of high rock with steep sides that often go down to the ocean: *We walked along the cliff above the beach.*

#### cli·mate /'klaɪmət/ noun

the type of weather that a place has: *In the south of the country, the climate is hot and dry.*

—**climatic** /klaɪ'mætɪk/ adjective, formal relating to a climate: *A lot of climatic change is caused by humans.*

#### cli·max /'klaɪmæks/ noun

the most important or exciting thing that happens: *Winning the gold medal was the climax of his sports career.*

#### climb<sup>1</sup> /klaɪm/ verb

**1** if you climb a tree, a mountain, some stairs, etc., you go up toward the top: *It was a beautiful day, so we decided to climb the mountain.*



**2** to increase in amount or level: *During the day, the temperature climbed to 90 degrees.*

**climb<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

an act of going up a tree, a mountain, etc., toward the top: *It was a steep climb to the top of the hill.*

→ See picture on page A4

**climb·er** /'klaɪmər/ *noun*

someone who climbs mountains or rocks as a sport: *a rock climber*

**climb·ing** /'klaɪmɪŋ/ *noun*

the sport of climbing mountains or rocks: *We love to go climbing in the mountains on vacation.*

→ See picture on page A24

**cling** /klɪŋ/ *verb* **clung** /klʌŋ/

to hold onto someone or something tightly: *The boy was frightened, and clung to his mother.*

**clin·ic** /'klaɪnɪk/ *noun*

a place where people can get medical treatment or advice: *I work at the health clinic at the university and we see a lot of sick students this time of year.*

**clin·i·cal** /'klaɪnɪkəl/ *adjective, formal*

relating to treating people who are sick: *The health department is now starting some clinical research.*

**clip<sup>1</sup>** /klɪp/ *noun*

a small object used for holding pieces of paper, hair, etc. together: *He fastened the pages together with a paper clip.*

**clip<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**1** to hold pieces of paper, hair, etc. together with a clip: *Please clip your photo to the front of the form.*

**2** to cut small pieces off something to make it look neater: *He was sitting in the bathroom clipping his toenails.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fasten**

**clip·board** /'klɪpbɔːrd/ *noun*

a flat board with a clip that holds paper onto it: *The men were carrying clipboards so that they could take notes.*

**clip·pers** /'klɪpəz/ *plural noun*

a tool for cutting small pieces off something: *Do you have any nail clippers? My fingernails are too long.*

**clock** /klɒk/ *noun*

**1** an instrument on a wall, table, etc. that shows the time: *She looked at the clock on the wall: It was 11:15. I an alarm clock (=that rings a bell to wake you up)*

**2** **around the clock** = all day and all night: *I had to work around the clock to finish my paper.*

**clock·wise** /'klɒk-waɪz/ *adverb*

moving in the same direction as the HANDS (=parts that point to the time) of a clock: *We were told to run clockwise around the track.*

ANTONYM **counterclockwise**

**clog** /klɒg/ *noun*

a shoe that covers your toes but is open in the back

→ See picture at **shoe**

**clone** /klaʊn/ *noun*

an exact copy of a plant or animal that scientists produce from one of its cells: *By taking just one cell, they could create a perfect clone.*

—**clone** *verb* to produce a clone from a plant or animal: *Scientists have managed to clone several different animals.*

**close<sup>1</sup>** /klaʊz/ *verb*

**1** to shut something: *Don't forget to close the door.* **SYNONYM** **shut**; **ANTONYM** **open**

**2** if a business closes, it stops doing business until the next day: *"What time does the mall close tonight?" "9:00 p.m."* **ANTONYM** **open**

**3** **also close down** if a business closes, it stops existing: *The factory closed down six months ago.* **ANTONYM** **open**

**4** to end a speech, movie, book, etc. in a particular way: *The book opens before the war and closes 30 years later.* **ANTONYM** **open**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **close** *verb*
- **closed** *adjective*
- **closure** *noun*

**close<sup>2</sup>** /klaʊs/ *adjective*

**1** near someone or something: *Our house is close to the beach.* **SYNONYM** **near**



clock



**2** likely to experience something soon: *We haven't found the answer yet, but we're getting closer.* **SYNONYM** **near**

**3 close to** = near a particular time or number: *It was close to midnight. | The canyon has close to one million visitors each year.*

**4** close friends or families like or love each other a lot: *We were close friends in high school.*

**5** giving careful attention to something: *Use the microscope, if you want to take a closer look.*

**6 a close call** = a situation you are in that is dangerous, but that you escape from: *I had a close call yesterday in the car. A guy in a van almost hit me.*

—**closeness** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **near**<sup>1</sup>

**close**<sup>3</sup> /kloʊz/ *noun, formal*

the end of an activity or time: *The 20th century was coming to a close (=was ending).*

**closed** /kloʊzd/ *adjective*

**1** not open: *Make sure all the windows are closed so the rain doesn't get in.* **SYNONYM** **shut**

**2** not doing business: *The store's closed on Sundays, so we'll have to go shopping on Saturday.*

→ See picture at **ajar**

**closed circuit television** *noun*

cameras which are used in public places to help prevent crime: *The burglars were caught on closed circuit television.*

**close-knit** /ˌkloʊs ˈnɪt/ *adjective, formal*

a close-knit family or group of people know each other well and live near each other: *It's a small town and a very close-knit community.*

**close-ly** /ˈkloʊsli/ *adverb, formal*

if you look at someone or something closely, you look very carefully: *She was watching him closely because she didn't trust him.*

**closet** /ˈkloʊzɪt/ *noun*

an area where you keep your clothes, built into the wall of a room: *Let me hang your coat up in the closet.*

**close-up** /ˈkloʊs ʌp/ *noun*

a photograph that is taken very near to someone or something: *I wanted to get a*

*close-up of her face so that you could see her beautiful eyes in the picture.*

**closure** /ˈkloʊʒə/ *noun, formal*

the act of closing a building, factory, school, etc. permanently: *The school's closure upset many parents.*

**clot** /klat/ *noun*

some blood that has become solid: *The blood clot had cut off the flow of blood to his brain.*

—**clot** *verb* if blood clots, it becomes solid

**cloth** /kloθ/ *noun*

**1** material used for making clothes and other things: *Mom was making a shirt from a piece of cotton cloth.*

**2** a piece of material that you use for doing something: *Wipe the kitchen counters with a damp cloth.*

**clothe** /kloʊð/ *verb, formal*

to provide clothes for someone: *They were poor, and it was hard for them to feed and clothe their children.*

**clothes** /kloʊðz/ *plural noun*

the things that you wear on your body: *I need some new winter clothes.*

#### GRAMMAR: clothes

**Clothes** means all the things people can wear: *His clothes are always so nice.*

If you want to talk about one thing that you can wear, you have to say **a piece of clothing, an article of clothing** *formal*, or **an item of clothing** *formal*: *She picked up each piece of clothing and folded it carefully.*

You can also just say the name of the piece of clothing, such as **pants, a shirt**, or **a dress**.

→ See picture on page A6

**clothes-line** /ˈkloʊðz, laɪn/ *noun*

a rope that you hang wet clothes on so they will dry

**clothes-pin** /ˈkloʊðz pɪn/ *noun*

something you use to fasten wet clothes to a line so they will dry

**cloth-ing** /ˈkloʊðɪŋ/ *noun, formal*

clothes: *If you're going skiing, you'll need warm clothing.*

**cloud**<sup>1</sup> /klaʊd/ *noun*

**1** a white or gray shape in the sky, that rain sometimes falls from: *At that moment, the sun went behind a cloud.*



## cloud



**2** a mass of smoke, dust, steam, etc.: *The fire sent up a huge cloud of smoke.*

**cloud**<sup>2</sup> verb

PHRASAL VERB

**cloud up/over**

to become cloudy: *It started to cloud up and get colder.*

**cloud-y** /'klaʊdi/ adjective

if it is cloudy, there are a lot of clouds in the sky: *Tomorrow will be cloudy with some rain.*

**clo-ver** /'klouvə/ noun

a small green plant with three round leaves

**clown** /klaʊn/ noun

a person who entertains people by wearing funny clothes and a big red nose, and doing silly things: *He earned some money as a clown at children's birthday parties.*

**club** /klʌb/ noun

**1** a group of people who meet because they share an interest: *Kim joined the jazz club at school. | Are you a member of the drama club?*

**2** a place where people go to meet each other in the evenings: *Let's go to a dance club tonight. | a comedy club*

**3** a card used in card games, with symbols that look like black leaves with three round parts on it: *the king of clubs*

**4** a heavy stick used as a weapon

**club-bing** /'klʌbɪŋ/ noun

the activity of going to clubs to dance and meet people: *A lot of young people go clubbing on the weekend.*

**club 'soda** noun

water with a lot of BUBBLES in it that you can mix with other drinks

**clue** /klu/ noun

some information that helps you find the truth or the right answer: *Police are still searching for clues to why she disappeared.*

**clump** /klʌmp/ noun

a clump of grass/trees/bushes, etc. = some grass, trees, etc. growing close

together: *She sat down in a clump of long grass.*

**clum-sy** /'klʌmzi/ adjective

someone who is clumsy moves in an awkward way, and drops or breaks things: *He was a clumsy man, with big rough hands.*

—**clumsily** adverb in a clumsy way: *Mina stood up, clumsily knocking over a glass of water.*

—**clumsiness** noun the quality of being clumsy

**clung** /klʌŋ/ verb

the past tense and past participle of CLING

**clus-ter** /'klʌstə/ noun, formal

a group of things that are close together: *There was a small cluster of houses near the river, but the rest of the land was empty.*

**clutch** /klʌtʃ/ verb, formal

to hold something tightly: *"Don't go," she said, clutching his arm.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hold**<sup>1</sup>

**clut-tered** /'klʌtəd/ adjective

if a surface or room is cluttered, it is covered or filled with a lot of things in a way that is not organized: *His desk is always cluttered with lots of paper and books.*

—**clutter** verb to cover a surface, fill a room, etc., with a lot of things in a way that is not organized

**cm.**

the written abbreviation of **centimeter**: *The plant's leaves are around 5 cm. long.*

**c/o** /,si 'ou/ abbreviation

**in care of** used on letters to give the address where someone is staying when it is not the place that they usually live: *Send the letter to me c/o Anne Miller, 8 Brown St., Peoria, IL.*

**coach**<sup>1</sup> /kəʊtʃ/ noun

**1** someone who trains people in a sport, or in singing, acting, etc.: *The football coach worked with the players after school.*

**2** the cheapest type of seats on an airplane or a train: *We flew coach to Atlanta because it was the cheapest way to go.* **SYNONYM** **economy**

**coach**<sup>2</sup> verb

to train people in a sport, in singing, in acting, etc.: *Mr. Davis coaches our soccer team.*



**coal** /kəʊl/ *noun*

a hard black substance that forms below the ground and that people burn to produce heat: *The process of digging coal out of holes deep in the ground can be very dangerous.*

**coarse** /kɔːs/ *adjective, formal*

rough and thick, not smooth or fine: *Farm workers' clothes were made of coarse cloth that felt rough against the skin.* **ANTONYM** **fine**

**coast** /kəʊst/ *noun*

the land next to the ocean: *The beaches on the southeastern coast of the U.S. are usually sandy.*

—**coastal** *adjective* near the coast: *Many coastal areas were flooded after the hurricane.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shore**

**'coast guard** *noun*

**the Coast Guard** = the military organization whose job is watching ships and activity in the ocean

**coast-line** /'kəʊstlaɪn/ *noun*

the land at the edge of the ocean: *From the ship, we could see the rocky coastline.*

**coat** /kəʊt/ *noun*

**1** something that you wear over other clothes to keep you warm outdoors: *It was a snowy day, so I put on my big winter coat.*

**2** a **coat of paint** = a layer of paint that you put on a surface: *The walls really need another coat of paint.*

→ See picture on page A6

**'coat ,hanger** *noun*

another word for a **HANGER**

**coax** /kəʊks/ *verb*

to try to get someone to do something by talking to them gently and kindly: *With great difficulty, I coaxed him into eating something.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **persuade**

**co-bra** /'kəʊbrə/ *noun*

a poisonous snake of Africa and Asia

**cob-web** /'kəbweb/ *noun*

a net of fine threads which a **SPIDER** makes. This word is used when the spider is not using it anymore: *The old house was dirty and full of cobwebs.*

**cock-pit** /'kək,pɪt/ *noun*

the part of an airplane or race car where the pilot or driver sits

→ See picture at **airplane**

**cock-roach** /'kək-rəʊtʃ/ *noun*

a large brown insect that lives in dark or dirty places

**cock-tail** /'kakteɪl/ *noun*

a drink made from mixing alcohol with other types of drinks: *We decided to order cocktails instead of beer.*

**co-coa** /'kəʊkəʊ/ *noun*

**1** a hot chocolate drink: *Would you like a cup of cocoa?*

**2** a brown powder that tastes like chocolate and is used in cooking: *Add one tablespoon of cocoa to the cake mix.*

**co-co-nut** /'kəʊkə,nʌt/ *noun*

a very large brown nut which has liquid inside and white flesh that people eat: *Coco-nuts grow on palm trees.*

→ See picture on page A13

**cod** /kɒd/ *noun* plural **cod**

an ocean fish that people eat

**code** /kəʊd/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a set of rules or laws that tells people how they must behave: *There's a strict code of conduct for all police officers.*

**2** a special way of using words, numbers, etc. to send messages that are secret: *During the war, reports were sent in code.*

→ **area code**, **zip code**

**co-erce** /kəʊ'ɜːs/ *verb, formal*

to make someone do something by using threats: *She said he coerced her into signing the agreement.* **SYNONYM** **force**

→ See Thesaurus box at **force**<sup>1</sup>

**cof-fee** /'kɒfi/ *noun*

**1** a hot brown drink that you make from special beans: *Let's have a cup of coffee!*

**2** brown beans or the powder from them used to make a hot drink: *I bought a jar of coffee.*

**'coffee shop** *noun*

a small restaurant that serves coffee and cheap meals: *He sometimes takes his computer to the coffee shop to work.* **SYNONYM** **cafe**

**cof-fin** /'kɒfɪn/ *noun*

the box in which a dead person is buried  
**SYNONYM** **casket**

**co-her-ent** /kəʊ'hɪrənt/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

clear and easy to understand: *The newspaper gave a coherent explanation of events*



that helped me understand what had happened. **ANTONYM incoherent**

—**coherently** *adverb*: She was shocked and unable to speak coherently.

**coil**<sup>1</sup> /kɔɪl/ also **coil up** *verb*

to wind something around and around in circles: She coiled some hair around her finger.

**coil**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a piece of rope, wire, or hair that is wound around in a circle: There was a big coil of rope in the bottom of the boat.

**coin** /kɔɪn/ *noun*

a piece of money made of metal: Andy took a few coins from his pocket to pay for the candy.

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**co·in·ci·dence** /kou'insədəns/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a situation in which things that you had not planned happen together in a surprising way: It was a strange coincidence that we saw each other again in the same place exactly five years later.

—**coincide** /,kɔɪn'saɪd/ *verb, formal* if two things coincide, they happen at the same time: The movie's release coincided with the start of the summer vacation.

**co·la** /'kəʊlə/ *noun*

a sweet brown drink with a lot of BUBBLES in it: a can of cola

**cold**<sup>1</sup> /kəʊld/ *adjective*

**1** having a low temperature: It's cold outside today (=the weather is cold). | Drink your coffee before it gets cold. **ANTONYM hot, warm**

#### THESAURUS: cold

**cool** cold in a pleasant way, especially after it has been hot: It's very hot during the day, but cooler at night.

**chilly** cold, but not very cold: The water in the pool felt chilly.

**frosty** very cold, with the ground covered in frost (=ice that is white and powdery and covers things when the temperature is very cold): It was a bright, frosty morning.

**freezing** very cold, so that water outside becomes ice: It was freezing cold last night.

**icy** very cold: An icy wind cut through his jacket.

**2** if you are cold, you feel uncomfortable, because it is not warm enough: Shut the window if you feel cold. **ANTONYM hot**

**3** cold food has been cooked, but is not warm when you eat it: For lunch, we had cold chicken and salad. **ANTONYM hot**

**4** not friendly to people: I met him once, and he seemed cold and formal.

**cold**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a common illness that blocks your nose, makes your throat painful, etc.: I had a cold and stayed at home. | If your clothes are wet, you'll catch a cold (=get this illness).

**2** the cold = cold weather: Don't stand out there in the cold!

**cold-blooded** *adjective*

a cold-blooded animal, such as a snake, has a body temperature that changes with the air or ground around it

**'cold cuts** *plural noun*

thin pieces of different kinds of cooked meat that you eat cold

**cold-ly** /'kəʊldli/ *adverb*

in an unfriendly way: "I'm busy. Don't bother me," Sarah said coldly.

**cold-ness** /'kəʊldnis/ *noun*

**1** unfriendliness: He was surprised by her coldness and didn't know how to react.

**2** low temperature

**col-lapse**<sup>1</sup> /kə'læps/ **[Ac]** *verb*

**1** if a building, wall, bridge, etc. collapses, it suddenly falls down and is destroyed: The building collapsed during the fire.

**2** to suddenly fall down or become unconscious because you are sick or very weak: He collapsed at the end of the race and he was taken to the hospital.

**3** if a system collapses, it suddenly fails and cannot continue: The economy collapsed after the war and it took years to recover.

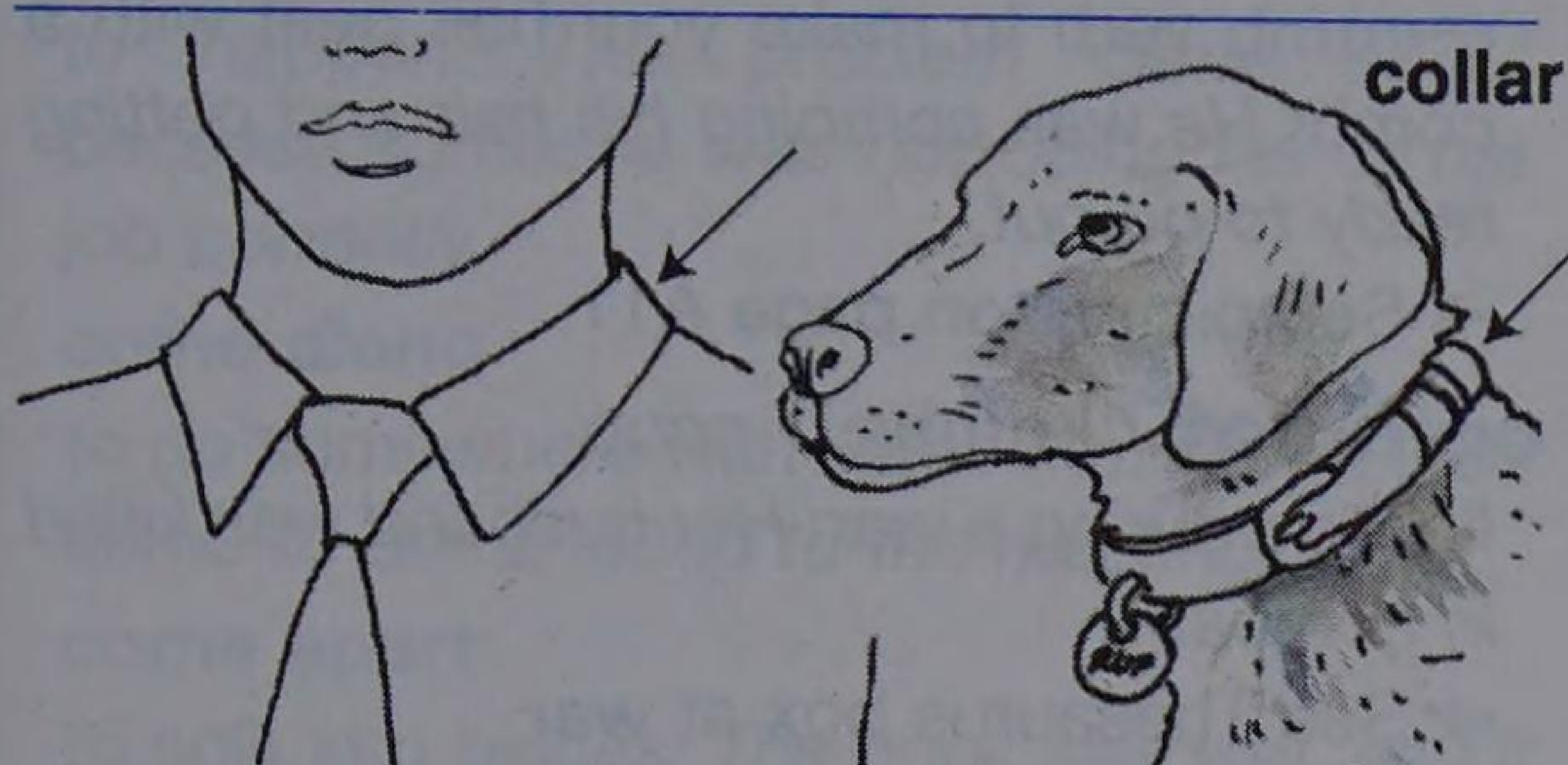
**collapse**<sup>2</sup> *noun, formal*

**1** a sudden failure in the way a system works, so that it cannot continue: the collapse of Communism in the former Soviet Union



**2** a situation in which a building, wall, bridge, etc. falls down

**3** a situation in which a person falls down because he or she is sick or very weak



**col·lar** /'kælər/ *noun*

**1** the part of a shirt, coat, dress, etc. that fits around your neck: *Put the tie around your neck and fold your collar down over it.*

**2** a narrow band of leather or plastic put around the neck of a dog or cat: *The leash attaches to the dog's collar.*

**col·lar·bone** /'kælər,bəʊn/ *noun*

one of a pair of bones that go from the base of your neck to your shoulders

→ See picture on page A2

**col·league** /'kəlɪg/ **Ac** *noun*

someone who works with you in the same office or organization: *She showed the letter to one of her colleagues.*

**col·lect¹** /kə'lekt/ *verb*

**1** to get things and bring them together: *The teacher collected all the test papers from the students.*

**2** to get and keep objects of the same type because you think they are attractive, interesting, or valuable: *She collects old coins.*

**3** *formal* to come together and form a large group or amount: *Dust had collected under the sofa.* **SYNONYM** **gather**

**WORD FAMILY** → **collector** *noun*

**collect²** *adverb*

**call collect** = if you call collect, the person who receives the phone call pays for the call

**col·lec·tion** /kə'lekʃən/ *noun*

a group of similar things that have been gathered together: *The museum has a fine collection of modern art.*

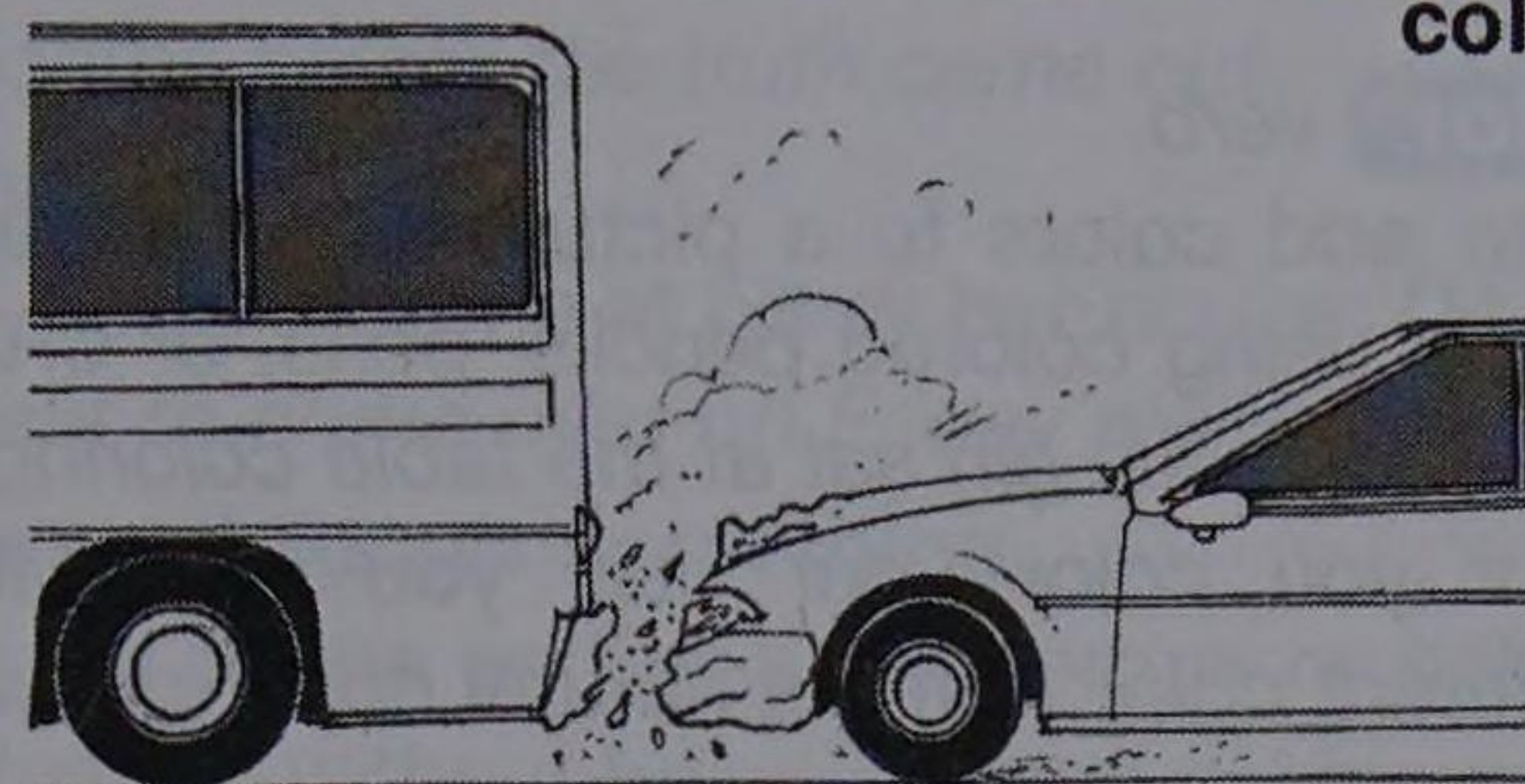
**col·lege** /'kəlɪdʒ/ *noun*

**1** a large school where you can study after high school: *I'm planning to go to college in the fall to study biology.*

**2** the part of a university that teaches a particular subject: *the College of Medicine*

**SYNONYM** **school**

—**collegiate** /kə'lɪdʒɪt/ *adjective* relating to college: *collegiate sports*



**collide**

**col·lide** /kə'lɑɪd/ *verb*

to crash violently into something or someone: *His car collided with a bus, but luckily no one was killed.* **SYNONYM** **crash**

**col·li·sion** /kə'lɪʒən/ *noun*

a violent crash, especially between two cars, planes, etc.: *The plane was involved in a collision with a military aircraft.* **SYNONYM** **crash**

**co·logne** /kə'loun/ *noun*

a liquid with a pleasant smell that you put on your skin

**co·lon** /'koulən/ *noun*

**1** the mark (:) used in writing to introduce a list, examples, etc.

**2** the lower part of the **INTESTINES**, in which food is changed into waste matter

**colo·nel** /'kənl/ *noun*, written abbreviation **Col.**

an officer who has a high rank in the Army, Air Force, or Marines

**col·o·nize** /'kələ,naɪz/ *verb*

to control another country or area, and send people from your own country to live there: *Argentina was colonized by Spain.*

—**colonization** /,kələnə'zeɪʃən/ *noun* the process of colonizing a place

**col·o·ny** /'kələni/ *noun* plural **colonies**

a country or area that is ruled by a more powerful country, usually one that is far away: *The island used to be a French colony but it is now independent.*

**col·or¹** /'kʌlə/ *noun*

**1** red, blue, yellow, green, orange, etc.: *"What color is your new car?" "Blue." | My favorite color is orange. | The room was decorated in bright colors.*



**2 people/men/women, etc. of color** = people who are not white: *There were many people of color at the meeting, but most people were white.*

**color<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to add colors to a picture on a piece of paper using colored pencils, pens, or CRAYONS: *The little girl sat at the table coloring.*

**2** if you color your hair, you make it a different color from its natural color **SYNONYM** dye

**col-or-blind** /'kʌləˌblaɪnd/ adjective

**1** unable to see the difference between particular colors: *My brother's colorblind. He can't tell the difference between red and green.*

**2** treating all races of people fairly and equally: *We want a colorblind society, where everyone is treated equally.*

**col-or-ful** /'kʌləfəl/ adjective

having a lot of bright colors: *The dancers wore colorful clothes.*

**col-or-ing** /'kʌlərɪŋ/ noun

**1** the color of something, especially someone's hair, skin, eyes, etc.: *The birds have the same yellow and green coloring.*

**2** a substance used for giving a particular color to something, especially food: *artificial food coloring*

**col-or-less** /'kʌlələs/ adjective

not having any color: *Water is a colorless liquid.*

**col-umn** /'kʌləm/ noun

**1** a tall stone post used to support a building: *There were two big columns on either side of the entrance to the temple.*

**2** an article by a particular writer that appears regularly in a newspaper or magazine: *He writes a sports column for the Los Angeles Times.*

**3** a row of words or numbers that goes down a page: *What is the last number at the bottom of the column?*

**co-ma** /'koumə/ noun

a serious medical condition in which someone is not conscious for a long time, usually after an accident or illness: *After the accident he was in a coma for six days.*

**comb** /koum/ noun

a flat piece of plastic or metal with a row of thin parts like teeth on one side, which you use to make your hair neat

—**comb** verb to make your hair neat with a comb: *He was combing his hair and getting ready to go out.*

→ See picture on page A11

**com-bat** /'kʌmbæt/ noun

fighting during a war: *Her husband was killed in combat.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **war**

**com-bi-na-tion** /,kʌmbə'neɪʃən/ noun

two or more different things that are used together or that happen together: *The sauce had an interesting combination of flavors.*

**com-bine** /kəm'baɪn/ verb

to join together: *The two chemicals combine to form a powerful explosive. | The movie combines comedy and excitement.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **mix<sup>1</sup>**

**come** /kʌm/ verb came /keɪm/ come

**1** to move toward or arrive at the place where you are: *There was a big truck coming straight toward us so we jumped to one side. | The letter came yesterday. | What time did she come home last night?*

**2** to go with someone somewhere: *We're going to see a movie tonight. Do you want to come?*

**3** to be in a particular position in a group of people or things: *P comes before Q in the alphabet.*

**4** to reach a point: *The water came up to my knees.*

**5** to be available to buy in a particular size, with particular features, etc.: *The shoes come in all sizes.*

**6 come open/loose/undone, etc.** = to become open, loose, etc.: *The door had come open in the wind.*

**7 come as a surprise/a shock/a relief, etc.** = to make someone feel surprised, shocked, etc.: *The news came as a surprise to everyone.*

**8 how come?** informal = used in order to ask someone why something happened or is true: *How come it always rains when we go for a bike ride?* **SYNONYM** why

**9 for years to come/in the days to come** = for many years after this time, or in the days



after this time: *People will remember this day for years to come.*

### PHRASAL VERBS

**come about** *formal*

to happen: *This problem came about because someone was not doing his or her job correctly.*

**come along**

to go somewhere with someone: *You're welcome to come along to the meeting.*

**come apart**

to split into pieces: *The book was wet, and it came apart in my hands.*

**come around**

if someone comes around, they decide to agree with you after disagreeing with you: *I know she's mad at you right now, but she'll come around.*

**come back**

to return from a place: *When is your sister coming back from Europe?*

**come down**

to become lower in price, level, etc.: *The price of computers keeps coming down, so you'll be able to find something affordable.*

**come down with something**

to get an illness: *I think I'm coming down with the flu.*

**come from**

**1 come from somewhere** = to have been born in a particular place: *"Where do you come from?" "Cincinnati."*

**2 come from something** = used when saying what the origin of something is: *The word "etc." comes from Latin.*

**come in** also **come into something**

to enter the room or house where you are speaking from: *Come in and sit down.*

**come off**

to become separated from the main part of something: *The door handle came off in my hand.*

**come on**

**1** if a light or machine comes on, it starts working: *She pressed the button, and the lights came on.*

**2** used when telling someone to hurry or try something: *Come on! We're late!*

**come out**

**1** if a book, movie, record, etc. comes out, it

becomes available for people to buy or see: *Her new movie comes out early next year.*

**2** if information about something comes out, people find out about it: *It was several months before the truth came out.*

**come over**

to visit someone at his or her house: *Do you want to come over on Friday night?*

**come through something**

to get to the end of a dangerous or difficult situation without being harmed or damaged: *She came through all her problems and is now happily married.* **SYNONYM** survive

**come to**

**1 come to \$20/\$3, etc.** = used when saying what the total cost of something is: *The meal came to \$50, which was more than I had expected to pay.*

**2 when it comes to something** = relating to a particular subject: *I'm terrible when it comes to money. I spend too much.*

**come up**

**1** to come close to you, especially in order to speak to you: *A man came up to me and asked me what time it was.*

**2** if a problem comes up, it happens: *Please let me know if any problems come up.*

**3** to be mentioned in a conversation: *The subject of money is sure to come up, so be prepared.*

**4 be coming up** = to be happening soon: *My mom's birthday is coming up – I need to get her a present.*

**come up with something**

to think of an idea, name, plan, etc.: *They still haven't come up with a name for the baby.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **arrive**

**come-back** /'kʌmbæk/ *noun*

if someone or something makes a come-back, they become popular or successful again: *The singer is hoping to make a come-back with her first CD in eight years.*

**co-me-di-an** /kə'midiən/ *noun*

someone whose job is to tell jokes and make people laugh **SYNONYM** comic

**com-e-dy** /'kʌmədi/ *noun* plural **comedies**

a funny movie, play, television program, etc. that makes people laugh: *The movie is a very*



funny comedy about two boys growing up in Texas.

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**com-et** /'kəmit/ *noun*

an object in the sky that looks like a very bright ball with a tail moving through SPACE

**com-fort**<sup>1</sup> /'kʌmfət/ *noun*

**1** a feeling of being relaxed and of not having any unpleasant feelings: *I just wanted to be in the comfort of my own home after being away for so long.* **ANTONYM** **discomfort**

**2** something that makes you feel less upset or worried: *It was a comfort to know that my parents understood how I felt.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **comfort** *noun*
- **comfort** *verb*
- **comfortable** *adjective*
- **uncomfortable** *adjective*
- **discomfort** *noun*

**comfort**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to make someone feel less worried or unhappy: *He tried to comfort her and tell her that everything would be OK.*

**com-fort-a-ble** /'kʌmftəbəl/ *adjective*

**1** comfortable chairs, beds, clothes, etc. make you feel physically relaxed: *The bed was very comfortable, and I slept well.*

**2** if you are comfortable, you feel physically relaxed: *Are you comfortable? Would you like another pillow?*

—**comfortably** *adverb*

**com-ic**<sup>1</sup> /'kəɪk/ *adjective*

funny or amusing: *a comic actress*

**comic**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a magazine that tells a story using a series of drawings **SYNONYM** **comic book**

**2** someone whose job is to tell jokes and make people laugh **SYNONYM** **comedian**

**com-i-cal** /'kəɪkəl/ *adjective*

funny, especially in a strange or unexpected way: *The team played so badly, it was almost comical.*

**'comic book** *noun*

a magazine that tells a story using a series of drawings: *I used to love reading comic books about Spider-Man and Superman.*

**com-ics** /'kəɪks/ *plural noun*

**the comics** = the part of a newspaper that has COMIC STRIPS

**'comic strip** *noun*

a series of pictures that are drawn inside boxes and tell a story

**com-ma** /'kəmə/ *noun*

the mark (,) used in writing to show a short pause

**com-mand**<sup>1</sup> /kə'mænd/ *noun*

**1** an order from someone in authority to do something: *The general gave the command to attack.* **SYNONYM** **order**

**2** control of a large group of soldiers, a ship, etc.: *The general was in command of over a thousand soldiers.*

**3** knowledge of something, especially a language: *She has a good command of English.*

**command**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to tell someone who has less authority than you that he or she must do something: *The police officer commanded him to stop.*

**2** to be the leader of a group of soldiers: *General Eisenhower commanded the U.S. forces in Europe during World War II.*

**com-mand-er** also **Commander**

/kə'mændə/ *noun*

an officer in charge of a military organization or group

**com-mem-o-rate** /kə'memə'reɪt/ *verb, formal*

to show that you remember an important person or event: *The statue commemorates the soldiers who died during the war.*

**com-mence** /kə'mens/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*  
to begin: *The work will commence in January and end in July.* **SYNONYM** **start**

**com-ment**<sup>1</sup> /'kəment/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a short phrase or sentence, in which you give your opinion about someone or something: *Does anyone want to make any other comments about the book before we move on to a new topic?*

**comment**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to give an opinion about someone or something: *The police have refused to comment on the case.*

**com-men-tar-y** /'kəməntəri/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
plural **commentaries**

a spoken description of an event, given while the event is happening



**com·men·ta·tor** /'kəmən,tetə/ **Ac**

noun

someone on television or radio who describes an event as it is happening, or who gives their opinions about a subject: a sports commentator

**com·merce** /'kəmɜ:s/ noun, formal

the activity of buying and selling goods and services: *The agency is trying to create jobs and increase commerce.* **SYNONYM** trade

**com·mer·cial**<sup>1</sup> /kə'mɜ:ʃəl/ noun

an advertisement on television or radio: *Don't believe everything you see in commercials on TV. They just want to sell you something.* **SYNONYM** ad, advertisement

→ See Thesaurus box at **advertisement**

**commercial**<sup>2</sup> adjective, formal

**1** relating to business and the buying and selling of things: *There is a lot of commercial activity near the port.*

**2** relating to making money or a profit: *The CD was a commercial success. The band sold millions of copies.*

—**commercially** adverb

**com·mis·sion** /kə'mɪʃən/ **Ac** noun

**1** a group of people who have the official job of learning about something or controlling something: *The president set up a commission to look at the causes of the disaster.*

**2** an amount of money that is paid to a person each time they sell a product as part of his or her job: *Employees can earn a 30% commission on each car they sell.*

**com·mit** /kə'mɪt/ **Ac** verb committed, committing

**1** to do something wrong or illegal: *Are the police sure that Rogers committed the crime?*

**2** **commit suicide** = to kill yourself deliberately

**3** **commit yourself (to doing something)** = to say that you will definitely do something: *He won't commit himself to paying any money until he knows how much the work will cost.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **commitment** noun

**com·mit·ment** /kə'mɪtmənt/ **Ac** noun

**1** a promise to do something or behave in a particular way: *When you marry someone, you make a commitment to stay with that person for the rest of your lives.*

**2** the hard work and loyalty that someone gives to an organization, activity, etc.: *She shows a lot of commitment to her job. She always comes in early and works late.*

**com·mit·tee** /kə'mɪti/ noun

a group of people who have been chosen to do a particular job, for example to make decisions about something: *I'm on the finance committee – we make decisions about the company's money.*

**com·mon** /'kəmən/ adjective

something that is common is often seen or often happens: *"Smith" is a very common last name in the U.S.* **ANTONYM** rare

—**commonly** adverb often or usually: *Aspirin is a very commonly used drug. People take it for many health problems.*

**common 'sense** noun

the ability to behave in a sensible way and make practical decisions: *It's not hard to figure out the answer – you just have to use your common sense.*

**com·mu·ni·cate** /kə'myʊnə,keɪt/ **Ac**

verb

to exchange information, ideas, or opinions with someone: *We communicate with each other mostly by email and by phone.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **communication** noun

**com·mu·ni·ca·tion**/kə'myʊnə'keɪʃən/ **Ac** noun

**1** the act of speaking or writing to someone and being understood by him or her: *We are trying improve communication between doctors and patients so that patients know exactly what their choices are.*

**2** **communications** = ways of sending information between places using computers, telephones, radios, etc.: *Modern communications such as email make it possible for people to work from their homes.*

**com·mu·nism** /'kamyə,nɪzəm/ noun

a political system in which the government controls the production of all goods, and there is no privately owned property

—**communist** noun someone who believes in and supports communism

—**communist** adjective relating to communism: a communist country



**com·mu·ni·ty** /kə'myunəti/ **Ac** *noun*  
plural **communities**

**1** all of the people who live in the same town or area: *All the children in our community go to the same school.*

**2** a group of people in an area who belong to the same race, religion, etc. or do the same activity: *Miami has a large Cuban community.*

**com'munity ,college** *noun*

a college that people can go to, usually for two years, in order to learn a skill or to prepare to go to another college or university

**com·mute** /kə'myut/ *verb*

to travel regularly in order to get to work: *He commutes to work by train.*

—**commute** *noun* the regular journey that someone makes to get to work: *My commute to the office takes a half hour if I go by car.*

—**commuter** *noun* someone who travels to work each day: *The roads are full of commuters in the mornings and the late afternoons.*

**com·pact**<sup>1</sup> /'kəmpækt/ *adjective*

small compared with other things of the same type: *This compact camera can fit in your pocket.*

**compact**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** also **compact car** a small car: *The parking space was small, only big enough for a compact.*

**2** a small flat container with a mirror and powder for a woman's face

**compact 'disc** *noun*

another word for a CD

**com·pan·ion** /kəm'pænyən/ *noun*

someone you spend a lot of time with: *My dog was my companion. He went everywhere with me.*

**com·pa·ny** /'kʌmpəni/ *noun* plural **companies**

**1** a business that makes or sells things or provides a service: *I work for a computer company.*

#### THESAURUS: company

**firm** a company that usually does something for you rather than making things: *She works for a law firm.*

**business** a company that makes or sells things or that does something for you, and that often only a small number of people work for: *She started her own business making food for weddings.*

**corporation** a large company that often includes several smaller companies: *Different parts of the corporation make everything from breakfast cereal to ice cream.*

**2** if you have company, there are other people with you or talking to you: *There's a new car in their driveway. It looks like they have company. I'll stay here to keep you company (=I will stay with you so that you are not alone).*

**3** a group of soldiers, usually with 100 to 200 people in it: *Our company was attacked by enemy planes.*

**com·par·a·tive** /kəm'pærətɪv/ *noun*

**the comparative** = the form of an adjective or adverb that is used when comparing something with other things. The comparative of "good" is "better."

**com·pare** /kəm'per/ *verb*

to think about how two or more things, people, etc. are different or the same: *We compared the prices of all the hotels, and this one was the cheapest. I The teacher asked us to compare and contrast the two stories (=show how they were the same and how they were different).*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **compare** *verb*
- **comparison** *noun*
- **comparative** *noun*

**com·par·i·son** /kəm'pærəsən/ *noun*

**1 in comparison/by comparison** = used when you are comparing two people or things: *Our house is small in comparison with theirs. Ours has one floor, and theirs has three.*

**2** an act of saying how you think two things are the same or different: *A comparison of the two paintings showed that they were by different artists.*

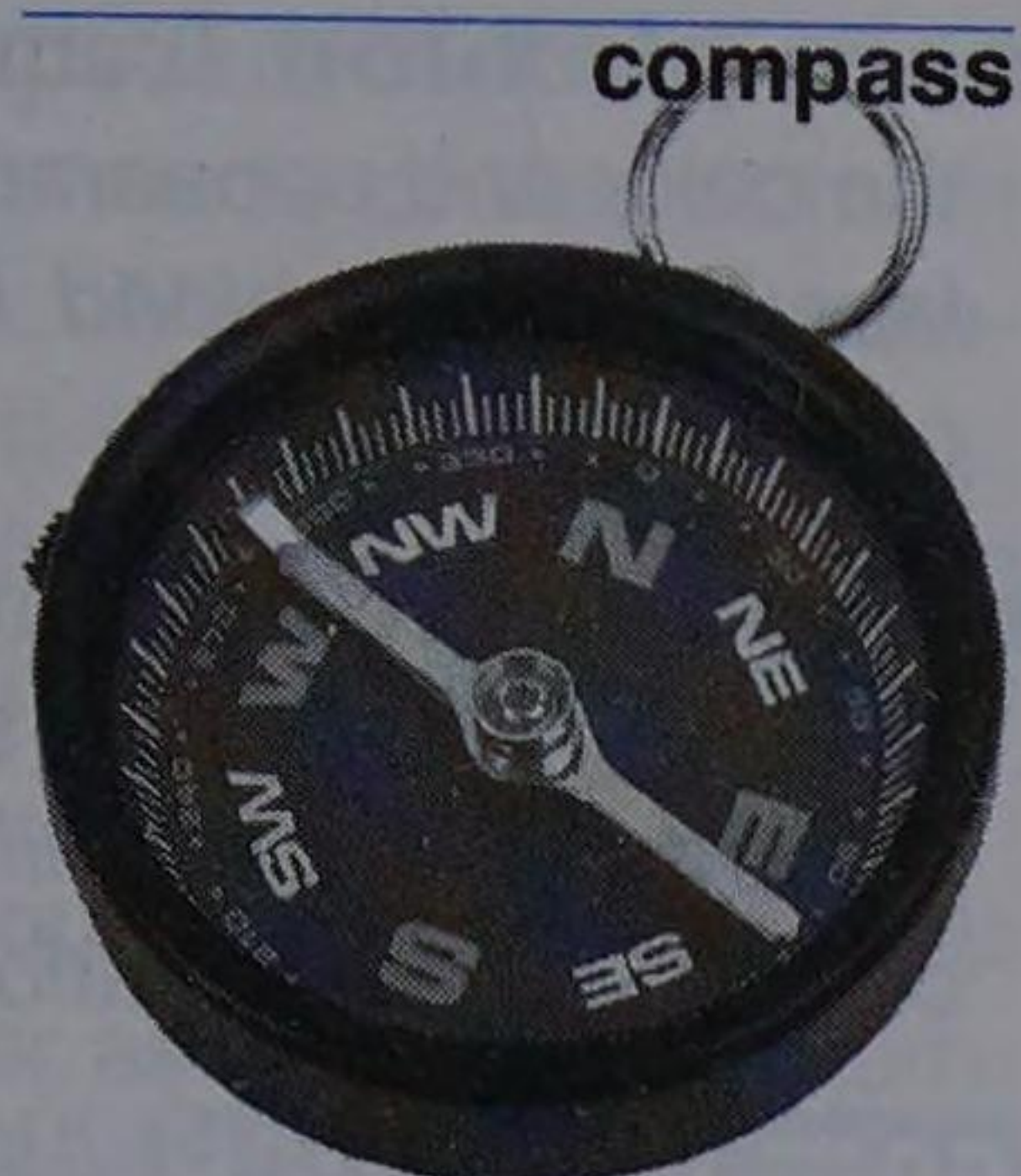
**com·part·ment** /kəm'partmənt/ *noun*

a separate part of a large container: *He put his bag in the compartment above his seat on the plane.*



**com·pass**/'kʌmpəs/ *noun*

an instrument with a needle that shows you if you are facing north, south, east, or west



compass

**com·pas·sion**/kəm'pæʃən/ *noun, formal*

sympathy for someone who is suffering: *He had great compassion for the poor people of the city and often brought food to them.*

—**compassionate** *adjective, formal* showing compassion

**com·pat·i·ble** /kəm'pætəbəl/ **Ac***adjective, formal*

**1** if two things are compatible, they can exist or be used together without problems: *You won't have any trouble using the software – it's compatible with your computer.*

**2** if two people are compatible, they can have a good relationship because they like the same things or think in the same ways: *My parents are very compatible – they never argue.*

—**compatibility** /kəm,pætə'bɪləti/ *noun, formal* the quality of being compatible

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **compatible** *adjective*
- **incompatible** *adjective*
- **compatibility** *noun*
- **incompatibility** *noun*

**com·pel** /kəm'pel/ *verb* compelled,*compelling formal*

to force someone to do something: *He was compelled to give up his job because he had to take care of his son.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **force**<sup>1</sup>

**com·pen·sate** /'kæmpən,seɪt/ **Ac** *verb,**formal*

**1** to pay someone money because something bad has happened to them or something they own: *He had to compensate the woman for damaging her car.*

**2** to make something bad have a smaller effect on a situation: *He is very smart, and that compensates for his lack of experience.*

**com·pen·sation** /,kæmpən'seɪʃən/ **Ac***noun, formal*

money that is paid to someone because something bad has happened to them or to something they own: *He received over \$1 million in compensation (=as payment) for his injuries.*

**com·pete** /kəm'pit/ *verb*

to take part in a race or competition: *How many runners will be competing in the race?*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **compete** *verb*
- **competition** *noun*
- **competitor** *noun*
- **competitive** *adjective*

**com·pe·tent** /'kæmpətənt/ *adjective*

having enough skill or knowledge to do something to a satisfactory standard: *The car has some problems, but a competent mechanic can fix them easily.*

—**competently** *adverb*

—**competence** *noun* the ability to do something to a satisfactory standard

**com·pe·ti·tion** /,kæmpə'tɪʃən/ *noun*

**1** an organized event in which people or teams try to be the best at doing something: *He decided to enter the competition and see if he could win.*

**THESAURUS: competition**

**championship** a competition to find the best player or team in a sport: *the Iowa State Girls' Basketball Championships*

**tournament** a competition in which many players or teams play against each other until there is one winner: *We're playing in a volleyball tournament at the beach this weekend.*

**contest** a competition in which a judge or group of judges decides the winner: *The school held a contest for the best poster about healthy eating.*

**2** a situation in which people are all trying to get the same thing, although not everyone will be able to succeed: *There is a lot of competition for jobs now, so you really have to make an effort.*

**com·pet·i·tive** /kəm'petətɪv/ *adjective*

**1** wanting to be more successful than other people or companies: *Steve is very competitive. He hates to lose.*



**2** a competitive activity is done by people or companies who are all trying hard to win or be successful: *We work in a very competitive industry. You have to work hard to succeed.*

**com.pet.i.tor** /kəm'petətə/ *noun*

a person, team, company, etc. that is competing with another one: *Their main competitor is a large company that sells cheaper computers.*

**com.plain** /kəm'pleɪn/ *verb*

to say that you are annoyed, not satisfied, or not happy about something or someone: *She decided to complain about the food to the manager because it was cold and tasted bad.*

**com.plaint** /kəm'pleɪnt/ *noun*

a statement in which someone complains about something: *There have been a lot of complaints about the noise.*

**com.plete<sup>1</sup>** /kəm'plit/ *adjective*

**1** including everything or everyone: *This is a complete list of all the people in the class.*

ANTONYM **incomplete**

**2** in every way: *That class was a complete waste of time. I already knew about all that.*

**3** finished: *Our research is almost complete. We will be finished this week.*

—**completeness** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **done<sup>2</sup>**

**complete<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to finish doing or making something: *The book took five years to complete.*

**com.plete.ly** /kəm'plitli/ *adverb*

in every way: *It's a completely new idea. Nobody's ever done this before.*

**com.plex<sup>1</sup>** /kəm'pleks/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

something that is complex has a lot of different parts and is difficult to understand or deal with: *The human brain is very complex. Scientists don't fully understand it yet.*

SYNONYM **complicated**

—**complexity** /kəm'pleksəti/ *noun* the quality of being complex

**com.plex<sup>2</sup>** /'kəmpleks/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a group of buildings or one large building used for a particular purpose: *My grandmother lives in an apartment complex for older people.*

**com.plex.ion** /kəm'plekʃən/ *noun*

the color and appearance of the skin on your face: *She has blond hair and a pale complexion.*

**com.pli.cate** /'kəmplə,keɪt/ *verb*

to make a problem or situation more difficult: *If you try to explain all the details, you'll just complicate the situation.*

**com.pli.cat.ed** /'kəmplə,keɪtɪd/ *adjective*

difficult to understand or deal with: *The instructions were too complicated for a child to understand.* SYNONYM **complex**; ANTONYM **simple**

**com.pli.ca.tion** /,kəmplə'keɪʃən/ *noun*

something that makes a situation more difficult: *There's just one complication with your plan: we don't have enough money.*

**com.pli.ment<sup>1</sup>** /'kəmpləmənt/ *noun*

something you say that shows you like someone or something: *Paula got a lot of compliments on her new dress. She looked great in it.*

**com.pli.ment<sup>2</sup>** /'kəmplə,ment/ *verb*

to say that you like what someone has done, what someone is wearing, etc.: *They complimented him on his excellent French.*

**com.ply** /kəm'plaɪ/ *verb* **complied**, third person singular **complies** *formal*

to follow a law or rule: *If you do not comply with the law, you will have to pay a fine.*

**com.po.nent** /kəm'pounənt/ **[Ac]** *noun*, *formal*

a part of a machine or system: *The factory produces components that are used in cars.*

**com.pose** /kəm'pouz/ *verb*

**1** **be composed of something** *formal* = to be made of two or more things: *Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.*

**2** to write a piece of music: *Who composed the music for the movie?*

—**composer** *noun* someone who writes music

**com.po.si.tion** /,kəmpə'zɪʃən/ *noun*

a piece of music or poetry that someone writes: *The song is one of her early compositions.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **music**



**com·pound** /'kampaʊnd/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a substance that is made of two or more different substances: *The chemical compound is made of two elements.*

**2** an area that contains a group of buildings and is surrounded by a fence or wall: a prison compound

**3** also **compound noun** two or more words that are used together as a noun. For example, the noun "ice cream" is a compound

**com·pre·hend** /,kɑmpri'hend/ verb, formal

to understand or imagine something: *It is difficult to comprehend what it is like to be in a war zone if you've never experienced it.*

SYNONYM **understand**

**com·pre·hen·sive** /,kɑmpri'hensiv/

**[Ac]** adjective, formal

including everything that is necessary: *The city has a comprehensive plan for dealing with an earthquake. It includes rules and advice for everyone living and working here.*

**com·prise** /kəm'praɪz/ **[Ac]** verb, formal  
to be made up of something: *The World Trade Organization comprises more than 100 countries.*

**com·pro·mise<sup>1</sup>** /'kɑmprə'maɪz/ noun

an agreement in which both people or groups accept something different from what they wanted at the beginning: *The company and its employees finally reached a compromise. Employees agreed to work more hours, and the company will pay them more.*

**compromise<sup>2</sup>** verb

to make an agreement by accepting something that is different from what you wanted at the beginning: *Neither side wanted to compromise, so they never made a deal.*

**com·pul·so·ry** /kəm'pʌlsəri/ adjective, formal

if something is compulsory, it must be done because of a rule or law: *In some countries, the law says that all 18-year-olds have to do compulsory service in the military.* SYNONYM **mandatory**; ANTONYM **voluntary**

**com·put·er** /kəm'pyutə/ **[Ac]** noun

an electronic machine that stores information and uses programs to help you find, organize, or change the information: *I do*

*most of my school work on my computer.*

→ See picture on page A20

**con<sup>1</sup>** /kən/ noun

**1** a disadvantage of something: *List pros and cons (=advantages and disadvantages) of each plan to help you decide what to do.*

ANTONYM **pro**

**2** informal a trick to get someone's money or make someone do something: *The whole deal turned out to be a con to trick me out of my money.*

**con<sup>2</sup>** verb conned, conning informal

to trick someone, especially in order to take his or her money: *That guy just conned me out of \$20 (=tricked me so that I gave him \$20)!*

**con·ceal** /kən'sil/ verb, formal

to hide something: *He concealed the gun under his coat.*

—**concealment** noun, formal the act of hiding something

**con·ceit·ed** /kən'siːd/ adjective

too proud of what you can do, how you look, etc.: *I don't want to seem conceited, but I think I was the most attractive person there.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **proud**

**con·ceive** /kən'siv/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**1** to imagine what something is like: *It is impossible to conceive of the size of the universe.*

**2** to become PREGNANT: *She may be too old to conceive.*

—**conceivable** adjective, formal possible, or able to be imagined: *The book covers every conceivable aspect of the game.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **conceive** verb
- **conception** noun
- **conceivable** adjective

**con·cen·trate** /'kənsən,treit/ **[Ac]** verb

to think very carefully about what you are doing: *It's difficult to concentrate with all this noise. | Quiet! I'm trying to concentrate on my homework.*

**con·cen·tra·tion** /,kənsən'treɪʃən/

**[Ac]** noun

the act of thinking very carefully about what you are doing: *The children got tired and lost concentration (=stopped thinking carefully about what they were doing).*



**con·cept** /'kɒnsɛpt/ **Ac** noun, formal  
a general idea about how something is or should be: *The book teaches you about some of the basic concepts of biology.* | *It is sometimes difficult for young children to understand the concepts of right and wrong.*  
—**conceptual** /kən'septʃuəl/ adjective  
relating to concepts

**con·cep·tion** /kən'sepʃən/ **Ac** noun, formal

**1** the idea that one person has about something in his or her mind: *Different people have different conceptions of beauty (=have different ideas about what is beautiful).*

**2** the act of becoming PREGNANT, so that a baby starts to develop: *A baby is born about 40 weeks after conception.*

**con·cern<sup>1</sup>** /kən'sɜːn/ noun

**1** a feeling of worry about something important, or the fact of caring about it: *There is growing concern about the amount of traffic in the city.* | *We understand your concern for your children's safety.*

**2** something that you feel worried about or care about: *His main concern was the cost of fixing the car.*

**concern<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to be about something or someone: *The story concerns a man who lives in Russia.*

**2** to involve someone or be important to someone: *What we're planning doesn't concern you.*

**3** formal to make someone feel worried: *Her daughter's problems at school concerned her greatly.*

**con·cerned** /kən'sɜːnd/ adjective

**1** worried about something important: *We're all concerned about her health – she's been so sick lately.*

**2** thinking that something is important: *He seems more concerned about his business than about his family.*

**3** involved in something: *Everyone concerned with the project should come to the meeting.*

**4** as far as I'm concerned = in my opinion: *As far as I'm concerned, the whole idea is crazy.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **worried**

**con·cern·ing** /kən'sɜːnɪŋ/ preposition, formal  
about: *I have a question concerning tomorrow's meeting.*

**con·cert** /'kɒnsəːt/ noun

a performance given by musicians or singers: *We went to a concert last night.* | *a rock concert*

**con·cise** /kən'saɪs/ adjective, formal  
short and not containing too many words: *His answers were clear and concise.*

**con·clude** /kən'klud/ **Ac** verb, formal

**1** to decide that something is true from the information you have: *He concluded that Tina had not taken the money.*

**2** to end a meeting, speech, event, etc.: *She concluded the meeting by thanking everyone.* | *The fair concluded with (=ended with) a fireworks display.* **SYNONYM** finish, end; **ANTONYM** begin, start

**WORD FAMILY** → **conclusion** noun

**con·clu·sion** /kən'kluzən/ **Ac** noun

**1** formal a decision that something is true, which you make after thinking about it a lot: *His conclusion was that both students had cheated on the test.* | *We've come to the conclusion that the book is too difficult for our students.*

**2** the end or final part of a book, movie, etc.: *Every essay should have a clear conclusion that restates the main ideas.*

**con·clu·sive** /kən'klusɪv/ **Ac** adjective, formal

proving that something is true: *There is no conclusive evidence that he is guilty, but many people think that he is.*

**con·crete** /'kɒŋkriːt/ noun

a substance that is used for making buildings. It is a mixture of a gray powder with sand and water, which becomes hard when it dries: *The bridge is made of concrete and steel.*

**con·cus·sion** /kən'kʌʃən/ noun

a small amount of damage to the brain, caused by hitting your head: *One player had a concussion after he fell.*

**con·demn** /kən'dem/ verb, formal

**1** to say very strongly that you do not approve of someone or something: *Politicians from all parties condemned the bombings.*



**2** to give someone a severe punishment for a crime: *The murderer was condemned to death by the court.*

—**condemnation** /ˌkəndəmˈneɪʃən/ *noun*  
the act of condemning something

**con·den·sa·tion** /ˌkəndənˈseɪʃən/  
*noun*

small drops of water that appear on a cold surface when warm air touches it: *There was a lot of condensation on the window, which made it difficult to see out.*

**con·dense** /kənˈdens/ *verb*

**1** to make a speech or piece of writing shorter: *Try to condense your essay onto just one page.*

**2** to make a liquid thicker by removing some of the water from it: *condensed soup*

**3** if gas or warm air condenses, it becomes a liquid as it becomes cooler

**con·de·scend·ing** /ˌkəndɪˈsendɪŋ/  
*adjective*

showing that you think you are better than someone else: *I didn't like his condescending tone of voice. It made me feel stupid.*

**con·di·tion** /kənˈdɪʃən/ *noun*

**1** the state of something, or of someone's body or mind: *The car is in very good condition* (=it is not damaged and works well). | *His physical condition has improved.*

**2 conditions** = the situation in which someone lives, or in which something happens: *Their living conditions are terrible – there is not enough light, and everything is very dirty.* | *Bad weather conditions are making driving dangerous.*

**3** a medical problem, especially one that affects someone for a long time: *My father has a heart condition.*

**4** something that must happen before something else can happen: *One of the conditions of getting the job was that I had to improve my English.*

**con·di·tion·er** /kənˈdɪʃənə/ *noun*

a liquid that you put on your hair when you wash it in order to make it less dry and easier to comb: *shampoo and conditioner*

**con·do·min·i·um** /ˌkəndəˈmɪniəm/

also **con·do** /ˈkəndou/ *noun, informal*

a building that consists of a number of apartments with different owners, or one of these apartments

**con·done** /kənˈdaʊn/ *verb, formal*

to say that it is acceptable to do something that other people think is wrong: *He does not condone any kind of drug use, and reports anyone he sees using drugs.*

**con·duct**<sup>1</sup> /kənˈdʌkt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

**1 formal** to do something in an organized way: *The police are conducting an investigation into the murder.*

**2** if something conducts electricity, it allows electricity to go through it: *Gold conducts electricity better than most other metals.*

**3** to stand in front of the musicians in an ORCHESTRA and direct their playing: *The Boston Pops Orchestra was conducted by John Williams.*

**con·duct**<sup>2</sup> /ˈkəndʌkt/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*  
the way someone behaves: *He was fired because of his unprofessional conduct.*

SYNONYM **behavior**

**con·duc·tor** /kənˈdʌktə/ *noun*

**1** someone who conducts the musicians in an ORCHESTRA

**2** a person who sells and checks tickets on a train

**cone** /koun/ *noun*

**1** an object with sloping sides which is round at one end and pointed at the other: *an ice cream cone* (=a cone that has ice cream in it)

**2** the hard brown fruit of a PINE or FIR tree

**con·fer** /kənˈfə/ **[Ac]** *verb* conferred,  
conferring *formal*

to discuss something with other people, in order to get their opinion: *You should confer with the other team members before you decide.*

**con·ference** /ˈkɒnfərəns/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a large formal meeting, usually on several days, where people who are interested in a subject can listen to talks and discuss ideas: *She has been asked to speak at an international conference* (=one with people from many countries). | *The scientific reports were presented at a conference on climate change.*

**2** a meeting at which a small number of people discuss something: *There was a parent-teacher conference at the school to talk about Andy's behavior.*



**con·fess** /kən'fes/ verb

to tell someone that you have done something wrong: *He has confessed to the crime and will have to go to prison.*

**con·fes·sion** /kən'feʃən/ noun

a statement that you have done something wrong: *He made a full confession at the police station.*

**con·fide** /kən'faɪd/ verb, formal

to tell someone about something personal and private: *He had confided to friends that he was unhappy. | I'm glad she felt she could confide in me.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **confide** verb
- **confidential** adjective
- **confidentially** adverb

**con·fi·dence** /'kɒnfədəns/ noun

**1** the feeling that you are able to do things well: *She's a smart girl who has a lot of confidence. | He was shy, and lacked confidence (=did not have much confidence).*

**2** the feeling that you can trust someone or something to be good or successful: *The coach has confidence in me. He knows I can hit the ball.*

**3 in confidence** formal = if you tell someone something in confidence, you do not want him or her to tell anyone else

**con·fi·dent** /'kɒnfədənt/ adjective

**1** someone who is confident believes that they can do things well and does not feel nervous: *Are you feeling confident about your exam or do you need to study more?*

**2** sure that something will happen: *I'm confident (that) the problem can be solved if we try hard.*

—**confidently** adverb

**con·fi·den·tial** /,kɒnfə'denʃəl/ adjective

if information is confidential, you must not show it or talk about it to other people: *a confidential report | Doctors must keep patients' records confidential (=they must not show the records to other people).*

—**confidentially** adverb

**con·fined** /kən'faɪnd/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1 be confined to someone or something** formal = to affect only one group of people,

or to happen only in one place: *Luckily the fire was confined to one floor of the building.*

**2** a confined space or area is very small: *He disliked confined spaces like elevators.*

**con·firm** /kən'fɜ:m/ **[Ac]** verb

**1** to say or show that something is definitely true: *The doctors confirmed that she had cancer.*

**2** to tell someone that an arrangement is now definite: *Confirm your flight reservation at least two days before you leave.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **confirmation** noun

**con·fir·ma·tion** /,kɒnfə'meɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

a statement or letter saying that something is definitely true or will definitely happen: *The school sent a confirmation of the test scores to each student.*

**con·fis·cate** /'kɒnfə'skeɪt/ verb

if people in authority confiscate something that belongs to you, they take it away from you: *The police confiscated his camera for taking pictures where he wasn't supposed to.*

—**confiscation** /,kɒnfə'skeɪʃən/ noun the act of confiscating something

**con·flict<sup>1</sup>** /'kɒn,flɪkt/ **[Ac]** noun

a fight or argument between people, groups, or countries: *There was often conflict between the two brothers and they did not like spending time together. | The organization has helped to resolve the conflict (=end the conflict).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **war**

**con·flict<sup>2</sup>** /kən'flɪkt/ **[Ac]** verb

if two ideas, statements, etc. conflict with each other, they are completely different: *Some of the teachers' opinions conflicted with the principal's, so they had a meeting to discuss their disagreements.*

**con·form** /kən'fɔ:m/ **[Ac]** verb

to behave in the way that most people behave: *There's always pressure on kids to conform.*

**con·front** /kən'frʌnt/ verb

**1** to deal directly with a difficult problem or situation: *We try to help people to confront their problems and find solutions for them.*

**2** to speak to someone strongly about a serious matter that he or she will probably



not want to discuss: *Her mother confronted her about her smoking.*

**3** *formal* if you are confronted with a problem, you need to deal with it: *The new government has been confronted with numerous problems.*

**con·fron·ta·tion** /ˌkɒnfrənˈteɪʃən/ *noun*

an angry argument or fight: *There have been confrontations between police and protesters.*

**con·fuse** /kənˈfyuz/ *verb*

**1** to make someone feel that he or she does not understand something: *His directions to the house really confused me, and I took a long time to find it.*

**2** to think wrongly that a person or thing is someone or something else: *It's easy to confuse Sue with her sister – they look so similar.*

—**confusing** *adjective* something that is confusing is difficult to understand because it is complicated and not clear: *The instructions in the book were really confusing, and none of the students understood what to do.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **confuse** *verb*
- **confusion** *noun*
- **confusing** *adjective*
- **confused** *adjective*

**con·fused** /kənˈfyuzd/ *adjective*

someone who is confused does not understand something clearly: *We're a little confused about what we're supposed to be doing.*

→ See picture on page A23

**con·fu·sion** /kənˈfyuzən/ *noun*

the feeling that you do not understand something or do not know what to do: *There was a lot of confusion about the new rules at first.*

**con·ges·tion** /kənˈdʒestʃən/ *noun*

**1** a situation in which the roads are too full of cars, trucks, etc.: *How can we reduce traffic congestion in our cities?*

**2** a situation in which your nose or another part of your body is full of too much liquid: *It was hard to breathe because of my congestion.*

—**congested** *adjective* experiencing congestion: *a congested street*

**con·grat·u·late** /kənˈgrætʃəˌleɪt/ *verb*  
to tell someone that you are pleased because something good has happened to him or her, or because he or she has done something well: *I congratulated them on the birth of their daughter.*

**con·grat·u·la·tions**

/kənˈgrætʃəˌleɪʃənz/

used when congratulating someone: *You won? Congratulations! | Congratulations on your graduation from high school.*

**con·gre·ga·tion** /ˌkɒŋgrəˈgeɪʃən/ *noun*

the people who are in a church during a service: *The minister asked the congregation to stand.*

**Con·gress** /ˈkɒŋɡrɪs/ *noun*

the group of people who have been chosen to make the laws in some countries. In the U.S., Congress is divided into the Senate and the House of Representatives: *The bill has been approved by both houses of Congress.*

**con·gress·man** /ˈkɒŋɡrɪsmən/ *noun*

plural **congressmen** /ˈkɒŋɡrɪsmən/

a man who is a member of the House of Representatives

**con·gress·wom·an** /ˈkɒŋɡrɪsˌwʊmən/

*noun* plural **congresswomen**

/ˈkɒŋɡrɪsˌwɪmɪn/

a woman who is a member of the House of Representatives

**con·ju·gate** /ˈkɒndʒəˌgeɪt/ *verb, formal*

to give the different forms of a verb, for example the present tense, past tense, and past participle: *We learned to conjugate verbs in Spanish.*

**con·junc·tion** /kənˈdʒʌŋkʃən/ *noun, formal*

**1** a word such as “but,” “and,” or “while” that connects parts of sentences or phrases

**2** **in conjunction with someone or something** = with someone or something else: *The worksheets should be used in conjunction with the video.*

**con·nect** /kəˈnekt/ *verb*

**1** to join one thing to another: *Connect the speakers to the stereo. | Has the phone been connected yet (=been joined to the telephone network)? | Click here to connect to*



the Internet (=join your computer to the Internet). **ANTONYM** **disconnect**

**2** to show or think that a thing or person is related to or involved in something: *There is no evidence to connect him with the crime.*

C

**con·nect·ed** /kə'nektɪd/ *adjective*

**1** if two things or events are connected, there is some kind of relationship between them: *The police think that the two murders may be connected with each other.* **SYNONYM** **related**

**2** if two things are connected to each other, they are joined together: *The speakers aren't even connected to the stereo – of course you can't hear anything.*

**con·nec·tion** /kə'nekʃən/ *noun*

**1** a relationship between things, people, ideas, etc.: *There is a direct connection between smoking and lung disease. | He said he had no connection with the organization.*

**2** the process of joining two or more things together, especially using wires: *You get free Internet connection at the hotel.*

**3** an airplane, bus, or train that leaves soon after another one arrives, so that people can change from one to the other and continue their trip quickly: *I missed my connection at the airport (=I failed to catch my next plane).*

**con·nois·seur** /,kənə'sæ/ *noun, formal*  
someone who knows a lot about something such as art or food: *a connoisseur of fine wines*

**con·quer** /'kɒŋkə/ *verb, formal*

to defeat a country or group of people in a war and take their land: *The Romans conquered much of Europe.*

—**conqueror** *noun* a leader or nation that conquers a country or group of people

**con·quest** /'kɒŋkwɛst/ *noun, formal*

the defeat and control of a country or group of people: *The Spanish conquest of Central America took place in the 16th century.*

**con·science** /'kɒŋʃəns/ *noun*

the feeling inside you that tells you whether it is right or wrong to do something: *I had a guilty conscience about lying to my mother (=I felt guilty about it).*

**con·sci·en·tious** /,kɒŋʃi'enʃəs/

*adjective, formal*

taking care to do things very well: *He was a conscientious student who spent a lot of time on his homework.*

—**conscientiously** *adverb, formal*

**con·scious** /'kɒŋʃəs/ *adjective*

**1** knowing about a situation or realizing something: *I was conscious of people staring at me. | fashion-conscious teenagers (=young people who know and care about fashion)* **SYNONYM** **aware**

**2** awake and able to understand what is happening: *He was still conscious when he arrived at the hospital.* **ANTONYM** **unconscious**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **conscious** *adjective*
- **unconscious** *adjective*
- **consciously** *adverb*
- **unconsciously** *adverb*
- **consciousness** *noun*
- **unconsciousness** *noun*

**con·scious·ly** /'kɒŋʃəsli/ *adverb*

if you do something consciously, you know that you are doing it and you deliberately make an effort to do it: *She consciously chose to wear her best skirt for the date.*

**ANTONYM** **unconsciously**

**con·scious·ness** /'kɒŋʃəsnɪs/ *noun*

the state of being awake and able to understand what is happening: *Charlie hit his head and lost consciousness.*

**con·sec·u·tive** /kən'sekyətɪv/

*adjective, formal*

consecutive periods of time, events, etc. happen one after the other: *It rained for three consecutive days and we really wanted to see the sun again.*

**con·sen·sus** /kən'sensəs/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

agreement between everyone in a group: *The committee failed to reach a consensus on what should be done.*

**con·sent** /kən'sent/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

permission to do something: *We need your parents' written consent before you can go on the school trip. | Her father gave his consent to the marriage (=said that he would allow it).*



—**consent** verb, formal to say that you will allow something to be done: *He had not consented to medical treatment, so doctors did not perform the operation.*

**con-se-quence** /'kənsə,kwens/ [Ac]

noun, formal

something that happens as a result of an action: *She never thinks about the consequences of her actions. | He broke the law, and now he must face the consequences (=accept the bad results of his actions).*

WORD FAMILY → **consequently** adverb

**con-se-quent-ly** /'kənsə,kwentli/ [Ac]

adverb, formal

as a result of something: *The winter was very cold, and consequently many animals died.*

**con-ser-va-tion** /,kənsə'veɪʃən/ noun

**1** the activity of protecting plants and types of animals: *There are new laws to encourage the conservation of wildlife.*

**2** the activity of using energy, water, etc. carefully and not wasting any: *The city has organized a program of water conservation since water supplies are low.*

**con-ser-va-tion-ist** /,kənsə'veɪʃənɪst/ noun

someone whose work is about the activity of protecting plants and types of animals

**con-serv-a-tive** /kən'səvətɪv/ adjective

**1** supporting political ideas that include less government involvement in people's lives and little social change: *Republicans are more conservative than Democrats.* **SYNONYM** right-wing

**2** believing that the old ways of doing things are best: *Most old people who live in farm country are very conservative.*

**con-serve** /kən'səv/ verb, formal

**1** to use energy, water, etc. carefully and not waste it: *We must teach young people to conserve energy by turning off lights and computers.*

**2** to stop plants and types of animals from being destroyed: *If we do not conserve the rainforests, they will disappear from the Earth.*

**con-sid-er** /kən'sɪdər/ verb, formal

**1** to think about something: *She's considering studying engineering at college.*

**2** to have an opinion about something or

someone: *I considered her to be an excellent teacher.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **think**

**con-sid-er-a-ble** /kən'sɪdərəbəl/ [Ac]

adjective, formal

a considerable amount is a lot: *He earns a considerable amount of money, so he buys a lot of expensive things.*

**con-sid-er-a-bly** /kən'sɪdərəbli/ [Ac]

adverb, formal

if something is considerably bigger, higher, etc., it is a lot bigger, higher, etc.: *That store is considerably more expensive than the others.*

**con-sid-er-ate** /kən'sɪdərət/ adjective, formal

a considerate person thinks about what other people feel or need: *Alex is such a kind and considerate boy. He's always doing nice things for other people.*

—**considerately** adjective, formal

→ See Thesaurus box at **kind**<sup>2</sup>

**con-sid-e-ra-tion** /kən,sɪdə'reɪʃən/ noun

careful thought about something: *It's a new idea, and it needs careful consideration.*

**con-sid-er-ing** /kən'sɪdərɪŋ/ preposition, conjunction

used when you give your opinion, for saying that it is important to remember a particular fact: *She did well on her exams, considering that she'd been sick.*

**con-sist** /kən'sɪst/ [Ac] verb, formal

**PHRASAL VERB**

**consist of something**

to be formed of something: *The audience consisted largely of teenagers.*

**con-sist-ent** /kən'sɪstənt/ [Ac] adjective

**1** always doing something in the same way: *Ben is the team's most consistent player (=he's always good).* **ANTONYM** inconsistent

**2** if one description, report, etc. is consistent with another, they contain the same facts or ideas: *The man's explanation was consistent with the evidence, so it is probably true.*

—**consistently** adverb: *Zoe has achieved consistently good grades this semester – she's gotten A's and B's on everything.*

—**consistency** noun, formal the quality of always doing something in the same way:



He has some athletic skills, but he lacks consistency.

**con·sole** /kən'soul/ verb, formal  
to help someone to feel less sad: No one could console her when her dog died.

—**consolation** /,kənsə'leɪʃən/ noun, formal  
something that makes you feel less sad

**con·sol·i·date** /kən'sələ,deɪt/ verb, formal  
to combine two or more things to form a single thing that is more effective or easier to deal with: We consolidate information from a wide range of sources.

—**consolidation** /kən,sələ'deɪʃən/ noun, formal  
the act of consolidating something

**con·so·nant** /'kənsənənt/ noun  
any letter of the alphabet except a, e, i, o, and u: The word "bird" begins and ends with a consonant.

**con·spic·u·ous** /kən'spɪkyuəs/ adjective, formal  
very easy to notice: Put the sign in a conspicuous place so that lots of people see it.  
—**conspicuously** adverb, formal: Dave was conspicuously absent from the meeting (=his absence was very noticeable).

→ See Thesaurus box at **clear**<sup>1</sup>

**con·spir·a·cy** /kən'spɪrəsi/ noun plural  
**conspiracies**  
a secret plan that people make together to do something bad: There was a conspiracy to assassinate the president that involved many people.

—**conspirator** noun, formal  
someone who is part of a group that is planning a conspiracy

**con·stant** /'kənstənt/ **Ac** adjective  
**1** happening all the time: Tiny babies need constant attention.

**2** staying at the same level: While she's sick, keep her room at a constant temperature.

—**constantly** adverb: Technology is constantly changing.

**con·stel·la·tion** /,kənstə'leɪʃən/ noun  
a group of stars that has a name: You can see the major constellations in the night sky.

**con·sti·pa·tion** /,kənstə'peɪʃən/ noun  
difficulty in moving solid waste out of the body: Plenty of fruit and vegetables help to prevent constipation.

—**constipated** /'kənstə,peɪtɪd/ adjective  
having constipation

**con·sti·tute** /'kənstə,tut/ **Ac** verb, formal  
to form a part of something: Women constitute 51% of the population.

—**constituent** /kən'stɪtʃuənt/ noun, formal  
one of the parts that form something

**con·sti·tu·tion** also **Constitution** /,kənstə'tuʃən/ **Ac** noun  
a set of laws and ideas that govern a country, state, or organization: The Constitution says what kind of laws the government can make.

—**constitutional** adjective relating to a constitution: the constitutional rights of the people

**con·struct** /kən'strʌkt/ **Ac** verb, formal  
to build something: The college is planning to construct a new library.

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **construct** verb
- **construction** noun
- **reconstruction** noun

**con·struc·tion** /kən'strʌkʃən/ **Ac** noun  
the process of building something: A new airport is now under construction (=people are in the process of building it).

**con·sul** /'kənsəl/ noun  
a person who lives in a foreign city and whose job is to help other people from the same country who live there: He was the U.S. consul in Tunis for several years.

**con·sult** /kən'sʌlt/ **Ac** verb, formal  
to ask a doctor, lawyer, etc. for advice or information: Before you sign any contract, consult your lawyer.

—**consultation** /,kənsəl'teɪʃən/ noun, formal  
a meeting or discussion that you have to get advice or information: The decision was reached after consultation with parents and teachers.

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **consult** verb
- **consultation** noun
- **consultant** noun



**con·sult·ant** /kən'sʌltənt/ **[Ac]** noun

someone whose job is to give advice about something: *He's a successful business consultant and works with many different companies.*

**con·sume** /kən'sʌm/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**1** to use fuel, time, etc.: *Small cars consume less fuel.*

**2** to eat or drink something: *You should try to reduce the amount of salt you consume.*

→ **time-consuming**

**con·sum·er** /kən'sʌmə/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

anyone who buys goods or uses services: *Consumers will buy more if the prices are lower.*

**con·sump·tion** /kən'sʌmpʃən/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

**energy/fuel, etc. consumption** = the amount of electricity, gas, etc. that something uses: *Driving more slowly reduces the car's fuel consumption.*

**con·tact**<sup>1</sup> /'kəntækt/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** the act of talking or writing to someone: *I don't have much contact with John since he moved away.*

**2 be/keep/stay in contact with someone** = to talk or write to someone who you do not see often: *Jane lives in Canada now, but I keep in contact with her by email.*

**3** the state of two people or things touching each other: *These two wires should not come into contact (=touch).*

**contact**<sup>2</sup> verb

to telephone or write to someone: *I think you should contact the police.*

**'contact lens** noun

a small round piece of plastic you put in your eye to help you see clearly

**con·ta·gious** /kən'teɪdʒəs/ adjective

a contagious disease can pass from one person to another: *Children's diseases are highly contagious, so if one child gets sick, they all get sick.* **SYNONYM** **infectious**

**con·tain** /kən'teɪn/ verb

**1** to have something inside: *His wallet contained \$50.*

**2** to include something in a letter, report, etc.: *Your essay must contain your own ideas.*

**con·tain·er** /kən'teɪnə/ noun

something you buy or keep things in: *She put the cookies in a plastic container with a tight lid.*

**con·tam·i·nate** /kən'tæməˌneɪt/ verb, formal

to make water, food, etc. dirty or dangerous: *Some of these chemicals contaminate our rivers.*

—**contamination** /kənˌtæməˈneɪʃən/ noun the act of contaminating water, food, etc.: *the contamination of the city's water supply*

**con·tem·plate** /'kəntəmˌpleɪt/ verb, formal

to think about doing something important: *I could not contemplate getting married yet – I'm too young.*

—**contemplation** /ˌkəntəmˈpleɪʃən/ noun, formal the act of thinking about something important

**con·tem·po·ra·ry** /kən'tempəˌreri/

**[Ac]** adjective, formal

contemporary art, music, etc. is modern: *I like contemporary art better than 19th century art.*

**con·tempt** /kən'tempt/ noun, formal

a complete lack of respect for someone or something: *"You'll never be able to do it," he said with contempt.*

—**contemptuous** adjective, formal without any respect: *She gave him a contemptuous look when he made the mistake.*

**con·tend** /kən'tend/ verb, formal

to compete to get something: *Their team is contending for the national championship.*

—**contender** noun someone who is competing to get something: *He's a top contender for the gold medal.*

**con·tent**<sup>1</sup> /kən'tent/ adjective

happy and satisfied: *Are you content with your life or are there changes you want to make?*

**con·tent**<sup>2</sup> /'kəntent/ noun, formal

**1 contents** = the things that are inside a box, bag, etc.: *The guard looked through the contents of her purse.*

**2** the ideas that are contained in a book, speech, etc.: *The content of the book is not appropriate for children.*



**con·tent·ed** /kən'tentɪd/ *adjective*  
happy and satisfied: *They seem like a very contented family. They don't argue much.*

**con·test** /'kəntest/ *noun*  
a competition: *At the fair there was a contest to see who could eat the most hot dogs.*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **competition**

**con·test·ant** /kən'testənt/ *noun*  
someone who competes in a contest: *There will be only three contestants in the game.*

**con·text** /'kəntekst/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
the situation that is related to something, and that helps you to understand it: *We have to think about the law in its historical context. What was society like then?*

**con·ti·nent** /'kəntənənt/ *noun*  
one of the large areas of land on the Earth, such as Africa, Europe, and Asia: *the African continent*

—**continental** /,kəntə'nentl/ *adjective*  
relating to a continent, but not its islands: *a map of the continental United States*

**con·tin·u·al** /kən'tɪnyuəl/ *adjective, formal*  
happening a lot or all the time: *Their continual arguing upset me.*

**con·tin·u·a·tion** /kən'tɪnyu'eɪʃən/ *noun, formal*  
a situation in which something continues to happen: *The college offers graduating high school students a continuation of their education.*

**con·tin·ue** /kən'tɪnyu/ *verb*  
**1** if something continues, it is happening and it does not stop: *Maya has continued to study hard at school this year. | He plans to continue his work with the university.*  
**2** to start again after a pause: *An hour later the fighting continued.*  
—**continuity** /,kəntə'nuəti/ *noun, formal*  
the state of continuing: *Our traditions give us a sense of continuity.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **continue** *verb*
- **continuity** *noun*
- **continual** *adjective*
- **continuous** *adjective*
- **continuously** *adverb*
- **discontinue** *verb*

**con·tinuing edu·cation** *noun*  
classes for adults who want to study something

**con·tin·u·ous** /kən'tɪnyuəs/ *adjective, formal*  
happening without stopping: *Learning is a continuous process that happens until we die.*

—**continuously** *adverb, formal*: *It rained continuously for two days.*

**con·tour** /'kəntʊr/ *noun*  
the curved shape or edge of something: *This model shows the contours of the Earth's surface.*

**con·tra·cep·tion** /,kənrə'sepʃən/ *noun*  
ways of stopping a woman from becoming PREGNANT **SYNONYM** **birth control**

**con·tra·cep·tive** /,kənrə'septɪv/ *noun*  
something people use to stop a woman from becoming PREGNANT: *She didn't want to have a baby, so she wanted information about contraceptives.*

—**contraceptive** *adjective*: *the contraceptive pill*

**con·tract<sup>1</sup>** /'kənrækt/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
a written agreement to work for someone, buy something, etc.: *Dave signed a three-year contract with an oil company.*

**con·tract<sup>2</sup>** /kən'trækt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*  
**1** to get a serious disease: *Thousands of people contracted the disease and died.*  
**2** to become smaller: *Metal contracts as it cools.* **ANTONYM** **expand**

**con·trac·tion** /kən'trækʃən/ *noun*  
a short form of a word or words: *"Don't" is a contraction of "do not."*

**con·trac·tor** /'kənræktər/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
a company or person that does work for other companies, especially building work: *Her father was a building contractor.*

**con·tra·dict** /,kənrə'dɪkt/ **[Ac]** *verb*  
if one statement, fact, etc. contradicts another one, they are different and both cannot be true: *The two boys' stories about the fight contradicted each other.*

—**contradiction** /,kənrə'dɪkʃən/ *noun*  
a difference between two statements, facts, etc. that cannot both be true

—**contradictory** /,kənrə'dɪktəri/ *adjective, formal*  
contradictory statements or facts



are different, and both cannot be true: *The two witnesses gave contradictory statements in court, and it was not clear who was telling the truth.*

**con·tra·ry**<sup>1</sup> /'kən,triəri/ [Ac] *adverb, formal*

**contrary to something** = different from something that people think or say: *Contrary to what most people think, a little fat is good for you.*

**contrary**<sup>2</sup> *noun, formal*

**on the contrary** = used when saying that the opposite is true: *"Is the population decreasing?" "On the contrary, it is increasing."*

—**contrary** *adjective, formal* different from or not agreeing with something: *contrary opinions*

**con·trast**<sup>1</sup> /'kəntræst/ [Ac] *noun*

a big difference between people or things: *There is a big contrast between the rich and the poor in the United States.*

**con·trast**<sup>2</sup> /kən'træst/ [Ac] *verb*

**1** if two things contrast, they are or look very different: *I like the way the red walls contrast with the wood floors.*

**2** to compare two people or things and show that they are different: *The teacher told us to compare and contrast these two poems (=show how they are the same and how they are different).*

**con·trib·ute** /kən'tribyut/ [Ac] *verb, formal*

**1** to give money or help for something: *My parents contribute to my college fees.*

**2** to take part in something: *All the students contributed to the discussion.*

—**contributor** *noun, formal* someone who gives money or help for something: *He was a major contributor to the Republican party.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **contribute** *verb*
- **contribution** *noun*
- **contributor** *noun*

**con·tri·bu·tion** /,kəntrə'byuʃən/ [Ac] *noun, formal*

**1** some money that you give to help pay for something: *Everyone made a contribution of \$3 to buy Elsa a present.*

**2** something you do that helps something be

successful: *Her work here made a great contribution to the school.*

**con·trol**<sup>1</sup> /kən'trəʊl/ *noun*

**1** the ability to make someone or something do what you want: *Some parents don't have any control over their kids.*

**2 under control** = if a situation is under control, it is happening the way you want: *Don't worry, everything is under control.*

**3 out of control** = if something is out of control, you cannot make it do what you want: *The car went out of control and hit a tree.*

**4** the power to decide what happens in a country, organization, etc.: *At the moment, the Republicans are in control of Congress (=have this power).*

**5** the ability to stay calm when you are angry or upset: *I just lost control and punched him!*

**6 controls** = the things that you press or turn to make a vehicle work: *The pilot was already at the plane's controls.*

**control**<sup>2</sup> *verb* controlled, controlling

**1** to make someone or something do what you want: *I couldn't control the horse, and it began to run.*

**2** to have the power in a country, organization, etc.: *Nicholls was the man who controlled the company.*

**con·tro·ver·sy** /'kəntrə,və'si/ [Ac] *noun*  
plural **controversies**

a lot of disagreement among people: *There was a lot of controversy over who should pay to fix the bridge.*

—**controversial** /,kəntrə'vəʃəl/ *adjective* causing a lot of disagreement among people: *Using animals for scientific experiments is a controversial issue – many people oppose it, but others say it is necessary.*

**con·ven·ience** /kən'vinyəns/ *noun*

the quality of being useful and easy to use: *Most people like the convenience of a credit card.* **ANTONYM** **inconvenience**

**con'venience ,store** *noun*

a store where you buy food, newspapers, etc. and that is often open 24 hours each day

**con·ven·ient** /kən'vinyənt/ *adjective*

**1** useful and easy to use or get to: *The Internet is a convenient way to shop.*

**ANTONYM** **inconvenient**



**2** a convenient time is good for you to do something, because you are not busy then: *Is 2 o'clock convenient for you?* **ANTONYM** inconvenient

**con·vent** /'kɒnvɛnt/ **noun**

a place where women who follow a religious life live together

**con·ven·tion** /kən'venʃən/ **[Ac]** **noun**

a large meeting of people who belong to the same organization, do the same work, etc.: *the Democratic Convention*

**con·ven·tion·al** /kən'venʃənəl/ **[Ac]**

**adjective**

of the type that has been used for a long time: *Microwave ovens are much faster than conventional ovens.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **normal**

**con·ver·sa·tion** /,kɒnvə'seɪʃən/ **noun**

**1** a talk between two or more people: *I had an interesting conversation with your teacher. | My sister and I had a conversation about love and marriage.*

**2** **make conversation** = to talk to someone to be polite: *Everyone stood around, making conversation.*

**con·verse**<sup>1</sup> /kən'vɜ:s/ **[Ac]** **verb, formal**

to have a conversation with someone: *He stood in the middle of the room conversing with his guests.* **SYNONYM** talk

→ See Thesaurus box at **talk**<sup>1</sup>

**con·verse**<sup>2</sup> /'kɒnvɜ:s/ **[Ac]** **noun**

**the converse** **formal** = the opposite of something: *Clearly, if  $x = y$ , the converse is also true:  $y = x$ .*

—**conversely** **adverb, formal**: *What do you like most about your job, and conversely what do you like least?*

**con·ver·sion** /kən'vɜ:ʒən/ **[Ac]** **noun**

the act of changing from one form, religion, etc. to another one: *Our conversion to the new digital system will soon be complete.*

**con·vert** /kən'vɜ:t/ **[Ac]** **verb**

**1** to change something into something else: *The old barn was converted into a house.*

**2** to change your religion: *When she married, she converted to Islam.*

**con·ver·ti·ble** /kən'vɜ:təbəl/ **[Ac]** **noun**

a car with a roof that you can fold back or remove

**con·vey** /kən'veɪ/ **verb, formal**

to express feelings or ideas to someone: *The poem conveys strong emotions to the reader.*

**con·veyor belt** **noun**

a long moving band of rubber or metal, used for moving things from one place to another: *The bags move through the airport on a conveyor belt.*

**con·vict**<sup>1</sup> /kən'vɪkt/ **verb**

to decide that someone is guilty of a crime in a court of law: *The man was convicted of murder and sent to prison.*

**con·vict**<sup>2</sup> /'kɒnvɪkt/ **noun, formal**

someone who is guilty of a crime and is sent to prison: *In the past, all the convicts were sent to an island.*

**con·vic·tion** /kən'vɪkʃən/ **noun**

**1** **formal** a strong belief: *Her mother has strong religious convictions and doesn't believe in smoking or drinking at all.*

**2** a decision made in a court of law that someone is guilty of a crime: *The young man had two previous criminal convictions, so the judge gave him a strict punishment.*

**con·vince** /kən'vɪns/ **[Ac]** **verb**

**1** to make someone believe something: *He convinced me that he was telling the truth.*

**2** to persuade someone to do something: *I convinced Kate to stay at the party with me.*

—**convincing** **adjective** making you believe that something is true: *The reason she gave for being late was very convincing.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **persuade**

**con·vinced** /kən'vɪnst/ **[Ac]** **adjective**

certain that something is true: *I'm convinced (that) I saw him at the party.* **SYNONYM** sure

**con·voy** /'kɒnvɔɪ/ **noun**

a group of vehicles traveling together: *A convoy of military trucks drove into town.*

**cook**<sup>1</sup> /kʊk/ **verb**

to make food ready to eat, by cutting, mixing, heating, etc. it: *I'll cook dinner tonight.*

#### THESAURUS: cook

**bake** to cook food such as bread in the oven: *Jeanie baked some cookies.*

**fry** to cook food in oil on the top part of the stove: *I fried an egg for breakfast.*

**roast** to cook meat or vegetables in an oven: *The beef needs to roast for three hours.*



**boil** to cook food in very hot water on the top part of the stove: *Boil the potatoes until they are tender.*

**grill** to cook food over strong heat, especially over a fire: *Dad grilled a steak on the barbecue.*

**steam** to cook vegetables by placing them in a container over very hot water, so that the steam from the hot water cooks them: *Steaming the broccoli keeps in more of the vitamins.*

→ See picture on page A14

## **cook<sup>2</sup>** noun

someone who makes food ready to eat: *Kevin works as a cook at the college.*

→ See picture on page A16

## **cook·book** /'kʊkbʊk/ noun

a book that tells you how to make different foods: *There is a good recipe for making apple pie in the cookbook.*

## **cook·ie** /'kʊki/ noun

a small flat sweet cake: *She's making chocolate chip cookies.*

## **cook·ing** /'kʊkɪŋ/ noun

the activity of preparing and cooking food: *I do most of the cooking at our house.*

## **cook·out** /'kʊkaʊt/ noun

an occasion when a meal is cooked outdoors: *We're going to have hamburgers and hot dogs at the cookout.*

## **cool<sup>1</sup>** /kʊl/ adjective

**1** *informal* used to show that you like or admire someone or something: *He's a really cool guy.*

**2** *informal* used in order to say "yes" to something: *"Do you mind if I bring my sister?" "No, that's cool."* **SYNONYM** OK, fine

**3** a little cold: *A cool breeze came from the ocean.*

**4** calm: *Stay cool – don't let him make you mad.*

—**coolly** /'kʊl-li/ *adverb* in a calm or unfriendly way: *"Can I come with you?" "I don't care what you do," she said coolly.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cold<sup>1</sup>**

## **cool<sup>2</sup>** also **cool down** verb

to become colder: *When you take the cake out of the oven, let it cool for a while. | A soda will cool you down on a hot day.*

### **PHRASAL VERB**

## **cool off** also **cool down**

**1** if you cool off, you do something to make

yourself less hot: *It was hot, so we went swimming to cool off.*

**2** to stop being angry: *Don't talk to him until he cools off.*

## **cool<sup>3</sup>** noun

**1** **keep your cool** = to stay calm in a difficult situation: *The players kept their cool and started scoring.*

**2** **lose your cool** = to become angry or upset in a difficult situation: *Be polite, and try not to lose your cool.*

## **cool·er** /'kʊlə/ noun

a box in which you can keep food or drinks cool

## **cooped up** /,kʊpt 'ʌp/ adjective, informal

if you are cooped up in a small place, you have to stay there for a long period of time, and you feel very uncomfortable: *Let's go out. I've been cooped up in this apartment all day.*

## **co·op·er·ate** /kəʊ'apə'reɪt/ **[Ac]** verb

to work together with someone else, or do what someone asks you to do: *If we all cooperate, we can get this done faster. | He may cooperate with the police and tell them where the stolen money is.*

### **WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **cooperate** verb
- **cooperation** noun
- **cooperative** adjective

## **co·op·er·a·tion** /kəʊ'apə'reɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

the act of working together with someone else or doing what someone asks you to do: *Cooperation between teachers and parents helps students get the same messages at school and at home.*

## **co·op·er·a·tive** /kəʊ'apə'reɪtɪv/ **[Ac]** adjective

someone who is cooperative does what he or she is asked to do: *When I asked him to help us, he was very cooperative. He started helping that day.*

## **co·or·di·nate** /kəʊ'ɔːdn,eɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to organize something complicated, so that everyone does the right thing at the right time: *Sam is coordinating the campaign, so if*



you have questions about what to do, ask him.

—**coordinator** *noun* someone who coordinates an activity

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **coordinate** *verb*
- **coordination** *noun*
- **coordinator** *noun*

**co-or-di-na-tion** /kou,ɔrdn'eɪʃən/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** someone's ability to use his or her body parts together effectively: *It takes good eye-hand coordination to catch a ball.*

**2** formal the act of coordinating an activity

**cop** /kɑp/ *noun, informal*

a police officer: *The cops came into the bar and stopped the fight.*

**cope** /koup/ *verb*

to be able to deal with a difficult situation without becoming too upset, worried, or angry: *When my parents got divorced, my mother didn't cope with the situation very well. She just yelled at us all the time.*

**cop-i-er** /'kɑpiə/ *noun*

a machine that quickly copies documents onto paper by photographing them **SYNONYM** **photocopier**

**co-pi-lot** /'kou,pɑɪlət/ *noun*

a pilot who helps the main pilot fly an airplane

**cop-per** /'kɑpə/ *noun*

an orange-brown metal: *Electrical wires are often made of copper.*

**cop-y** /'kɑpi/ *verb* copied, third person singular **copies**

**1** to make or write something that is the same as something else: *To copy a file, press F3. | He copied his friend's answers on the test.*

**2** to deliberately do what someone else has done: *Other bands have copied our music.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**copy something down**

to write down the exact words that are said by someone or written somewhere: *She copied down the homework assignment.*

**copy**<sup>2</sup> *noun* plural **copies**

**1** something that is made to look exactly the same as something else: *She made a copy of the letter to send to her lawyer.*

**2** one of many books, magazines, or newspapers that are exactly the same: *Do you have another copy of this book?*

**cop-y-right** /'kɑpi,raɪt/ *noun*

the legal right to produce and sell a book, play, movie, or recording: *The university owns the copyright on the book, and it cannot be reproduced without the university's permission.*

**cor-al** /'kɔrəl/ *noun*

a hard substance under the ocean made from the bones of very small sea creatures: *Many fish live around the coral reef (=large line of coral under the ocean).*

**cord** /kɔrd/ *noun*

**1** a piece of wire covered with plastic, used for connecting electrical or electronic equipment: *She unplugged the phone cord.*

**2** a piece of thin rope: *a thin piece of nylon cord*

**cor-du-roy** /'kɔrdə,rɔɪ/ *noun*

thick strong cotton cloth with raised lines: *brown corduroy pants*

**core**<sup>1</sup> /kɔr/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** the central or most important part of something: *These four players are the core of the team. We would not win without them.*

**2** the hard central part of a fruit such as an apple: *He ate the apple and threw the core away.*

**3** the central part of the Earth or any PLANET: *The Earth's core is very hot.*

**core**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

core things are the most important and basic ones: *All the students take four core classes. They must take these classes to graduate.*

**cork** /kɔrk/ *noun*

**1** the light outer part of a type of tree, which is used for making things: *The bulletin board was covered in cork.*

**2** a piece of this material that is put in the top of a wine bottle to close it

**cork-screw** /'kɔrk,skru/ *noun*

a tool used for pulling corks out of bottles

**corn** /kɔrn/ *noun*

a tall plant with yellow seeds that you can cook and eat: *an ear of corn* (=the part on which the yellow seeds grow) | *We had corn on the cob* (=a cooked ear of corn).

→ See picture on page A12



**corn·bread** /'kɔrnbrɛd/ *noun*

bread made from small pieces of dried corn

**corned beef** /,kɔrnd 'bɪf/ *noun*

BEEF that has been put in salt water and SPICES to preserve it

**cor·ner** /'kɔrnə/ *noun*

**1** the point at which two roads, walls, edges, etc. meet: *Meet me on the corner of Main Street and Elm Street.* | *There was a TV in the corner of the room.* | *She lives around the corner from my house* (=in a street that joins the street where my house is).

**2** **see/watch something out of the corner of your eye** = to see or watch something that is to the side, without turning your head: *Suddenly, out of the corner of my eye, I saw something coming toward me.*

**corn·flakes** /'kɔrnfleɪks/ *plural noun*

a breakfast food consisting of flat pieces made from corn which is eaten with milk

**corn·y** /'kɔrni/ *adjective, informal*

corny jokes, songs, movies, etc. are silly and very familiar: *Why do you keep playing those corny old love songs?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **funny**<sup>1</sup>

**cor·po·ral** /'kɔrpərəl/ *noun, written abbreviation Cpl.*

an officer with a low rank in the Army or Marines

**cor·po·rate** /'kɔrpərɪt/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

belonging to or relating to a corporation: *The company has moved its corporate headquarters (=main office) to Houston.*

**cor·po·ra·tion** /,kɔrpə'reɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a large business: *Large corporations can sell their products at lower prices than small businesses.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **company**

**corpse** /kɔrps/ *noun*

a dead human body: *The police found a corpse in the park and are now looking for the killer.* **SYNONYM** **body**

**cor·rect**<sup>1</sup> /kə'rekt/ *adjective*

right or without any mistakes: *If you give the correct answer, you get one point.* | *He showed me the correct way to hold the baseball bat.* | *"Your name is Ives?" "Yes, that's correct."* **SYNONYM** **right**; **ANTONYM** **incorrect, wrong**

—**correctly** *adverb*: *Did I say your name correctly?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **right**<sup>1</sup>

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **correct** *adjective*

→ **correct** *verb*

→ **correction** *noun*

**correct**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to make something right or better: *Your eyesight can be corrected with glasses.*

**2** to mark or fix the mistakes in something: *Our teacher was correcting the tests.*

**3** to tell someone that what he or she has said or done is not right and tell them what is right: *Some of the things he said weren't true, but I didn't want to correct him.*

**cor·rec·tion** /kə'rekʃən/ *noun*

a change that makes something right or better: *He made a few corrections to his test before he turned it in.*

**cor·re·spend** /,kɔrə'spænd/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

**1** if two people correspond, they write letters to each other: *They've been corresponding since they met on vacation last year.* **SYNONYM** **write**

**2** to be like something else or be related to something else: *These numbers correspond to different computer files. Each file has its own number.*

**cor·re·spend·ence** /,kɔrə'spændəns/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**1** a relationship or connection between two things: *There is a correspondence between each letter of the alphabet and the sounds it represents.*

**2** letters that people send and receive: *These letters are my grandfather's correspondence with his family in Italy.*

**cor·re·spend·ent** /,kɔrə'spændənt/ *noun, formal*

someone whose job is to report news for a newspaper or a television company: *She was a foreign correspondent for the Washington Post* (=she reported foreign news).



**cor·re·spond·ing** /ˌkɒrəˈspændɪŋ/ **Ac**

adjective, formal

relating to or similar to something: *They gave her a more important job and a corresponding increase in pay.*—**correspondingly** adverb**cor·ri·dor** /ˈkɒrədɔː/ noun, formala passage between two rows of rooms in a large or important building: *He walked down the corridors of the old hospital.* **SYNONYM** hall**cor·rupt** /kəˈrʌpt/ adjectivea corrupt official is dishonest and uses his or her position wrongly, for money: *A corrupt police officer was protecting the drug dealer.*—**corruption** /kəˈrʌpʃən/ noun the situation that exists when officials are corrupt: *There was a lot of government corruption. Many of the leaders received money from criminal groups.***corrupt**<sup>2</sup> verb, formalto make someone dishonest or bad: *Power often corrupts people.***cos·met·ics** /kɒzˈmetɪks/ plural nounsubstances that people use to make their faces more attractive: *She bought some lipstick and other cosmetics.***cos,metic 'surgery** nounmedical operations that some people have to make themselves look better: *She had cosmetic surgery to try to make herself look younger.***cost**<sup>1</sup> /kɒst/ noun**1** the amount of money you have to pay for something: *The high cost of health care is a problem for many families.* | *The MP3 player is now available at a cost of about \$85.***THESAURUS: cost****expense** an amount of money that you spend on something: *Food was our main expense, because the camping place only cost a couple of dollars a night.***price** the amount of money you must pay for something: *House prices keep going up.***charge** the amount of money that you have to pay for someone to do something for you or to use something: *The books cost \$49.50, and there's a mailing charge of \$6.75.***fee** the amount of money you have to pay to go into a place or join something, or that you pay to a lawyer, doctor, etc.: *The membership fee is \$325 a year.* | *Tuition fees (=the money you pay to be taught at a college) have gone up again.***fare** the amount of money you have to pay to travel somewhere by bus, airplane, train, etc.: *We got a good deal on the air fare.***rent** the amount of money you have to pay to live in or use a place that you do not own: *My rent is \$1,200 a month.***2** what is lost in order to get something else: *The costs of the war, measured in human life, were very high.***3 at all costs/at any cost** = used to emphasize that something must be done, even if it takes a lot of effort: *He likes to win at all costs, even if he has to cheat to do it.***cost**<sup>2</sup> verb**1** to have a particular price: *The book costs \$15.* | *How much did that bag cost?***2** to make someone lose something important: *His mistake cost him his life (=he died because of his mistake).***co·star** /ˈkəʊ stɑː/ nounan actor's co-star in a movie, play, or television program is another actor who also has an important part in it: *She said she loved working with her co-star, Brad Pitt.*—**co·star** verb to be one of the main actors that work in a movie, play, or television program**cost·ly** /ˈkɒstli/ adjective, formal**1** costing a lot of money: *The medical treatment is very costly, and few people can afford it.* **SYNONYM** expensive**2** causing a lot of problems: *The team made some costly mistakes, and they lost by three runs.***cost of 'living** nounthe amount of money you need to spend in order to buy the food, clothes, etc. that you need to live: *The cost of living is much higher in California than in Iowa.***cos·tume** /ˈkɒstum/ nounspecial clothes that someone wears in order to look like someone or something else: *He wore a clown costume to the Halloween party.*



**cot** /kɑt/ *noun*

a narrow bed that folds up and can be stored in a small space

**cot-tage** /'kɑtɪdʒ/ *noun*

a small house in the country

**'cottage ,cheese** *noun*

a soft wet white cheese

**cot-ton** /'kɑtn/ *noun*

**1** cloth made from the cotton plant: *a cotton shirt* | *The dress was made of cotton.*

**2** a plant with white threads around its seeds that are used for making cloth: *Cotton was an important crop in the southern part of the country.*

**'cotton ball** *noun*

a small soft ball made from cotton, used for cleaning skin

**'cotton ,candy** *noun*

sticky candy that looks like cotton threads: *The kids bought cotton candy at the fair.*

**couch** /kaʊtʃ/ *noun*

a long, comfortable seat that at least two or three people can sit on: *She was lying on the couch, watching TV.* **SYNONYM** **sofa**

→ See picture at **seat**

**'couch po,tato** *noun, informal*

someone who spends a lot of time sitting and watching television

**cou-gar** /'kugə/ *noun*

a large brown wild cat from the mountains of western North and South America **SYNONYM** **mountain lion**

**cough<sup>1</sup>** /kɒf/ *verb*

if you cough, air suddenly comes out of your throat with a short rough sound: *The smoke made him cough.*

**cough<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** an illness that makes you cough a lot: *He had a bad cough and a runny nose.*

**2** the sound made when you cough: *She gave a nervous cough before she spoke.*

**could** /kəd; strong kud/ *verb*

**1** used when saying what someone was able to do or was allowed to do: *I could hear children laughing.* | *He said I could borrow his car.*

**2** used when saying that something is possible or might happen: *He could be a great singer if he tried harder.* | *It could be difficult to find a good chef to replace him.*

**3 could have** = used when saying that

something was possible, but did not actually happen: *She could have been killed.*

**4** used when making a polite request: *Could I ask you a couple of questions?* | *Could you bring me back a cup of coffee?*

**5** used when suggesting something: *We could have a barbecue.*

**could-n't** /'kʊdnt/ *verb*

the short form of “could not”: *It was so funny. We couldn't stop laughing.*

**could've** /'kʊdəv/ *verb*

the short form of “could have”: *He could've called and told me he was going to be late.*

**coun-cil** /'kaʊnsəl/ *noun*

a group of people who have been chosen to make laws or decisions: *The city council has approved plans for the new football stadium.*

**coun-sel** /'kaʊnsəl/ *verb, formal*

to help someone who has a problem by listening to him or her and giving advice: *He counsels students with personal problems.*

—**counseling** *noun* the activity of listening to someone and giving advice: *The center offers free counseling to anyone who is having problems with drugs.*

**coun-sel-or** /'kaʊnsələ/ *noun*

**1** someone whose job is to help people who have a problem, by listening to him or her and giving advice: *He discussed his future plans with a career counselor* (=someone who advises people about their careers).

**2** someone, usually a young person, who takes care of a group of children at a camp

**count<sup>1</sup>** /kaʊnt/ *verb*

**1** to find out how many things there are in a group: *We counted all the votes, and Maria is the new class president.*

**2** to say numbers in the right order: *He's only three, but he can count to 50.*

**3** to be important: *We won, and that's all that counts* (=nothing else is important). | *I felt my opinion didn't count for anything* (=wasn't important).

**4 count me in/out informal** = used for saying that you want to do something with other people, or that you do not want to do something with them: *Count me out – I'm too tired to go out tonight.*

**PHRASAL VERB****count on someone or something**

to depend on someone or something: *He's*



very nice. You can always count on him to help.

**count**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** the process of counting: *The teachers made a count of (=counted) all the children as they got on the bus.*

**2** an amount that has been counted: *At last count, he's seen the movie six times.*

**3** **lose count** = to forget a total when it keeps changing: *I've lost count of how many boyfriends she's had. There have been a lot.*

**4** one of the crimes that the police say someone has done: *He was guilty on two counts of robbery.*

**count-down** /'kauntdaʊn/ noun

the period of time just before something happens, especially when someone counts backward until it happens: *The countdown to the launch of the space shuttle has begun.*

**coun-ter** /'kauntə/ noun

**1** a flat surface in a kitchen where you can prepare food: *She washed the dishes and cleaned the kitchen counters.*

**2** a flat surface where you pay or are served in a store, bank, restaurant, etc.: *The girl behind the counter took my order.*

→ See picture on page A9

**coun-ter-act** /,kauntə'ækt/ verb, formal  
to reduce the bad effect of something, by having the opposite effect: *The drug can counteract memory problems in some people. They can get some of their memory back.*

**coun-ter-at-tack** /'kauntəə,tæk/ noun, formal

an attack that you make against someone who has attacked you

—**counterattack** verb to attack someone who has attacked you

**coun-ter-clock-wise**

/,kauntə'klɒk-waɪz/ adjective, adverb  
in the opposite direction to the way the hands of a clock move: *Turn the lid counter-clockwise.* **ANTONYM** clockwise

**coun-ter-feit** /'kauntə'feit/ adjective

made to look exactly like something else in order to trick people: *I called the police because the woman gave me a counterfeit 50-dollar bill.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fake**

**count-less** /'kauntləs/ adjective, formal  
very many: *I had seen the movie countless times before, and I didn't need to see it again.*

**coun-try** /'kʌntri/ noun plural **countries**

**1** a large area of land with its own government or ruler: *China is a huge country. I She has traveled to many foreign countries in her job.*

**THESAURUS: country**

**nation** a country, its people, and its government: *Rich nations should do more to help poor nations.*

**state** formal a country and its government – used to talk about a country as a political organization: *All the farms were owned by the state, rather than by the people who worked on them.*

**land** formal a country or place – used mostly in poetry and stories: *The people of America came from many lands.*

**2** **the country** = areas that are not near towns and cities: *He had a house in the country.*

**'country ,music** also **,country and 'western** noun

popular music from the southern and western U.S.: *country singers such as Garth Brooks and LeAnn Rimes*

**coun-try-side** /'kʌntri,said/ noun

land that is not near towns and cities: *We went for a drive through the Virginia countryside.*

**coun-ty** /'kaunti/ noun plural **counties**

a part of a state: *Orange County is one of the 58 counties in the state of California.*

**coup** /ku/ noun, formal

**1** also **coup d'état** /,ku der'tɑ/ an occasion when a group of people suddenly take control of their country by force: *The president was forced out of office in a military coup (=one done by soldiers).*

**2** an impressive achievement: *Winning the scholarship to Yale was quite a coup.*

**cou-ple** /'kʌpəl/ **Ac** noun

**1** **a couple** informal = two, or a small number: *I waited for a couple of hours and then tried calling again.*

**2** two people who are married or have a romantic relationship: *There was a young couple with a baby standing next to me.*



**cou·pon** /'kupan/ noun

a piece of paper that allows you to pay less money for something: *The coupon gives you 50 cents off a box of cereal.*

**cour·age** /'kæɪdʒ/ noun

the quality of being brave: *He didn't have the courage to tell her she was wrong.* **SYNONYM** bravery

—**courageous** /kə'reɪdʒəs/ adjective brave: *a courageous decision*

—**courageously** adverb

**cou·ri·er** /'kuriə/ noun

someone whose job is to take documents and packages directly to people

**course** /kɔrs/ noun

**1 of course a)** used when something is not surprising: *Of course, she was really upset when she found out he'd been hurt.* **b)**

used in order to say "yes" strongly: "Are you going to watch the game?" "Of course!"

**2 of course not** = used in order to say "no" strongly: "Do you mind if I'm a little late?" "Of course not."

**3** a class in a particular subject: *He took a computer course. | a course in English literature*

**4** one of the parts of a meal: *We had soup before the main course.*

**5** an area where golf is played or races are held: *He spends too much time on the golf course.*

**6** the planned direction taken by a boat or airplane to reach a place: *During the flight we had to change course to fly around a big storm. | The ship was blown off course (=in the wrong direction).*

**7 a course of action** formal = something you can do to deal with a situation: *The best course of action would be to tell the police.*

**8 in/during/over the course of something** formal = during a period of time or while something happens: *I learned a lot in the course of the interview.*

**court** /kɔrt/ noun

**1** a place where legal judgments are made, or the people there: *a court of law | He had to appear in court as a witness. | She told the court that she was sorry for lying. | They refused to pay him, so he took them to court (=made them be judged in a court).*

**2** an area made for playing a game such as

tennis or basketball: *The players were practicing on the court.*

**3** the place where a king or queen lives and works, or the people there

**cour·te·ous** /'kətiəs/ adjective, formal polite: *People should show respect and be courteous to each other.*

—**courteously** adverb

**cour·te·sy** /'kətsi/ noun plural

**courtesies**

polite behavior: *She didn't have the courtesy to apologize, even though it was her fault.*

**court·house** /'kɔrthaus/ noun

a building containing courts of law and government offices

**court-'martial** noun

an occasion when a soldier is judged by a military court: *The soldier is facing a court-martial for being drunk while on duty.*

—**court-martial** verb if a soldier is court-martialed, he or she is judged by a military court

**court·room** /'kɔrtrum/ noun

a room where judgments are made by a court of law: *Everyone in the courtroom waited to hear what the jury would decide.*

**court·yard** /'kɔrtyard/ noun

an open space surrounded by walls or buildings: *There are four houses built around a courtyard.*

**cous·in** /'kʌzən/ noun

a child of your aunt or uncle: *I usually see my cousins when we all go to my grandmother's house.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **family**

**cov·er** /'kʌvə/ verb

**1** also **cover up** to put something over something else: *She covered the child with a blanket.*

**2** to be over the whole of a surface or thing: *The ground was covered with snow.*

**3** to include or deal with something: *My literature class covered all the major writers.*

**4** to report an event for a newspaper or a television or radio program: *A team of reporters will be covering the event.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****cover for someone**

**1** to do someone's work because he or she is sick or is somewhere else: *I'll be covering for Sandra next week.*



**2** to protect someone by lying: *Can you cover for me? Just say I had an appointment.*

**cover something up**

to prevent people from discovering something bad: *She tried to cover up her mistake.*

**cover<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the outside of a book or magazine: *Her picture was on the cover of Vogue.*

**2** protection from attack or bad weather: *The soldiers ran for cover when the shooting started. | As the rain started, we took cover (=found protection) under a tree.*

**3** something that is used to cover something else: *a mattress cover*

**THESAURUS: cover**

**lid** a cover for a box, pot, or other container: *The water will boil faster if you put the lid on the pan.*

**top** the cover for a container or a pen: *He keeps leaving the top off the Coke bottle and putting it back in the fridge.*

**wrapper** paper or plastic that is around something you buy: *Don't throw the candy wrapper on the ground! Put it in the trash can.*

**cov·er·age** /'kʌvərɪdʒ/ noun

**1** the way a news event is reported: *He criticized the media coverage of the trial – he didn't think reporters were telling the whole story.*

**2** the protection your insurance gives you, so that you get money if you are injured, if something is stolen, etc.: *Some families have no health coverage (=insurance which pays for medical care).*

**cov·er·ing** /'kʌvərɪŋ/ noun

something that covers something else: *carpet and types of floor covering*

**cov·ers** /'kʌvəz/ plural noun

sheets, BLANKETS, etc. that cover you when you are in bed: *She lay in bed and pulled the covers up to her chin.*

**'cover-up** noun

an attempt to prevent the public from discovering the truth about something: *There was a cover-up of the governor's illegal actions by his staff.*

**COW** /kaʊ/ noun

a large female animal that is kept on farms for its milk or meat: *There were cows eating grass in the field.*

**cow·ard** /'kaʊəd/ noun

someone who is not brave at all: *The boys called him a coward because he wouldn't fight.*

—**cowardly** adjective, formal not brave: *He was too cowardly to complain.*

—**cowardice** /'kaʊədɪs/ noun, formal behavior that is not brave

**cow·boy** /'kaʊbɔɪ/ noun

a man whose job is to take care of cattle: *Two cowboys rode up to the ranch on their horses.*

**cow·girl** /'kaʊgɜːl/ noun

a woman whose job is to take care of cattle

**coy·o·te** /kaɪ'outi/ noun

a small wild dog that lives in North America and Mexico: *We heard the howl of a coyote.*

**co·zy** /'kouzi/ adjective

a cozy place is small, warm, and comfortable: *a cozy little house*

—**cozily** adverb

—**coziness** noun

**crab** /kræb/ noun

a sea animal with ten legs and a flat shell: *Crabs usually have large front claws.*

**crack<sup>1</sup>** /kræk/ verb

to break something so that it gets a line on its surface: *I just cracked my favorite coffee mug. | The plaster on the walls had cracked.*

—**cracked** adjective: *a cracked mirror*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**crack down**

to become more strict in dealing with a type of crime: *Police are cracking down on drunk drivers and making lots of arrests.*

**crack someone up** informal

to make someone laugh a lot: *She tells the funniest stories. She cracks me up.*

**crack<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a thin line where something is broken: *There were cracks in the walls.*

**2** a very narrow space between two things or two parts of something: *The letter had fallen through a crack between the floorboards.* **SYNONYM** gap



**3** a sudden short loud noise: *I heard the crack of a rifle.*

**4 take a crack at (doing) something** *informal* = to try to do something: *I thought I'd take a crack at writing some songs to see if I was any good.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hole**, **break**<sup>1</sup>

**crack-down** /'krækdaʊn/ *noun*

an attempt to stop a type of crime by being more strict: *Most people support the police crackdown on drug dealing.*

**crack-er** /'krækə/ *noun*

a thin hard piece of baked bread: *Do you want some cheese and crackers?*

**crack-le** /'krækəl/ *verb*

to make a lot of short sharp noises: *There was a fire crackling in the fireplace.*

—**crackle** *noun* a series of short sharp noises: *the crackle of gunfire*

**cra-dle** /'kreɪdl/ *noun*

a bed for a baby, which can move from side to side: *She rocked the cradle (=made it move from side to side), until the baby was asleep.*

**craft** /kræft/ *noun*

a skilled activity in which you make something using your hands: *You can learn crafts such as sewing and woodworking.*

**crafts-man** /'kræftsmən/ *noun plural*

**craftsmen** /'kræftsmən/

someone who is very skilled at making things with his or her hands: *The furniture was made by craftsmen from this area.*

—**craftsmanship** *noun* the skill of a craftsman

**craft-y** /'kræfti/ *adjective*

good at getting what you want using good plans or tricks: *I could tell from his crafty expression that he was planning something.*

—**craftily** *adverb*

**cram** /kræm/ *verb* crammed, cramming

**1** to force a lot of things or people into a small space: *I managed to cram all my stuff into the tiny closet.*

**2 be crammed with something** = to be very full of things or people: *The garage was crammed with junk.*

**cramp** /kræmp/ *noun*

a bad pain that you get when a muscle becomes tight: *One runner got leg cramps and had to leave the race.*

**cramped** /kræmpt/ *adjective*

a cramped room or building is too small: *She wanted to move out of her cramped apartment to a bigger place.*

**cran-ber-ry** /'kræn,beri/ *noun plural*

**cranberries**

a small sour red fruit that grows on a bush: *We always have cranberry sauce with the turkey on Thanksgiving.*

→ See picture on page A13

**crane** /kreɪn/ *noun*

**1** a tall machine with a long metal arm for lifting heavy things: *There were two cranes at the construction site moving heavy metal beams.*

**2** a water bird with very long legs

**crash**<sup>1</sup> /kræʃ/ *verb*

**1** if a car or airplane crashes, it has an accident and hits something hard: *The plane crashed in the mountains. | He crashed his car into a tree.*

**2** to hit something hard, making a loud noise: *A baseball crashed through our living room window.*

**3** if a computer crashes, it suddenly stops working: *My computer crashed and I lost all of my homework.*

**4 informal** to sleep at someone's house instead of going to your own home: *It's late – can I crash here tonight?*

**5 informal** if you crash, you go to sleep very quickly: *I was so tired, I came home at 8:30 and crashed.*

**crash**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** an accident in which a car or airplane hits something hard: *He was killed in a plane crash.*

**2** a sudden loud noise made by something falling or breaking: *The plate fell to the ground with a crash.*

**3** an occasion when the value of STOCKS suddenly falls by a large amount: *a stock market crash*

**crate** /kreɪt/ *noun*

a large box used for carrying fruit, bottles, etc.: *a crate of wine bottles*

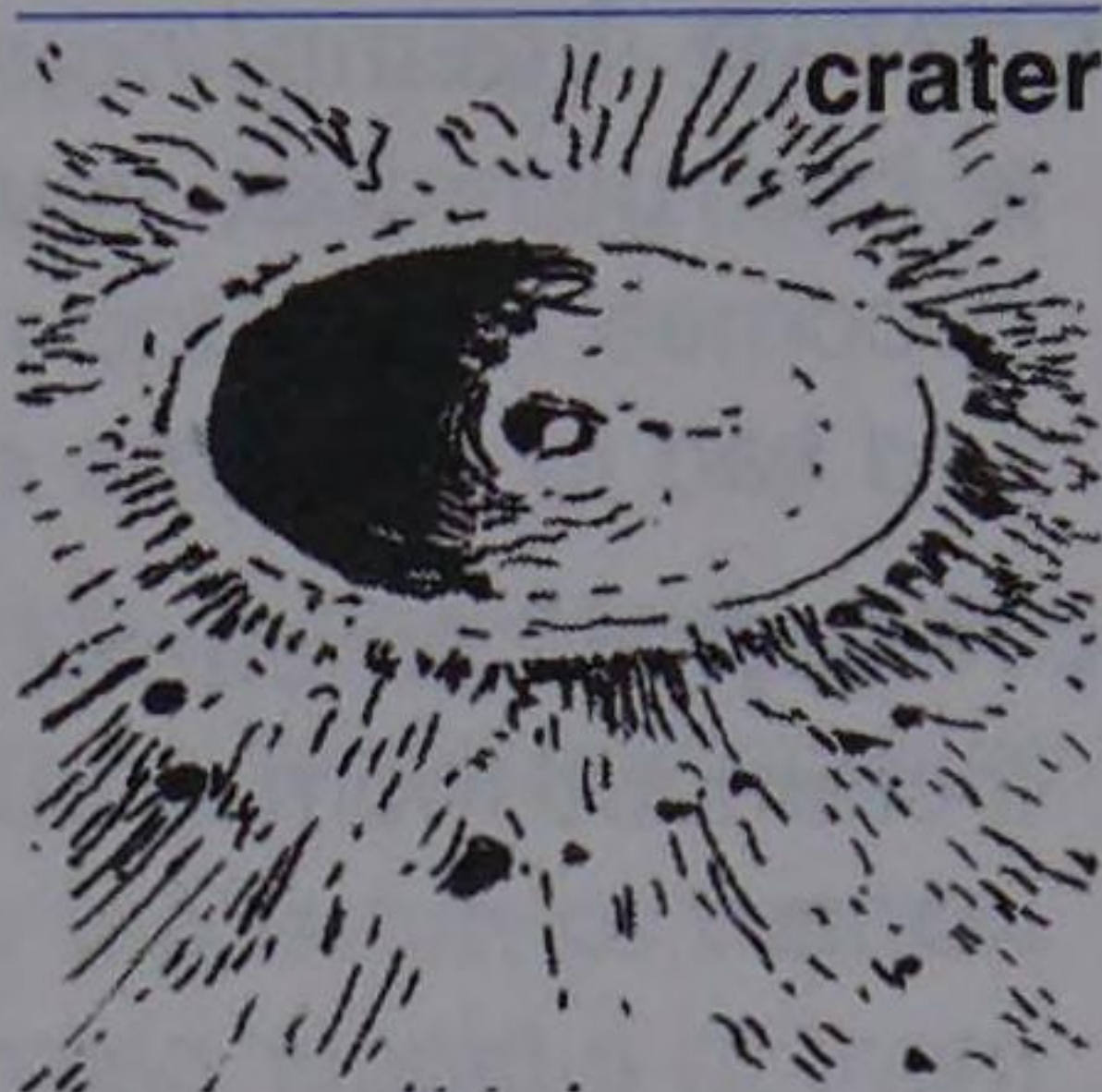


**cra·ter** /'kreɪtə/

noun

**1** a large round hole in the ground made by a bomb or a falling rock: *There are large round craters on the moon that you can see from earth.*

**2** the round hole at the top of a VOLCANO

**crawl**<sup>1</sup> /krɔl/ verb

**1** to move along on your hands and knees: *The baby crawled toward his father.*

**2** if an insect crawls somewhere, it moves there: *There were ants crawling all over the food.*

→ See picture on page A4

**crawl**<sup>2</sup> noun

**the crawl** = a way of swimming with your face down in which you move one arm up beside your head, and then the other

**cray-on** /'kreɪən/ noun

a stick of colored WAX that children use to draw pictures

**craze** /kreɪz/ noun

something that is very popular for a short time: *It's the latest fitness craze (=popular way of exercising).*

**cra·zy** /'kreɪzi/ adjective **crazier**, **craziest** informal

**1** not thinking or behaving in a sensible way: *He took all my money. I was crazy to trust him. | Whose crazy idea was it to go hiking in a snow storm?*

**2** **be crazy about someone or something** = to like or love someone or something very much: *He's crazy about his new girlfriend.*

**3** **like crazy** = very much or very quickly: *We've been working like crazy to get the job done.*

**4** informal mentally ill: *She went crazy and started hearing voices that weren't really there.*

**THESAURUS: crazy**

**mentally ill** having an illness of the mind that affects the way you behave: *a hospital for people who are mentally ill*

**insane** formal seriously mentally ill: *A doctor said that Smith was insane at the time of the crime.*

**nuts** informal crazy: *Are you nuts? That will never work.*

—**craziness** noun

**creak** /kriːk/ verb

if something such as a door or wooden floor creaks, it makes a long high noise when it is moved or pressed: *The old door creaked as it opened.*

—**creak** noun a long high noise that something makes when it is moved or pressed

—**creaky** adjective a creaky door, floor, etc. creaks: *the creaky wooden stairs*

→ See picture on page A22

**cream** /kriːm/ noun

**1** the thick part of milk, which is often used separately: *Do you take cream in your coffee?*

**2** a yellowish-white color

**3** a thick smooth substance that you put on your skin: *a jar of face cream*

—**cream** adjective having a yellowish-white color

**'cream cheese** noun

a type of soft white cheese: *I'll have a bagel with cream cheese, please.*

**creamy** /'kriːmi/ adjective

**1** having a yellowish-white color: *a creamy shirt*

**2** thick and smooth like cream, or containing cream: *a creamy sauce*

**crease** /kriːs/ noun

a deep line on a piece of paper where it has been folded, on your skin, etc.: *There were deep creases in the old woman's face.*

—**creased** adjective having creases

**cre·ate** /kri'eɪt/ **Ac** verb

to make something new: *How do I create a new file on my computer? | The changes to the system created a lot of problems.*

—**creator** noun the person who created something: *the creator of the TV series*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **create** verb
- **creator** noun
- **creative** adjective
- **creation** noun
- **creativity** noun
- **creatively** adverb

→ See Thesaurus box at **invent**



**cre·a·tion** /kri'eɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

**1** the act of creating something: *This project will lead to the creation of 300 new jobs.*

**2** something that has been created: *This dish is my own creation – I didn't have a recipe.*

**cre·a·tive** /kri'eɪtɪv/ **[Ac]** adjective

good at thinking of new ideas or making new things: *She's very creative. She designs all her own clothes.*

—**creatively** adverb

—**creativity** /,kri'eɪtɪvəti/ noun the quality of being creative

**crea·ture** /'kri:tʃə/ noun

an animal, fish, or insect: *I try not to hurt any living creature.*

**cre·den·tials** /krə'denʃəlz/ plural noun, formal

someone's achievements, which prove that he or she has the ability to do something: *Only students with excellent academic credentials are accepted.*

**cred·it¹** /'kredit/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** praise given to someone for doing something: *You have to give her credit for trying. I can't take all the credit – Nick helped a lot too.*

**2** a way of buying things in which you pay for them later: *We bought the furniture on credit because we didn't have enough cash.*

**3** a unit used to measure the amount of work completed at a college or university: *She needs 30 more credits to graduate.*

**4** an amount of money that is put into someone's bank or other account: *A credit of \$65 has been added to your account.*

ANTONYM **debit**

**credit²** verb

**1** to add money to a bank or other account: *The refund will be credited to your account by the end of the month.* **ANTONYM** **debit**

**2 credit someone with (doing) something** formal = to say that someone achieved something or has an ability: *James Watt is credited with inventing the steam engine.*

**'credit card** noun

a small plastic card that you use to buy things and pay for them later: *Can I pay with a credit card?*

**cred·i·tor** /'kreditə/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

a person or organization that you owe money to

**cred·its** /'kredits/ **[Ac]** plural noun

**the credits** = a list of all the people involved in making a television program or movie

**creek** /krik/ noun

a small river: *The boys went fishing in the creek.*

**creep** /krip/ verb crept /krept/

to move slowly and quietly: *I got up during the night and crept downstairs, trying not to wake anyone up.*

**creep·y** /'kripi/ adjective, informal

making you feel a little frightened: *"Dracula" is a really creepy movie.*

**cre·ma·to·ri·um** /,kri:mə'tɔ:riəm/ noun

plural **crematoriums** or **crematoria**

/,kri:mə'tɔ:riə/

a building where the bodies of dead people are burned

—**cremate** /'kri:meɪt/ verb to burn the dead body of a person

—**cremation** /kri:'meɪʃən/ noun the act or ceremony of burning a dead body

**cre·ole** /'kri:əʊl/ noun

a language that is a mixture of a European language and another language: *The language that they speak is a creole. It's a mixture of French and African languages.*

**crept** /krept/ verb

the past tense and past participle of CREEP

**cres·cent** /'kresənt/ noun, formal

a curved shape like a thin moon, that is pointed on the ends: *The beach was a crescent of white sand.*

→ See picture at **shape¹**

**crest** /krest/ noun, formal

the top of a hill or a wave: *The crests of the waves were bright white in the sun.*

**crev·ice** /'krevɪs/ noun, formal

a deep crack in rock, the ground, etc.: *His foot got stuck in a crevice as he was climbing the mountain.*

**crew** /kru/ noun

**1** the people who work on a ship or airplane: *The flight crew welcomed us onto the plane.*

**2 a film/camera/TV, etc. crew** = a group of people who work together making movies, programs, etc.: *A television camera crew*



was waiting outside the courthouse.

→ See Thesaurus box at **group**<sup>1</sup>

**crib** /kɪb/ noun

a baby's bed with high sides: *Timmy slept in a crib until he was two.*

**crick** /kɪk/ noun

a sharp pain in your neck or back: *I have a crick in my neck and it hurts when I turn my head.*

**cricket** /ˈkɪkɪt/ noun

**1** a small brown insect that jumps and makes a short high noise: *Outside at night, I could hear the crickets chirping* (=making this noise).

**2** a game in which you hit a ball and run between two sets of sticks

**cried** /kraɪd/ verb

the past tense and past participle of CRY

**cries** /kraɪz/

the plural of CRY

**crime** /kraɪm/ noun

**1** a bad act, that is not allowed by law: *Stealing is a crime.* | *You may go to jail if you commit a crime* (=do something that is not allowed by law).

#### THESAURUS: crime

##### Crimes that involve stealing things

**theft** the crime of stealing things: *Car theft is a serious problem in this area.*

**robbery** the crime of stealing something from a person, bank, store, etc.: *He went to prison for a bank robbery.*

**burglary** the crime of going into someone's home or a building in order to steal money or valuable things: *They stole all my grandmother's jewelry in the burglary.*

**shoplifting** the crime of taking things from a store without paying for them: *She was caught shoplifting in the grocery store.*

##### Crimes that involve attacking people

**assault** a crime in which someone uses violence against another person and hurts him or her: *After the fight, he was arrested for assault.*

**mugging** a crime in which someone is attacked and robbed in a public place: *Muggings are common, so you shouldn't walk by yourself.*

**murder** a crime in which someone is deliberately killed: *Lawyers are trying to prove that he committed the murder.*

**2** things that people do that are not allowed by law: *There's no crime in this neighborhood. We don't even lock our doors at night.*

**3 it's a crime** informal = used when saying that something that happens is not good: *It's a crime to throw away all that good food.*

**crim-i-nal**<sup>1</sup> /ˈkrɪmənəl/ adjective

relating to crime: *Her son went to jail because he had been involved in some criminal activity.* | *the criminal justice system* (=the system of police, courts, etc. that catches and punishes criminals)

**criminal**<sup>2</sup> noun

someone who does something that is not allowed by law: *These dangerous criminals should stay in jail.*

**crim-son** /ˈkrɪmzən/ noun, formal

a dark red color

—**crimson** adjective, formal having a crimson color: *The plant has crimson flowers.*

**cringe** /krɪndʒ/ verb

**1** to feel embarrassed by something or someone: *Sometimes Mom and Dad are so embarrassing that they make me cringe.*

**2** to move away from someone or something because you are frightened: *He raised his hand to hit the dog, and the dog cringed.*

**crip-ple** /ˈkrɪpəl/ verb

if an accident or disease cripples someone, he or she cannot walk anymore: *He fell off a horse, and it crippled him for life.*

**cri-sis** /ˈkraɪsɪs/ noun plural **crises** /ˈkraɪsɪz/

a time when a situation is very bad or dangerous and someone must deal with important problems: *The country is in an economic crisis: prices are rising and there are few jobs.*

**crisp** /krɪsp/ adjective

**1** crisp food feels firm when you bite it: *I like crisp green apples.*

**2** crisp air or weather is cold and dry: *In the mountains, the air was fresh and crisp.*

—**crispness** noun the quality of being crisp

**crisp-y** /ˈkrɪspi/ adjective

crispy food is pleasantly hard because it has been cooked or dried: *The chicken was crispy on the outside.*



**cri-te-ri-a** /kraɪ'tɪriə/ **[Ac]** plural noun

singular **criterion** /kraɪ'tɪriən/

a rule or standard that you use to make a decision or judgment: *The criteria for being able to vote are that you must be 18 years old and a citizen of the U.S.*

**crit-ic** /'krɪtɪk/ noun

**1** someone whose job is writing about music, movies, books, etc., and saying whether they are good or bad: *The critics loved the CD, and so did the public.*

**2** someone who criticizes someone or something: *He was unable to satisfy all of his critics.*

**crit-i-cal** /'krɪtɪkəl/ adjective

**1** if you are critical, you think or say that something is bad: *Mrs. Watts is always really critical of my work – she finds every mistake.*

**2** having an important effect on whether a situation goes well or badly: *The last year of high school is a critical time because students are preparing for college or work.*

**3 in critical condition** = very sick or very badly hurt, and likely to die: *She was taken to the hospital in critical condition.*

**crit-i-cally** /'krɪtɪkli/ adverb

**1** in a way that shows you think something is bad: *Mom looked at my new hair cut critically. "It's not the best cut," she said.*

**2 critically injured/wounded** = very badly injured and likely to die: *Two men were critically injured in the attack.*

**3 formal** used when emphasizing that something will have an important effect on whether a situation goes well or badly: *People are dying here, so food and medicine are critically important.*

**criticism** /'krɪtə'sɪzəm/ noun

**1** things that you say are bad about someone or something: *Her criticism of my singing really hurt my feelings.*

**2** things that someone writes about art, music, etc. to say whether it is good or bad: *a book of literary criticism*

**crit-i-cize** /'krɪtə'saɪz/ verb

to say that someone or something is bad: *Everyone criticized the movie because it was not like the book.* **ANTONYM** praise

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **criticize** verb
- **criticism** noun
- **critical** adjective
- **critic** noun

**croak** /krouk/ verb

when a FROG croaks, it makes a low sound

**croc-o-dile** /'krəkə'daɪl/ noun

a REPTILE with a long body, thick skin, and a long mouth with many sharp teeth, that eats meat and lives in or near water

**cro-cus** /'kroukəs/ noun

a small purple, yellow, or white flower that appears in early spring

**crois-sant** /krwa'sant/ noun

a type of small soft bread in a curved shape, that people eat for breakfast: *I'll have coffee and a croissant.*

→ See picture at **bread**

**crook** /kru:k/ noun, informal

a person who takes people's money in a dishonest way: *The car salesman was a crook. He told me the car was worth \$5,000, but it was only worth \$1,500.*

**crook-ed** /'kru:kɪd/ adjective

**1** not straight: *Do you think the picture over there looks crooked (=is hanging in a way that is crooked)?*

**2 informal** not honest in a way that involves taking other people's money: *Two crooked businessmen were put in jail for stealing money from their own company.*

**crop** /krap/ noun

**1** a plant such as corn, wheat, etc. that farmers grow: *Most of the land is used for growing crops.*

**2 a good/big/bumper, etc. crop** = a large amount of corn, wheat, fruit, etc. that is produced in one year: *There was a bumper crop of apples last year and there were plenty of apples in the stores.*

**cross<sup>1</sup>** /kros/ verb

**1** to go from one side of a road, river, etc. to the other: *Be careful when you cross the street.*

**2 cross your legs/arms** = to put one leg or arm over the other one: *Jack sat down and crossed his legs.*

**3 cross your mind** = if something crosses your mind, you think about it: *It suddenly*



*crossed my mind that she might be sick or hurt, and I started to worry.*

**4 cross the line** = to behave in a way that is beyond the limits of acceptable behavior: *The police crossed the line when they started hitting the prisoner.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

#### cross something off (something)

to draw a line through something on a list because you have bought it, done it, etc.: *I bought bananas yesterday, so cross them off the list.*

#### cross something out

to draw a line through something you have written because it is not correct: *If you make a mistake, cross it out.*

#### cross<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** an object that is used as a symbol of the Christian religion, with one part going across the other in the shape of a "t": *There was a gold cross on her necklace.*

**2 a cross between something and something** = something that is a mixture of one thing and another: *Her expression was a cross between pain and anger.*

#### cross-ex'amine verb

to ask someone a lot of questions in a court of law after someone else has already asked questions: *Next, his lawyer cross-examined the first witness.*

#### cross-ing /'krɒsɪŋ/ noun

**1** a place where a railroad crosses a road: *Every railroad crossing is marked by lights and a warning bell.*

**2** an act of crossing a border: *They built a wall on the border where the most illegal crossings happen.*

**3** a place where you can cross a road, river, border, etc. safely or legally: *a pedestrian crossing (=where people can walk across a road)*

#### cross-leg-ged /'krɒs ,legɪd/ adjective, adverb

if you sit cross-legged, you sit with each foot resting on the opposite leg: *We sat cross-legged on the floor.*

#### cross-'reference noun

a note in a book telling you to look on another page for more information

#### cross-roads /'krɒsroudz/ noun plural crossroads

a place where one road goes across another: *Stop at the crossroads, and look left and right.*

#### cross 'section also cross-section noun

a group of people or things that includes a variety of different types: *Our research was based on a cross section of people of all ages.*

#### cross-walk /'krɒswɔ:k/ noun

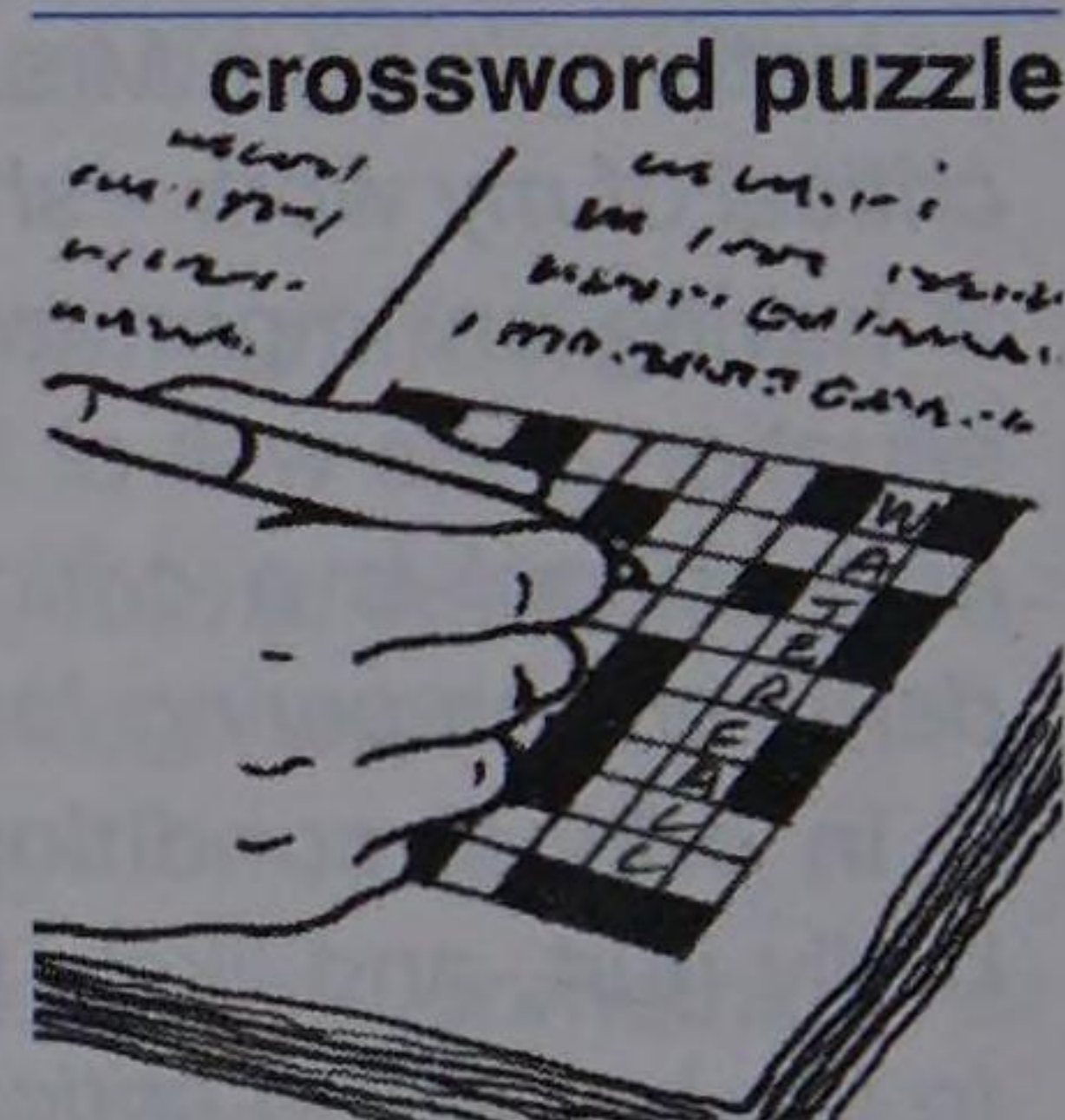
a place on a street that is marked with lines, so cars stop to let people cross: *Stay in the crosswalk when you cross the street.*

→ See picture on page A26

#### cross-word puz-zle

/'krɒswɜ:d ,pʌzəl/ also crossword noun

a game in which you write the correct words into a pattern of squares: *I always do the crossword puzzle in the newspaper.*



#### crouch /kraʊtʃ/ also crouch down verb

to bend your knees and lean forward, so your body is close to the ground: *Tom quickly crouched down, so that they would not see him.*

→ See picture on page A4

#### crow /krou/ noun

a large black bird with a loud cry

#### crowd /kraʊd/ noun

**1** a large group of people: *A crowd gathered to watch the parade.*

**2 informal** a group of friends or people who are similar: *I went to the party with Brian and the rest of our crowd.*

—**crowd** verb to come together in a large group: *Thousands of baseball fans crowded into the stadium.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group**<sup>1</sup>

#### crowd-ed /'kraʊdɪd/ adjective

full of people, cars, etc.: *In the summer, the streets are crowded with tourists.*



**crown** /kraʊn/ *noun*

a circle of gold and jewels that a king or queen wears on his or her head: *The king wore a gold crown on his head.*

—**crown** *verb* to put a crown on the head of a new king or queen in a special ceremony: *Louis was crowned king of France.*

**cru·cial** /'kruʃəl/ **Ac** *adjective, formal*  
very important: *Eating fruits and vegetables is crucial to staying healthy.*

—**crucially** *adverb, formal*

→ See Thesaurus box at **important**

**cru·ci·fix** /'krusə,fiks/ *noun*

an object that shows Jesus Christ hanging on a CROSS: *There was a large crucifix at the front of the church.*

**crude** /krud/ *adjective*

**1** offensive or rude, especially because of talking about sex: *crude sexual language*

**2** *formal* not good or not of a high standard: *Thirty-five years ago, computer technology was crude.* **ANTONYM** **sophisticated**

**3** *also* '**crude oil** oil that is in its natural condition, as it comes out of the ground: *Saudi Arabia exports a lot of crude oil.*

—**crudely** *adverb, formal* if something is crudely drawn, built, etc., it is done without much skill and is not of a high standard: *Their houses were simple and crudely built.*

**cru·el** /'kruəl/ *adjective*

**1** a cruel person is very unkind, or hurts people or animals: *I hate people who are cruel to animals.*

**2** a cruel disease, punishment, etc. makes people suffer a lot: *The punishment seemed too cruel for the crime.*

—**cruelly** *adverb*: *The dog had been cruelly treated and was now afraid of people.*

—**cruelty** *noun* the act of hurting people or animals: *The military ruler was well-known for his cruelty.*

**cruise**<sup>1</sup> /kruz/ *noun*

a vacation on a large boat traveling on the ocean: *Have you ever been on a cruise in the Caribbean?*

**cruise**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to move at a steady speed in a car, airplane, or boat: *We cruised along at 65 miles per hour.*

**crumb** /krʌm/ *noun*

a very small piece of bread, cake, etc.: *She finished the cake and brushed the crumbs off her skirt.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **piece**

**crum·ble** /'krʌmbəl/ *verb*

if something very old or dry crumbles, it breaks into pieces: *Many of the old stone walls are crumbling.*

—**crumbly** *adjective* breaking into small pieces easily: *Add a little water to stop the dough from becoming crumbly.*

**crum·ple** /'krʌmpəl/ *also crumple up*

*verb*

to crush paper or cloth and make it smaller: *Charlie crumpled the paper into a ball and threw it away.*

**crunch**<sup>1</sup> /krʌntʃ/ *noun*

**1** a noise that sounds like teeth biting something hard, or feet on snow: *She bit into the carrot with a loud crunch.*

**2** the time when a situation is so bad that you must do something to fix it or fail completely: *We're coming to the crunch at the end of the semester when we have to start studying really hard to pass our final exams.*

**crunch**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to bite food that is hard so that it makes a noise: *Rob crunched an apple.*

**2** to make a noise like someone walking on snow or rocks: *I heard boots crunching on the snow.*

—**crunchy** *adjective* crunchy food is firm and makes a noise when you bite it: *Vegetables should be fresh and crunchy.*

→ See picture on page A22

**crush** /krʌʃ/ *verb*

to push down hard on something and break or damage it: *The tree fell and crushed the car.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **press**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A14

**crust** /krʌst/ *noun*

**1** the outer part of bread, a PIE, etc.: *Cut the crust off the bread if it's burnt. I thick pizza crust*

**2** the earth's crust = the hard layer on the surface of the Earth



**crutch** /krʌtʃ/ noun

a special stick that you can put under your arm to help you walk: *He was on crutches (=using crutches) after he broke his leg.*

**cry**<sup>1</sup> /kraɪ/ verb cried, third person singular cries

**1** if you cry, tears come out of your eyes: *Sad movies always make me cry.*

**THESAURUS: cry**

**sob** to cry a lot in a noisy way: *When my mother died, my dad just sobbed.*

**be in tears** to be crying: *We were all in tears as we said goodbye.*

**weep** formal to cry a lot because you feel very sad: *My mother wept quietly as we drove away.*

**2** also **cry out** to shout something loudly: *"Wait for me!" she cried. | The boy cried out for help.*

**3** to make a loud sound because you are uncomfortable, frightened, etc.: *The baby's crying again.*

**cry**<sup>2</sup> noun plural cries

**1** a loud sound you make when you are frightened, hurt, happy, etc.: *She gave a sudden cry of pain.*

**2** a loud shout: *There was a cry of "Stop, thief!"*

**3** a sound that some animals or birds make: *Outside, I could hear the cry of seagulls.*

**cryptic** /'kriptɪk/ adjective, formal  
hard to understand: *The textbook was full of cryptic diagrams that the teacher didn't explain.*

**crys-tal** /'krɪstl/ noun

**1** high-quality glass: *The best wine glasses are made of crystal.*

**2** a small shape that forms when a liquid becomes solid: *It was so cold that there were ice crystals on the window.*

**cub** /kʌb/ noun

the baby of some wild animals, for example a lion: *The mother tiger had four cubs.*

**cube** /kyub/ noun

**1** a square object with six equal sides: *He put an ice cube in each glass.*

**2** the **cube of something** = the number you get when you multiply a number by itself twice: *The cube of 3 is 27.*

—**cube** verb if you cube a number, you

multiply it by itself twice: *2 cubed is 8 (=2 x 2 x 2 = 8).*

→ See picture at **shape**<sup>1</sup>

**cu-bic** /'kyubɪk/ adjective

a **cubic inch/centimeter/yard, etc.** = a measurement of the amount of space inside something, which you get by multiplying its length by its height by its width: *The box is two feet high by three feet long by four feet wide, so it measures 24 cubic feet.*

**cu-bi-cle** /'kyubɪkəl/ noun

a small separate area in a room: *The office was divided into small cubicles, with a desk in each one.*

**cu-cum-ber** /'kyu,kʌmbə/ noun

a long thin green vegetable, that you usually eat uncooked: *a tomato and cucumber salad*

→ See picture on page A12

**cud-dle** /'kʌdl/

verb

to hold someone close to you, because you love them: *Robbie's mom cuddled him on the couch.*

—**cuddly** adjective  
soft, warm, and nice to hold: *a cuddly puppy*

**cuddle**



**cue** /kyu/ noun

a signal that it is time for someone to do something: *The actors were waiting for their cue to come on stage.*

**cuff**<sup>1</sup> /kʌf/ noun

**1** the end of a sleeve on a shirt, dress, etc., where it fastens: *The button on my cuff has fallen off.*

**2** a narrow piece of cloth that is turned up at the bottom of your pants

**3** **cuffs** informal = another word for HAND-CUFFS

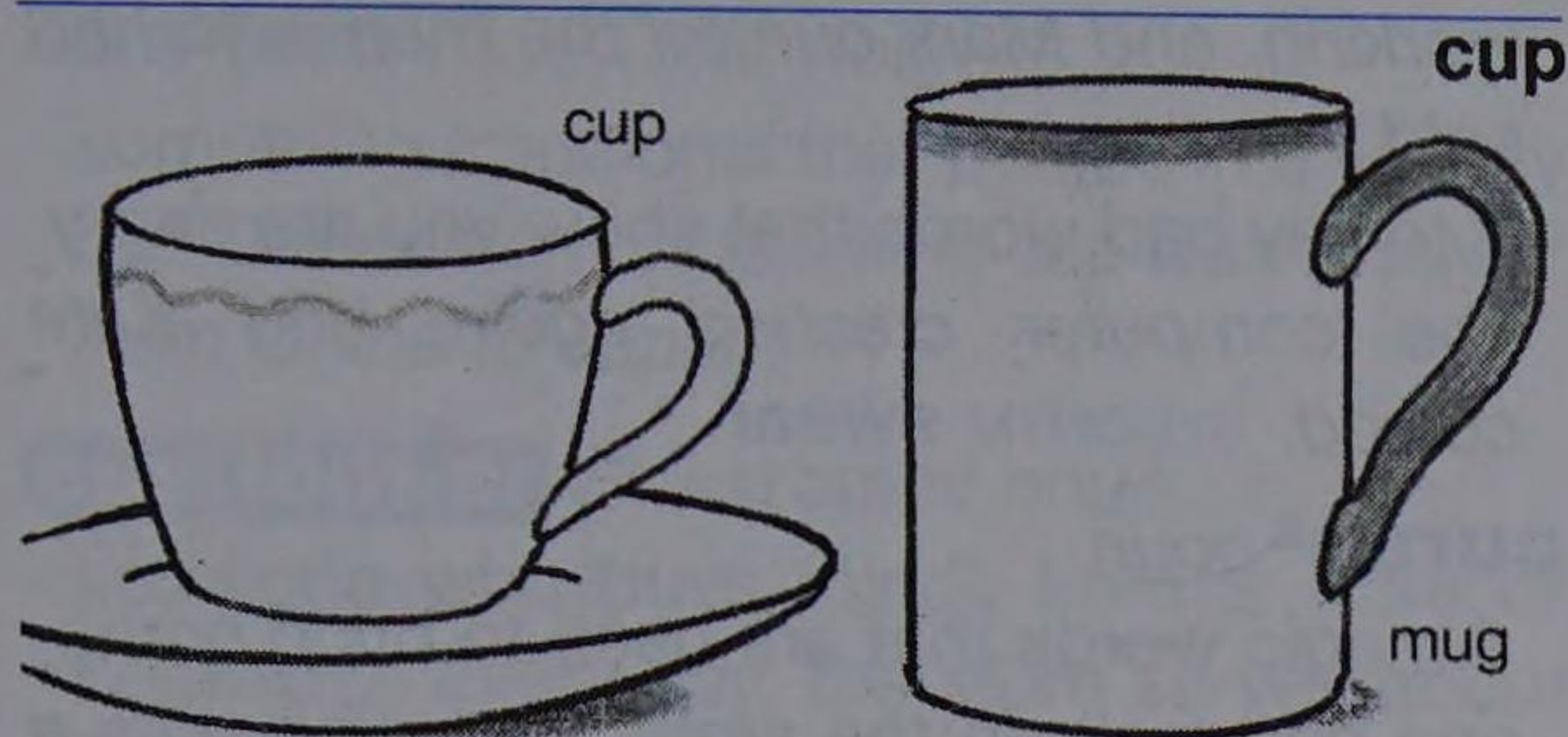
**cuff**<sup>2</sup> verb, informal

to put HANDCUFFS on someone's hands: *Police cuffed the man's hands behind his back and put him in the police car.*

**cul-prit** /'kʌlprɪt/ noun, formal

someone who has done something wrong: *There was a burglary last night, and police are still looking for the culprit.*



**cult<sup>1</sup>** /kʌlt/ *noun*

a small religious group with strange or extreme ideas and a strong leader who controls the group: *The members of the cult always dressed in red.*

**cult<sup>2</sup>** *adjective*

a cult movie, person, etc. is very popular among a small group of people: *The strange movie quickly became a cult favorite.*

**cul-ti-vate** /ˈkʌltəˌveɪt/ *verb, formal*

**1** to grow crops and plants by preparing the land for them: *Most of the farmers cultivate rice.*

**2** **cultivate a skill/relationship/reputation, etc.** = to work hard to develop a skill, relationship, etc.: *He tries to cultivate relationships with professors who can help him in his career.*

—**cultivation** /ˌkʌltəˈveɪʃən/ *noun* the act of growing crops by preparing the land for them: *The wet black soil is perfect for cultivation of many crops.*

**cul-tur-al** /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** relating to a society and its way of life: *There are big cultural differences between the U.S. and Japan.*

**2** relating to art, literature, music, etc.: *New York is the cultural center of the eastern U.S.*

**cul-ture** /ˈkʌltʃər/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** the ideas and way of life of a society: *I love traveling and meeting people from different cultures.*

**2** art, literature, music, etc.: *If you like culture, you should live in the city.*

WORD FAMILY → **cultural** *adjective*

**'culture ,shock** *noun*

a feeling you sometimes get when you visit a foreign country and everything seems strange and confusing: *American travelers to Asia sometimes suffer from culture shock because there are so many differences.*

**cup** /kʌp/ *noun*

**1** a small, round container with a handle, that you use for drinking tea, coffee, etc.: *Would you like a cup of coffee (=some coffee in a cup)?*

**2** a measure of eight FLUID OUNCES, used in cooking: *Stir in a cup of flour.*

**3** also **Cup** a prize for winning in a competition, shaped like a bowl: *The Americans were expected to win the Gold Cup.*

**cup-board** /ˈkʌbəd/ *noun*

a piece of furniture with doors and shelves: *There wasn't much food in the kitchen cupboard.* **SYNONYM** **cabinet**

→ See picture on page A9

**cup-cake** /ˈkʌpkɛɪk/ *noun*

a small cake for one person

**curb** /kɜːb/ *noun*

the edge of a SIDEWALK, where it joins the road: *A big black car was parked at the curb.*

**cure** /kyʊr/ *verb*

**1** to make an illness better: *Many types of cancer can be cured.*

**2** to find a way to stop something bad from happening: *It is impossible to cure the traffic problems in the downtown area.*

—**cure** *noun* a way of making an illness go away: *Scientists have still not found a cure for the disease.*

—**curable** *adjective* if an illness is curable, it is possible to make it go away: *The infection is curable.*

**cur-few** /ˈkəfyu/ *noun*

**1** the time by which parents tell their children they must be home at night: *My curfew is 9:00 on school nights.*

**2** the time after which the government makes people stay indoors: *There was more fighting, and the army imposed a curfew from 10 p.m. to 5 a.m.*

**cu-ri-ous** /ˈkyuriəs/ *adjective*

wanting to know or learn about something: *Young kids are naturally curious about the world and eager to learn.*

—**curiously** *adverb*: *"What do you mean?" she asked, looking at him curiously.*

—**curiosity** /ˌkyuriˈasəti/ *noun* the feeling of being curious: *Jack's eyes were wide with curiosity.*



**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **curious** adjective
- **curiously** adverb
- **curiosity** noun

**curl**<sup>1</sup> /kɜːl/ noun

a piece of hair that grows in the shape of a circle: *The little girl had long blond curls.*

—**curly** adjective curly hair has many pieces that grow in the shape of circles: *My hair's straight, but Rosa's is curly.*

**curl**<sup>2</sup> verb

to make straight hair hang in the shape of a circle: *Do you think I should curl my hair?*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**curl up**

to lie or sit with your arms and legs close to your body: *She curled up under a blanket to watch TV.*

**curl-er** /'kɜːlə/ noun

a small metal or plastic tube for making hair curl

**cur-ren-cy** /'kɜːnsi/ **[Ac]** noun plural **cur-rencies** formal

the type of money that a country uses: *The U.S. currency is the dollar.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**cur-rent**<sup>1</sup> /'kɜːnt/ adjective, formal

the current situation, year, president, etc. is the one that there is now: *Who is the current president of the United States (=who is president now)?*

**current**<sup>2</sup> noun

a flow of electricity, water, or air: *A strong current pulled the swimmers out into the ocean. | The electric current flows along these wires.*

**cur-rent-ly** /'kɜːntli/ adverb, formal

at this time: *The school currently has about 2,000 students, an increase from last year.*

**SYNONYM** now

→ See Thesaurus box at **now**<sup>1</sup>

**cur-ric-u-lum** /kə'rikyələm/ noun plural

**curricula** /kə'rikyələ/ or **curriculums**

formal

all of the subjects that are taught at a school, college, etc.: *Science is an important part of the school's curriculum.*

**curse**<sup>1</sup> /kɜːs/ verb

**1** to say or think bad and angry things about someone or something: *The car stopped*

*working, and Mark cursed the man who had sold it to him.*

**2** to say bad words that show you are angry: *The computer crashed again, and Kate cursed.* **SYNONYM** swear

**curse**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** magic words that are used to bring someone bad luck: *In the story, the witch puts a curse on the girl and says she will always be poor.*

**2** a bad word or words that you say when you are angry: *Tom dropped his glass and whispered a curse.*

**cur-sor** /'kɜːsə/ noun

a shape you can move on a computer screen that shows where you are writing: *Place the cursor at the place on the screen where you want to type.*

→ See picture on page A20

**cur-tain** /'kɜːtn/ noun

a piece of cloth that you can pull across a window, stage, etc.: *The sun was shining in my eyes, so I closed the curtains.*

→ See picture on page A10

**curve**<sup>1</sup> /kɜːv/ noun

a line that bends like part of circle: *The driver was going too fast when he came to a curve in the road, and the car rolled over.*

**curve**<sup>2</sup> verb

to bend or move in a curve: *The road curves around to the right.* **SYNONYM** bend

—**curved** adjective bending in a curve: *I drew a curved line on the page.*

**cush-ion** /'kʊʃən/ noun

a bag filled with soft material that you sit on or rest against: *Dad lay back against the sofa cushions.*

→ See picture on page A8

**cus-to-di-an** /kə'stɔːdiən/ noun

someone whose job is taking care of a public building: *The school's custodian often has to clean up the children's messes.*

**SYNONYM** janitor

**cus-to-dy** /'kʌstədi/ noun, formal

**1** the legal right to take care of a child: *They divorced, and Janet got custody of the kids.*

**2** in/into custody = if someone is in custody, they are in prison until they go to court: *The police took two men into custody after the shooting.*



**cus·tom** /'kʌstəm/ noun

something traditional that people in a society do: *The custom of drinking tea was brought from China to Japan.*

**cus·tom·er** /'kʌstəmər/ noun

someone who buys things from a store or company: *Every day, the store serves about 800 customers.*

→ See picture on page A15

**cus·tom·ize** /'kʌstəmaɪz/ verb

to change something to make it more useful for a particular person or purpose: *You can customize the T-shirt by adding your own picture.*

**cus·toms** /'kʌstəmz/ plural noun

a place where your bags can be searched when you leave or enter a country: *All travelers' baggage must go through customs.*

→ See picture on page A30

**cut<sup>1</sup>** /kʌt/ verb cut, cutting

**1** to divide something into pieces using a knife or scissors: *Do you want me to cut the cake? | First, cut the paper in half (=into two pieces).*

**THESAURUS: cut****Cutting food**

**chop** to cut meat or vegetables into pieces: *Chop the onion and add it to the pan.*

**slice** to cut bread, meat, or vegetables into thin pieces: *She sliced tomatoes for the salad.*

**peel** to cut the outside part off an apple, potato, etc.: *Peel the potatoes and boil them.*

**carve** to cut pieces from a large piece of cooked meat: *Dad started carving the turkey.*

**grate** to cut cheese, vegetables, etc. into very small pieces using a special tool with holes in it, that you rub the food against: *Grate the cheese over the macaroni.*

**Cutting other things**

**saw** to cut wood, using a saw (=a tool with a row of sharp points): *I sawed the board in half.*

**chop** to cut something such as a tree into pieces, using an ax: *Joe was chopping wood for the fire.*

**mow** to cut grass using a special machine: *I need to mow the lawn.*

**trim** to cut off a small amount of something to make it look neater, for example hair or a bush: *I got my hair trimmed on Saturday.*

**2** to hurt yourself with a knife or something else that is sharp: *I cut my finger on some broken glass.*

**3** to make hair, grass, etc. shorter: *I'm going to get my hair cut (=by a hairdresser).*

**4** also **cut back/down (on) something** to reduce the amount of something: *You need to cut the amount of fat you eat. | Try to cut back on the hours you work, and get some rest.*

**5** to remove writing or a picture from a computer document: *Now cut and paste the picture into the other document (=cut it and move it into the other document).*

**PHRASAL VERBS****cut something down**

to cut a tree and make it fall to the ground: *Too many trees are being cut down.*

**cut something off**

**1** to stop the supply of electricity, water, etc. to a building: *For three days our electricity was cut off.*

**2** to remove something from the main part with a knife or scissors: *Cut off all the dead flowers.*

**3** if you are cut off when you are on the telephone, the telephone stops working: *I was talking to Mom on the phone, and I got cut off.*

**cut something out**

**1** to remove something from inside something with a knife or scissors: *The kids were cutting pictures out of the magazine.*

**2** to stop doing or eating something: *I'm trying to cut out chocolate.*

**3 cut it/that out!** informal = used for telling someone to stop doing something that is annoying you: *You're making too much noise. Cut it out!*

**cut something up**

to cut something into smaller pieces: *Can you cut up some onions?* **SYNONYM chop up**

**cut<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** an injury you get if something sharp cuts your skin: *She had a deep cut on her arm.*



**2** a hole in something that you make with scissors, a knife, etc.: *Make a cut in the paper.*

**3** *formal* the act of reducing the amount or number of something: *Everyone had to take a cut in pay, because the company was losing money.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **injury**, **reduce**

**cute** /kyut/ *adjective*

**1** if a baby, small child, or animal is cute, they are attractive to look at: *That little boy is so cute!*

**2** sexually attractive: *That girl is really cute. Are you going to talk to her?*

—**cuteness** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **beautiful**

**cut-ler-y** /'kʌtləri/ *noun, formal*

knives, forks, and spoons **SYNONYM** **silver-ware**

**cy-ber-space** /'saɪbəˌspeɪs/ *noun*

the imaginary place that computer messages go to when they travel between computers: *The email invitation must be lost in cyberspace.*

**cycle** /'saɪkəl/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a set of events that happen again and again in a pattern: *Life is a cycle of birth and death. | This class is studying the life cycle of butterflies.*

—**cyclic** /'saɪklɪk/ *also* **cyclical** *adjective, formal* happening again and again in a pattern: *the cyclical nature of the seasons*

**cy-cling** /'saɪklɪŋ/ *noun*

the activity or sport of riding a bicycle: *My brother likes cycling better than baseball.*

→ See picture on page A24

**cy-clist** /'saɪklɪst/ *noun*

someone who rides a bicycle, especially in races: *More than 800 cyclists will compete in the 100 mile race.*

**cyl-in-der** /'saɪləndə/ *noun*

**1** a long round shape or object, like a tube: *Cans are cylinders.*

→ See picture at **shape**<sup>1</sup>

**2** a part in an engine or machine, shaped like a tube: *The engine has six cylinders.*

→ See picture on page A28

—**cylindrical** /sə'lɪndrɪkəl/ *adjective, formal* having a long round shape, like a tube: *The castle has four cylindrical towers.*

**cym-bal** /'sɪmbəl/ *noun*

a musical instrument made of thin metal, that you hit to make a sound

→ See picture on page A21

**cyn-ic** /'saɪnɪk/ *noun, formal*

someone who never believes that people are good or that good things will happen: *Some cynics say that people only care about money.*

—**cynical** *adjective, formal* a cynical person is a cynic: *Since her divorce she's been very cynical about men.*



# D d

## **D** /di/ noun

**1** a **GRADE** that you get on a test or in a class for doing work that is not very good: *You got a D on the test – you'll have to study harder next time.*

**2** the second note in the musical **SCALE** of C, or the musical **KEY** based on this note

## **'d** /d/ verb

**1** the short form of “had”: *He'd eaten all the cake before anyone else had a piece.*

**2** the short form of “would”: *I'd love to come to the party.*

## **dab**<sup>1</sup> /dæb/ noun

a small amount of something: *I like pasta with a dab of butter.*

## **dab**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** also **dab at** to lightly touch something several times, especially with a cloth: *She started to cry and dabbed at her eyes with a tissue.*

**2** to put a small amount of something on something else: *She dabbed some sunscreen on her cheeks.*

## **dachs·hund** /'dʌkshʊnt/ noun

a small dog with short legs and a long body

## **dad** /dæd/ noun, informal

another word for **FATHER**: *Mom and dad bought me a new computer. | Dad, can I borrow \$20?*

## **dad·dy** /'dædi/ noun plural **daddies**

a word for **FATHER** used by small children: *Where's Daddy?*

## **daf·fo·dil** /'dæfə,dɪl/ noun

a yellow flower that opens in the spring

## **dag·ger** /'dægə/ noun

a short knife used as a weapon **SYNONYM** knife

## **dai·ly** /'deɪli/ adverb, adjective

every day: *Try to exercise daily. | Do you get a daily newspaper?*

## **dair·y** /'deəri/ noun plural **dairies**

**1** a building where milk is kept and butter and cheese are made: *The dairy produces several types of cheese.*

**2** also **dairy products** foods made from milk, such as butter, cheese, and yoghurt: *She doesn't eat butter or other dairy products.*

## **dai·sy** /'deɪzi/ noun plural **daisies**

a small white flower with a yellow circle in the middle: *The field was covered with daisies.*

## **dal·ma·tian** /dæl'meɪʃən/ noun

a white dog with black spots

## **dam**



## **dam** /dæm/ noun

a wall that is built to keep back the water in a river or the ocean: *The dam broke and water from the river flooded the town.*

—**dam** verb to stop a river from flowing by building a dam

## **dam·age**<sup>1</sup> /'dæmɪdʒ/ noun

harm that breaks or destroys something: *The floods caused a lot of damage.*

## **damage**<sup>2</sup> verb

to harm something, so that it is broken or destroyed: *Her car was badly damaged in the accident.*

—**damaging** adjective causing harm to something: *These chemicals are damaging to the environment.*

## **damp** /dæmp/ adjective

a little wet: *His hair was still damp from the shower.*

—**dampness** noun

## **damp·en** /'dæmpən/ verb, formal

to make something a little wet: *She went to the sink to dampen the cloth.*

## **dance**<sup>1</sup> /dæns/ verb

to move your body to music: *Tom was dancing with a pretty girl. | People at the party were dancing to Brazilian music.*



—**dancer** *noun* someone who dances: *She's a really good dancer.*

**dance**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** an act of dancing: *He did a little dance to the music.*

**2** a party where people dance: *Are you going to the school dance?*

**dan·de·li·on** /'dændə,laɪən/ *noun*

a small yellow flower that grows wild: *He used weed killer on the lawn to get rid of all the dandelions.*

**dan·druff** /'dændrəf/ *noun*

dry skin that comes off your head in very small white pieces: *She bought a new shampoo to stop her dandruff.*

**dan·ger** /'deɪndʒə/ *noun*

a possibility that something bad will happen or you will be hurt: *The sign said "Danger of falling rocks." | Claire was scared – she knew she was in danger.*

#### THESAURUS: danger

**risk** the chance that something bad may happen: *Smoking increases the risk of lung cancer.*

**hazard** *formal* something that may be dangerous or cause accidents, problems, etc.: *The sidewalks were so broken up that they had become a safety hazard.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **danger** *noun*
- **dangerous** *adjective*
- **dangerously** *adverb*
- **endanger** *verb*

**dan·ger·ous** /'deɪndʒərəs/ *adjective*

likely to harm someone: *Police say that the man has a gun and is dangerous.*

—**dangerously** *adverb*: *She was driving dangerously fast.*

**dan·gle** /'dæŋɡəl/ *verb*

to hang down and swing from side to side: *A bunch of keys dangled from his belt.*

**Dan·ish**<sup>1</sup> /'deɪnɪʃ/ *adjective*

from Denmark: *a Danish scientist*

—**Dane** *noun* someone from Denmark

**Danish**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

the language spoken in Denmark

**dare** /der/ *verb*

**1 dare someone to do something** = to say that someone must do something to show they are not afraid: *I dare you to jump!*

**2 not dare (to) do something** *formal* = to not be brave enough to do something: *Craig didn't dare tell his father what had happened.*

**3 don't you dare (do something)** *informal* = said when telling someone that they must not do something: *Don't you dare be late!*

**dar·ing** /'derɪŋ/ *adjective, formal*

if something you do is daring, it is brave or dangerous: *They made a daring escape over the mountains.*

**dark**<sup>1</sup> /dark/ *adjective*

**1** without light: *No one was home and the house was dark.* **ANTONYM** **light**

**2** not light in color: *My favorite color is dark blue. | She has dark hair.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **dark** *adjective*
- **dark** *noun*
- **darken** *verb*
- **darkness** *noun*

**dark**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a place or time with no light: *A lot of kids are scared of the dark. | I try to get home before dark (=before night begins).*

**dark·en** /'darkən/ *verb, formal*

to become dark: *The sky darkened and rain began to fall.*

**dark·ness** /'darknəs/ *noun*

the state of having no light: *He couldn't see his own hand in the darkness of the cave.*

**dar·ling** /'darlɪŋ/ *adjective*

loved a lot, or easy to love: *He was a darling little boy.*

—**darling** *noun* used when speaking to someone you love: *Welcome home, darling.*

**darn** /darn/ *verb*

to repair a hole in socks or other clothes by sewing: *I darned that hole in your sock.*

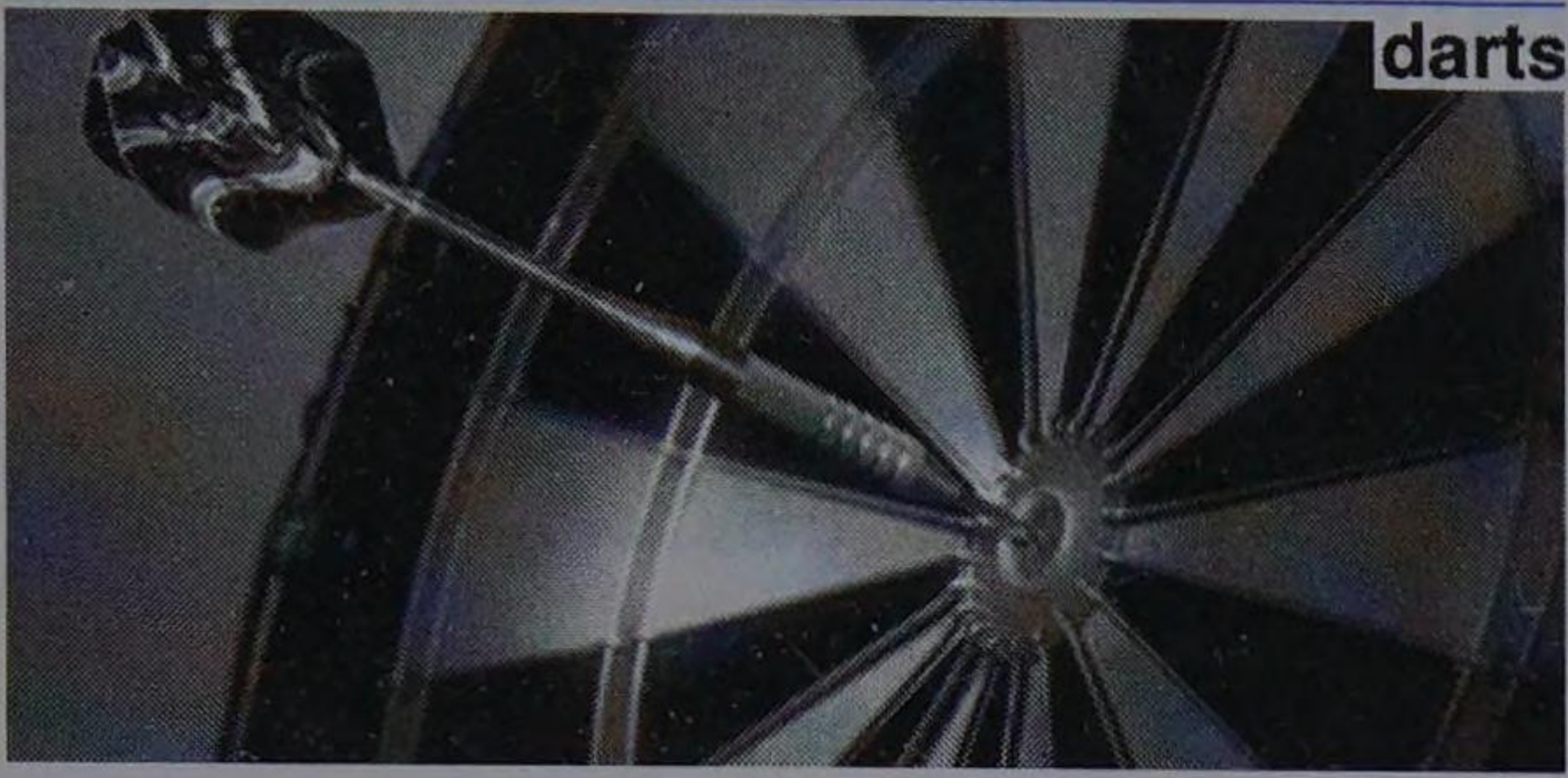
**dart** /dart/ *verb*

to move suddenly and quickly: *A cat darted across the road.*

**darts** /darts/ *noun*

a game in which you throw pointed objects at a board with numbers on it: *They played a game of darts in the basement.*



**dash<sup>1</sup>** /dæʃ/ verb

to go somewhere very quickly: *She dashed into the bank just before it closed.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **run<sup>1</sup>**

**dash<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a short fast run somewhere: *I made a dash for the house to get my umbrella when it started to rain.*

**2** a dash of lemon/sugar/oil, etc. = a small amount of lemon, etc.: *Add just a dash of vinegar.*

**3** a mark (–) used in writing to show a pause

**4** a short running race: *He ran the 50-yard dash for the track team.*

**dash-board** /'dæʃbɔːrd/ noun

the part of a car in front of the driver that has the instruments and controls on it

→ See picture on page A28

**da·ta** /'deɪtə/ **Ac** noun

information or facts: *The scientists are collecting data for their report.*

**da·ta·base** /'deɪtəbeɪs/ noun

a large amount of information stored in a computer system: *The college has a database of students' names and addresses.*

**date<sup>1</sup>** /deɪt/ noun

**1** a particular day of the month or year, shown by a number: *"What's today's date?" "It's August 11."* | *What's the date of the next meeting?* | *I need your full name and your date of birth (=the day, month, and year you were born).* | *Have you set a date (=chosen a day) for the wedding?*

**2** to date = until now: *The movie has made \$16.8 million to date.*

**3** at a later date = at a time in the future: *You will be given more details at a later date.*

**4** an arrangement to go to a restaurant, movie, etc. with someone you like in a romantic way: *Alison went out on a date with Mark on Saturday night.*

**5** a small sweet brown fruit

→ **out-of-date, up-to-date**

→ See picture on page A13

**date<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to write today's date on something: *He dated the letter May 14, 2006.*

**2** to have a romantic relationship with someone: *How long have you been dating Mary?*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**date from something** also **date back to something**

to have existed since a particular time: *The law dates back to the 17th century.*

**dat·ed** /'deɪtɪd/ adjective

no longer fashionable or modern: *That dress looks a little dated now.* **SYNONYM** **old-fashioned**

**daugh·ter** /'dɔːtə/ noun

someone's female child: *She has two daughters and one son.* | *She was the daughter of a local farmer.*

**daughter-in-law** noun plural**daughters-in-law**

the wife of someone's son: *This is my daughter-in-law, Kim – she's my son Peter's wife.*

**daunt·ed** /'daʊntɪd/ adjective, formal

afraid or worried about something you have to do: *He felt daunted by all the work he had to do.*

**daunt·ing** /'daʊntɪŋ/ adjective, formal

frightening or worrying: *Being captain of the team can be daunting.* *There's a lot of responsibility.*

**dawn** /dɔːn/ noun

the time of day when light first appears: *The sun woke me up at dawn.* **SYNONYM** **day-break, sunrise**; **ANTONYM** **dusk**

**day** /deɪ/ noun

**1** a period of time equal to 24 hours. There are seven days in a week: *We spent three days in Paris.* | *The letter arrived two days ago.* | *"What day is it today?" "Tuesday."* | *I saw her the day before yesterday.* | *We're leaving for Arizona the day after tomorrow.* | *The next day he went swimming.* | *I saw Tim the other day (=a few days before now).*

**2** the time when it is light, between morning and night: *It was a sunny day.* **ANTONYM** **night**



**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **day** *noun*
- **daily** *adjective*
- **daily** *adverb*
- **midday** *noun*

**day-break** /'deɪbreɪk/ *noun, formal*  
the time of day when light first appears: *They got ready in the dark and left at daybreak.*  
SYNONYM **dawn, sunrise**; ANTONYM **dusk**

**day-care** /'deɪkə/ *noun*  
a place that takes care of young children during the day when their parents are at work: *My kids are in daycare three days a week while I work.*

**day-dream** /'deɪdrɪm/ *verb*  
to think about nice things so that you forget what you should be doing: *She was day-dreaming about her boyfriend when the teacher called her name.*

—**daydream** *noun* thoughts about nice things that make you forget what you should be doing

—**daydreamer** *noun* someone who day-dreams when he or she should be working

**day-light** /'deɪlaɪt/ *noun*  
the light that comes from the sun during the day: *He opened the curtains to let the day-light into the room.*

**day-time** /'deɪtaɪm/ *noun*  
the part of the day when it is light: *I can't sleep in the daytime – the sun and noise outside keep me awake.* ANTONYM **nighttime**

**daze** /deɪz/ *noun*  
**in a daze** = unable to think clearly, for example because you are hurt or very surprised: *When I heard I'd won the \$100,000 prize, I just sat there in a daze.*

**dazed** /deɪzd/ *adjective*  
unable to think clearly, for example because you are hurt or very surprised: *He had fallen off his bike, and he looked a little dazed.*

**daz-zle** /'dæzəl/ *verb*  
to make someone admire someone or something a lot: *We were dazzled by her talent and charm.*

**daz-zling** /'dæzɪŋ/ *adjective*  
**1** very impressive and attractive: *The dancers gave a dazzling performance.*  
**2** a dazzling light is so bright that you cannot see clearly for a short time: *the dazzling sun*

**DC** *noun*

**direct current** the type of electric current that comes from batteries (BATTERY)

**D.C.** *abbreviation*

**District of Colombia** the area containing the city of Washington, the CAPITAL of the U.S.

**dead<sup>1</sup>** /ded/ *adjective*

**1** no longer alive: *Her mother is dead. | She found a dead body (=a dead person) in the woods.*

**2** a machine or piece of equipment that is dead is not working because there is no power: *The car engine is completely dead. | a dead battery*

**3** complete or exact: *There was dead silence. Even the baby was quiet. | Hit the nail dead center (=exactly in the center) so it doesn't bend.*

**dead<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

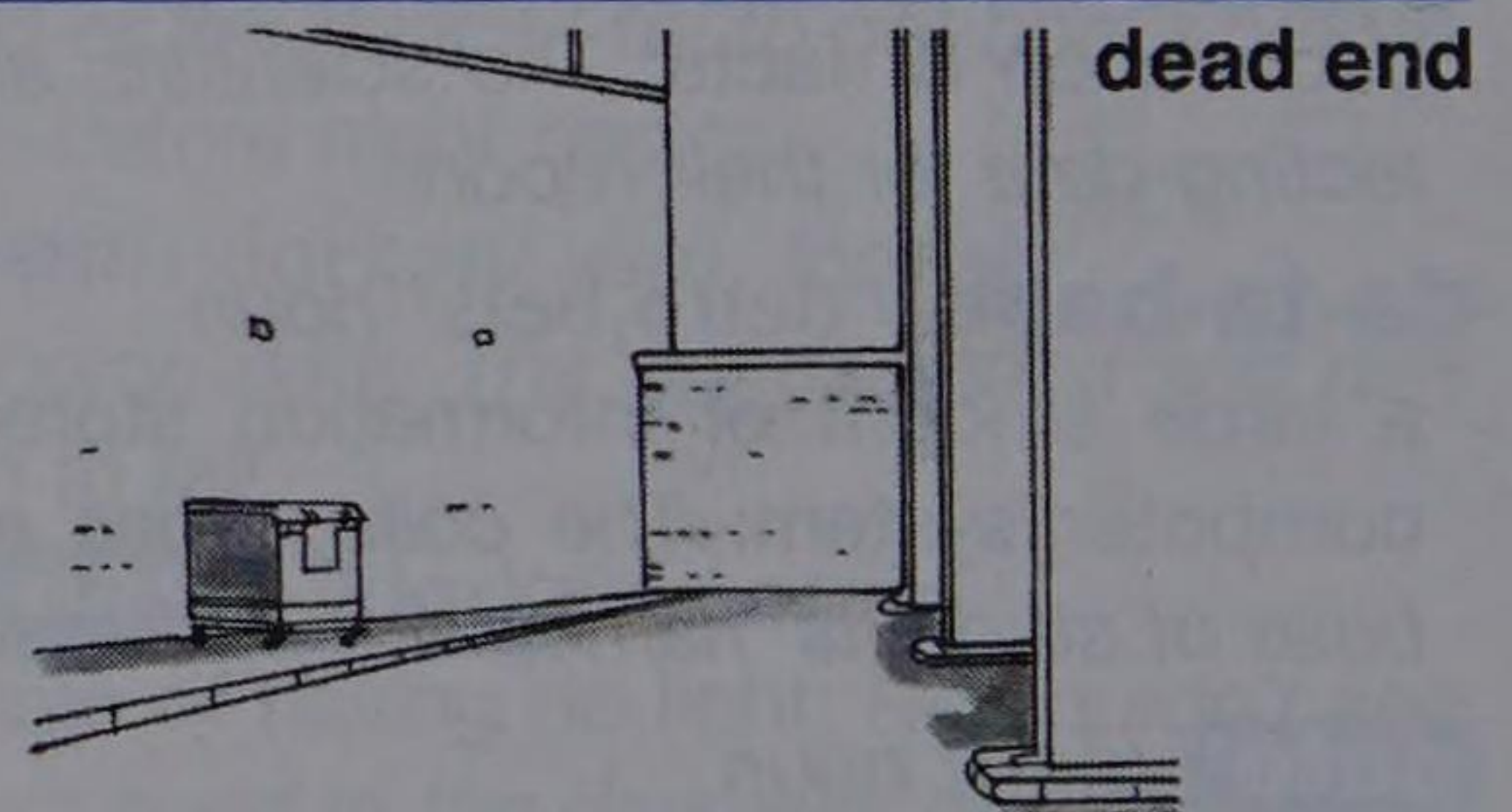
**1** informal very: *I'm dead tired.*

**2** exactly: *Do you see it now? It's dead ahead (=exactly in front of you).*

**dead<sup>3</sup>** *noun, formal*

**1 the dead** = people who are dead: *Today is a day when we remember the dead.* ANTONYM **the living**

**2 in the dead of winter/night** = in the middle of winter or in the middle of the night



**'dead end** *noun*

**1** a street with no way out at one end: *We live on a dead end, so there's not much traffic.*

**2** a situation from which no progress is possible: *The discussions reached a dead end because the two groups couldn't agree.*

**dead-line** /'dedlaɪn/ *noun*

a date or time by which you must finish something: *The deadline is Wednesday, but I'm going to finish before then.*

**dead-ly** /'dedli/ *adjective*

something that is deadly can kill you: *Hundreds of thousands of people have been killed by the deadly virus.*



**deaf** /def/ adjective

not able to hear: *He was born deaf and learned sign language as a child.* | *a school for the deaf* (=deaf people)

—**deafness** noun

**deaf-en** /'defən/ verb, formal

to be so loud that it becomes difficult for people to hear: *The noise of the explosion deafened us.*

—**deafening** adjective, formal: *a deafening bang*

**deal**<sup>1</sup> /dil/ noun

**1** an agreement, especially in business or politics: *They made a deal to sell the land to the city.*

**2** a great deal/a good deal = a large quantity or amount: *The students have learned a great deal.*

**3** the way someone is treated: *All we want is a fair deal* (=to be treated fairly).

**4** the process of giving out cards to players in a card game: *It's your deal.*

**5 (no) big deal** informal = used to show that you do not think something is very important: *So you lost one game. That's no big deal.*

**6 make a big deal out of something** informal = to make something seem more important than it really is: *He had a tiny cut on his arm, and he was making a big deal out of it.*

**deal**<sup>2</sup> also **deal out** verb dealt /delt/

to give cards to each player in a card game: *I began dealing out the cards.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****deal in something**

to buy and sell a particular product: *The store deals in jewelry.*

**deal with someone/something**

**1** if you deal with a problem, you do something to make sure the problem no longer exists: *We have to find new ways to deal with the problem of pollution.*

**2** if a book, movie, play, etc. deals with a particular subject, it is about that subject: *This book deals with the subjects of love and family.*

**3** to do business with someone: *We've been dealing with their company for ten years.*

**deal-er** /'dilə/ noun

**1** someone who buys and sells a particular kind of thing: *An experienced car dealer sold us the van.* | *an art dealer*

**2** the person who gives out the cards in a card game

—**dealership** noun a business that sells a particular company's product, especially cars: *We bought our car at a local car dealership.*

**dealt** /delt/ verb

the past tense and past participle of DEAL

**dean** /din/ noun

a university or college official with a high rank: *Ms. Thompson is the Dean of the Business School.*

**dear**<sup>1</sup> /dɪr/

**oh dear** = said when something bad has happened: *Oh dear! We're going to be late.*

**dear**<sup>2</sup> noun

used when speaking to someone you like or love: *Thank you, dear.*

**dear**<sup>3</sup> adjective

**1 Dear** = used before someone's name or title to begin a letter: *Dear Sue, Thank you for the present.* | *Dear Dr. Ward: I'm writing to ask you for some advice.*

**2 formal** a dear friend or relative is very important to you and you love them very much: *Mark became a dear friend.*

**death** /deθ/ noun

**1** the end of someone's life: *The sudden death of his mother was a terrible shock.* | *Heart disease is the most common cause of death in the U.S.* **ANTONYM** birth

**2 scared to death/bored to death** informal = very scared or bored: *She was scared to death when she saw the snake.*

**'death penalty** noun

the legal punishment of being killed for a serious crime: *He got the death penalty for killing a police officer.*

**de-bat-a-ble** /dɪ'beɪtəbəl/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal

something that is debatable is not certain because people have different opinions about it: *It's debatable whether this book is as good as the last one she wrote.*

**de-bate**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'beɪt/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

**1** discussion of a subject that often continues for a long time and in which people express different opinions: *There has been a lot of debate in the newspapers about the new law – a lot of people support it, but many oppose it.*



**2** a formal discussion of a subject in which people take turns expressing different opinions: *He took part in a college debate on gun control.*

**debate<sup>2</sup>** verb, formal

**1** to think about something carefully before making a decision: *I'm still debating what to do. I just can't decide.*

**2** to discuss a subject formally so that you can make a decision or solve a problem: *The Senate will debate the bill Monday before taking a vote.*

**deb.it** /'deɪt/ noun, formal

an amount of money that is taken out of your bank account: *Your bank statement shows all your debits and credits.* **ANTONYM** credit

—**debit** verb to take money out of your bank account: *\$25 has been debited from your account.*

**de.bris** /dɪ'bri/ noun, formal

the pieces of something that are left after it has been destroyed in an accident, explosion, etc.: *The street was full of debris after the explosion.*

**debt** /det/ noun

money that a person or organization owes: *Because of my student loans, I am \$20,000 in debt (=I owe \$20,000). | He has paid back all his debts.*

**debt.or** /'detə/ noun, formal

someone who owes money

**de.but** /deɪ'byu/ noun, formal

the first time that an actor, sports player, etc. performs in public: *He made his debut as a movie actor in 1995, and he has appeared in many movies since then.*

**dec.ade** /'dekeɪd/ **Ac** noun

a period of ten years: *The building is now four decades old (=40 years old).*

**de.caf.fein.at.ed** /di'kæfə,neɪtəd/ also

**de.caf** /'dikæf/ adjective, informal

decaffeinated drinks do not contain CAFFEINE: *I drink decaffeinated coffee because caffeine makes me nervous.*

**de.cay<sup>1</sup>** /dɪ'keɪ/ verb

**1** if something decays, natural chemical processes slowly destroy it: *The dead animal had started to decay.*

**2** formal if buildings, structures, or areas decay, their condition slowly becomes

worse: *The old hospital has been empty for years and is starting to decay.*

**decay<sup>2</sup>** noun, formal

the process of decaying: *Sugar causes tooth decay.*

**de.ceased** /dɪ'sist/ adjective, formal

dead: *She still spoke often about her deceased husband.*

**de.ceit** /dɪ'sit/ noun, formal

behavior that makes someone believe something that is not true: *I will never forgive her for her deceit and lies.*

—**deceitful** adjective someone who is deceitful tells lies

—**deceitfully** adverb: *She acted deceitfully by lying about her age.*

**de.ceive** /dɪ'siv/ verb, formal

to make someone believe something that is not true: *He deceived her by saying he was a millionaire, even though he had no money at all.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **deceive** verb
- **deception** noun
- **deceit** noun
- **deceitful** adjective
- **deceptive** adjective

→ See Thesaurus box at **lie<sup>2</sup>**

**De.cem.ber** /dɪ'sembə/ noun, written abbreviation **Dec.**

the 12th month of the year, between November and January: *Her birthday is on December 6. | They got married in December. | We went to Mexico last December. | We're going to Tucson next December.*

**de.cen.cy** /'disənsi/ noun

polite and morally good behavior that shows respect for other people: *I try to treat all my students with respect and decency.*

**de.cent** /'disənt/ adjective

**1** acceptable and good enough: *Everyone should have a decent education.*

**2** decent people are good and honest: *He is a decent, caring man.*

**de.cent.ly** /'disəntli/ adverb

**1** in a way that is acceptable and good enough: *I don't need a lot of money, just a decently paid job.*

**2** in a way that treats people fairly and kindly: *He's always treated me decently, so I can't complain.*



**de·cep·tion** /dɪ'sepʃən/ *noun*

the act of deliberately making someone believe something that is not true: *His lies and deception hurt his family deeply.*

**de·cep·tive** /dɪ'septɪv/ *adjective, formal*

**1** something that is deceptive seems to be one thing, but is in fact very different: *Some snakes move with deceptive speed (=move faster than you think or expect).*

**2** something that is deceptive makes people believe something that is not true: *Don't believe the ads you see on TV. They can be very deceptive.*

—**deceptively** *adjective*

**de·cide** /dɪ'saɪd/ *verb*

**1** to choose what you are going to do after thinking about it: *I decided to stay home instead of going to the movie. | Ted decided (that) the car would cost too much. | He can't decide what to do.*

**THESAURUS: decide**

**make up your mind** *informal* to decide something, after thinking about it for a long time: *Have you made up your mind about which college you want to go to?*

**choose** to decide which things you want out of a number of them: *I let the kids choose their own clothes.*

**resolve** *formal* to decide to do something in a determined way: *She had resolved to work hard and not disappoint her parents.*

**2** to be the reason why something has a particular result: *One goal decided the game, and we won by a point.*

**PHRASAL VERB****decide on something**

to choose one thing from many possible choices: *Have you decided on a name for the baby?*

**WORD FAMILY look at the words:**

- **decide** *verb*
- **decision** *noun*
- **decisive** *adjective*
- **indecisive** *adjective*

**dec·i·mal**<sup>1</sup> /'desəməl/ *noun*

the part of a number which comes after the mark (.) and is less than one: *The numbers 0.5 and 0.178 are decimals.*

**decimal**<sup>2</sup> *adjective, formal*

based on the number ten: *We count using a decimal counting system: 10, 20, 30, etc.*

**decimal 'point** *noun*

the mark (.) before a decimal

**de·ci·sion** /dɪ'sɪʒən/ *noun*

a choice that you make: *He chose to be a doctor instead of a businessman. I think he made the right decision.*

**de·ci·sive** /dɪ'saɪsɪv/ *adjective, formal*

**1** good at making decisions quickly: *A manager needs to be a decisive leader.* **ANTONYM**

**indecisive**

**2** an action, event, etc. that is decisive has a big effect on the way that something develops: *It was the decisive battle in the war. Two months later, the war ended.*

—**decisively** *adverb*

**deck** /dek/ *noun*

**1** a set of playing cards: *a deck of cards*

**2** a wooden floor built out from the back of a house: *We had a picnic on the deck behind the house.*

**3** one of the levels on a ship, especially the one where you can walk or sit outside: *Let's go up on deck and look at the ocean.*

**dec·la·ra·tion** /,deklə'reɪʃən/ *noun, formal*

an official or serious statement about something: *Congress has the power to make a declaration of war. | a declaration of love*

**de·clare** /dɪ'kleɪ/ *verb, formal*

to say officially what will happen or what you have decided: *The U.S. declared war on England in 1812. | Doctors declared that he died of natural causes.*

**de·cline**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'klaɪn/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

**1** to become weaker, smaller, or less good: *Her health declined rapidly, and she died two weeks later.*

**2** to say no to an invitation, offer, or request, usually politely: *Mary declined Jay's invitation to dinner.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **decrease**<sup>1</sup>, **reject**

**decline**<sup>2</sup> *noun, formal*

a situation in which something becomes weaker, smaller, or less good: *There has been a decline in the company's profits since last year, and the company is going to lay off workers.*



**de-com-pose** /,dikəm'pouz/ verb, formal

to be slowly destroyed by a natural process: *The meat had started to decompose.*

—**decomposition** /,dikəmpə'ziʃən/ noun, formal the process of decomposing

**de-con-tam-i-nate** /,dikən'tæmə,neɪt/ verb, formal

to remove a dangerous substance from somewhere: *The company is working to decontaminate the polluted river.*

—**decontamination** /,dikən,tæmə'neɪʃən/ noun, formal the process of decontaminating something

**dec-o-rate** /'dekə,reit/ verb

**1** to make something look more attractive by adding pretty things to it: *We decorated the Christmas tree.*

**2** formal to give someone an official sign of honor, such as a MEDAL: *The soldiers were decorated for their bravery.*

—**decorative** /'dekərətɪv/ adjective, formal pretty and used to make something look more attractive: *a decorative vase*

**dec-o-ra-tion** /,dekə'reɪʃən/ noun

a pretty thing that you use to make something look more attractive: *We put Halloween decorations like pumpkins and ghosts in the yard.*

**de-crease**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'kris/ verb

to become smaller in number, amount, size, etc., or to make something do this: *Computer prices decreased last year, so I decided to buy a new one.* **ANTONYM** increase

#### THESAURUS: decrease

**go down** to become lower or less in level, amount, size, quality, etc.: *The price of computers has gone down.*

**drop** to become lower in level or amount: *Sales have dropped 15% this year.*

**fall** to decrease to a lower level or amount: *Temperatures fell below zero last night.*

**plummet** to suddenly and quickly become lower: *Sales of the car have plummeted.*

**diminish** formal to become smaller or less important: *The country's financial problems have increased rather than diminished.*

**decline** formal to become smaller or weaker: *The number of babies born in Western countries has declined.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **reduce**

**de-crease**<sup>2</sup> /'dikris/ noun

the process of becoming less, or the amount by which something becomes less: *There has been a recent decrease in crime.*

**ANTONYM** increase

**de-crep-it** /dɪ'kreɪt/ adjective, formal

old and in bad condition: *The buildings were old and decrepit.*

**ded-i-cate** /'dedə,keɪt/ verb

**1** if you dedicate a book, movie, song, etc. to someone, you say publicly that you wrote it to show how much you love and respect him or her: *The book was dedicated to her husband.*

**2** **dedicate your life/yourself, etc. to something** = to give all your attention and effort to one thing: *He dedicated his life to helping other people.*

**ded-i-cat-ed** /'dedə,keɪtɪd/ adjective, formal

someone who is dedicated works very hard at something because it is important to them: *Our teacher is very dedicated. She always stays after school to help us.*

**ded-i-ca-tion** /,dedə'keɪʃən/ noun, formal

a situation in which you work very hard because you believe that what you are doing is important: *I admire his dedication to the job. He never quits until the work is finished.*

**de-duct** /dɪ'dʌkt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to take an amount away from a larger amount: *Taxes are deducted from your pay.*

—**deductible** adjective a deductible amount of money is one that you can take away from the amount of money you must pay taxes on

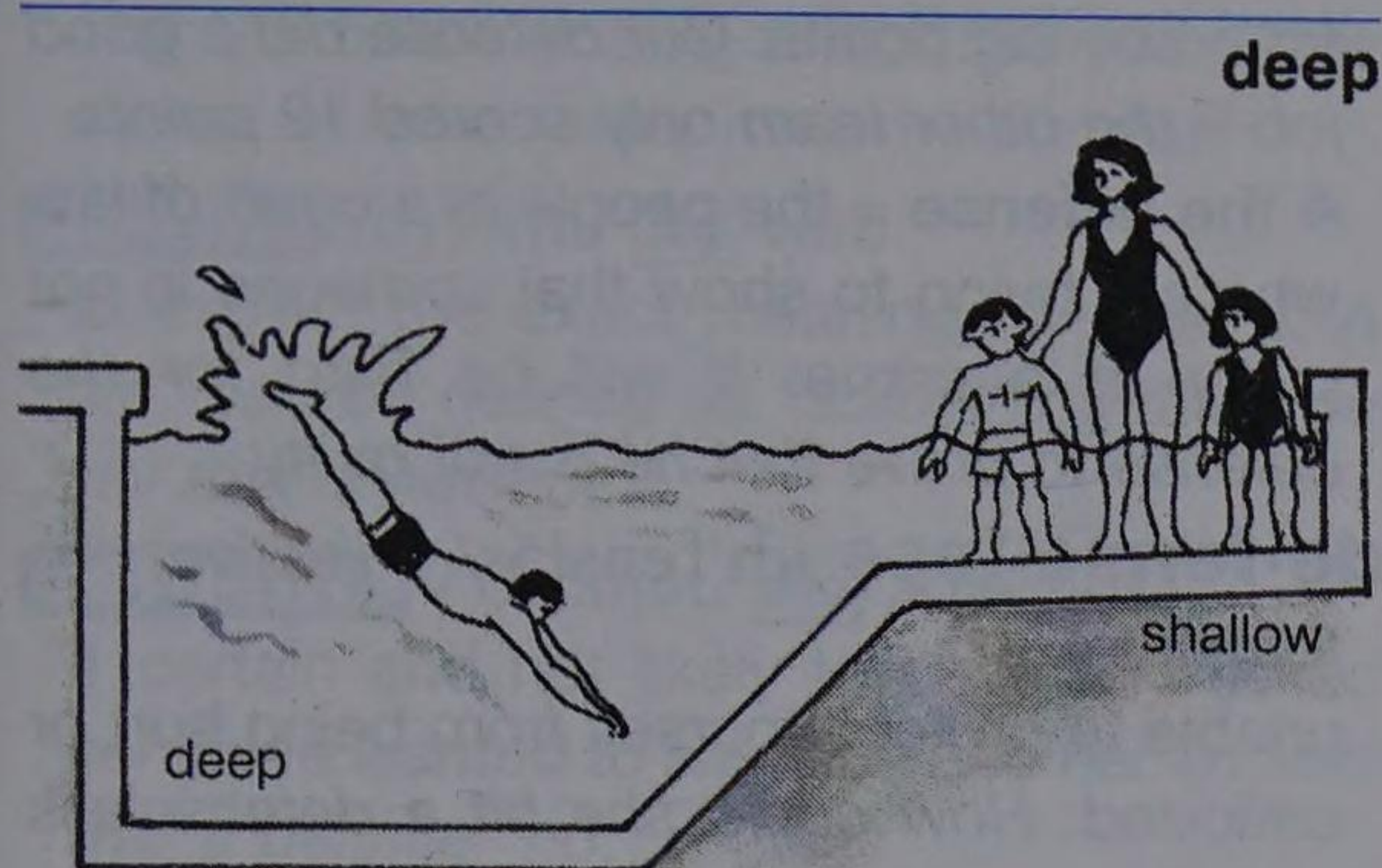
—**deduction** /dɪ'dʌkʃən/ noun the process of taking an amount away from a larger amount, or the amount that is taken away: *I earn about \$2,000 a month, after deductions.*

**deed** /did/ noun, formal

**1** an action, especially if it is very good or very bad: *She was well known for her good deeds, such as giving money to the poor.*

**2** an official agreement that says who owns property: *She had the deed to the land, so no one could take it from her.*





## **deep**<sup>1</sup> /dip/ adjective

**1** if something is deep, there is a long distance between the top and the bottom: *The path was covered in deep snow. | a deep lake* **ANTONYM** shallow

**2** used for talking about the distance from the top to the bottom of something: *The pool is three feet deep.*

**3** going far in from the outside or from the front edge of something: *Terry had a deep cut in his forehead.*

**4** a deep feeling or belief is very strong: *It was clear that he felt a deep love for his children.*

**5** a deep sound is very low: *The old man had a deep voice.*

**6** a deep color is dark and strong: *The bush has red berries and deep green leaves.* **ANTONYM** light, pale

**7** serious and often difficult to understand: *The two professors were having a deep conversation about philosophy.*

**8** **deep sleep** = if someone is in a deep sleep, it is difficult to wake him or her

**9** **be in deep trouble** *informal* = to be in serious trouble or in an extremely difficult situation: *You're going to be in deep trouble when I tell Mom what you did.*

**10** **deep in thought/conversation, etc.** = thinking or talking so much that you do not notice anything else: *I was deep in thought and didn't hear her when she said "hello."*

## **deep**<sup>2</sup> adverb

a long way into or below the surface of something: *Some bones were hidden deep beneath the ground. | These fish live deep in the ocean.*

## **deep-en** /'dipən/ verb, formal

if a serious situation deepens, it becomes worse: *Over the next few months, Carla's problems deepened, and she became more and more unhappy.*

## **deep freeze** noun

a large metal box in which food can be stored at very low temperatures for a long time **SYNONYM** freezer

## **deep-fry** also **deep fry** verb

to cook food in a lot of hot oil: *Add the oil and deep-fry the potatoes.*

—**deep-fried** adjective: *deep-fried chicken*

## **deep-ly** /'dipli/ adverb, formal

extremely or very much: *I was deeply sorry to hear that your sister had died.*

## **deer** /dɪr/ noun plural **deer**

a large wild animal that lives in the forest, eats plants, can run fast, and has long thin legs and a short tail: *Male deer have large horns called antlers.*

## **de-fault**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'fɔlt/ noun

**1** **by default** = if you win a game, competition, etc. by default, you win because your opponent did not play or there were no other competitors: *The other team didn't show up, so we won by default.*

**2** the thing or things your computer will use unless you tell it to use something else: *Green is the default, but you can change the color if you want.*

**3** *formal* the action of defaulting on a legal agreement: *The default of a loan can lead to legal problems.*

## **default**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to fail to pay back money that you owe or to do something you are legally supposed to do: *He defaulted on his loan payments, and the bank took his car.*

## **de-feat**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'fi:t/ verb, formal

to beat someone in a game, war, election, etc.: *She has already defeated some very good players.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **win**<sup>1</sup>

## **defeat**<sup>2</sup> noun, formal

a time when you do not win or succeed: *Our football team has only had one defeat in the last ten games.* **SYNONYM** loss; **ANTONYM** victory



**de·fect<sup>1</sup>** /'dɪfekt/ *noun, formal*

a problem in the way something is made, so that it does not work correctly: *There was a defect in the car's engine that caused the fire.* | *The chemical can cause birth defects* (=physical problems that babies are born with).

**de·fect<sup>2</sup>** /dɪ'fekt/ *verb*

to leave your own country or group and go to an opposing one: *His parents defected to the U.S. from Russia.*

—**defector** *noun* someone who defects

—**defection** /dɪ'fekʃən/ *noun* the act of defecting

**de·fec·tive** /dɪ'fektɪv/ *adjective, formal*

a defective machine, product, etc. has a problem, so that it does not work correctly: *The microwave was defective, so I took it back to the store.*

**de·fend** /dɪ'fend/ *verb*

**1** to protect someone or something from attack: *We have the right to defend ourselves from people who try to hurt us.*

**2** to say something to show you support someone or something that has been criticized: *The mayor defended his plan to raise taxes.*

—**defender** *noun* someone who defends someone or something

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **defend** *verb*
- **defense** *noun*
- **defender** *noun*
- **defensive** *noun*
- **defensive** *adjective*

**de·fend·ant** /dɪ'fendənt/ *noun, formal*

the person in a court of law who, according to someone else, did something illegal: *This evidence proves that the defendant is guilty.*

**de·fense** /dɪ'fens/ *noun*

**1** something that you do to protect someone or something from attack or criticism: *She wrote to the newspaper in defense of our plan.*

**2** the weapons, people, and systems that a country uses to protect itself from attack: *The country needs a strong defense to protect itself from its enemies.*

**3** /'dɪfens/ the players on a sports team whose job is to try to prevent the other team

from scoring points: *Our defense did a good job – the other team only scored 12 points.*

**4 the defense** = the people in a court of law who are trying to show that someone is not guilty of a crime: *It will be hard for the defense to prove that he is not guilty.*

**de·fense·less** /dɪ'fensləs/ *adjective, formal*

unable to protect yourself from being hurt or criticized: *How could she hit a defenseless child?*

**de·fen·sive<sup>1</sup>** /dɪ'fensɪv/ *adjective*

**1** behaving in a way that shows you think you are being criticized: *She got really defensive when I asked her why she was late.*

**2** used for or relating to the defense of something: *Defensive weapons are used only if we are attacked.*

—**defensively** *adverb*

—**defensiveness** *noun*

**defensive<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**on the defensive** = ready to defend yourself, because you have been criticized or attacked: *The teacher's criticism put me on the defensive* (=made me want to defend myself).

**de·fer** /dɪ'fə/ *verb* *deferred, deferring*  
*formal*

to delay something until a later date: *You can defer payment of your student loan for six months.*

**de·fi·ant** /dɪ'faɪənt/ *adjective, formal*

refusing to obey someone: *The police told him to stop, but he was defiant.*

—**defiantly** *adverb*

—**defiance** *noun* behavior in which you refuse to obey someone: *The students were told to leave the school because of their defiance of the rules.*

**de·fi·cient** /dɪ'fɪʃənt/ *adjective, formal*

not having or containing enough of something: *The food they eat is deficient in iron, so they need to get iron some other way.*

—**deficiency** *noun* the state of not having enough of something: *Vitamin deficiencies can cause serious illness.*

**def·i·cit** /'defəsɪt/ *noun, formal*

the difference between the amount of money that you have and the higher amount that you need: *The country's budget deficit is*



over 2.5 billion dollars, and it has to borrow money or raise taxes. **ANTONYM** surplus

**de·fine** /dɪ'faɪn/ **[Ac]** verb

to explain the exact meaning of a word: A "lie" can be defined as "something that you say that is not true."

**def·i·nite** /'defɪnət/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1** certain and not likely to change: I asked her if she wanted to see him, and her answer was a definite "no."

**2** clear and noticeable: There are definite signs of improvement.

**definite 'article** noun

the word "the"

**def·i·nite·ly** /'defɪnətli/ **[Ac]** adverb

**1** without any doubt: Your arm's definitely broken. I can tell from the way it's hanging.

**2** used to emphasize that you are saying "yes": "Are you going to be there?" "Definitely."

**def·i·ni·tion** /,defə'nɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

an explanation of what a word means, especially one in a dictionary: Look up the definition of "insect" in the dictionary.

**de·fin·i·tive** /dɪ'fɪnətɪv/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal

a definitive book, description, etc. is so good that there cannot be a better one: He wrote the definitive book on the Civil War. All other researchers rely on his work.

**de·formed** /dɪ'fɔɪmd/ adjective

if part of someone's body is deformed, it has the wrong shape: He was born with a deformed foot and had to wear a special shoe.

—**deformity** noun, formal a condition in which part of your body is deformed: people with physical deformities

**de·fraud** /dɪ'frɔd/ verb, formal

to trick someone in order to get money from them: He defrauded his clients of over \$5 million before he was arrested.

**de·frost** /dɪ'frɔst/ verb

if frozen food defrosts, it gets warmer until it is not frozen anymore: Defrost the chicken in the refrigerator.

**de·fy** /dɪ'faɪ/ verb third person singular

defies, defied formal  
to refuse to obey someone or something: Her parents wanted him to be a doctor, but

he defied them and became an actor.

→ See Thesaurus box at **disobey**

**de·grade** /dɪ'greɪd/ verb, formal

to make someone lose people's respect or feel bad about themselves, for example because they are treated badly: Treating prisoners like animals degrades them.

**de·grad·ing** /dɪ'greɪdɪŋ/ adjective, formal

something that is degrading makes you lose respect for yourself: It was degrading to have to ask strangers for money.

**de·gree** /dɪ'gri/ noun

**1** a unit for measuring temperature: It's very cold today. The temperature is only about 20 degrees.

**2** a unit for measuring the size of an angle: The angles of a triangle add up to 180 degrees.

**3** an official statement that you have successfully completed all your studies at a university or college: Ryan has a degree in chemistry. | He got his law degree from Columbia University.

**4** the level or amount of something: The two art students showed a high degree of talent. | I felt responsible to some degree (=partly) for what happened.

**de·hy·drat·ed** /dɪ'haɪ,dreɪtɪd/ adjective

if you are dehydrated, you do not have enough water in your body: It was hot, and I was getting dehydrated. I needed some water.

—**dehydration** /,dɪhaɪ'dreɪʃən/ noun the state of being dehydrated

**de·lay<sup>1</sup>** /dɪ'leɪ/ verb delayed, third person singular delays

**1** to make someone or something late: Our flight was delayed by bad weather.

**2** to wait until a later time to do something: We've decided to delay the trip until next month.

**delay<sup>2</sup>** noun plural delays

a time when people have to wait before something happens: The bus will arrive in ten minutes. We are sorry for the delay.

**del·e·gate<sup>1</sup>** /'deləɡət/ noun

someone who is chosen to speak, vote, and make decisions for a group: She is a delegate to the United Nations from Angola.



**del.e.gate**<sup>2</sup> /'delə,geɪt/ verb

to give part of your work to someone who has a lower position than you: *He is not very good at delegating work to people who work for him. He tries to do everything himself.*

**del.e.ga.tion** /,delə'geɪʃən/ noun

a group of people that represents an organization and goes somewhere to take part in discussions: *A delegation of American business leaders is visiting China to try to increase trade between the two countries.*

**de.lete** /dɪ'li:t/ verb

to remove parts of a piece of writing, or to remove a whole computer document: *Some files had been deleted from my computer, and I lost some of my work.*

—**deletion** /dɪ'liʃən/ noun the act of deleting something

**del.i** /'deli/ noun

a small store that sells cheese, cooked meat, bread, etc. **SYNONYM** **delicatessen**

**de.lib.er.ate**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'libərət/ adjective

planned and intended: *This was not a mistake. It was a deliberate act of stealing money from the organization.*

**de.lib.e.rate**<sup>2</sup> /dɪ'libə'reɪt/ verb, formal

to think about something very carefully or talk about it carefully with other people: *The jury has been deliberating for two days about whether she is guilty.*

**de.lib.er.ate.ly** /dɪ'libərətli/ adverb

if you do something deliberately, you intended to do it, and it is not an accident: *He deliberately tripped the other runner, so that he could win.* **SYNONYM** **on purpose**

**del.i.ca.cy** /'delɪkəsi/ noun plural

**delicacies** formal

something good to eat that is expensive or rare: *In France, snails are considered a delicacy, and they are served in the best restaurants.*

**del.i.cate** /'delɪkət/ adjective

**1** easily damaged or broken: *Grandma's china cups are very delicate. Be careful with them.*

**2** needing to be dealt with very carefully in order to avoid problems: *It was a very delicate situation. We were worried we might say something to offend them.*

**3** small and beautiful: *Babies have such tiny delicate fingers.*

**del.i.ca.tes.sen** /,delɪkə'tesən/ noun

a small store that sells cheese, cooked meat, bread, etc. **SYNONYM** **deli**

**de.li.cious** /dɪ'liʃəs/ adjective

delicious food tastes very good: *This pie is delicious! Can I have another slice?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **taste**<sup>1</sup>

**de.light**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'laɪt/ noun, formal

**1** great pleasure: *She laughed with delight.*

**2** something that is very enjoyable: *The CD is a delight to listen to. I've been listening to it almost every day.*

**delight**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to give someone great pleasure: *Her books delight readers all over the world.*

**de.light.ed** /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ adjective, formal

very happy or pleased: *I'm delighted to meet you. | His parents are delighted with his progress at school.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **happy**

**de.light.ful** /dɪ'laɪtfəl/ adjective, formal

very nice: *It was a delightful evening. Everyone left with a smile.*

—**delightfully** adverb, formal

**de.lin.quent** /dɪ'lɪŋkwənt/ adjective, formal

a delinquent child or young person behaves very badly or does illegal things

—**delinquent** noun a delinquent child or young person: *a school for juvenile delinquents*

**de.lir.i.ous** /dɪ'liəriəs/ adjective, formal

confused and having strange ideas because you are very sick: *He was delirious with fever and did not recognize me.*

**de.liv.er** /dɪ'livə/ verb

**1** to take a letter, package, etc. to a particular place: *They delivered the letter to the wrong house.*

**2 deliver a speech/lecture, etc.** = to make a speech to a group of people: *The president will deliver the speech on television tomorrow evening.*

**3 deliver a baby** = to help a baby come out of its mother's body

**4** to do what you have promised to do: *Will he deliver on his promise to help us?*



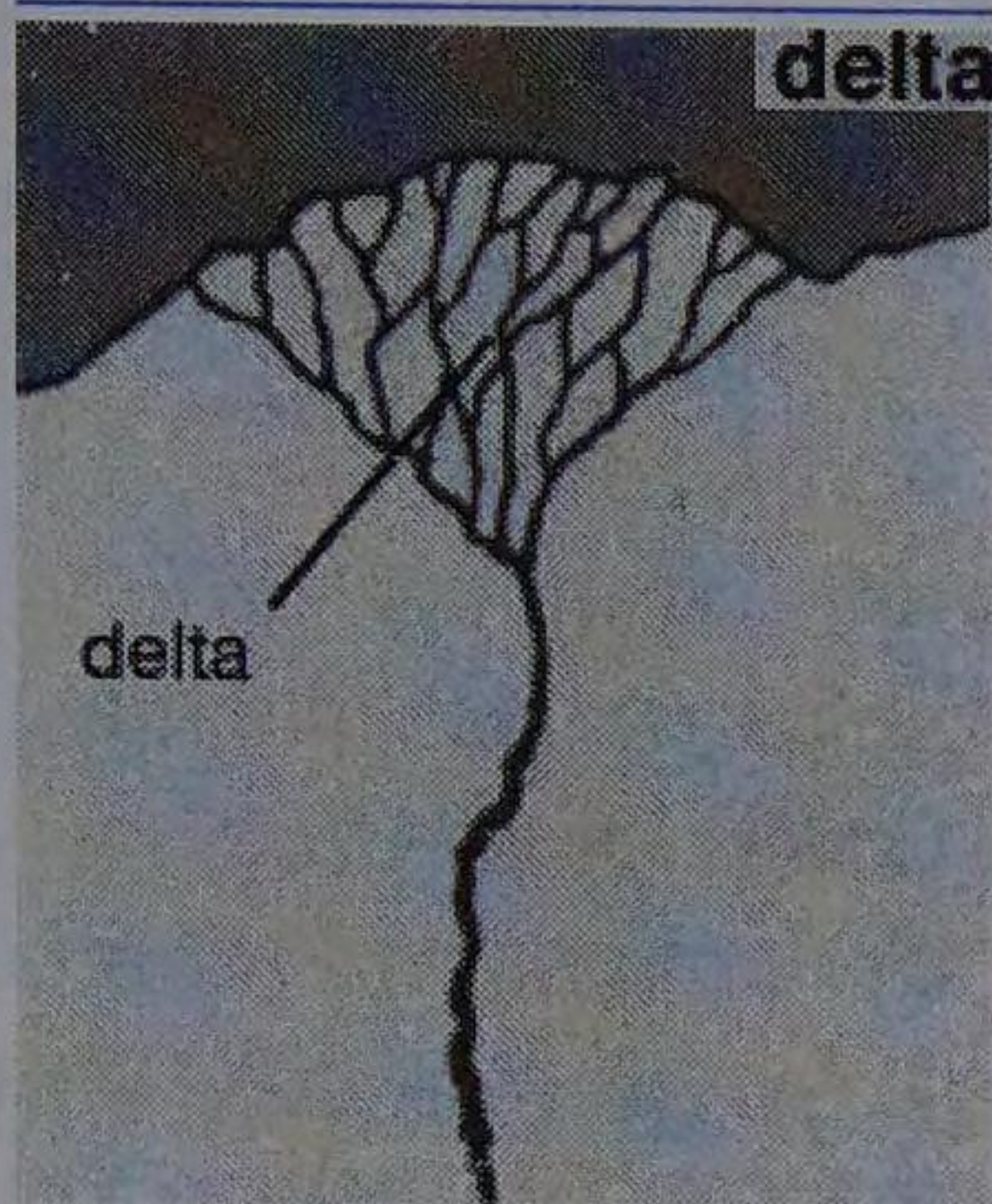
**de·liv·er·y** /dɪ'lɪvəri/ noun plural **deliveries**

**1** the act of bringing something to a particular place, or something that is brought: *Delivery of a package usually takes two days. | I'm expecting a delivery.*

**2** the process of a baby being born: *She was taken straight to the delivery room (=hospital room where babies are born).*

**del·ta** /'deltə/ noun

a place where a large river divides into smaller rivers near the ocean: *The Mississippi River Delta is on the Gulf of Mexico.*



**del·uge**<sup>1</sup>

/'delyudʒ/ noun, formal

a large amount of things that someone gets at the same time: *We've received a deluge of applications – about 5,000 emails and letters.*

**deluge**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

if people deluge someone with things, they send a large number at the same time: *The radio station was deluged with complaints.*

**de·lux** /dɪ'lʌks/ adjective

better and more expensive than other things of the same type: *The winner will get two nights in a deluxe hotel in Los Angeles.*

**delve** /dɛlv/ verb

**PHRASAL VERB**

**delve into something** formal

to search for more information about someone or something: *I didn't believe him, so I delved into his college records.*

**de·mand**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'mænd/ noun

**1** if there is a demand for something, people want to buy it: *Demand for computers is increasing. | Tickets for the concert are in great demand (=wanted by a lot of people).*

**2** a strong request: *School officials met with the student protesters to find out what their demands were.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **ask**

**demand**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to ask for something in a strong way: *The man pulled out a gun and demanded*

*money. | My father demanded that I finish college.*

**de·mand·ing** /dɪ'mændɪŋ/ adjective

**1** a demanding job is difficult or takes up a lot of your time: *She has a demanding job as a TV producer.*

**2** wanting good work or a lot of attention: *The coach was very demanding. We started practice every day at 7:00 a.m.*

**de·mands** /dɪ'mændz/ plural noun

the things that you need to do that are difficult or take up your time: *He could not deal with the demands of his job and quit after a year.*

**de·mer·it** /dɪ'merɪt/ noun

a warning that is given to a student or a soldier when he or she does something wrong

**de·moc·ra·cy** /dɪ'məkrəsi/ noun plural **democracies**

**1** a system in which the people of a country can choose the government by voting: *They wanted to bring democracy to the country.*

**2** a country which has democracy: *We live in a democracy.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **democracy** noun
- **democrat** noun
- **democratic** adjective
- **democratically** adverb

→ See Thesaurus box at **government**

**Dem·o·crat** /'demə,kɹæt/ noun

a member of the Democratic Party: *Most Democrats support the bill.*

**dem·o·crat·ic** /,demə'krætɪk/ adjective

**1** a democratic country or system is one in which everyone has the right to vote in order to choose the government or make decisions: *Education is important in a democratic society. People need to be informed to vote.*

**2 Democratic** relating or belonging to the Democratic Party: *the Democratic presidential candidate*

—**democratically** adverb: *a democratically elected government*

**Demo·cratic ,Party** noun

**the Democratic Party** = one of the two main political parties of the U.S.



**de·mol·ish** /dɪ'mɒlɪʃ/ verb

to completely destroy a building or other structure: *Ten houses were demolished to make space for a new park.*

—**demolition** /,demə'liʃən/ noun the act of demolishing something: *The group is opposed to the demolition of the old building. The group wants the building to stay.*

**de·mon** /'dɪmən/ noun

an evil creature or spirit

**dem·on·strate** /'demən,streɪt/ **Ac**

verb

**1** to show something: *He demonstrated how to use the machine. | We have demonstrated that this method works better than the old methods.*

**2** to protest or show support for something in public with a lot of other people: *A crowd of people were demonstrating against the war.*

—**demonstrator** noun someone who is protesting or showing support for something: *Demonstrators marched through the streets holding “NO WAR” signs.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **explain**

**dem·on·stra·tion** /,demən'streɪʃən/

**Ac** noun

**1** the act of showing something: *Could you give me a demonstration of the software? I'm not sure I understand how it works.*

**2** an event at which a lot of people protest or show support for something in public: *Students at the university held a peaceful demonstration to protest the new rules.*

**de·mor·al·ized** /dɪ'mɒrə,laɪzd/

adjective

unhappier, less confident, and less willing to make an effort than before: *We lost three games in a row, and we were feeling demoralized.*

—**demoralizing** adjective making someone feel demoralized: *Failing a test is demoralizing.*

**de·mote** /dɪ'məʊt/ verb

to change someone's rank or position to a lower one: *He was demoted from sergeant to private.* **ANTONYM** **promote**

—**demotion** /dɪ'məʊʃən/ noun when someone is demoted

**den** /den/ noun

**1** a room in a house where people relax, watch television, etc.

**2** the home of a lion, FOX, etc.

**de·ni·al** /dɪ'naɪəl/ **Ac** noun

**1** a statement saying that something is not true: *He repeated his denial, saying, “I did not take the money!”* **ANTONYM** **admission**

**2** the situation of refusing to believe something bad: *She's in denial about her illness. She won't even say the word “cancer.”*

**den·im** /'denəm/ noun

a strong cotton cloth, usually blue, which is used to make JEANS: *a denim jacket*

**de·nom·i·na·tion** /dɪ,nəmə'neɪʃən/

noun, formal

one of many groups who have the same religion, but slightly different beliefs: *The Catholic Church is the largest Christian denomination in the U.S.*

**de·nom·i·na·tor** /dɪ'namə,neɪtə/ noun

the number below the line in a FRACTION

**de·note** /dɪ'nəʊt/ **Ac** verb, formal

to represent or mean something: *The symbol \$ denotes “dollars.”*

**dense** /dens/ adjective

**1** made of or containing things that are very close together: *The island is covered by a dense forest, and it is difficult to travel from one side to the other.*

**2** informal not intelligent: *Don't be so dense – the answer is obvious.*

—**densely** adverb: *a densely populated city* (=with people living very close together)

**den·si·ty** /'densəti/ noun

how heavy something is in comparison to its size: *The rock has a high density and is heavier than you might expect.*

**dent** /dent/ noun

a bent part of a surface made when something hits the surface: *There was a big dent in the car door where the baseball hit it.*

—**dent** verb to make a dent in something: *I'm sorry I dented the car.*

**den·tal** /'dentl/ adjective

relating to your teeth: *I'm having some dental work done* (=I'm having my teeth fixed).

**den·tist** /'dentɪst/ noun

someone whose job is to do work on people's teeth: *I went to the dentist to have my teeth cleaned and checked.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **doctor**

→ See picture on page A16



**den·tures** /'dentʃəz/ plural noun

false teeth worn by people who have lost their real teeth: *He took his dentures out of his mouth at night.*

**de·ny** /dɪ'naɪ/ **Ac** verb denies, denied

**1** to say that something is not true: *She denied that there was a problem. | He denied cheating on the test.* **ANTONYM** admit

**2** formal to not let someone have or do something: *In the past, women were denied the right to vote.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **deny** verb
- **denial** noun
- **undeniable** adjective
- **undeniably** adverb

**de·o·dor·ant** /di'oudərənt/ noun

a substance that you put under your arms so that you do not smell bad

**de·part** /dɪ'pɑːt/ verb, formal

to leave: *The train will depart from track 9.*

**ANTONYM** arrive

**de·part·ment** /dɪ'pɑːtmənt/ noun

a part of a business, college, government, etc.: *The company is divided into six departments, and I work in the finance department. | the U.S. Department of Education*

→ See Thesaurus box at **part**<sup>1</sup>

**de·partment ,store** noun

a large store that sells many different kinds of things including clothes

**de·par·ture** /dɪ'pɑːtʃə/ noun, formal

the action of leaving a place: *The flight's departure was delayed because of the snow storm.* **ANTONYM** arrival

**de·pend** /dɪ'pend/ verb

**it/that depends** = said when you are not sure about something because you do not know what will happen: *"Are you coming to my house later?" "It depends. I might have to work."*

**PHRASAL VERB****depend on someone/something**

**1** to need the help or support of someone or something else: *I didn't like depending on my parents for money.*

**2** to be affected by something that is not fixed or certain: *The amount of money you spend depends on how much you buy.*

**de·pend·a·ble** /dɪ'pendəbəl/ adjective

someone or something that is dependable will always do what you need that person or thing to do: *He is a dependable worker. He comes to work on time, and he doesn't leave until he's done. | a dependable car*

**de·pend·ent**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'pendənt/ adjective

needing someone or something in order to live or continue: *Jan's children are still dependent on her for money.* **ANTONYM** independent

—**dependence** noun the state of being dependent on someone or something

**dependent**<sup>2</sup> noun, formal

a child or other person who someone must buy everything for: *He is not married and has no dependents.*

**de·port** /dɪ'pɔːt/ verb

to make someone from a foreign country return to that country: *The illegal immigrants will be deported back to their home country.*

—**deportation** /,dɪpɔː'teɪʃən/ noun when someone is deported

—**deportee** /,dɪpɔː'ti/ noun someone who is deported

**de·pos·it**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'pəzɪt/ noun

**1** the first part of a large cost that you pay, when you are going to pay the rest later: *We put down a deposit of \$1,000 on the car; we'll pay the rest when we bring it home.*

**2** an amount of money that is put into someone's bank account: *I'd like to make a deposit of \$250 (=put \$250 into my bank account).* **ANTONYM** withdrawal

**deposit**<sup>2</sup> verb

to put money into a bank account: *She immediately deposited the money in her savings account.* **ANTONYM** withdraw

**de·pot** /'dɪpəʊ/ noun

**1** a place where a large quantity of things are stored: *Soldiers found a small weapons depot containing guns and bombs.*

**2** a small train station or bus station

**de·pre·ci·ate** /dɪ'prɪʃi,eɪt/ verb, formal

to go down in value: *The car will depreciate more than \$2,000 during the first year that you own it, from \$18,000 to \$15,800.*

—**depreciation** /dɪ,prɪʃi'eɪʃən/ noun the process of losing value



**de·press** /dɪ'pres/ **[Ac]** verb

to make someone feel very sad: *Funerals depress me.*

**de·pressed** /dɪ'prest/ **[Ac]** adjective

very sad: *She felt depressed about losing her job.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **sad**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **depressed** adjective
- **depressing** adjective
- **depress** verb
- **depression** noun

**de·press·ing** /dɪ'presɪŋ/ **[Ac]** adjective

making you feel sad: *The news about the war is so depressing.*

**de·pres·sion** /dɪ'preʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a feeling of great sadness that sometimes makes you unable to live normally: *After her youngest child left home, she suffered from depression.*

**2** a long period when the economy is bad and many people do not have jobs: *During the Great Depression of the 1930s my great-grandfather could not find work for many years.*

**de·prive** /dɪ'praɪv/ verb**PHRASAL VERB****deprive someone of something**

to stop someone from having something that he or she needs or should have: *They deprived the prisoners of food and sleep to punish them.*

**de·prived** /dɪ'praɪvd/ adjective

not having the things that you need for a comfortable or happy life: *He had a deprived childhood; his family was very poor and often did not have enough to eat.*

—**deprivation** /,deprə'veɪʃən/ noun, formal  
the state of being deprived

→ See Thesaurus box at **poor**

**depth** /depθ/ noun

**1** the distance from the top of something to the bottom: *The depth of the river is about 30 feet.*

**2** the distance from the front of an object to the back: *Do the shelves have enough depth to hold these wide books?*

**3** how strong, great, or serious something is: *I understand the depth of your feelings for this city, because I love living here too.*

**dep·u·ty** /'depyəti/ noun plural **deputies**

**1** a **deputy director/superintendent/chief, etc.** = someone who is directly below someone in an important position: *She is the deputy editor of the magazine; her boss is the editor.*

**2** someone whose job is to help a SHERIFF

**der·e·lict** /'derə,lɪkt/ adjective, formal

a derelict building or vehicle is in bad condition because no one has used it in a long time: *They built a new prison to replace the derelict old one.*

**de·rive** /dɪ'raɪv/ **[Ac]** verb**PHRASAL VERB****derive from something** also **be derived from something**

to develop or come from something else: *Our word “science” derives from the Latin word “scientia,” meaning “knowledge.”*

**de·scend** /dɪ'send/ verb

**1** formal to go down: *We got in the elevator on the fifth floor and descended to the first floor.* **ANTONYM** **ascend**

**2** **be descended from someone** = to be related to a person who lived a long time ago: *He is descended from a Native American chief.*

**de·scend·ant** /dɪ'sendənt/ noun

someone who is related to a person who lived a long time ago: *Queen Elizabeth II is a direct descendant of Queen Victoria.*

**de·scent** /dɪ'sent/ noun, formal

**1** the action of going down: *The plane began its descent to the airport.*

**2** the state of being related to people from another country who lived a long time ago: *He is of Italian descent (=his family came from Italy a long time ago).*

**de·scribe** /dɪ'skraɪb/ verb

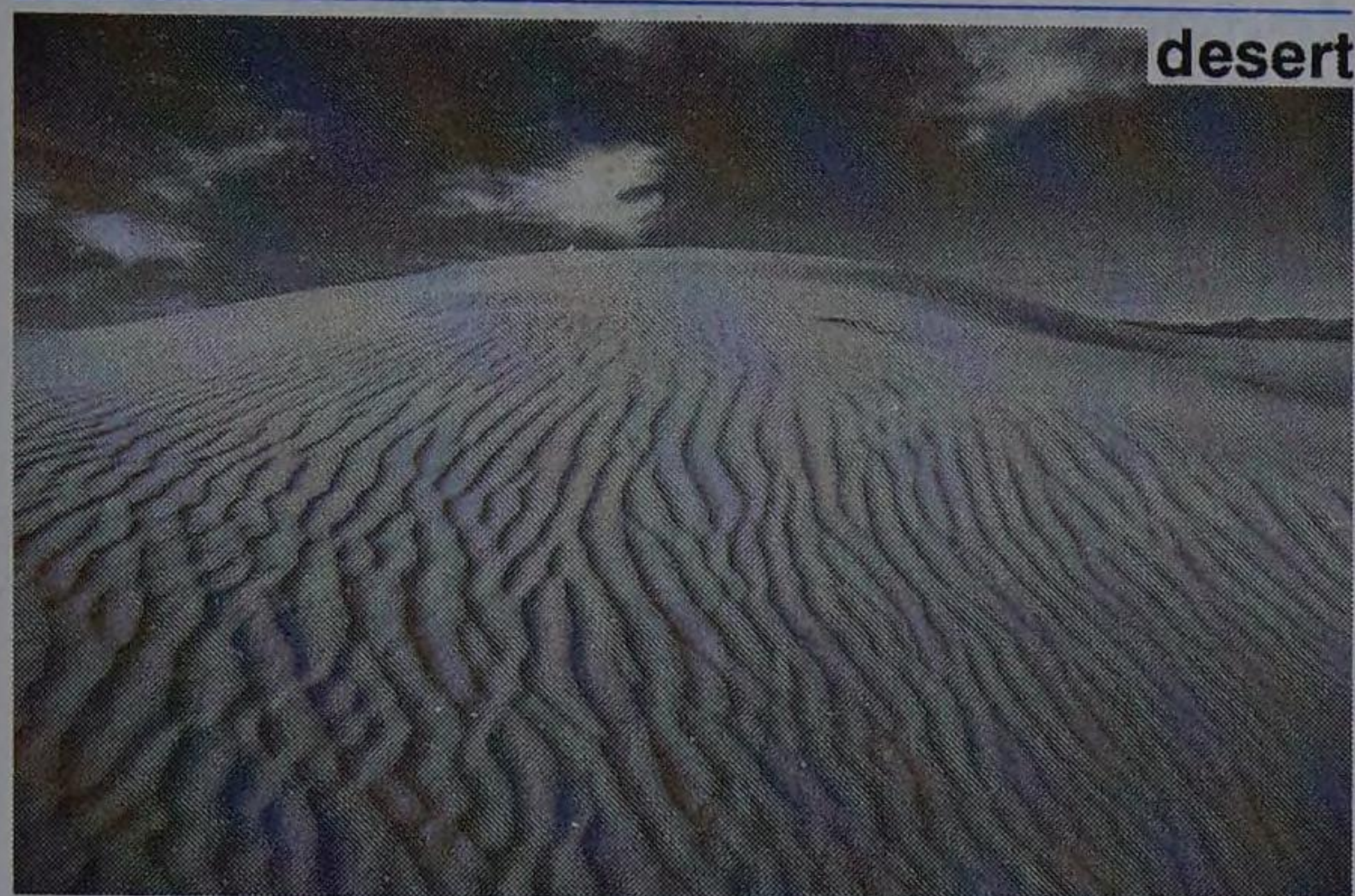
to say what someone or something is like: *Can you describe the man who took your purse? | I'm so confused. It's hard to describe how I feel.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **description** noun

**de·scrip·tion** /dɪ'skrɪpʃən/ noun

a written or spoken statement that tells what someone or something is like: *Kate gave us a description of her new house: it is a brick house with three bedrooms and a big yard.*



**des·ert¹** /'dezərt/ *noun*

a large area of hot dry land where few plants grow: *The Sahara desert in northern Africa is the largest desert in the world.*

**de·sert²** /dɪ'zərt/ *verb*

to leave your family, home, etc. and not go back: *He deserted his wife and children and moved to a different state.*

—**desertion** /dɪ'zəʃən/ *noun* the action of deserting someone

**de·sert·ed** /dɪ'zərtɪd/ *adjective*

if a place which usually has people in it is deserted, there are no people there: *Everyone stays home at night, and the streets are deserted.* **SYNONYM** empty

**de·sert·er** /dɪ'zərtə/ *noun*

a soldier who has left the army without permission

**de·serve** /dɪ'zəv/ *verb*

if you deserve something, you should get it because of what you have done: *After working so hard, you deserve a rest. | The team played well – they deserved to win.*

**de·sign¹** /dɪ'zaɪn/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** the form or structure of something that is made: *I like the design of the car; it's beautiful.*

**2** a drawing of something new that will be made: *Have you seen the designs for the new house?*

**3** a pattern used for decorating something: *The vase is decorated with a simple design of flowers.*

**4** the process of making a drawing of something new that will be made: *He studied design in college.*

**design²** *verb*

to draw or plan something that is going to be made or built: *Did you design your dress yourself?*

—**designer** *noun* someone who designs new things: *a fashion designer*

**de·signed** /dɪ'zaɪnd/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

made or planned for a particular purpose or type of person: *The exercise program is designed to improve your general fitness. | The game is designed for younger children.*

**de·sir·a·ble** /dɪ'zaɪrəbəl/ *adjective, formal*

if something is desirable, people want it because it is good or useful: *The most desirable homes are in this beautiful neighborhood.*

—**desirability** /dɪ,zaɪrə'bɪləti/ *noun* the quality of being desirable

**de·sire¹** /dɪ'zaɪə/ *noun, formal*

a strong feeling of wanting something: *She has a strong desire for independence. She will not take money from anyone.*

**desire²** *verb, formal*

to want something: *The witch said to the girl, "I will give you what you desire most, but you must help me first."*

**desk** /desk/ *noun*

a table that you can sit at to write and work: *Marie sat down at her desk and turned on her computer.*

→ See picture on pages A10 and A18

**desk·top com·put·er** /,deskɪp

kəm'pyutə/ also **desktop** *noun*

a computer that is small enough to be used on a desk

→ See picture on page A20

**des·o·late** /'desələt/ *adjective, formal*

a place that is desolate is empty and makes you feel sad and lonely: *We drove along a desolate stretch of road without trees, grass, or buildings.*

**de·spair** /dɪ'speɪ/ *noun, formal*

a very sad feeling, when you have no hope at all: *When I realized I could not move, I was in despair.*

—**despair** *verb, formal* to feel despair

**des·per·ate** /'despərət/ *adjective*

wanting something very much, and willing to do anything to get it or do it: *I had almost no money, and I was desperate for a job.*

—**desperately** *adverb*: *The doctors tried desperately to save her life.*

—**desperation** /,despə'reɪʃən/ *noun, formal* the state of feeling desperate: *Finally, in*



desperation, she asked her parents for the money.

**de-spise** /dɪ'spaɪz/ verb, formal

to hate someone or something and have no respect for them: *She despised him for hitting her.* **SYNONYM** hate

→ See Thesaurus box at **hate**<sup>1</sup>

**de-spite** /dɪ'spaɪt/ **Ac** preposition

although something happens or exists: *Despite the bad weather, we enjoyed our trip* (=the weather was bad, but we enjoyed our trip anyway).

**des-ert** /dɪ'zɜ:t/ noun

sweet food that you eat after the main part of a meal: *Would you like some dessert?*

**des-ti-na-tion** /,destə'neɪʃən/ noun, formal

the place that you are traveling to: *At about 10:00, we reached our destination* (=arrived at the place we were traveling to).

**des-tined** /'destənd/ adjective

if you are destined to do something, you will definitely do it in the future: *My mother said she knew when I was a little girl that I was destined to become famous.*

**des-ti-ny** /'destəni/ noun plural **destinies**

the things that will definitely happen to someone in the future: *It was his destiny to become a leader.* **SYNONYM** fate

**de-stroy** /dɪ'strɔɪ/ verb destroyed, third person singular **destroys**

to damage something so badly that there is not much of it left: *The building was destroyed by fire.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **destroy** verb
- **destruction** noun
- **destructive** adjective

**de-stroy-er** /dɪ'strɔɪə/ noun

a small fast military ship with guns

**de-struc-tion** /dɪ'strʌkʃən/ noun

the act of destroying something: *The environmental group wants to stop the destruction of the forests.*

**de-struc-tive** /dɪ'strʌktɪv/ adjective

causing a lot of damage: *The computer virus is very destructive; it can make you lose all your files.*

**de-tach** /dɪ'tætʃ/ verb, formal

to remove something from the thing that it is attached to: *You can detach the hood from the jacket.*

**de-tached** /dɪ'tætʃt/ adjective, formal

not having an emotional feeling about something: *During the funeral, he seemed detached; he did not cry at all.*

—**detachment** noun the state of being detached

**de-tail** /'dɪteɪl/ noun

**1** one small fact or piece of information about something: *She wanted to know every detail of the trip, including where we ate dinner, the people we met, and how much everything cost.*

**2 in detail** = in a way that includes a lot of details: *She described the dress in detail; she said it was green with short sleeves and yellow and white flowers.*

**de-tailed** /dɪ'teɪld/ adjective

including a lot of details: *He gave a long and detailed explanation of his idea, including exactly how much each item would cost. | It is a detailed map, showing every house on the street.*

**de-tain** /dɪ'teɪn/ verb, formal

to officially stop someone from leaving a place: *Police detained one of the men for two nights.* **SYNONYM** hold

**de-tect** /dɪ'tekt/ **Ac** verb, formal

to find or notice something that is not easy to see, hear, etc.: *They had detected cracks in the plane's wings.* **SYNONYM** notice

—**detector** noun a piece of equipment that detects something: *We had to walk through a metal detector at the airport.*

—**detection** /dɪ'tekʃən/ noun, formal the act of detecting something

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **detect** verb
- **detection** noun
- **detector** noun

**de-tec-tive** /dɪ'tektɪv/ **Ac** noun

a police officer whose job is to find out who has committed a crime

**de-ten-tion** /dɪ'tenʃən/ noun

a punishment by which a student has to stay at school after the other students have left: *I got detention for talking too much in class.*



**de·ter** /dɪ'tə/ verb deterred, deterring

formal

to stop someone from doing something by making it difficult: *Do you think higher cigarette prices would deter people from smoking?*

**de·ter·gent** /dɪ'tɜdʒənt/ noun

a liquid or powder like soap that is used for washing clothes, dishes, etc.: *He poured laundry detergent into the washing machine.*

**de·te·ri·o·rate** /dɪ'tɪriə'reɪt/ verb,

formal

to become worse: *Her health deteriorated until she could not take care of herself anymore.*

—**deterioration** /dɪ'tɪriə'reɪʃən/ noun, formal the process of deteriorating

**de·ter·mi·na·tion** /dɪ'tɜmə'neɪʃən/

noun

a strong desire to do something, even when it will be difficult: *He has been practicing very hard; his determination to win is very clear.*

**de·ter·mine** /dɪ'tɜmɪn/ verb, formal

**1** to find out the facts about something: *Police are trying to determine if his death was an accident.*

**2** to control what size, level, type, etc. something is: *Grades are determined by how good a student's work is.*

**de·ter·mined** /dɪ'tɜmɪnd/ adjective

having a strong desire to do something, even when it will be difficult: *She was determined to become a doctor, so she worked hard to earn the money to go to medical school.*

**de·test** /dɪ'test/ verb, formal

to hate someone or something very much: *I detest cigarettes; I will not go into a room when someone is smoking.* **SYNONYM**

**despise, hate**

→ See Thesaurus box at **hate**<sup>1</sup>

**det·o·nate** /'detn,eɪt/ verb, formal

if someone detonates a bomb, it explodes: *The terrorist tried to detonate the bomb.*

**de·tour** /'dɪtʊr/ noun

a way of going from one place to another that is longer than the usual way: *We had to take a detour because they were fixing the road.*

**dev·as·tate** /'devə,steɪt/ verb, formal

to damage something very badly: *The city was devastated by an earthquake.*

—**devastation** /,devə'steɪʃən/ noun, formal great damage

**devastated** /'devə,steɪtɪd/ adjective, formal

extremely upset: *She was devastated when her parents got divorced.*

**dev·as·tat·ing** /'devə,steɪtɪŋ/ adjective, formal

**1** making someone feel extremely upset: *The news of her sister's sudden death was devastating.*

**2** causing a lot of damage: *The storm was devastating to the Florida coast.*

**de·vel·op** /dɪ'veləp/ verb

**1** to become bigger, better, more important, etc.: *Caterpillars develop into butterflies. I want to develop my career as a singer.*

**2** to begin to have an illness, problem, or quality: *Her baby developed a fever during the night. I Then a problem developed (=began).*

**3** to design and produce something new: *The company is developing a new type of plane.*

**4** to make pictures out of film from a camera

**de·vel·oped** /dɪ'veləpt/ adjective

**1 developed countries/nations** = rich countries that have a lot of industry

**2 fully/highly/well developed** = if something is fully, highly, etc. developed, it has become big or effective: *He has big well-developed muscles.*

**de·vel·op·ing** /dɪ'veləpɪŋ/ adjective

**developing countries/nations** = poor countries that are trying to increase their industry and trade

**de·vel·op·ment** /dɪ'veləpmənt/ noun

**1** the process of growing: *When a woman is three months pregnant, the baby's brain is still at an early stage of development.*

**2** a new event or piece of work that changes a situation: *The magazine tells you about the latest developments in science (=the newest things that are happening in science). I There's been a new development in the peace talks.*

**3** a group of new buildings, or the process of building them: *They have started building a new housing development where the farm used to be.*



**de·vi·ate** /'divi,eɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal  
to do something different from what has been planned or what is normal: *You must not deviate from these instructions, or the plan will fail.*

—**deviation** /,divi'eɪʃən/ noun the act of deviating

**de·vice** /dɪ'vaɪs/ **[Ac]** noun

a machine or small object that is used to do a particular thing: *A corkscrew is a device for opening wine bottles.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **machine**<sup>1</sup>

**dev·il** /'devəl/ noun

**the devil** = the most powerful evil spirit in some religions, such as Christianity

**de·vi·ous** /'diviəs/ adjective, formal

using tricks or lies to get what you want: *He had thought of a devious plan to steal the money.*

**de·vise** /dɪ'vaɪz/ verb, formal

to think of a way of doing something: *The teacher devised a game to make math more fun.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **invent**

**de·vote** /dɪ'vout/ **[Ac]** verb

**devote yourself/your time/your life to something** = to spend all your time doing something: *I devoted myself to finishing my project.* **SYNONYM** **dedicate**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **devote** verb
- **devotion** noun
- **devoted** adjective

**de·vot·ed** /dɪ'voutɪd/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1** loving and caring about someone a lot: *His girlfriend was completely devoted to him, and spent all her time with him.*

**2** **be devoted to something** = to deal with only one thing: *This chapter of the book is devoted to poetry.*

**de·vo·tion** /dɪ'vouʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

the condition of loving or caring about someone or something a lot: *His devotion to his family is easy to see; he loves to be with his wife and kids whenever he can.*

**de·vour** /dɪ'vaʊə/ verb, formal

to eat something quickly because you are very hungry: *The children devoured the candy immediately.*

**de·vout** /dɪ'vaʊt/ adjective

very religious: *a devout Hindu*

**dew** /du/ noun

the small drops of water that form on things outdoors during the night: *The grass was wet with dew* (=covered with dew).

**di·a·be·tes** /,daɪə'bitɪz/ noun

a disease in which you have too much sugar in your blood

—**diabetic** /,daɪə'betɪk/ adjective someone who is diabetic has diabetes

—**diabetic** noun someone with diabetes

**di·ag·nose** /,daɪəg'nəʊs/ verb, formal

to find out and say what illness someone has: *In March, he was diagnosed with cancer* (=a doctor said he had cancer).

**di·ag·no·sis** /,daɪəg'nəʊsəs/ noun plural

**diagnoses** /,daɪəg'nəʊsɪz/ formal

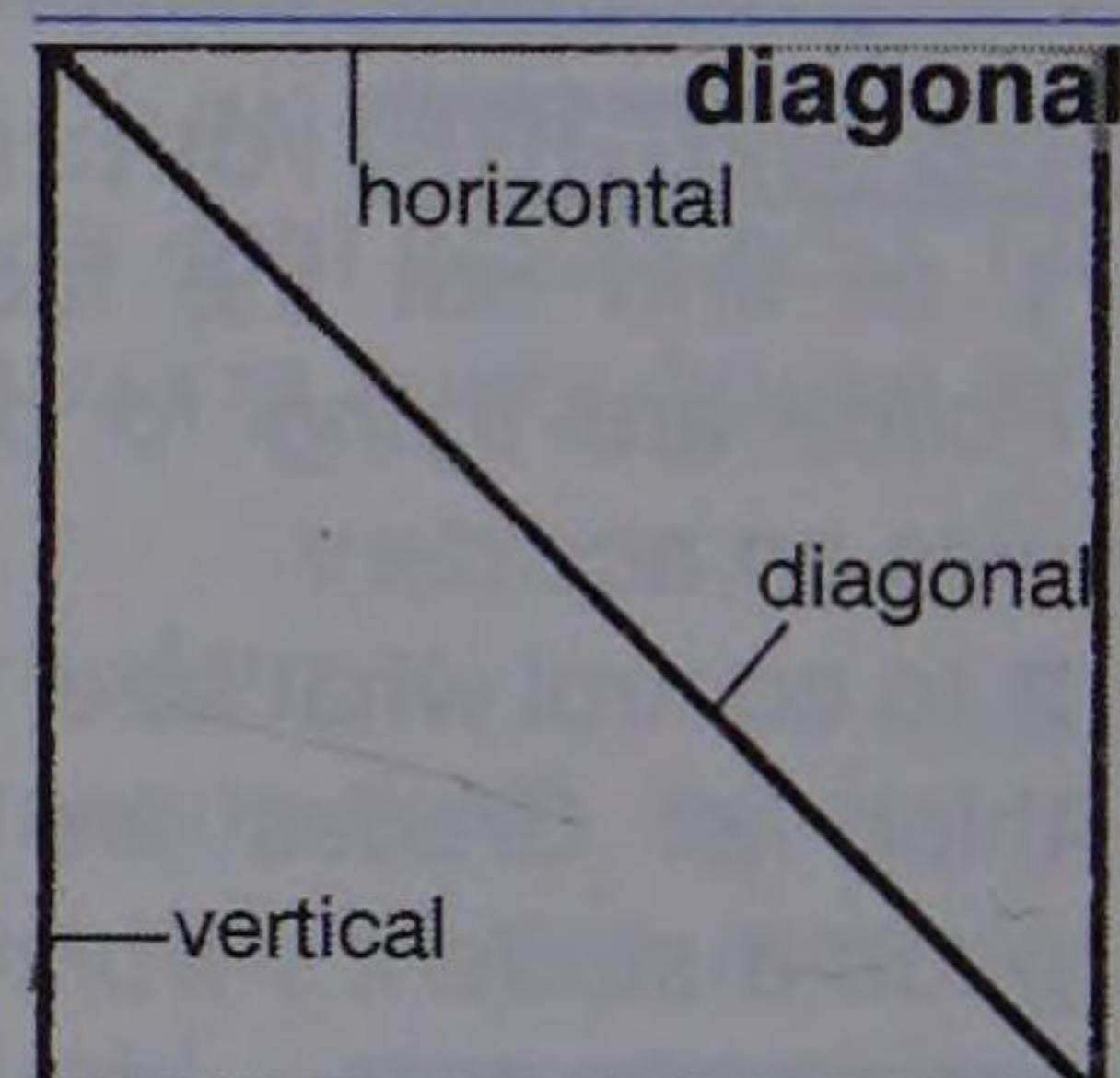
the process or result of diagnosing an illness: *The doctor made a diagnosis of heart disease.*

**di·ag·o·nal**

/daɪ'æɡənəl/

adjective

a diagonal line joins two opposite corners of a square: *Draw a diagonal line from one corner to the other.*



—**diagonal** noun a diagonal line

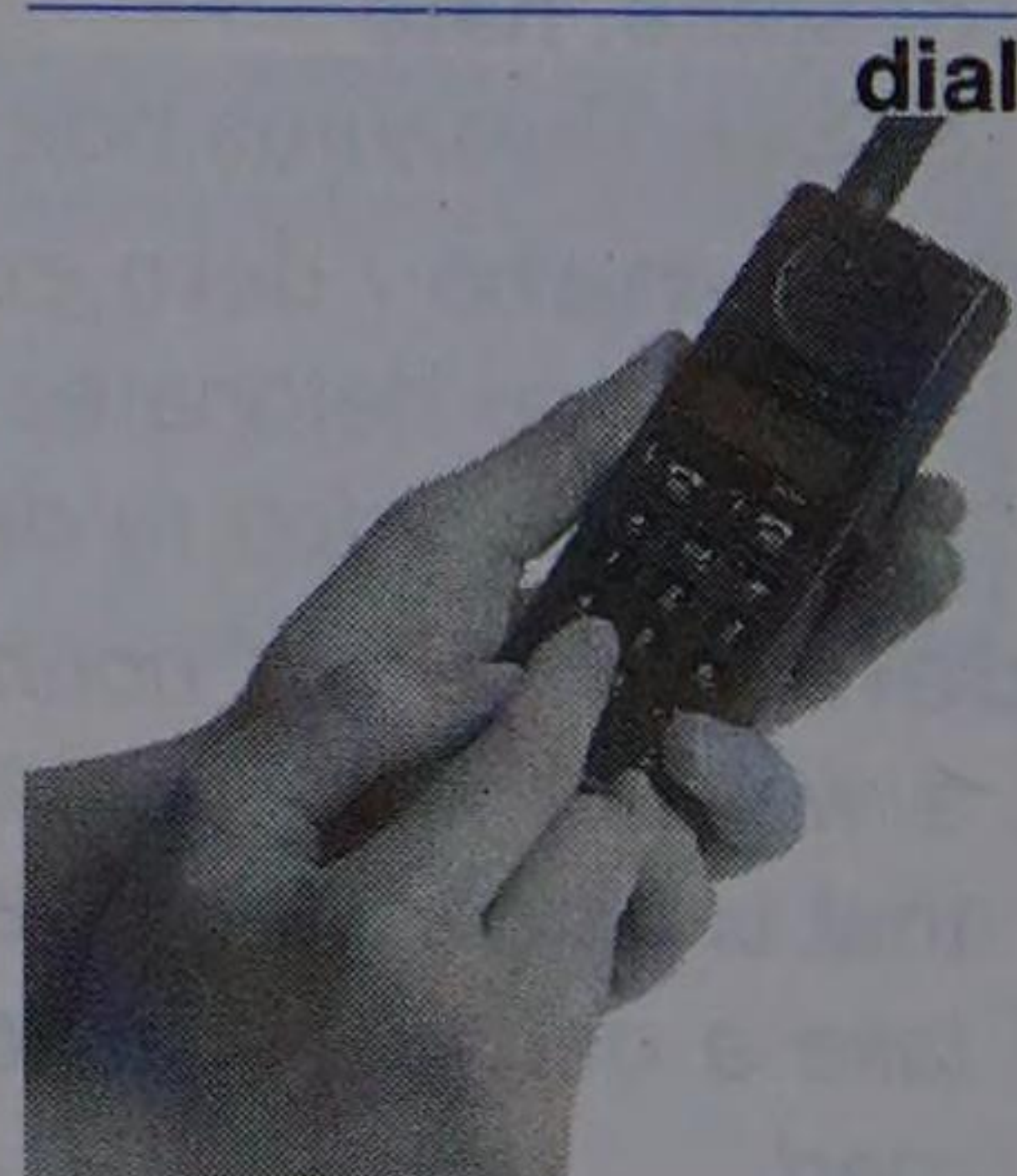
—**diagonally** adverb: *Fold the piece of paper diagonally* (=in a diagonal line).

**di·a·gram** /'daɪə,græm/ noun

a drawing that you make to show what shape or arrangement something has, or how it works: *There is a diagram of the engine on the next page.*

**di·al**<sup>1</sup> /'daɪəl/ verb

to press the buttons or turn the dial on a telephone in order to make a call: *I dialled her number, but nobody answered the phone.* **SYNONYM** **call**



**dial**<sup>2</sup> noun

a round flat part of a clock, telephone, or other machine that has numbers on it, or



that can be turned in order to choose numbers: *If you want to listen to a different station, turn the dial on the radio.*

**di·a·lect** /'daɪə,lekt/ *noun*

a form of a language that is spoken in one area: *There are many dialects of German.*

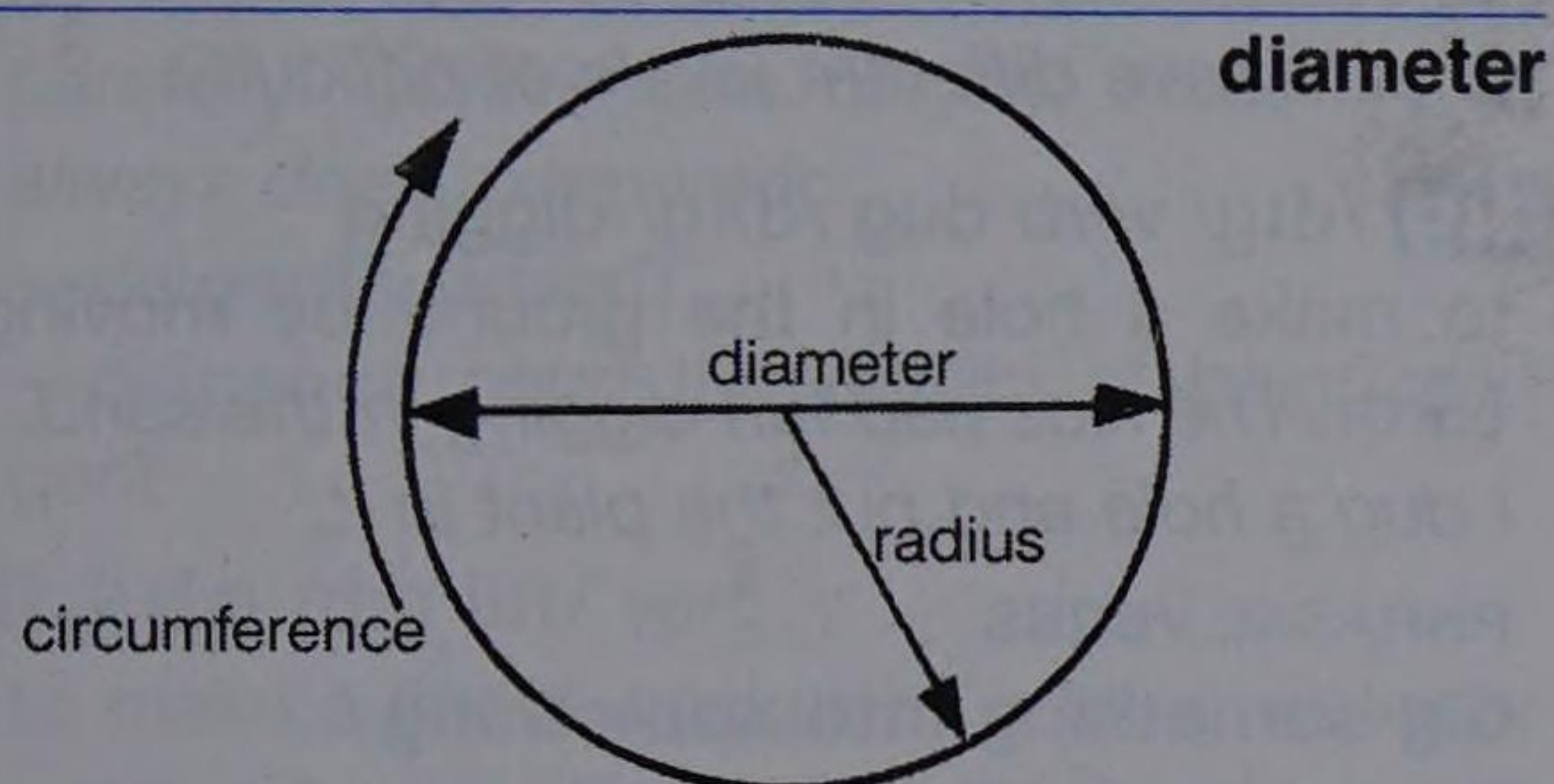
→ See Thesaurus box at **language**

**di·a·logue** also **dialog** /'daɪə,lɒg/ *noun*

conversation in a book, play, or movie: *The dialogue didn't sound real – people don't talk like that.*

**'dial tone** *noun*

the sound you hear when you pick up a telephone before making a call



**di·am·e·ter** /daɪ'æmətə/ *noun*

a line or measurement from one side of a circle to the other, through the center: *The table is five feet in diameter (=it measures five feet across).*

**di·a·mond** /'daɪmənd/ *noun*

**1** a very hard, clear, expensive stone, used in jewelry: *He bought her a diamond engagement ring.*

**2** a shape with four equal sloping sides, with its points at the top, bottom, and sides

**3** a card used in card games, with red diamond shapes on it: *the three of diamonds* (=a card with three diamond shapes)

**4** the area in a baseball field that is inside the four BASES

**di·a·per** /'daɪpə/ *noun*

a piece of cloth or paper that is put around a baby's bottom to hold its waste: *I think we need to change the baby's diaper* (=put on a new one).

**di·ar·rhe·a** /,daɪə'riə/ *noun*

an illness in which your body waste is liquid and comes out often: *I had diarrhea after eating some meat that was not fresh.*

**di·a·ry** /'daɪəri/ *noun* plural **diaries**

a book in which you write about the things that happen to you each day: *Do you keep a diary* (=write in a diary regularly)?

**dice** /daɪs/ *plural noun* singular **die** /daɪ/

two small blocks of wood or plastic with a different number of spots on each side, used in games: *She rolled the dice* (=threw them onto a surface).

**dic·tate** /'dɪkteɪt/ *verb*

**1** to say words for someone else to write down: *She dictated a letter to her secretary.*

**2** to tell people exactly what they must do: *You can't dictate how I should live my life!*

**dic·ta·tion** /dɪk'teɪʃən/ *noun*

the act of saying words so that someone can write them down exactly as you say them

**dic·ta·tor** /'dɪkteɪtə/ *noun*

a leader of a country who has complete power: *Dictators often put people who oppose them in prison.*

—**dictatorship** /dɪk'teɪtəʃɪp/ *noun* a country that is ruled by a dictator

**dic·tion·ar·y** /'dɪkʃə,neri/ *noun* plural **dictionaries**

a book that shows words in ALPHABETICAL order and says what they mean: *If you don't know what a word means, look it up in a dictionary* (=find the meaning in a dictionary).

**did** /dɪd/ *verb*

the past tense of DO

**did·n't** /'dɪdnt/ *verb*

the short form of "did not": *She didn't have enough money to buy a new car.*

**die<sup>1</sup>** /daɪ/ *verb* died, dying

**1** to stop living: *My grandmother died last year.* | *He died of cancer* (=died because he had cancer).

**2 be dying to do something informal** = to want to do something very much: *I'm dying to know what happened, but my parents won't tell me.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**die down**

if something dies down, it becomes less strong: *The wind died down, and the rain stopped.*

**die out**

if a type of animal or thing dies out, it disappears completely: *Scientists have different ideas about why dinosaurs died out.*

**die<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

the singular of DICE



**die-sel** /'dizəl/ also **diesel 'fuel** noun  
a type of FUEL used in some engines, for example in big trucks

**di-et** /'daɪət/ noun

**1** the type of food that you eat each day: *Fruit and vegetables are part of a healthy diet.*

**2** a plan to eat less food or eat a particular type of food: *No dessert for me – I'm on a diet (=trying to eat less food).*

—**diet** verb to try to eat less food or eat a particular type of food: *You look thinner. Have you been dieting?*

—**dietician** /,daɪə'tɪʃən/ noun someone who studies food and advises people on what to eat

**dif-fer** /'dɪfə/ verb, formal

to be different: *How does the movie differ from the book?*

**dif-ference** /'dɪfərəns/ noun

**1** a way in which one thing is not the same as another: *There are several differences between baseball and softball – one is that the ball in softball is bigger and softer. | What's the difference in price between the two cars? | I can't tell the difference between the two dogs (=I can't see how they are different from each other).* **ANTONYM** similarity

**2 make a difference** = to have a good effect on a situation: *Exercise can make a big difference in how you feel (=change the way you feel in an important way).*

**3 make no difference** = to be unimportant or to have no effect: *It makes no difference to me whether your hair is long or short – I like it both ways.*

**dif-ferent** /'dɪfrənt/ adjective

not the same: *My sister and I like different kinds of music. | Ben feels different from most kids at his school, because he doesn't like sports.* **ANTONYM** the same

—**differently** adverb

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **different** adjective
- **differently** adverb
- **differ** verb
- **difference** noun

**dif-fer-en-ti-ate** /,dɪfə'renʃi,eɪt/ **Ac**

verb, formal

to know that two things are different from each other: *I can't differentiate between the*

*colors red and green; the two colors look the same to me.*

**dif-fi-cult** /'dɪfɪ,kəlt/ adjective

not easy to do, understand, or deal with: *The first question on the test was difficult, and I got it wrong. | It's difficult for us to guess what will happen.* **SYNONYM** hard; **ANTONYM** easy

**dif-fi-cul-ty** /'dɪfɪ,kəlti/ noun

**1** a problem or something that causes trouble: *I have difficulty (=have problems) getting to sleep. | She walks with difficulty, because she hurt her knees.*

**2** the quality of being difficult: *The worksheets have different levels of difficulty.*

**dig** /dɪg/ verb dug /dʌg/ digging

to make a hole in the ground by moving earth: *The kids had fun digging in the sand. | I dug a hole and put the plant in it.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**dig something into something**

to push something hard into something else: *She dug her fingernails into my arm.*

**dig something up**

to take something out of the ground: *The dog dug up a bone in the backyard.*

**di-gest** /daɪ'dʒest/ verb

when you digest food, it changes in your stomach into a form your body can use: *Some babies can't drink cow's milk because they can't digest it easily.*

—**digestible** adjective easy to digest

**di-ges-tion** /daɪ'dʒestʃən/ noun

the process of digesting food

—**digestive** /daɪ'dʒestɪv/ adjective relating to digestion

**dig-it** /'dɪdʒɪt/ noun, formal

any of the numbers from 0 to 9: *a four-digit number such as 9723*

**dig-i-tal** /'dɪdʒɪtl/ adjective

**1** using a system in which information is represented in the form of ones and zeros: *It's a digital camera, so it doesn't have film.*

**2** giving information in the form of numbers: *It is easy for children to read digital clocks.*

**dig-ni-fied** /'dɪgnə,faid/ adjective

calm, serious, and making people feel respect: *The professor was a tall, dignified old man.*



**dig·ni·ty** /'dɪɡnəti/ *noun*

calm, serious behavior that makes people respect you: *Everyone respected her because she always behaved with great dignity.*

**dike** /daɪk/ *noun*

a wall or bank built to keep back water and prevent flooding

**di·lem·ma** /də'lemə/ *noun*

a situation in which you have to make a difficult choice between two actions: *This is my dilemma: should I ask him to the party, or should I wait and hope he asks me?*

**dil·i·gent** /'dɪlədʒənt/ *adjective, formal*

someone who is diligent works hard and carefully: *Connie is a diligent student and always does extra work.*

—**diligently** *adverb*

—**diligence** *noun* the quality of being diligent

**di·lute** /daɪ'lut/ *verb*

to make a liquid weaker by adding water or another liquid: *You can dilute the drink with water.*

—**dilution** /daɪ'luʃən/ *noun* the act of diluting something

**dim** /dɪm/ *adjective* **dimmer, dimmest**

not bright: *I couldn't read the sign because the light was too dim.*

—**dimness** *noun*

**dime** /daɪm/ *noun*

a coin that is worth 10 cents

→ See Thesaurus box at **money**

**di·men·sion** /dɪ'menʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

the length, height, or width of something: *The dimensions of the room are 10 feet by 12 feet (=10 feet wide and 12 feet long).*

**di·min·ish** /dɪ'mɪnɪʃ/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to become smaller or weaker: *The noise had diminished, so we could talk without shouting.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **decrease**<sup>1</sup>

**din** /dɪn/ *noun, formal*

a loud, continuous, and annoying noise: *I could not hear him because of the din of the crowd.*

**dine** /daɪn/ *verb, formal*

to have dinner: *He had been invited to dine with the president.*

**din·er** /'daɪnə/ *noun*

**1** a small restaurant that serves cheap meals

**2** *formal* someone who is eating in a restaurant: *The other diners did not look up when we came in.*

**'dining room** *noun*

a room in a house where you sit down at a table to eat meals

**'dining ,table** *also* **'dining room**

**,table, dinner table** *noun*

a table at which you eat meals at home

**din·ner** /'dɪnə/ *noun*

the main meal of the day, usually eaten in the evening: *We usually have dinner around 6:30. | We had fish for dinner.*

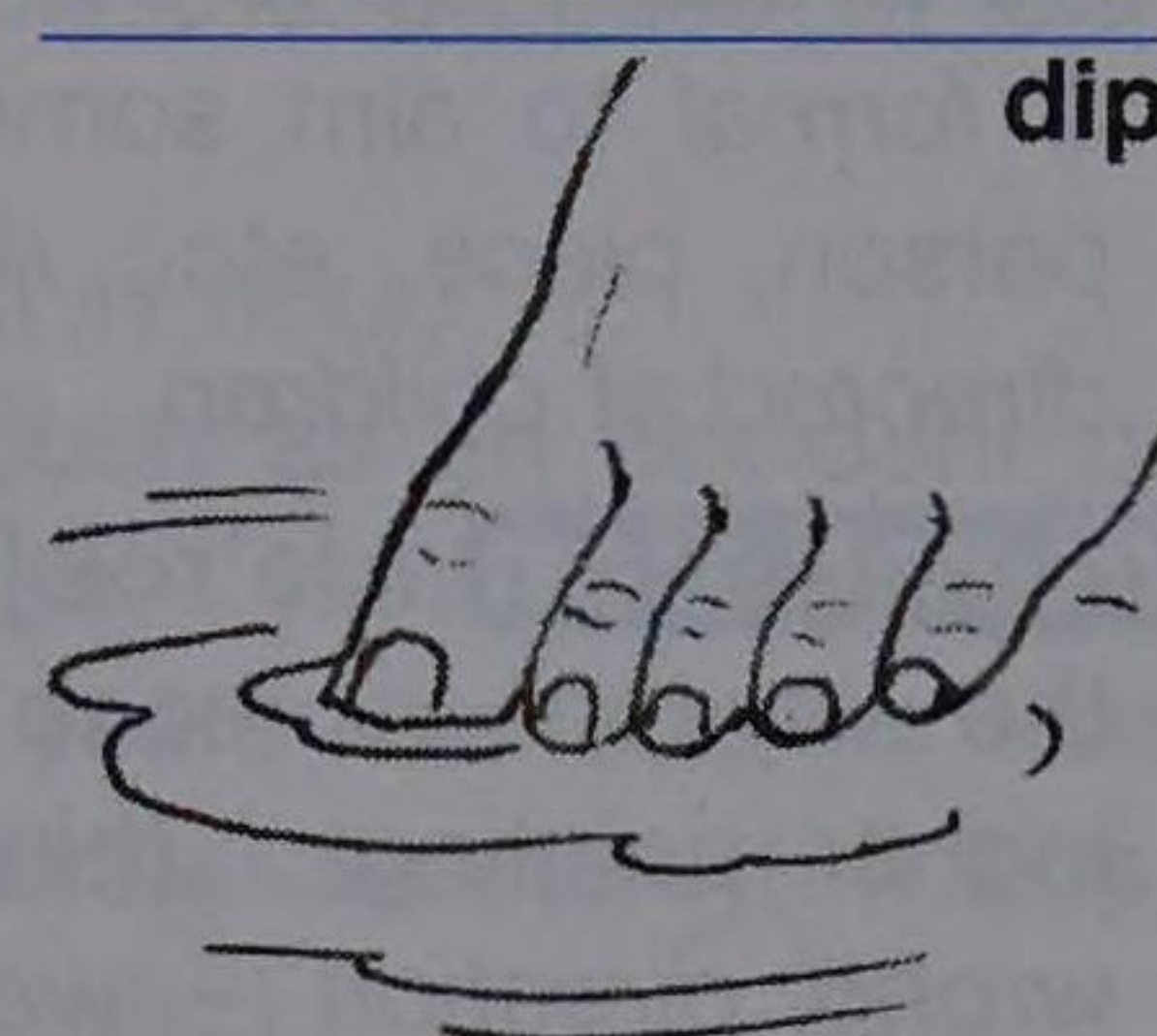
**di·no·saur** /'daɪnə,sɔː/ *noun*

a large animal that lived millions of years ago and no longer exists: *Dinosaurs were reptiles.*

**dip**<sup>1</sup> /dɪp/ *verb*

dipped, dipping

to put something into a liquid and quickly take it out again: *I dipped my toe into the water to feel if it was cold.*



**dip**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a thick mixture that you can dip CHIPS, vegetables, etc. into before you eat them: *There was a cheese dip for the potato chips.*

**di·plo·ma** /dɪ'pləʊmə/ *noun*

a document that you get when you have successfully completed high school, college, etc.: *He earned his high school diploma in 2001.*

**dip·lo·mat** /'dɪplə,mæt/ *noun*

someone who officially represents his or her government in a foreign country and helps to solve problems between the countries

**dip·lo·mat·ic** /,dɪplə'mætɪk/ *adjective*

**1** relating to the work of diplomats: *We must use diplomatic efforts to end the war.*

**2** if you are diplomatic, you deal with people without upsetting them: *I tried to be diplomatic when I told her she had made a mistake.*

—**diplomacy** /dɪ'pləʊməsi/ *noun* the work of diplomats: *In this case, diplomacy has failed.*

—**diplomatically** /,dɪplə'mætɪkli/ *adverb* in a way that does not upset people: *"You're both right in a way," she said diplomatically.*



**di·rect¹** /də'rekt/ adjective

- 1** going straight from one place to another: *What's the most direct route to the airport?*
- 2** with no other person, thing, or event involved: *The case was solved as a direct result of her phone call to police.* **ANTONYM** indirect
- 3** saying exactly what you mean in an honest and clear way: *She's always very direct, so you don't have to guess what she's thinking.* **ANTONYM** indirect

—**directness** noun the quality that a direct person has

**direct²** verb

- 1** the person who directs a movie or play tells the actors what to do: *The movie was directed by Joel Coen.*
- 2** formal to tell someone the way to a place: *He directed me to the airport.*
- 3** formal to aim something at a particular person, place, etc.: *A lot of advertising is directed at children.*

**di·rec·tion** /də'rekʃən/ noun

the way that someone or something is moving or pointing: *I think we're going in the wrong direction – we should be heading north.* | *He walked in the direction of the house (=toward the house).*

**di·rec·tions** /də'rekʃənz/ plural noun

information about how to get to a place, or about how to do something: *Could you give me directions to the airport?* | *Follow the directions on the bottle (=do what they tell you to do).*

**di·rect·ly** /də'rektli/ adverb

- 1** with no other person, thing, or event involved: *He was driving the car that hit the boys; he is directly responsible for their deaths.*
- 2** exactly in a particular position or direction: *Lucas sat directly behind us.*

**di·rec·tor** /də'rektə/ noun

- 1** the person who tells the actors what to do in a movie or play
  - 2** someone who controls an organization or one of its activities: *The director of the museum is in charge of all the employees.*
- See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**di·rec·to·ry** /da'i'rektəri/ noun plural **directories**

- 1** a book containing a list of people,

businesses, etc.: *Is his phone number in the telephone directory?*

- 2** a sign in a building that tells you where to find someone or something: *Check the directory for the doctor's office number.*

- 3** a list of FILES on part of a computer: *How do I create a new directory on the C drive?*

**dirt** /dɜ:t/ noun

soil from the ground: *He was digging a hole and had dirt all over his clothes.* **SYNONYM** soil

**dirt·y** /'dɜ:ti/ adjective **dirtier, dirtiest**

- 1** not clean: *My hands were dirty because I'd been working outside.*

**THESAURUS: dirty**

**filthy** very dirty: *The carpet was filthy.*

**dusty** covered with dust: *piles of dusty books*

**muddy** covered in mud: *My boots were all muddy.*

**greasy** covered with a lot of oil or grease (=an oily substance): *His hair was greasy; it looked like it hadn't been washed in a week.*

- 2** relating to sex and thought to be bad: *The teacher heard him telling dirty jokes to the other kids.*

**dis·a·bil·i·ty** /,dɪsə'bɪləti/ noun plural **disabilities**

a physical or mental condition that makes it difficult for someone to do things: *Buildings should be changed so that people with disabilities can use them.*

**dis·a·bled** /dɪs'eɪbəld/ adjective

someone who is disabled cannot use a part of his or her body in the way that most people can: *The building was built to make it easy for the disabled (=disabled people) to move around.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **handicapped**

**dis·ad·van·tage** /,dɪsəd'væntɪdʒ/ noun

- 1** something that may make someone less successful than other people: *Because I didn't speak Spanish and everyone else did, I was at a disadvantage (=had problems).*
- 2** a bad feature of something: *One disadvantage of this treatment is that it is expensive.*

**dis·ad·van·taged** /,dɪsəd'væntɪdʒd/ adjective, formal

someone who is disadvantaged has social problems that make it difficult for him or her



to succeed: *The government provides money to help disadvantaged students.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **poor**

**dis·a·gree** /,dɪsə'gri/ verb

to have a different opinion from someone else: *He thought it was a good idea to ask the college for more money, but I disagreed with him. | We disagree about how to run the business.* **ANTONYM** agree

**dis·a·gree·a·ble** /,dɪsə'griəbəl/ adjective, formal

not pleasant or nice: *He's a disagreeable man, and I don't enjoy spending time with him.*

**dis·a·gree·ment** /,dɪsə'grimənt/ noun  
a situation in which people disagree or argue: *We had a disagreement with our neighbors, and we haven't spoken to them for weeks.*

**dis·ap·pear** /,dɪsə'piə/ verb

**1** to become impossible to see or find: *My watch has disappeared – someone must have taken it.*

**2** to stop existing: *The snow had disappeared.*

—**disappearance** noun the act of disappearing: *They were very worried about their son's disappearance.*

**dis·ap·point** /,dɪsə'pɔɪnt/ verb

to make someone sad because something does not happen or is not as good as expected: *I'm sorry to disappoint you, but the trip has been canceled.*

—**disappointed** adjective sad because something does not happen or is not as good as expected: *I'm disappointed that I didn't win.*

—**disappointing** adjective making you feel disappointed: *The team has had a disappointing season.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **disappoint** verb
- **disappointed** adjective
- **disappointing** adjective
- **disappointment** noun

**dis·ap·point·ment** /,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt/ noun

**1** a feeling of sadness because something has not happened or is not as good as

expected: *She tried to hide her disappointment at not winning.*

**2** someone or something that is not as good as you hoped or expected: *Their second album was a disappointment.*

**dis·ap·prov·al** /,dɪsə'pruvəl/ noun

the opinion that someone or something is bad or wrong: *My sister's disapproval of my behavior made me mad.* **ANTONYM** approval

**dis·ap·prove** /,dɪsə'pruv/ verb

to think that someone or something is bad or wrong: *Her parents disapproved of her boyfriend.* **ANTONYM** approve

**dis·arm** /dɪs'ɑːrm/ verb

if a country or group disarms, it reduces the number of weapons and soldiers it has: *Both sides must disarm before they can discuss peace.*

—**disarmament** noun the process of disarming

**dis·as·ter** /dɪ'zæstə/ noun

**1** a sudden event such as an accident or flood that causes great harm or damage: *Over the past two years the country has been hit by three natural disasters (=floods, earthquakes, storms, etc.).*

**2** a complete failure: *The party was a total disaster; everyone went home early.*

—**disastrous** adjective, formal very bad: *It was a disastrous decision.*

**dis·be·lief** /,dɪsbə'lɪf/ noun, formal

a feeling that something is not true: *When they told him he had won the money, he shook his head in disbelief.*

**disc** /dɪsk/ noun

another spelling of DISK

**dis·card** /dɪ'skɑːd/ verb, formal

to get rid of something because you do not need it: *Take the magazines you want and discard the rest.* **SYNONYM** get rid of, throw out

**dis·cern** /dɪ'sɜːn/ verb, formal

to see or understand something that is not easy to see or understand: *It was difficult to discern a difference between the twin sisters.*

—**discernible** adjective, formal able to be seen

**dis·charge** /dɪs'tʃɑːdʒ/ verb

**1** to officially allow or tell someone to leave a place or organization: *He was discharged from the hospital last night.*

D



**2** *formal* to send out or let out a substance: *The factory was discharging chemicals into the river.*

—**discharge** /ˈdɪstʃɑːdʒ/ *noun, formal* the action of discharging someone or something, or something that is discharged

**dis·ci·ple** /dɪˈsaɪpəl/ *noun*

a follower of a teacher or thinker: *Peter was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.*

**dis·ci·pline**<sup>1</sup> /ˈdɪsəplɪn/ *noun*

a situation in which you obey rules and orders, or control your own behavior: *There was no discipline in the classroom. Students were talking and nobody was working. | You need self-discipline to go to college.*

**discipline**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to punish someone who has not obeyed a rule or order: *How should parents discipline their children?*

**dis·close** /dɪsˈkloʊz/ *verb, formal*

to let people know a fact that was a secret: *She refused to disclose her age.* **SYNONYM** *reveal*

—**disclosure** /dɪsˈkloʊʒə/ *noun* the act of letting people know something that was a secret

**dis·com·fort** /dɪsˈkʌmfərt/ *noun, formal* slight pain or a feeling of not being relaxed: *If your bed is causing you discomfort, get rid of it.*

**dis·con·nect** /ˌdɪskəˈnekt/ *verb*

to separate something from the thing it is connected to: *Disconnect the computer from the power supply.*

**dis·con·tin·ue** /ˌdɪskənˈtɪnyu/ *verb, formal*

to stop doing or providing something: *That product has been discontinued; we will not be selling it anymore.*

**dis·count** /ˈdɪskaʊnt/ *noun*

a reduction in the usual price of something: *I get a 10% discount on everything I buy from the store because I'm a student.*

**dis·cour·age** /dɪˈskʌrɪdʒ/ *verb*

**1** to make someone not want to do something: *Her parents tried to discourage her from becoming a singer, because they thought she wasn't good enough.* **ANTONYM** *encourage*

**2** to make someone feel less confident: *I only got a C on the first test, but I tried not to let that discourage me.*

—**discouraged** *adjective* feeling less confident because of something that has happened: *Don't be discouraged. You'll do better next time!*

—**discouraging** *adjective* making you feel less confident: *The beginning of the game was discouraging, because the other team scored 15 points in the first six minutes.*

**dis·cov·er** /dɪˈskʌvər/ *verb*

**1** to find something hidden or unknown: *A new insect has been discovered. | One day they will discover the cure for cancer.*

**2** to find out a fact: *She discovered that her boyfriend was dating another girl. | I finally discovered what my mother was hiding in the closet.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **find**

**dis·cov·er·y** /dɪˈskʌvəri/ *noun* plural **discoveries**

**1** the act of finding out a fact: *Scientists made an important discovery about the way the disease begins.*

**2** the act of finding something hidden or unknown: *The discovery of a new planet caused great excitement.*

**dis·creet** /dɪˈskrit/ *adjective*

careful not to let too many people know something: *He asked me to be discreet because he didn't want people to know where he was.*

—**discreetly** *adverb*

**dis·cre·tion** /dɪˈskreʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**1** the right to decide what should be done in a particular situation: *You can spend the money at your discretion (=in the way that you choose).*

**2** the quality of being discreet: *Discretion is important when you work here, because there are a lot of secrets that we don't want other companies to know.*

**dis·crim·i·nate** /dɪˈskrɪməˌneɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

**1** to unfairly treat one person or group differently from another: *We do not discriminate against people because of their race.*

**2** *formal* to know that two things are different from each other: *Babies can discriminate between a man's voice and a woman's voice.* **SYNONYM** *differentiate*

—**discrimination** /dɪˈskrɪməˌneɪʃən/ *noun* the act of discriminating against someone:



They accused the company of racial discrimination for hiring a white man who had less experience than a black man who wanted the job.

—**discriminatory** /dɪ'skrɪmənə,tɔːri/ adjective, formal discriminating against someone: *These discriminatory laws stop women from getting paid as well as men.*

**dis-cuss** /dɪ'skʌs/ verb

to talk about something in a serious way: *You should discuss your problems with your teacher.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **talk**<sup>1</sup>

**dis-cus-sion** /dɪ'skʌʃən/ noun

a talk in which people give their ideas about something: *We all read the book and then had a class discussion about it.*

**dis-ease** /dɪ'ziz/ noun, formal

a serious illness: *There is no cure for this disease yet.*

**dis-fig-ure** /dɪs'fɪgɹə/ verb, formal

if a part of a person's body is disfigured, it has been damaged and looks bad: *The woman's face had been disfigured in the attack.*

**dis-grace** /dɪs'greɪs/ noun, formal

**1** something or someone that makes people feel ashamed: *After he was caught stealing, his father told him that he was a disgrace to the family.*

**2 in disgrace** = if you are in disgrace, you have done something bad and people are ashamed of you: *He left the school in disgrace after hitting a teacher.*

**dis-grace-ful** /dɪs'greɪsfəl/ adjective, formal

very bad and wrong: *The students' behavior was disgraceful; they didn't even care that they had damaged school property.*

—**disgracefully** adverb

**dis-guise**<sup>1</sup> /dɪs'gaɪz/ verb

**1** to make yourself look different, because you want to hide who you are: *She disguised herself as a man.*

**2** to hide your feelings or the truth about something: *Dan tried to disguise his feelings for Katie because he didn't want her to know he liked her.*

**disguise**<sup>2</sup> noun

unusual clothes that you wear to hide who you are: *The movie star went out in disguise to avoid reporters.*

**dis-gust** /dɪs'gʌst/ verb

if something bad disgusts you, you feel strongly that it is very bad or unpleasant: *His cruel behavior disgusted me.*

—**disgusted** adjective feeling strongly that something is very bad or unpleasant: *I knew that she was lying, and I was disgusted with her.*

—**disgust** noun a strong feeling that something is very bad or unpleasant: *She looked around the dirty little room in disgust.*

**dis-gust-ing** /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ adjective

very bad or unpleasant: *This medicine tastes disgusting!*

**dish** /dɪʃ/ noun

**1** a container used for cooking or holding food: *Mom came in with a dish of spaghetti.*

**2 the dishes** = all the plates, cups, bowls, etc. that you use for a meal: *It's your turn to wash the dishes.*

**3** food that you prepare in a particular way: *The restaurant serves some great seafood dishes.*

**dish-cloth** /'dɪʃklɒθ/ noun

a cloth used for washing dishes

**dis-hon-est** /dɪs'ɒnɪst/ adjective

not honest: *She says she has never tried cigarettes, but I think she's being dishonest.*

—**dishonesty** noun the quality of not being honest

**dis-hon-or** /dɪs'ɒnə/ noun, formal

when people do not respect you, because you have done something bad: *Now he faced the dishonor of going to prison.*

—**dishonor** verb to do something that shows you do not respect someone or something: *If men refused to fight in a war, they dishonored their country.*

**dish-tow-el** /'dɪʃtaʊəl/ noun

a cloth used for drying dishes

→ See picture on page A9

**dish-wash-er** /'dɪʃwɔʃə/ noun

**1** a machine that washes dishes: *It only took a minute to load the dishwasher (=put the dirty dishes in it).*



**2** someone whose job is washing dishes in a restaurant

→ See picture on page A9

**dis-il-lu-sioned** /,dɪsə'luʒənd/

adjective, formal

no longer believing that someone or something is good, interesting, etc.: *He was studying at the business school, but he became disillusioned with it and quit.*

—**disillusionment** noun the state of being disillusioned

**dis-in-fect** /,dɪsɪn'fekt/ verb

to clean something with a chemical that kills BACTERIA: *Hospital rooms are regularly cleaned and disinfected.*

**dis-in-fect-ant** /,dɪsɪn'fektənt/ noun

a chemical that kills BACTERIA, used for cleaning something

**dis-in-te-grate** /dɪs'ɪntə'greɪt/ verb,

formal

to break up into small pieces: *The paper got wet and disintegrated in my hands.*

—**disintegration** /dɪs,ɪntə'greɪʃən/ noun the process of disintegrating

**disk** /dɪsk/ noun

**1** a flat piece of plastic or metal used for storing computer information: *Store the document on disk.*

**2** a flat round object: *People used to think that the Earth was a disk.*

**'disk drive** noun

the part of a computer that you put a disk into

**dis-like<sup>1</sup>** /dɪs'laɪk/ verb, formal

to not like someone or something: *A lot of kids dislike vegetables.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hate<sup>1</sup>**

**dislike<sup>2</sup>** noun, formal

a feeling of not liking someone or something: *Maria couldn't hide her dislike for Hank; she wouldn't even talk to him.* **ANTONYM** liking

**dis-lo-cate** /dɪs'loukeɪt/ verb

to make a bone move out of its normal place: *Pete dislocated his shoulder playing football.*

**dis-loy-al** /dɪs'lɔɪəl/ adjective, formal

doing things that do not support your friends, your country, etc.: *If a friend asks you to keep a secret, it would be disloyal to tell people.* **ANTONYM** loyal

—**disloyalty** /dɪs'lɔɪəlti/ noun the act of being disloyal

**dis-mal** /'dɪzməl/ adjective, formal

making you feel unhappy and without hope: *It was a gray, rainy, dismal day.*

—**dismally** adverb

**dis-may** /dɪs'meɪ/ noun, formal

a feeling of being worried or upset: *I realized with dismay that I'd missed my bus.*

—**dismayed** adjective, formal feeling worried or upset: *We were dismayed to find that the car had been stolen.*

**dis-miss** /dɪs'mɪs/ verb, formal

**1** to refuse to think about an idea: *Think about it for a few days – don't just dismiss the idea.*

**2** to tell someone that they can leave: *Mrs. Burrows dismissed the class, and they went outside.*

**3** if your employer dismisses you, you are told to leave your job: *The man had been dismissed from his job for stealing.* **SYNONYM** fire

—**dismissal** noun the act of dismissing someone

**dis-o-be-di-ent** /,dɪsə'bidɪənt/

adjective, formal

refusing to obey someone: *My dog is very disobedient. He never comes when I call him.* **ANTONYM** obedient

—**disobedience** noun an act of refusing to obey someone: *The soldier was punished for disobedience.*

—**disobediently** adverb

**dis-o-bey** /,dɪsə'beɪ/ verb

to not obey a person or a rule: *You must not disobey the school rules.*

#### THESAURUS: disobey

**break a rule/law** to disobey a rule or law: *If you drink and drive, you're breaking the law.*

**rebel** to disobey or fight against someone who has power over you: *Hannah rebelled against her parents' strict rules.*

**defy** formal to refuse to obey someone or something: *Mark had never defied his father before.*

**violate** formal to do something that does not obey a law, rule, agreement, etc.: *The sale may violate international trade laws.*



**dis·or·der** /dɪs'ɔrdə/ noun, formal

**1** a situation in which things are not organized or neat: *The room was in complete disorder; there were clothes and books all over the floor.* **ANTONYM** **order**

**2** an illness: *The doctor said her strange behavior was caused by a mental disorder (=illness of the mind).*

**dis·or·der·ly** /dɪs'ɔrdəli/ adjective, formal

**1** not organized or neat: *Disorderly piles of clothes lay on the floor.* **ANTONYM** **orderly**

**2** showing bad or violent behavior: *The class was loud and disorderly, and the teacher could not control them.*

**dis·or·ga·nized** /dɪs'ɔrgə,naɪzd/ adjective

without enough order or organization: *The meeting was completely disorganized; we didn't finish anything.* **ANTONYM** **organized**

**dis·o·ri·ent·ed** /dɪs'ɔri,entɪd/ adjective, formal

confused about what is happening or where you are: *I fell and hit my head, and when I stood up I felt a little disoriented.*

**dis·patch** /dɪ'spætʃ/ verb, formal

to send a person or thing somewhere: *A new spacecraft will soon be dispatched to Mars.*

**dis·pense** /dɪ'spens/ verb, formal

to give advice or help to people: *The organization dispenses legal advice to the public.*

**dis·pens·er** /dɪ'spensə/ noun

a machine or piece of equipment that gives you something when you push a button: *There was a soap dispenser next to the sink.*

**dis·place** /dɪs'pleɪs/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to take the place of someone or something by forcing them to leave: *In Europe, the Euro has displaced other currencies.*

—**displacement** noun the act of displacing someone or something

**dis·play<sup>1</sup>** /dɪ'spleɪ/ **[Ac]** noun plural displays

**1** an interesting way of showing things that is organized for people to come and see: *There is a display of all the students' work in the hall. | a fireworks display*

**2 on display** = in a public place for people to see: *The princess's dresses are now on display.*

**display<sup>2</sup>** verb, formal

**1** to put things in a place where people can see them: *Your answers to the test questions will be displayed on the board.*

**2** to show a feeling or quality: *Her face clearly displayed her anger.*

**dis·pos·a·ble** /dɪ'spouzəbəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

disposable things are for you to use once or a few times, and then throw away: *I bought a cheap disposable camera.*

**dis·pose** /dɪ'spouz/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**PHRASAL VERB**

**dispose of something**

to throw away or destroy something: *We need better ways to dispose of waste.*

**SYNONYM** **get rid of something**

—**disposal** noun, formal the act of disposing of something: *a garbage disposal site*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **dispose** verb
- **disposal** noun
- **disposable** adjective

**dis·prove** /dɪ'spruv/ verb, formal

to show that an idea, statement, etc. is not true: *Recent research has disproved some of the old ideas.* **ANTONYM** **prove**

**dis·pute** /dɪ'spyut/ noun, formal

a serious argument: *The two men got into a dispute over money.*

—**dispute** verb, formal to say that you think something is not true: *He claims that he won, but I dispute that.*

**dis·qual·i·fy** /dɪs'kwələ,faɪ/ verb

disqualified, third person singular  
disqualifies

to stop someone from taking part in a race, game, etc., because he or she has done something wrong: *He was disqualified for pushing another player.*

—**disqualification** /dɪs'kwələfə'keɪʃən/ noun the act of disqualifying someone

**dis·re·spect·ful** /,dɪsrɪ'spektfəl/ adjective

showing no respect for someone or something: *Don't be disrespectful to your mother – listen when she's talking to you.* **ANTONYM** **respectful**



**dis-rupt** /dɪs'rʌpt/ verb, formal  
to stop something from happening in a normal way by causing problems: *Bad weather disrupted flights into the airport.*

—**disruption** /dɪs'rʌpʃən/ noun, formal the action of disrupting something: *Please be quiet – I don't want any more disruptions during class.*

—**disruptive** /dɪs'rʌptɪv/ adjective causing problems by acting badly: *The boy was very disruptive in class, making funny noises when the teacher wasn't looking.*

**dis-sat-is-fied** /dɪ'sætɪs,fɑɪd/ adjective  
unhappy about something because you do not think it is good enough: *A lot of teenage girls are dissatisfied with the way they look (=they think they do not look good enough).*

ANTONYM **satisfied**

—**dissatisfaction** /dɪ,sætɪs'fækʃən/ noun  
the feeling of being dissatisfied: *Some of our customers have expressed dissatisfaction, so we're working hard to improve our service.*

**dis-si-dent** /'dɪsədənt/ noun, formal  
someone who criticizes the government in a country where this is a crime: *Several dissidents have been put in jail.*

**dis-sim-i-lar** /dɪ'sɪmələ/ **Ac** adjective, formal  
not the same: *The twins look alike, but they are dissimilar in other ways.* ANTONYM **similar**

**dis-solve** /dɪ'zɒlv/ verb  
if sugar, salt, etc. dissolves in a liquid, it becomes part of the liquid and you cannot see it anymore: *Stir the mixture until the sugar dissolves. | Dissolve the tablets in warm water.*

**dis-tance** /'dɪstəns/ noun

**1** the amount of space between two places: *Measure the distance between the two points on the line. | My house is just a short distance from here.*

**2 in the distance** formal = far away from you, but near enough to see: *We could see the ocean in the distance.*

**3 keep your distance** = to stay away from someone or something: *The dogs looked mean, so I kept my distance.*

**dis-tant** /'dɪstənt/ adjective, formal

**1** far away: *From the road we could see distant mountains.*

**2** not friendly or not caring: *He listened to me, but he seemed distant.*

**dis-tilled** /dɪ'stɪld/ adjective

**distilled water/alcohol, etc.** = water, etc. that has been heated until it is gas and then left to cool into a liquid again, in order to make it more pure

—**distill** verb

—**distillation** /,dɪstə'leɪʃən/ noun the process of making distilled water, etc.

**dis-tinct** /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ **Ac** adjective

**1** a distinct feeling, possibility, etc. is clear and definite: *I had the distinct feeling that he didn't like me.*

**2** if two things are distinct, they are different from each other: *There are two distinct types of elephants – Asian and African.*

**dis-tinc-tion** /dɪ'stɪŋkʃən/ **Ac** noun

**1** a clear difference: *The law makes a distinction between children and adults (=it says that there is a difference between them).*

**2** formal the quality of doing something very well: *In college, she performed with great distinction.*

**3 have the distinction of doing something** = to do something special that everyone admires: *Who will have the distinction of speaking at the ceremony?*

**dis-tinc-tive** /dɪ'stɪŋktɪv/ **Ac** adjective, formal

different from others and easy to recognize: *This cheese has a very distinctive flavor.*

**dis-tinct-ly** /dɪ'stɪŋktli/ **Ac** adverb

very clearly: *I distinctly remember what he said to me before he left.*

**dis-tin-guish** /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃ/ verb, formal

**1** to see the difference between things: *Young children do not distinguish between TV shows and advertising.*

**2** to show that someone or something is different: *The male bird's bright feathers distinguish it from the female.*

**dis-tin-guished** /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃt/ adjective, formal

very good and admired by a lot of people: *He had a distinguished career as a scientist.*

**dis-tort** /dɪ'stɔrt/ **Ac** verb, formal

to change something and make it look or sound different from normal: *The funny mirrors distorted our reflections.*



—**distortion** /dɪ'stɔːʃən/ *noun* the act of distorting something

**dis·tract** /dɪ'strækt/ *verb*

to make someone stop paying attention to something: *Her music was distracting me from my homework.*

—**distraction** /dɪ'strækʃən/ *noun* something that makes you stop paying attention: *I can't work at home – there are too many distractions.*

**dis·tress**<sup>1</sup> /dɪ'stres/ *noun, formal*

**1** a feeling of great sadness or worry: *You could see the distress in the child's eyes as she said goodbye to her parents.*

**2 in distress** = in a very difficult situation and needing help: *Our organization tries to help children in distress in the poorest areas of the world.*

—**distressed** *adjective, formal* feeling very sad or worried: *She was crying and very distressed about her missing sister.*

**distress**<sup>2</sup> *verb, formal*

to make someone sad or worried: *The awful news distressed us all.*

—**distressing** *adjective, formal* making you feel very sad or worried: *It was distressing to see her so sick.*

**dis·trib·ute** /dɪ'strɪbyʊt/ **Ac** *verb, formal*

**1** to give something to people: *The money was distributed among the poorest people.*

**2** to take goods to stores and companies for them to sell: *The company makes and distributes building materials.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **distribute** *verb*
- **distribution** *noun*
- **distributor** *noun*

→ See Thesaurus box at **give**<sup>1</sup>

**dis·tri·bu·tion** /,dɪstrə'byuʃən/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** the act of giving things to people: *Students helped with the distribution of the newspaper.*

**2** the act of taking goods to stores and companies for them to sell: *the distribution of goods by trains and trucks*

—**distributor** /dɪ'strɪbyʊtə/ *noun* a company that supplies goods to shops or other companies: *The company is a distributor of cellular phones.*

**dis·trict** /'dɪstrɪkt/ *noun*

an area of a city, country, etc.: *She works in the financial district of the city.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **area**

**district attorney** also **D.A.** *noun*

a lawyer for the government of an area in the U.S.: *He's the D.A. for Harris County.*

**dis·trust** /dɪ'strʌst/ *noun, formal*

a feeling that you cannot trust someone: *He had a distrust of politicians; he thought they were all liars.*

—**distrust** *verb, formal* to not trust someone or something

—**distrustful** *adjective, formal* not trusting someone or something: *Kim was distrustful of strangers.*

**dis·turb** /dɪ'stɜːb/ *verb*

**1** to interrupt what someone is doing: *Don't disturb Dad – he's working.*

**2 formal** to make someone feel worried or upset: *The strange way she acted had disturbed him.*

—**disturbing** *adjective, formal* making you feel worried or upset: *The news about Martha's accident was very disturbing.*

**dis·turb·ance** /dɪ'stɜːbəns/ *noun, formal*

**1** something that interrupts what you are doing: *I really need to work without any disturbance.*

**2** a situation in which people fight or cause trouble in public: *Three men were arrested for causing a disturbance.*

**ditch** /dɪtʃ/ *noun*

a long narrow hole in the ground where water collects at the side of a road: *I jumped across the ditch and into the field.*

**dit·to** /'dɪtu/ *informal*

used when saying that you think the same as someone else: *"I hate school." "Ditto."*

**dive** /daɪv/ *verb* dived or dove /doʊv/ dived

**1** to jump into water with your head and arms going in first: *Jack dived into the swimming pool.*

**2** to go down suddenly: *The plane began to dive.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **jump**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture at **jump**<sup>2</sup>



**div·er** /'daɪvə/ *noun*

**1** someone who swims under water using equipment for breathing: *The island is very popular with divers.*

**2** someone who dives into water as a sport

**di·verse** /də'vərs/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*  
full of many different types of people or things: *We are a very diverse group. We have students from over 50 countries.*

WORD FAMILY → **diversity** *noun*

**di·ver·si·ty** /də'vərsəti/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*  
a range of many different people or things: *I love the diversity of wildlife in this country.*

SYNONYM **variety**

**di·vert** /də'vɜ:t/ *verb, formal*

if cars, airplanes, etc. are diverted, they have to change their direction: *The plane going to Atlanta was diverted to Memphis.*

**di·vide** /di'vaɪd/ *verb*

**1** also **divide up** to separate something into parts or groups: *The teacher divided the class into groups.*

**2** also **divide up** to share money, time, etc. between people or activities: *Most students divide their time between school, family, and friends.*

**3** to find how many times a number will go into a bigger number: *15 divided by 3 is 5.*

ANTONYM **multiply**

**4** *formal* to make people disagree: *The war divided the nation.*

WORD FAMILY → **division** *noun*

**di·vine** /di'vaɪn/ *adjective, formal*  
relating to a god: *the divine power of God*

**'diving board** *noun*

a board that you can stand on before jumping into water: *He jumped off the diving board, and dived into the pool.*

**di·vi·sion** /di'vɪʒən/ *noun*

**1** the act of finding how many times a number will go into a larger number: *The kids are learning to do division and multiplication.*

**2** a part of a company, army, or organization: *"Which part of the company do you work for?" "The sales division."*

**di·vorce<sup>1</sup>** /di'vɔ:rs/ *noun*

the end of a marriage by law: *His wife wants to get a divorce.*

**divorce<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to end a marriage by law: *My parents got divorced when I was six.*

### THESAURUS: divorce

**separate** to start to live apart from your husband or wife: *We've been separated for a year, and now we're getting a divorce.*

**split up/break up** to end a marriage or a long romantic relationship: *When Andy was nine, his parents split up. | Lisa has broken up with her boyfriend.*

**leave someone** to stop living with your husband, wife, or partner: *Her husband left her after 27 years of marriage.*

**di·vulge** /də'vʌldʒ/ *verb, formal*

to give information about something secret: *He always refused to divulge how much money he earned.* SYNONYM **disclose, reveal**

**diz·zy** /'dɪzi/ *adjective*

feeling unable to stand up steadily because you are sick, or you have been turning around in circles: *I feel a little dizzy, so I think I'll lie down.*

—**dizziness** *noun*

**DJ** *noun*

**disk jockey** someone whose job is to play the music on the radio or in a club where you can dance

**DNA** *noun*

a substance in the cells of your body that carries GENETIC information

**do<sup>1</sup>** /du/ *auxiliary verb* **did** /dɪd/ *third person singular* **does** /dʌz/

**1** used with "not" before another verb to make a negative sentence: *She does not have a car. | I didn't understand him.*

**2** used with another verb to ask a question: *Do you know where he lives?*

**3** used with "not" to tell someone not to do something: *Do not tell anyone. | Don't hit me!*

**4** used to make the meaning of another verb stronger: *I did clean the bathroom – I just forgot to tell you.*

**do<sup>2</sup>** *verb* **did** /dɪd/ **done** /dʌn/ *third person singular* **does** /dʌz/

**1** to deal with some work, a job, etc.: *Don't forget to do your homework. | "What are you doing?" "I'm just making lunch." | I'll do the ironing.*

**2** **What do you do (for a living)?** = used when asking someone what their job is: *"What do you do for a living?" "I'm a computer programmer."*



**3 What is someone or something doing?**

= used when asking for an explanation of someone's actions: *What is the dog doing on my desk?* | *What are you doing with my wallet?*

**4 do well/badly** = to be successful or unsuccessful: *He's doing very well in his new job.* | *William did badly on the test.*

**5 do someone good** = to make someone feel better or more healthy: *The vacation did us all good.*

**6 something will do** = used when saying that something is good enough: *This shirt's a little small, but it will do.*

**7 to act in a particular way:** *I expect the kids in my class to do as I say* (=do what I tell them to do).

**8 do your hair/nails/makeup, etc.** = to make your hair, etc. look nice: *Wait a second while I do my hair.*

**9 do 90 miles/100 km, etc. informal** = to travel at 90 miles an hour, or to cover a distance of 90 miles: *He was doing 60 miles per hour when he hit the other car.*

**10 do your own thing informal** = to do what you enjoy doing: *On the weekend, I like to do my own thing.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****do something over**

to do something again, especially because you did it badly: *If you mess up on the test, you can do it over.*

**do with something**

**1 what did you do with something?** = used when asking where someone has put something: *What did you do with those pictures?*

**2 I could do with something informal** = used when saying that you need or want something: *I could do with some help.*

**3 have something to do with something** = to be about something: *The book has something to do with the Civil War.*

**do without something**

to live or continue without something: *It's difficult to do without a car in Los Angeles.*

**do-a-ble** /'duəbəl/ adjective, informal

possible to do: *It's a difficult project, but I think it's doable.*

**dock<sup>1</sup>** /dɒk/ noun

a place where a ship or boat stops, so that people or things can get on or off: *The ship was sitting at the dock.*

**dock<sup>2</sup>** verb

if a ship docks, it sails into a dock: *The ship docked in Brooklyn.*

**doc-tor** /'dɒktə/ noun

**1** someone whose job is treating people who are sick: *If you're still sick tomorrow, you should go to the doctor.*

**THESAURUS: doctor**

**physician** formal a doctor: *Dr. Meadows is our family physician.*

**surgeon** a doctor who cuts open someone's body to fix or replace something: *Surgeons operated on his knee.*

**specialist** a doctor who knows a lot about a particular type of medicine: *He's one of the world's leading heart specialists.*

**psychiatrist** a doctor who treats mental illness: *The psychiatrist gave her some pills to help her depression.*

**dentist** a doctor who takes care of people's teeth: *You should see a dentist every six months.*

**pediatrician** a doctor who treats children who are sick: *I took my son to a pediatrician because he seemed to be losing weight.*

**2** someone who has the highest type of university degree: *He's a Doctor of Philosophy.* **SYNONYM Ph.D.**

→ See picture on page A16

**doc-tor-ate** /'dɒktərɪt/ noun

the highest type of university degree: *She earned a doctorate in biology.* **SYNONYM Ph.D.**

**doc-u-ment** /'dɒkyəmənt/ **Ac** noun

**1** a formal letter, written report, etc. that has facts or information in it: *Keep all your financial documents in a safe place.*

**2** a piece of work that you write and keep on a computer: *Don't forget to save your document before you close the program.*

**doc-u-men-tary** /,dɒkyə'mentri/ noun  
plural **documentaries**

a movie or television program that gives facts and information on something: *Did you see that documentary on insects?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **television**



**doc·u·men·ta·tion**

/ˌdɒkyəmənt'eɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*  
documents that show that something is true:  
*Keep careful documentation of how much everything costs.* **SYNONYM** records

**dodge** /dɒdʒ/ *verb*

**1** to move quickly in order to avoid someone or something: *I dodged past him and kicked the ball.*  
**2** to avoid talking about something or doing something: *Answer me – don't try to dodge the question!*

**doe** /dou/ *noun*  
a female DEER

**do·er** /'duə/ *noun, informal*

someone who does things, and does not only talk about doing them: *Are you a doer or a talker?*

**does** /dəz; strong dʌz/ *verb*

the third person singular of the present tense of DO

**does·n't** /'dʌzənt/ *verb*

the short form of “does not”: *The baby doesn't have any teeth yet.*

**dog** /dɒg/ *noun*

an animal that people often keep as a pet or use for guarding buildings: *My dog barks when he hears a strange noise.*

→ See picture at **pet**

**doll** /dɒl/ *noun*

a toy that looks like a baby or small person: *Katy loves playing with her dolls.*

**dol·lar** /'dɒlə/ *noun*

the money used in the U.S. and some other countries, shown by the sign \$: *These pants cost 40 dollars. | The book cost \$15 (=fifteen dollars).*

**'dollar sign** *noun*

the sign \$, used to mean a dollar



dolphin

**dol·phin** /'dɒlfɪn/ *noun*

a very intelligent gray ocean animal with a long pointed nose: *We saw a group of dolphins playing in the waves.*

**do·main** /dou'meɪn/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**1** a particular area of work or knowledge: *I work mainly in Europe, but Jan's domain is China.*  
**2** an area of land that is controlled by one person, group, government, etc.

**dome** /doum/ *noun*

a round curved roof: *If you look across the city, you can see the dome of the cathedral.*

**do·mes·tic** /də'mestɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

**1** relating to things that happen inside a country, rather than things that happen in other countries: *The president's speech is about taxes and other domestic policies.*

**2** relating to life at home: *Bob and I share the domestic chores (=jobs around the home).*

—**domestically** *adverb* inside one country: *Most of these goods are made domestically.*

**dom·i·nant** /'dɒmənənt/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

very important or powerful: *Japan has a dominant position in the electronics market.*

—**dominance** *noun* the state of being dominant

**dom·i·nate** /'dɒməneɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to have the most influence or the most important position: *Men still dominate the field of movie directing, but more and more women are making movies.*

—**domination** /ˌdɒmə'neɪʃən/ *noun, formal* the position of dominating something

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **dominate** *verb*
- **domination** *noun*
- **dominant** *adjective*
- **dominance** *noun*

**dom·i·no** /'dɒmənou/ *noun plural dominoes*

a small piece of wood or plastic with spots on one side, used in playing a game: *The kids are playing dominoes (=playing a game using these).*

**do·nate** /'dounet/ *verb*

**1** to give money to an organization that needs help: *Our school donated \$500 to the Red Cross.*

**2** **donate blood/an organ, etc.** = to give some of your blood or a part of your body to



help someone who is sick: *Hospitals are asking more people to donate blood.*

—**donation** /dou'neɪʃən/ *noun* money that you give to help an organization: *Do you want to make a donation to charity?*

**done**<sup>1</sup> /dʌn/ *verb*

the past participle of DO

**done**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** finished: "Are you finished?" "Not yet, I'll be done in a minute."

#### THESAURUS: done

**finished** done, or having come to the end of doing something: *Are you finished with your homework?*

**complete** finished, and having all the parts you need: *My history report is almost complete.*

**over** if an event, activity, or period of time is over, it has ended: *The game was over by 10 o'clock.*

**through** if you are through with something, you have finished using it or doing it: *Are you through with those scissors?*

**2** cooked enough to be eaten: *Is the chicken done yet?*

**don·key** /'dʌŋki/ *noun*

an animal like a small horse with long ears: *The donkey was carrying a heavy load on its back.*

**do·nor** /'daʊnə/ *noun*

**1** a **blood/organ donor** = someone who gives blood or a part of his or her body to help someone who is sick: *The hospital needs more blood donors.*

**2** someone who gives something, especially money, to an organization: *He is a generous donor to the Democratic Party.*

**don't** /daʊnt/ *verb*

the short form of "do not": *I don't know.*

**do·nut** /'daʊnʌt/ *noun*

another spelling of DOUGHNUT

**doom** /dum/ *noun*

something bad that is certain to happen: *As usual, the news was full of doom and gloom (=news about bad things that will happen).*

**doomed** /dumd/ *adjective*

certain to fail, be disappointing, etc.: *The idea was doomed from the beginning – we knew it was not going to work.*

**door** /dɔr/ *noun*

**1** the thing that you open to get into a house, room, or car: *I opened the door and went inside. | Go out the door and turn right.*

**2** **get/answer the door** = to open the door when someone knocks or rings the bell: *Can you get the door, Jody? I'm on the phone.*

**3** **next door** = in the room, house, etc. next to where you are: *A very nice family lives next door.*

**4** **at the door** = waiting outside the door of a house or apartment: *There's someone at the door who wants to talk to you.*

→ See picture on page A8

**door·bell** /'dɔrbel/ *noun*

a button by a door that you push to make a sound inside a building: *I went up to the door and rang the doorbell (=pushed it).*

**door·knob** /'dɔrnɒb/ *noun*

a round handle that you turn to open a door: *There was no sound inside, so I turned the doorknob.*

**door·mat** /'dɔrmæt/ *noun*

a thick piece of material beside a door for you to clean your shoes on: *Ted wiped his boots on the doormat before he went inside.*

**door·step** /'dɔrstep/ *noun*

a step in front of the door of a house: *The dog was standing on the doorstep, wanting to come inside.*

**door·way** /'dɔrweɪ/ *noun*

an opening into a room or building, where there is a door: *Cindy stood in the doorway and watched the people in the street.*

**dor·mi·to·ry** /'dɔrmə,tɔri/ *noun*, formal

plural **dormitories**, also **dorm** informal  
a large building at a college where students live: *She lived in my dorm freshman year.*

**dos·age** /'daʊsɪdʒ/ *noun*, formal

the amount of medicine that you should take: *The correct dosage is one pill per day.*

**dose** /daʊs/ *noun*

an amount of medicine: *Take a small dose of the liquid at bedtime.*

**dot** /dat/ *noun*

**1** a small round mark or spot: *She was wearing a black skirt with white dots.*

**2** **on the dot** informal = exactly at the right time: *Mark arrived at 6:00 on the dot.*



**double-le**<sup>1</sup> /'dʌbəl/ adjective

**1** having two parts: *A double door opens onto the porch.*

**2** twice the usual amount or size: *I'll have a double cheeseburger with fries.*

**3** a **double bed** = a bed for two people: *The room had a double bed.*

**4** **double digits** = the numbers from 10 to 99: *The best three players scored in double digits.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **increase**<sup>1</sup>

**double**<sup>2</sup> verb

to become twice as big: *In 30 years, San Francisco doubled in size.*

**double**<sup>3</sup> noun

**1** something that is twice as big as something else: *"He offered me \$200." "OK, I'll give you double."*

**2** someone who looks like someone else: *He earned a lot of money working as a double for Tom Cruise.*

**double 'bass** noun

a very big musical instrument like a VIOLIN, that you play while you are standing up

SYNONYM **bass**

→ See picture on page A21

**double-'check** verb

to check something again, so you are sure about it: *I think I locked the door, but I'll double-check.*

**double 'negative** noun

the use of two negative words when it is correct to use only one: *The sentence "I don't want nobody to help me" has a double negative. You should say "I don't want anybody to help me".*

**doubt**<sup>1</sup> /daʊt/ verb

to think that something may not happen or be true: *Kate might come, but I doubt it. She said she was tired. | I doubted that she was telling the truth.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **doubt** noun
- **doubt** verb
- **doubtful** adjective
- **doubtless** adverb

**doubt**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a feeling that something is not right or true: *Don't get married if you have any doubts.*

**2** **there's no doubt about it** also **without (a)**

**doubt** = used when saying that something is definitely true: *Without a doubt, this is their best CD yet.*

**3** **beyond (a) doubt** = if information is beyond doubt, it is definitely correct: *All the evidence proved beyond a doubt that he was guilty.*

**doubt-ful** /'daʊtfəl/ adjective, formal

**1** probably not likely to happen or not true: *He injured his leg and it's doubtful that he'll be able to play in the game.*

**2** not sure about something: *I'm still doubtful about whether I should trust him.*

**doubt-less** /'daʊtləs/ adverb, formal

used when saying that something is very likely: *The hotel will doubtless be very expensive, because it's right in the middle of the city.* SYNONYM **definitely, undoubtedly**

**dough** /dou/ noun

a soft mixture of flour and water that you use to bake bread, cookies, etc.

—**doughy** adjective soft and white, like dough: *The bread was a little doughy inside, because it hadn't been baked long enough.*

**dough-nut** /'daʊnʌt/ noun

a small round cake that is shaped like a ring

**dove**<sup>1</sup> /dʌv/ noun

a small white bird often used as a sign of peace

**dove**<sup>2</sup> /douv/ verb

a past tense of DIVE

**down**<sup>1</sup> /daʊn/ adverb, preposition

**1** toward a lower place: *A tree fell down during the night. | We began to climb down the mountain.* ANTONYM **up**

**2** toward a place that is further along a street, path, etc.: *I saw George walking down the street.*

**3** toward a lower level: *Can you turn the TV down?* ANTONYM **up**

**4** **write/note/take, etc. something down** = to write something on paper: *He wrote down my phone number.*

**5** toward the south of a country: *First, we drove down to Texas.* ANTONYM **up**

→ **come down with** at **come**

**down**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** sad: *You look down. Are you okay?*

**2** lower in amount than before: *The number of students at the school is down this year.*

ANTONYM **up**



**3** a computer system that is down is not working: *All the computers in the office are down.*

**down**<sup>3</sup> *noun*

the soft feathers of a bird: *The pillow was filled with down.*

**down-fall** /'daʊnfɔːl/ *noun, formal*

a situation when someone or something stops being successful: *He wanted more and more power, and that led to his downfall.*

**down-heart-ed** /,daʊn'hɑːtɪd/

*adjective, formal*

sad or without hope: *Don't look so downhearted – everything will be fine.*

**down-hill** /,daʊn'hɪl/ *adverb, adjective*

toward a lower level of land: *The land slopes downhill to the river.* **ANTONYM** uphill

**down-load** /'daʊnloʊd/ *verb*

to move information, programs, etc. to your computer from the Internet or another piece of equipment: *The software can be downloaded from the Internet.*

**down 'payment** *noun*

a payment for something that is the first part of the larger amount you will pay over a long period: *My parents put a down payment on a house in Oakland.*

**down-pour** /'daʊnpɔːr/ *noun*

a lot of rain that falls in a short time: *We got very wet in a sudden downpour on the way home.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **rain**<sup>1</sup>

**down-right** /'daʊnraɪt/ *adverb*

**downright** **dangerous/silly/ugly, etc.**  
*informal* = used to emphasize that someone or something is very dangerous, silly, etc.: *He's downright lazy – he never helps me do anything at home.*

**down-size** /'daʊnsaɪz/ *verb*

to reduce the number of people who work for a company: *A lot of big companies are downsizing.*

**down-stairs** /,daʊn'steɪz/ *adverb, adjective*

down the steps in a building to or on a lower floor: *I went downstairs and opened the front door. | my downstairs neighbor* **ANTONYM** upstairs

**down-town** /,daʊn'taʊn/ *adverb, adjective*

to or in the middle of a city, where there are a lot of stores and businesses: *Let's go downtown after work and go shopping. | The hotel's in downtown Austin.*

**down-ward** /'daʊnwəːd/ *also*

**downwards** *adverb*

toward a lower place or level: *The path led downward to the edge of the lake.* **ANTONYM**

**upward**

—**downward** *adjective* moving toward a lower place or level: *a downward movement in prices*

**doze** /doʊz/ *verb*

to sleep for a short time: *I was dozing on the couch.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**doze off**

to start sleeping when you do not intend to: *Grandpa dozed off watching TV.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **sleep**<sup>1</sup>

**doz-en** /'dʌzən/ *number*

**1** a group of 12 things: *You can either buy six eggs or a dozen.*

**2** *informal* a lot: *I've heard this story dozens of times – he tells it at every party.*

**Dr.** /'dɒktə/

the written abbreviation of **Doctor**

**drab** /dræb/ *adjective*

not colorful or interesting: *The room was drab, with gray walls and a brown carpet.*

**draft**<sup>1</sup> /dræft/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a piece of writing, a drawing, etc. that you intend to change until it is the way you want: *Can I show you the first draft of my history paper?*

**2** cold air blowing into a room: *There's a draft in here. Is the window open?*

**3** **the draft** = a system that makes people join the military: *Men who were sick avoided the draft.*

**4** a system in which football players, basketball players, etc. are chosen to play on professional teams: *the NBA draft of college players*

**draft**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to write or draw something that you intend to make changes to later, until it is the way you want it to be: *I drafted a letter to my*



congressman, and asked other students to add anything they thought was important.

**2** to tell someone that he or she must join the military for a period of time: *He was drafted during the Vietnam War, and fought there for several years.*

—**draft** adjective relating to a draft of a piece of writing or a drawing: *I gave the draft report to my teacher for comments.*

**draft-y** /'dræfti/ adjective

a drafty room or building has cold air blowing through it: *Old houses are often drafty.*

**drag** /dræg/ verb dragged, dragging

**1** to pull something heavy along the ground: *The boys dragged the boat onto the beach.*

**2** to pull someone in a strong or violent way: *Two men dragged him out of his car.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pull**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A4

**drag-on** /'drægən/ noun

a fierce animal in stories that can fly and breathe out fire

**drag-on-fly** /'drægən,flaɪ/ noun plural dragonflies

a large flying insect, with a long body

**drain**<sup>1</sup> /dreɪn/ noun

**1** a pipe or hole that carries away dirty water: *Leaves had blocked the drains in the streets.*

**2 down the drain** informal = if something goes down the drain, it is unsuccessful or it is wasted: *Since then, his career has gone down the drain; he hasn't made a single movie.*

**3 a drain on something** = something that uses a lot of time, money, energy, etc.: *Filling out all these forms is a drain on our time.*

**drain**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** if a liquid drains, it flows away: *The bath water slowly drained away.*

**2** to make the liquid flow away from something: *When the pasta is cooked, drain it.*

**dra-ma** /'dræmə/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a play for the theater, television, radio, etc.: *Is the play a drama or a comedy?*

**2** acting and plays in general: *Ben loves music and drama.*

**3** exciting things that happen: *It was an exciting game, with plenty of drama.*

—**dramatist** /'dræmətɪst/ noun, formal someone who writes plays

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **drama** noun
- **dramatic** adjective
- **dramatically** adverb
- **dramatize** verb
- **dramatist** noun
- **dramatization** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

**dra-mat-ic** /drə'mætɪk/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1** very sudden, exciting, or noticeable: *There has been a dramatic improvement in his work; he was getting C's and D's, and now he's getting A's.*

**2** showing a lot of emotion in a noticeable way: *Stop being so dramatic – you're embarrassing me.*

**3** related to plays and the theater: *Arthur Miller's dramatic works (=plays written for the theater)*

—**dramatically** adverb in a very sudden, exciting, or noticeable way: *The company's profits have increased dramatically.*

**dram-a-tize** /'dræmə'taɪz/ **[Ac]** verb

to use a real event or story from a book to write a play, movie, or television program: *They are dramatizing her life story for TV (=making a television movie about her life).*

—**dramatization** /,dræmə'tə'zeɪʃən/ noun the action of dramatizing something

**drank** /dræŋk/ verb

the past tense of DRINK

**drape** /dreɪp/ verb, formal

to put cloth or clothing over or around something: *He draped his coat over a chair.*

**drapes** /dreɪps/ also **drap-e-ries**

/'dreɪpəriːz/ plural noun

heavy curtains

**dras-tic** /'dræstɪk/ adjective

drastic actions or changes have a big effect: *The new school principal is planning to make drastic changes; the first one will be to fire several teachers.*

—**drastically** adverb: *The cost of oil has increased drastically in the past few months.*

**draw**<sup>1</sup> /drɔ/ verb drew /dru/ drawn /drɒn/

**1** if you draw something, you use a pen or pencil to make a picture of it: *She was drawing a picture of a tree. I'll draw you a map of how to get there.*

**2** formal to pull something from a container



or across something: *He drew a piece of paper from his pocket.*

**3** to move someone or something by pulling him, her, or it gently: *She drew the curtains* (=closed the curtains by pulling them gently).

**4 draw near/closer** *formal* = to become closer in time or space: *Christmas is drawing near.*

**5** to attract or interest someone: *The movie drew large crowds* (=many people came to see it).

**6 draw the line (at something)** = to refuse to do something because you do not approve of it, although you are willing to do other things: *I will help you, but I draw the line at telling lies* (=I will not tell lies).

**7 draw blood** *formal* = to make someone bleed: *The dog bit her so hard that it drew blood.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### draw back

to move back from something: *The crowd drew back to let the police get to the injured man.*

##### draw something up

**1** to think of and write a list, plan, etc.: *The teachers drew up a list of equipment they needed.*

**2** if a car draws up somewhere, it stops there: *A car drew up outside the house.*

##### draw<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** something that attracts people to see it: *The town's new museum will be a big draw for visitors.*

**2** one player's turn to take a card in a game of cards: *It was my draw, and I picked the ten of hearts.*

##### draw-back /'drɒbæk/ noun, formal

something that might be a problem or disadvantage: *The main drawback to living in New York is that the cost of apartments is so high.*

##### drawer /drɔr/ noun

a part of a piece of furniture that is shaped like a long thin box and which slides in and out: *The pens are in the top drawer of my desk.*

→ See picture on page A18

##### draw-ing /'drɔɪŋ/ noun

**1** a picture you make with a pen or pencil: *a drawing of a cat*

**2** the art or skill of making pictures with a pen or pencil: *I am not good at drawing.*

**3** an event in which someone's name is picked by chance from many names, and he or she wins a prize: *There will be a drawing today, and some lucky person will win a new car.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **art**

##### drawn /drɔn/ verb

the past participle of DRAW

##### dread<sup>1</sup> /dred/ verb, formal

to feel very worried about something that is going to happen: *I have a test tomorrow, and I'm dreading it.*

##### dread<sup>2</sup> noun, formal

a strong fear of something that is going to happen or may happen: *Flying always fills her with dread.*

##### dread-ful /'dredfəl/ adjective, formal

very bad or unpleasant: *The performance was dreadful – I just wanted it to end.*

—**dreadfully** *adverb*

##### dream<sup>1</sup> /drim/ noun

**1** the images that you see in your mind when you are asleep: *I had a dream about my dog last night.*

**2** something that you hope will happen: *Her dream was to become a drummer in a band.*

##### dream<sup>2</sup> verb dreamed or dreamt /dremt/

**1** to see images in your mind while you are asleep: *I dreamed that I was flying.*

**2** to think about something that you hope will happen: *She dreamed of becoming a pilot.*

##### dream-er /'drimə/ noun

someone who has dreams or ideas that are not likely to happen: *The inventor was often accused of being a dreamer.*

##### dreamt /dremt/ verb

a past tense and past participle of DREAM

##### dream-y /'drimi/ adjective

**1** a dreamy look, smile, etc. shows that you are thinking about something pleasant rather than about what is happening around you: *Whenever he talks about his girlfriend he gets a dreamy look on his face.*

**2** pleasant, peaceful, and relaxing: *They play dreamy music in my dentist's office to try to make people relax.*

—**dreamily** *adverb* thinking about pleasant things rather than what is happening around you: *She looked dreamily at the sky.*



**dreary** /'drɪəri/ adjective, formal

not exciting and making you feel sad or bored: *I was sick of the dreary rainy weather and wanted some sunshine.*

**drench** /drentʃ/ verb, formal

to make something completely wet: *The rain drenched us.*

—**drenched** adjective: *I forgot my umbrella and got drenched.*

**dress**<sup>1</sup> /dres/ verb

to put clothes on someone or on yourself: *Can you dress the kids while I make breakfast? | He got dressed (=put on his clothes) quickly.*

**PHRASAL VERB****dress up**

**1** to wear your best clothes for a special occasion: *Everybody dressed up for the party.*

**2** to wear special clothes that make you look like someone or something else: *I dressed up as a robot for Halloween.*

→ See picture on page A6

**dress**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a piece of clothing that a woman or girl wears, which covers the top of her body and part of her legs: *She was wearing a red dress.*

**2** formal clothes for men or women of a particular type or for a particular occasion: *Everyone at the event was in formal dress (=wearing formal clothes).*

**3** a **dress shirt/dress shoes, etc.** = a shirt, shoes, etc. that you wear with formal clothes such as a **SUIT**

**'dress code** noun

a standard of what you should wear for a particular situation: *The restaurant has a strict dress code. Men have to wear a suit and tie.*

**dress·er** /'dresə/ noun

a piece of furniture with drawers, used for keeping clothes in: *All my T-shirts are in the top drawer of that dresser.*

**dress·ing** /'dresɪŋ/ noun

**1** a mixture of oil and other things that you pour over **SALAD**: *What kind of salad dressing would you like?*

**2** another word for **STUFFING**: *I'm making dressing for the turkey.*

**'dressing room** noun

a room where an actor gets ready before going on stage or television

**dress·mak·er** /'dres,meɪkə/ noun

a person whose job is to make clothes for women

**dress·y** /'dresi/ adjective

dressy clothes are ones you wear for special or formal occasions: *I bought some dressy shoes for the wedding.*

**drew** /dru/ verb

the past tense of **DRAW**

**drib·ble** /'drɪbəl/ verb

**1** if a liquid dribbles somewhere, it flows in a slow thin stream: *Blood from a cut dribbled down the side of his face.*

**2** to move a ball forward by bouncing (**BOUNCE**) it again and again in basketball, or kicking it again and again in **SOCCER**

**dried** /draɪd/ verb

the past tense and past participle of **DRY**

**dri·er** /'draɪə/ noun

another spelling of **DRYER**

**drift** /drɪft/ verb

to move along slowly in the air or water: *The leaves drifted slowly down from the trees.*

**PHRASAL VERB****drift apart**

if people drift apart, they gradually stop having a close relationship: *Over the years, my college friends and I have drifted apart.*

**drill**<sup>1</sup> /drɪl/ noun

**1** a tool or machine used for making holes in something hard: *He used an electric drill to make a hole in the wall.*

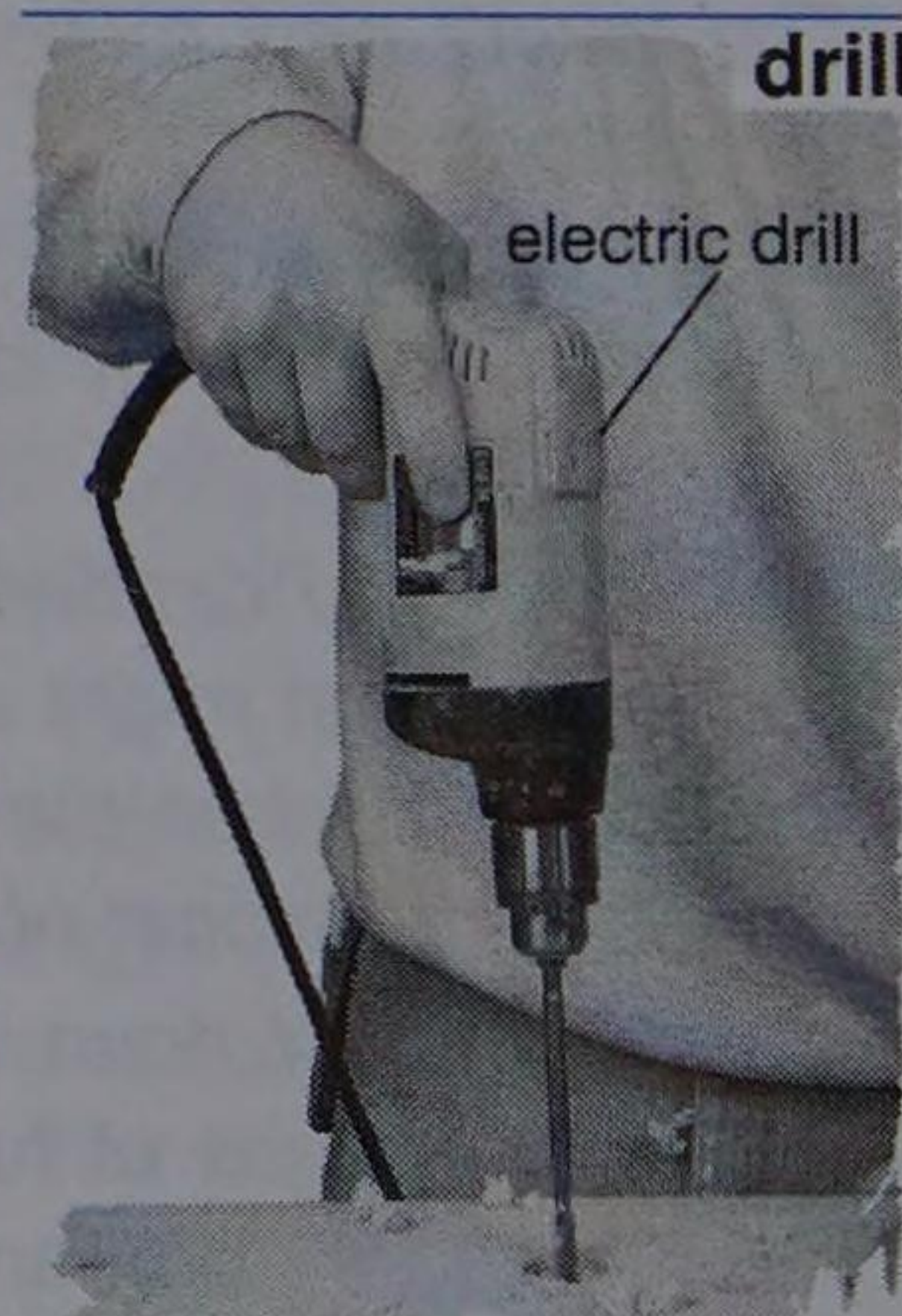
**2** a method of teaching something by making people repeat the same thing many times: *The teacher was doing a pronunciation drill with his class.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **practice**<sup>2</sup>

**drill**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to make a hole with a drill: *The dentist drilled a hole in my tooth.*

**2** to teach people something by making them repeat the same thing many times: *The*





teacher was drilling the students in pronunciation.

**drink<sup>1</sup>** /drɪŋk/ noun

**1** an amount of something such as water, juice, etc. that you can drink: *Are you thirsty? Would you like a drink of water?*

**2** an alcoholic drink: *We had a couple of drinks at the bar before we went to bed.*

**drink<sup>2</sup>** verb drank /dræŋk/ drunk /drʌŋk/

**1** to take liquid into your mouth and swallow it: *Ray was drinking Coke. | Do you want something to drink (=a glass of a drink)?*

**2** to drink alcohol, especially regularly: *Don't drink and drive.*

**drink·a·ble** /'drɪŋkəbəl/ adjective

water that is drinkable is safe to drink

**drink·er** /'drɪŋkə/ noun

someone who often drinks alcohol: *Greg's a heavy drinker (=he drinks a lot of alcohol).*

**'drinking fountain** noun

a piece of equipment in a public place that gives you water to drink when you push a button or turn a handle: *Is there a drinking fountain in the building? I'm really thirsty.*

**drip** /drɪp/

verb dripped, dripping

**1** if a liquid drips from something, it falls in drops: *Water was dripping from the ceiling, and I knew something was wrong.*

**2** if something is dripping, drops of a liquid are falling from it: *My nose is dripping – do you have a tissue?*

—**drip** noun a small amount of liquid that falls from something

→ See Thesaurus box at **pour**

**drive<sup>1</sup>** /draɪv/ verb drove /drouv/ driven /'drɪvən/ driving

**1** to make a car, bus, etc. move in the direction you want: *She's learning to drive. | He was driving a red car.*

**2** if you drive someone somewhere, you take him or her there in a car: *Many parents*

*drive their children to school. | I drove her home after the party.*

**3 drive someone crazy/nuts/insane** informal = to make someone feel very annoyed or angry: *Stop making that noise! You're driving me crazy!*

**drive<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a trip in a car: *Let's go for a drive. | It's a three-hour drive to the lake.*

**2** a part of a computer that can read or store information: *the C drive*

**3** a strong natural need: *the male sex drive*

**4** a planned effort to achieve a particular result, especially by an organization: *The government is continuing its drive to reduce crime.*

**5** determination and energy to succeed: *He has a lot of drive.*

**6** used in the names of roads: *We live at the end of Maple Drive.*

**driv·en** /'drɪvən/ verb

the past participle of DRIVE

**driv·er** /'draɪvə/ noun

someone who drives: *A truck driver stopped and asked us if we needed help with the car.*

→ See picture on page A26

**'driver's license** noun

an official card with your name, picture, etc. on it that says you are legally allowed to drive: *You need to show a driver's license or other form of ID to enter the club.*

**'drive-through** adjective

a drive-through restaurant, bank, etc. is one that you can use without getting out of your car

**drive·way** /'draɪvweɪ/ noun

the road or area for cars between a house and the street: *Park your car in the driveway.*

**driz·zle** /'drɪzəl/ verb

if it is drizzling, it is raining very lightly: *The rain isn't too bad. It's just drizzling.*

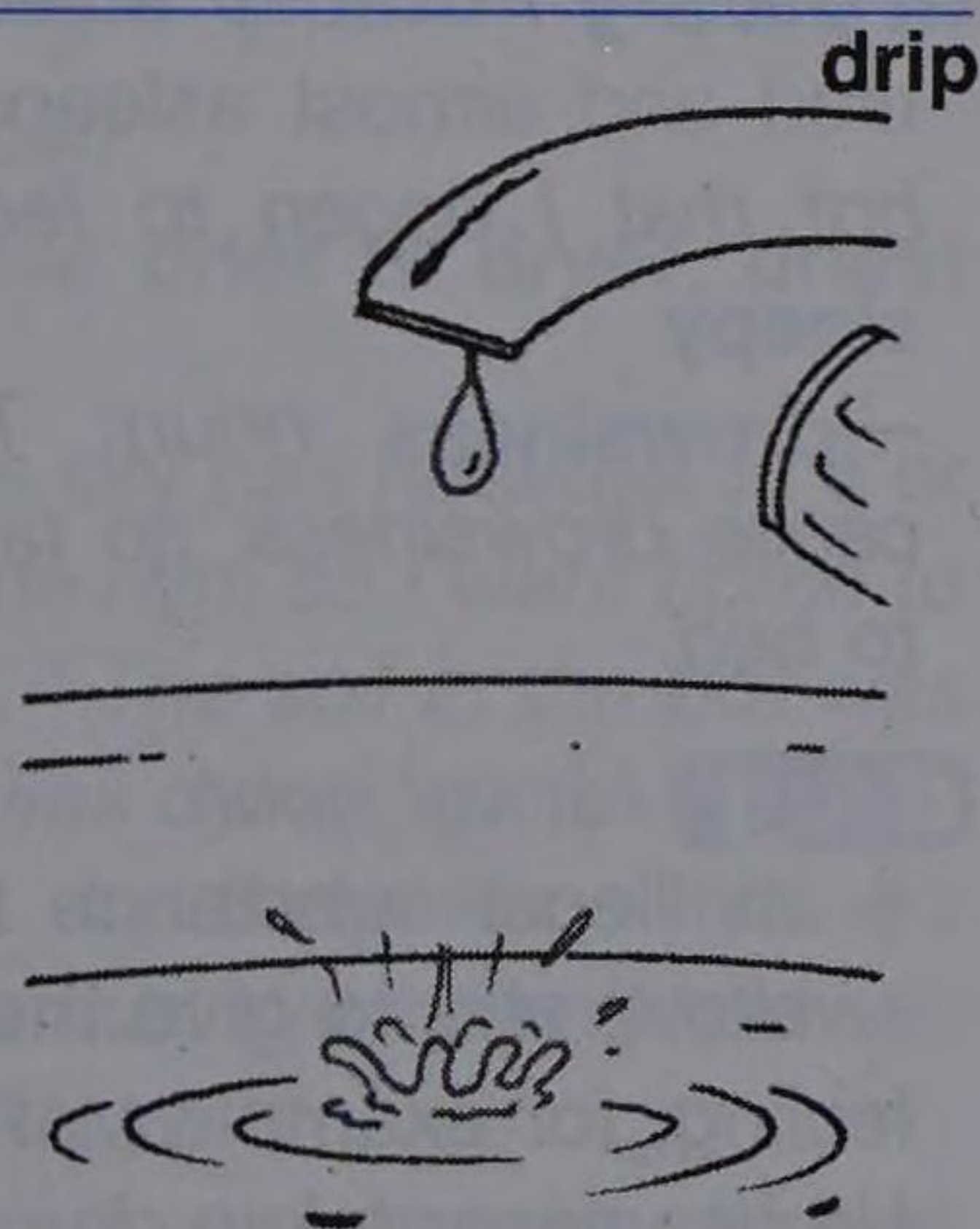
—**drizzle** noun a light rain

→ See Thesaurus box at **rain<sup>1</sup>**

**drool** /drul/ verb

if you drool, liquid flows out of your mouth: *The dog began to drool when it saw the food.*

—**drool** noun a flow of liquid that comes out of your mouth: *He wiped the drool from the baby's mouth.*





**droop** /drup/ verb

if something droops, it hangs down because it is old or weak: *The flowers had started to droop because there had been no rain.*

**drop**<sup>1</sup> /drap/ verb dropped, dropping

**1** if you drop something you are holding, you let it fall, often by accident: *She dropped a glass when she was drying the dishes.*

**2** to fall: *Several apples had dropped from the tree.*

**3** to become lower in level or amount: *The price of gas has dropped again.* **SYNONYM** fall, go down

**4** to let someone out of your car when you are driving somewhere: *You can just drop me at the corner.*

**5** to stop doing something or continuing with something: *I wasn't doing very well, so I dropped French (=stopped studying French).*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**drop by** also **drop in**

to visit someone who does not know you are coming: *Ed dropped by yesterday.*

**drop off**

**1 drop someone off** = to take someone to a place in a car, before going to another place: *Can you drop the kids off at my sister's house on your way to work?*

**2** to begin to sleep: *The baby dropped off to sleep.*

**3** to become less in level or amount: *The number of kids playing hockey has dropped off recently (=there are fewer kids playing).*

**drop out**

to stop going to school or college before you have finished your studies, or to stop an activity before you have finished it: *She dropped out of high school two months before graduation. | The injury forced him to drop out of the race.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **decrease**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A4

**drop**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a very small amount of liquid: *Put a drop of oil on the wheel.*

**2** a situation in which the amount or level of something becomes lower: *There has been a drop in the price of computers – you can get a good one now for 400 dollars less than last year.*

**3 lemon/fruit/chocolate, etc. drop** = a candy that tastes like LEMON, fruit, etc.

**drop-in** adjective

if a place offers a drop-in service, you can go and get service, advice, etc. without telling them that you are coming first: *The patients can come to a drop-in medical clinic at the end of the month.*

**drop-out** /'drap-aut/ noun

someone who leaves school or college without finishing it: *Many high-school dropouts have trouble finding jobs.*

**drought** /draut/ noun

a long period of dry weather when there is not enough rain: *The country has had two years of severe drought; farmers cannot grow anything.*

**drove** /drouv/ verb

the past tense of DRIVE

**drown** /draun/ verb

if someone drowns, they die from being under water for too long: *Many people drowned when the ship sank.*

**drows-y** /'drauzi/ adjective

tired and almost asleep: *The room was so hot that I began to feel drowsy.* **SYNONYM** sleepy

—**drowsiness** noun: *This medicine can cause drowsiness, so take it before you go to bed.*

**drug**<sup>1</sup> /drʌg/ noun

**1** an illegal substance that people smoke, swallow, etc. to give themselves a pleasant feeling, for example MARIJUANA or COCAINE: *He has never taken drugs (=used drugs).*

**2** a medicine: *A new drug is being used to treat cancer.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **medicine**

**drug**<sup>2</sup> verb

to give someone drugs, usually to make him or her sleep: *The thieves drugged him and stole his money.*

**drug dealer** noun

someone who sells illegal drugs **SYNONYM** dealer

**drug-store** /'drʌgstɔːr/ noun

a store where you can buy medicine, soap, TOOTHPASTE, etc.



**drum**<sup>1</sup> /drʌm/ noun

**1** a round musical instrument which you hit with your hand or a stick: *Johnny plays the drums in a band.*

**2** a large round container for storing liquids such as oil or chemicals: *an oil drum*

→ See picture on page A21

**drum**<sup>2</sup> verb drummed, drumming

**1** to hit something many times in a way that sounds like drums: *He drummed his fingers on the table.*

**2** to play a drum

**drunk**<sup>1</sup> /drʌŋk/ adjective

if someone is drunk, he or she has drunk too much alcohol and cannot think or act normally: *He got drunk and ran his car into a tree.*

**drunk**<sup>2</sup> verb

the past participle of DRINK

**drunk**<sup>3</sup> noun

someone who is drunk or who often gets drunk

**drunk-en** /'drʌŋkən/ adjective, formal

behaving in a way that shows you are drunk: *A drunken crowd of people came out of the bar.*

—**drunkenness** noun

**dry**<sup>1</sup> /draɪ/ adjective **drier** or **dryer**, **driest** or **dryest**

**1** something that is dry has no water in it or on it: *I got wet in the rain, so I went home to put on dry clothes. | The soil in the pot was dry, and the plant was dying.* **ANTONYM** **wet**

**2** if the weather is dry, there is no rain: *It's been a very dry summer. We haven't had rain for a month.* **ANTONYM** **wet**

**3** if your mouth, throat, or skin is dry, it does not have enough of the natural liquid that is usually in it: *My skin gets so dry in the winter.*

**4** **dry wine/champagne, etc.** = wine, etc. that is not sweet: *a glass of dry white wine*

→ See Thesaurus box at **clean**<sup>2</sup>

**dry**<sup>2</sup> verb dried, third person singular dries  
if something dries, it no longer has any water in it or on it: *She was drying her hair with a towel. | Julia hung the wet clothes outside to dry.*

**'dry-clean** verb

to take clothes to a business that cleans them with chemicals, not water and soap: *It's a wool suit, so it has to be dry-cleaned.*

**'dry 'cleaners** noun

a business that dry-cleans clothes

**dry-er** also **drier** /'draɪə/ noun

a machine that dries things, especially clothes or hair: *Can you put the wet clothes in the dryer?*

**du-al** /'duəl/ adjective

having two of something, or two parts: *She plays a dual role in the movie – the main character and her mother.*

**du-bi-ous** /'dubiəs/ adjective, formal

**1** if you are dubious about something, you are not sure whether it is good or true: *Anna's parents felt dubious about her new boyfriend. They thought he was too old for her.* **SYNONYM** **doubtful**

**2** not real or honest: *He's a dubious businessman who cannot be trusted.*

**duck**<sup>1</sup> /dʌk/ noun

**1** a common bird that floats on water and has short legs and a wide beak: *We went to the pond to feed the ducks.*

**2** the meat from a duck

**duck**<sup>2</sup> verb

to lower your body or head very quickly to avoid something: *He threw a book at me, and I ducked.*

**duck-ling** /'dʌkliŋ/ noun

a young duck

**duct** /dʌkt/ noun

**1** a tube in a building for carrying air or electric wires: *There was no warm air coming from the heating duct.*

**2** a thin narrow tube inside your body, a plant, etc. that liquid or air goes through: *If your tear duct is blocked, your eye becomes too dry.*

**dude** /dud/ noun, informal

a man or boy. This is often used to talk to someone instead of using his name: *Hey dude, what are you doing?*

**due** /du/ adjective

**1** expected to happen or arrive at a particular time: *The flight from Chicago is due to arrive at 7 p.m. | The baby is due in March.*

**2** if something is due on a particular date, it should be given to someone on or before that date: *Your English papers are due on Friday.*

**3** **due to something** = if one thing is due to another, the first thing happens as a result of



the second thing: *Her success was due to hard work.*

**du·el** /'duəl/ *noun*

a fight in past times between two people with guns or swords: *He was killed in a duel.*

—**duel** *verb* to fight with guns or swords

**dues** /duz/ *plural noun*

money that you pay regularly to be a member of an organization: *Do you have to pay dues to be a member of the club?*

**du·et** /du'et/ *noun*

a piece of music for two performers: *He wrote a duet for flute and violin.*

**dug** /dʌg/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of DIG

**dull**<sup>1</sup> /dʌl/ *adjective*

**1** not interesting or exciting: *The book was so dull that I fell asleep reading it.* **SYNONYM**

**boring**

**2** a dull pain is not strong: *I had a dull ache in my shoulder.*

**3** not bright or shiny: *The wall was painted a dull gray color.*

**4** not sharp: *The knife was too dull to cut the string.*

**5** a dull sound is not clear or loud, like something heavy falling on the floor: *I heard a dull thud, and I realized that my sister had fallen out of bed.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **boring**

**dull**<sup>2</sup> *verb, formal*

to make a pain or feeling less noticeable: *The drug dulled the pain, so that she was able to sleep.*

**du·ly** /'duli/ *adverb, formal*

done in a way that is correct, expected, or that follows the rules: *An employee noticed the problem and duly reported it to her boss.*

**dumb** /dʌm/ *adjective, informal*

stupid: *I felt really dumb when I couldn't get the box open.* **ANTONYM** **smart**

**dum·my** /'dʌmi/ *noun plural dummies*

**1** *informal* someone who is stupid: *Don't be such a dummy!* **SYNONYM** **idiot**

**2** a plastic figure of a person: *They crash the cars with dummies inside to see how badly they are damaged.*

**dump**<sup>1</sup> /dʌmp/ *verb*

**1** to drop or put something somewhere in a careless way: *She dumped her suitcase in the middle of the room and left it there.*

**2** to leave something somewhere because you do not want it: *It is illegal to dump garbage here.*

**3** *informal* to end a relationship with someone: *Tammy dumped her boyfriend because she likes someone else.*

**dump**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a place where you can take things you do not want and leave them there: *We took two bags of garbage and a broken chair to the dump.*

**2** *informal* a place that is unpleasant because it is dirty and ugly: *Your apartment's a dump. Do you ever clean it?*

**dune** /dun/ *noun*

a hill made of sand: *We walked over the sand dunes to the beach.*

**dun·geon** /'dʌndʒən/ *noun*

a dark prison under the ground, used in past times: *He was kept in the dungeon of the castle for two years.*

**dunk** /dʌŋk/ *verb*

**1** to quickly put something into a liquid and then take it out again: *He dunked his cookie in his coffee.*

**2** to jump up by the basket and throw the ball down through it in BASKETBALL

**du·o** /'duou/ *noun*

two people who do something together: *The story is about a singing duo who fall in love with each other.*

**du·plex** /'dupleks/ *noun*

a house that is divided into two separate places for people to live

**du·pli·cate**<sup>1</sup> /'dupləkɪt/ *noun, formal*

an exact copy of something that you can use in the same way: *He made a duplicate of the house key to give to his sister.* **SYNONYM** **copy**

—**duplicate** *adjective* made as an exact copy of something: *a duplicate key*

**du·pli·cate**<sup>2</sup> /'dupləˌkeɪt/ *verb, formal*

**1** to do the same thing as someone else: *We don't want our employees to duplicate each other's work because it wastes time.*

**2** to copy something exactly: *It is illegal to duplicate the DVD.*



**du·pli·ca·tion** /ˌdʌpləˈkeɪʃən/ *noun*, formal

**1** the act or process of copying something exactly: *The duplication of this software is a crime.*

**2** the act or process of repeating something in exactly the same way: *Make sure you know what everyone else in your group is doing so that there is no duplication of effort (=two people doing the same thing).*

**dur·a·ble** /ˈdʊrəbəl/ *adjective*, formal

staying in good condition for a long time: *Plastic window frames are more durable than wood.*

—**durability** /ˌdʊrəˈbɪləti/ *noun* the state or quality of being durable: *Steel is used in large buildings because of its strength and durability.*

**dur·ing** /ˈdʊrɪŋ/ *preposition*

**1** all through a period of time: *During the day when my mom is at work, my little sister stays at my grandmother's house.*

**2** at some point in a period of time: *Henry died during the night.*

**dusk** /dʌsk/ *noun*

the time when it starts to become dark at the end of the day: *The street lights go on at dusk.* **SYNONYM** twilight; **ANTONYM** dawn

**dust<sup>1</sup>** /dʌst/ *noun*

very small pieces of dirt that look like a powder: *She never cleans her house; there is dust on all the furniture.*

**dust<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to clean the dust from something with a cloth: *I dusted the shelves in my bedroom.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **clean<sup>2</sup>**

**dust·pan** /ˈdʌstpæn/ *noun*

a flat container with a handle that you use with a brush to remove dust and waste from the floor

**dust·y** /ˈdʌsti/ *adjective*

covered with dust: *I found some dusty old books that nobody had touched for years.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **dirty**

**Dutch<sup>1</sup>** /dʌtʃ/ *adjective*

from the Netherlands: *She's Dutch, and she lives in Amsterdam. | a Dutch company*

**Dutch<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** the language used in the Netherlands

**2 the Dutch** = the people of the Netherlands

**du·ti·ful** /ˈdʊtɪfəl/ *adjective*, formal

a dutiful person does what other people expect them to do: *He was a dutiful son who always obeyed his parents.*

—**dutifully** *adverb*, formal: *Every Sunday she dutifully went to church.*

**du·ty** /ˈdʊti/ *noun* plural **duties**

something that you should do because it is right or it is part of your job: *Parents have a duty to protect their children.*

**DVD** *noun*

**digital video disc** a flat round object like a CD that you use on a computer or on a piece of equipment called a DVD player to play movies: *I was watching a DVD on my laptop.*

**dwarf** /dwɔːf/ *noun*

**1** an imaginary creature that looks like a small man

**2** a person who is much shorter than usual. Many people think this use is offensive

**dwel** /dweɪ/ *verb* dwelled or dwelt

/dweɪt/ *formal*

to live in a particular place: *The story is about some tiny creatures that dwell in the forest.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**dwell on/upon something**

to think or talk for too long about something unpleasant: *I tried not to dwell on my mistake; I tried to think about how to fix it instead.*

**dwell·ing** /ˈdweɪlɪŋ/ *noun*, formal

a house, apartment, etc. where people live

**dye<sup>1</sup>** /daɪ/ *noun*

a substance you use to change the color of your hair, cloth, etc.: *She bought some black hair dye.*

**dye<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to change the color of something using a dye: *She dyes her hair. Sometimes it's red, and sometimes it's blond.*

**dy·nam·ic** /daɪˈnæmɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

full of energy and ideas: *Our teacher is very dynamic. She's always thinking of new ways to make the class interesting.*

**dy·na·mite** /ˈdaɪnəˌmaɪt/ *noun*

a substance that can cause powerful explosions: *They blew up the building with dynamite.*



# Ee

**E** /i/ noun

the third note in the musical SCALE of C, or the musical KEY based on this note

**each** /itʃ/ adjective, pronoun, adverb

every person or thing separately: *She had a bag in each hand. | The kids were given \$5 each. | Each of her friends gave her a different present. | Twelve guests came to the party, and they each brought something to eat.*

## USAGE: each

**Each**, **every**, and **all** are all used to talk about every person or thing in a group.

When you are thinking about the people or things in the group separately, use **each** or **every**: *Each child at the party was given a balloon. | Every child at the party was given a balloon.*

When you are thinking about the whole group together, use **all**: *All the children were given balloons.*

**each other** pronoun

**1** used for showing that each of two or more people does something to the other or others: *Sarah and Rob love each other and want to get married.*

**2** used for talking about the positions and situations that two or more people or things are in: *Our houses are next to each other, so we're neighbors.*

**ea-ger** /'igə/ adjective

wanting to do something very much: *He was eager to meet his new teacher.*

—**eagerly** adverb: *She opened the letter eagerly and ripped it by mistake.*

—**eagerness** noun: *We were surprised by his eagerness to do the work; he seemed really excited.*

**ea-gle** /'igəl/ noun  
a big wild bird with a beak like a hook that eats small animals

**ear** /ɪr/ noun

the two parts of your body that you hear with: *Mark whispered something in her ear.*

→ See picture on page A2

**ear-ache** /'ɪreɪk/ noun

a pain inside your ear: *I had an earache and couldn't sleep.*

**ear-ly** /'ɜːli/ adjective **earlier**, **earliest**

**1** before the usual or expected time: *I was early for my appointment, so I had to wait. | We can have an early dinner at about 5:00.*

ANTONYM **late**

**2** near the beginning of the day: *It was early in the morning, about 5:00 a.m.* ANTONYM **late**

**3** near the beginning of a period of time: *We're leaving in the early afternoon, around 1:00.* ANTONYM **late**

**early**<sup>2</sup> adverb

**1** before the usual or expected time: *She came to the party early to help me get ready.*

ANTONYM **late**

**2** near the beginning of the day: *He got up very early, at about 5:30 in the morning.*

ANTONYM **late**

**3** near the beginning of a period of time: *He'll be back early in January, probably on the 3rd.* ANTONYM **late**

**earn** /ɜːn/ verb

**1** to get money for the work you do: *Alan earns \$40,000 a year. | I'd like to earn some extra money. Do you have any work I could do for you?*

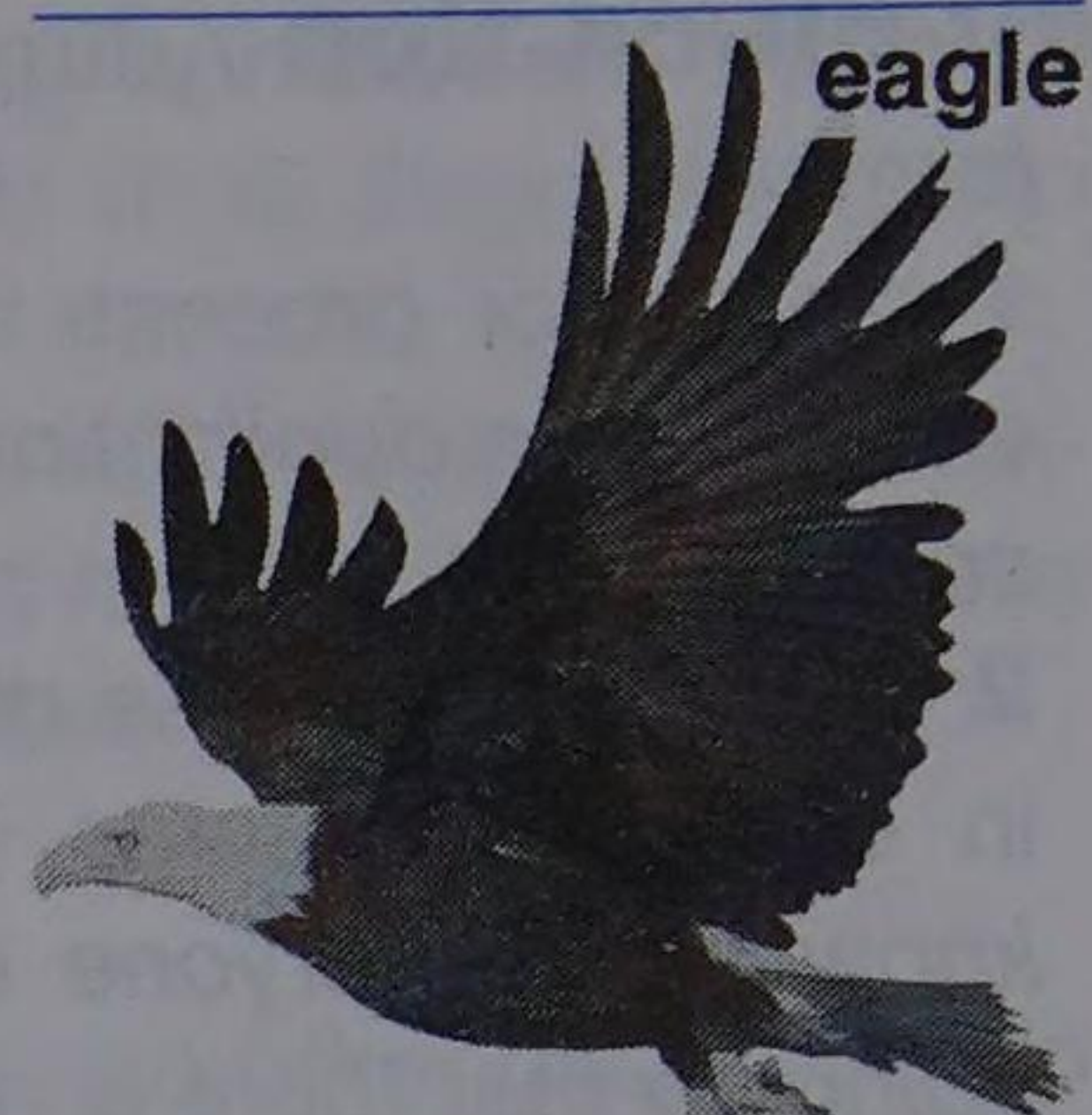
## THESAURUS: earn

**make** to earn or get money: *Debbie makes a little money by babysitting.*

**get informal** to receive money for doing work or selling something: *How much did you get for mowing their lawns?*

**be paid/get paid** to be given money for doing a job: *I get paid \$7.50 an hour.*

**2** to get something good because you have worked hard or done something well: *You've earned a rest after all that hard work!*





**ear·nest** /'ɜːnɪst/ adjective, formal

serious about what you are saying or doing: *He made an earnest effort to do better in school.*

**earn·ings** /'ɜːnɪŋz/ plural noun, formal

money that you get from working: *I try not to spend all of my earnings.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pay**<sup>2</sup>

**ear·phones** /'ɪrfəʊnz/ plural noun

a small piece of equipment connected by a wire to a radio, MP3 PLAYER, etc., which you put in or over your ears so that only you can listen to it

**ear·ring** /'ɪrɪŋ/ noun

a piece of jewelry that you fasten to your ear: *She was wearing a pair of gold earrings.*

→ See picture at **jewelry**

**earth** also **Earth** /ɜːθ/ noun

the PLANET that we live on: *The Earth moves around the sun.*

#### THESAURUS: earth

**earth** the planet we live on: *The earth moves around the sun.*

**world** the planet we live on – used when you are thinking of the earth as a place where there are people and countries, mountains, and oceans, etc.: *This has to be one of the most beautiful places in the world.*

You can use **earth** to mean “the world”: *It's the highest mountain on earth. | It's the highest mountain in the world.*

When you compare the earth's surface to the ocean, use **land**: *Five weeks after sailing from Ireland, they saw land.*

When you compare the earth's surface to the sky, use **earth**: *The space shuttle returned to earth safely.*

**earth·quake** /'ɜːθkweɪk/ noun

a sudden shaking of the earth that often causes a lot of damage: *The earthquake damaged thousands of buildings and killed several people.*

**earth·worm** /'ɜːθwɜːm/ noun

a thin brown WORM that lives in soil

**ease**<sup>1</sup> /iːz/ noun, formal

**1 with ease** = if you do something with ease, it is very easy: *He won the race with ease.*

**2 at ease** = feeling comfortable and confident: *The teacher used games to make the*

*new students feel at ease.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **reduce**

**ease**<sup>2</sup> verb

to become less bad or unpleasant: *The doctor gave me drugs to ease the pain.*

**ea·sel** /'iːzəl/ noun

a frame that you put a drawing or painting on while you are making it

**eas·i·ly** /'iːzəli/ adverb

**1** without difficulty: *You can find information easily on the Internet.*

**2 easily the best/ easily the biggest, etc.** informal = much better, bigger, etc. than the others: *She is easily the most intelligent girl in the class.*

**east**<sup>1</sup> also **East** /iːst/ noun

**1** the direction from which the sun rises: *Which way is east?*

**2 the east** = the eastern part of a country or area: *We live in the east of the city.*

**3 the East a)** the part of the U.S. on the east coast of the U.S., especially the states north of Washington D.C.: *She was born in the East. b)* the countries in Asia, especially China and Japan: *I would love to travel in the East.*

→ See picture at **north**<sup>1</sup>

**east**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** in, to, or facing the east: *Our hotel was on the east coast of the island.*

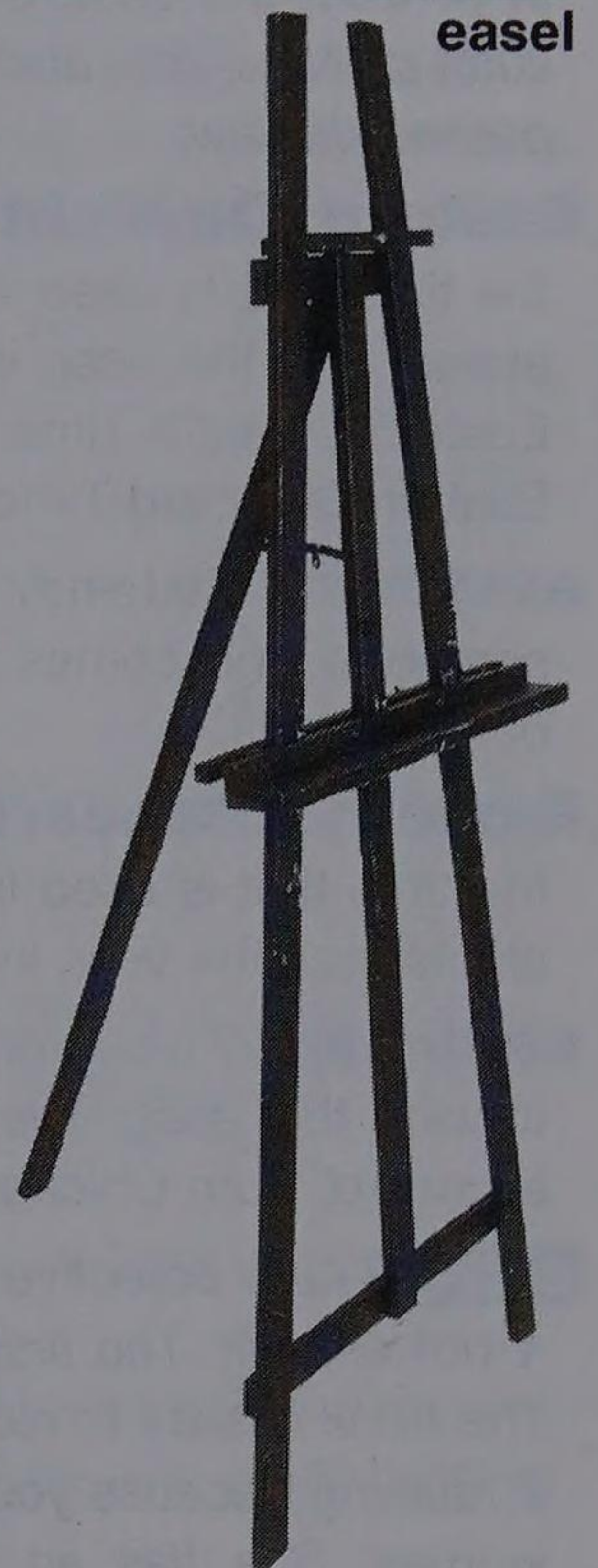
**2 east wind** = a wind that comes from the east

**east**<sup>3</sup> adverb

toward the east: *We drove east along Brooklyn Avenue. | The window faces east.*

**Eas·ter** /'iːstər/ noun

a religious holiday in March or April, when Christians remember Jesus Christ's return to life after dying on the cross





**'Easter egg** *noun*

an egg that has been colored and decorated for Easter: *At Easter we look for Easter eggs that are hidden around the house.*

**east·ern** /'istərn/ *adjective*

in or from the east: *Several eastern states, such as New York and Massachusetts, have passed the law.*

**Eastern 'Daylight Time** *also EDT*

the time that is used in the eastern U.S. for almost half the year, including the summer. Eastern Daylight Time is one hour ahead of Eastern Standard Time

**easterner** /'istərnə/ *noun*

someone who comes from the eastern part of a country

**Eastern 'Standard Time** *also EST*

the time that is used in the eastern U.S. for almost half the year, including the winter

**east·ward** /'istwərd/ *adverb, adjective*

toward the east: *The plane was traveling eastward, from Chicago to New York.*

**eas·y** /'izi/ *adjective easier, easiest*

- 1** not difficult: *The first question was easy. | The book is easy to read.* **ANTONYM** **hard**
- 2** relaxing because you have no problems or worries: *She has an easy life, with a big house and lots of money.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **easy** *adjective*
- **easily** *adverb*
- **ease** *noun*
- **ease** *verb*

**easy<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

- 1 take it easy a)** to relax and not do very much: *I've been working so hard lately, I need to take it easy for a while.* **b)** used for telling someone to become less angry or upset: *OK, you don't need to yell – just take it easy.*
- 2 go easy on someone** *informal* = to not punish someone too severely or not become too angry with them: *He's very upset about his mistake, so go easy on him.*
- 3 go easy on something** *informal* = to not use or eat too much of something: *I have to go easy on the desserts because I'm getting fat.*
- 4 that's easier said than done** = you say

this when someone has suggested something that sounds simple but is not: *I know I should just ask her to be quiet, but that's easier said than done.*

**eas·y·go·ing** /,izi'gouɪŋ/ *adjective*

an easygoing person is not easily worried or annoyed: *Her parents are really easygoing; they never yell at her.*

**eat** /it/ *verb* ate /eɪt/ eaten /'itn/

- 1** to put food in your mouth and swallow it: *She was eating an apple. | I'm still eating my dinner. | Do you want something to eat (=some food to eat)?*
- 2** to have a meal: *We usually eat at about 6.*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**eat out**

to eat in a restaurant: *They usually eat out once a week.*

**eat something up**

- 1** to finish eating all of something: *Eat up your breakfast! We're late!*
- 2** to use too much of something: *This class is eating up all of my time. I don't have time to study anything else.*
- 3 eat it up** *informal* = to enjoy something very much: *If you give the kids a computer game, they'll just eat it up.*

**eat·en** /'itn/ *verb*

the past participle of EAT

**eaves·drop**

/'ivzdrɒp/ *verb*  
eavesdropped, eavesdropping  
to listen secretly to other people's conversation: *She stood outside the door so that she could eavesdrop on their conversation.*



**ec·cen·tric** /ɪk'sentrik/ *adjective*

behaving in a way that is unusual and different from most people: *He dressed in an eccentric way, often wearing two different shoes.*

—**eccentric** *noun* an eccentric person

→ See Thesaurus box at **strange<sup>1</sup>**

**ech·o** /'ekəʊ/ *noun* plural **echoes**

a sound that you hear again because it comes back off the surface of a wall, hill,



etc.: *I could hear the echo of my voice from the other side of the cave.*

**echo**<sup>2</sup> verb

echoed if a sound echoes, you hear it again because it comes back off a wall, hill, etc.: *When he shouted, his voice echoed around the valley.*

**eclipse** /ɪˈklɪps/ noun

an occasion when you cannot see the sun because the moon is in front of it, or when you cannot see the moon because it is covered by the Earth's shadow: *an eclipse of the moon*

**ecology** /ɪˈkɒlədʒi/ noun

the study of the environment and the relationship between it and all the plants, animals, and humans who live there

—**ecologist** noun someone who studies ecology

—**ecological** /ɪkəˈlɒdʒɪkəl/ adjective

**economic** /ɪkəˈnɒmɪk/ **Ac** adjective relating to business, industry, and trade in a country or area: *The economic situation in the U.S. is improving; there are more jobs, and people are spending more.*

—**economically** adverb

**economical** /ɪkəˈnɒmɪkəl/ **Ac**

adjective

not costing a lot of money to buy or use: *It's more economical to buy one large package of pasta than two or three small ones. I an economical car that gets 39 miles per gallon*

**economics** /ɪkəˈnɒmɪks/ **Ac** noun

the study of how countries' financial systems work, and how money, goods, and services are produced and used

—**economist** /ɪˈkɒnəˌmɪst/ noun someone who knows a lot about economics and advises people about this: *Some economists say that we need higher taxes.*

**economize** /ɪˈkɒnəˌmaɪz/ verb

to reduce the amount of money, goods, etc. that you use: *I'm trying to economize by taking my lunch to school, instead of buying it.*

**economy** /ɪˈkɒnəmi/ **Ac** noun

the system of trade and industry in a country or area: *China's economy is growing rapidly.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **economy** noun
- **economist** noun
- **economic** adjective
- **economics** noun

**ecstatic** /ɪkˈstætɪk/ adjective, formal feeling extremely happy and excited: *I was ecstatic when I found out that I got an A on my English test!*

**edge** /edʒ/ noun

**1** the part of something that is farthest from the center: *She was sitting on the edge of the bed.*

**2** the area beside a steep slope: *We looked over the edge of the cliff, down to the ocean.*

**3** the thin sharp part of a tool used for cutting: *You will need a knife with a sharp edge.*

**4 on edge** = nervous and worried: *Everyone was on edge, because we were worried about our final exams.*

**edgy** /ˈedʒi/ adjective

nervous and easily upset: *I was feeling edgy because my brother and I had been arguing.*

**edible** /ˈedəbəl/ adjective

something that is edible is safe to eat or good enough to eat: *I didn't pick the berries because I wasn't sure if they were edible.*

ANTONYM **inedible**

**edit** /ˈedɪt/ **Ac** verb

to make a book, movie, etc. ready for people to read or see, by removing mistakes, deciding what to include, etc.: *When the author is finished writing, I will edit the book.*

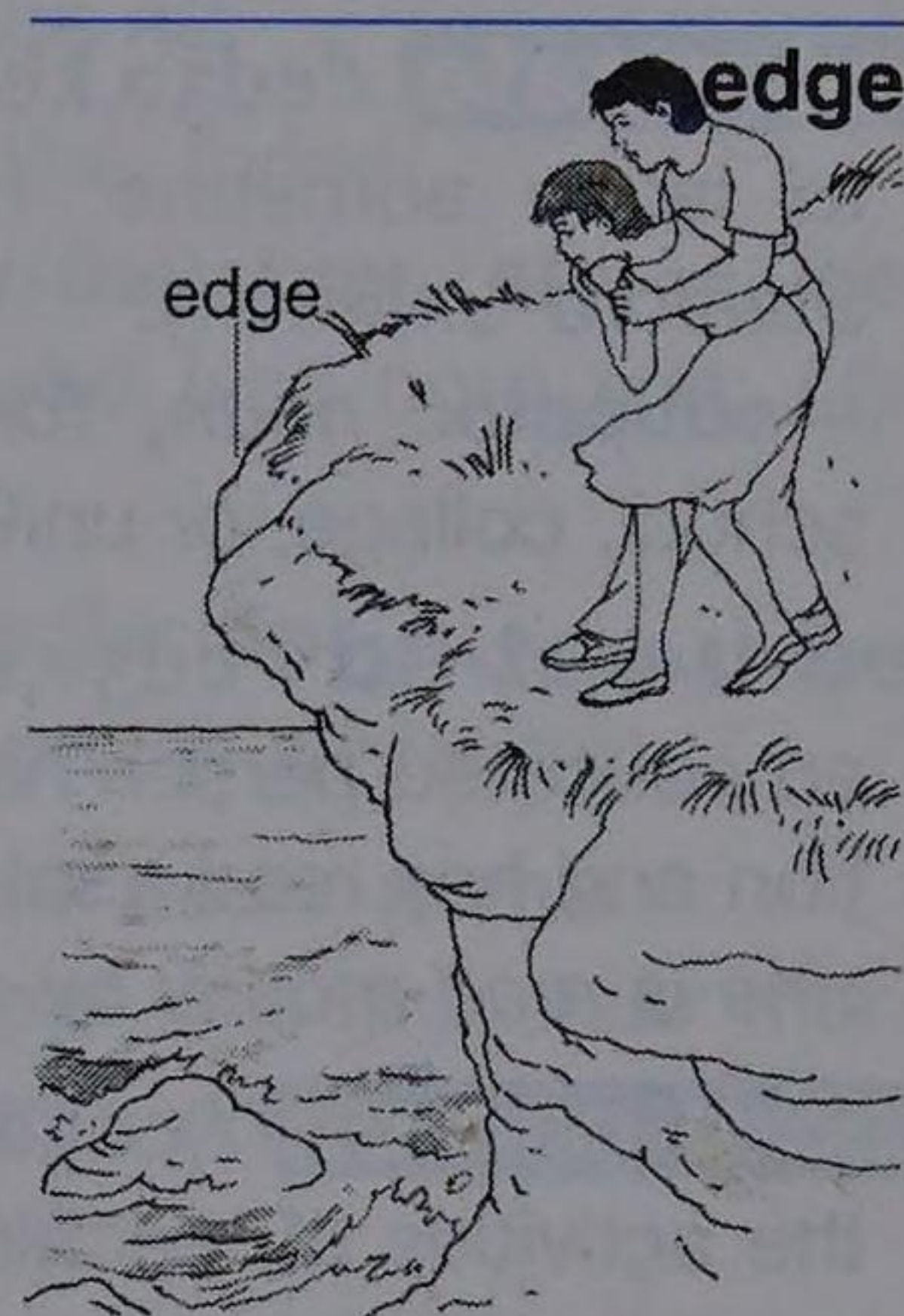
**edition** /ɪˈdɪʃən/ **Ac** noun

a set of copies of a book, newspaper, etc., that is produced at a particular time: *There are two editions of the newspaper – one in the morning and one in the evening.*

**editor** /ˈedətər/ **Ac** noun

**1** the person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine: *the editor of the Los Angeles Times newspaper*

**2** someone whose job is to decide what



E



should be included in a newspaper, magazine, book, etc.: *a children's book editor*

**ed·i·to·ri·al**<sup>1</sup> /,edə'tɔ:riəl/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives an opinion rather than reporting facts: *There was an editorial on the president's new energy policy in yesterday's paper.*

**editorial**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

relating to editing: *the editorial staff of the newspaper*

**ed·u·cate** /'edʒə,keɪt/ *verb, formal*

to teach someone: *He was educated at Stanford University.*

—**educator** *noun, formal* a teacher at a school, college, or university

**ed·u·cat·ed** /'edʒə,keɪtɪd/ *adjective*

an educated person has had a good education and has read a lot of books: *The magazine is read mostly by educated people.*

**ed·u·ca·tion** /,edʒə'keɪʃən/ *noun*

the activities of teaching and learning: *They want their children to get a good education.*

**eel** /il/ *noun*

a long thin fish that looks like a snake

**ef·fect** /ɪ'fekt/ *noun*

**1** the way in which something that happens changes someone or something, or the result that something has: *Smoking has a very bad effect on your health.* **SYNONYM** *influence*

**2 take effect** = to start to influence someone or something, or to start to work: *The drug should take effect in about ten minutes.*

**3 in effect** = used when you are describing what the real situation is, instead of what it seems to be: *In effect, she's now my boss.*

→ **side effect**

→ See Thesaurus box at **result**<sup>1</sup>

**ef·fec·tive** /ɪ'fektɪv/ *adjective*

producing the result that you want to happen: *We need a more effective way to teach reading because the one we use now is not working.* **ANTONYM** *ineffective*

—**effectively** *adverb*: *The new heating system is not working effectively; the rooms are still too cold.*

—**effectiveness** *noun*

**ef·fi·cient** /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ *adjective*

**1** working well and getting things done quickly: *The waiter wasn't very efficient; he*

*was so slow that the food got cold.* **ANTONYM** *inefficient*

**2** doing something in a way that does not waste time, money, energy, effort, etc.: *Try to organize your study time in an efficient way, so that you have time to do other things.*

**ANTONYM** *inefficient*

—**efficiency** *noun* the way in which you do something, so that you do not waste time, energy, and effort: *The company needs to improve the efficiency of its factories because they waste too much energy.*

—**efficiently** *adverb*

**ef·fort** /'efərt/ *noun*

**1** the physical or mental energy that you use to do something: *Moving a piano takes a lot of effort.* | *You need to put more effort into your homework (=work harder at it).*

**2** an attempt to do something: *She started riding her bicycle to school, in an effort to (=to try to) lose weight.*

**ef·fort·less** /'efətləs/ *adjective, formal*

if someone does something in an effortless way, it seems to be easy for them: *It's a very hard song to sing, but she makes it look effortless.*

—**effortlessly** *adverb, formal*

**EFL** *noun*

**English as a Foreign Language** the activity of teaching English to people whose first language is not English, and who do not live in an English-speaking country

**e.g.** /,i 'dʒi/ *abbreviation, formal*

an abbreviation that means "for example": *He enjoys studying science subjects, e.g. chemistry and physics.*

**egg** /eg/ *noun*

**1** a round object with a hard surface that contains a baby bird, insect, snake, etc.: *The bird lays its eggs in the spring.*

**2** an egg from a chicken, used as food: *I had a fried egg for breakfast.*

**egg·plant** /'egplənt/ *noun*

a large vegetable with a shiny dark purple skin

→ See picture on page A12

**egg·shell** /'egʃel/ *noun*

the hard outside part of an egg



**e·go** /'igou/ noun

the opinion that you have about yourself: *He has a very big ego (=he thinks he is very important).*

**eight** /eɪt/ number

**1** 8: *This pasta dish will serve eight people.*

**2** eight O'CLOCK: *Dinner will be at eight.*

**3** eight years old: *Annie's brother is eight.*

**eight·een** /,eɪ'tɪn/ number

**1** 18: *I've been awake for eighteen hours.*

**2** eighteen years old: *I'm planning on having a big party when I'm eighteen.*

—**eighteenth** /,eɪ'tɪnθ/ number 18th or 1/18

**eighth** /eɪtθ/ number

**1** 8th

**2** 1/8

**eight·y** /'eɪti/ number

**1** 80

**2** the **eighties a)** also the '80s the years between 1980 and 1989: *My dad graduated from high school in the eighties.* **b)** also the '80s temperatures between 80 and 89 degrees Fahrenheit or Celsius: *The temperature was in the eighties all week.*

**3** be in your **eighties** = to be between 80 and 89 years old: *My grandfather is in his eighties.*

—**eightieth** /'eɪtiθ/ number 80th or 1/80

**ei·ther<sup>1</sup>** /'iðə/ conjunction

**either ... or** = used when saying that there are two or more possibilities: *We can either take the bus, or we can fly.*

**either<sup>2</sup>** pronoun, adjective

**1** one or the other of two people or things: *"Do you want chocolate or strawberry ice cream?" "Either is fine!" | Either team could win.*

**2** used in negative sentences, when saying that something is true about both of two things or people: *"Which one of these dresses do you like best?" "I don't like either of them."*

**3** **either side/end/hand, etc.** = both sides, ends, etc.: *He stood in the door with a policeman on either side of him.*

**either<sup>3</sup>** adverb

used in negative sentences to mean "also": *"I can't swim." "I can't either."*

**e·lab·o·rate** /ɪ'læbəreɪt/ adjective, formal  
having a lot of small details or parts that are connected together in a complicated way:

*The carpet had a very elaborate design.*

—**elaborately** adverb

**e·las·tic** /ɪ'læstɪk/ noun

a type of rubber material that can stretch and then return to its usual size

—**elastic** adjective made of elastic: *The pants have an elastic waist, so that they are easy to put on.*

**el·bow** /'elbou/ noun

the joint where your arm bends

→ See picture on page A2

**el·der** /'eldə/ adjective, formal

**elder sister/brother/daughter, etc.** = the sister, brother, etc. who was born first: *My elder sister is a nurse.*

**el·der·ly** /'eldəli/ adjective

old: *an elderly woman with white hair*

**el·ders** /'eldəz/ plural noun, formal

your elders are people who are older than you are: *Young people should have more respect for their elders.*

**el·dest** /'eldɪst/ adjective, formal

the eldest son or daughter was born first: *My eldest daughter is 17.*

**e·lect** /ɪ'lekt/ verb

to choose someone for an official position by voting: *She was elected to Congress in 2000.*

**e·lec·tion** /ɪ'lekʃən/ noun

an event in which people vote to choose someone for an official position: *Who do you think will win the next presidential election?*

—**electoral** /ɪ'lektərəl/ adjective relating to elections

**e·lec·tric** /ɪ'lektrɪk/ adjective

needing electricity in order to work: *an electric guitar*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **electric** adjective
- **electricity** noun
- **electrical** adjective
- **electrician** noun

**e·lec·tri·cal** /ɪ'lektrɪkəl/ adjective

**1** relating to electricity: *The machine uses electrical power.*

**2** using electricity: *The store sells electrical goods like televisions and kitchen appliances.*



**e•lec•tri•cian** /ɪˌlekˈtrɪʃən/ *noun*

someone whose job is to put in and repair electrical equipment: *We need an electrician to fix the light switch.*

→ See picture on page A16

**e•lec•tric•i•ty** /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti/ *noun*

a type of energy that is used to make lights, televisions, etc. work, and is carried through wires: *The new light bulbs use less electricity than the old ones.*

**e•lec•tron** /ɪˈlekˌtrɒn/ *noun*

a very small piece of matter that moves around the NUCLEUS (=central part) of an atom

**e•lec•tron•ic** /ɪˌlekˈtrɒnɪk/ *adjective*

**1** electronic equipment uses electricity and very small parts such as computer CHIPS and TRANSISTORS: *Computers and other electronic equipment can be easily damaged by water.*

**2** made or done using electronic equipment: *The band plays electronic music.*

—**electronically** *adverb*

**e•lec•tron•ics** /ɪˌlekˈtrɒnɪks/ *noun*

the technology used for making equipment that uses electricity, for example radios and televisions

**el•e•gant** /ˈeləɡənt/ *adjective, formal*

very beautiful and graceful: *She was a tall elegant woman who always dressed in beautiful clothes.*

—**elegance** *noun, formal* the quality of being elegant: *I love the elegance of the city's old buildings.*

**el•e•ment** /ˈeləmənt/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** formal one part of something: *The most important element in any movie is the story, and the characters are second.*

**2** formal a small amount of something, for example danger, truth, risk, etc.: *There is always an element of risk when you're climbing a big mountain.*

**3** a basic chemical substance, for example OXYGEN or HYDROGEN, that consists of only one type of atom

**el•e•men•tary** /ˌeləˈmentri/ *adjective*

basic and simple: *The youngest students are learning elementary mathematics.*

**ele'mentary school** *noun*

a school in the U.S. for the first five or seven years of a child's education: *Our elementary*

*school has kindergarten through sixth grade.*

SYNONYM **grade school**

**el•e•phant** /ˈeləfənt/ *noun*

a very large gray animal with big ears, a TRUNK (=a long nose that it can use to pick things up), and TUSKS (=long teeth): *Elephants live in parts of Africa and Asia.*

**el•e•va•tion** /ˌeləˈveɪʃən/ *noun, formal*

the height of a place, measured from the level of the ocean: *The city is in the mountains at an elevation of 7,000 feet.*

**el•e•va•tor** /ˈeləˌveɪtər/ *noun*

a machine like a small room that takes people from one level to another in a building: *I took the elevator to the 26th floor.*

**e•lev•en** /ɪˈlevən/ *number*

**1** 11: *There are eleven players on a soccer team.*

**2** eleven O'CLOCK

**3** eleven years old: *I was eleven when my sister was born.*

**e•lev•enth** /ɪˈlevənθ/ *number*

**1** 11th

**2** 1/11

**elf** /elf/ *noun plural elves* /elvz/

a small imaginary person with pointed ears, who appears in stories

**el•i•gi•ble** /ˈelədʒəbəl/ *adjective, formal*

allowed to do something: *People are eligible to vote at the age of 18.*

—**eligibility** /ˌelədʒəˈbɪləti/ *noun, formal* the right to do something

**e•lim•i•nate** /ɪˈlɪməˌneɪt/ **Ac** *verb, formal*

**1** to get rid of something completely: *Credit cards almost eliminate the need for cash.*

**2** **be eliminated** = to be defeated in a sports competition, so that you can no longer take part in it: *Our team was eliminated in the first part of the competition, so we went home.*

**e•lite**<sup>1</sup> /eɪˈliːt/ *adjective*

an elite group has the best people or things and therefore is highly respected: *She was one of an elite group of very popular girls at school.*

**elite**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a small group of people who are powerful or important because they have money, knowledge, special skills, etc.: *He was a member of the powerful political elite in Washington, D.C.*



**elm** /elm/ noun

a large tall tree with broad leaves

**e-lope** /I'loup/ verb, formal

if two people elope, they go away secretly to get married

**el-o-quent** /'eləkwənt/ adjective, formal

able to express your ideas and opinions in a way that is clear and beautiful: *He gave a short but eloquent answer to a difficult question.*

—**eloquently** adverb

—**eloquence** noun the quality of being eloquent

**else** /els/ adverb

**1** another thing or person: *"Thanks for the cookies." "You're welcome. Do you want anything else to eat?"* | *Someone else must have taken the money – I didn't take it. | We have tried everything to make it work; there's nothing else we can do.*

**2 or else** = used when saying that there will be a bad result if someone does not do something: *Hurry up, or else you'll be late for school!*

**elsewhere** /'elswer/ adverb, formal

in or to another place: *She didn't know anyone at college; her friends from high school had gone elsewhere.*

**ELT** noun

**English Language Teaching** the activity of teaching English to people whose first language is not English

**elves** /elvz/ noun

the plural of ELF

**e-mail** also **e-mail** /'i meɪl/ noun

**1** an electronic message that is sent from one computer to another: *I got an email from her yesterday.*

**2** a system that allows you to send and receive messages by computer: *I'll send the pictures by email. | What's your email address?*

—**email** also **e-mail** verb to send a message to someone's computer using email: *He emailed them to tell them when he was arriving.*

→ See picture on page A20

**e-man-ci-pate** /I'mənsə,peɪt/ verb, formal

to make someone free and able to have the same rights as other people in society:

*American slaves were emancipated after the Civil War.*

—**emancipation** /I,mənsə'peɪʃən/ noun, formal the act of emancipating someone: *the emancipation of women*

**em-bark** /Im'bark/ verb, formal

to go onto a large ship or airplane

**PHRASAL VERB**

**embark on something**

to start something new and exciting: *He embarked on a new career as a teacher.*

**em-bar-rass** /Im'bærəs/ verb

to make someone feel embarrassed: *I didn't want to embarrass her by talking about her problems in front of her friends.*

**em-bar-rassed** /Im'bærəst/ adjective

feeling worried and upset about what other people will think of you: *I was embarrassed because I had made such a stupid mistake.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **embarrassed** adjective

→ **embarrassing** adjective

→ **embarrassment** noun

**em-bar-rass-ment** /Im'bærəsmənt/

noun

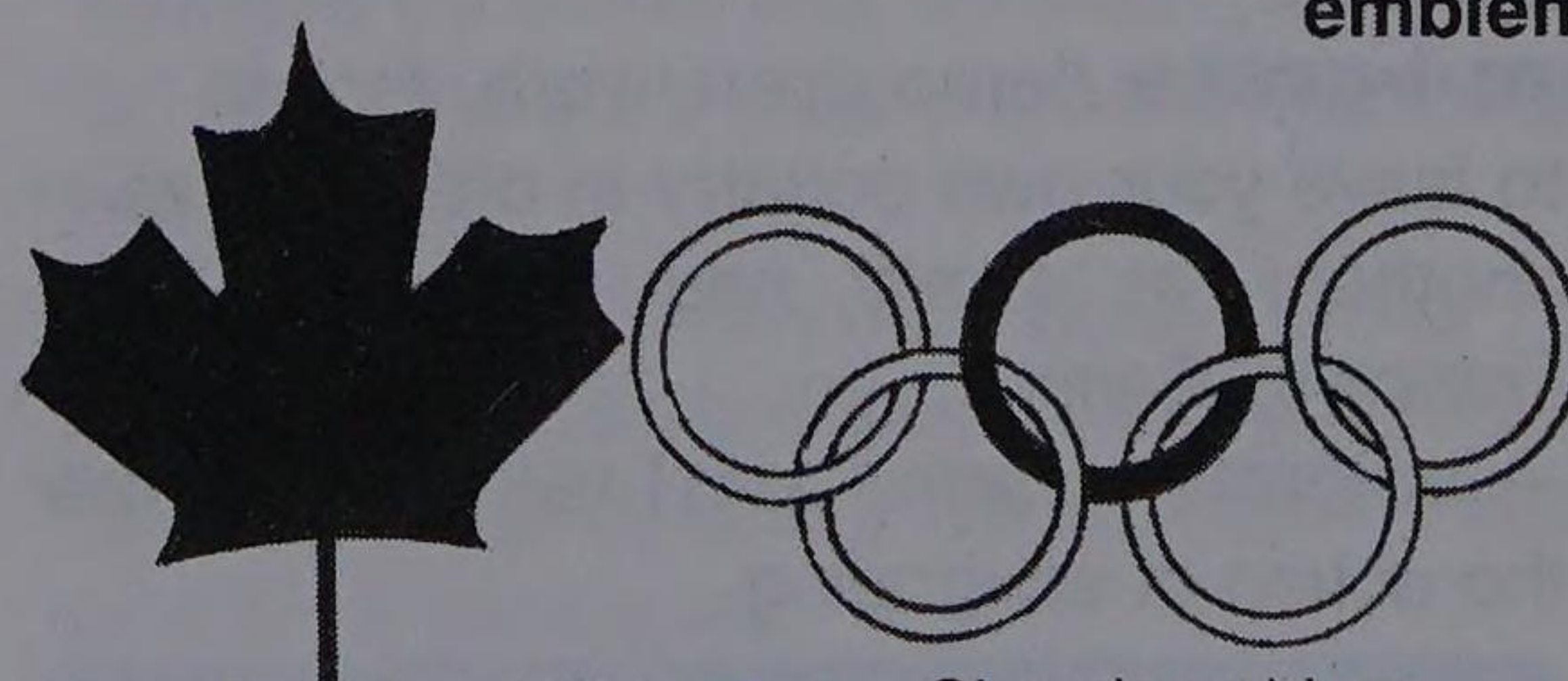
the feeling of being embarrassed: *She tried to hide her embarrassment, but her face was all red.*

**em-bas-sy** /'embəsi/ noun plural

**embassies**

the office used by officials who work for their country's government in a foreign country: *He works at the Mexican Embassy in Washington, D.C.*

emblem



national emblem of Canada

Olympic emblem

**em-blem** /'embləm/ noun

a picture, shape, or object is a sign or symbol for a country, company, idea, etc.: *The national emblem of Canada is the maple leaf.*



**em·brace** /ɪmˈbreɪs/ verb, formal  
to put your arms around someone and hold him or her in a caring way: *They embraced each other and said goodbye.* **SYNONYM** hug  
—**embrace** noun, formal the action of embracing someone

**em·broi·der·y** /ɪmˈbrɔɪdəri/ noun  
**1** patterns or pictures that you sew on cloth as a decoration: *The dress had beautiful silk embroidery.*  
**2** the skill of sewing patterns on to cloth as a decoration  
—**embroider** verb to sew patterns on cloth as a decoration

**em·bry·o** /ˈembri,ou/ noun  
an animal or human that has not yet been born and has just begun to develop

**em·er·ald** /ˈemərəld/ noun  
a valuable bright green jewel: *an emerald ring*

**e·merge** /ɪˈmɜːdʒ/ **[Ac]** verb, formal  
to appear after being covered or hidden: *The sun emerged from behind the clouds.*

**e·mer·gen·cy** /ɪˈmɜːdʒənsi/ noun plural  
**emergencies**  
a very serious and dangerous situation that you must deal with immediately: *Call an ambulance! This is an emergency!*  
—**emergency** adjective relating to or used for emergencies: *If there is a fire, please use the emergency exit.*

**e'mergency ,room** noun  
the part of a hospital that treats people who have been hurt in a serious accident and need immediate attention: *They took him to the emergency room after he was hit by a car.*

**em·i·grate** /ˈemə,greɪt/ verb, formal  
to leave your own country in order to live in another: *His family had emigrated from France to Canada.*  
—**emigration** /ˌeməˈgreɪʃən/ noun, formal the action of emigrating

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **emigrate** verb
- **emigration** noun
- **immigrate** verb
- **immigration** noun
- **immigrant** noun

**e·mis·sions** /ɪˈmɪʃənz/ plural noun, formal  
smoke and chemicals that are produced by cars, factories, etc.: *Emissions from cars are causing a lot of damage to the environment.*

**Em·my** /ˈemi/ noun plural **Emmies**  
a prize given every year to the best program, actor, etc. on U.S. television

**e·mo·tion** /ɪˈmoʊʃən/ noun  
a strong feeling such as love or hate: *Men often don't like to show their emotions. | Her voice was full of emotion.*

**e·mo·tion·al** /ɪˈmoʊʃənəl/ adjective  
**1** showing strong feelings to other people, especially by crying or shouting: *Everyone was very emotional, because it was sad to say goodbye.*  
**2** relating to your feelings generally: *The first five years are an important time in a child's emotional development.*  
—**emotionally** adverb

**em·pa·thize** /ˈempə,θaɪz/ verb, formal  
to understand someone else's feelings and problems, because you have been in the same situation yourself: *I empathized with the book's main character because he was exactly my age.*  
—**empathy** noun, formal the ability to empathize: *I felt a lot of empathy for him because his family was very similar to mine.*  
—**empathetic** /ˌempəˈθetɪk/ adjective, formal able to empathize

**em·per·or** /ˈempərə/ noun  
the ruler of an EMPIRE: *a Roman emperor*

**em·pha·sis** /ˈemfəsis/ **[Ac]** noun plural  
**emphases** /ˈemfəsɪz/  
**1** special importance: *Schools put too much emphasis on passing tests and exams (=they give it too much importance).*  
**2** special importance that is given to part of a word or phrase by saying it louder or higher, or by printing it in a special way: *In "hotel," the emphasis is on the second syllable.* **SYNONYM** stress

**WORD FAMILY** → **emphasize** verb

**em·pha·size** /ˈemfə,saɪz/ **[Ac]** verb  
to say or show that something is important: *He emphasized the need for students to learn grammar when they study a foreign language.*



**em-pire** /'empaɪə/ *noun*

**1** a group of countries that are all controlled by one ruler or government: *the Roman Empire*

**2** a big group of companies, people, or activities that are all controlled by one person: *He runs a huge media empire, including newspaper and magazine publishers and television companies.*

**em-ploy** /ɪm'plɔɪ/ *verb*

**1** to pay someone to work for you: *The company employs over 5,000 people.*

**2** formal to use something: *The police employed new technology to find the people who broke into the computer system.*

—**employable** *adjective* having the skills that you need to get a job with a company: *He had no experience, so he wasn't very employable.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **employ** *verb*
- **employer** *noun*
- **employee** *noun*
- **employment** *noun*
- **unemployed** *adjective*
- **unemployment** *noun*

**em-ploy-ee** /ɪm'plɔɪ-i/ *noun*

someone who is paid to work for a person, organization, or company: *a government employee* | *How many employees are there in your company?* **SYNONYM** *worker*

**em-ploy-er** /ɪm'plɔɪə/ *noun*

a person, company, or organization that pays people to work for them: *Employers are looking for people who have experience doing the job.*

**em-ploy-ment** /ɪm'plɔɪmənt/ *noun, formal*

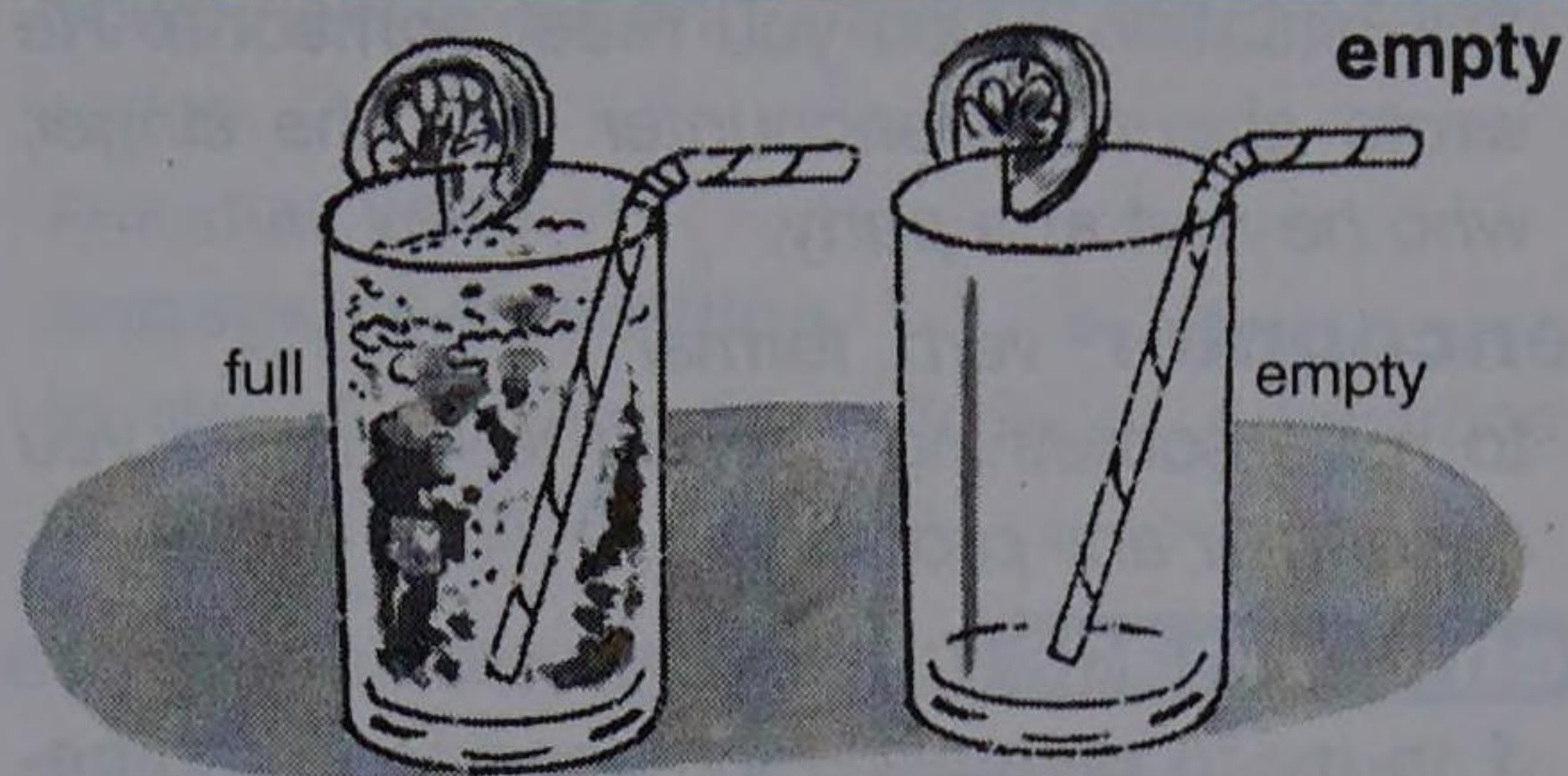
work that you do to earn money: *He's still looking for employment, but there are not many jobs right now.* **SYNONYM** *work*

**em-pow-er** /ɪm'paʊə/ *verb, formal*

to give someone the confidence, power, or right to do something: *She empowers her students to succeed by taking them into real work situations to learn.*

**em-press** /'emprɪs/ *noun*

the female ruler of an EMPIRE, or the wife of an EMPEROR



**emp-ty** /'empti/ *adjective* **emptier, emptiest**

**1** having nothing inside: *an empty box* | *Your glass is empty.* **ANTONYM** *full*

**2** having no one inside: *an empty restaurant* **ANTONYM** *full*

**3** if your life feels empty, it seems to have no purpose and you feel unhappy because nothing interesting is happening: *After the divorce, my life felt empty.*

**empty** <sup>2</sup> *verb* emptied, third person singular empties

**1** to remove everything that is inside of something else: *Can you empty the dishwasher?*

**2** if a place empties, the people inside it leave: *The theater began to empty.*

**en-a-ble** /ɪ'neɪbəl/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to make it possible for someone or something to do something: *The Internet enables you to find out information about almost anything.*

**en-act** /ɪ'nækt/ *verb, formal*

to make a new law: *Congress enacted a new law to cut taxes.*

**en-close** /ɪn'klaʊz/ *verb, formal*

**1** to put something inside an envelope with a letter: *I enclosed a picture of our house with the letter.*

**2** **be enclosed by something** = to be surrounded by something, for example a fence or wall: *The yard was enclosed by a high wall.*

**en-clo-sure** /ɪn'klaʊzə/ *noun, formal*

an area that is surrounded by something such as a wall or fence: *The animals are kept in a large enclosure.*

**en-coun-ter** <sup>1</sup> /ɪn'kaʊntə/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**1** a situation when you have to deal with something: *My first encounter with racism was at school when a white boy would not sit next to me.*



**2** a situation when you meet someone: *He wrote about his encounter with the singer, who he met at a party.*

**encounter<sup>2</sup>** verb, formal

to have something happen to you: *Did you encounter any problems?*

**en·cour·age** /ɪnˈkʊrɪdʒ/ verb

**1** to try to persuade someone to do something: *My parents encouraged me to study law, saying that they would pay for college if I did.* **ANTONYM** discourage

**2** to make someone feel more hopeful and more confident: *The good news encouraged everyone to keep working.* **ANTONYM** discourage

—**encouraging** adjective making you feel more hopeful and more confident: *The latest test scores are encouraging because they mean that students are getting better at math.*

—**encouragement** noun things that you say in order to try to persuade someone to do something or make him or her feel more confident: *The coach said a few words of encouragement to the team.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **persuade**

**en·cy·clo·pe·di·a** /ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiðiə/ noun

a large book, set of books, or CD-ROM that contains a lot of facts about many subjects or about one particular subject: *My encyclopedia gives the population and the capital city of every country in the world.*

**end<sup>1</sup>** /end/ noun

**1** the last part of something: *I didn't see the end of the movie. | My birthday is at the end of July. | The meeting came to an end (=it finished) and we all got ready to leave.*

**ANTONYM** beginning

**2** the part of a place or long object that is farthest from its beginning or center: *We live at the far end of the street.*

#### THESAURUS: end

**point** the sharp end of something: *the point of a pencil*

**tip** the end of something, often something long or that sticks out: *the tip of your nose*

**3 in the end** = after thinking about something for a long time, or after a lot of other

things have happened: *We couldn't decide between going to Florida or Mexico, but in the end, we chose Mexico.* **SYNONYM** finally

**4 make ends meet** = to have just enough money to buy what you need: *My father had to do two jobs in order to make ends meet.*

→ **dead end**

**end<sup>2</sup>** verb

to finish, or to make something finish: *World War II ended in 1945. | I tried to end the conversation.* **ANTONYM** begin

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**end in something**

to have a particular result, or to finish in a particular way: *Their marriage ended in divorce.*

**end up**

to arrive somewhere after many other things have happened, when you did not plan to arrive in that place: *We went out to eat and then to a movie, and ended up at Joe's house.*

**en·dan·ger** /ɪnˈdeɪndʒə/ verb, formal

to put someone or something in a dangerous or harmful situation: *Smoking seriously endangers your health.*

**en·dangered 'species** noun

a type of animal or plant that soon might not exist anymore because there are very few left: *The Siberian tiger is now an endangered species.*

**end·ing** /ˈendɪŋ/ noun

the end of a story, movie, play, etc.: *The movie has a happy ending, and they get married.*

**end·less** /ˈendləs/ adjective

continuing for a very long time, so that you become tired or annoyed: *The meeting was endless, lasting for more than four hours.*

**en·dorse** /ɪnˈdɔrs/ verb

**1** to officially say that you support or approve of someone or something: *The mayor endorsed the plan today, saying, "I believe it will be a very good thing for our city."*

**2** to sign your name on the back of a check: *You need to endorse the check to get cash for it.*

—**endorsement** noun a statement in which you officially say that you support or approve of someone or something



**en·dur·ance** /ɪnˈdʊərəns/ *noun, formal*  
the ability to continue doing something difficult or painful for a long time: *The 26 mile race is a test of the runners' endurance.*

**en·dure** /ɪnˈdʊr/ *verb, formal*

**1** to suffer pain or deal with a very difficult situation for a long time: *People have endured months of fighting.*

**2** *formal* to continue for a long time: *Their marriage has endured for over 50 years.*

**en·e·my** /ˈenəmi/ *noun plural enemies*

**1** someone who hates you and wants to harm you or prevent you from being successful: *She has made a lot of enemies during her career.* **ANTONYM** friend

**2** the people that you are fighting in a war: *The enemy started firing rockets at us. | enemy soldiers* **ANTONYM** ally

**en·er·get·ic** /ˌenəˈdʒetɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective*  
very active and doing things with a lot of energy: *He was an energetic coach, who often ran up and down the court with the players.*

—**energetically** *adverb*

**en·er·gize** /ˈenəˌdʒaɪz/ *verb*

to make someone feel more determined and full of energy: *The president's speech energized us, and made us want to work hard for our country.*

**en·er·gy** /ˈenədʒi/ **[Ac]** *noun plural energies*

**1** the physical and mental strength that makes you able to do things: *She was young and full of energy.*

**2** power that is used to produce heat, make machines work, etc.: *The U.S. gets most of its energy from oil, coal, and natural gas.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **energy** *noun*
- **energetic** *adjective*
- **energetically** *adverb*
- **energize** *verb*

**en·force** /ɪnˈfɔrs/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to make people obey a rule or law: *The police have the job of enforcing the law.*

—**enforcement** *noun* the process of making people obey a rule or law: *law enforcement*

**en·gage** /ɪnˈgeɪdʒ/ *verb, formal*

**engage someone in conversation** = to begin talking to someone: *A woman sat*

*down next to me and engaged me in conversation.*

#### PHRASAL VERB

**engage in something**

to do an activity: *Only 10% of Americans engage in regular exercise.*

**en·gaged** /ɪnˈgeɪdʒd/ *adjective*

two people who are engaged have agreed to marry each other: *They got engaged in May, and they got married a year later.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **married**

**en·gage·ment** /ɪnˈgeɪdʒmənt/ *noun*

an agreement to marry someone: *The couple announced their engagement in March.*

**en·gine** /ˈendʒɪn/ *noun*

**1** the part of a vehicle or machine that produces power to make it move: *The car's engine made a funny sound when it started.*

**2** the part of a train that pulls the other CARS along a railroad **SYNONYM** locomotive

→ See picture on page A28

**en·gi·neer** /ˌendʒəˈnɪr/ *noun*

**1** someone whose job is to design, build, and repair machines, electrical or electronic equipment, roads and bridges, etc.: *The engineers are trying to fix the problem with the plane's engines. | a civil engineer (=someone who designs and builds roads or bridges)*

**2** someone who controls the engines on a train or ship

**en·gi·neer·ing** /ˌendʒəˈnɪrɪŋ/ *noun*

the profession or activity of designing, building, and repairing machines, electrical or electronic equipment, roads and bridges, etc.

**En·glish<sup>1</sup>** /ˈɪŋɡlɪʃ/ *noun*

**1** the language used in places such as the U.S., Canada, and the U.K.: *My sister speaks very good English.*

**2** **the English** = the people of England: *The English love soccer.*

**English<sup>2</sup>** *adjective*

from England: *Her husband is English. | the English language*

—**Englishman** *noun* a man from England

—**Englishwoman** *noun* a woman from England



**en-grossed** /ɪn'ɡroust/ *adjective, formal*  
so interested in something that you do not notice anything else: *He was engrossed in his book and didn't see me leave the room.*

**en-joy** /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ *verb*

**1** if you enjoy something, you like doing it, watching it, etc.: *Did you enjoy the movie? I enjoyed watching the game.*

#### THESAURUS: enjoy

**like** to enjoy something, or think that it is nice or good: *I liked the movie a lot; it was really good.*

**love** to like something very much, or enjoy doing something very much: *My daughter loves to read.*

**have a good/great time** to enjoy doing something or going somewhere, usually with other people: *Did you have a good time at the party?*

**have fun** to enjoy doing something: *The kids were having fun in the pool.*

**2 enjoy yourself** = to be happy and have fun in a particular situation: *I enjoyed myself at the party.*

—**enjoyment** *noun* pleasure that you get from doing something

**en-joy-a-ble** /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl/ *adjective, formal*

giving you pleasure: *We had an enjoyable afternoon playing in the water at the beach.*

SYNONYM **fun**

→ See Thesaurus box at **nice**

**en-large** /ɪn'lɑːdʒ/ *verb*

to make something become bigger, for example a picture or a photograph: *I'm going to enlarge these two pictures on my computer.*

**en-light-en-ing** /ɪn'laitniŋ/ *adjective, formal*

making someone learn or understand something better: *The experience of traveling alone was enlightening; I saw and learned so many new things.*

**en-list** /ɪn'lɪst/ *verb*

to join the army, navy, etc.: *Her son has enlisted in the army.*

—**enlistment** *noun* the action of enlisting

**e-nor-mous** /ɪ'nɔːməs/ **[Ac]** *adjective*  
extremely large in size or amount: *You should see their house – it's enormous!*

SYNONYM **huge**

—**enormously** *adverb*

→ See Thesaurus box at **big**

**e-nough** /ɪ'nʌf/ *adverb, adjective, pronoun*

**1** as much, as many, as big, etc. as is needed: *We don't have enough money to buy a new car. Is this room big enough for both of you?*

#### THESAURUS: enough

**plenty** a large amount that is enough or more than enough: *Try to eat plenty of fruits and vegetables.*

**sufficient** *formal* as much as you need for a particular purpose: *We weren't given sufficient time to finish the test.*

**adequate** *formal* enough for a particular purpose: *The light was not adequate for reading.*

**2 spoken** if you have had enough of someone or something, you are tired and annoyed because of him, her, or it: *I have had enough of the kids today; they just fight all the time.*

**en-roll** /ɪn'roul/ *verb*

to officially join a school, university, etc.: *He enrolled at the local community college.*

**en-sure** /ɪn'ʃʊr/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to make certain that something happens: *Please ensure that you have all your luggage with you when you get off the plane.*

**en-ter** /'entə/ *verb*

**1** to go or come into a place: *He entered the room quietly and sat down.*

#### THESAURUS: enter

**go in** to move into a particular place: *Frank opened the door, and we went in.*

**come in** if someone comes in, he or she enters the room where you are: *Jim came in to the classroom, carrying his books.*

**sneak in** to go somewhere quietly and secretly: *He snuck in through the back door of the house.*

**get in** to move into a place: *"How did the burglars get in?" "Through the window."*

**trespass** *formal* to go onto someone's land without permission: *The sign said "No Trespassing."*

**2** to start studying or working somewhere:



Many older students are now entering college.

**3** to take part in a competition, race, or election: *Over 100 athletes entered the race.*

**4** to put information into a computer by pressing the keys, or to write information on a form, document, etc.: *Enter your name and address.*

**5 enter into an agreement/a contract, etc.**  
*formal* = to officially make an agreement

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **enter** verb
- **entry** noun
- **entrance** noun

**en·ter·prise** /'entəˌpraɪz/ noun

**1** a company or business: *a successful business enterprise*

**2** the ability to think of and try new things, especially in business: *She showed enterprise by making bracelets and selling them to her friends.*

**en·ter·tain** /,entəˈteɪn/ verb

**1** to do something that interests people or makes them laugh: *He entertained them with funny stories about his life in Hong Kong.*

**2** to treat someone as a guest by providing food and drink for him or her: *The company spends a lot of money on entertaining business clients.*

—**entertaining** adjective interesting and enjoyable: *an entertaining movie*

**en·ter·tain·er** /,entəˈteɪnə/ noun

someone whose job is to tell jokes, sing, etc.: *a popular TV entertainer*

**en·ter·tain·ment** /,entəˈteɪnmənt/ noun

things for people to watch and do in order to enjoy themselves: *At the party there were singers and other live entertainment (=people who perform).* | *the entertainment industry (=businesses that are involved in making movies, television programs, popular music, etc.)*

**en·thrall·ing** /ɪnˈθrɒlɪŋ/ adjective, formal  
 someone or something that is enthralling is so interesting, exciting, or enjoyable that you give all your attention to him, her, or it: *The audience was completely still and silent through the whole enthralling performance.*

—**enthralled** adjective if you are enthralled

by something, you enjoy it so much that you give it all your attention

**en·thu·si·as·m** /ɪnˈθuːzi,æzəm/ noun

a strong feeling of interest and excitement: *The students were full of enthusiasm and were ready to work hard.*

**en·thu·si·ast** /ɪnˈθuːzi,æst/ noun, formal  
 someone who likes and is very interested in something: *My father is a baseball enthusiast; he watches every game he can.* **SYNONYM** fan

**en·thu·si·as·tic** /ɪn,θuːziˈæstɪk/

adjective

showing a lot of interest and excitement about something: *The kids are very enthusiastic about the idea of a party.*

—**enthusiastically** adverb

**en·tire** /ɪnˈtaɪə/ adjective

all of something: *I spent the entire day cooking for the party.*

**en·ti·tle** /ɪnˈtaɪtl/ verb, formal

**1** to give someone the right to have or do something: *Membership at the YMCA entitles you to use all of its sports equipment.*

**2 be entitled** = to have a particular title: *The book was entitled “The Lion, the Witch, and the Wardrobe.”*

—**entitlement** noun, formal the amount of something that you are allowed to have according to the rules

**en·trance** /'entrəns/ noun

**1** a door, gate, or other opening that you go through to enter a place: *He went into the building through the main entrance.* **ANTONYM** exit

**2** the right or ability to go into a place: *Entrance to the park costs \$10.00.*

**en·trée** /'ɑntreɪ/ noun

the main food that you eat at a meal: *The entrée was a chicken dish, served with potatoes and vegetables.*

**en·tre·pre·neur** /,ɑntɹəprəˈnɜː/ noun

someone who starts a company, arranges business deals, and takes risks in order to make a profit: *The company was started by a couple of young entrepreneurs in 2005.*

**en·try** /'entri/ noun

**1** the right or ability to go into a place: *He was refused entry into (=not allowed to enter) the United States.*



**2** the act of becoming involved in doing something: *the United States' entry into the war*

**3** a person or thing that takes part in a competition, race, etc.: *This painting is the winning entry of the competition.*

**4** also **entryway** a door, gate, or opening that you go through to go into a place: *The entry is in the back of the building.* **SYNONYM** **entrance**

**5** a word and its definition in a dictionary: *The dictionary has over 100,000 entries.*

**'entry-level** *adjective*

an entry-level job is at the lowest position in a company, and is intended for people who have little or no experience: *After college, she found an entry-level job in a software company.*

**en-vel-op** /ɪn'veləp/ *verb, formal*

to cover something completely: *The building was quickly enveloped in smoke from the fire.*

**en-ve-lope** /'envə,ləʊp/ *noun*

a paper cover that you put a letter in: *She wrote the address on the envelope.*

**en-vi-ous** /'enviəs/ *adjective*

wishing that you had something that someone else has: *Jackie was envious of her sister's success.*

—**enviously** *adverb*: *He looked enviously at John's new car.*

**en-vi-ron-ment** /ɪn'vaɪənmənt/ **Ac**  
*noun*

**1** the **environment** = the natural world, including water, air, land, plants, and sometimes animals, that can be harmed by the way humans live: *We are trying to protect the environment by making companies stop polluting the air and water.*

**2** the people and things around you that affect your life: *A police officer's work environment (=where he or she works) is sometimes very dangerous.*

—**environmental** /ɪn,vaɪə'nmentl/ *adjective* related to the environment: *environmental pollution*

—**environmentally** *adverb* in a way that relates to the environment: *The bicycle is an environmentally friendly form of transport (=it does not harm the environment).*

**en-vy<sup>1</sup>** /'envi/ *noun*

the feeling of wanting something which someone else has: *She looked with envy at Ben's new computer.*

**envy<sup>2</sup>** *verb* envied, third person singular **envies**

if you envy someone, you wish you had something that he or she has: *I envy Meg – her parents buy her anything she wants.*

**en-zyme** /'enzaim/ *noun*

a chemical that is produced in plants and animals and that causes a chemical process to start: *Enzymes in the stomach change food so that it can be digested.*

**ep-ic<sup>1</sup>** /'epɪk/ *adjective, formal*

an epic story or trip is very long, exciting, or impressive: *an epic novel*

**epic<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a book, poem, or movie that tells a long story about brave actions and exciting events: *"The Odyssey" is an epic written by Homer.*

**ep-i-dem-ic** /,epə'demɪk/ *noun*

a large number of cases of a disease that happen at the same time: *the AIDS epidemic*

**ep-i-lep-sy** /'epə,lepsi/ *noun*

a medical condition in the brain that can make someone suddenly become unconscious or unable to control his or her movements for a short time

—**epileptic** /,epə'leptɪk/ *noun* someone who has epilepsy: *Her son is an epileptic.*

—**epileptic** *adjective* related to epilepsy: *She had an epileptic fit (=a short time when she became unconscious or couldn't control her movements).*

**ep-i-sode** /'epə,səʊd/ *noun*

**1** a television or radio program that is one of a series of programs that tell a story: *I watched an old episode of "The Simpsons" last night.*

**2** an event or a short period of time during which something specific happened: *The death of his wife was a sad episode in his life.*

**e-qual<sup>1</sup>** /'ikwəl/ *adjective*

**1** the same in size, value, amount, etc.: *She cut the cake into eight equal parts. | Both teams scored an equal number of points in the basketball game. | The two towns are*



equal in size. | A dime is equal to ten pennies.

**2** having the same rights, opportunities, etc. as everyone else: *Women fought for equal rights, such as the right to be paid as well as men.*

**equal<sup>2</sup>** verb equaled or equalled, equaling or equalling

**1** to be as large as something else: *Four plus four equals eight.*

**2** formal to be as good as someone or something else: *He equalled the world record in the 200 meter race at the Olympic Games.*

**equal<sup>3</sup>** noun

someone with the same abilities or rights as someone else: *Young people want adults to treat them as equals.*

**e·qual·i·ty** /I'kwələti/ noun, formal

a situation in which people from different groups have the same rights and opportunities: *Women haven't yet achieved equality with men in the workplace.* **ANTONYM** inequality

**e·qual·ly** /'ikwəli/ adverb

**1** just as much: *Jim and his sister are equally intelligent* (=they have the same level of intelligence).

**2** in equal parts or amounts: *We divided the work equally* (=everyone had the same amount of work).

**'equal sign** noun

the sign (=) that you use in mathematics to show that two things are the same size, number, or amount

**e·qua·tion** /I'kweɪʒən/ **[Ac]** noun

a statement in mathematics showing that two quantities are equal, for example  $2 \times 3 = 6$ : *The teacher gave the class a mathematical equation with one of the numbers missing.*

**e·qua·tor** also **Equator** /I'kweɪtə/ noun

**the equator** = an imaginary line around the Earth that divides it equally into its northern and southern halves: *The island is 80 miles north of the equator.*

—**equatorial** /,ekwə'tɔ:riəl/ adjective, formal near the equator, or relating to the equator

→ See picture at **globe**

**e·qui·lat·er·al tri·an·gle**

/,ikwə,lætərəl 'traɪ,æŋɡəl/ noun

a TRIANGLE whose three sides are all the same length

**e·qui·nox** /'ikwə,naks/ noun

one of the two times each year when day and night are equal in length everywhere on earth: *The spring equinox is on March 20.*

**e·quip** /I'kwɪp/ **[Ac]** verb equipped, equipping

to provide the tools or equipment that someone needs to do something: *The city has equipped all the schools with new computers.*

**e·quip·ment** /I'kwɪpmənt/ **[Ac]** noun

the tools, machines, clothes, etc. that you need for a particular activity: *I didn't have the right equipment to change the tire.* | *We bought several new pieces of equipment for the chemistry lab.* | *sports equipment*

**eq·ui·ty** /'ekwəti/ noun, formal

the amount of money that you would have left if you sold something you own, such as a house, and paid off the money you borrowed to buy it: *He has \$100,000 of equity in his home.*

**e·quiv·a·lent<sup>1</sup>** /I'kwɪvələnt/ **[Ac]**

adjective

equal in amount, value, rank, etc. to something or someone else: *The certificate is equivalent to a high school diploma.*

**equivalent<sup>2</sup>** noun

something that is equal in amount, value, rank, etc. to something else: *The car cost the equivalent of six months' pay.*

**e·ra** /'ɪrə/ noun, formal

a period of time in history: *the Cold War era of the mid-20th century*

**e·rad·i·cate** /I'rædə,keɪt/ verb, formal

to destroy or remove something completely: *We have eradicated the disease, smallpox, from the world.*

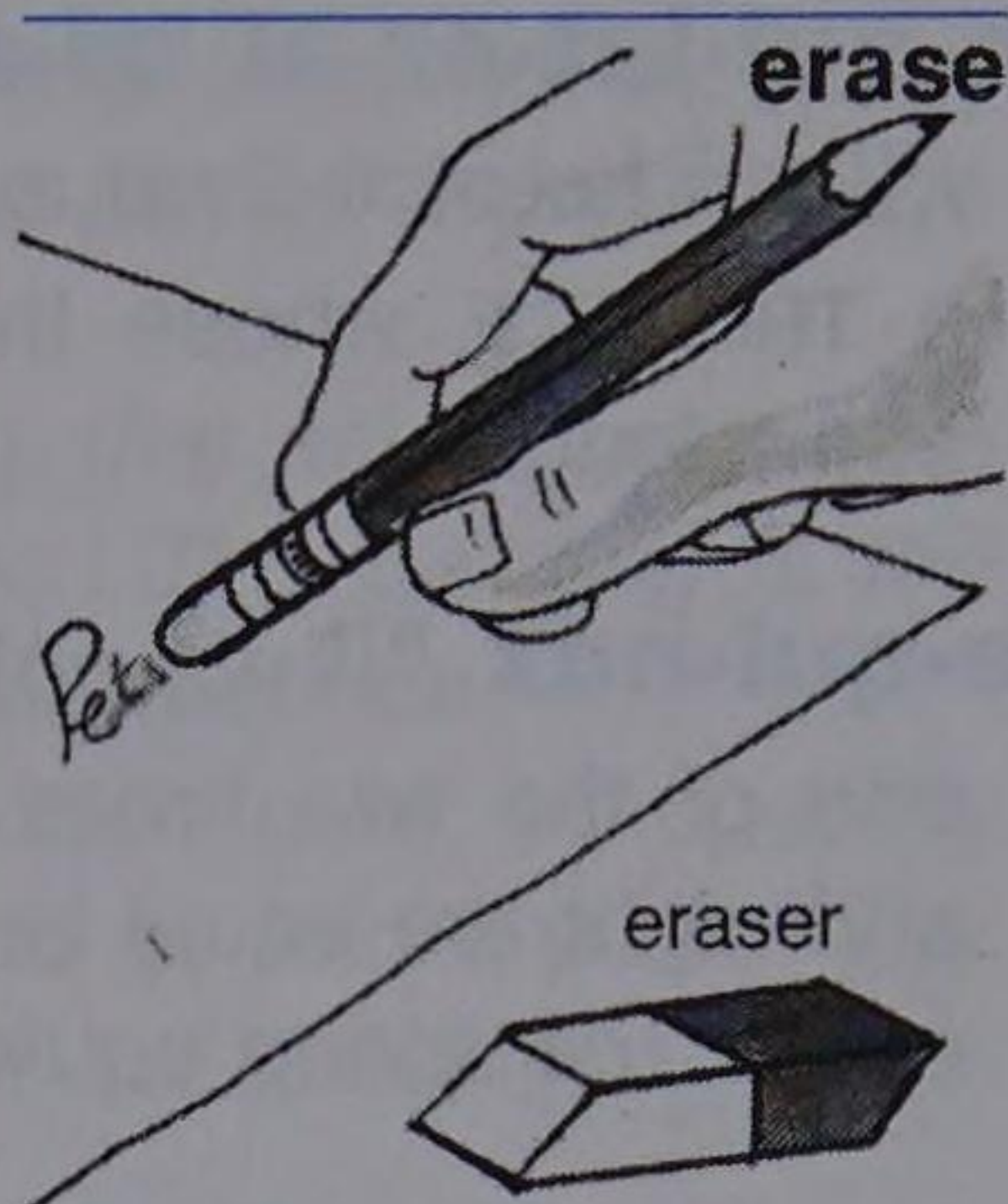
—**eradication** /I,rædə'keɪʃən/ noun, formal: *One of the group's goals is the eradication of poverty.*



**e·rase** /ɪ'reɪs/

verb

to completely remove written or recorded information: *Make sure that you erase any incorrect answers on your test paper.* | *I erased the file from the computer.*



**e·ras·er** /ɪ'reɪsə/ noun

**1** a piece of rubber that you use to remove pencil or pen marks from paper

**2** an object that you use to clean marks from a BLACKBOARD or WHITEBOARD

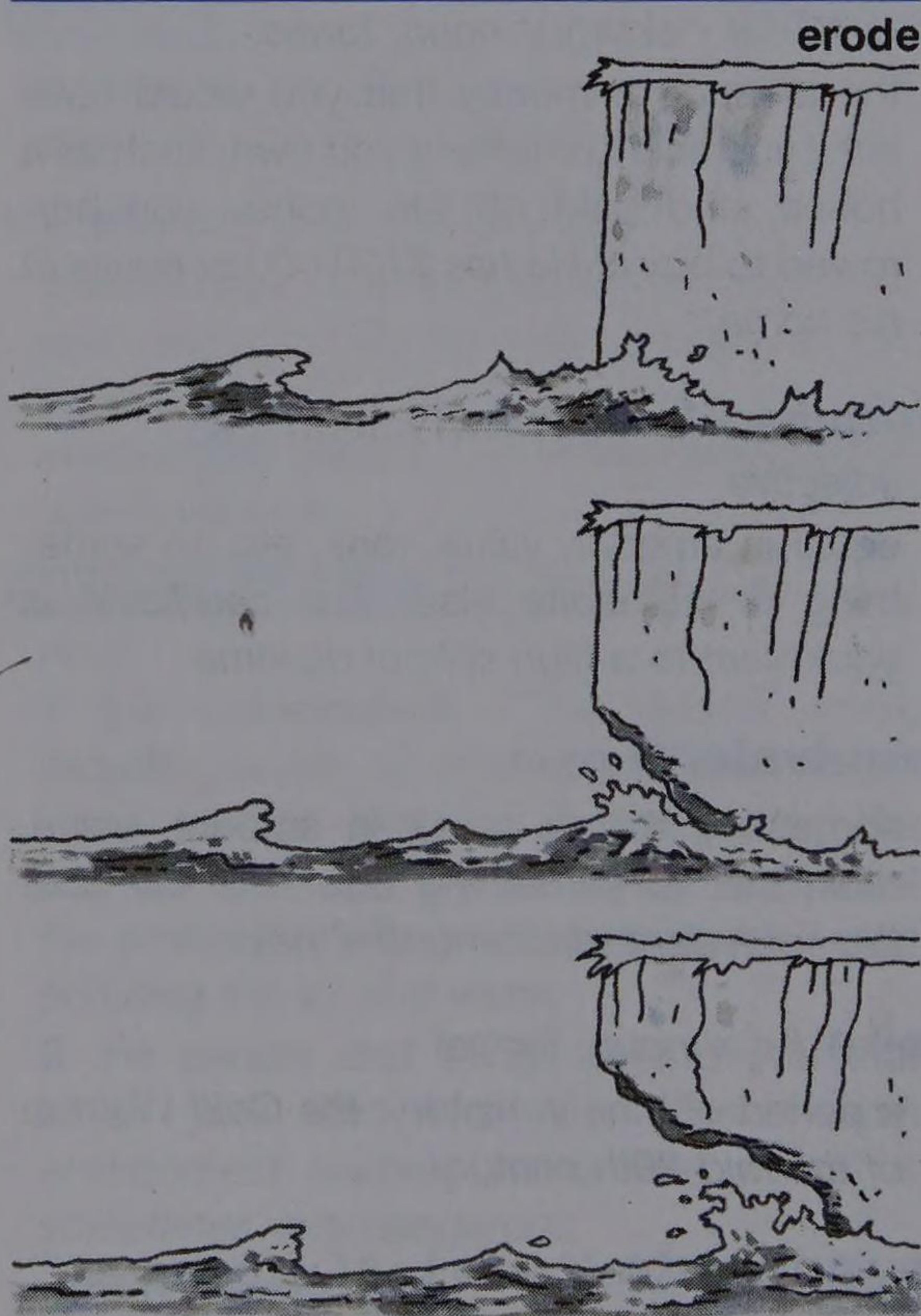
→ See picture at **erase**

**e·rect**<sup>1</sup> /ɪ'rekt/ adjective

in a straight upright position: *The rabbit stopped to listen, with its ears erect.*

**erect**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to build something: *The town hall was erected in 1892.*



**e·rode** /ɪ'roud/ **Ac** verb, formal

if land erodes, it is gradually destroyed by the weather or by water: *The ocean is eroding the beaches.* | *The river bank has started to erode.*

—**erosion** /ɪ'rouʒən/ noun, formal the gradual destruction of land by the weather or by water: *Planting trees will help to prevent soil erosion.*

**e·rot·ic** /ɪ'rəʊtɪk/ adjective

involving or producing sexual feelings: *an erotic painting*

—**erotically** adverb: *She was dancing erotically.*

**er·rand** /'erənd/ noun

a short trip away from home or work in order to do something, for example to buy something: *I have some errands to do downtown.*

**er·rat·ic** /ɪ'rætɪk/ adjective, formal

not following a regular pattern: *Her behavior became more and more erratic – she was always losing things and forgetting people's names.*

—**erratically** adverb, formal: *He was driving erratically before the accident.*

**er·ror** /'erə/ **Ac** noun

a mistake: *I made one error on the math test, so I got a 95.*

**e·rupt** /ɪ'rʌpt/ verb

**1** formal if violence erupts, it suddenly happens: *Fighting could erupt again at any time.*

**2** if a VOLCANO erupts, it sends out smoke, fire, and rock into the sky: *More than 800 people died when the volcano erupted.*

—**eruption** /ɪ'rʌpʃən/ noun an occasion when a VOLCANO erupts

**es·ca·late** /'eskə,leɪt/ verb, formal

**1** if an argument or fight escalates, it quickly becomes worse: *The argument escalated into a violent fight.*

**2** to become higher or increase: *The price of gas continues to escalate.*

—**escalation** /,eskə'leɪʃən/ noun, formal the action of escalating: *an escalation of fighting*

**es·ca·la·tor** /'eskə,leɪtə/ noun

moving stairs that carry people from one level of a building to another: *We took the escalator to the first floor of the store.*



**es-cape<sup>1</sup>**

/ɪ'skeɪp/ verb

**1** to avoid something bad that could have happened to you: *The girl climbed through a window to escape the fire.* | *The two boys escaped punishment by blaming another child.*

**2** to get away from a place when someone is trying to stop you: *He escaped from prison by making a tunnel.*

—**escaped** adjective: *escaped prisoners*

**escape<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the act of getting away from a place or a bad situation: *They made their escape from the jail while the guards were not looking.*

**2** a way of forgetting about a bad or boring situation for a short time: *Movies are a good form of escape, because you can forget about your problems for a while.*

**es-cort<sup>1</sup>** /ɪ'skɔrt/ verb

to go somewhere with someone, in order to protect or guard him or her: *The policemen escorted the prisoners to the courthouse.*

**es-cort<sup>2</sup>** /'eskɔrt/ noun

the person or group of people that goes somewhere with someone in order to protect or guard him or her: *The governor always travels with a police escort.*

**ESL** noun

**English as a Second Language** the activity of teaching English to students whose first language is not English, but who live in an English-speaking country: *an ESL student*

**es-pe-cial-ly** /ɪ'speʃəli/ adverb

**1** used to say that something is more true of one person or thing than of other people or things: *He is especially good at math.*

**2** for a particular person or reason: *She bought new clothes especially for the trip.*

**es-pres-so** /e'spresou/ noun

very strong coffee that you drink in small cups

**es-say** /'eseɪ/ noun

a short piece of writing about a particular subject: *I had to write an essay about Abraham Lincoln for history class.* **SYNONYM** paper

**es-sence** /'esəns/ noun, formal

the most basic and important quality of something: *The essence of the problem is that many poor people cannot afford to buy computers.*

**es-sen-tial** /ɪ'senʃəl/ adjective

important and necessary: *If you live in the country, a car is essential because there are not many buses.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **important**

**es-sen-tial-ly** /ɪ'senʃəli/ adverb

used to talk about the most basic facts about something: *The story is essentially true, although the writer changed the names of some of the people in it.*

**es-tab-lish** /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ **Ac** verb, formal

**1** to start a company, organization, etc. that will exist for a long time: *The school was established in 1922.*

**2** to start having regular communication or a relationship with another person, group, country, etc.: *We established a relationship with a school in Guatemala, so that the students can write to each other.*

**es-tab-lish-ment** /ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/ **Ac**

noun, formal

a company or any public or private organization: *Harvard is a famous educational establishment.*

**es-tate** /ɪ'steɪt/ **Ac** noun

**1** all of someone's property and money, especially everything that is left after he or she dies: *She left her estate to her three children when she died.*

**2** a large area of land with a large house on it, that is owned by one person, family, or organization

→ **real estate**

**es-teem** /ɪ'stim/ noun, formal

respect and admiration for someone: *The teacher was held in high esteem (=admired and respected) by all her students.*

→ **self-esteem**

**es-ti-mate<sup>1</sup>** /'estə,meɪt/ **Ac** verb

to make a reasonable guess at the size, amount, or time of something: *I estimate that the job will be finished by Friday.*

**es-ti-mate<sup>2</sup>** /'estəmeɪt/ **Ac** noun

**1** the size, amount, or time that someone guesses something to be: *The manager wants an estimate of how much time we'll*



need to finish the job. | The camera should cost you less than \$300, but that's a rough estimate (=not a very exact guess).

**2** a statement of how much it will probably cost to build or repair something: *The painting company sent me an estimate for painting the house.*

**etc.** /et 'setrə/ *adverb*

**etcetera** used at the end of a list to show that you could add similar things: *He's been to many European countries: France, Germany, Spain, etc.*

**e·ter·nal** /I'tənl/ *adjective*

continuing forever: *The possibility of eternal life is an important idea in some religions.*

—**eternally** *adverb*: *We believe that the soul lives eternally.*

**e·ter·ni·ty** /I'tənəti/ *noun*

**1** time that does not end: *Although Shakespeare is dead, his works will live on for eternity.*

**2** an **eternity** *formal* = a period of time that seems long because you are annoyed, worried, etc.: *We waited for an eternity, and the bus still didn't come.*

**eth·ic** /'eθɪk/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** **ethics** = rules that people use to decide what is right and wrong: *He wrote a book about medical ethics* (=rules that doctors use to decide what is right and wrong).

**2** an idea or belief that influences people's behavior and attitudes: *The college has a strong ethic of fairness* (=they believe strongly that things should be fair).

**eth·i·cal** /'eθɪkəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

**1** involving beliefs about what is right and wrong: *Whether to use animals in scientific tests is a difficult ethical question.*

**2** morally good or correct: *Is it ethical for doctors to use drugs to control people's behavior?*

—**ethically** *adverb*

**eth·nic** /'eθnɪk/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

relating to a particular race or nationality: *The college has students from a wide variety of ethnic backgrounds.*

—**ethnicity** /eθ'nɪsəti/ *noun, formal* the race or nationality that someone belongs to: *It is wrong that people are treated unfairly because of their ethnicity.*

**et·i·quette** /'etɪkət/ *noun, formal*

the rules of polite behavior: *Etiquette is important at occasions such as weddings and funerals.*

**Eu·rope** /'yʊrəp/ *noun*

the CONTINENT that is north of the Mediterranean Sea and west of the Ural mountains: *He visited Poland and other countries in Eastern Europe.*

**Eu·ro·pe·an** /,yʊrə'piən/ *adjective*

from Europe: *He speaks several European languages including French and Italian.*

—**European** *noun* someone from Europe: *The Portuguese may have been the first Europeans to visit Australia.*

**e·vac·u·ate** /I'vækyu,eɪt/ *verb, formal*

to move people from a dangerous place to a safe place: *The police evacuated the library after someone called to say that there was a bomb in the building.*

—**evacuation** /I,vækyu'eɪʃən/ *noun* the action of moving people from a dangerous place to a safe place: *As the storm came closer, the mayor ordered the evacuation of the city.*

**e·vade** /I'veɪd/ *verb, formal*

**1** to avoid doing something you should do, or avoid talking about something: *The senator evaded the question because he did not know the answer.*

**2** to avoid being caught by someone who is trying to catch you: *The prisoner, who escaped last night, has evaded capture.*

**e·val·u·ate** /I'vælyu,eɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to judge how good, useful, or successful someone or something is: *Scientists are evaluating the new drug to decide if it works well.*

—**evaluation** /I,vælyu'eɪʃən/ *noun, formal* a judgment about how good, useful, or successful someone or something is: *The evaluation of the new computer system found that there were many problems.*

**e·vap·o·rate** /I'væpə,reɪt/ *verb, formal*

if a liquid evaporates, it changes into steam or a gas: *Sea water evaporates and leaves salt behind.*

—**evaporation** /I,væpə'reɪʃən/ *noun, formal* the process of evaporating: *In warm weather, evaporation causes the water level of the lake to drop.*



**e·va·sion** /I'veɪʒən/ noun, formal

**1** the act of avoiding doing something that you should do: *He was in prison for tax evasion (=not paying taxes).*

**2** the act of deliberately avoiding talking about something or answering a question: *The politician's speech was full of lies and evasions.*

**e·va·sive** /I'veɪsɪv/ adjective, formal

not willing to answer questions directly: *He was very evasive when I asked him where he had been.*

**eve** /iv/ noun

the night or day before a religious day or a holiday: *We're going to a big party on New Year's Eve. | Christmas Eve*

**e·ven<sup>1</sup>** /'ivən/ adverb

**1** used when adding something surprising: *He keeps everything, even old bus tickets. | The mountains always have snow on them, even in summer.*

**2** used when making a comparison stronger: *Then he bought an even bigger car.*

**3 even if** = used when emphasizing that something will still be true if another thing happens: *I'll finish the job even if I have to work all night.*

**even<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**1** flat, level, or smooth: *You need a large even surface to work on.*

**2** an even rate, temperature, etc. does not change much: *Store the chemicals at an even temperature.*

**3** divided equally, so that there is the same amount of something in each place, for each person, etc.: *Divide the dough into three even amounts.* **SYNONYM** equal

**4** an even number can be divided exactly by two: 2, 4, 6, and 8 are even numbers.

**ANTONYM** odd

**5 be even informal** = to no longer owe someone something, especially money: *I paid five dollars more, so if you give me five dollars, we'll be even.*

**6** a game or competition that is even is one where the teams are equal and as good as each other: *The first half of the game was very even – neither team scored.*

—**evenness** noun

—**evenly** adverb divided or spread equally: *Spread the frosting evenly over the cake.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **flat<sup>1</sup>**

**even<sup>3</sup>** verb**PHRASAL VERBS****even (something) out**

if things even out, the differences between them become smaller: *The company is trying to even out the difference between the numbers of men and women (=make the numbers of men and women almost the same).*

**even something up**

to make something become equal or the same: *O'Malley hit a home run to even up the score.*

**e·ve·ning** /'ivnɪŋ/ noun

**1** the end of the day and the early part of the night: *We usually eat at around 6 in the evening. | Do you want to come to my house tomorrow evening?*

**2 (good) evening** = said in order to greet someone in the evening: *Good evening ladies and gentlemen, and welcome to our performance.*

**e·vent** /I'vent/ noun

**1** something that happens, especially something important, interesting, or unusual: *He described the events that occurred before the fight.*

**2** something that has been organized, such as a party, sports game, or show: *The Super Bowl is one of the most important sporting events of the year.*

**e·vent·ful** /I'ventfəl/ adjective

full of interesting or important events: *The trip was very eventful – we saw and did a lot of exciting things.*

**e·ven·tu·al** /I'ventʃuəl/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal

happening at the end of a long period of time or after a lot of other things have happened: *Roger was the eventual winner of the tennis match, after playing for more than three hours.*

—**eventually** adverb: *We eventually arrived at my sister's house, over three hours late.*

**ev·er** /'evə/ adverb

**1** at any time: *Have you ever been to New York? | Nothing ever makes Paul angry. | That was one of the best meals I've ever had.*

**2 ever since** = all the time since something happened: *He went to college in Colorado and has lived there ever since.*



**GRAMMAR: ever**

You use **ever** when you ask a question, but not when you answer a question:  
*"Have you ever been to San Francisco?"*  
*"Yes, I have been there."*

→ **forever**

**ever-** /evə/

always: *I looked out at the ever-changing view from the bus window.*

**ev·er·green**

/ˈevəˌɡrɪn/  
 adjective

an evergreen tree or plant does not lose its leaves in winter

—**evergreen** noun

an evergreen tree or plant

**ev·ery** /ˈevri/

adjective

**1** used to talk about each of the people or things in a particular group: *Every student will receive a certificate.* | *They cut down every single tree in the yard; there is not one tree left.*



**evergreen**

**USAGE: every**

**Every**, **each**, and **all** are all used to talk about every person or thing in a group.

When you are thinking about the people or things in the group separately, use **every** or **each**: *Every child at the party was given a balloon.* | *Each child at the party was given a balloon.*

When you are thinking about the whole group together, use **all**: *All the children were given balloons.*

**2** used in order to show how often something happens: *He calls his girlfriend every day.* | *He came to see us every other day* (=every two days). | *I still see her every now and then* (=sometimes but not often). | *We visit them every so often* (=sometimes but not often).

**ev·ery·bod·y** /ˈevriˌbɒdi/ pronoun

another word for **EVERYONE**

**ev·ery·day** /ˈevriˌdeɪ/ adjective

ordinary, usual, or happening every day: *Going to school is part of everyday life for most children.*

**ev·ery·one** /ˈevriˌwʌn/ pronoun

every person: *She knew everyone at the party.* **SYNONYM** **everybody**; **ANTONYM** **no one**, **nobody**

**GRAMMAR: everyone**

**every one, everyone**

**Every one** is used to emphasize that you mean each person or thing in a group: *I've read every one of his books.*

**Everyone** means all the people in a group: *Everyone had a book to read.*

**ev·ery·thing** /ˈevriˌθɪŋ/ pronoun

**1** each thing or all things: *I think everything we need is in the car.* | *There's only bread left – my brothers ate everything else* (=all other things). **ANTONYM** **nothing**

**2** used when you are talking in general about your life or about a situation: *Everything's going wrong today: I was late for school, and now I've lost my keys.* **ANTONYM** **nothing**

**3 be everything** = to be more important than anything else: *Money isn't everything; your family, friends, and your health are more important.*

**ev·ery·where** /ˈevriˌwer/ adverb

in every place or to every place: *I've looked everywhere, but I still can't find the map.* | *People here are the same as people everywhere else* (=in all other places).

**e·vict** /ɪˈvɪkt/ verb

to legally force someone to leave the house he or she is living in: *Frank was evicted from his apartment because he did not pay the rent.*

—**eviction** /ɪˈvɪkʃən/ noun the act of evicting someone: *The family's eviction from their home left them with nowhere to live.*

**ev·i·dence** /ˈevədəns/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** things that you see, hear, or learn that make you believe that something exists or is true: *There is clear evidence that eating too much fat can lead to heart disease.*

**2** in a court of law, the facts and objects that a lawyer shows the court in order to prove that something is true: *The gun was an important piece of evidence in the murder trial.*



**ev·i·dent** /'evədənt/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal  
clear and easily seen: *It was evident that she was unhappy because she was crying.*

—**evidently** adverb: *He was evidently in pain because he kept screaming.*

**e·vil** /'ivəl/ adjective

very cruel or bad: *He was an evil killer.*

—**evil** noun something that is very cruel or bad: *Poverty is one of the greatest evils of our time.*

**ev·o·lu·tion** /,evə'luʃən/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

the scientific idea that plants, animals, and humans have developed from very simple forms over millions of years

—**evolutionary** /,evə'luʃə,neri/ adjective, formal related to evolution: *She is studying the evolutionary development of birds.*

**e·volve** /ɪ'vɒlv/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to develop gradually: *The sun is a star that has evolved over billions of years.*

**ex** /eks/ noun, informal

your ex is someone who used to be your wife, husband, GIRLFRIEND, or BOYFRIEND

**ex-** /eks/

used at the beginning of words to show that someone used to be something: *Jake is my ex-boyfriend – I was going out with him last year.* **SYNONYM** former

**ex·act** /ɪg'zækt/ adjective

**1** completely correct: *The exact time is 11:27 a.m. | I can't remember the exact date that we moved here, but it was in early July.*

**2 the exact opposite** = something that is as different as possible from another thing: *I thought I would hate my new school, but I actually felt the exact opposite – I loved it.*

**ex·act·ly** /ɪg'zæktli/ adverb

**1** used when saying that something is completely correct, the same, etc.: *We got home at exactly six o'clock. | The twins look exactly alike to me.*

**2** said when you agree with someone: *"So you think we should tell him 'no'?" "Exactly!"*

**3 not exactly** = used when saying that something is not at all true: *It's not exactly cheap (=it's expensive).*

**ex·ag·ger·ate** /ɪg'zædʒə,reit/ verb

to make something seem bigger, better, worse, etc. than it really is: *You're exaggerating a little when you say their house is huge –*

*it only has three bedrooms.*

—**exaggeration** /ɪg,zædʒə'reɪʃən/ noun a statement in which you exaggerate: *He said it will cost a million dollars, but that may be an exaggeration.*

**ex·am** /ɪg'zæm/ noun

**1** an important test at the end of a course in school or college: *When do you take your history exam?*

**2** a set of medical tests: *I had an eye exam yesterday.*

**ex·am·i·na·tion** /ɪg,zæmə'neɪʃən/ noun

**1** the process of looking at something carefully: *The police made a careful examination of the room where the murder happened.*

**2** formal an exam

**ex·am·ine** /ɪg'zæmɪn/ verb

to look at something carefully in order to find out or decide something: *The doctor examined me, but he couldn't find anything wrong.*

**ex·am·ple** /ɪg'zæmpəl/ noun

**1** something of a particular kind that you mention or show in order to make something clear: *Can anyone give me an example of a verb? | The car is a good example of an invention that changed people's lives.*

**2 for example** = used when giving an example: *Many countries, for example Mexico and Japan, have a lot of earthquakes.*

**3 set an example** = if you set an example, you do something good that should be copied by other people: *Try to share your toys and set a good example for your brother.*

**ex·as·per·at·ed** /ɪg'zæspə,reitɪd/

adjective

feeling very annoyed: *He never listens to me, and I get so exasperated with him.*

—**exasperating** adjective something that is exasperating makes you feel very annoyed

—**exasperation** /ɪg,zæspə'reɪʃən/ noun a very annoyed feeling

**ex·ceed** /ɪk'sid/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to be more than a particular amount: *The total cost exceeded \$100.*

**ex·cel** /ɪk'sel/ verb excelled, excelling  
formal

to do something very well: *He excelled in baseball.*



**ex·cel·lent** /'eksələnt/ adjective

extremely good: *You should definitely go to the restaurant – the food was excellent.*

—**excellence** noun, formal the quality of being excellent: *The university is famous for the excellence of its teachers.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **good**<sup>1</sup>

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **excellent** adjective
- **excellence** noun
- **excel** verb

**ex·cept**<sup>1</sup> /ɪk'sept/ preposition

not including someone or something: *We're open every day except Monday (=but not Monday). | Everyone went to the show, except for Scott and Danny.*

**except**<sup>2</sup> conjunction

used when adding something that shows why your statement is not completely true or exact: *I have earrings like those, except they're silver not gold.*

**ex·cep·tion** /ɪk'sepʃən/ noun

someone or something that is not included in a statement, rule, group, etc.: *Most history books are boring, but this one is an exception (=this one is not boring). | Everyone has improved, with the exception of Matt (=except Matt).*

**ex·cep·tion·al** /ɪk'sepʃənəl/ adjective, formal

**1** very good in a way that is unusual: *She is an exceptional student who always has the best grades in the class.*

**2** unusual and not happening often: *The roads had melted in the exceptional heat.*

—**exceptionally** adverb, formal: *an exceptionally cold winter*

→ See Thesaurus box at **good**<sup>1</sup>

**ex·cess**<sup>1</sup> /'ekses/ adjective, formal

more than is needed or allowed: *Cut the excess fat off the meat.*

**ex·cess**<sup>2</sup> /ɪk'ses/ noun

**in excess of something** formal = more than something: *He earns in excess of \$200,000 a year.*

**ex·ces·sive** /ɪk'sesɪv/ adjective

too large or too much: *Paying \$80 for a T-shirt seems excessive.*

—**excessively** adverb

**ex·change**<sup>1</sup> /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ noun

the act of giving someone something and getting something similar from him or her: *I gave him the book in exchange for a CD (=I gave him the book and he gave me a CD). | an exchange of ideas (=when people tell their ideas to each other)*

**exchange**<sup>2</sup> verb

to give someone something and get something similar from him or her: *This skirt is too small; can I exchange it for a larger one?*

**ex·change rate** noun

the value of the money of one country compared to the money of another country: *The exchange rate was 120 yen to the dollar.*

**ex·cite** /ɪk'saɪt/ verb

to make someone feel happy and eager or interested: *There is no new music that really excites me right now.*

—**excitable** adjective someone who is excitable becomes excited easily

**ex·cit·ed** /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ adjective

happy and eager or interested: *I'm really excited about going to camp – I think it will be a lot of fun.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **excited** adjective
- **exciting** adjective
- **excitement** noun

→ See picture on page A23

**ex·cite·ment** /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ noun

the feeling you have when you are excited: *There was a lot of excitement in the town about the festival.*

**ex·ci·ting** /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ adjective

something that is exciting makes you feel excited: *an exciting movie about pirates and battles at sea*

**ex·claim** /ɪk'skleɪm/ verb, formal

to say something loudly and suddenly because you are surprised, excited, or angry: *"I didn't expect to see you here!" exclaimed Laura.*

—**exclamation** /ˌeksˈklæ'meɪʃən/ noun something that someone exclaims

**excla'mation ,point** noun

the sign (!), which is used after something that someone says when they feel a strong feeling such as anger, surprise, excitement, etc.: *Come here! | I don't believe it!*



**ex·clude** /ɪk'sklud/ **Ac** verb

**1** to not allow someone or something to enter a place or to do an activity: *The club is very old-fashioned and excludes women.*

ANTONYM **include**

**2** to deliberately not include something: *The author excluded some important information from the book because she did not want readers to know about it.*

—**excluding** preposition not including: *The store is open every day excluding Sundays (=but not Sundays).*

—**exclusion** /ɪk'skluʒən/ noun, formal when someone or something is excluded

**ex·clu·sive** /ɪk'sklusɪv/ **Ac** adjective, formal

**1** exclusive places are for people who have a lot of money or belong to a high social class: *They bought an expensive house in an exclusive neighborhood.*

**2** used by only one person or group, and not shared: *The pool is for the exclusive use of the hotel's guests (=only guests can use it).*

**ex·clu·sive·ly** /ɪk'sklusɪvli/ **Ac** adverb

only: *This class is exclusively about Algebra; we will not be doing any Geometry.*

**ex·cur·sion** /ɪk'skɜːʒən/ noun, formal

a short trip made for pleasure: *We went on an excursion to the city on Saturday to go shopping.*

**ex·cuse**<sup>1</sup> /ɪk'skyuz/ verb

**1** **excuse me** = said when you want to politely ask someone to listen to you, leave a group of people, or say sorry for doing something rude: *Excuse me, is this the way to the train station? | Oh, excuse me, I didn't mean to bother you.*

**2** **excuse me?** = said when you want someone to say something again: *"What time is it?" "Excuse me?" "I asked what time it is."*

**3** to forgive someone for something that is not very bad: *Please excuse my bad handwriting.*

**4** to allow someone to leave a place or not to do something: *The teacher excused her from class so that she could go to the nurse's office.*

**ex·cuse**<sup>2</sup> /ɪk'skyus/ noun

a reason that you give for doing something that you should not do: *What was his excuse for being late? | Stop making excuses. | I was*

*trying to think of an excuse to leave because I was bored.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **reason**

**ex·e·cute** /'eksə,kyut/ verb

to kill someone as an official punishment: *He was found guilty of murder and executed.*

—**execution** /,eksə'kyuʃən/ noun when someone is executed: *His execution will happen on November 14.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **kill**

**ex·ec·u·tive**<sup>1</sup> /ɪg'zekyətɪv/ noun

an important manager in an organization or company: *He became a successful business executive leading a large company.*

**executive**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** relating to making decisions in a company or organization: *She's on the executive committee that makes decisions for the organization.*

**2** **the executive branch** formal = the part of a government, led by an official such as a president, that is in charge of making sure that laws are used and followed correctly

**ex·empt** /ɪg'zempt/ verb, formal

to give someone special permission not to do something: *One student was exempted from the exam because he was in the hospital.*

—**exempt** adjective, formal not having to do something: *Private schools are exempt from this rule, but public schools have to follow it.*

—**exemption** /ɪg'zempʃən/ noun, formal the state of being exempt

**ex·er·cise**<sup>1</sup> /'eksə,saɪz/ noun

**1** physical activity that you do in order to stay strong and healthy: *I don't get much exercise. | Have you done your leg exercises yet?*

**2** a set of questions that you do in order to learn or practice something: *For homework, do exercises 1 and 2.*

**exercise**<sup>2</sup> verb

to do physical activity so that you stay strong and healthy: *I exercise in the gym, and I swim twice a week.*

**THESAURUS: exercise**

**run/go running** to move quickly using your legs: *He runs about three miles every other day. | I try to go running three times a week.*



**jog/go jogging** to run at a slow steady speed: *She was jogging in the park. | Sam and I go jogging together.*

**swim/go swimming** to move through water using your legs and arms: *Kate swam 30 laps of the pool. | Older people often go swimming for exercise, because it is not as hard on your joints.*

**aerobics** exercises with music: *She goes to an aerobics class twice a week.*

**lift weights** to lift heavy pieces of metal to make your muscles stronger: *Members of the football team were lifting weights.*

**work out** to do exercises to make your body stronger: *I always feel a lot better after I've worked out.*

**in shape/out of shape** if you are in shape, you are healthy and strong because you exercise; if you are out of shape, you are not healthy and strong: *I'm taking a dancing class, and it's helping me get in shape. | You can't run the length of the block? You're so out of shape!*

**warm up** to prepare for an activity or sport by doing gentle exercises: *Always warm up before playing any sport.*

**workout** a time when you do exercises to keep your body strong and healthy: *Rock climbing is a great workout!*

**gym** a building or room that has equipment for exercising: *I go to the gym in the morning before work.*

**ex-er-tion** /ɪgˈzɜːʃən/ noun, formal

a lot of physical effort: *The doctor said that too much exertion could lead to another heart attack.*

**ex-hale** /eksˈheɪl/ verb, formal

to breathe air out of your nose or mouth: *Take a deep breath, then exhale slowly.* **ANTONYM** **inhale**

**ex-haust**<sup>1</sup> /ɪgˈzɒst/ verb

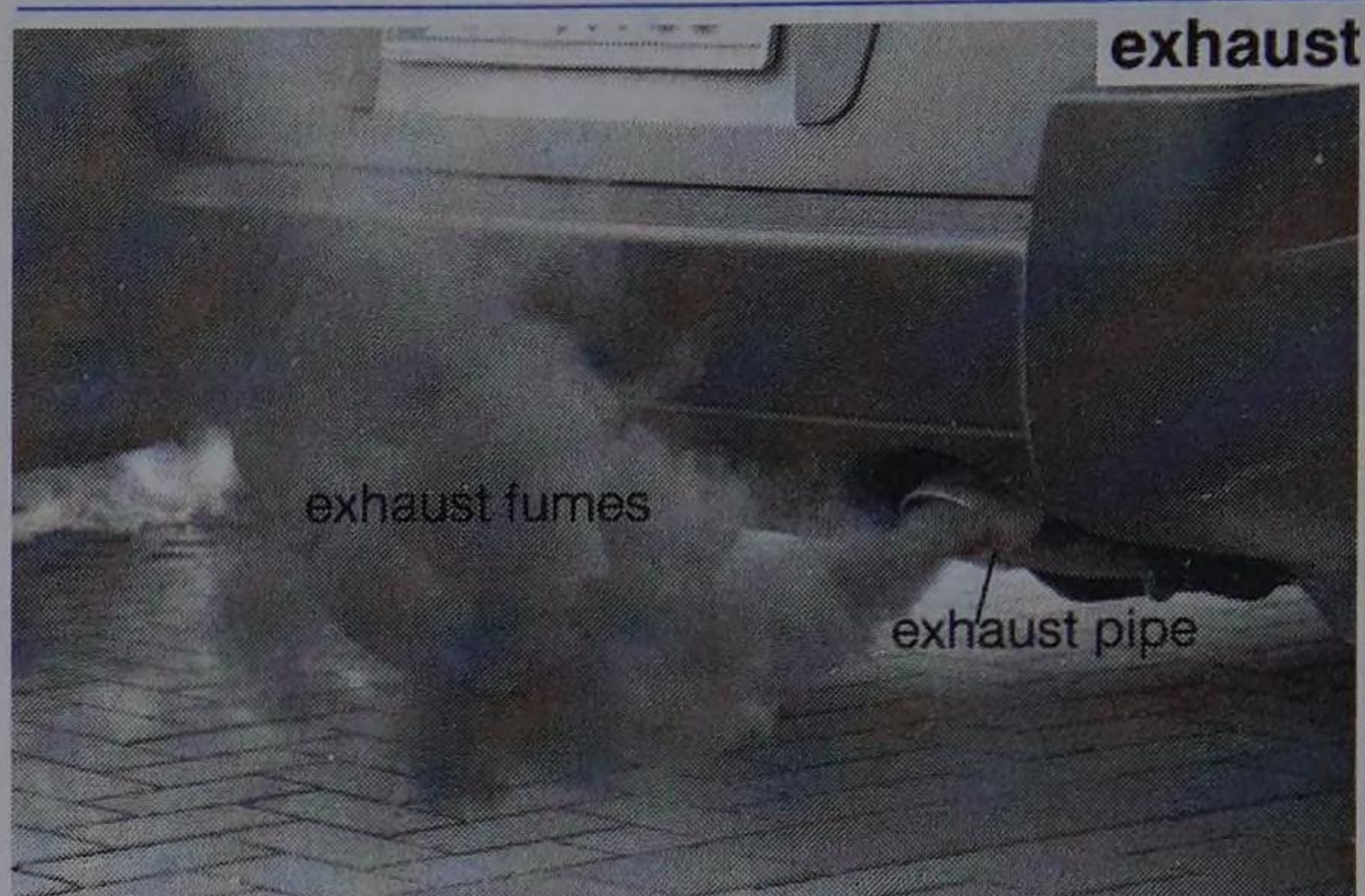
to make someone very tired: *The long walk exhausted her.*

—**exhausting** adjective making you feel extremely tired: *It was a long and exhausting trip.*

**exhaust**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** the gas that is produced when a machine such as a car is working

**2** also **exhaust pipe** a pipe at the back of a car that exhaust comes out of



**ex-haust-ed** /ɪgˈzɒstɪd/ adjective

extremely tired: *They were exhausted from the tough game.*

—**exhaustion** /ɪgˈzɒstʃən/ noun the state of being exhausted: *Two runners were taken to the hospital suffering from exhaustion.*



**ex-hib-it**<sup>1</sup> /ɪgˈzɪbɪt/ **[Ac]** verb

to show something such as art in a public place: *Her paintings have been exhibited at several galleries.*

—**exhibitor** noun someone who is exhibiting his or her work or products

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **exhibit** verb
- **exhibit** noun
- **exhibition** noun
- **exhibitor** noun

**exhibit**<sup>2</sup> also **ex-hi-bi-tion** /,eksəˈbɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

a public show of something such as art: *an exhibition of photographs*

**ex-ile**<sup>1</sup> /ˈegzaɪl/ verb, formal

if the people who control your country exile you, they force you to leave the country for political reasons: *The new leader exiled many of his enemies.*



**exile<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** someone who is in exile has been forced to leave his or her own country for political reasons: *He spent many years living in exile in Europe.*

**2** someone who has been exiled: *Her parents were Russian exiles (=they were forced to leave Russia).*

**ex·ist** /ɪg'zɪst/ *verb*

to be in the world: *The building no longer exists – it was destroyed in a fire.*

**ex·ist·ence** /ɪg'zɪstəns/ *noun*

the state of existing: *She believed in the existence of ghosts. | The elephant is the largest land animal in existence (=the largest one that exists).*

**ex·ist·ing** /ɪg'zɪstɪŋ/ *adjective*

an existing thing is one that exists now or that you have now: *The company is working hard to keep its existing customers happy, but we also need more new customers.*

**ex·it** /'egzɪt/ *noun*

**1** a door through which you can leave a room, building, or airplane: *There are two exits at the back of the plane.* **ANTONYM** **entrance**

**2** a place where vehicles can leave a HIGHWAY (=large road): *Take the next exit (=use the next exit).*

**ex·ot·ic** /ɪg'zɒtɪk/ *adjective*

something that is exotic is unusual and exciting because it is foreign: *They went on vacations to exotic islands.*

**ex·pand** /ɪk'spænd/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to become larger: *When you blow air into a balloon, it expands. | We've decided to expand our business by opening a new store.* **ANTONYM** **contract**

**ex·pan·sion** /ɪk'spænjən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

the process of expanding: *The city is making plans for the expansion of the airport, which will be twice as big when it is finished.*

**ex·pect** /ɪk'spekt/ *verb*

**1** to think that something will happen: *Nobody expected her to win the election. | The movie was better than I expected.*

**2** **be expecting someone or something** = to be waiting for someone or something to arrive: *I'm expecting a package in the mail.*

**3** to demand or feel strongly that someone should do something: *Students are*

*expected to return their homework on Friday.*

**4** **be expecting (a baby)** = if a woman is expecting, she is going to have a baby

—**expectation** /,ekspek'teɪʃən/ *noun* a belief or strong hope that something will happen: *She has high expectations for her daughter (=she believes her daughter will do well).*

**ex·pe·di·tion** /,ekspə'dɪʃən/ *noun*, *formal*

a long and carefully organized trip, especially to a dangerous place: *They are planning an expedition to the North Pole.*

**ex·pel** /ɪk'spel/ *verb* expelled, expelling to officially make someone leave a school, organization, or country: *He was expelled from school for selling drugs.*

**ex·pend·i·ture** /ɪk'spendətʃər/ *noun*, *formal*

the total amount of money that a person or organization spends: *The state's expenditure on education needs to increase.*

**ex·pense** /ɪk'spens/ *noun*

money that you have to spend on something: *I need money for my medical expenses (=money spent on medical treatment). | He took computer classes at his own expense (=he paid for the classes himself).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cost<sup>1</sup>**

**ex·pen·sive** /ɪk'spensɪv/ *adjective*

something that is expensive costs a lot of money: *expensive jewelry | The other jackets were too expensive.* **ANTONYM** **cheap**, **inexpensive**

—**expensively** *adverb*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **expensive** *adjective*
- **inexpensive** *adjective*
- **expensively** *adverb*
- **expense** *noun*

**ex·pe·ri·ence<sup>1</sup>** /ɪk'spɪəriəns/ *noun*

**1** something that happens to you: *Seeing the whales in the ocean was an amazing experience. | I got sick after eating at that restaurant, and my friend had a similar experience.*

**2** knowledge or skill that you get from doing a job or activity: *Our new English teacher has 20 years of teaching experience.*



**experience<sup>2</sup>** verb

if you experience something, it happens to you: *Have you ever experienced an earthquake?*

**ex·pe·ri·enced** /ɪk'spɪriənst/ adjective  
good at doing something because you have been doing it for a long time: *We felt safer flying with such an experienced pilot.*

ANTONYM **inexperienced**

**ex·per·i·ment<sup>1</sup>** /ɪk'sperəmənt/ noun

a scientific test that you do to learn about something or show something: *We did an experiment in class to find out which metals rust.*

**ex·per·i·ment<sup>2</sup>** /ɪk'sperə,ment/ verb

**1** to try using things in order to find out what the results are: *Experiment with different types of grilled fish, and decide which ones you like most.*

**2** to do a scientific test in order to find out or show something: *The company does not test its products by experimenting on animals.*

—**experimentation** /ɪk'sperəmənt'eɪʃən/ noun the act of experimenting

**ex·pert** /'ekspɜ:t/ **[Ac]** noun

someone with special skills or knowledge of a subject: *He is an expert on art from the 20th century. | a computer expert*

—**expert** adjective having the skills of an expert: *an expert swimmer*

—**expertly** adverb

**ex·per·tise** /,ekspə'tɪz/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

special skills or knowledge: *We need someone with expertise in teaching young children.*

**ex·pire** /ɪk'spaɪə/ verb

if a document expires, it is then no longer legal: *My driver's license expires in September (=it is not legal after September).*

—**expiration** /,ekspə'reɪʃən/ noun the act of expiring: *Check the expiration date on your credit card (=the date after which you cannot use it anymore).*

**ex·plain** /ɪk'spleɪn/ verb

**1** to tell someone about something so that he or she can understand it: *Don explained the rules of the game to me. | Could you explain how the camera works?*

**THESAURUS: explain**

**tell** to give someone facts or information in speech or writing: *Can you tell me how to get to the Empire State Building?*

**show** to tell someone how to do something or where something is: *Ellen showed me how to work the coffee maker.*

**demonstrate** formal to show or describe how to use or do something: *The coach demonstrated the correct way to shoot the ball toward the basket.*

**go through something** to explain something carefully, especially one step at a time: *Mrs. Riddell went through the homework assignment.*

**2** to give or be the reason for something: *I explained why my sister was not with me. | He explained that he was late because he had left his wallet at home.*

WORD FAMILY → **explanation** noun

**ex·pla·na·tion** /,eksplə'neɪʃən/ noun

**1** a reason why something happened: *He gave no explanation for his strange actions.*

**2** a statement in which you tell someone about something so that he or she can understand it: *I didn't understand her explanation of what the word means in English.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **reason**

**explicit** /ɪk'splɪsɪt/ **[Ac]** adjective

said or written in a way that is very clear: *The teacher gave her class explicit instructions not to leave their seats or talk while she was out of the room.*

—**explicitly** adverb

**ex·plode** /ɪk'spləʊd/ verb

to burst into small pieces with a loud noise and a lot of force: *The bomb exploded at 6:16.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **explode** verb
- **explosion** noun
- **explosive** adjective
- **explosive** noun

**ex·ploit** /ɪk'splɔɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to use someone or something in an unfair way: *The company exploited its workers, making them work extra hours with no extra pay.*

—**exploitative** adjective, formal someone



who is exploitative exploits people or things  
—**exploitation** /ˌɛksplɔɪ'teɪʃən/ *noun*,  
formal the act of exploiting someone or something

**ex·plore** /ɪk'splɔɪ/ *verb*

**1** to travel around an area in order to find out what it is like: *They wanted to explore the island.*

**2** to think carefully about all the parts or results of something: *He was exploring the possibility of going to graduate school.*

—**explorer** *noun* someone who explores unknown places: *a famous Antarctic explorer*

—**exploration** /ˌɛksplə'reɪʃən/ *noun* the activity of traveling around an area to find out what it is like: *the exploration of North America in the 1700s*

**ex·plo·sion** /ɪk'spləʊʒən/ *noun*

an occasion when something such as a bomb explodes: *The explosion damaged three houses.*

**ex·plo·sive**<sup>1</sup> /ɪk'spləʊsɪv/ *adjective*

**1** able or likely to explode: *The chemical is highly explosive, so we have to handle it carefully.*

**2** an explosive situation is likely to become violent very quickly: *We knew the situation was explosive, and that fighting could begin any time.*

**explosive**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a substance that can cause an explosion: *Dynamite is a type of explosive.*

**ex·port**<sup>1</sup> /ɛk'spɔɪ/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to sell things to another country: *The company exports machines to Russia.* **ANTONYM** **import**

—**exporter** *noun* a person, company, or country that exports things

**ex·port**<sup>2</sup> /'ɛkspɔɪ/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** something that is sold to another country: *The country's main export is coffee.* **ANTONYM** **import**

**2** the business of selling and sending things to another country: *The export of these animals is illegal.* **ANTONYM** **import**

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **export** *verb*
- **export** *noun*
- **exporter** *noun*

**ex·pose** /ɪk'spəʊz/ **[Ac]** *verb*, formal

**1** to show something that has been covered or hidden: *He pulled up his shirt, exposing his belly.*

**2** to put someone in a situation or place where something bad could affect them: *They did not want to expose their child to the disease.*

**ex·po·sure** /ɪk'spəʊʒə/ **[Ac]** *noun*, formal the state of being in a bad or harmful situation with nothing to protect you: *His illness was caused by exposure to dangerous chemicals.*

**ex·press**<sup>1</sup> /ɪk'spres/ *verb*

to say, write, or show what you think or feel: *We want the kids to talk to us and to express their feelings.* | *He's shy, and he has trouble expressing himself (=expressing his thoughts and feelings).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **say**<sup>1</sup>

**express**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** an **express train/bus** = a train or bus that travels very quickly: *I took the express train to Baltimore.*

**2** **express mail** = mail that arrives more quickly than normal: *The package was sent by express mail.*

**ex·pres·sion** /ɪk'spreʃən/ *noun*

**1** the look on someone's face: *He had a sad expression on his face as we said goodbye.*

**2** a word or words with a particular meaning: *Do you know what the expression "what's up?" means?*

**3** an **expression of thanks/love, etc.** formal = an action that shows what you think or feel: *I wrote him a note as an expression of my thanks.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **phrase**

**ex·pres·sive** /ɪk'spresɪv/ *adjective*

showing your thoughts or feelings: *I always know what she is thinking, because she has very expressive eyes.*

—**expressively** *adverb*: *Poets use words expressively.*

**ex·press·ly** /ɪk'spresli/ *adverb*, formal

with a very clear purpose or reason: *The school was started expressly to give poor children a better education.*



**ex·press·way** /ɪk'spres,wei/ *noun*

a wide road that lets cars travel quickly through a city: *The truck was traveling north on the expressway.*

**ex·pul·sion** /ɪk'spʌljən/ *noun, formal*

an act of ordering someone to leave a school, an organization, or a country forever: *Expulsion from school is a very severe punishment.*

**ex·quis·ite** /ɪk'skwɪzɪt/ *adjective, formal*  
very beautiful: *She wore an exquisite diamond necklace.*

**ex·tend** /ɪk'stend/ *verb*

**1** to make something longer: *We decided to extend our visit to Mexico for another week.*

**2** to cover a particular area: *The fire extended for 15 miles across the plain.*

**ex·tended 'family** *noun*

a family group that includes parents, children, grandparents, and other family members: *In the summer, we had a big party for our extended family and friends.*

**ex·ten·sion** /ɪk'stenʃən/ *noun*

**1** more time that you are allowed to do something: *If students are sick, they can ask for an extension to finish their work.*

**2** one of many telephones in a building that are connected to a central system: *Call the office and ask for extension 358.*

**3** formal the process of making something longer or bigger: *The extension of the railroad to the West Coast took many years.*

**ex·ten·sive** /ɪk'stensɪv/ *adjective, formal*  
large in amount or area: *The storm caused extensive damage to the town, destroying most of the houses.*

—**extensively** *adverb, formal*: *Police searched the area extensively, looking in every house.*

**ex·tent** /ɪk'stent/ *noun*

**1** how big or important something is: *At first, we did not realize the extent of the problem, until hundreds of people complained.*

**2** to some extent = partly: *I agree with him, to some extent, but not completely.*

**ex·te·ri·or¹** /ɪk'stɪriə/ *noun, formal*

the outside of something: *The exterior of the house was painted blue.* **ANTONYM** interior

**exterior²** *adjective, formal*

on the outside of something: *We turned on the exterior lights of the house, so we could*

*see who was in the backyard.* **ANTONYM** interior

**ex·ter·mi·nate** /ɪk'stəmə,neɪt/ *verb, formal*

to kill all of a particular group of living things: *They use chemicals to exterminate the insects that get into buildings.*

—**exterminator** *noun* someone whose job is to kill insects and small animals in people's houses

—**extermination** /ɪk'stəmə'neɪʃən/ *noun, formal* the act of exterminating living things: *The pollution has caused the extermination of some types of fish.*

**ex·ter·nal** /ɪk'stənl/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*  
outside something: *The man had no sign of external injuries (=injuries on the outside of his body).* **ANTONYM** internal

—**externally** *adverb*

**ex·tinct** /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ *adjective*

an extinct type of plant or animal does not exist now: *Why did the dinosaurs become extinct (=stop existing)?*

—**extinction** /ɪk'stɪŋkʃən/ *noun, formal* the state of being extinct: *Several species of plants are near extinction (=are almost extinct).*

**ex·tin·guish** /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ/ *verb, formal*  
to make a fire stop burning: *Finally, the forest fires were extinguished.* **SYNONYM** put out

**ex·tin·guish·er** /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃə/ *noun*  
another word for a FIRE EXTINGUISHER

**ex·tra¹** /'ekstrə/ *adjective, adverb*

**1** more than you usually get, pay, etc.: *Can I have a hamburger with extra cheese? | If you want a bigger room, you have to pay extra.*

**2** in addition to what you need or are using: *We have an extra room for guests.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **more²**

**extra²** *noun*

something that is added to a product or service and that costs more: *The price of the trip does not include extras such as taxes and the price of food.*

**ex·tract** /ɪk'strækt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

formal to remove something from a place: *The dentist extracted one of my teeth.*

**ex·tra·cur·ric·u·lar**

/,ekstrəkə'rɪkyələ/ *adjective, formal*  
extracurricular activities are activities, such as sports or music, that students choose to



do, and that are not part of the work they have to do

**ex·traor·di·nar·y** /ɪk'strɔːdnəri/ adjective

very unusual or surprising: *Gerry had extraordinary talent – he was performing on stage when he was four years old.*

**ex·trav·a·gant** /ɪk'strævəɡənt/ adjective, formal

spending or costing too much money: *They had extravagant parties with live music and champagne.*

—**extravagance** noun, formal the act of spending too much money: *Her extravagance resulted in serious money problems.*

**ex·treme** /ɪk'strim/ adjective

**1** very large in degree: *Martha was now in extreme pain.*

**2** an extreme case/example = a situation that is unusually bad: *In extreme cases, the spider's bite can kill a person.*

**3** extreme opinions are very unusual and often not sensible: *Some members of the party have extreme views.*

**4** extreme sports are more dangerous than usual: *extreme skiing*

**ex·treme·ly** /ɪk'strimli/ adverb

very: *The test was extremely difficult.*

**ex·tro·vert·ed** /'ekstrə,vɜːtɪd/ adjective, formal

an extroverted person is confident and likes being with people **ANTONYM introverted**

—**extrovert** noun, formal someone who is confident and likes being with people.

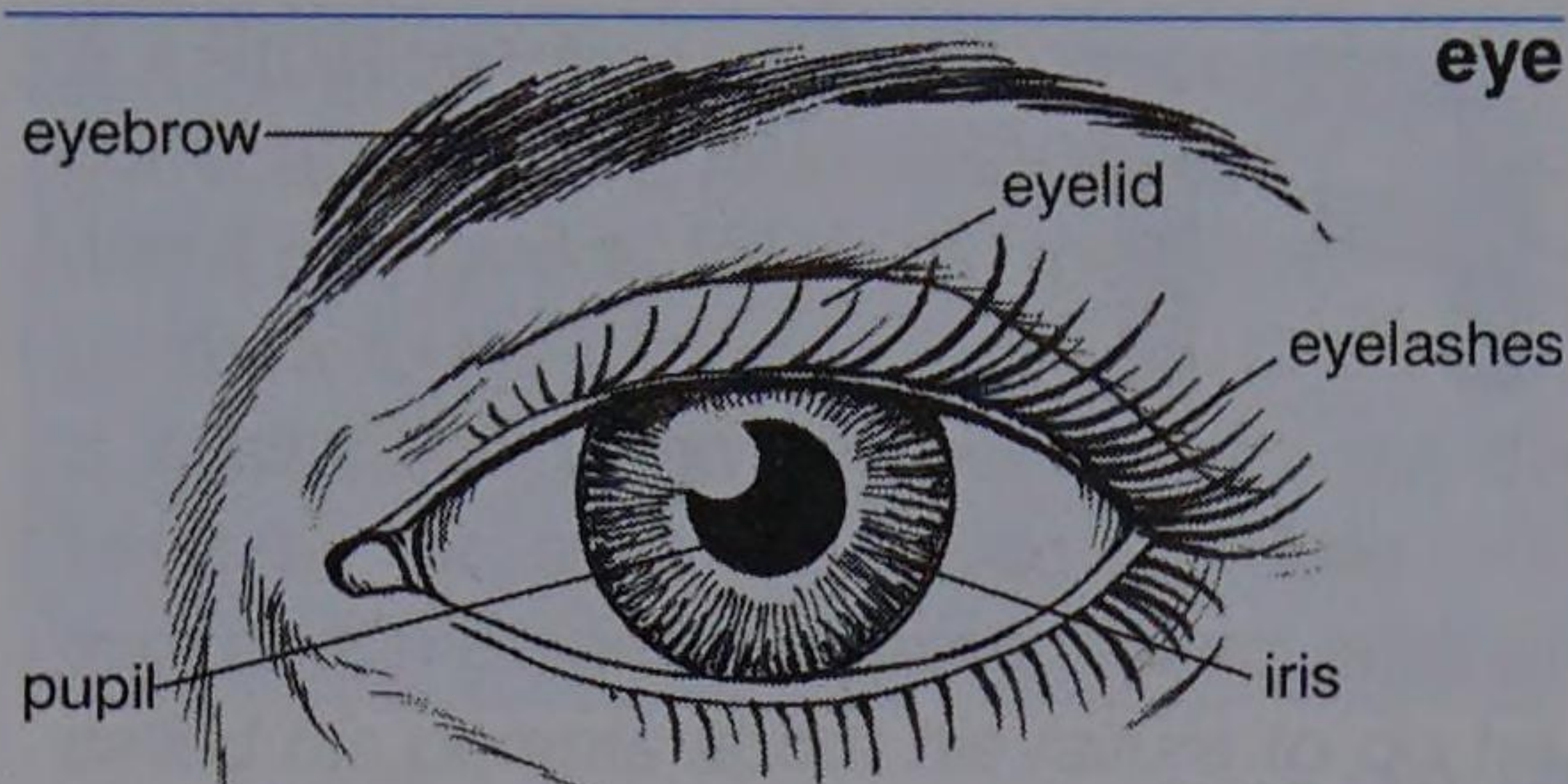
→ See Thesaurus box at **shy**

**eye** /aɪ/ noun

**1** the part of your face that you see with: *Gina has big blue eyes.*

**2** keep an eye on someone or something = to watch someone or something to make sure they are safe: *Can you keep an eye on the baby while I go to the store?*

**3** in someone's eyes = in someone's opinion: *In Joey's eyes, she's perfect.*



**4** catch someone's eye = to get someone's attention: *A beautiful red dress caught my eye, so I went into the store to look at it.*

**5** see eye to eye = to agree with someone: *I don't always see eye to eye with my parents.*

**6** the hole in a needle that you put thread through

**7** the eye of a storm/hurricane/tornado = the center of a big storm

**eye·ball** /'aɪbɔːl/ noun

the whole of your eye, including the part inside your head

**eye·brow** /'aɪbraʊ/ noun

the line of short hairs above your eye: *He had thick black eyebrows.*

→ See picture at **eye**

**'eye ,contact** noun

the action of looking directly at someone's eyes: *She was shy, and she usually did not like to make eye contact with other people.*

**eye·glass·es** /'aɪ,glæsɪz/ plural noun

another word for GLASSES

**eye·lash** /'aɪlæʃ/ noun

one of the small hairs that grow on your eyelids

→ See picture at **eye**

**eye·lid** /'aɪlɪd/ noun

the piece of skin that covers your eye when it is closed

→ See picture at **eye**

**eye·shad·ow** /'aɪ,ʃædɔʊ/ noun

color that women put on their eyelids to make them look attractive

**eye·sight** /'aɪsaɪt/ noun

the ability to see: *My eyesight is good.*



# Ff

## F<sup>1</sup> /ef/ noun

**1** a GRADE that you get when you fail a test or a class: *Jill got an F in biology.*

**2** the fourth note in the musical SCALE of C, or the musical KEY based on this note

## F<sup>2</sup>

the written abbreviation of **Fahrenheit**: *It's 32°F.*

## fa·ble /'feɪbəl/ noun

a story, especially one with animals, that teaches us something: *The fable teaches that it is important to work slowly and carefully.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **story**

## fab·ric /'fæbrɪk/ noun

cloth: *She made the curtains out of a thick cotton fabric.* **SYNONYM** material

## fab·u·lous /'fæbyələs/ adjective

very good or attractive: *We had a fabulous time in New York City.*

## face<sup>1</sup> /feɪs/ noun

**1** the front of your head, with your eyes, nose, and mouth: *She has a very pretty face.*

**2** the part of a clock or watch that you look at to see the time: *The watch face has the numbers 12, 3, 6, and 9 on it.*

**3** the expression on someone's face: *the children's happy faces* | *"What's that terrible smell?" she said, and she made a face (=changed her expression to show she did not like something).*

**4** the front side or surface of something: *They climbed the north face of the mountain.*

→ See picture at **watch<sup>2</sup>**

## face<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to be looking or pointing toward someone or something: *Mom turned to face me.* | *Our house faces the park, so we just walk across the street to play.*

**2** to deal with a difficult situation, or with someone who is upset or angry: *I knew Dad would be mad, and I couldn't face him.*

**3** to accept that something bad is true: *She couldn't face the fact that her son was dying.*

## 'face-lift noun

an operation on your face to make you look younger: *Do you think she's had a face-lift?*

## fa·cial<sup>1</sup> /'feɪʃəl/ adjective, formal

relating to the face: *a man with a lot of facial hair*

## facial<sup>2</sup> noun

a treatment to clean the skin on your face and make it softer: *How much does it cost to have a facial?*

## fa·cil·i·tate /fə'sɪləteɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to make something happen more easily: *Computers can facilitate learning.*

## fa·cil·i·ties /fə'sɪlətɪz/ **[Ac]** plural noun, formal

rooms, equipment etc. for a particular purpose: *The university has very good sports facilities, including a new gym.*

## fact /fækt/ noun

**1** something that is true: *The book has lots of interesting facts about plants.*

**2** **in fact** = used when you are saying that something is true, especially something a little surprising: *It looks difficult, but in fact it's fairly easy.*

**3** **a fact of life** = something difficult or unpleasant that everyone has to accept: *For kids, tests at school are just a fact of life.*

—**factual** /'fæktʃuəl/ adjective relating to facts: *You can find more factual information about the subject on our website.*

## fac·tion /'fækʃən/ noun, formal

a small group of people who have different ideas from other people in a group: *Political parties often split into factions.*

## fac·tor /'fæktər/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** formal one of many things that affects a situation: *The weather could be an important factor in tomorrow's game – if it snows our team will have the advantage.*

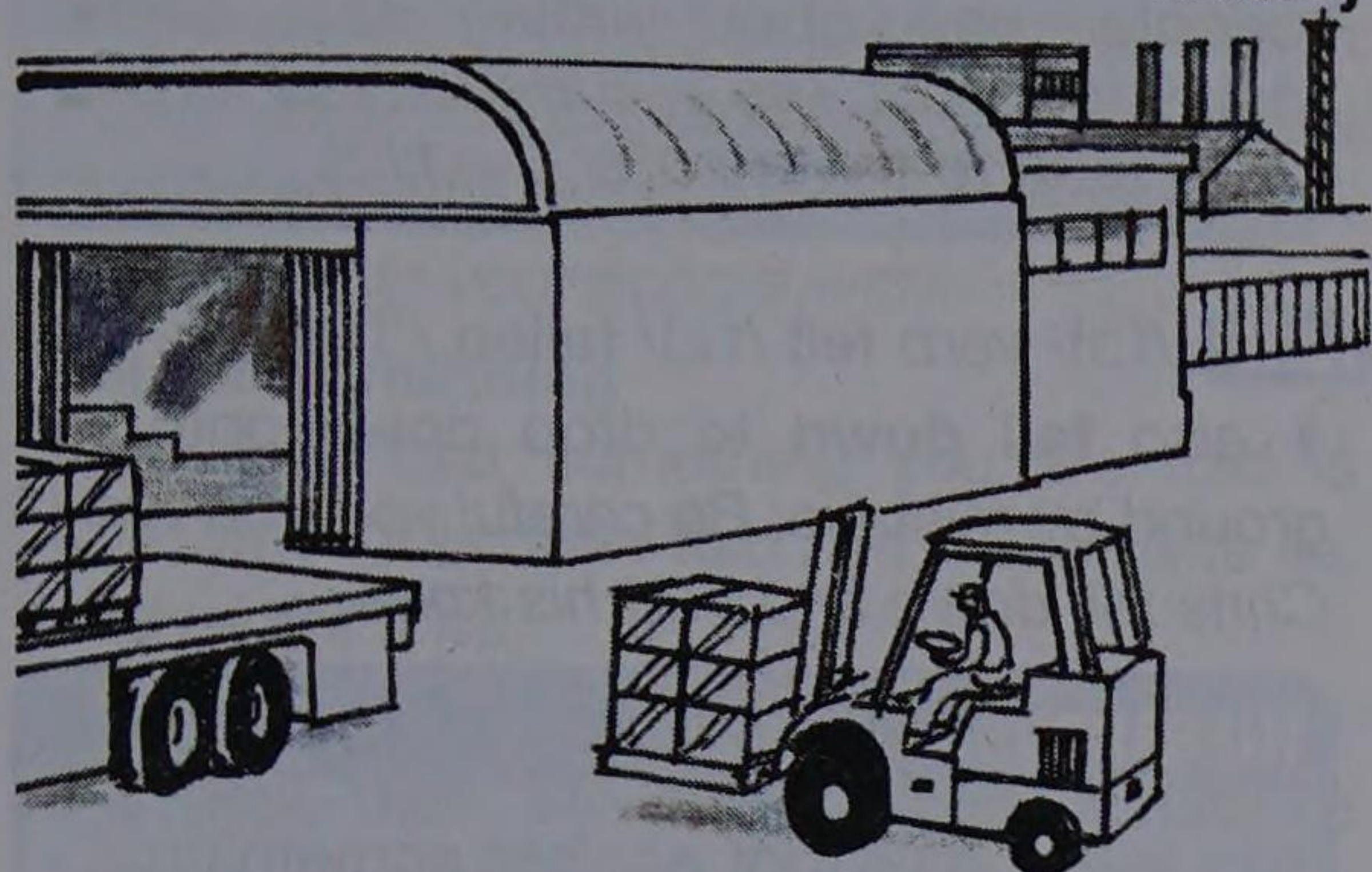
**2** a number that you can divide into another number exactly: *3 is a factor of 15, because 3 × 5 = 15.*

## fac·to·ry /'fæktəri/ noun plural factories

a building where goods are made: *My grandfather worked in a shoe factory.*



factory



**fac·ul·ty** /'fækəlti/ *noun* plural **faculties**  
formal

the teachers in a school, college, or department: *The college faculty wants to increase the number of students.*

**fad** /fæd/ *noun*

something popular that people do or like for a short time: *This new diet is just another fad.*

**fade** /feɪd/ *verb*

to become less bright in color: *If you wash these jeans a lot, they will fade.*

**Fahr·en·heit** /'færən,haɪt/ *noun*

written abbreviation **F** a system of measuring temperature in which water freezes at 32° and boils at 212°

**fail** /feɪl/ *verb*

**1** to not succeed at something: *The doctors tried everything, but they failed to save the little girl's life.* **ANTONYM** **succeed**

**2** formal to not do something that you should do, or not succeed at something: *We were an hour late, because our flight failed to arrive on time.*

**3** if you fail a test, you do not pass it: *I failed my math test.* **ANTONYM** **pass**

**4** if a business fails, it cannot continue working because it has no money: *The business failed last year.*

**WORD FAMILY** → **failure** *noun*

**fail·ing** /'feɪlɪŋ/ *noun*

a problem or weakness in a person, system, or idea: *One of the mayor's failings is that he only hires his friends.*

**fail·ure** /'feɪljə/ *noun*

**1** someone or something that is not successful: *The movie was a total failure – no one went to see it.* **ANTONYM** **success**

**2** a situation when something stops working correctly: *He died from heart failure.* | *There was a mechanical failure, so the plane had to go back to the airport.*

**3** a situation when someone does not do what he or she should do or does not succeed in doing something: *Mike's teacher called his parents about his failure to do his homework.*

**faint<sup>1</sup>** /feɪnt/ *adjective*

**1** a faint sound, smell, light, etc. is not strong or clear: *I heard a faint sound downstairs.*

**2** feeling weak and unsteady: *He was faint with hunger.*

**faint<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to become unconscious for a short time: *When they told her the bad news, she fainted.*

**fair<sup>1</sup>** /fer/ *adjective*

**1** dealing with people or situations in an equal way: *Why can Danny go, but not me? It's not fair!* | *All prisoners have the right to a fair trial.* **ANTONYM** **unfair**

**2** **fair hair/skin** = hair or skin that is light in color: *Both the sisters have fair hair.* **ANTONYM** **dark**

**3** **a fair price** = a price that is not too much: *\$1,000 seems like a fair price for a computer.*

**4** good enough, but not very good: *Her test scores in science were fair but not great.*

**SYNONYM** **average**

**5** fair weather is sunny

—**fairness** *noun* the quality of dealing with people in an equal way: *The students respected their teacher for her fairness.*

**fair<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** an outdoor event where you can ride on exciting machines, and play games to win prizes. Sometimes farmers show their animals and crops at a fair: *the Ohio state fair*

**2** an event at which businesses or other organizations show or sell things: *the school science fair*

**fair·ly** /'ferli/ *adverb*

**1** **fairly good/large, etc.** = good, large, etc., but not very good, large, etc.: *The apartment is fairly large.* | *He speaks Spanish fairly well.*

**2** in an equal way: *Divide the candy fairly, so that everyone gets the same amount.*

**fair·y** /'feri/ *noun* plural **fairies**

a very small imaginary person who can do magic



**'fairy tale** *noun*

a story for children in which magic things happen

**faith** /feɪθ/ *noun*

**1** a strong belief that someone or something is good or will succeed: *I didn't do well at school, but my parents always had faith in me.*

**2** belief in God: *My faith in God helped me through the bad times.*

**3** a religion: *We have people of all faiths at our school. | the Christian faith*

→ See Thesaurus box at **religion**

**faith·ful** /'feɪθfəl/ *adjective*

**1** loyal to someone or something: *Jack's been a very faithful friend.*

**2** if you are faithful to your wife, husband, etc., you do not have a relationship with anyone else: *Lisa had always been faithful to Greg.* **ANTONYM** **unfaithful**

**3** describing or showing something exactly, without changing it: *The movie is faithful to the book – the director has not changed the story at all.*

**faith·ful·ly** /'feɪθfəli/ *adverb*

**1** in a loyal way: *He served the king faithfully for 20 years.*

**2** in an exact way: *The book faithfully records their trip, giving details about every town they went to.*

**fake** *adjective* /feɪk/

not real, but looking like something real: *He was arrested for making fake passports.*

**THESAURUS: fake**

**false** not real, but made to look real – used about teeth, hair, nails, etc.: *Grandpa has false teeth.*

**imitation** made to look like something real – used about materials that look expensive, but are made of something cheaper: *an imitation leather jacket*

**counterfeit** formal counterfeit money or a counterfeit product is made to look real in order to trick people: *counterfeit lottery tickets | a million dollars in counterfeit bills*

**phony** informal not real and intended to trick people: *The photographs showing him in London were all phony – he's never been to England. | a phony address*

**forged** illegally copied in order to trick people – used about writing, documents, paintings, etc.: *The two men used forged passports to try to enter the U.S.*

**fall** /fɔl/ *verb* fell /fel/ fallen /'fɔlən/

**1** also **fall down** to drop down onto the ground by mistake: *Be careful you don't fall! | Chris fell down and hurt his knee.*

**THESAURUS: fall**

**trip** to hit your foot against something, so that you fall or almost fall: *I'm always tripping over that cat!*

**slip** to slide on something that is wet or icy, so that you fall or almost fall: *She slipped on the ice and broke her leg.*

**stumble** to put your foot down in a bad way or hit your foot against something, so that you almost fall: *Megan started for her room and stumbled over the rug.*

**lose your balance** to fall or almost fall, for example, when you are climbing a ladder or riding a bicycle: *Eddie bumped into me and I lost my balance.*

**2** if snow, rain, etc. falls, it moves down toward the ground: *The leaves on the trees were beginning to fall.*

**3** if a price, amount, etc. falls, it becomes less: *The price of computers has fallen.*

**ANTONYM** **rise**

**4 fall asleep** = to start to sleep: *Tommy fell asleep on the couch.*

**5 fall in love** also **fall for someone** = to begin to love someone: *As soon as I saw her, I fell in love with her.*

**6 fall ill/silent** = to become ill or silent: *Suddenly, everyone in the room fell silent.*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**fall apart**

**1** to break into pieces: *My old shoes are falling apart – both of them have holes in them.*

**2** to stop working well or stop dealing with situations well: *When I got divorced, I was so unhappy that I just fell apart. | The economy is falling apart; prices are rising and there are no jobs.*

**fall back on something**

to use something if it becomes necessary: *Make sure you keep some extra money to fall back on.*



**fall behind**

to be slower than other people, or late in doing something: *Going up the hill, Anna had fallen behind the other runners. | Don't fall behind in your school work.*

**fall for something**

to believe that something you are told is true, when it is not: *I told him a complete lie, and he fell for it.*

**fall through**

if a deal, plan, etc. falls through, it fails to happen: *The business deal fell through at the last minute.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **decrease**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A4

**fall**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** the season before winter, when the leaves fall off the trees in cool countries: *My brother's starting college in the fall.*

**2** the act of dropping down onto the ground by mistake: *He had a bad fall from a ladder.*

**3** a situation when a price, amount, etc. suddenly becomes less: *There's been a fall in the number of students who want to study nursing.* **SYNONYM** **drop**; **ANTONYM** **rise**

**fall-en** /'fɒlən/ *verb*

the past participle of **FALL**

**false** /fɒls/ *adjective*

**1** not true or correct: *false statements* | *Read the paragraph and say whether these statements are true or false.*

**2** not real, but made to look real: *Grandpa has false teeth.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fake**, **wrong**

**false alarm** *noun*

a situation when people think that something bad is happening, but it is not: *Everyone thought the building was on fire, but it was a false alarm.*

**fal-si-fy** /'fɒlsə,faɪ/ *verb* falsified, third person singular falsifies *formal*

to change information so that it is not true: *He went to jail for falsifying the company's financial records.*

—**falsification** /,fɒlsəfə'keɪʃən/ *noun*, *formal* the act of falsifying something

**fame** /feɪm/ *noun*

the state of being known and admired by a lot of people: *The band rose to fame (=became famous) in the 1990s.*

**fa-mil-iar** /fə'mɪliə/ *adjective*

**1** **be familiar with something** = to know something well: *I'm familiar with New Haven because I went to college there.*

**2** a familiar person or thing is one that you recognize: *Her face is familiar, but I can't remember her name.*

—**familiarity** /fə,mɪli'ærəti/ *noun*, *formal* when you know something well: *You will need a familiarity with this software to do the job.*

—**familiarize** /fə'mɪliə,raɪz/ *verb* to get to know something well: *Read the story so that you familiarize yourself with the characters.*

**fam-i-ly** /'fæməli/ *noun* plural **families**

**1** a group of people who are related to each other, especially parents and their children: *My family and I are going skiing in Colorado. | My family has lived in this neighborhood for a long time; my grandparents grew up here.*

**THESAURUS: family**

**relative** a member of your family: *Most of my relatives are in California.*

**relation** a member of your family – used about people such as aunts, cousins, etc., not your parents, brothers, or sisters: *There are some relations in Montana that I've never met.*

**folks** *informal* your parents or family: *Did you tell your folks about it?*

**immediate family** *formal* your parents, children, brothers, and sisters: *Only members of the immediate family went to the funeral.*

**grandparents** also **grandfather/grandpa** and **grandmother/grandma** your parents' father and mother: *My grandparents live on a farm. | Grandma taught me how to make bread.*

**aunt/uncle** the sister or brother of your mother or father, or the person who is married to your aunt or uncle: *Uncle Carl isn't married, so I don't have an aunt.*

**cousin** a child of your aunt or uncle: *I played a lot with my cousins because they lived close to us.*

**stepfather/stepmother** the person your mother or father has married, but who is not your father or mother: *My stepfather is really nice.*



**stepbrother/stepsister** the son or daughter of the person who has married one of your parents: *I have two stepbrothers, but they don't live with us; they live with their own mother.*

**2** the children you have: *I always wanted to have a big family (=a lot of children).*

**'family name** noun

your last name, that you share with the other people in your family: *Todd's family name is Dyson.* **SYNONYM** last name

**'family tree** noun

a drawing that shows how all the people in a family are related to each other

**fam·ine** /'fæmɪn/ noun

a very bad situation when a lot of people do not have enough food to eat: *Thousands of people died in the famine.*

**fa·mous** /'feɪməs/ adjective

known and admired by a lot of people: *She's a famous writer. | San Francisco is famous for its great food.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **famous** adjective
- **infamous** adjective
- **fame** noun

**fan¹** /fæn/ noun

**1** someone who likes a particular person or thing very much: *She's a big fan of the band. | Gary's a sports fan.*

**2** a machine or object you can use to make the air move and cool you: *It was hot, so I turned on the fan.*

**fan²** verb fanned, fanning

to make yourself feel cool by waving something that makes the air move: *She fanned her face with a newspaper.*

**fa·nat·ic** /fə'nætɪk/ noun

someone who has extreme and dangerous ideas: *Some of the terrorists are religious fanatics (=having very strong ideas about religion).*

—**fanatical** adjective, formal having extreme ideas that may be dangerous: *The men belonged to a fanatical group that wanted to end democracy.*

—**fanaticism** /fə'nætə'sɪzəm/ noun, formal the state of having extreme ideas

**fan·cy** /'fænsi/ adjective **fancier, fanciest**

**1** special and expensive: *We had a big dinner in a fancy restaurant.*

**2** not plain or simple: *I don't like fancy wallpaper; I want something with just a simple pattern.*

**fang** /fæŋ/ noun

a long sharp tooth of a dog, snake, etc.: *The big dog growled, and I saw its fangs.*

**fan·ny pack** /'fæni pæk/ noun

a small bag for carrying money, keys, etc., that you wear around your waist

**fan·ta·size** /'fæntə'saɪz/ verb

to think about doing, having, etc. something exciting even though it is very unlikely to happen: *I sometimes fantasize about winning millions of dollars.*

**fan·tas·tic** /fæn'tæstɪk/ adjective

**1** very good or attractive: *You look fantastic in that dress! | That's a fantastic idea.*

**2** strange or imaginary: *The movie is about fantastic creatures from another world.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **good¹**

**fan·ta·sy** /'fæntəsi/ noun plural **fantasies**

**1** something that you imagine happening, but that is not real: *I used to have fantasies about becoming a movie star.*

**2** a story, movie, etc. that is about imaginary events, creatures, etc., and not about the real world: *I like to read science fiction and fantasies.*

**far¹** /fɑr/ adverb **farther** /'fɑrðə/ or **further** /'fɑðə/, **farthest** /'fɑrðɪst/ or **furthest** /'fɑðɪst/

**1** a long distance: *Did you have to walk far to get to the subway? | Which of you guys can swim the farthest (=the longest distance)?*

**GRAMMAR: far**

When you are talking about distances, you can use **far** in questions and sentences with “not” or “nothing”: *How far is it to the stadium? | It's not very far.*

You can also use **far** after “too,” “as,” and “so”: *It's too far to walk. | I ran as far as I could. | I wish he didn't live so far away.*

But do not use **far** in other kinds of sentence. For example, do not say “It's far to Boston from here.” Say: “*It's a long way to Boston from here.*”

**2 How far ...?** = used when asking what the



distance is to get somewhere: *"How far is it to the ocean?" "Only about ten miles."*

**3 as far as something** = to a particular place or point: *We walked as far as the river.*

**4 so far** = until now: *There haven't been any problems so far.*

**5 by far the largest/the best, etc.** = much larger, better, etc. than any others: *I think they are by far the best new band.*

**6 far bigger/better/smarter, etc.** *formal* = a lot bigger, better, etc. than someone or something else: *She did a far better job than I could have.*

**7 go too far** = to do something bad that people cannot accept: *He's always been mean, but this time he went too far.*

**8 far off/away** = a long way from where you are: *Far off, we could hear the sound of guns.*

**9 so far, so good** *informal* = used when saying that things have been good until now: *"How's your new school?" "So far, so good."*

**10 as far as I know ...** = used when saying that you think something is true, but you are not sure: *As far as I know, they still live in Washington, but I could be wrong.*

→ **as far as someone's concerned at concerned**

→ See picture at **near**<sup>1</sup>

**far**<sup>2</sup> *adjective farther, farthest*

a long distance away: *My apartment isn't far. | They live at the far end of the street (=the most distant end).* **ANTONYM** **near**

→ **furthest**

**farce** /fars/ *noun*

**1** a funny play or movie in which a lot of silly things happen

**2** a situation in which things seem too silly to be true: *The class was a farce – we didn't learn anything.*

**fare** /fer/ *noun*

the price you pay to travel by bus, train, airplane, etc.: *How much is the bus fare to get downtown?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cost**<sup>1</sup>

**Far 'East** *noun*

**the Far East** = the countries of east Asia, such as China and Japan: *He's traveled a lot in the Far East.*

**farewell** /fer'wel/ *noun, formal*

goodbye: *We said farewell to our friends.*

—**farewell** *adjective* relating to the time

when someone leaves a place: *Everyone came to his farewell party.*

**farm** /farm/ *noun*

an area of land used for growing food or raising animals: *We drove past lots of farms with corn growing in the fields.*

—**farmer** *noun* a person who works on a farm

—**farming** *noun* the work of growing food or raising animals

**farm-house** /'farmhaus/ *noun*

the house on a farm where the farmer lives

**farm-land** /'farmlænd/ *noun*

land used for farming: *The farmer had to sell most of his farmland.*

**farm-yard** /'farmyard/ *noun*

an area with farm buildings around it: *There were goats and chickens in the farmyard.*

**far-sight-ed** /'far,saitɪd/ *adjective*

a farsighted person cannot see things that are near to them clearly: *I can't read without glasses, because I'm farsighted.* **ANTONYM** **nearsighted**

**far-ther** /'farðə/ *adjective, adverb*

the comparative of FAR: *The downtown area was farther away (=more distant) than I thought.*

#### USAGE: farther

Use **farther** to talk about distance: *Room 211 is just a little farther down the hall.*

Use **further** to talk about time, amounts, or the level of something: *Your grades cannot drop further, or you won't be able to play on the soccer team. | I don't want to discuss this any further.*

Many people use **further** in spoken English to talk about distance, but many teachers think that this is not correct.

**far-thest** /'farðɪst/ *adjective, adverb*

the superlative of FAR: *Which planet is farthest from (=most distant from) the sun?*

**fascinate** /'fæsə,neɪt/ *verb*

to interest someone very much: *Stories about magic fascinate children.*

—**fascinated** *adjective* very interested: *The audience was fascinated as the dancers performed.*

—**fascinating** *adjective* very interesting: *History is a fascinating subject.*



**fas·ci·na·tion** /ˈfæsəˈneɪʃən/ *noun*,  
*formal*  
 a very strong interest in something or someone: *She has a fascination with famous movie stars.*

**fash·ion** /ˈfæʃən/ *noun*  
**1** a style of clothes, hair, or doing something that is popular at a particular time: *Teenage clothing fashions change every year.*  
**2 in fashion** = liked or worn by a lot of people now: *Long skirts are in fashion again.*  
**3 out of fashion** = not liked or worn by people now: *My old coat is completely out of fashion now.*

**fash·ion·a·ble** /ˈfæʃənəbəl/ *adjective*  
**1** in the style that is popular now: *Short jackets are fashionable this year.*  
**2** a fashionable restaurant, area, etc. is expensive, and a lot of rich people go there: *She lived in a fashionable area of Manhattan.*

**fast¹** /fæst/ *adjective*  
**1** moving or doing something quickly: *Jake's a really fast runner. | Some kids are fast learners.* **ANTONYM** *slow*  
**2** if a clock or watch is fast, it shows a time that is later than the real time: *My watch is fast – it says it's 5:30, but it's only 5:15.*  
**ANTONYM** *slow*

**fast²** *adverb*  
**1** quickly: *Don't drive so fast!*

**THESAURUS: fast**

**quickly** used about people or things that move very fast, or that do not take a lot of time: *I ran quickly down the stairs. | She undressed quickly and got into bed.*

**rapidly** used especially about things that happen very fast: *Unemployment rose rapidly.*

**swiftly** *formal* used about people or things that happen or move fast: *Harris got up and walked swiftly to the window.*

**2 fast asleep** = sleeping very well: *By 10 o'clock, he was already fast asleep.*

**fast³** *verb*  
 to eat little or no food, especially for religious reasons: *During this month, Muslim people fast during the daytime.*

**fas·ten** /ˈfæsn/ *verb*  
**1** to join together the two sides of something: *Fasten your seat belts. | The bag fastens with a zipper at the top.*



**2** to attach something to another thing: *We can fasten the cloth to the paper with a staple.*

**THESAURUS: fasten**

**attach** to fasten something firmly to another object or surface: *Please attach a check to your order form.*

**glue** to fasten things together using glue: *The children glued shapes onto the paper to make pictures.*

**tape** to fasten something using tape: *Michelle taped a card to the present.*

**staple** to fasten something using staples (=small pieces of bent wire that go through paper): *The paper was stapled together in the left corner.*

**clip** to fasten things together using a clip (=a small object that goes over paper to hold it together): *The pages were clipped together.*

**tie** to fasten a tie or shoes, etc. by making a knot: *Tie your shoelaces; you'll trip!*

**button** to fasten the buttons on a shirt, coat, etc.: *Craig buttoned up his jacket.*

**zip** to fasten clothes, bags, etc. with a zipper: *I can't zip up these jeans; they're too tight.*

**fas·ten·er** /ˈfæsnə/ *noun*  
 a button, pin, etc. that you use to attach things to each other: *There was a small fastener, like a hook, at the top of the zipper.*

**'fast food** *noun*  
 food that comes from a restaurant where they make and serve food quickly: *We bought hamburgers and fries at a fast food restaurant.*

**'fat¹** /fæt/ *adjective*  
 having too much flesh on your body: *You'll get fat if you eat all that chocolate!* **ANTONYM** *thin*



# THESAURUS: fat

You can call yourself **fat**, but it is not polite to tell someone else that they are fat: *I'm getting really fat.*

**overweight** used as a more polite way of describing someone who is fat: *He's a little overweight.*

**heavy** used for describing someone who is big or fat: *a heavy woman in her fifties*

**obese** formal used about someone who is very fat in a way that is dangerous to their health: *Obese people often have heart disease and other health problems.*

**chubby** used about someone, especially a baby or a child, who is slightly fat: *a chubby little boy*

**plump** used to say that someone, especially a woman or a child, is slightly fat in a pleasant way: *Mrs. Wilson was a plump, kind-looking woman.*

→ **thin**

## **fat**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** an oily substance in food such as milk, cheese, or butter: *I try to eat food that is low in fat (=does not have a lot of fat).*

**2** the soft substance under the skin of people and animals: *Women have more fat on their bodies than men.*

## **fa-tal** /'feɪtl/ adjective

a fatal accident, disease, etc. causes someone to die: *Several people have died in fatal accidents on this road.*

—**fatally** adverb: *He was fatally wounded in the attack and died two days later.*

## **fa-tal-i-ty** /fə'tæləti/ noun plural **fatalities** formal

a death in an accident or an attack: *Several people were hurt, but there were no fatalities.*

## **fate** /feɪt/ noun

**1** a power that some people think controls what happens to you in your life: *I knew it was fate that I met her, and I knew I wanted to marry her.* **SYNONYM** **destiny**

**2** formal the things that will happen to someone or something: *The jury will now decide the man's fate; they must decide how many years he will stay in prison.*

## **fa-ther** /'fɑðə/ noun

**1** your male parent: *My father was a doctor.*

**SYNONYM** **dad**

**2** also **Father** a priest in some Christian churches: *Do you know Father Vernon?*

—**fatherhood** /'fɑðə'hud/ noun the state of being a male parent

—**fatherly** adjective typical of a good father: *He gave me some fatherly advice before I left for college.*

**'father-in-law** noun plural **fathers-in-law** the father of your husband or wife

## **'Father's Day** noun

a day when people give cards and gifts to their fathers, on the third Sunday in June

## **fa-tigue** /fə'tig/ noun, formal

the state of being very tired: *Some of the men were sick from fatigue.*

—**fatigued** adjective, formal very tired

## **fat-ten** /'fætn/ also **fatten up** verb

to make a person or animal fatter: *My mom thinks I'm too thin, and she's always trying to fatten me up.*

## **fat-ty** /'fæti/ adjective

containing a lot of fat: *Too much fatty food is bad for you.*

## **fau-cet** /'fɔsɪt/ noun

the thing that you turn on and off to control the water coming from a pipe: *I filled my glass with water and turned off the faucet.*

→ See picture on page A9

## **fault** /fɔlt/ noun

**1** **be someone's fault** = if something bad is your fault, you caused it to happen: *It's my fault we're late – I thought the meeting started at 3:00.*

**2** something a little bad in someone's character: *I've always been lazy – it's one of my faults.*

**3** **be at fault** = to have caused something bad that has happened: *The report on the accident said the pilot was at fault.*

**4** a large crack in the rocks that form the Earth: *the San Andreas fault*

**5** **find fault with someone or something** = to criticize someone or something: *My English teacher is always finding fault with my work.*

—**faultless** adjective having no mistakes

## **fault-y** /'fɔlti/ adjective

not working correctly: *The accident happened because the truck had faulty brakes.*



**fa·vor<sup>1</sup>** /'feɪvər/ noun

**1** something helpful you do for someone: *Can you do me a favor and give me your notes from history class?*

**2** **be in favor of something** = to support or agree with something: *Most of the people at the meeting were in favor of the plan.*

**favor<sup>2</sup>** verb

to like someone or something better than other things, or to treat someone better than other people: *Mrs. Adams clearly favors her daughter and ignores her son.*

**fa·vor·able** /'feɪvərəbəl/ adjective, formal

**1** a favorable opinion, report, etc. shows that people think someone or something is good: *I've heard favorable reports about his work; all of his teachers say he does very well in school.*

**2** likely to make someone or something succeed: *The plants grow quickly in the favorable climate.*

—**favorably** adverb, formal in a way that shows you think someone or something is good: *Everyone reacted favorably to the plan, saying that they would be happy to help.*

**fa·vor·ite<sup>1</sup>** /'feɪvərɪt/ adjective

your favorite person or thing is the one you like most: *My favorite sport is baseball.*

**favorite<sup>2</sup>** noun

**someone's favorite** = something that someone likes more than any others: *I like all her books, but this one is my favorite.*

**fawn** /fɔːn/ noun

a young DEER

**fax** /fæks/ noun

**1** a copy of a document that is sent through a telephone line and then printed on paper: *I'll send you a fax with all the information that you need.*

**2** also **'fax ma,chine** a machine used for sending and receiving faxes: *Do you have a fax?*

—**fax** verb to send a fax: *Please fax me your report.*



**fear<sup>1</sup>** /fɪr/ noun

**1** the feeling you get when you are afraid: *His voice was full of fear. | She has a fear of heights (=she is afraid of being in high places).*

**2** something bad that you are worried could happen: *There are fears that hundreds of people may have been killed.*

**fear<sup>2</sup>** verb, formal

**1** to feel afraid or worried that something bad could happen: *His mother feared that something terrible must have happened to him.*

**2** to be afraid of someone or something: *Everyone feared her.*

**fear·ful** /'fɪrfəl/ adjective, formal

afraid: *Doctors are fearful of getting the disease because it passes so easily from person to person.*

—**fearfully** adverb

**fear·less** /'fɪrləs/ adjective

not afraid of anything: *a fearless soldier*

—**fearlessly** adverb

—**fearlessness** noun

**feast<sup>1</sup>** /fɪst/ noun

a large meal for many people: *a wedding feast*

**feast<sup>2</sup>** verb

**PHRASAL VERB**

**feast on something** formal

to eat a lot of food with great enjoyment: *We feasted on chicken, green beans, and potatoes.*

**feat** /fɪt/ noun, formal

an impressive achievement needing a lot of skill, effort, or strength: *The bridge took years to plan and build, and is an amazing feat of engineering.*

**feath·er** /'feðər/ noun

one of the light soft things that cover a bird's body: *a bird with beautiful green feathers*

**fea·ture<sup>1</sup>** /'fi:tʃər/ **Ac** noun

**1** an important, interesting, or typical part of something: *The cell phone has a lot of useful features, such as a camera and calendar.*

**2** a part of someone's face, for example his or her mouth and nose: *She loved his strong handsome features.*

**3** a piece of writing about a subject in a newspaper or a magazine, or a special report on television or on the radio: *There is*



a big feature on Tom Cruise in this week's magazine.

**feature<sup>2</sup>** verb

if something features a person or thing, that person or thing has an important part in it: *The movie features Julia Roberts (=she is the star in the movie).*

**Feb.ru.ar.y** /'febyu,eri/ noun, written abbreviation **Feb.**

the second month of the year: *My birthday is in February.*

**fed** /fed/ verb

the past tense and past participle of FEED

**fed.er.al** /'fedərəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

relating to the central government of a country which consists of several states: *federal law*

—**federally** adverb

**fed.er.a.tion** /,fedə'reɪʃən/ noun

an official group of organizations or states: *the U.S. Gymnastics Federation*

**fed 'up** adjective, informal

annoyed or bored, and wanting change: *I'm fed up with the way he treats me.*

**fee** /fi/ **[Ac]** noun

an amount of money that you pay to do something: *The trip to New York costs \$200 for food, transportation, and entrance fees to museums.* | *legal fees* (=money paid to a lawyer)

→ See Thesaurus box at **cost<sup>1</sup>**

**fee.ble** /'fibəl/ adjective, formal

**1** extremely weak: *"I don't feel very good," she said in a feeble voice.*

**2** not good or effective: *I made a feeble attempt to apologize, but I don't think she believed I meant it.*

—**feebly** adverb

—**feebleness** noun

**feed** /fid/ verb fed /fed/

**1** to give food to a person or animal: *Did you feed the dog?*

**2** if animals feed on something, they eat it: *Cows feed on grass.*

**3** to continuously put small amounts of something into another thing: *The numbers are fed into a computer and the computer calculates the answer.*

**feed.back** /'fidbæk/ noun

things people say about how good something is or how well someone has done

something: *People in the program have given us a lot of positive feedback (=feedback that shows they like it).*

**feel<sup>1</sup>** /fil/ verb felt /felt/

**1** to experience a physical feeling such as coldness or tiredness, or an emotion such as sadness or happiness: *She was feeling tired, and she wanted to go to bed.* | *I sometimes feel slight pain in my teeth.* | *"How do you feel?" "I feel a lot better today."*

**2** if something feels hot, cold, etc., it seems hot, cold, etc. when you touch it or are in it: *It feels very hot in here.*

**3** to touch something with your fingers in order to find out about it: *Feel my forehead.* *Does it seem hot to you?* | *He felt around for the light switch.*

**4** to notice something that is touching you: *She felt a bug crawling up her leg.*

**5** if you feel that something is true, you think that it is probably true: *He feels that the teacher treated him unfairly.*

**6 feel like (doing) something** = to want to do something or have something: *I feel like going out tonight – do you want to go to a movie?*

**7 feel free** = used when offering something to someone or when giving someone permission to do something: *Feel free to use my car.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**feel for someone**

to feel sympathy for someone: *I really felt for her when she said she had been crying all night.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **touch<sup>1</sup>**

**feel<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the feeling you have when you touch something: *The coat has a nice soft feel.*

**2** the ability to do something well, because you have a natural skill or because you have done it many times before: *He seems to have a real feel for baseball – he can hit and throw easily.*

**3 get a feel for something** = to become used to doing something or using something: *It's an easy camera to use, and you quickly get a feel for it.*

**feel.ing** /'fi:liŋ/ noun

**1** an emotion that you feel in your mind, such as happiness, excitement, or love:



There's always a great feeling of excitement before the race starts.

**2** something you feel in your body, such as pain or cold, or the ability to feel things in your body: *He has no feeling in his legs.*

**3** a belief or opinion about something: *My feeling is that he did not steal the money.*

SYNONYM **opinion**

**4 someone's feelings** = the way someone feels at a particular time, for example whether he or she feels sad, happy, etc.: *She says mean things to me, because she doesn't care about my feelings. | I didn't want to hurt her feelings (=make her feel upset or sad).*

**feet** /fit/ *noun*

the plural of FOOT

**fe-line** /'filain/ *adjective, formal*  
relating to cats

**fell<sup>1</sup>** /fel/ *verb*

the past tense of FALL

**fell<sup>2</sup>** *verb, formal*

to cut down a tree

**fel-low<sup>1</sup>** /'felou/ *adjective*

**fellow workers/students/citizens, etc.** = the people you work with, study with, live with, etc.

**fellow<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

an old-fashioned word for a man

**fel-o-ny** /'feləni/ *noun* plural **felonies**  
*formal*

a serious crime such as murder: *They charged him with two felonies, murder and arson (=deliberately burning a building).*

**felt<sup>1</sup>** /felt/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of FEEL

**felt<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a thick soft material made of wool, hair, or fur that has been pressed flat: *A piece of felt inside the hat makes it feel softer.*

**felt tip 'pen** *noun*

a pen that has a hard piece of felt at the end that the ink comes through.

**fe-male<sup>1</sup>** /'fimeɪl/ *noun*

a girl or woman, or an animal that belongs to the sex that can have babies or produce eggs: *The female is brown in color, but the male is red.* ANTONYM **male**

**female<sup>2</sup>** *adjective*

belonging to the sex that can have babies or produce eggs: *A female horse carries her*

*baby for about 340 days before it is born.*

ANTONYM **male**

**fem-i-nine** /'feməni/ *adjective*

having qualities that are considered to be typical of women: *Most people think of pink as a feminine color.* ANTONYM **masculine**

—**femininity** /,femə'nɪnəti/ *noun* the quality of being feminine

**fem-i-nism** /'femə,nɪzəm/ *noun*

the belief that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men

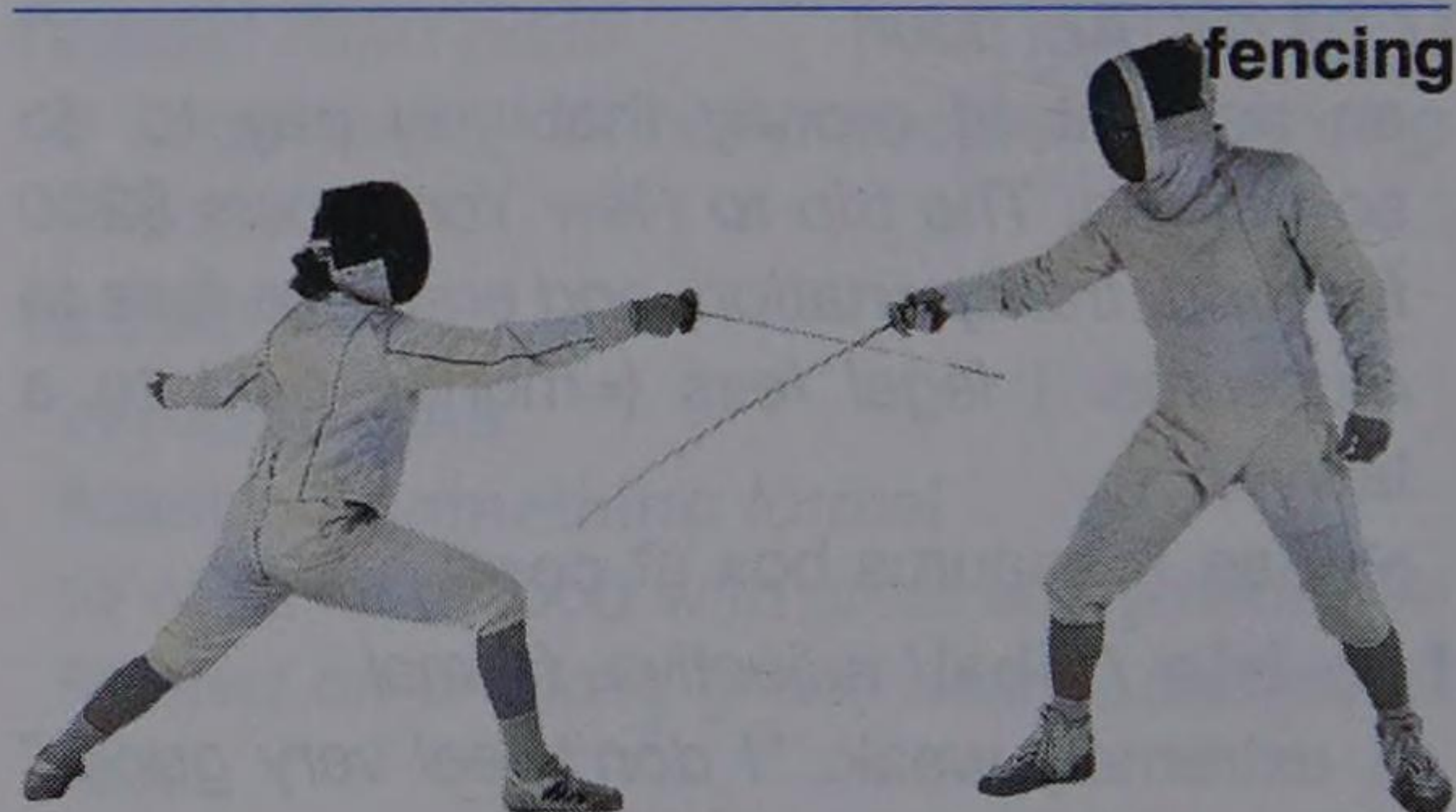
—**feminist** *noun* someone who believes strongly that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men

—**feminist** *adjective* relating to feminism

**fence** /fens/ *noun*

**1** a structure made of wood, metal, etc. that surrounds a piece of land and keeps people or animals in or out: *There is a high fence all around the prison.*

**2 on the fence** *informal* = trying to avoid saying which side of an argument you agree with: *I wish she'd stop sitting on the fence and tell me what she really thinks!*



**fenc-ing** /'fensiŋ/ *noun*

a sport in which two people fight each other with light thin swords

**fend-er** /'fendə/ *noun*

the side part of a car that covers the wheels: *There was a scratch on the rear left fender of the car.*

→ See picture at **bicycle**

**fern** /fə'n/ *noun*

a plant with green leaves shaped like large feathers and no flowers

**fe-ro-cious** /fə'rouʃəs/ *adjective, formal*  
extremely violent or severe: *Tigers are ferocious hunters, but they do not usually kill humans. | A ferocious storm damaged the roads in the area.*

—**ferociously** *adverb*



—**ferocity** /fə'rasəti/ *noun* the quality of being ferocious

**Fer·ris wheel** /'ferɪs wɪl/ *noun*

a big wheel with chairs that go up into the air for people to ride on at an AMUSEMENT PARK

**fer·ry** /'feri/ *noun* plural **ferries**

a boat that carries people and cars across an area of water: *When we were in New York, we took the ferry from Manhattan to Staten Island.*

→ See picture on page A26

**fer·tile** /'fətl/ *adjective*

**1** able to produce good crops: *The land next to the river is very fertile.*

**2** able to produce children: *The test showed that she was still fertile, so they decided to try to have a baby.*

—**fertility** /fə'tɪləti/ *noun* the state of being fertile

**fer·til·iz·er** /'fətl,aɪzə/ *noun*

a substance that is put on the soil to help plants grow: *Waste from farm animals is often used as fertilizer.*

—**fertilize** *verb* to add substances to the soil to make plants grow: *Fertilize the seeds after you plant them.*

**fes·ti·val** /'festəvəl/ *noun*

**1** a special occasion when people celebrate something: *There will be food, music, and dancing at the festival.*

**2** an event at which many films, plays, pieces of music, etc. are shown or performed: *the Cannes film festival*

**fes·tive** /'festɪv/ *adjective, formal*

happy or relating to celebrations: *We usually drink wine on festive occasions.*

**fetch** /fetʃ/ *verb*

to go and get something and bring it back: *The dog fetched the stick from behind the bushes.*

**fe·tus** /'fitəs/ *noun*

a baby before it is born: *Smoking can cause damage to the fetus.*

**feud** /fyud/ *noun*

an angry argument between two people or groups that continues for a long time: *There was a violent feud between the two families, and two of the brothers killed each other.*

—**feud** *verb* to have a feud with someone

**fe·ver** /'fivə/ *noun*

an illness in which you have a very high temperature: *She feels very hot – I think she has a fever.*

—**feverish** *adjective* having a fever

→ **hay fever**

**few** /fyu/ *pronoun, adjective*

**1 a few** = a small number of things or people: *I only had a few coins in my pocket. "How many people know about this?" "Only a few."*

**2** not many: *There are few things as exciting as traveling to a new place on vacation.*

#### GRAMMAR: few

##### fewer, less

Use **fewer** before nouns whose form shows that there is more than one: *There were fewer cars on the roads in the 1950s. Fewer people were in the class than I expected.*

Use **less** before nouns that are things you cannot count: *There is less water in this cup than in that one. This book has less information than the other one.*

**3 quite a few** = a fairly large number of people or things: *Quite a few people came to the meeting.*

**4 be few and far between** = to be rare: *Good jobs are few and far between these days.*

**fi·an·cé** /,fian'seɪ/ *noun*

a man who has agreed to marry a particular woman: *This is my fiancé, Ted.*

**fi·an·cée** /,fian'seɪ/ *noun*

a woman who has agreed to marry a particular man: *Ron and his fiancée were at the party.*

**fi·as·co** /fi'æskəʊ/ *noun* plural **fiascoes** or **fiascos**

an event that is not successful at all, in a way that is very embarrassing or disappointing: *The food was burnt, the ice cream had all melted, so the whole dinner was a complete fiasco.*

**fib** /fɪb/ *noun, informal*

a small, unimportant lie: *You shouldn't tell fibs because then people won't believe you when you tell the truth.* **ANTONYM** the truth



—**fib** verb, informal to tell a small lie to someone **SYNONYM** lie

→ See Thesaurus box at **lie**<sup>2</sup>

**fi·ber** /'faɪbə/ noun

**1** parts of plants that you eat but do not DIGEST, that help food to move through your body: *My doctor says that I need to eat more fiber.*

**2** a mass of threads used to make rope, cloth, etc.: *The dress is made from some kind of artificial fiber.*

**fic·tion** /'fɪkʃən/ noun

**1** books and stories about imaginary people and things: *He wrote fiction for children.*

**ANTONYM** nonfiction

**2** formal something that is not true: *The singer says that the newspaper stories about her are complete fiction.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **book**<sup>1</sup>

**fid·dle**<sup>1</sup> /'fɪdl/ noun, informal

a VIOLIN

**fiddle**<sup>2</sup> verb

to keep moving and touching something because you are bored or nervous: *She stopped listening and started fiddling with her hair.*

**fidg·et** /'fɪdʒɪt/ verb

to keep moving your hands or feet because you are bored or nervous: *The children started fidgeting in their seats because they were bored.*

**field** /fild/ noun

**1** an area of land in the country where crops are grown or animals feed on grass: *There were fields of wheat for mile after mile.*

**2** an area of ground where sports are played: *a baseball field* | *The team ran out on the field.*

**3** a subject that people study or a type of work that they are involved in: *Professor Kramer is an expert in the field of biology.*

**4** **oil/gas/coal field** = an area where there is a lot of oil, gas, or coal under the ground

**'field trip** noun

an occasion when students go somewhere to learn about a particular subject

**fierce** /fɪrs/ adjective

**1** a fierce person or animal looks very violent or angry and ready to attack: *The house was guarded by a fierce dog.*

**2** involving a lot of energy and strong feelings: *The two football teams are in a fierce battle for first place.*

**3** fierce heat, cold, weather, etc. is very extreme or severe: *The heat was fierce, so we stayed inside where it was cool.*

—**fiercely** adverb

—**fierceness** noun

**fi·er·y** /'faɪəri/ adjective

**1** full of strong or angry emotion: *She had a fiery way of speaking that got our attention.*

**2** very bright and with a lot of red or yellow colors, like a fire: *a fiery sunset*

**3** burning with a lot of flames: *The plane was destroyed in a fiery crash.*

**fi·es·ta** /fi'estə/ noun

a party or religious holiday with dancing, music, etc., in places where people who speak Spanish live: *At fiesta time the streets are full of people singing and dancing.*

**fif·teen** /,fɪf'tɪn/ number

**1** 15: *There are fifteen steps up to the second floor.*

**2** fifteen years old: *Her brother's fifteen.*

—**fifteenth** /,fɪf'tɪnθ/ number 15th or 1/15

**fifth** /fɪfθ/ number

**1** 5th

**2** 1/5

**fif·ty** /'fɪfti/ number

**1** 50

**2** **the fifties a)** also **the '50s** the years between 1950 and 1959: *The city was built in the fifties.* **b)** also **the 50s** the numbers between 50 and 59 especially when used for measuring temperature: *The temperature was in the fifties and it was raining.*

**3** **be in your fifties** = to be between 50 and 59 years old: *My mother is in her fifties.*

—**fiftieth** /'fɪftiθ/ number 50th or 1/50

**fig** /fɪg/ noun

a small soft sweet fruit with red-brown flesh that is often eaten dried

→ See picture on page A13

**fig.**

the written abbreviation of **figure** (=a numbered drawing in a book): *See fig. 3.1 on page 45.*

**fight**<sup>1</sup> /faɪt/ verb fought /fɔ:t/

**1** to use physical force or weapons to try to hurt someone: *The men were fighting*



outside the bar, and one of them pulled out a knife. | My father fought in the Vietnam war.

**2** to argue: My parents were always fighting with each other.

**3** to try hard to do or get something: Parents and teachers are fighting to keep the school open.

**4** to try hard to stop something: Martin Luther King spent his whole life fighting against racism.

#### PHRASAL VERB

#### fight back

**1** to try hard to win when you are losing: Lewis fought back to win the match.

**2** to begin arguing or fighting with someone who attacks or insults you, instead of doing nothing: If they say mean things to you, don't just stand there – fight back!

**3** to try hard not to have or show a feeling: She fought back her tears.

→ See Thesaurus box at **argue**

#### fight<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a situation in which two people or groups attack each other and try to hurt each other using physical force: I got into a fight with another boy, and he hit me in the face.

**2** an argument: My family often has fights about money.

**3** the process of trying very hard to achieve something or prevent something: The country had a long fight for independence.

#### fight·er /'faɪtə/ noun

**1** someone who continues to try to do something although it is difficult: She has cancer, but she's a fighter and I know she'll get better.

**2** someone who fights as a sport **SYNONYM** boxer

**3** also **fighter plane** a small fast military airplane that can destroy other airplanes

#### fig·u·ra·tive /'fɪgʊərətɪv/ adjective

a figurative word or expression is used in a different way from its usual meaning, to give you a picture or idea in your mind: "A mountain of debt" is a figurative way of saying "a large amount of debt."

—**figuratively** adverb

#### fig·ure<sup>1</sup> /'fɪgʊə/ noun

**1** a number or amount: the company's sales figures (=the numbers that tell how much of a product they sold)

**2** an important or famous person: Thomas

Jefferson was one of the most important figures in American history.

**3** the shape of a woman's body: My sister has a great figure.

**4** the shape of a person that is difficult to see: I could see a dark figure in the distance, but I couldn't see who it was.

**5** a shape in mathematics: a six-sided figure

**6** written abbreviation **fig.** a numbered drawing in a book: See also Figure 2.1, page 20.

#### figure<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to think that something is likely to be true after thinking about a situation: We figured that you might need some help, so we came.

**2** **that figures/it figures** informal = used when you are not surprised or disappointed, because a situation is the way you expected it to be: "He says that he needs more money to pay for college." "That figures!"

#### PHRASAL VERBS

#### figure on something informal

to expect something or include it in your plans: "How much do you want to pay for the car?" "We figured on paying about \$5,000."

#### figure out

**1** **figure someone or something out** = to understand someone or something: I still can't figure out why she lied to me.

**2** **figure something out** = to find an answer to a problem: Let's figure out a way to help her.

→ See Thesaurus box at **think**

#### 'figure ,skating noun

a type of skating (SKATE) in which you move in patterns on the ice

—**figure skater** noun someone who does this type of skating

#### file<sup>1</sup> /faɪl/ **Ac** noun

**1** a set of papers, records, etc. that contain information about a particular person or subject: The school keeps files on each student.

**2** a box or folded piece of heavy paper in which you keep loose papers: She took a paper from a file that was marked "2006 Taxes."

**3** information on a computer that is stored under a particular name: I pushed the wrong button and accidentally deleted the file.

**4** a metal tool with a rough surface that you rub on something to make it smooth: Use a nail file to make your nails less rough.



**5 in single file** = moving in a line, with one person behind another: *They walked into the room in single file.*

→ See picture on page A18

## **file**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to store papers or information in a particular order or a particular place: *The papers are filed in alphabetical order.*

**2** to ask for something to be dealt with by a court of law or other official organization: *They have filed a complaint with the company, saying that the company charged them too much money.*

**3** to walk in a line of people, one behind another: *The students filed out of the classroom.*

**4** to make something smooth by rubbing it with a special tool: *She was busy filing her nails.*

## **'file ,cabinet** noun

a tall piece of furniture with drawers in which you store pieces of paper

→ See picture on page A18

## **fil·et** /fɪ'leɪ/ noun

another spelling of FILLET

## **fill** /fɪl/ verb

**1** also **fill up** to put something in a container or space so that it becomes full: *She filled the bowls with soup.*

**2** also **fill up** to become full of something: *Smoke filled the room. | Her eyes filled with tears.*

### PHRASAL VERBS

#### **fill in**

**1 fill something in** = to write something in a space on a piece of paper: *Fill in the blanks in these sentences.*

**2 fill someone in** = to tell someone about things that have happened recently: *I'll fill you in on all the news later.*

**3** to do someone's job because he or she is not there: *Could you fill in for Bob while he's sick?*

#### **fill something out**

to write the necessary information on an official piece of paper: *You have to fill out this form.* **SYNONYM** complete

## **fil·let** also **filet** /fɪ'leɪ/ noun

a piece of meat or fish without bones: a salmon fillet

## **fill·ing** /'fɪlɪŋ/ noun

**1** a small amount of metal that a DENTIST puts into a hole in your tooth: *He had a gold filling.*

**2** the food that you put in a PIE, SANDWICH, etc.

## **film**<sup>1</sup> /fɪlm/ noun

**1** the material that you put in a camera: *I used six rolls of film while I was on vacation.*

**2** a movie: *"Brokeback Mountain" is a great film.*

**3 formal** a very thin layer of liquid or powder: *A thin film of grease covered everything in the kitchen.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

## **film**<sup>2</sup> verb

to use a camera to make a movie or a television program: *He is currently filming an action movie.*

—**filmmaker** noun someone who makes movies

## **fil·ter**<sup>1</sup> /'fɪltə/ noun

something that you put a gas or liquid through in order to remove unwanted substances: *The water filter cleans chemicals and other dangerous things out of the water you drink.*

## **filter**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to clean a liquid or gas using a filter: *Filter the water until it is clear.*

**2 formal** if light filters into a place, only some of it comes in: *Sunshine filtered through the curtains.*

## **filth** /fɪlθ/ noun, formal

a lot of dirt: *Look at the filth in this place – it's disgusting!*

## **filth·y** /'fɪlθi/ adjective **filthier, filthiest**

very dirty: *I didn't want to go into the bathroom because it was filthy.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **dirty**

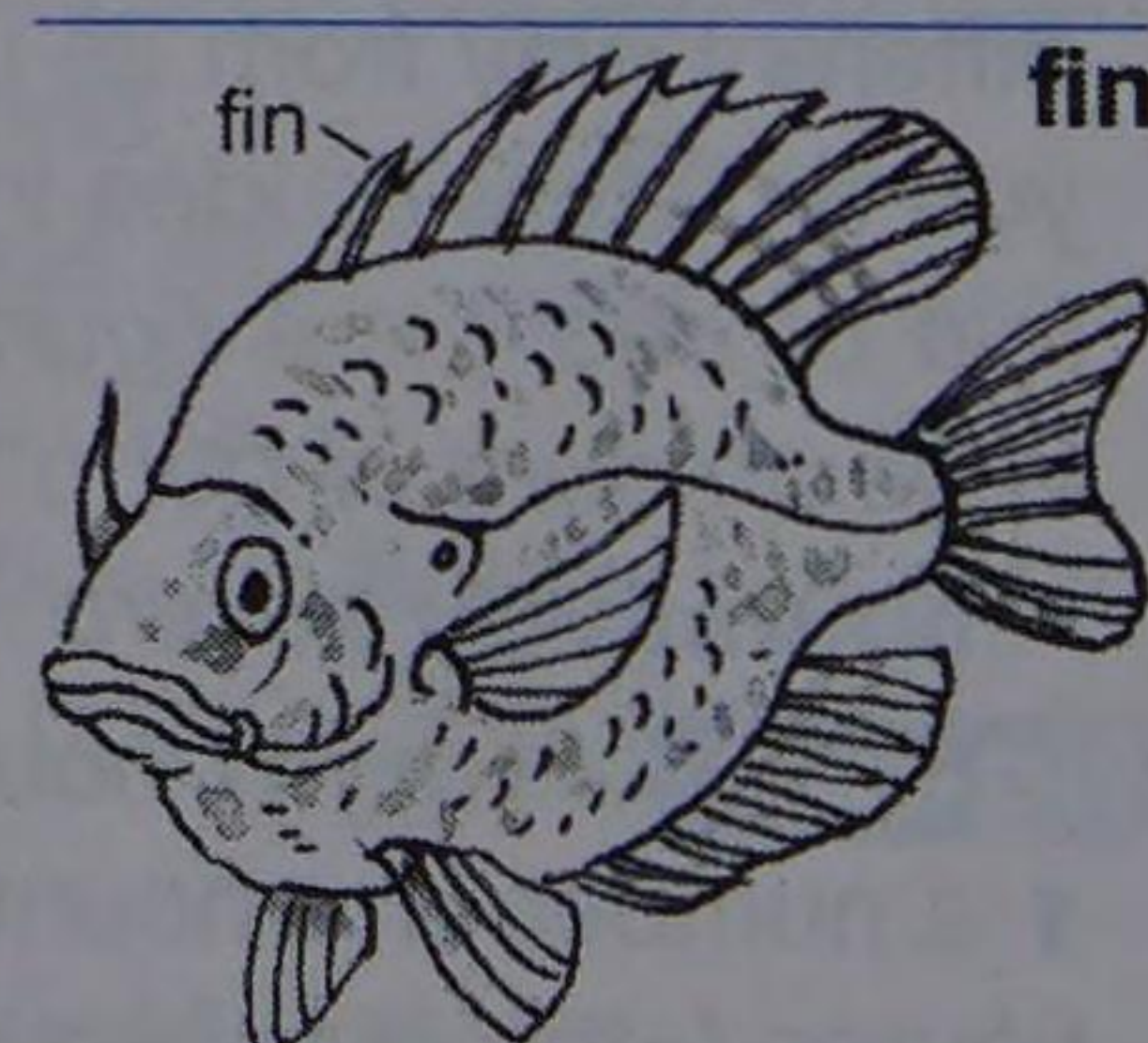
## **fin** /fɪn/ noun

one of the flat parts of a fish's body that it uses to swim

## **fi·nal**<sup>1</sup> /'faɪnəl/ **Ac** adjective

**1** last: *The final page of the book was missing.*

**2** if a decision or offer is final, it cannot be





changed: *You don't have to make a final decision yet.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **final** adjective
- **final** noun
- **finally** adverb
- **finalist** noun
- **semifinal** noun

**final**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** the last and most important game, race, or stage in a competition: *The team is very excited to have reached the finals.*

**2** an important test that students take at the end of a SEMESTER: *How did your finals go?*  
—**finalist** noun someone who is in the final of a competition

**fi·nal·ly** /'faɪn-l-i/ **Ac** adverb

**1** after a long time: *I finally read that book you gave me last year.*

**2** used before saying the last of a series of things: *And finally, I'd like to thank my teachers for all the help they gave me.*

**fi·nance**<sup>1</sup> /fə'neɪns/ **Ac** noun

the control of money, especially for a company or a government: *She's an accountant in the Finance Department.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **finance** noun
- **finance** verb
- **financial** adjective
- **financially** adverb

**finance**<sup>2</sup> verb

to provide a lot of money to pay for something: *Who will finance the project?*

**fi·nanc·es** /fə'neɪnsɪz/ **Ac** plural noun

the money that a person or organization has, and how it is organized: *The company's finances were a mess, so they hired an accountant.*

**fi·nan·cial** /fə'neɪnʃəl/ **Ac** adjective

relating to money: *He has financial problems and is looking for a second job.*

—**financially** adverb: *My parents support me financially (=give me the money I need to live).*

**find** /faɪnd/ verb found /faʊnd/

**1** to see or get something that you have been looking for, or that someone has lost: *I*

*can't find my keys. | Have you found a job yet? | He found a dollar bill on the street.*

**THESAURUS: find**

**discover** to find something that was hidden or that people did not know about before: *Scientists have discovered a new type of dinosaur.*

**trace** formal to find someone or something that has disappeared: *The police are trying to trace a man who was seen near the house that night.*

**locate** formal to find the place where something is: *We couldn't locate the source of the radio signal (=we couldn't find where the radio signal was coming from).*

**track someone/something down** to find someone or something after searching in different places: *Detectives finally tracked her down in California.*

**2** to learn new information as a result of tests or experience: *Researchers have found that people who have pets stay healthier.*

**3** to have an opinion about someone or something: *Do you find him attractive (=do you think he is attractive)? | I found it difficult to understand her (=it was difficult for me to understand her).*

**4 be found somewhere** = to live or exist somewhere: *This type of bear is found only in China.*

**5 find your way (somewhere)** = to arrive at a place without being told how to get there: *I found my way home using a map.*

**6 find someone guilty/not guilty** formal = to officially decide that someone is guilty or not guilty of a crime: *He was found guilty of murder.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**find out something**

to get knowledge of a fact: *I'll find out what time the movie starts. | If Dad ever finds out about this, he'll be really mad.*

**fine**<sup>1</sup> /faɪn/ adjective

**1** good enough or acceptable: *Your work is fine. | "I'll give the book back to you tomorrow." "That's fine." SYNONYM okay, all right*

**2** healthy and happy: *"How are you?" "Fine, thanks."*

**3** very thin, or made of very small pieces: *a fine layer of dust*



**4** formal very good: *It's a fine school.*

—**fine** adverb in an acceptable way: *The equipment is working fine.*

—**finely** adverb into very small pieces: *finely chopped onion*

→ See Thesaurus box at **healthy**

**fine<sup>2</sup>** noun

money that you have to pay as a punishment for breaking a law or rule: *The company had to pay a fine of \$500,000 for polluting the river.*

**fine<sup>3</sup>** verb

to make someone pay money as a punishment: *He was fined \$50 for driving too fast.*

**fin·ger** /'fɪŋgə/ noun

**1** one of the long parts at the end of your hand: *He pointed his finger at the house.*

→ **index finger**

**2** **keep/have your fingers crossed** = to hope that something will happen the way you want: *We get our grades today, so I'm keeping my fingers crossed that I get an "A."*

→ See picture at **hand<sup>1</sup>**

**fin·ger·nail** /'fɪŋgə,neɪl/ noun

the hard flat part at the end of your finger: *She bit her fingernails.*

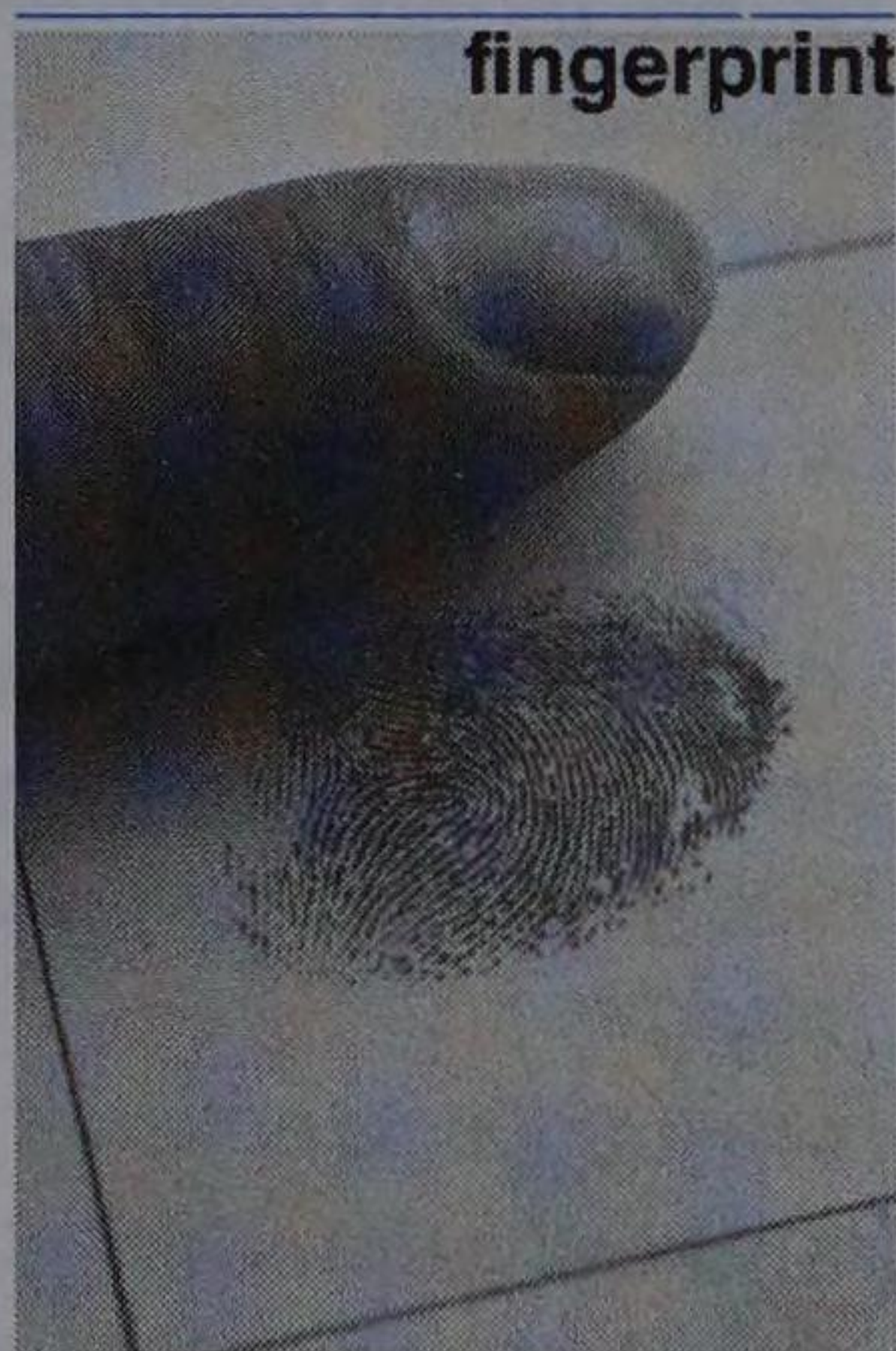
→ See picture at **hand<sup>1</sup>**

**fin·ger·print**

/'fɪŋgə,prɪnt/ noun  
a mark that a finger makes which shows a pattern of lines: *Did the person who stole the money leave any fingerprints?*

**fin·ger·tip**

/'fɪŋgə,tɪp/ noun  
the end of a finger: *She touched the flower with her fingertips.*



**fin·ish<sup>1</sup>** /'fɪnɪʃ/ verb

**1** to come to the end of doing or making something: *Have you finished your homework?* | *Everyone applauded when she finished speaking.* | *She finished second (=came second) in the race.* **ANTONYM** **start, begin**

**2** also **finish off** to eat or drink the rest of something: *Who finished off the cake?*

**finish<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** the end of an event: *The race had an exciting finish.* | *I enjoyed the show from start to finish.*

**2** the way that the surface of an object looks: *The table had a shiny finish.*

**fin·ished** /'fɪnɪʃt/ adjective

**1** if you are finished, you have come to the end of doing something: *I waited until he was finished talking, and then I spoke.*

**SYNONYM** **done**

**2** **be finished with something** = to no longer need to use something: *Are you finished with the scissors?* **SYNONYM** **done**

→ See Thesaurus box at **done<sup>2</sup>**

**'finish line** noun

the line that you cross at the end of a race: *The winner is the first person who crosses the finish line.*

**fi·nite** /'faɪnɪt/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal  
something that is finite is a particular size or will not last forever: *There is a finite amount of oil in the ground.* **ANTONYM** **infinite**

**fir** /fɜː/ noun

a tree with leaves shaped like needles that do not fall off in winter: *Our Christmas tree is a fir.*

**fire<sup>1</sup>** /faɪə/ noun

**1** flames and heat that burn things: *a forest fire* | *The fence caught fire (=started to burn).* | *The house is on fire (=burning)! They put out the fire (=stopped it from burning) with buckets of water.* | *He set fire to his ex-wife's house (=made it burn).*

**THESAURUS: fire**

**flame** the bright part of a fire that you see burning in the air: *a candle flame*

**in flames** burning very strongly: *The whole house was in flames.*

**blaze** the flames from a fire, or a large and dangerous fire: *Firemen fought to keep the blaze under control.*

**2** a pile of burning wood or coal that provides heat: *She lit the fire.*

**3** shooting with guns: *The soldiers opened fire on the crowd (=started shooting at the crowd).*

**fire<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to make someone leave his or her job: *She was fired from her job for being late.*



**2** to use a gun: *Someone fired a shot. | He fired at the car.*

**'fire a,larm** *noun*

a piece of equipment that makes a loud noise to warn people of a fire in a building: *We all left the building when the fire alarm went off (=made a noise).*

**fire·crack·er** /'faɪə,kɹækə/ *noun*

a small FIREWORK that explodes loudly

**'fire de,partment** *noun*

an organization whose job is to stop fires: *The person who noticed the fire called the fire department.*

**'fire drill** *noun*

an occasion when people practice how to leave a building safely if there is a fire

**'fire ,engine** *noun*

a large vehicle that carries people and equipment to stop fires

→ See picture on page A26

**'fire es,cape** *noun*

metal stairs on the outside of a building that people can use to escape from a fire

**'fire ex,tinguisher** *noun*

a metal container with water or chemicals in it, used for stopping small fires

**fire·fight·er** /'faɪə,faitə/ *noun*

someone whose job is to stop fires

→ See picture on page A16

**fire·house** /'faɪə,haʊs/ *noun*

a small FIRE STATION

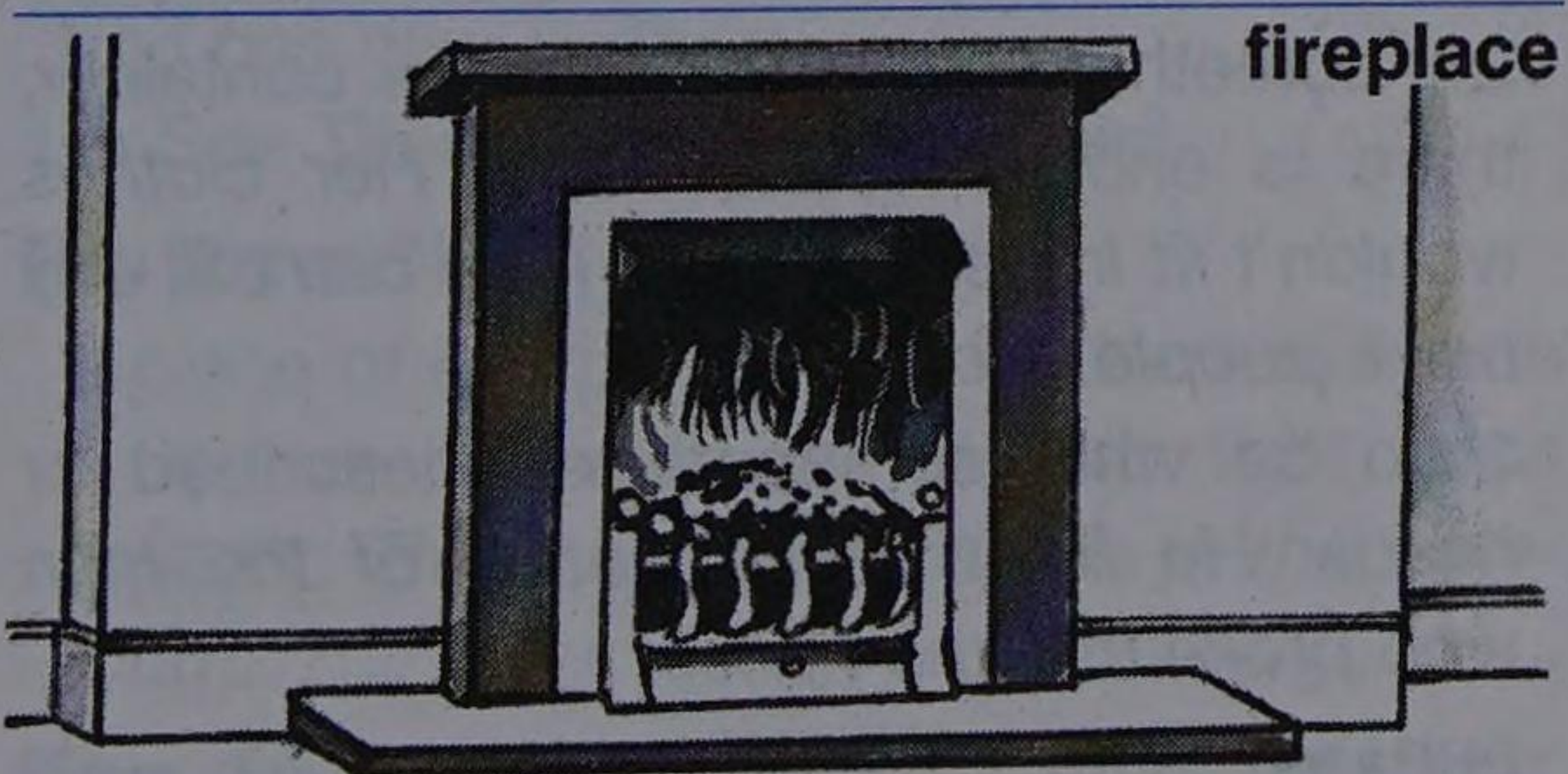
**fire hydrant** /'faɪə ,haɪdrənt/ *noun*

a metal object in the street, from which FIREFIGHTERS can get water to stop fires

**fire·man** /'faɪə,mən/ *noun* plural **firemen**

/'faɪə,mən/

a man whose job is to stop fires



**fire·place** /'faɪə,pleɪs/ *noun*

an open place in the wall of a room where you can have a fire: *A fire was burning in the fireplace.*

**fire·proof** /'faɪə,prʊf/ *adjective*

something that is fireproof cannot be damaged by fire: *They keep their records in a fireproof file cabinet.*

**'fire ,station** *noun*

a building where FIREFIGHTERS and their vehicles stay until they are needed

**fire·wood** /'faɪə,wʊd/ *noun*

wood for burning on a fire: *We gathered firewood and then made a fire.*

**fire·works** /'faɪə,wɜːks/ *plural noun*

objects that explode and make bright lights in the sky, which people use to celebrate special days: *People were watching the 4th of July fireworks display (=show of fireworks exploding).*

**firm<sup>1</sup>** /fɜːm/ *adjective*

**1** something that is firm does not bend much when you press it: *I need a firm bed to sleep on – mine is too soft.* **ANTONYM** **soft**

**2** definite, strong, and not likely to change: a firm decision | *I'm a firm believer in getting lots of exercise (=I believe strongly that exercise is important).*

**3** strong and in control: *You need to be firm with children or they won't behave.*

**4** holding something strongly: *I kept a firm grip on my purse so that nobody would steal it.*

—**firmly** *adverb*: *She told him firmly that he must wait.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **company, hard<sup>1</sup>**

**firm<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a business or small company: *a law firm*

**first<sup>1</sup>** /fɜːst/ *number, pronoun*

**1** coming before the other things or people: *I've only read the first chapter of the book. | The first time I flew on a plane, I was really nervous. | The second week of our vacation was better than the first.*

**2 at first** = in the beginning, before there is a change: *At first I thought he was weird, but now I really like him.*

**3 in the first place** = at the beginning of something that happened: *Don't blame me – it was your idea in the first place.*

**4 first thing** = as soon as you get out of bed: *I'll call him first thing in the morning when I wake up.*

**5 at first glance** = the first time you look at something, when you do not notice details:



At first glance, it looked like there was no damage to the car, but then I saw a small dent in the door.

**first<sup>2</sup>** adverb

**1** before the other things or people: *Andy arrived at the house first.* | *First of all, choose a subject to write about (=do this first).*

**2** before doing something: *I'd like to come over, but I have to finish my homework first.*

**3** for the first time: *I first heard this story when I was a child.*

**first<sup>3</sup>** noun

a **first** = something that has never happened before: *"Dad actually washed the dishes tonight."* *"That's a first."*

**first 'aid** noun

simple medical treatment that you give quickly to someone who is injured or sick: a *first aid kit* (=a container with medicine and other things you can use for giving first aid)

**first-'class** adjective

of the best kind: *It's a first-class hotel with beautiful rooms and a great restaurant.*

—**first class** adverb if you travel first class, you travel in one of the best seats: *He always flies first class.*

**first 'floor** noun

the part of a building that is on the same level as the ground: *Her office is on the first floor of the building.* **SYNONYM** ground floor

**first-gene'ration** adjective

**first-generation American/Canadian, etc.** = an American, Canadian, etc. whose parents came to live in America, Canada, etc. from another country

**first 'lady** noun

the wife of the president of the U.S.: *The first lady will give a speech about education.*

**first·ly** /'fɜːstli/ adverb, formal

used before saying the first of several things: *Firstly, I would like to thank everyone for coming.*

**'first name** noun

the first of your names that your parents choose for you: *Mrs. Green's first name is Caroline.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **name<sup>1</sup>**

**first 'person** noun

**the first person** = "I" and "we", and the verb forms you use with them: *Tell a story in the first person* (=using "I" or "we").

**first-'rate** adjective, formal

extremely good: *She is a first-rate writer whose books have won many awards.*

**fish<sup>1</sup>** /fɪʃ/ noun plural **fish** or **fishes**

an animal without legs that lives in water, or the meat of this animal: *How many fish did you catch?* | *We had fish for dinner.*

**fish<sup>2</sup>** verb

to try to catch fish: *Dad's fishing for trout.*

—**fishing** noun the activity of trying to catch fish: *Let's go fishing this weekend.*

**fish and 'chips** noun

fish cooked in oil, and FRIES

**fish·bowl** /'fɪʃbəʊl/ noun

a round glass container that you keep pet fish in

**fish·er·man** /'fɪʃəmən/ noun plural

**fishermen** /fɪʃəmən/

a man who catches fish as a job or a sport

**'fishing ,rod** noun

a long stick with a long string at the end, used for catching fish

**'fish stick** noun

a long piece of fish covered in little pieces of bread

**fish·y** /'fɪʃi/ adjective

**1** informal seeming bad or dishonest: *There was something fishy about his story, and I didn't trust him.*

**2** tasting or smelling like fish

**fist** /fɪst/ noun

a hand with the fingers closed tightly together: *He hit me with his fist.*

**fit<sup>1</sup>** /fɪt/ verb fit, fitting

**1** to be the right size and shape for someone or something: *My old jeans still fit me.* | *This lid doesn't fit very well on the container.*

**2** if something fits into a place or container, there is enough space for it: *Her clothes wouldn't fit in her suitcase.* | *We can't fit any more people into the car.*

**3** to be what someone has described or needs: *He fits the description of the man who broke into the house.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**fit in**

to be accepted by the other people in a group: *She hoped she would fit in at her new school.*



**fit<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**1** healthy and strong: *I run because I want to be physically fit.* **ANTONYM** unfit

**2** good enough for someone or something: *He is not fit to be a teacher.* **ANTONYM** unfit

**fit<sup>3</sup>** noun

**1** **have/throw a fit** informal = to become very angry and shout a lot: *Mom's going to have a fit when she sees that you broke this.*

**2** a short period of time when you are sick, angry, crazy, etc. and cannot control yourself: *a coughing fit* | *In a fit of rage, he kicked the TV.*

**3** **be a good/perfect fit** = to fit well or be suitable: *The skirt was a perfect fit, so I bought it.*

**fit-ness** /'fɪtnəs/ noun

the condition of being healthy and strong: *You should try running to improve your fitness.*

**five<sup>1</sup>** /faɪv/ number

**1** 5: *There are five apples left in the bag.*

**2** five O'CLOCK

**3** five years old: *You can't start kindergarten till you're five.*

**five<sup>2</sup>** noun

a piece of paper money worth \$5: *I paid with a five.*

**fix** /fiks/ verb

**1** to repair something: *I fixed your bike.*

**2** to prepare a meal or drink: *Mom was fixing dinner in the kitchen.* **SYNONYM** make

**3** to decide on an exact time, place, etc.: *Have you fixed a date for the wedding?*

**PHRASAL VERB****fix something up**

to decorate or repair a room or building: *We fixed up the guest bedroom, so now it's blue and has new curtains.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **repair<sup>2</sup>**

**fix-ture** /'fɪkstʃə/ noun

a piece of equipment that is attached inside a house, such as an electric light or a FAUCET: *There are new fixtures in the bathroom.*

**fizz** /fɪz/ noun

the BUBBLES of gas in some types of drinks: *The soda has lost its fizz.*

—**fizz** verb if a liquid fizzes, the gas in it comes out

—**fizzy** adjective a fizzy drink has bubbles of gas in it

→ See picture on page A22

**flab-by** /'flæbi/ adjective, informal

if a part of your body is flabby, it has soft loose fat: *a fat woman with flabby arms*

—**flab** noun, informal soft loose fat on a person's body

**flag** /flæg/ noun

a piece of cloth with a picture or pattern on it that is used as a symbol or a signal: *The American flag is red, white, and blue.*

**flag-pole** /'flægpəʊl/ noun

a tall pole for a flag

**flair** /fler/ noun, formal

a natural ability to do something very well: *He has a flair for learning foreign languages – he can speak six of them well.*

**flake** /fleɪk/ noun

**1** a flat thin piece that has broken off something: *The paint was coming off the door in flakes.*

**2** informal someone who does not do what he or she says he will do: *Carla is such a flake, she'll probably forget that the party's tonight.*

**flak-y** /'fleɪki/ adjective

**1** easily breaking into flat thin pieces: *flaky pastry*

**2** informal someone who is flaky easily forgets things or does strange things

**flame** /fleɪm/ noun

**1** hot bright gas that you see when something is burning: *a candle flame*

**2** **in flames** = burning strongly: *The house was in flames and the firefighters were still not there.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fire<sup>1</sup>**

**fla-min-go** /flə'mɪŋɡoʊ/ noun plural

**flamingos** or **flamingoes**

a tall pink water bird with long thin legs and a long curved neck

**flam-ma-ble** /'flæməbəl/ adjective, formal

something that is flammable burns very easily: *Gasoline is a flammable liquid.*

**flan-nel** /'flænl/ noun

soft cotton or wool cloth used for making warm clothes: *It was cold, so he put on a flannel shirt.*



**flap**<sup>1</sup> /flæp/ verb flapped, flapping

**1** if a bird flaps its wings, it moves them up and down: *The bird flapped its wings and flew away.*

**2** if a piece of cloth, paper, etc. flaps, it moves in one direction and then the other: *The ship's sails flapped in the wind.*

**flap**<sup>2</sup> noun

a thin flat piece of cloth, paper, etc. that is attached at one side to something: *He licked the flap of the envelope and closed it.*

**flare**<sup>1</sup> /fler/ also **flare up** verb

to suddenly begin to burn very brightly: *The fire flared up, and we could see the people around us for a minute.*

**flare**<sup>2</sup> noun

an object that burns with a very bright light that you use as a signal: *Police had lit warning flares along the highway near the accident.*

**flared** /flerd/ adjective

flared pants or skirts are wider toward the bottom

**flash**<sup>1</sup> /flæʃ/ verb

**1** to shine brightly for a short time: *Lightning flashed in the sky. | an ambulance with flashing lights (=lights that flash again and again)*

**2** to move very quickly: *A car flashed past.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shine**<sup>1</sup>

**flash**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a sudden quick bright light: *We saw a flash of lightning.*

**2** a bright light on a camera that you use when taking photographs inside a building: *The flash always makes me blink.*

**3 in a flash** = very quickly or suddenly: *The day went by in a flash, and suddenly it was time to go home.*

**'flash card** noun

a card with a word or picture on it that you use for practicing things you are learning

**flash-light** /'flæflaɪt/ noun

a small electric light that you carry in your hand: *He was shining his flashlight on my face.*

→ See picture at **light**<sup>1</sup>

**flash-y** /'flæʃi/ adjective, informal

flashy clothes, cars, etc. are very noticeable or look expensive and show that you want people to notice you: *She wears flashy jewelry and tight clothes.*

**flat**<sup>1</sup> /flæt/ adjective **flatter, flattest**

**1** smooth and level, with no slopes or raised parts: *There are no hills in this road; it's flat for the next 50 miles.*

**THESAURUS: flat**

**level** a surface or area that is level goes across something and does not go up or down, so that every part of it is at the same height: *Make sure the shelves are level.*

**smooth** having an even surface, without any holes or raised areas: *a smooth round stone | a baby's smooth skin*

**even** flat, level, and smooth: *The surface should be even and clean before you put any paint on it.*

**horizontal** a horizontal line, position, or surface is straight and flat and goes across something without going up or down: *The room had a horizontal stripe painted halfway up the wall.*

**2** a flat tire does not have enough air inside it

**3 E flat/B flat, etc.** = a musical note that is slightly lower than E, B, etc.

**4** a drink that is flat has no bubbles in it when it should have bubbles: *The ginger ale is flat.*

—**flatness** noun: *the flatness of the farm land*

**flat**<sup>2</sup> adverb

**1** with every part touching a surface, and no parts raised: *He was lying flat on his back looking at the ceiling.*

**2 in 10 seconds/two minutes, etc. flat informal** = very quickly, in 10 seconds, two minutes, etc.: *I was out of the house in 10 minutes flat.*

**3** if you sing or play music flat, you sing or play slightly lower than the correct note

ANTONYM **sharp**

**flat-ly** /'flætli/ adverb, formal

in a firm way: *She flatly denied the rumors (=said firmly that they were not true).*

**flat-ten** /'flætɪn/ verb

to make something flat: *The heavy rain flattened the plants.*

**flat-ter** /'flætə/ verb

**1 be/feel flattered** = to feel happy because someone shows that he or she likes or admires you: *When they asked me to join their club, I felt flattered.*



**2** to say nice things to someone, sometimes when you do not really mean it: *I flattered her by saying her performance was wonderful.*

—**flattery** *noun* nice things that you say to someone, sometimes when you do not really mean it: *She tried using flattery to get me to do her work.*

—**flatterer** *noun* someone who flatters someone else

**fla·vor**<sup>1</sup> /'fleɪvər/ *noun*

the taste of a food or drink: *The Mexican soup has a spicy flavor. | My favorite flavor of ice cream is chocolate.*

—**flavorful** /'fleɪvərful/ *adjective* having a strong, good taste: *a flavorful stew*

**flavor**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to give food or drink a particular taste: *He flavored the sauce with lemon and herbs.*

**fla·vor·ing** /'fleɪvərɪŋ/ *noun*

a substance used to give food or drink a particular taste: *This yogurt contains no artificial flavorings.*

**flaw** /flɔ/ *noun*

a mark, weakness, or bad part that makes something not perfect: *There was a flaw in our lawyer's argument, and the other lawyers used it to win the case.* **SYNONYM** **weakness**

—**flawed** *adjective* having one or more flaws

**flea** /fli/ *noun*

a very small jumping insect that bites animals to drink their blood: *Their dog has fleas.*

**'flea ,market** *noun*

a market, usually in the street, where old or used things are sold

**flee** /fli/ *verb* **fled** /fled/ *formal*

to leave a place very quickly in order to escape from danger: *Many people have fled the country since the war started.*

**fleet** /flit/ *noun*

**1** a group of vehicles that are controlled by one company: *The company owns a fleet of trucks.*

**2** a group of ships: *The navy attacked the enemy fleet.*

**flesh** /fleʃ/ *noun*

**1** the soft part of a person's or animal's body: *The lion bit into the zebra's flesh.*

**2** the soft part inside a fruit or vegetable: *the sweet yellow flesh of a mango*

**3 in the flesh** = if you see someone in the flesh, you see someone who you had only

seen in pictures, in movies, etc. before: *I saw Brad Pitt in the flesh, on the street in New York!*

—**fleshy** *adjective* having a lot of flesh: *fleshy arms*

**flew** /flu/ *verb*

the past tense of **FLY**

**flex·i·ble** /'fleksəbəl/ **Ac** *adjective*

**1** able to change easily: *My schedule is flexible; I can travel any day this week.*

**2** easy to bend: *a flexible rubber tube*

—**flexibility** /,fleksə'bɪləti/ *noun* the quality of being flexible

**flick** /flɪk/ *verb*

to move something with a quick movement of your finger: *He flicked the switch from "off" to "on."*

—**flick** *noun* a quick movement of your finger or wrist

→ See Thesaurus box at **movie**

→ See picture on page A3

**flick·er** /'flɪkər/ *verb*

to burn or shine with a light that is not steady: *The candles flickered in the wind.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shine**<sup>1</sup>

**fli·er** /'flaɪər/ *noun*

**1** a sheet of paper advertising something: *They gave fliers advertising the restaurant to people on the street.*

**2** someone who flies an airplane or travels in an airplane

→ See Thesaurus box at **advertisement**

**flight** /flaɪt/ *noun*

**1** a trip on an airplane, or the airplane making a particular trip: *She was tired after the long flight. | When is the next flight to Miami?*

**2** the act of flying through the air: *a picture of a bird in flight (=flying)*

**3 a flight of stairs** = a set of stairs between one floor and the next: *I had to walk up six flights of stairs.*

**'flight at, tendant** *noun*

someone whose job is to take care of the passengers on a plane

**flim·sy** /'flɪmzi/ *adjective*

**1** a flimsy object is not strong or thick: *I was sitting in a flimsy plastic chair, and it broke.*

**2** a flimsy argument, excuse, etc. is difficult to believe: *She said she couldn't go, and*



*gave me a flimsy excuse about her dog being sick.*

**fling<sup>1</sup>** /flɪŋ/ verb flung /flʌŋ/

to throw or move something quickly with a lot of force: *He flung the rope to the man in the water.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **throw<sup>1</sup>**

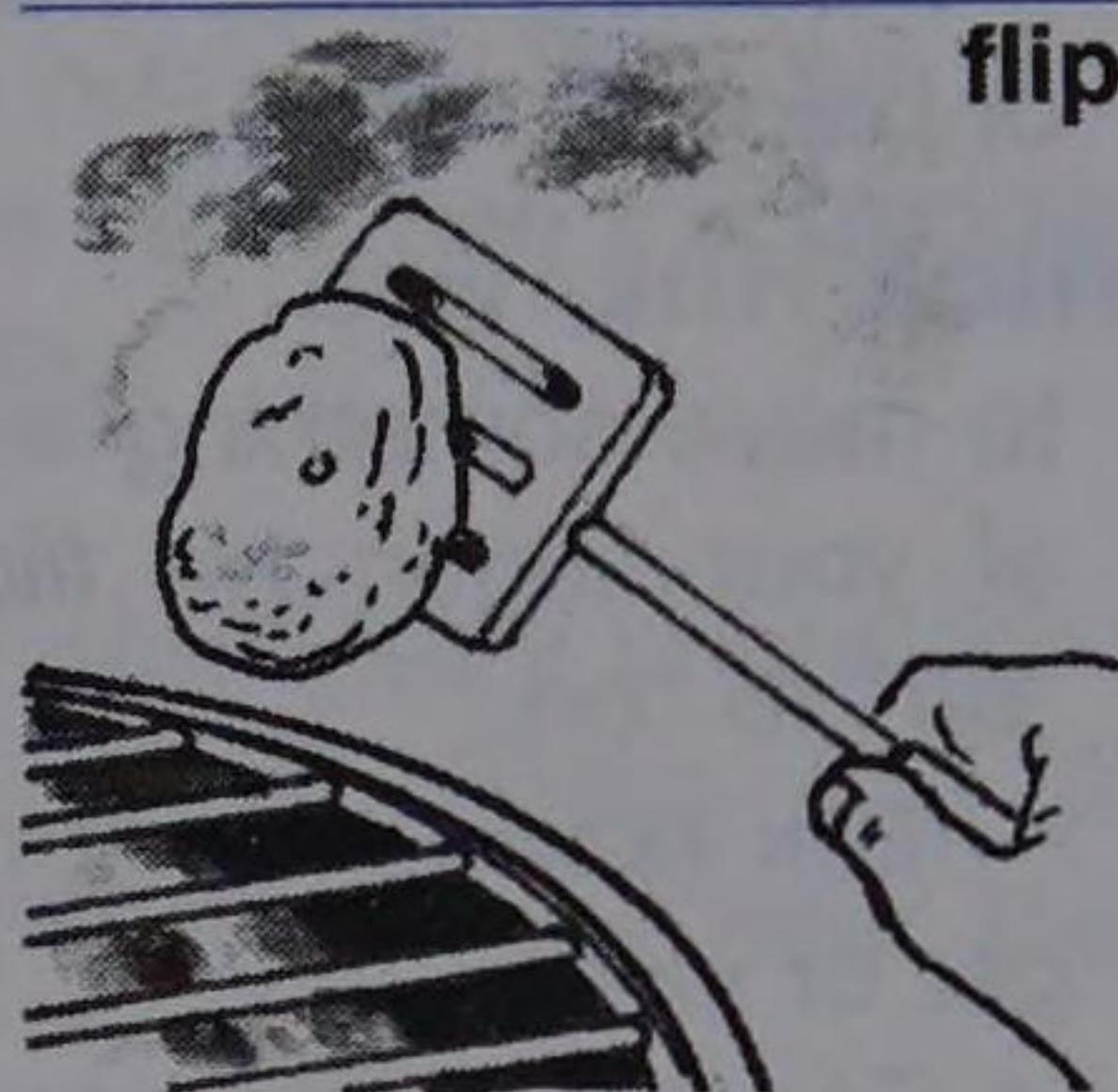
**fling<sup>2</sup>** noun, informal

a short romantic relationship that is not serious: *We went out for a few months, but it was just a fling.*

**flip** /flɪp/ verb

flipped, flipping

**1** also **flip over** to turn over quickly: *The car went off the road and flipped over. | Flip the hamburger over to cook the other side.*



flip

**2** if you flip a SWITCH, you quickly change its position: *I flipped the switch, and the music came on.*

**3** also **flip out** informal to suddenly become very angry or upset: *He flipped out when he found out she was going out with someone else.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**flip through something**

to look quickly at the pages of a book or magazine

**flip·per** /'flɪpə/ noun

**1** a flat part that some large sea animals have, which they use to swim: *Seals and turtles have flippers.*

**2** a large flat rubber shoe that you wear in order to swim faster

**flirt** /flɜːt/ verb

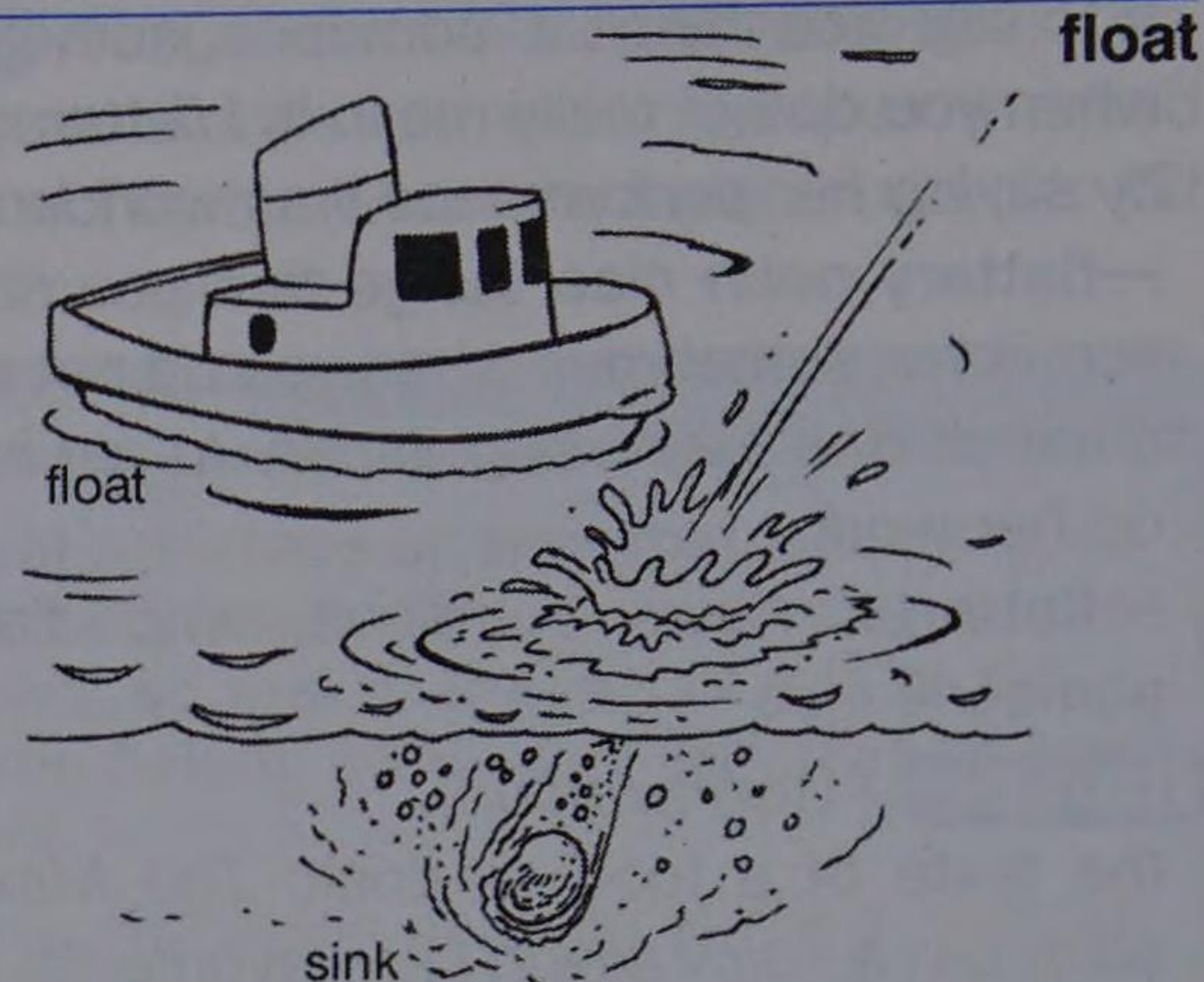
to behave as if you are sexually attracted to someone, but not in a serious way: *You were flirting with her at the dance!*

—**flirtatious** /flɜː'teɪʃəs/ adjective someone who is flirtatious likes to flirt or flirts a lot

**float** /flaʊt/ verb

**1** to stay on the surface of a liquid: *The tiny boat floated on the pond. | The ball fell into the water and floated away (=moved away on the surface of the water).* **ANTONYM** sink

**2** to stay in the air or move slowly through the air: *The balloon floated up into the sky.*



float

sink

**flock** /flæk/ noun

a group of sheep, goats, or birds: *a flock of geese*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group<sup>1</sup>**

**flood<sup>1</sup>** /flʌd/ noun

a very large amount of water that covers land that is usually dry: *The floods destroyed many homes.*

**flood<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to cover an area with water: *The river flooded the fields. | The basement flooded, and all our books and clothes got wet.*

**2** **be flooded with something** = to receive so many letters or calls that you cannot deal with them all: *The radio station was flooded with complaints when they changed the type of music they played.*

—**flooding** noun a situation in which a place is flooded: *The heavy rain could cause flooding.*

**flood·light** /'flʌdlaɪt/ noun

a very bright light, used at night to light the outside of buildings, sports fields, etc.

**floor** /flɔːr/ noun

**1** the surface that you stand on in a building: *He cleaned the kitchen floor. | Don't leave your clothes on the floor.*

**2** one of the levels in a building: *We live on the third floor of our apartment building.*

**floor·board** /'flɔːrbɔːrd/ noun

a long flat piece of wood that is part of a floor: *The old floorboards made a noise when I stepped on them.*

**flop** /flʌp/ verb flopped, flopping

**1** to sit down or fall in a loose, heavy way: *I was so tired that I went home, flopped on the bed, and fell asleep.*

**2** informal to be unsuccessful: *The movie*



flopped, and the producers lost a lot of money.

—**flop** *noun, informal* something that is not successful: *The play was a flop; audiences hated it.*

**flop-py** /'flɒpi/ *adjective*

soft and hanging loosely down: *The dog had long floppy ears.*

**floppy 'disk** also **floppy** *noun*

a flat piece of plastic, used for storing information from a computer

→ See picture on page A20

**flo-ral** /'flɒrəl/ *adjective, formal*

made of flowers or decorated with pictures of flowers: *The dress had a pretty floral pattern.*

**flo-rist** /'flɒrɪst/ *noun*

someone who works in a store that sells flowers

→ See picture on page A16

**floss** /flɒs/ *verb*

to clean between your teeth with special string: *I floss regularly.*

—**floss** also **dental floss** *noun* special string that you use to clean between your teeth

**floun-der** /'flaʊndə/ *noun*

a flat ocean fish, or the meat from this fish

**flour** /flaʊə/ *noun*

a powder made from wheat that is used for making bread, cakes, etc.

**flour-ish** /'flɔːrɪʃ/ *verb*

to grow well or develop well: *His business is flourishing, so he just hired three new employees.*

**flow<sup>1</sup>** /fləʊ/ *verb*

if a liquid flows, it moves along steadily: *The river flows through a wide valley to the ocean.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pour**

**flow<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a steady movement of liquid: *They tried to stop the flow of blood.*

**flow-er** /'flaʊə/ *noun*

**1** a pretty colored part on a plant: *This plant has yellow flowers in the spring. | He brought her a bouquet of flowers (=bunch of flowers).*

**2** a small plant that produces flowers: *I planted those flowers myself.*

—**flower** *verb, formal* if a plant flowers, it produces flowers: *The plant flowers in early summer.*

—**flowered** *adjective* decorated with pictures of flowers: *flowered wallpaper*

**flow-er-bed** /'flaʊə,bed/ *noun*

an area of earth in which flowers are grown

**flow-er-pot** /'flaʊə,pɒt/ *noun*

a pot in which you grow plants

**flown** /fləʊn/ *verb*

the past participle of FLY

**flu** /flu/ *noun*

**the flu** = a disease that is like a bad cold but is more serious, usually with a fever: *I had the flu last week.*

**fluc-tu-ate** /'flʌktʃu,eɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

if an amount or number fluctuates, it goes up and down more than once: *Her weight fluctuated between 120 and 150 pounds.*

—**fluctuation** /,flʌktʃu'eɪʃən/ *noun* a change up and down: *Fluctuations in temperature will harm the plant.*

**flu-ent** /'fluənt/ *adjective*

able to speak a language very well: *She is fluent in French. | He spoke fluent English.*

—**fluently** *adverb*: *She speaks Spanish fluently.*

—**fluency** *noun* the quality of being fluent in a language

**fluff** /flʌf/ *noun*

soft light pieces that come off wool, fur, etc.: *There's a piece of fluff on your skirt.*

**fluff-y** /'flʌfi/ *adjective*

soft and light, or with soft fur: *a fluffy baby rabbit*

**flu-id** /'fluɪd/ *noun, formal*

a liquid: *My doctor told me to drink lots of fluids to help me get better.*

—**fluid** *adjective* able to flow or move like a liquid

**flung** /flʌŋ/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of FLING

**flunk** /flʌŋk/ *verb, informal*

to fail a test or class: *I flunked my history exam because I didn't study at all.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**flunk out** *informal*

to have to leave a college because your work is not good enough: *He flunked out of college and had to find a job.*



**flur·ry** /'flʌɪ/ *noun* plural **flurries** *formal*

**1** a sudden increase in activity for a short time: *There was a flurry of activity as we got ready for the party to start.*

**2** a small amount of snow that falls and blows around: *We had flurries, but the snow didn't even stick to the ground.*

**flush** /flʌʃ/ *verb*

**1** if you flush a toilet, you make water go through it to clean it

**2** *formal* if you flush, your face becomes red because you are embarrassed or angry

**flushed** /flʌʃt/ *adjective*

if someone's face is flushed, it is red: *His face was flushed because he had been running.*

**flus·tered** /'flʌstəd/ *adjective*

feeling nervous and confused: *She got flustered and forgot what she wanted to say.*

**flute** /flut/ *noun*

a musical instrument like a pipe that you hold across your lips and blow

—**flutist** *noun* someone who plays the flute

→ See picture on page A21

**flut·ter** /'flʌtə/ *verb*

**1** to make small movements in the air: *The flags fluttered in the wind.*

**2** if a small bird or an insect flutters somewhere, it flies there: *Butterflies fluttered over the fields.*

**fly<sup>1</sup>** /flaɪ/ *verb* **flew** /flu/ **flown** /floun/ *third person singular flies*

**1** to move through the air: *The bird flew away.*

**2** to travel by airplane: *We flew to Phoenix Arizona to visit my family.*

**3** to control an airplane: *Kathy is learning to fly a plane.*

**4** if a flag is flying, it is being shown on a pole

**5** *formal* to suddenly move very quickly: *I flew down the stairs to see what was making the noise.*

WORD FAMILY → **flight** *noun*

**fly<sup>2</sup>** *noun* plural **flies**

**1** a common small flying insect: *There were flies all over the food.*

**2** the part at the front of a pair of pants that you can open: *Your fly is unzipped.*

**fly·er** /'flaɪə/ *noun*

another spelling of FLIER

**fly·ing 'saucer** *noun*

a space vehicle from another PLANET, which some people believe they have seen

SYNONYM **UFO**

**foal** /foul/ *noun*

a very young horse

**foam** /foum/ *noun*

**1** a lot of very small BUBBLES on the top of a liquid: *The soap bubbles made a white foam in the sink.*

**2** a very light but solid substance that changes shape easily when it is pressed: *a foam mattress* | *The box has foam inside to keep the glasses from breaking.*

**fo·cus<sup>1</sup>** /'foukəs/ **Ac** *verb*

**1** to give your attention to a particular thing: *I have to focus on school now because I have final exams soon.*

**2** to move part of a camera, TELESCOPE, etc. so that you can see something clearly: *The camera focuses automatically.*

—**focused** *adjective* giving your attention to a particular thing: *Stay focused, or you won't finish your work on time.*

**focus<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** the thing that is given most attention: *The main focus of this book is the history of the city.*

**2** attention that you give to a particular thing: *At the kids' club, the focus is on fun.*

**3** **in focus/out of focus** = if a photograph or something seen through a TELESCOPE is in focus, it is clear and easy to see. If it is out of focus, it is not clear.

**foe** /fou/ *noun, formal*

an enemy: *Are they friends or foes?* **ANTONYM** ally, friend

**fog** /fag/ *noun*

cloudy air near the ground that is difficult to see through: *There was thick fog, so he drove slowly.*

—**foggy** *adjective* if it is foggy, there is fog in the air: *a foggy morning*

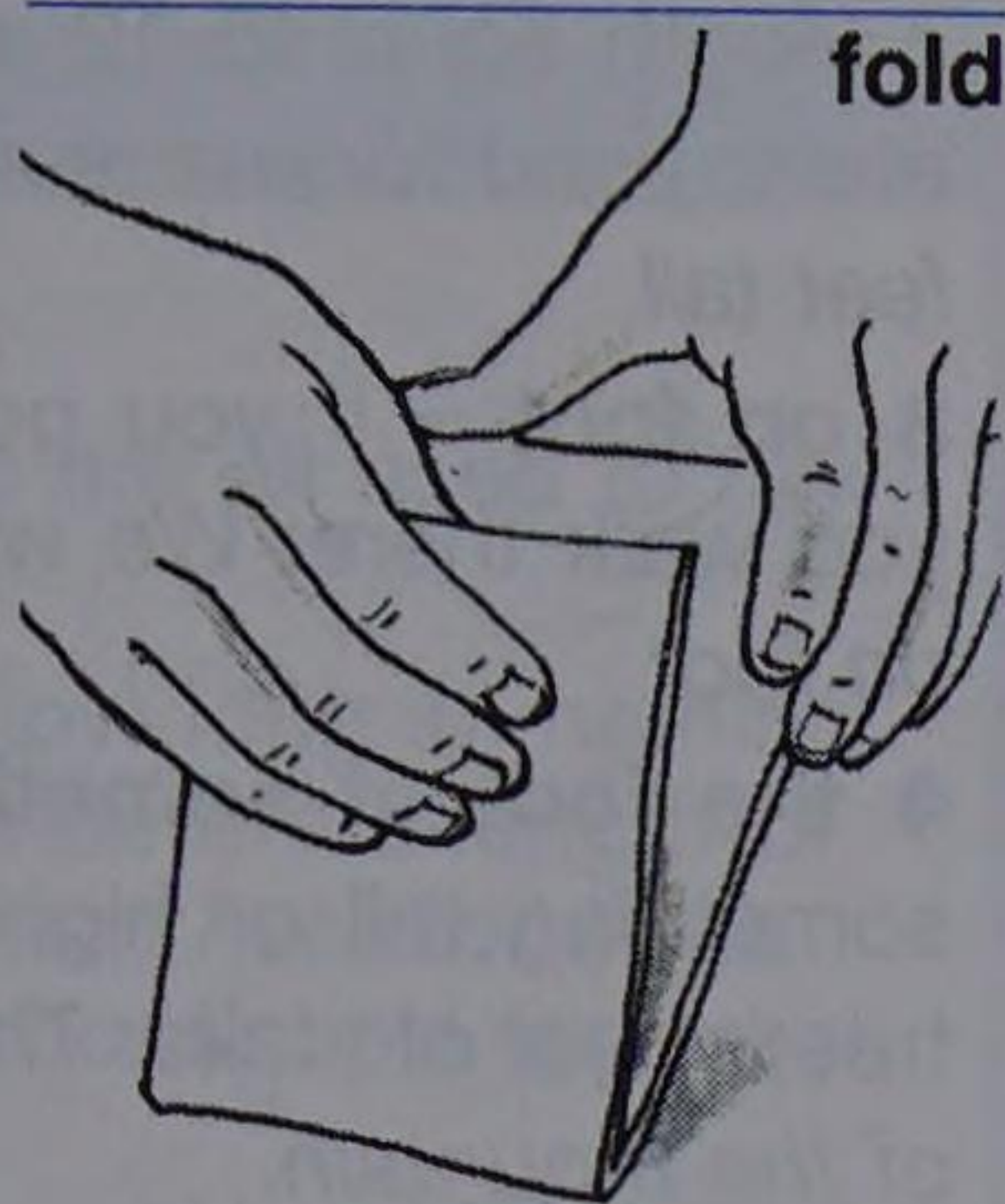
**foil** /fɔɪl/ *noun*

very thin metal, used for covering food: *Cover the pan with aluminum foil, and put it in the oven.*



**fold<sup>1</sup>** /'fould/ verb

**1** to bend a piece of paper or cloth so that one part covers another part: *Could you fold those towels for me?* | *Fold the piece of paper in half* (=fold it so that one half covers the other).



fold

**2** also **fold up** to make something such as a table smaller by bending parts of it: *Fold up the ironing board when you are done.* | *a folding chair* (=a chair that can be folded)

**3** **fold your arms** = to bend your arms so that they are resting across your chest

**fold<sup>2</sup>** noun

a line or part where paper, cloth, etc. is bent: *Fold the paper, and cut along the fold.*

**fold·er** /'fouldə/ noun

**1** a large folded piece of strong paper, in which you keep documents: *Put all your homework in this folder and put it in your backpack.*

**2** a group of FILES that are stored together on a computer: *You can move files from one folder to another.*

**fo·li·age** /'fouli-idʒ/ noun, formal

the leaves of a plant or tree: *This bush has dark green foliage.*

**folk** /'fouk/ adjective

folk music, dancing, etc. is traditional and typical of the ordinary people of a particular country: *They sang an old folk song from the Civil War.* | *a book of folk tales* (=traditional stories)

**folks** /'fouks/ plural noun, informal

**1** people in general: *Some folks might not like the idea.*

**2** your parents: *Have you told your folks that you're getting married?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **family**

**fol·low** /'falou/ verb

**1** to move along behind someone else: *I followed him up the steps.* | *I think we're being followed* (=someone is trying to follow us secretly).

**2** to happen or come immediately after something else: *I heard a yell, followed by a*

*loud crash.* | *The rules of the game are as follows* (=they will be explained next).

**3** to continue on a road, or go in the same direction as a river: *Follow the road to the coast.*

**4** **follow instructions/rules/advice, etc.** = to do what someone tells you to do or suggests that you do: *If you follow the instructions written on the box, you can build a little toy car.* | *I followed my dad's advice, and put my money in a savings account.*

**5** to understand something such as an explanation or story: *The movie was hard to follow, because there were so many characters.*

**6** to deliberately do what someone else has done: *The younger kids followed his lead* (=did what he did). | *He followed in his father's footsteps and became a doctor.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****follow through**

to do what you have promised to do or started doing: *Will he follow through on his promise?*

**follow up (something)**

to find out more about something, or to do more about something: *We always follow up on complaints by calling people again to talk to them about the problem.*

**fol·low·er** /'falouə/ noun

someone who believes in someone's ideas or supports them: *Buddha told his followers to help others.*

**fol·low·ing<sup>1</sup>** /'falouɪŋ/ adjective

**the following day/year/chapter, etc.** = the next day, year, etc.: *I was born in 1992, and my sister was born the following year* (=1993).

**following<sup>2</sup>** preposition

after: *He died following an accident.*

**fond** /'fand/ adjective, formal

**be fond of someone or something** = to like someone or something: *She was very fond of her aunt.*

—**fondly** adverb

—**fondness** noun *He has a fondness for video games and plays them all the time.*



**food** /fud/ noun

things that people, animals, and plants eat:  
We went to the grocery store to buy food. | I love Chinese food. | dog food

**'food processor** noun

a piece of electrical equipment that cuts or mixes food very quickly

**'food stamps** plural noun

special pieces of paper that the U.S. government gives to poor people to buy food with

**fool**<sup>1</sup> /ful/ noun

**1** a stupid person: *Don't be a fool – it's a great job, so take it.* **SYNONYM** idiot

**2 make a fool of yourself** = to do something silly or embarrassing, which other people can see: *I don't dance at parties because I don't want to make a fool of myself.*

**fool**<sup>2</sup> verb

to make someone believe something that is not true: *She fooled her parents into thinking she was sick.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**fool around**

**1** to behave in a silly way or have fun: *Stop fooling around and start studying!*

**2** to have a sexual relationship that is not serious: *He was fooling around with some girl he didn't even know.*

**fool-ish** /'fulɪʃ/ adjective

silly or not sensible: *Don't do anything foolish.* **SYNONYM** stupid

—**foolishly** adverb: *I foolishly agreed to help them take the money.*

—**foolishness** noun

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **foolish** adjective
- **foolishly** adverb
- **foolishness** noun
- **fool** noun
- **fool** verb

**fool-proof** /'fulpruf/ adjective

a foolproof idea is sure to be successful: *This plan is foolproof – there's no way we can fail.*

**foot** /fut/ noun

**1** plural **feet** /fit/ the part of your body at the end of your leg, which you stand on: *My brother has big feet.* | *I've been on my feet (=standing up) all day.*

**2** plural **feet** or **foot**, written abbreviation **ft.**

a length equal to 12 inches or 30.5 centimeters, used for measuring things: *Craig is six feet tall.*

**3 on foot** = if you go somewhere on foot, you walk there: *We went across the bridge on foot.*

**4 the foot of something** = the bottom of something tall or high such as a mountain, tree, or set of stairs: *They stopped at the foot of the mountain.*

**5 put your foot down** = to say very firmly what someone must do or must not do: *My mother put her foot down and said I could not go.*

**6 get/rise/jump, etc. to your feet** formal = to stand up after you have been sitting

**7 set foot in something** formal = to go into a place: *I left home to go to college, and I never set foot in that town again.*

→ See picture on page A2

**foot-ball** /'fʊtbɔl/ noun

**1** a game in which two teams carry, kick, or throw a ball into an area at the end of a field to win points: *I'm going to a football game tonight.*

**2** the ball with points at both ends that you use in this game

→ See picture on page A24

**foot-print** /'fʊt,prɪnt/ noun

a mark made by a foot or shoe: *There were footprints in the snow.*

**foot-step** /'fʊtstep/ noun

the sound of each step when someone is walking: *I heard footsteps behind me.*

**foot-wear** /'fʊtwɛr/ noun, formal

shoes, boots, etc.: *Choose comfortable footwear for hiking.*

**for**<sup>1</sup> /fɔː; strong fɔr/ preposition

**1** intended to be given to someone or used by someone: *I have a present for you.* | *It's a movie for kids, not adults.*

**2** with a particular purpose: *a knife for cutting bread* | *They are fighting for freedom* (=in order to have freedom). | *What did you do that for* (=why did you do it?)?

**3** used when saying how long: *I've known her for five years.*



**GRAMMAR: for****for, since, ago**

**For**, **since**, and **ago** are all used to talk about time.

**For** is used to say how long something has lasted. It comes before a length of time: *My aunt has been here for three days.* | *The meeting continued for five hours.*

**Since** is used to say when something started. The exact day, date, or time comes after it: *He's been here since Sunday.* | *I've been going to school here since 2006.*

**Ago** is used to say how far back in the past something happened. It comes after a length of time: *My grandfather died two years ago.*

**4** if you do something for someone, you do it because it will be helpful or useful to him or her: *Let me lift that box for you.* | *He plays for the Boston Red Sox.*

**5** because of or as a result of something: *What did you get for your birthday?*

**6** intending or meant to go to a place: *She just left for school.*

**7** used when saying how far: *We walked for about 6 miles.*

**8** used when mentioning a price: *I got this jacket for \$70.*

**9** if you have something for breakfast, dinner, etc., you eat it at that meal: *We had steak for dinner last night.* | *"What's for lunch?" "Pasta."*

**10** if you are happy, sad, etc. for someone, you are happy, sad, etc. because something has happened to him or her: *I'm really happy for you – you deserved to win.*

**11** in support of or in agreement with someone or something: *Who did you vote for?*

**ANTONYM** **against**

**12** with a particular meaning: *What's the Spanish word for oil?*

**for<sup>2</sup>** conjunction, formal

because: *We left quickly, for we knew we were in great danger.*

**for·bid** /fəˈbɪd/ verb forbade /fəˈbæd/  
forbidden /fəˈbɪdn/ formal

to order someone not to do something: *I forbid you to see him again.* **ANTONYM** **permit**

**THESAURUS: forbid**

**not allow/permit/let** to say that someone must not do something, and stop him/her doing it: *His parents don't allow him to go out on school nights.* | *Smoking is not permitted inside the hospital.*

**ban** to officially say that people must not do something or that something is not allowed: *Fires are banned in the campground.*

**prohibit** formal to say officially that someone cannot do something because of a rule or law: *The law prohibits people from owning these rare birds as pets.*

**bar** formal to officially prevent someone from doing something: *Reporters were barred from the courtroom.*

—**forbidden** adjective not allowed: *Alcohol is forbidden for Muslims.*

**force<sup>1</sup>** /fɔːrs/ verb

**1** to make someone do something that he or she does not want to do: *You can't force me to be a doctor if I don't want to be one.*

**THESAURUS: force**

**make** to force someone to do something: *You can't make a kid eat something he doesn't like.*

**coerce** formal to make someone do something by using threats: *Young children were coerced into becoming soldiers.*

**compel** formal to force someone to do something: *I felt compelled to succeed, as my parents had helped me so much.*

**pressure** to try to make someone feel they should do something that he or she does not really want to do: *Don't let your friends pressure you into trying alcohol.*

**2** to use your strength to move something: *The police had to force open the door.*

**force<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a group of people who do military or police work: *The U.S. is withdrawing its military forces.*

**2** violent physical action that someone uses to make someone do something or to get something: *The government says it will use force to stop the protesters.*

**3** physical power: *The force of the explosion*



threw me to the ground. | Waves were hitting the rocks with great force.

**4** something that moves things or has an effect on them: *The force of gravity pulls everything downward.*

**5 join forces** = if people join forces, they start working together: *Several groups have joined forces to raise money for the charity.*

**6 in force** = if a law or rule is in force, it exists and must be obeyed

**forced** /fɔːst/ *adjective*

a forced action is one that someone makes you do or that you make yourself do: a *forced marriage* (=one that the two people do not choose or want)

**force-ful** /'fɔːsfəl/ *adjective*

powerful and strong: *She had a forceful way of speaking that convinced people to do things.*

—**forcefully** *adverb*: *He argued forcefully against the plan.*

**fore-arm** /'fɔːrɑːm/ *noun*

the part of your arm between your hand and your elbow

→ See picture on page A2

**fore-cast** /'fɔːrkæst/ *noun*

a description of what is likely to happen: *I was watching the weather forecast* (=a description telling if it will be rainy, sunny, etc.)

—**forecast** *verb* to say what is likely to happen: *They are forecasting that the summer will be very dry.*

**fore-fa-thers** /'fɔːr,fɑːðəz/ *plural noun, formal*

**1** someone from the past who helped to start a country, organization, or way of thinking that still exists: *Our nation's forefathers wrote the constitution that we use today.*

**2** another word for ANCESTORS: *Our forefathers fished in these lakes five hundred years ago.*

**fore-front** /'fɔːfrʌnt/ *noun*

**in/at the forefront of something** *formal* = doing important things first that many other people will also do: *The company was at the forefront of change when the Internet started to become used.*

**fore-head** /'fɔːhed/ *noun*

the part of your face above your eyes: *He wiped the sweat from his forehead.*

→ See picture on page A2

**for-eign** /'fɔːrɪn/ *adjective*

from or relating to a country that is not your own: *Can you speak a foreign language? | I watch a lot of foreign films.*

**for-eign-er** /'fɔːrənə/ *noun*

someone who comes from a country that is not your country

**fore-man** /'fɔːrmən/ *noun* plural **foremen** /'fɔːrmən/

**1** someone who is in charge of a group of workers: *a factory foreman*

**2** the leader of a JURY

**fore-most** /'fɔːmʊst/ *adjective, formal*

the best or most important: *The country's foremost writers came to the White House for a special dinner.*

**fore-see** /fɔːr'si/ *verb* foresaw /fɔːr'sɔ/

foreseen /fɔːr'siːn/ *formal*

to know that something will happen in the future: *He foresaw the war that began two years later.* **SYNONYM** **predict**

**for-est** /'fɔːrɪst/ *noun*

a large area of land covered with trees: *The animal lives high up in trees in the forest.*

**SYNONYM** **woods**

→ See Thesaurus box at **tree**

**for-ev-er** /fə'revə/ *adverb*

**1** for all of the future: *You can't live forever. | I wanted the vacation to last forever.* **SYNONYM** **always**

**2** *informal* for a very long time: *Greg will probably be a student forever. | It'll take forever to walk to Amy's house.*

**3 go on forever** *informal* = to be extremely long or large: *Their yard seemed to go on forever.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **always**

**fore-word** /'fɔːrwɜːd/ *noun*

a short piece of writing at the beginning of a book that gives information relating to the book

**for-gave** /fə'geɪv/ *verb*

the past tense of FORGIVE

**forge** /fɔːdʒ/ *verb*

to illegally copy a document, a painting, money, etc. in order to make people think it is real: *He forged his wife's signature on the*



check. | a forged passport **SYNONYM fake**  
—**forgery** noun someone who illegally copies documents, paintings, etc.

**for-ger-y** /'fɔrdʒəri/ noun plural **forgeries**

**1** a document, painting, or piece of paper money that someone has illegally copied: *The police discovered that her passport was a forgery and arrested her.* **SYNONYM fake**

**2** the crime of illegally copying something

**for-get** /fə'get/ verb forgot /fə'gat/ forgotten /fə'gɒtn/ forgetting

**1** to be unable to remember facts, information, or something that happened: *I've forgotten her name – do you know it? | I know you told me what this means, but I forgot. | He forgot all about our anniversary.*

**2** to not remember to do something that you should do: *I forgot to lock the door.*

**3** to not remember to bring something that you should have taken with you: *I forgot my sunglasses.*

#### USAGE: forget

You can say “I forgot my homework.”

You cannot say “I forgot my homework at home.”

When you want to talk about the place where you left something by mistake, you must use “leave”: *I left my homework at home.*

**4** to stop thinking or worrying about someone or something: *I'll never forget how I felt when my grandmother died.*

**5 forget it informal a)** used in order to tell someone that something is not important: *“I'm sorry, I shouldn't have yelled at you.” “Forget it.” b)* used in order to tell someone to stop asking or talking about something because it is annoying you: *I'm not buying you that bike, so just forget it.*

**for-get-ful** /fə'getfəl/ adjective

if you are forgetful, you often forget things that you should remember: *Many old people become forgetful.*

—**forgetfulness** noun

**for-give** /fə'gɪv/ verb forgave /fə'geɪv/ forgiven /fə'gɪvən/

to stop being angry with someone who has done something wrong: *I can't forgive him for the terrible things he said. | If anything bad happened to the kids, I'd never forgive*

*myself. | “I'm sorry.” “That's OK – you're forgiven (=I forgive you).”*

—**forgiveness** noun: *He was really sorry for what he'd done and asked for forgiveness.*

**fork<sup>1</sup>** /fɔrk/ noun

**1** a small tool that you use for picking up food when you eat: *He washed his knife and fork, and put them away.*

**2** a place where a road or river divides into two parts: *Go left when you come to the fork in the road.*

→ See picture on page A9

**fork<sup>2</sup>** verb

if a road or river forks, it divides into two parts

**form<sup>1</sup>** /fɔrm/ noun

**1** one type of something: *You'll need two forms of ID, like a passport and a driver's license.* **SYNONYM kind**

**2** the way in which something exists or appears: *The data on a computer is stored in digital form.*

**3** an official document with spaces where you have to write information: *Please fill out the form in black ink. | a job application form*

**4 formal** a shape: *The dark form in the trees was a bear.*

**form<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to start to exist: *Winter is coming, and ice is forming on the lake.* **SYNONYM develop**

**2** to make a particular shape: *He formed a circle with his thumb and finger.*

**3** to start a new organization or group: *We formed the company back in 1990.* **SYNONYM create**

**4** to make something by combining two or more parts: *You can often form an adverb by adding the letters “ly” to the end of an adjective.*

**5** to be part of something: *Rice forms a basic part of Chinese meals.*

**for-mal** /'fɔrməl/ adjective

**1** formal language, clothes, or behavior are used in very important or official situations: *men's formal wear (=clothes for important events, parties, etc.)* **ANTONYM informal**

**2** a formal occasion is an important event, such as a wedding or important dinner or party: *Jack won't wear a tie, even on formal occasions.*

**3** official and public: *The president made a formal announcement.* **ANTONYM informal**



**4 formal education/training/qualifications**  
= education in a subject or skill that you receive in school, not from experience  
—**formally** *adverb*: *The winner will be formally announced this afternoon.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **formal** *adjective*
- **informal** *adjective*
- **formally** *adverb*
- **informally** *adverb*
- **formality** *noun*
- **informality** *noun*

F

**for-mal-i-ty** /fɔr'mæləti/ *noun* plural  
**formalities** *formal*  
something that you must do as part of an official activity: *We had to sign the contract and deal with a few other formalities.*

**for-mat** /'fɔrmæt/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
**1** the way in which something such as computer document, television show, or meeting is organized or arranged: *The talk-show format is popular on daytime TV.*  
**2** the size, shape, design, etc. of a book or magazine

**for-ma-tion** /fɔr'meɪʃən/ *noun*  
**1** *formal* the act of making something new: *The formation of a new government will take a long time.*  
**2** something that has been formed into a particular shape, or the shape into which it has been formed: *The rock formations in the desert were beautiful.*

**for-mer**<sup>1</sup> /'fɔrmə/ *adjective*  
**1** having a particular job or position in the past, but not now: *Two former U.S. presidents, Bill Clinton and George Bush, were at the ceremony.*  
**2** existing in the past, but not now: *the former Soviet Union*

**former**<sup>2</sup> *noun*  
**the former** *formal* = the first of two people or things that are mentioned: *She had to decide between the red dress and the blue one. The former cost \$125 and the latter \$85.* **ANTONYM** **latter**

**for-mer-ly** /'fɔrməli/ *adverb*  
in the past, not now: *New York was formerly called New Amsterdam (=New Amsterdam was the name it had before).*

**for-mu-la** /'fɔrmyələ/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
**1** a series of numbers or letters that represent a mathematical or scientific rule: *a mathematical formula*  
**2** a liquid food for babies that is similar to a mother's milk: *She fed the baby formula.*

**fort** /fɔrt/ *noun*  
**1** a strong building used by soldiers for defending an important place: *The soldiers were in a fort on the hill.*  
**2** a place where an army lives and trains

**forth** /fɔrθ/ *adverb, formal*  
toward a place that is in front of you: *The soldiers went forth into battle.*  
→ **back and forth** at **back**<sup>1</sup>

**for-tress** /'fɔrtɹɪs/ *noun*  
a large strong building that soldiers use for defending an important place

**for-tu-nate** /'fɔrtʃənət/ *adjective, formal*  
if you are fortunate, something good has happened to you or you are in a good situation: *We were fortunate to arrive before it started snowing. | You're fortunate that you have such wonderful parents.* **SYNONYM** **lucky**; **ANTONYM** **unfortunate**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **fortunate** *adjective*
- **unfortunate** *adjective*
- **fortunately** *adverb*
- **unfortunately** *adverb*
- **fortune** *noun*
- **misfortune** *noun*

**for-tu-nate-ly** /'fɔrtʃənətli/ *adverb*  
happening because of good luck: *We arrived at the airport late, but fortunately our flight was late too.* **ANTONYM** **unfortunately**

**for-tune** /'fɔrtʃən/ *noun*  
**1** a very large amount of money: *She could make a fortune (=earn a lot of money) as a fashion model.*  
**2** luck and the influence it has on your life: *I had the good fortune to find a job as soon as I got to St. Louis.*  
**3** the good or bad things that happen to you: *A year later his fortune changed when he met Karen.*  
**4** **tell someone's fortune** = to tell someone what will happen to them in the future, for example by using special cards



**'fortune teller** *noun*

someone who uses special cards or looks at your hands in order to tell you what is going to happen to you in the future

**for·ty** /'fɔrti/ *number*

**1** 40

**2 the forties a)** also **the '40s** the years between 1940 and 1949 **b)** the temperatures between 40 and 49 degrees Fahrenheit or Celsius

**3 be in your forties** = to be aged between 40 and 49

—**fortieth** *number* 40th or 1/40

**for·ward**<sup>1</sup> /'fɔrwəd/ *adverb*

**1** also **forwards** toward a place that is in front of you: *The crowd moved forward into the park.* | *He leaned forward and kissed her.*

ANTONYM **backward**

**2** toward a situation that develops and becomes better: *You have to forget about the mistakes you made and move forward.*

→ **look forward to something** at **look**<sup>1</sup>

**forward**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** toward a place that is in front of you: *the forward movement of the car*

**2 formal** very friendly and open with someone you do not know well: *She was very forward and told us all about her personal problems.*

**3 forward thinking/planning** = plans or ideas that help you to prepare for the future: *If we do some forward planning now, we should be ready if an emergency happens.*

**forward**<sup>3</sup> *verb*

to send a letter, email etc. that has been sent to you, to another person: *I'll forward the email I got from Kristin to you right now.*

**fos·sil** /'fasəl/

*noun*

part of an animal or plant that lived a very long time ago, which has been preserved in rock: *Scientists found fossils of dinosaurs in the rocks.*



**fossil**

**foster** /'fɔstə/ *adjective*

relating to an arrangement in which a child has been taken into someone's home without those people becoming the child's legal parents: *He lived with foster parents for three years before our family adopted him.* | *a foster home*

**fought** /fɔt/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of **FIGHT**

**foul**<sup>1</sup> /faʊl/ *adjective, formal*

**1** a foul smell is very unpleasant: *A foul smell was coming from the garbage.*

**2 foul language** = rude and offensive words: *I don't allow foul language like that in my house.*

**3 foul weather** = bad weather, with strong winds, rain, or snow: *We canceled the trip because of the foul weather.*

**4 in a foul mood** = in a very bad mood and likely to get angry: *I was in a foul mood and didn't want to talk to anyone.*

**foul**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

an action in a sport that is not allowed by the rules: *In basketball, when you have five fouls you have to leave the game.*

**foul**<sup>3</sup> *verb*

to do something that is not allowed by the rules of a sport: *He turned to shoot the ball, and Bailey fouled him.*

**found**<sup>1</sup> /faʊnd/ **[Ac]** *verb*

the past tense and past participle of **FIND**

**found**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to start an organization, town, or institution: *The college was founded in 1701.*

**foun·da·tion** /faʊn'deɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a solid base built below the ground to support the building which is on top of it: *The men were laying the foundation (=building it) for a new office building.*

**2** an idea, fact, or system from which a religion, way of life, etc. develops: *The Constitution is the foundation of the U.S. government.*

**3** an organization that gives or collects money to be used for special purposes: *the National Science Foundation*

**found·er** /'faʊndə/ **[Ac]** *noun*

someone who starts a business, organization, school, etc.



**foun·tain** /'faʊntən/ *noun*

an object that sends water up into the air:  
*There was a big fountain in the middle of the park.*

**four** /fɔːr/ *number*

**1** 4: *Our house has four bedrooms. I She met four of her friends in the coffee shop.*

**2** four O'CLOCK: *I'll meet you at four.*

**3** four years old: *She'll be four next week.*

**four·teen** /,fɔː'tin/ *number*

**1** 14: *I found fourteen dollars in my jeans pocket.*

**2** fourteen years old: *My Mom wouldn't let me have a TV in my room till I was fourteen.*

—**fourteenth** *number* 14th or 1/14

**fourth** /fɔːθ/ *number, noun*

**1** 4th

**2** 1/4 **SYNONYM** quarter

**Fourth of Ju·ly** *noun*

a national holiday in the U.S. to celebrate the time when the U.S. first became an independent nation **SYNONYM** Independence Day

**fowl** /faʊl/ *noun*

a bird such as a chicken that is kept for its meat and eggs

**fox** /fɒks/ *noun*

a wild animal like a small dog with dark red fur and a thick tail

**foy·er** /'fɔɪə/ *noun*

a room at the entrance of a house or large public building such as a hotel or theater

**frac·tion** /'frækʃən/ *noun*

**1** a number that is smaller than 1, such as 3/4 or 1/2: *We're learning how to add fractions at school.*

**2** a very small amount of something: *For a fraction of a second it was quiet, and then someone laughed.*

—**fractional** *adjective* very small

—**fractionally** *adverb* by a very small amount

**frac·ture**<sup>1</sup> /'fræktʃə/ *noun*

a crack or break in something such as a bone or rock

**fracture**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to crack or break something such as a bone or rock: *He fractured his arm when he fell.*

**frag·ile** /'frædʒəl/ *adjective*

easily broken or damaged: *The old wine glass was fragile and it broke.*

—**fragility** /frə'dʒɪləti/ *noun* the quality of being fragile

**frag·ment** /'frægmənt/ *noun*

a small piece that has broken off a larger object: *The nurse removed fragments of glass from his hand.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **piece**

**fra·grance** /'freɪgrəns/ *noun*

**1** a nice smell: *the sweet fragrance of roses*

**SYNONYM** smell

**2** formal another word for PERFUME

**fra·grant** /'freɪgrənt/ *adjective*

having a nice smell: *I could smell the fragrant flowers as I walked by the garden.*

—**fragrantly** *adverb*

**frail** /freɪl/ *adjective*

someone who is frail is thin and weak: *Grandpa looked small and frail in the hospital bed.*

—**frailty** *noun* the condition of being frail

**frame**<sup>1</sup> /freɪm/ *noun*

**1** a structure made of wood or metal that surrounds a picture, door, or window: *a picture frame | a door frame*

**2** the structure that supports a house, piece of furniture, or vehicle: *a bicycle frame*

**3** frames = the part of a pair of glasses that holds the glass LENSES

**4** frame of mind = the way you are feeling at a particular time: *Melissa was in a good frame of mind; she talked about the future in a very positive, happy way.*

**frame**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to put a picture in a frame: *I'll get the photograph framed and give it Mom for her birthday.*

**2** to try to make someone seem guilty of a crime by deliberately giving false information: *He claims that he didn't do anything wrong and that the police framed him.*

**frame·work** /'freɪmwɜːk/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** the basic structure of a building or vehicle, which supports the rest of the building or vehicle: *They have just built the steel framework of the city's tallest building.*

**2** the basic structure of a system: *The idea of quality is an important part of the framework of our educational system.*



**frank** /fræŋk/ adjective

someone who is frank says things in an honest and direct way: *To be completely frank with you, Mr. Lee, you don't have enough experience for the job.*

—**frankly** adverb: *He always speaks frankly and honestly.*

—**frankness** noun

**fran·tic** /'fræntɪk/ adjective

**1** extremely hurried and not organized: *We realized we were late, and there was a frantic rush to get to the airport.*

**2** very worried, anxious, and upset: *He didn't come home, and his mother is frantic with worry.*

—**frantically** adverb

**fraud** /frɒd/ noun

**1** the crime of deceiving people in order to get money or goods: *The police arrested him for tax fraud (=deceiving the government so you do not pay taxes).*

**2** someone who pretends to be someone else in order to deceive people: *He wasn't a real doctor – he was a fraud.*

**fraud·u·lent** /'frɒdʒələnt/ adjective, formal

intended to trick people: *He tried to buy the TV with a fraudulent check, but the bank called the police.*

—**fraudulently** adverb

**fray** /freɪ/ verb

if a cloth or rope frays, its threads become loose at the edge because it is old or torn: *The blanket was old and fraying around the edges.*

—**frayed** adjective

**freak<sup>1</sup>** /frik/ noun, informal

**1** someone who people think is strange or frightening because of the way he or she looks or behaves: *Some freak thought it would be funny to scare the kids.*

**2** someone who is very interested in a particular subject or activity, so that other people think he or she is strange: *He is a 14-year-old computer freak who can make a computer do anything.*

**freak<sup>2</sup>** adjective

a freak accident, storm, etc. is very unusual and strange: *A wall fell down in a freak accident and injured two people.*

**freck·le** /'frekəl/

noun

one of many small brown spots on someone's skin: *a little girl with red hair and freckles*

—**freckled**

adjective having freckles: *She has freckled skin that burns easily in the sun.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **mark<sup>2</sup>**



**free<sup>1</sup>** /fri/ adjective

**1** able to do what you want, and not controlled by someone else: *You're free to leave at any time.*

**2** not costing any money: *I won free tickets to the concert.*

**3** if food, water, etc. is free of something, it does not have that thing in it: *sugar-free bubble gum*

**4** not busy doing other things: *Are you free for lunch (=use this to ask someone if he or she is not too busy to come to lunch with you)? | What do you enjoy doing in your free time (=the time when you are not working or studying)?*

**5** not being used: *Excuse me, is this seat free?*

→ **feel free** at **feel<sup>1</sup>**

WORD FAMILY → **freedom** noun

**free<sup>2</sup>** adverb

**1** also **for free** without having to pay any money: *Students can visit the museum for free (=paying no money).*

**2** moving without being controlled or held: *The horses were running free in the field.*

**free<sup>3</sup>** verb

to let someone leave a place where he or she has been forced to stay: *President Lincoln freed the slaves during the Civil War.*

**free·bie** /'fri:bi/ noun, informal

something that a store or business gives you, that you do not have to pay for: *The bank was giving away a radio as a freebie to new customers.*

**free·dom** /'frɪdəm/ noun

**1** the state of being free and allowed to do what you want: *Kids had more freedom 30 years ago, when parents did not worry about letting them play outside.*



**2** the legal right to do something, without the government stopping you: *The First Amendment says that all Americans have freedom of speech* (=the legal right to say what you want).

**free-ly** /'frili/ *adverb*

without anyone or anything controlling or stopping something: *People can now travel freely across the border.*

**free-way** /'friwei/ *noun*

a very wide road on which cars can go very fast: *We took the freeway down to Los Angeles.*

F

**freeze** /friz/ *verb* froze /frouz/ frozen /'frouzən/

**1** if water freezes, it becomes solid and hard because it is so cold: *The water in the bucket froze during the night.* **ANTONYM** thaw

**2** if you freeze food, you put it in a FREEZER so that you can keep it longer: *Buy two packs of chicken and freeze one.* **ANTONYM** thaw

**3** **be freezing** *informal* = to feel very cold: *It's freezing in here; can we turn up the heat? | I'm freezing – I guess I need a warmer coat.*

**4** to suddenly stop moving and stay very still: *Officer Greer shouted, "Freeze!"*

→ frozen

**freez-er** /'frizə/ *noun*

a large piece of electrical equipment that freezes food so that you can keep it for a long time: *Put the ice cream in the freezer.*

→ See picture on page A9

**freez-ing** /'friziŋ/ *noun*

**above/below freezing** = if the weather is above freezing or below freezing, the temperature is above or below the point at which water freezes (32°F or 0°C): *It was below freezing all day, so we stayed inside.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cold**<sup>1</sup>

**freight** /freit/ *noun, formal*

things that trucks, airplanes, or ships take from one place to another: *Trucks take freight from the warehouse to the stores. | a freight train* (=one that carries freight)

**French**<sup>1</sup> /frentʃ/ *adjective*

from France

—**Frenchman** *noun* a man from France

—**Frenchwoman** *noun* a woman from France

**French**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** the language spoken in France and some parts of Switzerland and Canada

**2** the people of France

**French fries** /,frentʃ 'fraiz/ *plural noun*

potatoes cut into thin long pieces and cooked in hot oil: *I ordered a hamburger and French fries.*

**French toast** /,frentʃ 'toust/ *noun*

bread that you put into a mixture of eggs and milk and then cook in a pan: *Do you want French toast for breakfast?*

**fren-zy** /'frenzi/ *noun*

a person or animal that is in a frenzy is very worried and excited, and cannot control his, her, or its behavior: *The dogs go into a frenzy of barking and jumping when someone comes to the door.*

—**frenzied** *adjective* feeling very worried and excited

**fre-quen-cy** /'frikwənsi/ *noun, formal*

**1** the number of times that something happens: *The new traffic lights should lower the frequency of accidents.*

**2** the rate at which a sound or light WAVE pattern is repeated: *Dogs can hear higher frequencies than humans can.*

**fre-quent** /'frikwənt/ *adjective, formal*

happening very often: *They make frequent trips to New York.* **ANTONYM** infrequent

—**frequently** *adverb*: *He's frequently late for school – at least once a week.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- frequent *adjective*
- infrequent *adjective*
- frequently *adverb*
- infrequently *adverb*
- frequency *noun*

**fresh** /freʃ/ *adjective*

**1** fresh food or flowers have been picked or made only a short time ago: *Eat lots of fresh fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.*

**2** adding to or replacing what was there before: *Do you want a fresh cup of coffee?*

**3** new and different from what has been done before: *She has some fresh ideas about teaching science.* **ANTONYM** old

**4** **fresh air** = air from outside, especially clean air: *I'm going for a walk to get some fresh air.*



**5** fresh water has no salt and comes from rivers and lakes

—**freshly** *adverb*: freshly baked bread

—**freshness** *noun*: The flowers began to lose their freshness.

→ See Thesaurus box at **new**

**fresh·en** /'freʃən/ also **freshen up** *verb*, *formal*  
to change or clean something so that it seems newer: Abby freshened up her makeup.

**fresh·man** /'freʃmən/ *noun*

a student in the first year of high school or college: He'll be a freshman in high school this fall; he's going into the ninth grade.

**fret** /fret/ *verb*

to worry about things that are not very important: Keisha was fretting about being late for the party.

**fric·tion** /'frɪkʃən/ *noun*, *formal*

**1** if there is friction between people, they disagree and argue with each other a lot: There was friction between Dad and me for several years before I left home.

**2** the action of one surface rubbing against another: The brakes on the bike work by the friction of the brake pad against the tire.

**Fri·day** /'fraɪdi/ *noun*, *written abbreviation Fri.*

the sixth day of the week: Diane won't be here Friday. | I have class on Friday. | Next Friday is my birthday. | I talked to Jim last Friday. | Do you have plans for Friday night?

**fridge** /'frɪdʒ/ *noun*, *informal*

a short word for a REFRIGERATOR: Put the milk back in the fridge.

**fried**<sup>1</sup> /fraɪd/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of the verb FRY

**fried**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

cooked in hot oil: Jim ate a fried egg on toast.

**friend** /frend/ *noun*

**1** someone whom you like very much and enjoy spending time with: I'm meeting a friend for lunch. | Tom, this is Martha; she's a friend of mine. | Tony has been my best friend since second grade. **ANTONYM** enemy

**2** **make friends** = to start having someone as a friend: It can be hard to make friends at a new school.

**3** **be friends** = to be someone's friend: I've been friends with her for a long time.

—**friendship** *noun* the state of being friends with someone: The two girls have formed a close friendship.

**friend·ly** /'frendli/ *adjective* **friendlier**, **friendliest**

someone who is friendly talks to people and behaves in a nice way: The neighbors seem very friendly.

—**friendliness** *noun*

**fries** /fraɪz/ *plural noun*

a short word for FRENCH FRIES: He ordered a hamburger and fries.

**fright** /fraɪt/ *noun*

a feeling of fear: The boy saw the gun and started shaking with fright.

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

→ **fright** *noun*

→ **frighten** *verb*

→ **frightening** *adjective*

→ **frightened** *adjective*

**fright·en** /'fraɪtn/ *verb*

to make someone feel afraid: The loud noise frightened her. **SYNONYM** scare

**fright·ened** /'fraɪtnd/ *adjective*

feeling afraid: I was always a little frightened of my father.

#### THESAURUS: frightened

**afraid** frightened because you think that you may get hurt or that something bad may happen: She was afraid to go by herself, so she asked her friend to go with her.

**scared** afraid and nervous about something: I've always been scared of dogs.

**terrified** very frightened: I'm terrified of heights.

**petrified** very frightened: He's petrified of snakes.

**fright·en·ing** /'fraɪtn-ɪŋ/ *adjective*

making you feel afraid: It was frightening to realize that we were lost in the woods.

**SYNONYM** scary

—**frighteningly** *adverb*

**frill** /frɪl/ *noun*

**1** a piece of cloth with many small folds in it, that you use to decorate clothes or other



things made of cloth: *a dress with lots of frills*

**2** something that is nice but not really needed, that can be added to something you buy: *The car has no frills – no air conditioning, no sunroof, no electric windows.*

—**frilly** adjective having a lot of frills as decoration: *a frilly blouse*

## fringe /frɪndʒ/ noun

**1** a decoration made of hanging threads, which is sewn to the edge of something such as a curtain or piece of clothing: *a cowboy jacket with leather fringe*

**2** formal the area that is furthest from the center of something: *New homes are being built on the fringes of the city.* **SYNONYM** outskirts

## frisk-y /'frɪski/ adjective

full of energy, happiness, and fun: *a frisky kitten*

## frog /frɒg/ noun

a small green or brown animal that lives in or near water and has long legs for jumping: *A frog jumped out of the pond.*

## from /frəm; strong frʌm/ preposition

**1** used to say where something starts: *He drove all the way from Colorado to Florida. | Mike brought his report card home from school.*

**2** used to say when something starts: *The morning class is from 9:00 to 11:00. | Twenty years from now you'll probably be married and have kids yourself. | You have to go to bed by nine o'clock from now on (=starting now and going on into the future).*

**3** used to say how far away something is: *I live about a mile from the school.*

**4** used to say where someone was born, lives, or works: *My grandfather came from Mexico. | I'm from Minneapolis. | Someone from the library is going to talk to the class.*

**5** used to say who has given or sent something: *Who is the present from?*

**6** used to say where something was originally: *Will you get me a chair from the kitchen? | This box is from China.*

**7** used to say what something is made of: *Ice cream is made from milk and sugar.*

**8** used to say where you are when you see or do something: *From the top of the mountain, you can see the ocean.*

## front<sup>1</sup> /frʌnt/ noun

**1** the part of something that is furthest forward: *The front of the store is painted blue. | Good students usually sit near the front of the room.* **ANTONYM** back

**2** the most important side of something, that you look at first: *The book had a picture of a lion on the front. | The front of your T-shirt has ketchup on it.* **ANTONYM** back

**3** **in front of someone or something a)** ahead of someone or something: *There's a big tree in front of their house. | Two girls were standing in front of me in line. b) facing someone or something: *They ate dinner in front of the TV.* **ANTONYM** behind*

**4** **in front of someone** = when someone is there: *Her parents never argue in front of their kids.*

**5** **out front** = in the area near the entrance to the building that you are in: *The boys were playing out front.*

## front<sup>2</sup> adjective

at, on, or in the front of something: *The front door was locked. | He got in the front seat of the car.* **ANTONYM** back

## frontier /frʌn'tɪr/ noun

**1** **the frontier** = the edge of an area of land where people have not lived before and where they are just beginning to live: *In the 1880s, the land that is now Colorado and Utah was still the frontier.*

**2** formal the place where two countries meet: *There has been fighting along the frontier.* **SYNONYM** border

## frost /frɒst/ noun

a white powder of ice that covers things that are outside when it is very cold: *The trees were white with frost.*

—**frosty** adjective very cold and with frost

→ See Thesaurus box at **snow<sup>1</sup>**

## frost-bite /'frɒstbaɪt/ noun

if you get frostbite, parts of your body freeze and are badly damaged: *His hands had frostbite after he got lost and spent the night in the snow.*

## frost-ing /'frɒstɪŋ/ noun

a mixture made with sugar, that you put on a cake: *a cake with chocolate frosting* **SYNONYM** icing

## frown /fraʊn/ verb

to look angry or unhappy by moving your EYEBROWS and the edges of your mouth



downward: *The coach frowned as Steve missed the shot.*

—**frown** *noun* an angry or unhappy expression you make when you frown

**froze** /frouz/ *verb*

the past tense of FREEZE

**fro·zen**<sup>1</sup> /'frouzən/ *verb*

the past participle of FREEZE

**frozen**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** food that is frozen has been kept very cold: *a bag of frozen peas*

**2** made into ice because of the cold: *People were skating on the frozen lake.*

→ See picture at **melt**

**fruit** /frut/ *noun*

something such as an apple or orange that grows on a plant or tree, can be eaten as food, contains seeds, and is usually sweet: *Bananas are my favorite fruit. | I always have a piece of fruit in my lunch box.*

**fruit·ful** /'frutfəl/ *adjective, formal*

producing something that is good or useful: *Spielberg has had a fruitful career as a movie director.*

**frus·trate** /'frʌstreɪt/ *verb*

**1** if something frustrates you, it makes you feel annoyed or angry because you cannot do or have what you want: *It really frustrates me when my parents don't listen to me.*

**2** *formal* to stop someone from being able to do something: *Computer problems frustrated their effort to finish the work on time.*

—**frustrated** *adjective* annoyed and angry because you cannot do or have what you want: *David got really frustrated because he couldn't understand the math homework.*

—**frustrating** *adjective* making you feel frustrated: *It's so frustrating when the team plays really well, but we still lose.*

—**frustration** /frʌ'streɪʃən/ *noun* the feeling of being frustrated: *He couldn't do the puzzle, and started crying in frustration.*

**fry** /fraɪ/ *verb* **fried**

to cook something in hot oil, butter, etc.: *I fried some bacon for breakfast.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cook**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A14

**'frying ,pan** *noun*

a round flat pan with a handle that you use to fry food

→ See picture on page A9

**ft.**

the written abbreviation of **foot**

**fudge** /fʌdʒ/ *noun*

a kind of soft candy, made with butter, sugar, milk, and usually chocolate: *He ate a piece of fudge.*

**fu·el** /'fyuəl/ *noun*

a substance such as coal, gas, or oil that you can burn to make heat or power: *The plane has enough fuel to fly from Chicago to Los Angeles.*

—**fuel** *verb* to put fuel in a car, airplane, etc.

**fu·gi·tive** /'fyudzətɪv/ *noun, formal*

someone who is trying to avoid being caught by the police: *He is a fugitive who the police have been looking for for months.*

**ful·fill** /fʊl'fɪl/ *verb, formal*

to do something you wanted or promised to do: *Mr. Jackson fulfilled his promise and gave Robert a job.*

—**fulfillment** *noun* the act of doing something you wanted or promised to do

**full** /fʊl/ *adjective*

**1** something that is full has as many things or people as possible in it: *This suitcase is full; I can't fit any more clothes into it. | a full carton of milk* **ANTONYM** **empty**

#### THESAURUS: full

**filled with something** full of something: *The bucket was filled with water.*

**packed** extremely full of people or things: *The stadium was packed with fans.*

**crammed** full of people or things: *The book is crammed with information.*

**2 be full of something** = to contain many things of the same kind: *Eric's essay is full of mistakes. | The room was full of people.*

**3** if you are full, you have eaten a lot and cannot eat any more: *"Would you like some more soup?" "No thanks. I'm full."*

**4** complete and including everything: *What is your full name and address? | It was a full year before she was able to get a job.*

**5** the highest level or biggest amount of something that is possible: *The ship was going at full speed. | I bought this dress on sale; I didn't pay full price for it.*

→ See picture at **empty**<sup>1</sup>



**full-length** adjective

**1** not shorter than the usual length: *"Snow White" was the first full-length cartoon movie.*

**2** showing all of a person: *a full-length mirror*

**3** a full-length skirt or dress reaches the ground

**full moon** noun

the moon when it looks completely round



**full-time** adverb

if you work or study full-time, you work

or study for the usual number of hours that people are expected to: *Angela works full-time and takes an evening class.*

—**'full-time** adjective working or studying full-time: *a full-time student*

**fully** /'fʊli/ adverb

completely: *The snake can be six feet long when it is fully grown.*

**fumble** /'fʌmbəl/ verb

**1** to try to hold, move, or find something with your hands in an awkward way: *Gary fumbled for the light switch in the dark.*

**2** to drop a football after catching it: *He caught the pass, but then fumbled the ball as he fell.*

—**fumble** noun the act of dropping a football

**fumes** /'fjumz/ plural noun

gas or smoke that has an unpleasant smell: *Exhaust fumes from cars, buses, trucks, and planes pollute the air.*

**fun** /fʌn/ noun

**1** enjoyment or pleasure that you get from an activity: *Swimming is a lot of fun. | All the kids were having fun at the party. | He began running in college for fun, and now he's on the track team.*

**USAGE: fun**

Use **fun** to talk about situations or activities that you enjoy: *Swimming is a lot of fun.*

Use **funny** to describe someone or something that makes you laugh: *The movie was so funny we couldn't stop laughing.*

**2** make fun of someone or something = to

make unkind jokes about someone or something: *Some children made fun of him because he liked to dance.*

**fun**<sup>2</sup> adjective

an activity that is fun is enjoyable: *There are lots of fun things to do at the beach.*

**function**<sup>1</sup> /'fʌŋkʃən/ **Ac** noun

**1** the purpose that something has, or the job that something or someone does: *The function of the kidneys is to remove waste from your body.*

**2** a large party or social event: *The room is available for weddings and other social functions.*

—**functional** adjective designed to be useful or do a particular job, rather than to look attractive

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **function** noun
- **function** verb
- **functional** adjective

**function**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to work in a particular way: *The air conditioning isn't functioning properly.* **SYNONYM** work

**PHRASAL VERB**

**function as something**

to be used in a particular way: *The building still functions as an office.*

**fund**<sup>1</sup> /fʌnd/ **Ac** noun

**1** an amount of money that is collected for a particular purpose: *the congressman's campaign fund*

**2** **funds** = the money that an organization needs or has: *The organization helps raise funds for the school.*

**fund**<sup>2</sup> verb

to pay money for an activity, organization, or person: *The government is funding the project.* **SYNONYM** pay for

**fun-da-men-tal** /,fʌndə'mentl/ **Ac** adjective, formal

**1** relating to the most basic and important parts of something: *When my dad lost his job, there was a fundamental change in the way we lived.* **SYNONYM** basic

**2** necessary for something to exist or develop: *Water is fundamental to life.* **SYNONYM** necessary

—**fundamentally** adverb, formal: *The band's*



music is fundamentally different now; they used to play rock, but now they play hip-hop.

**fu-ner-al** /'fyunərəl/ *noun*

a ceremony at which a dead person's body is buried or CREMATED (=burned): *There will be a funeral service in the Baptist church.*

**fun-gus** /'fʌŋgəs/ *noun* plural **fungi** /'fʌndʒaɪ/ or **funguses**

a growing thing like a plant without leaves that grows in wet places: *Mushrooms are a type of fungus.*

—**funga** *adjective* caused by a fungus: *fun-gal infections*

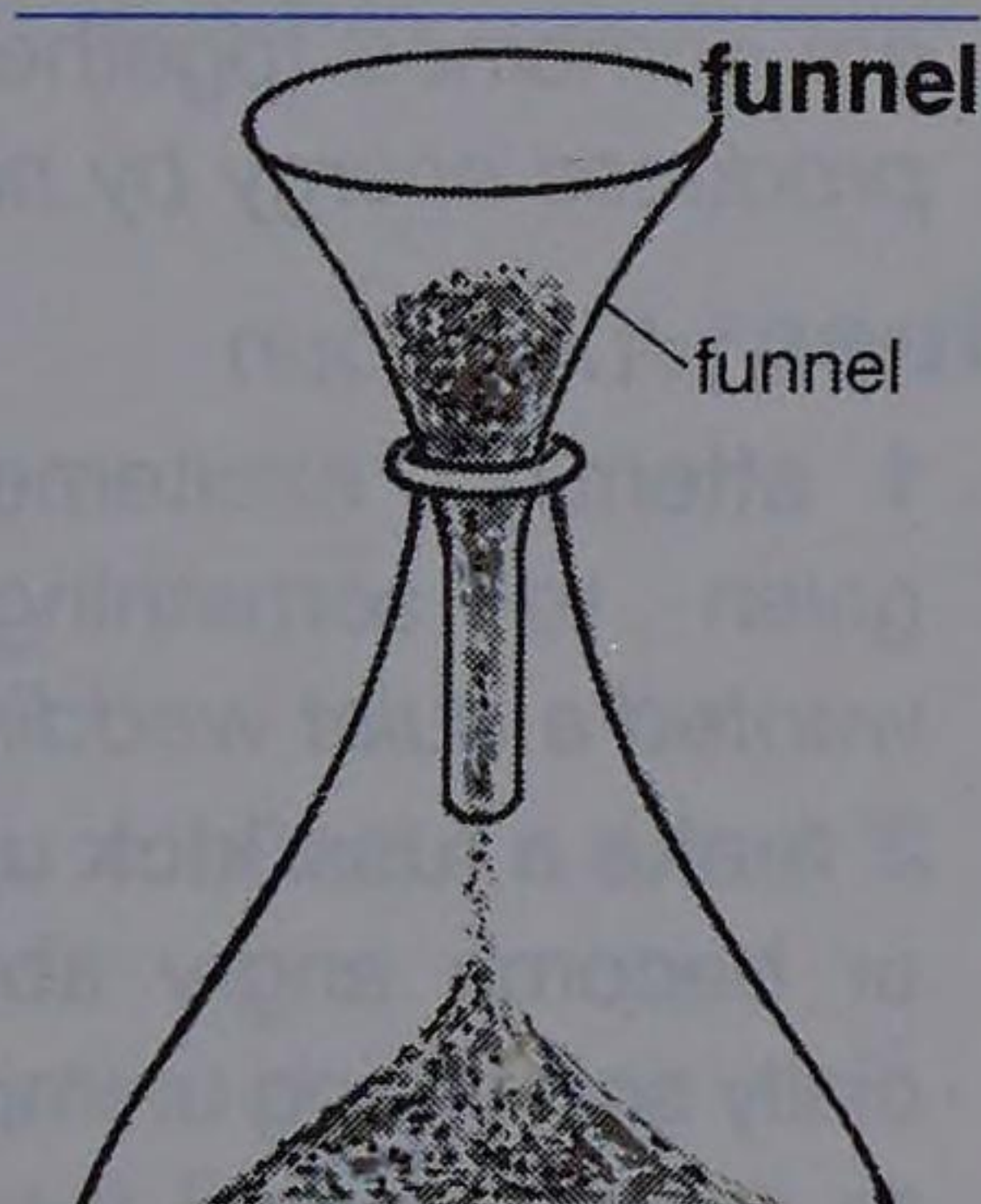
**funk-y** /'fʌŋki/ *adjective, informal*

**1** fashionable and interesting in an unusual way: *She was wearing some really funky pants.*

**2** funky music has a strong RHYTHM that is easy to dance to

**fun-nel** /'fʌnl/ *noun*

a tube that is wide at the top and narrow at the bottom, used for pouring liquids or powders into a container



**funny** /'fʌni/ *adjective* **funnier, funniest**

**1** if something is funny, it makes you laugh: *She told a funny story about forgetting to bring her shoes to the wedding. | I thought the show was very funny.*

**THESAURUS: funny**

**hilarious** very funny: *This book is hilarious; it's all about this guy's trip through Europe and the stupid things that happen.*

**witty** using words in a funny and intelligent way: *She's a smart, witty woman who always has something interesting to say.*

**corny** *informal* corny jokes, stories, movies, etc. are like ones you have heard or seen before and are so silly that they are not funny: *Dad told us a few corny jokes he'd heard at work.*

**amusing** *formal* funny and entertaining: *The movie is full of amusing surprises.*

**humorous** *formal* funny: *There's a humorous story in the newspaper about a dog that flies kites.*

**2** strange and difficult to understand or explain: *We heard a funny noise. | Your voice sounds funny. Do you have a cold?*

**3 feel funny** = to feel slightly sick  
→ See Thesaurus box at **strange**<sup>1</sup>

**fur** /fə/ *noun*

the thick soft hair that covers the bodies of some animals, such as dogs and cats: *The dog's fur was thick and soft.*

—**fur** *adjective* made of fur: *a fur coat*

**fu-ri-ous** /'fyuriəs/ *adjective*

**1** very angry: *Dad was furious that I had taken the car without asking.*

**2** happening very quickly or done with a lot of energy or anger: *New businesses started opening at a furious pace (=very quickly).*

—**furiously** *adverb*

→ See Thesaurus box at **angry**

**fur-nace** /'fənis/ *noun*

a large container with a fire inside it, used to produce heat in a building or to melt metal

**fur-nish** /'fəniʃ/ *verb*

**1** to put furniture and other things into a room, house, etc.: *We furnished the room with two beds and a dresser.*

**2 formal** to give or provide something: *The U.S. embassy can furnish you with a visa application form.*

—**furnished** *adjective* a furnished room, building, etc. already has furniture in it: *a furnished apartment*

**fur-nish-ings** /'fəniʃɪŋz/ *plural noun, formal*

the furniture and other things in a room, such as curtains, lights, etc.

**fur-ni-ture** /'fənitʃə/ *noun*

objects such as chairs, tables, and beds that you use in a room, office, etc.: *The only piece of furniture in the room was an old sofa. | office furniture*

**GRAMMAR: furniture**

Do not say "furnitures." You can say **some furniture**, **any furniture**, or **pieces of furniture**: *When we first got married, we didn't have any furniture at all.*



**fur·ry** /'fəri/ adjective

- 1 a furry animal has a body that is covered in fur
- 2 covered with fur or in a material that looks like fur: *furry slippers*

**fur·ther** /'fɜːðə/ adverb

- 1 more, or to a greater degree: *I have nothing further to say because I don't have any new information.*
- 2 **take something further** = to continue doing something at higher or more serious levels: *The lawyers decided not to take the case further because they knew they couldn't win.*
- 3 used to say that a place is a greater distance away than another place: *We sailed further down the coast toward North Carolina.* **SYNONYM** farther
- 4 used to say that a time is longer away than another time: *We have to plan for the future and look further ahead, beyond the next ten years.* **SYNONYM** farther

**USAGE: further**

Use **further** to talk about time, amounts, or the level of something: *Your grades cannot drop further, or you won't be able to play on the soccer team. | I don't want to discuss this any further.*

Use **farther** to talk about distance: *Room 211 is just a little farther down the hall.*

Many people use **further** in spoken English to talk about distance, but many teachers think that this is not correct.

→ See Thesaurus box at **more**<sup>2</sup>

**further**<sup>2</sup> adjective, formal

additional or more: *Further information is available on the website.* **SYNONYM** more

**fur·ther·more** /'fɜːðə,mɔː/ **Ac** adverb, formal

in addition to what has already been written or said: *Mary had no family. Furthermore, she had few friends to help her.*

**fur·thest** /'fɜːðɪst/ adjective, adverb

- 1 at the greatest distance from a place or person: *The houses furthest away from the center of town are the most expensive.* **SYNONYM** farthest
- 2 to the greatest degree or amount: *Smith's book has probably gone furthest (=done the most) in explaining these events.*

**fu·ry** /'fyuri/ noun

a feeling of very strong anger: *She was shaking with fury and yelling at the man who hit her car.*

**fuse** /'fyuz/ noun

- 1 a thin wire inside a piece of electrical equipment that breaks and prevents damage to the equipment if too much electricity passes through it: *The lights went out when a fuse blew (=broke).*
- 2 a part that is connected to a bomb, used for making a bomb explode: *He lit the fuse and ran.*
- 3 **have a short fuse** = used for saying that someone becomes angry: *Mom has a short fuse (=gets angry easily) when she's tired.*

**fu·sion** /'fyuʒən/ noun, formal

- 1 a combination of separate things: *a fusion of Japanese and Californian cooking*
- 2 a process in which different substances are combined together, using heat: *The Sun produces energy by nuclear fusion.*

**fuss**<sup>1</sup> /fʌs/ noun

- 1 attention, excitement, or activity that is given to something unimportant: *They wanted a quiet wedding without any fuss.*
- 2 **make a fuss/kick up a fuss** = to complain or become angry about something, especially something unimportant: *Don't be afraid to make a fuss if they don't give you what you asked for.*
- 3 **make a fuss over someone** = to give too much attention to someone: *Don't make a fuss over him; he's just crying because he wants attention.*

**fuss**<sup>2</sup> verb**PHRASAL VERBS****fuss over someone**

to give a lot of attention to someone, especially a child: *The women started fussing over Kate's baby.*

**fuss with something**

to continuously move or touch something in a way that shows you are nervous: *Stop fussing with your clothes; you look great!*

**fuss·y** /'fʌsi/ adjective **fussier, fussiest**

- 1 someone who is fussy about something is not satisfied until every detail is exactly right, which makes them difficult to please: *He's*



very fussy about his clothes – he won't wear anything that he thinks isn't cool. **SYNONYM**

**picky**

**2** a fussy baby cries a lot

—**fussily** adverb

—**fussiness** noun

**fu·tile** /'fyutl/ adjective, formal

actions that are futile have no chance of being successful, and are not worth doing: *I made a futile attempt to calm her down, but she just kept crying.*

—**futility** /'fyu'tɪləti/ noun, formal the fact that something you do is futile: *We realized the futility of our efforts to put out such a huge fire.*

**fu·ture**<sup>1</sup> /'fyutʃə/ noun

**1** the future = the time after the present: *He talked about his plans for the future.* | *We plan to open a new library in the near future* (=soon). **ANTONYM** **past**

**2** the things that will happen to someone or

something in the future: *The president said he had great plans for the country's future, with better jobs and health care for everyone.* | *the future of the human race*

**3** the future = the FUTURE TENSE

**future**<sup>2</sup> adjective, formal

relating to or happening in the future: *What are your future plans?* | *A good degree will help you in your future career.* **ANTONYM** **past**

**'future ,tense** noun

the form of a verb that you use when you are talking about the future. In English "I will go" is in the future tense.

**fuzz·y** /'fʌzi/ adjective, informal

**1** covered with short soft hair or fur: *fuzzy slippers*

**2** unclear and confusing: *It happened a long time ago and my memory is fuzzy now.*

**3** if a sound or picture is fuzzy, it is not clear: *Unfortunately, a lot of the photographs are fuzzy.*



# Gg

**g.**

the written abbreviation of **gram**

**G** /dʒi/ *noun*

the fifth note in the musical **SCALE** of C, or the musical **KEY** based on this note

**gadg-et** /'gædʒɪt/ *noun*

a small tool or machine, especially a new one: *He has a new gadget for opening jars.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **machine**<sup>1</sup>

**gag** /gæg/ *noun*

**1** *informal* a joke: *The show had some good gags in it.*

**2** a piece of cloth that someone ties over your mouth so that you cannot speak

—**gag** *verb* to tie a piece of cloth over someone's mouth: *They tied him up and gagged him.*

**gain** /geɪn/ *verb*

**1** to get something important or useful: *It was four hours before firefighters gained control of the fire. | I've gained a lot from taking the writing class; I feel much more confident.* **ANTONYM** **lose**

**2** **gain weight/speed/popularity, etc.** = to become heavier, faster, more popular, etc.: *If you eat a lot of fried food, you will gain weight.* **ANTONYM** **lose**

—**gain** *noun* the act of gaining something: *What is the reason for his weight gain?*

**gait** /geɪt/ *noun, formal*

the way that someone walks: *He walked with an unsteady gait.*

**gal-ax-y** /'gæləksi/ *noun* plural **galaxies**

a very large group of stars: *There are billions of stars in the galaxy.*

—**galactic** /gə'læktɪk/ *adjective, formal* relating to a galaxy

**gale** /geɪl/ *noun*

a very strong wind: *Several trees blew down in the gale.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **wind**<sup>1</sup>

**gal-ler-y** /'gæləri/ *noun* plural **galleries**

a room or building where people can look at or buy art: *We went to an exhibit at the National Gallery of Art.*

**gal-lon** /'gælən/ *noun*

a unit for measuring liquid, equal to eight PINTS: *I put five gallons of gas in the car.*



**gallop**

**gal-lop** /'gæləp/ *verb*

if a horse gallops, it runs very fast

—**gallop** *noun* the fastest speed that a horse can run: *He was riding at a gallop.*

**gam-ble**<sup>1</sup> /'gæmbəl/ *verb*

to try to win money by playing cards, guessing the result of a race or game, etc.: *He couldn't stop gambling and lost all his money.*

—**gambler** *noun* someone who gambles

—**gambling** *noun* the activity of gambling

**gamble**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

an action that might not have a successful result: *I took a gamble, and quit my job to become an actor.* **SYNONYM** **risk**

**game** /geɪm/ *noun*

**1** a sport or enjoyable activity in which you try to win: *My favorite game is basketball. | My brother spends a lot of time playing computer games. | The kids were outside playing games.*

## THESAURUS: game

**sport** a physical activity in which people or teams play against each other and try to win: *Her favorite sport is basketball.*

**recreation** activities that you do for fun: *Kids need safe places for recreation.*

**hobby** an activity that you do in your free time: *Her hobbies are reading and music.*

**2** a particular occasion when people play a



type of game: *We won the basketball game last night. | Let's play a game of chess.*

**3 play games (with someone)** = to behave dishonestly toward someone: *Don't play games with me – I know you're not telling me the truth.*

**4** wild animals and birds that people hunt: *He hunts deer and other game.*

**'game show** *noun*

a television program in which people play games in order to win prizes

→ See Thesaurus box at **television**

**'gang<sup>1</sup>** /gæŋ/ *noun*

**1** a group of people who do something together: *A gang of kids were hanging out on the basketball court.*

**2** an organized group of young people living in a city who may cause trouble and be involved in violent activities: *A teenage gang member was shot in his car last night.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group<sup>1</sup>**

**'gang<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**'gang up on someone**

if a group of people gangs up on someone, they all criticize, attack, or make jokes about him or her: *My brothers used to gang up on me and tease me.*

**'gang-ster** /'gæŋstə/ *noun*

a member of a group of violent criminals

**'gap** /gæp/ *noun*

**1** an empty space between two things or two parts of something: *I squeezed through a gap in the fence. | She has a big gap between her two front teeth.*

**2** a difference between two people, things, or groups: *We should be trying to bridge the gap between rich and poor (=make the difference between rich people and poor people smaller).*

**3** something that is missing, so that something else is not good or complete: *The new information fills a gap in our knowledge of biology (=makes our knowledge more complete).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hole**

**'gap-ing** /'geɪpɪŋ/ *adjective*

a gaping hole is very wide: *There were gaping holes in his pants.*

**'ga-rage** /gə'reɪʒ/ *noun*

**1** a building connected to your house where you keep your car: *Did you close the garage door?*

**2** a place where cars are repaired: *The guy at the garage said he could fix my car today.*

**3** another word for a PARKING GARAGE

**'ga-rage ,sale** *noun*

a sale of things that you no longer want, inside or outside your garage: *My parents bought a lot of our toys at garage sales.*

**'gar-bage** /'gɑːbɪdʒ/ *noun*

**1** waste food, paper, etc., or the container you put it in: *Throw the wrapper in the garbage. | Can somebody take out the garbage (=put it outside so that a garbage truck can take it away)?*

**THESAURUS: garbage**

**trash** things that you throw away, such as old food and dirty paper: *Six bags were full of trash.*

**refuse** formal things that you throw away, such as old food and dirty paper: *The city buries the refuse it collects.*

**litter** garbage, especially pieces of paper, food containers, etc., that people leave on the ground in public places: *The Scouts picked up litter in the park.*

**waste** formal things that are left after you have used something: *Is there a way to safely get rid of waste from nuclear power stations?*

**2** informal something someone says that is very bad or silly: *I'm not going to listen to this garbage – nothing you are saying is true.*

**'garbage ,can** *noun*

a large container outside your home in which you put waste **SYNONYM trash can**

→ See picture on page A9

**'garbage col-lector** also **'garbage ,man** *noun*

someone whose job is to take away the things inside garbage cans

**'garbage ,truck** *noun*

a large vehicle that carries away things from garbage cans

**'gar-den** /'gɑːdn/ *noun*

a piece of land where you grow flowers or vegetables, next to your house or in a public place: *She's outside working in the vegetable garden.*



**gar·den·ing** /'gɑ:dnɪŋ/ *noun*

the work of growing plants in a garden: *My Dad does all the gardening.*

—**gardener** *noun* someone who works in a garden, especially as a job

**gar·gle** /'gɑ:ɡəl/ *verb*

to clean your throat by breathing out while you have a liquid in the back of your mouth: *If you have a sore throat, try gargling with salt water.*

**gar·lic** /'gɑ:rlɪk/ *noun*

a small plant like an onion that is used to give a strong taste to food

—**garlicky** *adjective* tasting or smelling of garlic

→ See picture on page A12

**gar·ment** /'gɑ:mənt/ *noun, formal*

a piece of clothing: *The women wore simple black garments.*

**gas** /ɡæs/ *noun plural gases*

**1** a liquid that you put in a car to make it go: *I had to stop for gas.* **SYNONYM** gasoline

**2** a substance like air. People burn some kinds of gas to heat their houses or cook food: *Oxygen is a gas.* | a gas stove

**3** the gas = the PEDAL that you use to make a car go faster: *He started the car and stepped on the gas (=pushed down on the pedal).*

**gas·e·ous** /'ɡæsiəs/ *adjective, formal*

in a form like air: *gaseous fuels*

**gash** /ɡæʃ/ *noun*

a deep cut: *She had a gash in her leg that was bleeding.*

—**gash** *verb* to make a deep cut in something

**gas·o·line** /,ɡæsə'lin/ *noun*

a liquid that you put in a car to make it go  
**SYNONYM** gas

**gasp** /ɡæsp/ *verb*

to breathe in quickly and loudly, once or several times: *The audience gasped with surprise.* | *She put her head above the water and gasped for air.*

—**gasp** *noun* a quick breath in: a gasp of astonishment

→ See Thesaurus box at **breathe**

**'gas ,station** *noun*

a place where you can buy gas for your car

**gate** /geɪt/ *noun*

**1** a door in a fence or outside wall: *Who left the gate open?*

**2** a place where you leave an airport building to get on a plane: *Passengers for Flight 186 should go to Gate 7.*

→ See picture on page A30

**gate·way** /'geɪtweɪ/ *noun*

**the gateway to something** = a place from which you can reach another place: *St. Louis was once the gateway to the western part of the U.S.*

**gath·er** /'ɡæðə/ *verb*

**1** to come together in a group: *A crowd gathered to watch the fight.* | *Children gathered around him.*

**2** also **gather up** to bring things from different places together: *She gathered up her clothes and put them in a suitcase.*

**3** to think something because of what you have heard: *I heard her talking to her friend, and I gather (that) they are moving to Chicago.*

**gath·er·ing** /'ɡæðərɪŋ/ *noun*

a meeting of a group of people: *We have a family gathering every summer when all my cousins, aunts, and uncles come to our house.*

**gauge<sup>1</sup>** /geɪdʒ/ *noun*

an instrument that measures something: *The gas gauge showed that the car needed more gas.*

**gauge<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to find out or measure how good, big, etc. something is: *How do teachers gauge the amount of progress a student has made?* | *I wanted to ask him to help me, so I talked to him for a minute to gauge his mood (=find out if he was in a good mood or bad mood).*

**SYNONYM** find out, measure

**gauze** /ɡɔ:z/ *noun*

a type of very thin cloth used for covering wounds and making clothes

**gave** /geɪv/ *verb*

the past tense of GIVE

**gay** /geɪ/ *adjective*

**1** sexually attracted to people of the same sex: *Do you think he's gay?* **SYNONYM** homosexual; **ANTONYM** straight

**2** an old-fashioned word meaning bright or happy: *The room was painted in gay colors.*



**gaze** /geɪz/ verb

to look at someone or something for a long time: *He gazed at his reflection in the mirror.*

—**gaze** noun, formal a long, steady look: *She turned her gaze back to the TV (=looked back at the TV).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **look**<sup>1</sup>

**gear** /gɪr/ noun

**1** part of a car, bicycle, etc. that makes it move well at different speeds: *She shifted into first gear, and the car moved forward slowly.*

**2** special equipment or clothes that you need for an activity: *camping gear*

**gear-shift** /'gɪr,ʃɪft/ noun

a stick that you move to change gears when driving a car

→ See picture on page A28

**GED** noun

**General Equivalency Diploma** an official piece of paper that people who did not finish HIGH SCHOOL can get by taking a test

**gee** /dʒi/

something you say when you are surprised, excited, etc.: *Gee, that pie smells good!*

**geese** /gis/ noun

the plural of GOOSE

**gel** /dʒel/ noun

a thick clear wet substance: *He uses hair gel to make his hair stick up.*

**gel-a-tin** /'dʒelətən/ noun

a clear substance that is used to make foods such as Jell-O more solid

**gem** /dʒem/ noun

**1** a valuable stone that has been cut into a particular shape: *diamonds and other gems*  
SYNONYM **jewel**

**2** informal something that is very good or special: *This book is a gem that every teenager should read.*

**Gem-i-ni** /'dʒemə,naɪ/ noun

**1** the third sign of the ZODIAC, represented by TWINS

**2** someone born between May 21 and June 21

**gem-stone** /'dʒem,stoun/ noun

a valuable stone

**gen-der** /'dʒendə/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

**1** the fact of being male or female: *You cannot choose the gender of a baby.*

**2** in grammar, the fact of being MASCULINE,

FEMININE, or NEUTER: *In some languages, like Spanish, nouns have different genders.*

**gene** /dʒɪn/ noun

a part of a cell in a living thing that controls what the living thing is like, for example what color someone's eyes are, how tall a plant is, etc.

**gen-er-al**<sup>1</sup> /'dʒenərəl/ adjective

**1** relating to the whole of something or to the main parts: *Except for one cold, my general health has been good. | The class is a general introduction to computers.*

**2 in general a)** usually or mostly: *In general, I am happier than I used to be.* SYNONYM **overall b)** used when talking about all things or people of one type: *I like animals in general, and dogs in particular.*

**3** including or relating to most people, things, etc.: *The drug is not yet available for general use (=use by most people).*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **general** adjective
- **generally** adverb
- **generalize** verb
- **generalization** noun

**general**<sup>2</sup> noun

an officer with a very high rank in the Army, Air Force, or Marines

**gen-er-al-ize** /'dʒenərə,laɪz/ verb

to say something about people or things of a particular kind which may not be true about all of them: *You shouldn't generalize about women by saying that they are all bad drivers.*

—**generalization** /,dʒenərələ'zeɪʃən/ noun  
a statement in which someone generalizes: *Don't make generalizations because they are almost never true.*

**gen-er-al-ly** /'dʒenərəli/ adverb

**1** usually or mostly: *I generally go to bed at about 11, but sometimes it's later. | Her school work is generally very good.*

**2** by most people: *She is generally thought to be (=most people think she is) one of the best singers in the world.*

**gen-er-ate** /'dʒenə,reit/ **[Ac]** verb

to produce something: *We burn coal to generate electricity. | The program will generate a lot of new jobs.*

WORD FAMILY → **generator** noun



**gen·er·a·tion** /ˌdʒenə'reɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** the people in a society or family who are about the same age: *Three generations of my family have lived in this house – first my grandparents, then my parents, and now me.*

**2** a period of about 25 years, which is the time between two generations of a family: *A generation ago, video games were pretty simple.*

**gen·er·a·tor** /ˈdʒenə'reɪtə/ *noun*

a machine that makes electricity

**gen·er·os·i·ty** /ˌdʒenə'rəsəti/ *noun*

generous behavior: *Thank you for your generosity; the money you have given us has been very helpful to our work.*

**gen·er·ous** /ˈdʒenərəs/ *adjective*

someone who is generous gives a lot of help, money, things, etc.: *She's always been generous to the kids. | He is generous with his time (=is willing to spend time helping people). | generous gifts*

—**generously** *adverb*

**ge·net·ics** /dʒə'netɪks/ *noun*

the study of GENES

—**genetic** *adjective* relating to or caused by genes: *He was born with a genetic disease that caused problems with his heart.*

**ge·nius** /ˈdʒɪniəs/ *noun*

someone who has much more intelligence, ability, or skill than is usual: *Mozart was a musical genius who was writing music when he was five years old.*

**gen·o·cide** /ˈdʒenə'saɪd/ *noun, formal*

an attempt to kill a whole race of people

**gen·re** /ˈʒɑnrə/ *noun, formal*

a particular type of art, music, writing, etc.: *Science fiction is my favorite genre of literature.*

**gen·tle** /ˈdʒentl/ *adjective*

**1** kind, and careful not to hurt anyone or anything: *Be gentle with the baby – don't hurt her.*

**2** not strong, loud, or extreme: *She sang in a gentle voice, and I fell asleep. | The gentle breeze was just enough to keep us cool.*

—**gently** *adverb*: *His mother gently wiped away his tears.*

—**gentleness** *noun*

**gen·tle·man** /ˈdʒentlmən/ *noun plural*

**gentlemen** /ˈdʒentlmən/

**1** a polite word for a man you do not know: *Can you show this gentleman to his seat? | Thank you, ladies and gentlemen.*

**2** a man who is polite and behaves well: *He was always a gentleman around my parents, so they liked him.*

**gen·u·ine** /ˈdʒenyuɪn/ *adjective*

real, not pretended or false: *Her surprise was genuine – she really didn't know about the party. | Is the stone a genuine diamond?*

—**genuinely** *adverb*: *He seemed genuinely sad; I don't think he was trying to make us feel sorry for him.*

**ge·og·ra·phy** /dʒi'ɑgrəfi/ *noun*

the study of the Earth's surface and the countries of the world: *We're studying the geography of South America in science class.*

—**geographical** /ˌdʒiə'græfɪkəl/ *also* **geo-graphic** *adjective* relating to the Earth's surface and the countries of the world: *The map shows geographical features such as mountains and rivers.*

**ge·ol·o·gy** /dʒi'ælədʒi/ *noun*

the study of rocks and soil

—**geologist** *noun* someone who studies rocks and soil

—**geological** /ˌdʒiə'lədʒɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to rocks and soil: *the geological processes that form rocks*

**ge·om·e·try** /dʒi'əmətri/ *noun*

the study of shapes, lines, etc. and the mathematics relating to them

—**geometric** /ˌdʒiə'metrɪk/ *adjective* relating to or made of shapes, lines, etc.: *a geometric pattern*

**germ** /dʒə'm/ *noun*

a living thing that can make you sick, which is too small to see: *Sneezing spreads germs.*

**Ger·man** /ˈdʒə'mən/ *noun*

**1** someone from Germany

**2** the language spoken in Germany, Austria and parts of Switzerland

—**German** *adjective* from Germany

**German 'shepherd** *noun*

a large strong dog that is used by the police and for guarding property, and has black, gray, or brown fur



**ges·ture<sup>1</sup>** /'dʒestʃə/ noun

a movement of your hand, arms, or head, that shows what you mean or how you feel: *He made a gesture with his hands to show that he didn't understand what I was saying.*

**gesture<sup>2</sup>** verb

to move your hand, arms, or head, in order to tell someone something: *I gestured for the waiter to come over to our table.*

**get** /get/ verb **got** /gat/ **gotten** /'gatn/ getting

**1** to receive or be given something: *Did you get my email? | I got an A in Spanish. | She got lots of presents for her birthday from her friends. | I got a shock when I saw how high the price was.*

**2** to obtain or buy something: *Where did you get those shoes (=what store did you buy them in)?*

**3 have got** = to have something. "Have got" is used in spoken English. We usually shorten it to "I've/you've/they've got", and "she's/he's got": *I've got a lot of work to do.*

**4** to become: *It gets very hot here in the summer.*

**USAGE: get**

**Get**, **become**, and **go** can all mean "to begin to be something," but they are used in different ways.

**Get** and **go** are less formal than **become**, and are used more often in spoken English: *I got very hungry. | Have you gone crazy?*

**Become** is used in both written and spoken English: *He's becoming a very good tennis player. | The area has become popular with mountain bikers.*

**Get** and **go** are used only in front of an adjective (=word that describes something): *It's getting dark. | Beethoven went deaf when he was 40 years old.*

**Become** can be used in front of an adjective or a noun: *It became clear that Scott was not doing his work. | The noise from the airport is becoming a problem.*

**5** to move somewhere: *Get down on the floor! | They couldn't get out of the building.*

**6** to arrive or reach somewhere: *We got home very late.* **SYNONYM arrive**

**7** to catch an illness or disease: *I think I'm*

*getting a cold. | I got sick, and couldn't go to the restaurant.*

**8** to go onto a bus, plane, train, etc.: *He got the next plane to New York.* **SYNONYM catch**

**9** to bring someone or something back from somewhere: *She's gone to get the kids from school.* **SYNONYM pick up**

**USAGE: get**

**get** to go to another place and come back with something or someone: *Just a minute while I get my jacket.*

**bring** to take something or someone to a place: *You should bring her some flowers. | Elise brought her friend with her to the party.*

**take** to move something from one place to another, or help someone go from one place to another: *You'd better take your jacket – it's getting cold. | I can take you home after the concert.*

**10** to arrange for something to be done: *I need to get my car fixed.*

**11 get to do something** = if you get to do something, you are able to do it: *We got to see a lot of famous places.*

**12 get someone to do something** = to persuade someone to do something: *I'll see if I can get them to change the dates.*

**SYNONYM persuade**

**13** to reach a particular stage in a process: *I started reading the book, but I never got to the end.*

**14** to understand something: *I didn't get the joke.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****get ahead**

to become more successful in your work: *She wants to get ahead and run her own company.*

**get along (with someone)**

to have a friendly relationship with someone: *The two boys seem to get along well with each other.*

**get around something**

to avoid something that will cause problems: *I'm sure there is a way of getting around the problem.*

**get around to doing something**

to do something you have been intending to do for a long time: *I still haven't gotten around to calling her – I've been too busy.*



**get away**

to escape: *The police tried to stop the man, but he got away.*

**get back**

**1** to return: *When do you get back from your vacation?*

**2** to reply to someone at a later time: *Thanks for your call. I'll get back to you soon.*

**get behind**

to be late with your work, your payments for something, etc.: *I'm getting behind with my homework.*

**get in**

**1** to arrive somewhere: *What time does your flight get in?*

**2** **get something in** = to give something to someone, especially written work: *Make sure that you get your assignment in on time.*

SYNONYM **turn in**

**get into something**

**1** to be allowed to go to a school, college, or university: *She is hoping to get into Harvard.*

**2** to start to be in a situation, especially one that involves trouble or problems: *When he was young he was always getting into trouble with the police.*

**get off (something)**

**1** to leave a bus, train, airplane, etc.: *She got off at the next bus stop. I We had to get off the plane, because of problems with the engine.*

**2** to finish work: *What time do you get off work?*

**get on**

**1** to go onto a bus, train, airplane, etc.: *I couldn't get on because the bus was full. I We had to run to get on the train.*

**2** **get on with something** = to continue or to make progress with a job, work, etc.: *I need to get on with my work, or I won't finish it on time.*

**get out**

**1** to leave: *The professor kept talking, and we finally got out of class at 5 o'clock.*

**2** **get something out** = to remove something, especially a mark on cloth: *I spilled wine on my shirt, and the stain was hard to get out.*

**get out of (doing) something**

to avoid doing something that you should

do: *He's lazy, and he always tries to get out of doing any work.*

**get over**

**1** to feel better after a bad experience or an illness: *She never got over the death of her son.*

**2** **can't get over something** = used when you feel very surprised by something: *I can't get over how tall you are – you've grown about three inches since I last saw you!*

**get through**

**1** to succeed in calling someone on the telephone: *I finally got through to him, after trying four times.*

**2** **get through something** = to succeed in dealing with a bad experience: *It was hard work, but I got through it.*

**3** **get through something** = to finish doing something: *I have so much work to get through.*

**get up**

**1** to get out of your bed after you have been sleeping: *She usually gets up at 6.*

**2** to stand up: *He got up and started walking toward the door.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **buy, earn**

**get-a-way** /'getə,weɪ/ noun

**make your getaway** informal = to escape from somewhere: *The robbers made their getaway in a car parked outside the jewelry store.*

**'get-to, gether** noun

a small informal meeting or party: *We're having a little get-together with some friends. Do you want to come?*

→ See Thesaurus box at **party**

**ghet-to** /'getəʊ/ noun plural **ghettos** or **ghettoes**

a part of a city where poor people live in bad conditions, especially people of one particular race or social class: *He grew up in the ghetto, in one of the poorest areas of Chicago.*

**ghost** /gəʊst/ noun

the spirit of a dead person that some people think they can see: *The owner says she saw the ghost of a young girl in the old house.*

—**ghostly** adjective frightening and making you think of ghosts: *We heard a ghostly sound that we couldn't explain.*



**gi·ant<sup>1</sup>** /'dʒaɪənt/ *adjective*

very big, and much bigger than other things of the same type: *There was a giant screen in the baseball stadium.*

**giant<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

a very tall strong man, who appears in children's stories

**gift** /gift/ *noun*

**1** something that you give to someone as a present: *The scarf was a birthday gift from her daughter.* **SYNONYM** **present**

**2** a natural ability to do something well: *He has many gifts – he can sing, he can dance, and he is also very funny.* **SYNONYM** **talent**

**gift·ed** /'giftɪd/ *adjective*

having the natural ability to do something very well: *She is a gifted dancer.* **SYNONYM** **talented**

→ See Thesaurus box at **intelligent**

**gig·a·byte** /'gɪgə,baɪt/ *noun*

a unit for measuring computer information, equal to 1,024 MEGABYTES

**gi·gan·tic** /dʒaɪ'gæntɪk/ *adjective*

extremely large: *The gigantic tree was as tall as the house.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **big**

**gig·gle** /'gɪgəl/ *verb*

to laugh quickly and in a silly way, in a high voice: *The girl giggled at her boyfriend's joke.*

—**giggle** *noun* the sound of someone giggling

→ See Thesaurus box at **laugh<sup>1</sup>**

**gill** /gɪl/ *noun*

one of the parts at the sides of a fish's head with which it breathes

**gim·mick** /'gɪmɪk/ *noun, informal*

something unusual but not really useful, that a company uses to make you want to buy something: *Although the software is free, it's just a gimmick to make you buy more of the company's products.*

—**gimmicky** *adjective*

**gin** /dʒɪn/ *noun*

a strong clear alcoholic drink made from grain and berries: *She ordered a gin and tonic.*

**gin·ger** /'dʒɪndʒə/ *noun*

a light brown root with a strong taste, which is often used, for example, in Chinese cooking

**'ginger ,ale** *noun*

a sweet, gold-colored drink with bubbles

**gin·ger·bread** /'dʒɪndʒə,bred/ *noun*

a type of cookie or cake with ginger in it: a *gingerbread man* (=a cookie in the shape of a person)

**gi·raffe** /dʒə'ræf/ *noun*

a very tall African animal with a very long neck and long legs, and dark spots on its yellow-brown fur: *Giraffes have long necks so that they can eat the leaves off trees.*

**girl** /gɜ:l/ *noun*

**1** a female child: *She is a pretty little girl.*

**2** a daughter: *They have two boys and a girl.*

—**girlish** *adjective* like a little girl: *She has a girlish laugh.*

**girl·friend** /'gɜ:lfrend/ *noun*

**1** a girl or woman with whom you have a romantic relationship: *He's had lots of girlfriends.*

**2** a woman or girl's female friend: *My sister is always talking to her girlfriends on the phone.*

**'Girl ,Scouts** *noun*

an organization for girls that teaches them practical skills and helps them do outdoor activities such as camping and **HIKING**

—**Girl Scout** *noun* a girl who is a member of this organization

**give** /gɪv/ *verb* **gave** /geɪv/ **given** /'gɪvən/

**1** to let someone have something as a present: *She gave him a watch for his birthday.*

**2** to put something in someone's hand: *I gave my coat to the waiter.*

**3** to provide something for someone: *Can I give you some help? | Sugar gives you energy quickly.*

**4** to tell someone information or details about something: *I gave her my phone number.*

**5** to let someone do something: *The teacher gave me permission to miss the class.*

**6** to do an action: *She gave a big smile as she read the email. | Give me a call (=call me on the telephone) tonight.*

**7** to do a performance or talk: *The singer is giving a concert in New York. | I have to give a speech at the wedding.*

**8** to cause someone to have something: *I don't want to give you my cold. | My computer has been giving me problems.*



**9** to make someone have a punishment: *The judge gave him 5 years in prison.*

**10 give way** = to break or fall down suddenly under pressure: *The branch gave way because he was too heavy for it.*

**11 give or take** = used when saying that a number or amount is not exact: *The show lasts about an hour, give or take five minutes (=it may be five minutes longer or shorter).*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### give something away

to give someone something without asking for money: *I gave my old clothes away.*

##### give something back

to return something to its owner: *I'll give the money back to you next week.*

##### give in

to finally agree to do something that you did not want to do: *The kids kept asking for candy, and finally she gave in and bought them some.*

##### give off something

to produce a smell, light, heat, sound, etc.: *The old meat gave off a terrible smell.*

##### give something out

to give something to each person in a group: *The teacher gave out the exam to the students.*

#### THESAURUS: give

**pass** to take something and put it in someone's hand: *Could you pass me the salt?*

**hand** to pass something to someone: *He handed me a card with his phone number on it.*

**hand out/pass around** to give something to each of the people in a group: *Mr. Goodman handed out the tests. | Pass those cookies around, please.*

**distribute** formal to give things to a large number of people: *The money will be distributed to a number of schools in the area.*

##### give up

**1** to stop trying to do something because it is too difficult: *I couldn't find the keys anywhere, so I gave up.*

**2 give up something** = to stop doing something that you have done a lot: *My dad gave*

*up smoking about 10 years ago.* **SYNONYM** stop

**3 give yourself up** = to allow yourself or someone else to be caught by the police or enemy soldiers: *The man threw down his weapon and gave himself up to the police.*

**giv·en<sup>1</sup>** /'gɪvən/

the past participle of GIVE

**given<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**any given/a given ...** = any particular time, period, or situation that is being used as an example: *In any given year, over half of all accidents happen in the home.*

**given<sup>3</sup>** preposition

taking something into account: *Given his age, my grandfather is still very healthy and strong.*

**glac·ier** /'gleɪʃər/ noun

a large area of ice that moves very slowly over an area of land: *Much of Alaska is covered in glaciers and snow.*

**glad** /glæd/ adjective

**1** happy because something has happened: *I'm so glad that you're feeling better. | She was glad to be home again.*

**2 be glad to do something** = to be willing and happy to do something: *I would be glad to help you.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **happy**

**glad·ly** /'glædli/ adverb

in a way that shows you are happy or eager: *I gladly accepted his offer.*

**glam·or·ous** /'glæməərəs/ adjective

attractive and exciting because of being rich and successful: *the glamorous lives of Hollywood actors | a glamorous super model*

**glam·our** also **glamor** /'glæmə/ noun

the attractive and exciting quality of being connected with wealth and success: *the glamour of Hollywood*

**glance<sup>1</sup>** /glæns/ verb

**1** to look at someone or something quickly and then look away: *He glanced at his watch while he was talking.*

**2 glance through something** = to read something very quickly: *She glanced through a magazine in the doctor's office.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **look<sup>1</sup>**



**glance**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a quick look: *She cast a glance (=looked quickly) around the room to see who was there.*

**2 at a glance** = immediately and by looking very quickly: *I knew at a glance that something was wrong.*

→ **at first glance** at **first**<sup>1</sup>

**gland** /glænd/ *noun*

a part of your body that produces a substance such as SWEAT or SALIVA: *Sweat glands help to keep your body cool when it is very hot.*

**glare**<sup>1</sup> /gler/ *verb*

**1** to look angrily at someone or something for a long time: *She glared at me, then asked me why I had lied to her.*

**2** to shine with a strong bright light that hurts your eyes: *The sun glared down on us all afternoon on the beach.*

**glare**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a strong bright light that hurts your eyes: *He wore dark glasses to protect his eyes from the glare of the sun.*

**2** a long angry look: *She gave him an angry glare.*

**glass** /glæs/ *noun*

**1** a hard clear material that is used for making windows, bottles, etc.: *The windows of the car are made of very strong glass. I a glass bottle*

**2** a glass container used for drinking: *a wine glass I a glass of milk*

→ See picture on page A9

**glass-es** /'glæsɪz/ *plural noun*

two round pieces of glass that you wear in front of your eyes in order to see better: *I have to wear glasses for reading. I You need a new pair of glasses.*

**glaze** /gleɪz/ also **glaze over** *verb*

if your eyes glaze, they show no expression because you are bored or tired: *Her eyes glazed over as soon as I started talking about my work.*

**gleam** /glim/ *verb*

**1** to shine because of being very clean: *He washed the windows until they gleamed.*

**2** if your eyes or face gleam, they show that you are excited: *Her eyes gleamed with excitement as she stepped onto the beach.*

—**gleam** *noun*: *There was an excited gleam in his eyes.*

**glee** /gli/ *noun*

a feeling of excitement and satisfaction, especially because something bad happens to someone: *He watched with glee as the other player hit the ball out of the tennis court.*

—**gleefully** *adverb* with a lot of excitement

**glide** /glɑɪd/ *verb*

to move smoothly and quietly: *We watched the sailboats glide across the lake.*

**glid-er** /'glɑɪdər/ *noun*

a light airplane that flies without an engine

**glim-mer**<sup>1</sup> /'glɪmər/ *noun*

**1** a slight feeling or look: *There is still a glimmer of hope that the men might be found alive.*

**2** a light that is not very bright: *the glimmer of a candle flame*

**glimmer**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to shine with a light that is not very bright: *We saw a light glimmering far across the lake.*

**glimpse** /glɪmps/ *noun*

a very quick look at someone or something: *The fans waited outside the singer's hotel, hoping to catch a glimpse of her (=see her for a short time).*

—**glimpse** *verb* to see someone or something, but only for a very short time: *I thought I glimpsed Cindy in the crowd as I drove by.*

**glis-ten** /'glɪsən/ *verb*

to shine and look wet or oily: *Her eyes glistened with tears.*

**glitch** /glɪtʃ/ *noun*

a small problem, especially a technical problem, that stops something from working correctly: *The plane took off late because of a glitch in the computer system.*

**glit-ter** /'glɪtər/ *verb*

to shine brightly with a lot of small flashes of light: *New snow glittered in the sunlight.*

—**glitter** *noun*: *the glitter of her diamond ring*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shine**<sup>1</sup>

**gloat** /glout/ *verb*

to behave in a way that shows that you are happy that you have succeeded and that another person has failed: *The fans are still gloating over their team's victory.*



**glob·al** /'gloubəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

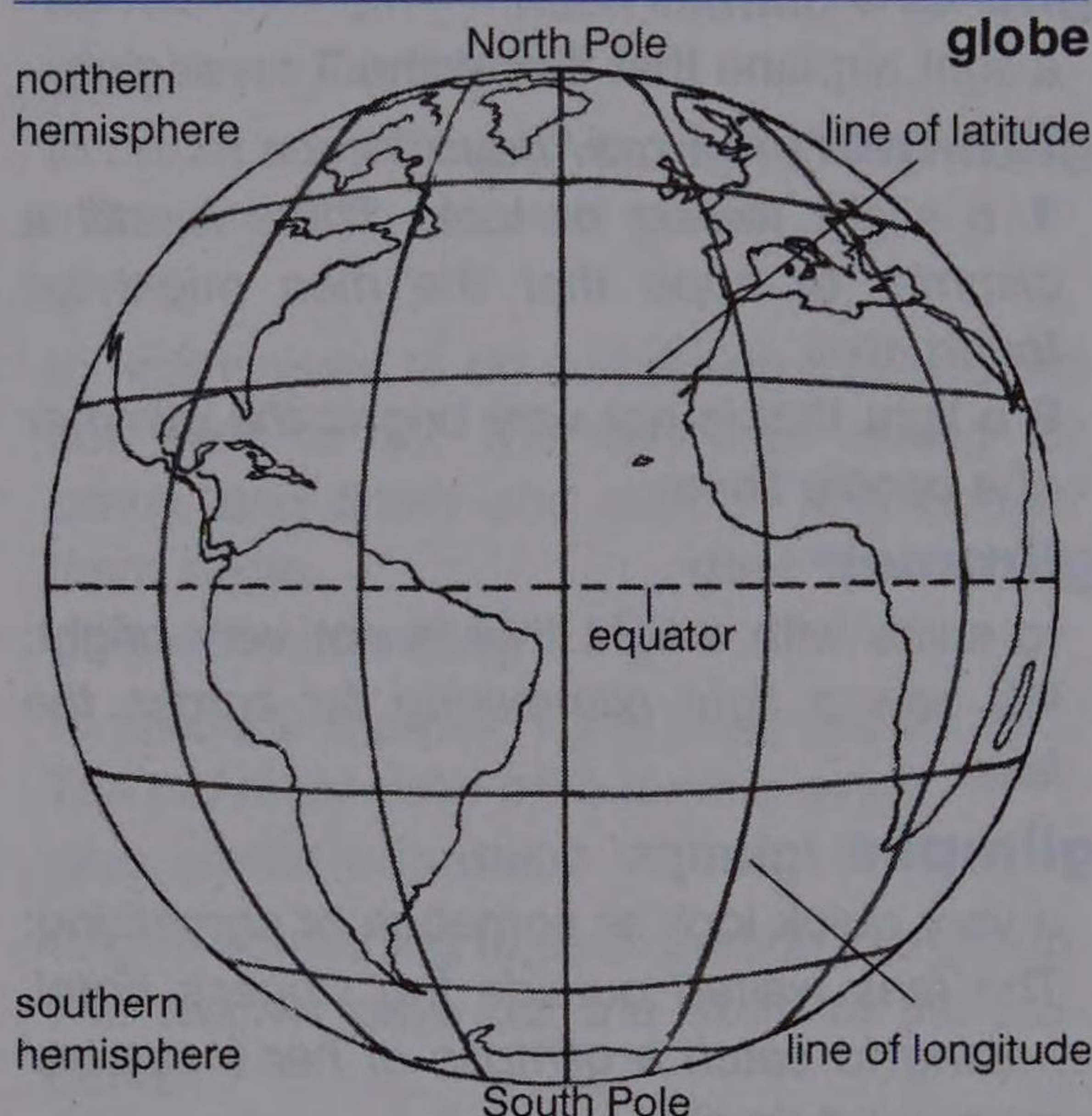
including or affecting the whole world: *The illness could spread quickly through the world and become a global problem.*

SYNONYM **worldwide**

—**globally** adverb

**global 'warming** noun

an increase in world temperatures, caused by an increase of CARBON DIOXIDE around the Earth: *Global warming is mainly caused by pollution from cars, planes, and factories.*



**globe** /gloub/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** the globe = the world: *Our company has offices all over the globe.*

**2** a round object that has a map of the Earth on it: *The teacher used a globe to show how the ships sailed from England to America.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **globe** noun
- **global** adjective
- **globally** adverb

**gloom** /glum/ noun

**1** a feeling of sadness, or having no hope: *The country was full of gloom after President Kennedy's death.*

**2** formal darkness that makes it difficult for you to see: *Nobody was outside in the cold wet winter gloom.*

—**gloomy** adjective: *Why are you looking so gloomy? Did something bad happen?*

**glo·ri·fy** /'glərə,faɪ/ verb glorified, third person singular glorifies

**1** to make someone or something seem better or more important than they really are: *Too many movies glorify violence by making it seem exciting.*

**2** to praise someone or something, especially God

—**glorification** /,glərəfə'keɪʃən/ noun

**glo·ri·ous** /'glɔriəs/ adjective

**1** very beautiful or impressive: *It was a glorious day, and there wasn't a cloud in the sky.*

**2** very good or successful and deserving praise and honor: *The country has a glorious history.*

—**gloriously** adverb

**glo·ry** /'glɔri/ noun plural glories

**1** the importance, praise, and honor that people give to someone or something that they admire: *Although he was a great artist, he wasn't interested in all the glory that came with success.*

**2** the beautiful and impressive appearance that something has: *Ahead of us we saw the Grand Canyon, in all its glory (=looking very beautiful and impressive).*

**3** an achievement that is greatly admired or respected: *The painting is one of Rembrandt's best and one of the glories of Western art.*

**gloss** /glɒs/ noun

a shiny attractive surface: *The dog was sick, and its fur had lost its gloss.*

**glos·sa·ry** /'glasəri/ noun plural

**glossaries**

a list of words with an explanation of their meaning, usually printed at the end of a book

**gloss·y** /'glɒsi/ adjective

**1** shiny and smooth: *She had long glossy black hair.*

**2** a glossy magazine, book, or photograph is printed on shiny, good-quality paper: *I saw a picture of the hotel in a glossy magazine.*

**glove** /glʌv/ noun

a piece of clothing that you wear on your hand, with separate parts to cover the thumb and each finger: *Do you have a warm pair of gloves?*

→ See picture on page A6



**glow<sup>1</sup>** /glou/ verb

to shine with a soft steady light: *The harbor lights glowed in the distance.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **shine<sup>1</sup>**

**glow<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a soft steady light: *I saw the man in the glow of the street lights.*

**2** the bright color your face has when you are healthy, have been exercising, or you feel happy, proud, etc.: *She was an athlete, and her face always had a healthy glow.*

**glue<sup>1</sup>** /glu/ noun

a sticky substance used for attaching things together: *I stuck the two pieces of wood together with glue.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fasten**

**glue<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to join things together using glue: *Glue the colored shapes to the paper.*

**2 be glued to the television/the screen, etc.** = to be watching the television, a computer screen, etc. for a long time because you are very interested in it: *My sisters were glued to the TV all morning, watching cartoons.*

**gnaw** /nɔ/ verb

to keep biting at something: *The dog was gnawing on a bone.* **SYNONYM** **chew**

**GNP** noun

**Gross National Product** the total value of the goods and services produced by a country, including money from selling goods and services in other countries: *Government spending is more than 15 percent of GNP.*

**go<sup>1</sup>** /gou/ verb **went** /went/ **gone** /gon/ **been** /bin/ third person singular **goes** /gouz/

**1** to move or travel to a place: *He went home at 5 o'clock.* | *"Where's Maria?" "She had to go to the library."* | *I usually go to school by bus.* | *Have you ever been to Paris* (=have you ever visited Paris?)

**GRAMMAR: go****gone and been**

**Gone** and **been** are past participles of **go**. A past participle is a form of a verb that shows an action happening in the past.

**Has gone** is the usual way to say that someone has traveled to a place in the past: *George has gone to Denver* (=George has traveled to Denver and is there now.)

**Has been** is the way you say that someone has visited a place in the past: *George has been to Denver* (=George has visited Denver before, but is not there now.)

**2** to leave: *It's time for us to go.*

**3 be going to do something** = used when saying that something is likely to happen or that someone will do something in the future: *It looks like it is going to rain.* | *I'm going to stay with my grandparents in New York.*

**4** to do an activity in a different place from where you are now: *I want to go shopping tomorrow.* | *Do you want to go for a walk?*

**5** to reach as far as a particular place: *My belt won't go around my waist.*

**6** to regularly attend school, a church, etc.: *Which college did you go to?*

**7** to change in some way, especially by becoming worse than before: *I'll go crazy if I have to stay here another week!* | *Her hair is starting to go gray.*

**USAGE: go**

**Go, get, and become** can all mean "to begin to be something," but they are used in different ways.

**Go** and **get** are less formal than **become**, and are used more often in spoken English: *Have you gone crazy?* | *I got very hungry.*

**Become** is used in both written and spoken English: *He's becoming a very good tennis player.* | *The area has become popular with mountain bikers.*

**Go** and **get** are used only in front of an adjective (=word that describes something): *It's getting dark.* | *Beethoven went deaf when he was 40 years old.*

**Become** can be used in front of an adjective or a noun: *It became clear that Scott was not doing his work.* | *The noise from the airport is becoming a problem.*

**8** to happen in a particular way: *The party went well, and everyone had a good time.*

**9 to go a)** used when saying how much time there is before something happens:



Only two more days to go before our vacation (=we leave in two days)! **b)** food that is to go is bought from a restaurant and taken away to be eaten: *I'll have two large fries to go.*

### **10 How's it going?/How are things going?**

= used when you meet someone, to ask how he or she is: *"Hey, Jimmy, how's it going?" "I'm good. And you?"*

**11 go to sleep** = to start to sleep: *I went to sleep at about 11:00.*

**12 go (to the bathroom)** = to use the toilet: *Mommy, I have to go!*

### **PHRASAL VERBS**

#### **go after someone or something**

to try to catch or get someone or something: *The police went after the man and arrested him.*

#### **go ahead**

**1** used when giving someone permission to do something or to start speaking: *"Can I sit here?" "Go ahead!"*

**2** used when encouraging someone to do something, when they seem to be unsure about doing it: *Go ahead, you'll have fun at Dan's house!*

**3** to do something that you have planned to do: *They decided to go ahead with their plans to get married.*

#### **go along with someone or something**

to agree with or support someone or something: *My husband always goes along with everything I say, because he doesn't like to argue.*

#### **go away**

to leave a place or a person: *Go away, and leave me alone! | We're going away for two weeks in June (=leaving to go on vacation.)*

#### **go back**

**1** to return to a place: *I never want to go back there again.*

**2** to have existed for a long time: *The history of the school goes back over 100 years.*

#### **go by**

if time goes by, it passes: *The days went by, and he still didn't call me.*

#### **go down**

**1** to become less: *The temperature went down to 15 degrees below zero.*

**2** when the sun goes down, it appears to

move down until you cannot see it anymore and night begins

**3** if a computer system goes down, it stops working for a short time

#### **go for**

**1 go for something** = to try to get or win something: *He's going for his fifth gold medal at the Winter Olympics.*

**2 Go for it! informal** = used when you want to encourage someone to do something: *If you really want to go to Stanford, then go for it!*

**3 go for someone or something informal** = to usually like a particular type of person or thing: *I don't usually go for men with glasses.*

#### **go into something**

to describe or explain something thoroughly: *I don't want to go into details right now, but it was an awful experience.*

#### **go off**

**1** to explode: *A bomb went off in the middle of the city.*

**2** if an alarm goes off, it makes a loud noise: *My alarm clock didn't go off, and I slept until 10 o'clock.*

**3** if a light or the power supply goes off, it stops working: *Suddenly, all the lights went off.*

#### **go on**

**1** to continue: *He stopped for a few minutes and then went on with his work.*

**2** to happen – used especially when you think something bad or unusual is happening: *I heard a strange noise downstairs, and I wondered what was going on.*

**3** if a machine or light goes on, it starts working or starts shining: *The lights went on in the yard, and we saw the deer.*

#### **go out**

**1** to leave your house, especially in order to do something you enjoy: *We're going out for dinner. Do you want to come?*

**2** to have a romantic relationship with someone: *She has been going out with David for over a year.*

**3** if the TIDE goes out, the water moves away from the land **ANTONYM come in**

**4** if a light or fire goes out, it stops shining or burning: *The lights went out, and we couldn't find a candle.*



**go through something**

**1** to have a very upsetting or difficult experience: *She has been through a lot in her life – both her parents died when she was only 10 years old.*

**2** to look at, read, or explain something carefully: *The teacher went through all the questions and made sure that we understood them.*

**go through with something**

to do something you had planned or promised to do: *I'm not sure if I can go through with the wedding – I'm so scared.*

**go together**

to look good or taste good together: *Do you think these colors go together?*

**go up**

to increase in number or amount: *Our rent has gone up by almost 20%.*

**go with something**

**1** to look good or taste good together: *White wine goes well with fish.*

**2** to accept someone's idea or plan: *I'm happy to go with that idea, if everyone else agrees.*

**go<sup>2</sup> noun plural goes**

**1** **give it a go** *informal* = to try doing something: *I'd never ice skated before, but I thought I'd give it a go.* **SYNONYM** **give it a try**

**2** **on the go** *informal* = very busy doing a lot of things, and not stopping for a rest: *I've been on the go all morning, and I need to sit down.*

**'go-a-head noun**

**give (someone) the go-ahead/get the go-ahead** *informal* = to give or be given official permission to start doing something: *The judge gave the final go-ahead for a new trial.*

**goal /gou/ [Ac] noun**

**1** something that you hope to achieve in the future: *I finally achieved my goal of teaching at a university. | My ultimate goal is to win a medal at the Olympics.*

**2** in sports such as SOCCER or HOCKEY, the action of making a point, or the point that you get by doing this: *Crespo scored both goals in Argentina's 2-0 win over Mexico.*

**3** the area where you make points in SOCCER or HOCKEY

→ See Thesaurus box at **purpose**

**goal-ie /'gouli/ noun, informal**

→ **goalkeeper**

**goal-keep-er /'goul,kipə/ also****goal-tend-er /'goul,tendə/ noun**

the player whose job is to stop the ball from going into the goal in sports such as SOCCER or HOCKEY

**goat /gout/ noun**

a farm animal that has horns and long hair under its chin

**gob-ble /'gabəl/ also gobble up/down**

verb, informal

to eat something very quickly: *The kids gobbled up the cake and then asked for more.*

**god /gad/ noun**

**1** **God** = the BEING whom Christians, Jews, and Muslims believe created and controls the universe: *Do you believe in God?*

**2** one of many male spirits or BEINGS who some religions believe control the world or events that happen in it: *Shiva, the Hindu god of destruction*

**god-child /'gadtʃaɪld/ noun plural****godchildren /'gad,tʃɪldrən/**

a child that a GODPARENT has promised to help

**god-daugh-ter /'gad,dɔ:tə/ noun**

a female godchild

**god-dess /'gadɪs/ noun**

one of many female spirits or BEINGS who some religions believe control the world and events that happen in it: *Athena, the Greek goddess of wisdom*

**god-fa-ther /'gad,fɑðə/ noun**

**1** a male godparent

**2** *informal* the leader of a criminal organization, especially the MAFIA

**god-ly /'gadli/ adjective**

showing that you believe in God: *He went to church every day and lived a godly life.*

**SYNONYM** **religious**

**god-moth-er /'gad,mʌðə/ noun**

a female godparent

**god-par-ent /'gad,perənt/ noun**

someone who promises at a BAPTISM to help a child, and to teach him or her Christian values

**god-son /'gadsʌn/ noun**

a male GODCHILD



**gog·gles**/'gagəlz/ plural  
noun

special glasses that fit close to your face, so that things cannot go into your eyes: *I wear goggles when I go swimming, so that the water doesn't get into my eyes.*



goggles

**gold** /gould/ noun

a valuable yellow metal that is used to make jewelry, coins, etc.: *The ring is made of pure gold* (=gold that does not have other metals mixed with it).

—**gold** adjective made of gold: *a gold watch*

**gold·en** /'gouldən/ adjective

**1** having a bright shiny yellow color: *golden hair*

**2** a **golden opportunity** = a good chance to be very successful or to get something important: *The team missed a golden opportunity to win the game in the last quarter.*

**3** made of gold: *a golden crown*

**gold·fish** /'gould,fɪʃ/ noun plural

goldfish

a small orange fish that people often keep as a pet

**'gold ,mine** noun

**1** a deep hole below the ground where gold is dug out from rocks

**2** something that produces or achieves a lot of something: *The Internet can be a gold mine of information.*

**golf** /gɒlf/ noun

a game in which you hit a small white ball into a hole in the ground with a special stick called a golf club: *I play golf every weekend.*

—**golfer** noun someone who plays golf

→ See picture on page A24

**gone** /gɒn/ verb

the past participle of GO

**good<sup>1</sup>** /gʊd/ adjective **better, best**

**1** of a high standard: *His last album was really good.* | *Who's the best player on the team?* | *His work just isn't good enough.*

ANTONYM **bad**

**THESAURUS: good**

**great** informal very good or very enjoyable: *We had a really great time at camp.*

**excellent** very good: *It was an excellent concert.*

**wonderful** very good or enjoyable, in a way that makes you feel happy: *It was wonderful to be back home again.*

**fantastic** very good, in a way that makes you feel happy or excited: *The movie's special effects were fantastic.*

**outstanding** better than anyone or anything else: *Her work this year has been outstanding.*

**exceptional** formal very good in a way that is unusual: *She is an exceptional athlete.*

**USAGE: good**

Use **good** to talk about the quality of something or someone: *a good teacher* | *Was the movie good?*

Use **well** to talk about the way someone does something: *He plays tennis very well.*

**2** useful or appropriate: *It was a good day for going to the beach.* ANTONYM **bad**

**3** likely to be successful: *That's a good idea.* | *We have a good chance of winning.* ANTONYM **bad**

**4** someone who is good at something can do it well: *I'm not a very good swimmer.* | *Andrea is very good at her job.*

**5** enjoyable and pleasant: *good weather* | *It's good to see you again.* | *We had such a good time.* ANTONYM **bad**

**6** likely to make you healthy: *Fresh fruit and vegetables are good for you.*

**7** behaving well, used especially about children: *Wait for me here, and be a good girl.*

**8** kind and helpful: *My friends were very good to me when my mother died.* | *It's good of you to give me a ride to work.*

**9** **as good as** = almost: *The work is as good as finished.*

**10** **good luck** = something you say to someone when you hope that he or she is going to be successful: *Good luck! I know you can do it!*

**good<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** something that makes a situation better or gives you an advantage: *A vacation would do you good* (=make you feel happier).

**2** **not any/much good** = bad in quality: *The movie wasn't much good.*



**3 no good/not much good** = not useful or not successful: *It's no good trying to explain it to her – she won't listen.*

**4 for good** = always or permanently: *I'd like to live in Denver for good.*

**5** behavior or actions that are morally right: *the struggle between good and evil*

**good 'afternoon** *formal*

something you say when you meet someone in the afternoon: *Good afternoon, sir. Can I help you?*

**good-bye** /gʊd'baɪ/

something you say when you are leaving, or when someone is leaving: *Goodbye, John, see you tomorrow.*

**good 'evening** *formal*

something you say when you meet someone in the evening: *Good evening, ladies and gentlemen.*

**Good 'Friday** *noun*

the Friday before the Christian holiday of EASTER

**good-'hearted** *adjective*

someone who is good-hearted is kind and willing to help people: *My aunt was a good-hearted woman who often took care of us when my parents were having problems.*

**good-'looking** *adjective*

someone who is good-looking is attractive to look at: *He's a good-looking guy – I'm surprised he isn't dating someone. | He was very good-looking when he was younger.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **beautiful**

**good 'morning**

something you say when you meet someone in the morning: *Good morning, Debbie – how are you?*

**good-ness** /'gʊdnɪs/ *noun*

**1** also **my goodness** you say this when you are surprised about something: *My goodness, you've gotten so tall!*

**2 for goodness sake** = you say this when you are annoyed about something: *For goodness sake, stop yelling.*

**3** the quality of being good and kind to other people: *He gets a little angry sometimes, but there is a lot of goodness in him.*

**good 'night**

something you say when someone is leaving at night, or when someone is going to bed: *Good night. See you tomorrow.*

**goods** /gʊdz/ *plural noun, formal*

things such as televisions, food, or clothes, etc. that are bought and sold: *The store sells furniture and other goods for the home.*

**good-will** /gʊd'wɪl/ *noun*

friendly feelings you have for other people or that two people or groups have for each other: *When a teacher treats students with respect, the goodwill of the students toward teachers grows.*

**goof<sup>1</sup>** /gʊf/ also **goof up** *verb, informal*

to make a silly mistake: *I goofed and sent the check to the wrong address.*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**goof around**

to spend time doing silly or unimportant things: *Stop goofing around, and get your work done.*

**goof off**

to not do any work: *She goofed off at college and never got her degree.*

**goof<sup>2</sup>** *noun, informal*

someone who is silly: *He's such a big goof – he makes me laugh.*

**goof-y** /'gʊfi/ *adjective, informal*

stupid or silly: *a goofy smile*

**goose** /gʊs/ *noun* plural **geese** /gis/

a large white bird that looks like a duck, but is bigger

**goose-bumps** also **goose bumps**

/'gʊsbʌmps/ *plural noun*

small raised spots on your skin that you get because you are cold, afraid, or excited: *I think I'm in love – I get goosebumps every time I see her.*

**GOP** *noun*

**the GOP** = **Grand Old Party** another name for the Republican Party

**go-pher** /'gʊfə/ *noun*

a North American animal with light brown fur, fat cheeks, and a short tail, that lives in holes in the ground

**gorge** /gɔːdʒ/ *noun*

a narrow valley (=area between two hills or mountains) with high straight sides: *We climbed to the top and looked down at the deep gorge below.*

**gor-geous** /'gɔːdʒəs/ *adjective, informal*

very beautiful: *You look gorgeous with your new haircut! | Maine has gorgeous mountains and a beautiful rocky coast.*



**go·ril·la** /gə'ri:lə/ *noun*

a large animal that looks like a monkey.  
Gorillas are the largest type of APE

**gosh** /gəʃ/

something you say when you are surprised:  
*Gosh! I never expected the pool to be so big.*

**gos·ling** /'gəzliŋ/ *noun*

a baby GOOSE

**gos·pel** /'gəspəl/ *noun*

**1** also **Gospel** one of the four books of the Christian Bible that tell the story of Christ's life

**2** also **gospel truth** something that is completely true: *I was young and took everything people said as gospel (=believed what people said was completely true).*

**gos·sip<sup>1</sup>** /'gəsəp/ *noun*

things that people say about other people's behavior and lives, especially things that are unkind or untrue: *It's not just Hollywood gossip; this story is really true.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **talk<sup>1</sup>**

**gossip<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to talk about other people's behavior and lives, often saying things that are unkind or untrue: *Everyone started gossiping about them, because we all thought they were secretly dating.*

**got** /gət/ *verb*

**1** the past tense of GET

**2** a past participle of GET

**got·ten** /'gɒtn/ *verb*

the usual past participle of GET

**gourd** /gɔ:d/ *noun*

a large fruit with a hard shell that was used as a container in the past

**gour·met<sup>1</sup>** /gʊr'mei/ *adjective*

relating to very good-quality food and drink: *She bought all the food for dinner from a gourmet food store, and it cost her over \$100!*

**gourmet<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

someone who enjoys good-quality food and drink, and knows a lot about them

**gov·ern** /'gʌvən/ *verb*

**1** to legally control a country, state, or city and make all the decisions about taxes, laws, etc.: *The President must work with Congress to govern the country.*

**2** *formal* if laws or rules govern something, they control what happens or the way in

which it happens: *the rules that govern how computers talk to each other on the Internet*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **govern** *verb*
- **government** *noun*
- **governmental** *adjective*
- **governor** *noun*
- **governorship** *noun*

**gov·ern·ment** /'gʌvəmənt/ *noun*

**1** also **Government** the group of people who govern a country or state: *The money will be provided by the federal government (=the main government of the country, not a state government). I government officials*

**THESAURUS: government**

**democracy** a political system in which the people of a country can vote to choose the government: *In 1974, Greece became a democracy again, after seven years of being ruled by the military.*

**republic** *formal* a country that has an elected government, and does not have a king or queen: *The United States and France are both republics.*

**monarchy** *formal* a country that has a king or queen as the head of state, and which may or may not also have an elected government: *The British have kept their monarchy, though the country is run by people who are elected.*

**regime** *formal* a government, especially one that was not elected fairly or that you disapprove of: *The regime had almost complete control of people's lives: it chose your school for you, it chose your job for you.*

**2** a system of government: *I decided that I wanted to work in government, and not in a private company.*

—**governmental** /,gʌvən'mentl/ *adjective* relating to government: *The EPA is the governmental agency that is responsible for protecting the environment.*

**gov·er·nor** also **Governor** /'gʌvənər/ *noun*

the person in charge of governing a state in the U.S.: *the Governor of California*

—**governorship** *noun* the position of being governor, or the period during which someone is governor



**gown** /gaʊn/ noun

**1** a long dress worn by a woman on formal occasions: *She wore a red silk evening gown and diamonds.*

**2** a long loose piece of clothing worn for formal ceremonies by people such as judges or students at GRADUATION: *The students walked across the stage in their black graduation gowns.*

**3** a loose piece of clothing worn in a hospital by a doctor or a patient during an operation: *a hospital gown*

**GPA** noun

**grade point average** the average of all the grades that a student gets. An A is 4 points, a B is 3 points, a C is 2 points, a D is 1 point, and an F is 0: *He graduated in 2000 with a GPA of 3.3.*

**grab** /græb/ verb grabbed, grabbing

to take hold of someone or something in a rough or violent way: *Rob grabbed my arm and pulled me away. | The fish slipped out of my hands when I grabbed hold of its tail.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hold**<sup>1</sup>

**grace** /greɪs/ noun

**1** a smooth way of moving that appears natural, relaxed, and attractive: *She moves with the grace of a dancer.*

**2** polite behavior: *She accepted her punishment with grace; she did not cry or get angry.*

**3** the kindness and love that God shows to people: *By the grace of God, I was able to walk again.*

**4** a short prayer said before a meal: *Before we eat – Tom, can you please say grace?*

**grace·ful** /'greɪsfəl/ adjective

moving in a way that is smooth and attractive: *The swan is a graceful swimmer.*

—**gracefully** adverb: *The dolphins swam gracefully through the ocean.*

**gra·cious** /'greɪʃəs/ adjective

behaving in a polite and kind way: *She was gracious and invited us in, even though she did not know us.*

—**graciously** adverb: *Mr. Allen graciously thanked me for coming.*

—**graciousness** noun

**grade**<sup>1</sup> /greɪd/ **Ac** noun

**1** one of the 12 years that students are in school in the U.S.: *My brother is in the third grade. | a fourth-grade class*

**2** a number or letter that a student gets for his or her work or for a test: *His grades have started to improve. | Paul has to get good grades to get into college.*

**3** a level of quality that shows you how good a product, material, etc. is: *The farm produces high grade eggs and milk.*

**4 make the grade** = to succeed or be as good as a particular standard: *Only a few athletes make the grade in professional sports.*

**grade**<sup>2</sup> verb

to give a grade to a test or to a piece of school work: *The teacher is grading the papers tonight, and giving them back tomorrow.*

**'grade point ,average** noun

→ **GPA**

**'grade ,school** noun

→ **elementary school**

**grad·u·al** /'grædʒuəl/ adjective

happening slowly over a long period of time: *There has been a gradual change in his health; he seems to be getting better slowly.*

ANTONYM **sudden**

—**gradually** adverb: *Spring was coming, and the temperature was gradually getting warmer.*

**grad·u·ate**<sup>1</sup> /'grædʒuət/ noun

someone who has successfully completed his or her studies at a school, college, or university: *high school graduates | a graduate of MIT*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **graduate** verb
- **graduate** noun
- **graduation** noun

**grad·u·ate**<sup>2</sup>

/'grædʒu,eɪt/ verb  
to obtain a DIPLOMA or a degree by completing your studies at a school, college, or university: *Ruth has just graduated from Princeton. | He graduated from college in 2003.*

**grad·u·ate**<sup>3</sup> /'grædʒuət/ adjective

relating to a student who is studying to get a MASTER'S DEGREE or a PH.D.: *He did his*





graduate work at Columbia University. | a graduate student | graduate classes

**'graduate ,school** noun

a college or university where you can study for a MASTER'S DEGREE or a PH.D. after finishing your first degree

**grad·u·a·tion** /ˌgrædʒu'eɪʃən/ noun

a ceremony for students who have successfully finished their studies at a school, college, or university, at which they get a degree or DIPLOMA: *We went to Bobby's graduation yesterday.*

**graf·fi·ti** /grə'fɪti/ noun

writing and pictures that people draw illegally on the walls of buildings, trains, etc.



**grain** /greɪn/ noun

**1** the seeds of crops such as corn, wheat, or rice that are grown for food: *Most of the grain that we grow on the farm is used to feed cattle.*

**2** a very small piece of a substance: *How many grains of sand do you think there are on the beach?*

**3 the grain** = the natural lines or patterns you can see in wood: *Split the wood along the grain.*

**4 a grain of something** = a very small amount of something: *There isn't a grain of truth in his story* (=his story is completely untrue).

**5 take something with a grain of salt** = to realize that part of what someone says may not be true: *He always makes things seem worse than they are, so take everything he says with a grain of salt.*

**gram** /græm/ noun, written abbreviation gm

a unit for measuring weight. There are 1,000 grams in a kilogram.

**gram·mar** /'græmə/ noun

the rules of a language, which control how words change tense and how sentences are formed: *The rules of English grammar are difficult.* | *There are some mistakes in your spelling and grammar.*

—**grammatical** /grə'mætɪkəl/ adjective relating to grammar: *There were several grammatical errors in his English paper.*

**grand** /grænd/ adjective

**1** bigger or more impressive than other similar things: *We walked past some of the grand old buildings by the river.*

**2 grand total** = the total you get when you add up several numbers or amounts: *We paid \$300 to get the car's brakes fixed, \$150 for the damage to the door, and \$300 for the paint, for a grand total of \$750.*

**3 grand opening** = a special event on the day that a business opens for the first time: *The store had its grand opening yesterday, with a band playing and free balloons for kids.*

—**grandness** noun

**grand·child** /'græntʃaɪld/ noun plural

**grandchildren** /'græn,tʃɪldrən/ the child of your son or daughter

**grand·daugh·ter** /'græn,dɔ:tə/ noun

the daughter of your son or daughter

**grand·fa·ther** /'grænd,fɑ:ðə/ noun

the father of your mother or father

**'grandfather ,clock** noun

a clock in a tall wooden case that stands on the floor

**grand·ly** /'grændli/ adverb

in a way that is impressive or intended to attract attention: *Jessie walked grandly into the room, hoping everyone would look at her.*

**grand·ma** /'grændmə/ noun, informal  
→ grandmother

**grand·moth·er** /'grænd,mʌðə/ noun  
the mother of your mother or father

**grand·pa** /'grændpɑ/ noun, informal  
→ grandfather

**grand·par·ent** /'grænd,perənt/ noun  
the parent of your mother or father

**grand·son** /'grændsʌn/ noun  
the son of your son or daughter: *I have a grandson who is two years old.*

**grand·stand** /'grænd,stænd/ noun  
rows of seats outdoors where people sit to watch sports: *We watched the race from the grandstand.*

**gran·ite** /'grænit/ noun  
a type of hard gray rock, often used in buildings



**grant<sup>1</sup>** /grænt/ **Ac** noun

money that organizations sometimes give to people for a particular purpose: *Some students get a research grant (=money to do research).*

**grant<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1 take it for granted (that)** = to think that something is definitely true, although it may not be true: *My parents took it for granted that I would go to college, but I didn't want to.* **SYNONYM** **assume**

**2 formal** to allow someone to do or have something: *The witch granted the girl's wish (=gave her what she wished for).*

**grape** /greɪp/ noun

a small round green or red fruit that you can eat, and that people use for making wine: *I bought a bunch of grapes (=a group growing together).*

→ See picture on page A13

**grape-fruit** /'greɪpfɹʊt/ noun

a big round yellow fruit with a thick skin, like a large orange but not as sweet

→ See picture on page A13

**grape-vine** /'greɪpvain/ noun

the plant that GRAPES grow on **SYNONYM** **vine**

**graph** /græf/ noun

a picture that shows information about different numbers or amounts, so that you can compare them: *This graph shows the amount of rain in Miami for every month of the year.*

**graph-ic** /'græfɪk/ adjective

**1** describing or showing something very clearly, especially something unpleasant: *One man gave a graphic description of the dead and injured people after the plane crash.*

**2** relating to art that uses lines not color, for example drawing but not painting: *a graphic artist*

—**graphically** **adverb** in a way that describes or shows something very clearly: *The movie was graphically violent.*

**graph-ics** /'græfɪks/ noun

pictures in books or images on screens: *Our video games are made using the latest computer graphics (=images made using a computer).*

**grasp** /græsp/ verb

**1** to hold something firmly: *Grasp the rope with both hands, so that you don't drop it.*

**2** to understand something: *At first, I didn't grasp what she was saying to me, but then I understood.*

**grass** /græs/ noun

a plant with thin green leaves that covers the ground in yards, parks, and fields: *The grass in the backyard needs cutting.*

**grass-hopper** /'græs,hɒpə/ noun

a green or brown insect with long back legs that lives in the grass, can jump high, and makes a short loud noise

**gras-sy** /'græsi/ adjective

covered with grass: *There are some grassy areas around the school where the kids play.*

**grate<sup>1</sup>** /greɪt/ verb

if you grate cheese, a carrot, etc., you rub it against a special tool with many holes, in a way that cuts many thin pieces off it: *Grate the cheese over the pasta.*

—**grater** **noun** a kitchen tool used in order to grate food

→ See Thesaurus box at **cut<sup>1</sup>**

→ See picture on page A14

**grate<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a metal frame with bars across it, over a hole in the street or in front of a window: *Iron grates covered the prison windows.* **SYNONYM** **grating**

**2** the metal frame that holds the wood in a FIREPLACE

**grate-ful** /'greɪtfəl/ adjective

wanting to say thank you to someone because he or she has been kind or helpful to you: *I was very grateful for all his help.*

—**gratefully** **adverb**: *She gratefully accepted my offer to drive her.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **grateful** adjective
- **ungrateful** adjective
- **gratefully** adverb
- **gratitude** noun
- **ungratefulness** noun

**grat-i-fy** /'grætə,fai/ verb gratified, third

person singular **gratifies** **formal**

if you are gratified by something, it makes you feel happy and satisfied: *The actors were gratified to see that the audience loved*



the play.

—**gratification** /ˌgrætəfəˈkeɪʃən/ *noun*  
when you get pleasure and satisfaction from something: *As a teacher, I get a lot of gratification from seeing students learn.*

**grat-ing** /ˈgreɪtɪŋ/ *noun*  
another word for a GRATE

**grat-i-tude** /ˈgrætəˌtʊd/ *noun*  
the feeling you have when you want to thank someone because he or she has been kind or helpful to you: *Maria was full of gratitude for his support.*

**gra-tu-i-tous** /grəˈtuətəs/ *adjective, formal*  
unnecessary and likely to upset people: *The movie contained scenes of gratuitous violence (=violence that it was not necessary to show).*

**gra-tu-i-ty** /grəˈtuəti/ *noun plural*  
**gratuities** *formal*  
another word for a TIP

**grave<sup>1</sup>** /greɪv/ *noun*  
a hole in the ground for burying a dead person: *My father was buried in a grave in the cemetery.*

**grave<sup>2</sup>** *adjective, formal*  
very serious in a way that makes you worry: *I think Jo is making a grave mistake.*  
—**gravely** *adverb*: *She was gravely ill (=seriously ill).*

**grav-el** /ˈgrævəl/ *noun*  
small stones that are used to make the surface of a path or road: *I heard the sound of footsteps on the gravel outside.*

**grave-stone** /ˈgreɪvstəʊn/ *noun*  
a stone on a grave that shows the name of the dead person, and the date he or she was born and died

**grave-yard** /ˈgreɪvɪəd/ *noun*  
an area of land for burying dead people: *There was an old graveyard next to the church.*

**grav-i-ty** /ˈgrævəti/ *noun*  
**1** the force that makes things fall to the ground: *An apple falls down from a tree because of the Earth's gravity.*  
**2** *formal* how bad a situation is: *Nobody understood the gravity of the situation until after the fighting started in the region.*

**gra-vy** /ˈgreɪvi/ *noun*  
a liquid made from the juice of cooked meat, that you serve with the meat: *We had roast beef and potatoes with gravy.*

**gray<sup>1</sup>** /greɪ/ *adjective*  
**1** having the color of black mixed with white: *My Dad is getting older, and he has gray hair. | He was wearing a gray suit.*  
**2** cloudy and with no sun: *It was a gray day in winter.*

**gray<sup>2</sup>** *noun*  
the color that you get when you mix black with white: *You can buy the shoes in gray or red.*

**graze** /greɪz/ *verb*  
**1** if an animal grazes, it eats grass: *Some cows were grazing in the field.*  
**2** to slightly damage the skin on part of your body: *Billy fell and grazed his knee, but it didn't bleed much.*

**grease<sup>1</sup>** /gris/ *noun*  
**1** soft fat from cooked meat: *The pan was full of hot grease.*  
**2** oil that you put on parts of a car, bicycle, etc.: *Some of the grease from the bike came off on my hands.*

**grease<sup>2</sup>** *verb*  
to put fat or oil on something: *Grease the pan with butter.*

**greas-y** /ˈgrisi/ *adjective*  
**1** cooked in too much oil: *Greasy food is bad for you.*  
**2** greasy hair is very dirty and looks like there is too much oil in it: *His hair was greasy, and he looked like he needed a bath.*  
SYNONYM **oily**; ANTONYM **dry**  
→ See Thesaurus box at **dirty**

**great** /greɪt/ *adjective*  
**1** very good or enjoyable: *We saw a great movie last night. | It's great to see you again! | This pasta dish is great for a quick dinner.* SYNONYM **excellent**  
**2** very important or famous: *Abraham Lincoln was a great American president.*  
**3** very big or very large in amount: *She had great big blue eyes.*  
**4** **great-grandmother/great-grandfather** = the mother or father of one of your grandparents



**5 great-granddaughter/great-grandson** = the daughter or son of your GRANDCHILD

→ See Thesaurus box at **good**<sup>1</sup>

**great·ly** /'greɪtli/ *adverb, formal*

very much: *If you practice a lot, it will greatly increase your chances of winning.*

**greed·y** /'gridi/ *adjective* **greedier, greediest**

wanting more money, food, etc., than you need: *I gave you \$10 to spend already – don't be greedy and ask for more.*

—**greed** *noun* the feeling of wanting more money, food, etc., than you need: *They didn't need the money – they stole it out of greed.*

—**greedily** *adverb* in a greedy way: *Jake was looking at the chocolate greedily.*

**Greek** *noun* /grik/

**1** someone from Greece

**2** the language spoken in Greece

—**Greek** *adjective* from Greece: *a Greek woman*

**green**<sup>1</sup> /grɪn/ *adjective*

**1** having the color of grass: *She has green eyes.*

**2** covered with grass and trees: *Cities need more green areas.*

**green**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

the color of grass: *Green is my favorite color.*

**green 'card** *noun*

an official card that allows people to live and work in the U.S. if they come from another country: *The man at the desk asked to see my green card.*

**green·house** /'grɪnhaus/ *noun*

**1** a glass building for growing plants that need a warm light place

**2 greenhouse gas** = a gas such as CARBON DIOXIDE that stops heat from escaping from the Earth

**3 the greenhouse effect** = the process in which the air around the Earth is getting slowly warmer because greenhouse gases stop the heat from escaping

**greet** /grɪt/ *verb*

to welcome or say hello to someone: *He greeted her and hugged her.*

**greet·ing** /'grɪtɪŋ/ *noun*

**1** something you say or do when you meet someone: *Every time I go there, I get a warm greeting (=they greet me in a friendly way).*

**2** a message you send to say you hope someone has a happy birthday, Christmas, etc.: *Sara got lots of birthday greetings from all her friends.*

**gre·nade** /grə'neɪd/ *noun*

a small bomb that you can throw, or fire from a gun: *The soldiers all carried hand grenades (=that you can throw).*

**grew** /gru/ *verb*

the past tense of GROW

**grey** /greɪ/ *adjective, noun*

another spelling of GRAY

**grey·hound** /'greɪhaʊnd/ *noun*

a thin dog that can run very fast, and that often competes in races

**grief** /grɪf/ *noun*

great sadness: *Her feelings of grief lasted for months after her husband died.*

**griev·ance** /'grɪvəns/ *noun, formal*

something that you want to complain about because you think it is unfair to you: *The people who lost their jobs met to discuss their grievances.*

**grieve** /grɪv/ *verb*

to feel very sad, because someone you love has died: *The family is still grieving for their son, who died in the crash.*

**griev·ous** /'grɪvəs/ *adjective, formal*

very bad or serious: *The president of the company realized he had made a grievous mistake and offered to leave his job.*

**grill**<sup>1</sup> /grɪl/ *verb*

to cook meat, fish, etc. on a frame over a fire: *Grill the chicken for fifteen minutes.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cook**<sup>1</sup>

**grill**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a metal frame that you put meat, fish, etc. on to cook over a fire: *Let's put the steaks on the grill.*

**grim** /grɪm/ *adjective*

**1** making you feel worried and unhappy: *The news that day was grim; it was all about war.*

**2** very serious and sad: *The policeman looked grim as he explained how the accident had happened.*

—**grimly** *adverb* in a very serious way: *"The situation is dangerous," Doug said grimly.*



## grim·ace

**/ˈɡrɪməs/ verb**

to twist your face because you feel pain, or you do not like something: *Lou grimaced with pain.*

—**grimace** **noun** a look on your face that shows you feel pain, or you do not like something: *She swallowed the medicine with a grimace.*



grimace

## grin /grɪn/ noun

a big smile: *He opened the door with a big grin on his face and hugged me.*

—**grin** **verb** to give a big smile: *"It's great to see you," she said, grinning.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **smile**<sup>1</sup>

**grind** /graɪnd/ **verb** **ground** /graʊnd/ to crush or cut something into small pieces or powder: *This machine grinds the coffee beans.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **press**<sup>1</sup>

## grind·er /ˈgraɪndə/ noun

a machine that crushes or cuts something into small pieces or powder: *Put the coffee beans in the grinder.*

## grip<sup>1</sup> /ɡrɪp/ noun

**1** a strong hold on something: *He had a firm grip on my arm as he pushed me through the door.*

**2** control of your feelings or of a situation: *Dee tried to get a grip on herself (=to control her feelings).*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hold**<sup>1</sup>

## grip<sup>2</sup> verb gripped, gripping

to hold something very firmly: *She gripped the rail to stop herself from falling.*

## grit /ɡrɪt/ noun

very small pieces of dirt or stone: *Wash the vegetables to remove any grit.*

## griz·zly bear /ˈɡrɪzli ˌber/ also grizzly noun

a large brown bear that lives in parts of North America

## groan /ɡroʊn/ verb

to make a long deep sound, because you are in pain or not happy: *One of the players was on the ground, holding his leg and groaning.*

—**groan** **noun** a long deep sound that you make when you are in pain or not happy: *Mom read the bad news from the bank and gave a loud groan.*

## gro·cer /ˈɡroʊsə/ noun

someone who owns or works in a GROCERY STORE

## gro·cer·ies

**/ˈɡroʊsəriz/ plural noun**

the food and things you use in the home that you buy in a store: *I put the groceries away in the refrigerator.*



groceries

## gro·cer·y store /ˈɡroʊsəri ˌstɔːr/ also grocery noun

a store that sells food and things you use in the home: *I went to the grocery store to get some milk.*

## groom /ɡrum/ noun

a man who is getting married: *The groom arrived at the church first.* **SYNONYM** **bridegroom**

## groove /ɡruːv/ noun

a thin line that goes down in the surface of something: *Plant the seeds in rows in grooves in the soil.*

## grope /ɡroʊp/ verb

to try to find something you cannot see using your hands: *It was dark, and Mark groped for the light switch.*

## gross /ɡroʊs/ adjective, informal

very unpleasant: *The food in the school cafeteria is really gross – it's usually cold, and it tastes bad.*

—**grossness** **noun**

## gross ,national 'product noun

another word for GNP

## gro·tesque /ɡrouˈtesk/ adjective

ugly and very strange in a way that is frightening: *Some of the people in his paintings are grotesque.*

## grouch·y /ˈɡraʊtʃi/ adjective, informal

feeling annoyed about things, and talking to people in an annoyed way: *Dad's been grouchy all week because his car is not working.*



**ground**<sup>1</sup> /graʊnd/ *noun*

**1** the surface of the Earth: *A tree had fallen to the ground.*

**2** soil or land: *It was winter, and the ground was hard.*

**3** a wire that connects electrical equipment to the ground, so you can use it safely

**ground**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

the past tense and past participle of GRIND

**ground**<sup>3</sup> *adjective*

**1** **ground beef/pork, etc.** = meat that is in very small pieces: *You make hamburgers with ground beef.*

**2** ground coffee, pepper, etc. is a powder because you have crushed it: *Add some freshly ground pepper* (=pepper you have just crushed).

**ground 'floor** *noun*

the part of a building that is on the same level as the ground: *My office is on the ground floor.* **SYNONYM** first floor

**Ground-hog Day** /'graʊndhɒg ˌdeɪ/ *noun*

February 2; in American stories, a GROUND-HOG comes out of its hole on this day, and if it sees its shadow, there will be six more weeks of winter; if it does not, good weather will come early.

**grounds** /graʊndz/ *plural noun*

**1** an area of land or sea that is used for a particular purpose: *fishing grounds* | *The fence was built to protect the old Native American burial grounds* (=place where people were buried after they died).

**2** the land or gardens that surround a large building: *You are not allowed to leave school grounds during lunch.*

**3** *formal* a good reason for doing something: *Did the police have legal grounds to arrest him?*

**group**<sup>1</sup> /grʊp/ *noun*

**1** several people or things that are together in the same place: *A fight started between two groups of men.* | *The Cyclades Islands are a group of 39 islands in the Aegean Sea.*

**THESAURUS: group****Group of People**

**crowd** a large group of people in one place: *There was a crowd of people standing around him.*

**team** a group of people who work together: *a team of doctors* | *Ryan's trying out for the football team.*

**crew** a group of people who all work together, especially on a ship or airplane: *The ship had a small crew.*

**gang** *informal* a group of young people, especially a group that often causes trouble and fights, but sometimes just a group of friends: *There have been gang and drug problems in this part of the city.* | *I usually hang out with the gang on Friday nights.*

**mob** a large noisy group of people, especially one that is angry and violent: *An angry mob was gathering outside the courtroom.*

**bunch** *informal* a group of people: *They're a nice bunch of kids.*

**Group of Animals**

**herd** of cows/deer/elephants

**flock** of sheep/birds

**school/shoal** of fish/dolphins/tuna, etc.

**pack** of dogs/wolves

**litter** of puppies/kittens/piglets (=a group of baby animals born from the same mother at the same time)

**Group of Things**

**bunch** of flowers/grapes/keys, etc. (=several flowers, etc. tied or held together): *He gave her a bunch of roses on their anniversary.*

**bundle** of papers/clothes/sticks (=several papers, etc. tied or held together): *Bundles of newspapers were stacked on the curb.*

**2** several musicians who play and sing popular music together: *U2 is a famous rock group.*

**group**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to arrange things in a group: *Books can be grouped into two basic types: fiction and non-fiction.*

**2** to come together and form a group: *The cows had grouped together under the trees.*

**grove** /grəʊv/ *noun, formal*

**1** an area of land with fruit or nut trees growing on it: *an orange grove*

**2** a small group of trees of the same type, without low branches



**grovel** /'grævəl/ verb

to try too hard to please someone to show you are sorry for something or because you are frightened of him or her: *Just apologize to your teacher in a calm way; you don't need to grovel.*

**grow** /grou/ verb **grew** /gru/ **grown** /groun/

**1** to get bigger in size or amount: *Babies grow quickly in their first year. | The number of students at the college grew by 5% last year.*

**2** if plants grow somewhere, or if you grow them there, they are alive in that place: *Not many plants can grow in the far north. | We grow our own vegetables.*

**3 grow old, grow strong, etc.** = to become old, strong, etc.: *Grandad was growing old and becoming forgetful.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****grow out of something**

**1** if a child grows out of clothes, he or she becomes too big to wear them: *Kids grow out of their shoes so quickly.*

**2** if someone grows out of something, they stop doing it as they become older: *He sucked his thumb till he was six, but grew out of it eventually.*

**grow up**

to gradually change from being a child to being an adult: *I grew up in San Diego.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **increase**<sup>1</sup>

**growl** /graʊl/ verb

if a dog, bear, etc. growls, it makes a deep angry sound: *The dog usually growls at visitors.*

—**growl** noun a deep angry sound made by a dog, bear, etc.: *The bear gave a loud growl.*

**grown**<sup>1</sup> /groun/ adjective

**grown man/woman** = used when talking about an adult who is not behaving in the way you expect an adult to behave: *I was young, and I had never seen a grown man cry before.*

**grown**<sup>2</sup> verb

the past participle of GROW

**grown-up**<sup>1</sup> /'grəʊnʌp/ noun

an adult – used by or to children: *My brother and I listened while the grownups talked.*

**'grown-up**<sup>2</sup> adjective

someone who is grown-up is an adult: *She has two grown-up daughters – one is 25 and the other is 22.*

**growth** /grouθ/ noun

**1** an increase in amount, number, or size: *The growth of the Internet has happened very quickly. | There has been huge growth in the number of people who have quit smoking.*

**2** the increase in the physical size and strength of a person, animal, or plant over a period of time: *A variety of good foods are necessary for the healthy growth of your body.*

**grubby** /'grʌbi/ adjective, informal

dirty: *Her hands were grubby from cleaning the mud off her bike.*

**grudge** /grʌdʒ/ noun

an unfriendly feeling towards someone because he or she did something bad to you in the past: *She criticized him months ago, and he's still holding a grudge (=continuing to have an unfriendly feeling).*

**gruelling** /'gruəlɪŋ/ adjective

very difficult and tiring: *It was a gruelling five-hour climb to the top of the mountain.*

**gruesome** /'grusəm/ adjective

very unpleasant or shocking, and usually involving death or injury: *The race driver was seriously injured in a gruesome accident.*

**grumble** /'grʌmbəl/ verb

to complain: *He's always grumbling about how expensive everything is.*

**grumpy** /'grʌmpi/ adjective **grumpier, grumpiest**

if someone is grumpy, they show that they feel slightly angry: *I'm feeling grumpy because I'm tired.*

—**grumpily** adverb: *"Leave me alone," she said grumpily.*

**grungy** /'grʌndʒi/ adjective, informal

dirty and sometimes smelling bad: *His clothes were grungy, and he smelled bad.*

**grunt** /grʌnt/ verb

**1** to make a short low sound instead of talking: *I told him to get out of bed, but he just grunted and went back to sleep.*

**2** if a pig grunts, it makes a low rough sound  
—**grunt** noun a short low sound that you make in your throat, or a similar sound that a



pig makes: *Alex answered the question with a grunt.*

**gua·ca·mo·le** /ˌgwəkə'mouli/ *noun*  
a cold Mexican dish made with crushed AVOCADO

**guar·an·tee**<sup>1</sup> /ˌɡærən'ti/ **Ac** *verb*  
to promise to do something, or to promise that something will happen: *We guarantee we will repair your computer within 48 hours.* | *I guarantee that you'll love this movie.* **SYNONYM** **promise**  
→ See Thesaurus box at **promise**<sup>1</sup>

**guarantee**<sup>2</sup> *noun*  
a promise by a company to repair or replace something you have bought from them, for example if it breaks: *The MP3 player has a two-year guarantee.*

**guard**<sup>1</sup> /ɡɑrd/ *noun*  
**1** someone whose job is to protect a person or place, or to make sure that a person does not escape: *A security guard was standing outside the jewelry store.* | *Two armed guards stood by the door of the prison.*  
**2** the act of protecting a person or place, or making sure that a person does not escape: *Soldiers are always on guard outside the embassy.* | *A police officer stood guard in front of the hotel after the robbery.*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **protect**



**guard**<sup>2</sup> *verb*  
to protect someone or something from being attacked or stolen, or to prevent a prisoner from escaping: *Two large dogs guard the building at night.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**guard against something**

to prevent something bad from happening: *The best way to guard against illness is to wash your hands.*

**'guard dog** *noun*  
a dog that protects someone's home or property

**guard·ed** /'ɡɑrdɪd/ *adjective*  
careful not to show your emotions or give away information: *The Senator gave a guarded answer to the reporter's question, saying "I'm not sure I can tell you anything more now."*

**guard·i·an** /'ɡɑrdiən/ *noun*  
someone who is legally responsible for a child, but who is not the child's parent: *His parents died, and his aunt is his legal guardian.*

—**guardianship** *noun*, *formal* the state of being responsible for someone or something: *I have guardianship of my grandson, because his mother is in jail.*

**guer·ril·la** also **guerilla** /ɡə'rɪlə/ *noun*  
a member of an unofficial army that is fighting for political reasons: *The guerillas made a surprise attack on a government office building.*

**guess**<sup>1</sup> /ges/ *verb*  
**1** to answer a question or decide something when you are not sure if you are right: *I think he's about 40, but I'm just guessing.* | *"Guess how much this dress cost?" "I don't know, about \$50? \$75?"* | *Can you guess my age?*  
**2** **keep someone guessing** = to make someone feel excited or not sure about what will happen next: *The movie is a mystery that really keeps the audience guessing.*

**3** **I guess a)** used to say that you think something is probably true: *He's not here yet, but I guess he'll be coming later.* | *"Does she make a lot of money?" "I guess so."* **b)** used to say that you will do something, even though you do not really want to: *I'm tired, so I guess I'll stay home tonight.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **think**

**guess**<sup>2</sup> *noun*  
an attempt to answer a question or decide something when you are not sure if you are right: *I think the painting is by Picasso, but that's just a guess.* | *I couldn't decide which answer was right, so I had to make a guess.*

**quest** /gest/ *noun*

**1** someone who you invite to stay in your home or invite to an event: *How many guests are coming to your party?*

G



**2** someone who is staying in a hotel: *Use of the swimming pool is free to hotel guests.*

**guid·ance** /'gaɪdns/ *noun*

helpful advice: *Your teacher can give you guidance on choosing a career.*

**guide**<sup>1</sup> /gaɪd/ *noun*

**1** someone whose job is to show a place to tourists: *The tour guide was taking a group of tourists around the museum.*

**2** a book that gives information about a particular subject or explains how to do something: *I bought him a beginner's guide to using the Internet.*

**3** something that helps you make a decision: *Use your nose as a guide – if the fish is fresh, it will smell fresh.*

**guide**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to help someone to go somewhere, for example by showing them the right direction: *He took the old lady's hand and guided her across the road.*

**2** to help someone manage a difficult situation: *The school staff can guide you when you apply for colleges.*

**guide·book** /'gaɪdbʊk/ *noun*

a book with information about a city or country for people who are visiting it: *The guidebook gives the hotel three stars and says it has a good restaurant.*

**'guide dog** *noun*

a specially trained dog that blind people use to help them go to places: *Guide dogs help safely guide blind people through traffic, crowds, and other situations.*

**guide·lines** /'gaɪdlaɪnz/ **[Ac]** *plural noun*

rules or instructions about the best way to do something: *The teacher gave the class some guidelines on writing essays for the exam.*

**guilt** /gɪlt/ *noun*

**1** a sad feeling you have when you have done something wrong: *She felt a sense of guilt about lying to her parents.*

**2** the fact that someone has broken a law: *We were sure that he had stolen the money, but we couldn't prove his guilt.* **ANTONYM** *innocence*

**3** the state of being responsible for something bad that has happened: *I know that the guilt for the accident was mine, because I was driving too fast.* **SYNONYM** *fault*

**4 guilt trip** *informal* = the act of trying to make someone feel very sorry for something he or she has done: *My parents are giving me a guilt trip for scratching the car.*

**guilt·y** /'gɪlti/ *adjective*

**1** unhappy and ashamed because you have done something that you know is wrong: *Rob felt guilty about stealing the book.*

**2 find someone guilty (of something)** = if a court of law finds someone guilty of a crime, it decides that they COMMITTED that crime: *The jury found him guilty of murder.* **ANTONYM** *innocent*

—**guiltily** *adverb*: “Yes, I took it,” she said guiltily.

**guin·ea pig** /'gɪni ,pɪɡ/ *noun*

**1** a small furry animal with no tail that is often kept as a pet

**2** someone who is used in a scientific test to see how successful or safe a new product, system, etc. is: *The scientists are looking for guinea pigs to try out a new diet.*

**gui·tar** /ɡɪ'tɑː/ *noun*

a wooden musical instrument with strings and a long neck, which you play by pulling the strings: *an electric guitar*

—**guitarist** *noun* someone who plays the guitar: *Jimi Hendrix was a famous guitarist.*

→ See picture at **acoustic**

**gulf** /ɡʌlf/ *noun*

a large area of ocean that is partly surrounded by land: *The Gulf of Mexico is to the west of Florida.*

**gull** /ɡʌl/ *noun*

a SEAGULL

**gulp**<sup>1</sup> /ɡʌlp/ *verb*

**1** also **gulp down** to swallow food or drink quickly: *She gulped down her breakfast and ran for the bus.*

**2** to swallow suddenly because you are surprised or nervous: *Ed gulped when he saw how hard the test questions were.*

**gulp**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

an act of quickly swallowing a large amount of drink: *He took a gulp of his lemonade.*

**gum** /ɡʌm/ *noun*

**1** also **chewing gum** a sweet type of candy that you CHEW for a long time, but do not swallow

**2** the pink parts inside your mouth that your teeth grow out of



**gun** /gʌn/ noun

**1** a weapon that fires bullets: *The man was carrying a gun. | Someone fired a gun at the President.*

**2** a tool that forces out small objects or a liquid by pressure: *He used a spray gun to paint the car.*

**gun-fire** /'gʌnfaiə/ noun

shots fired from a gun: *The soldiers could hear gunfire in the distance.*

**gun-man** /'gʌnmən/ noun plural **gunmen** /'gʌnmən/

a criminal who uses a gun: *The gunman walked into the bank and demanded money.*

**gun-point** /'gʌnpɔɪnt/ noun

**at gunpoint** = while threatening someone or being threatened with a gun: *They were held at gunpoint while the man stole their car.*

**gun-pow-der** /'gʌn,paʊdə/ noun

an explosive substance used in bombs and FIREWORKS

**gun-shot** /'gʌnʃʌt/ noun

**1** the sound made by a gun: *We heard a gunshot and a loud scream.*

**2** the bullets that are shot from a gun: *He died from a gunshot wound.*

**gur-gle** /'gə:gəl/ verb

**1** to make a low sound, especially because water is moving around: *A small stream gurgled over the rocks.*

**2** if someone gurgles, he or she makes a pleasant low sound in their throat: *The baby smiled and gurgled with pleasure.*

**gu·ru** /'gʊru/ noun

**1** informal someone who knows a lot about a particular subject, and whose opinions are respected by many people: *She is a fashion guru who gives advice about what clothes people should wear.*

**2** a Hindu religious teacher

**gush** /gʌʃ/ verb

if liquid gushes somewhere, a large amount of it flows there: *Blood was gushing from a deep cut in his arm.*

—**gush** noun a large quantity of liquid that suddenly pours out of something: *a gush of cold water from the faucet*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pour**

**gust** /gʌst/ noun

a sudden strong wind: *A gust of wind blew our tent down.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **wind**<sup>1</sup>

**gut**<sup>1</sup> /gʌt/ adjective

**gut feeling/gut reaction** informal = a feeling or idea that you are sure is right, although you cannot give a reason for it: *My gut reaction is that this is a bad idea.*

**gut**<sup>2</sup> also **guts** noun, informal

your stomach and the tubes in your body that food passes through: *My guts were aching after eating too much at dinner.*

**gut**<sup>3</sup> verb gutted, gutting

to destroy the inside of a building completely: *The house was gutted by fire.*

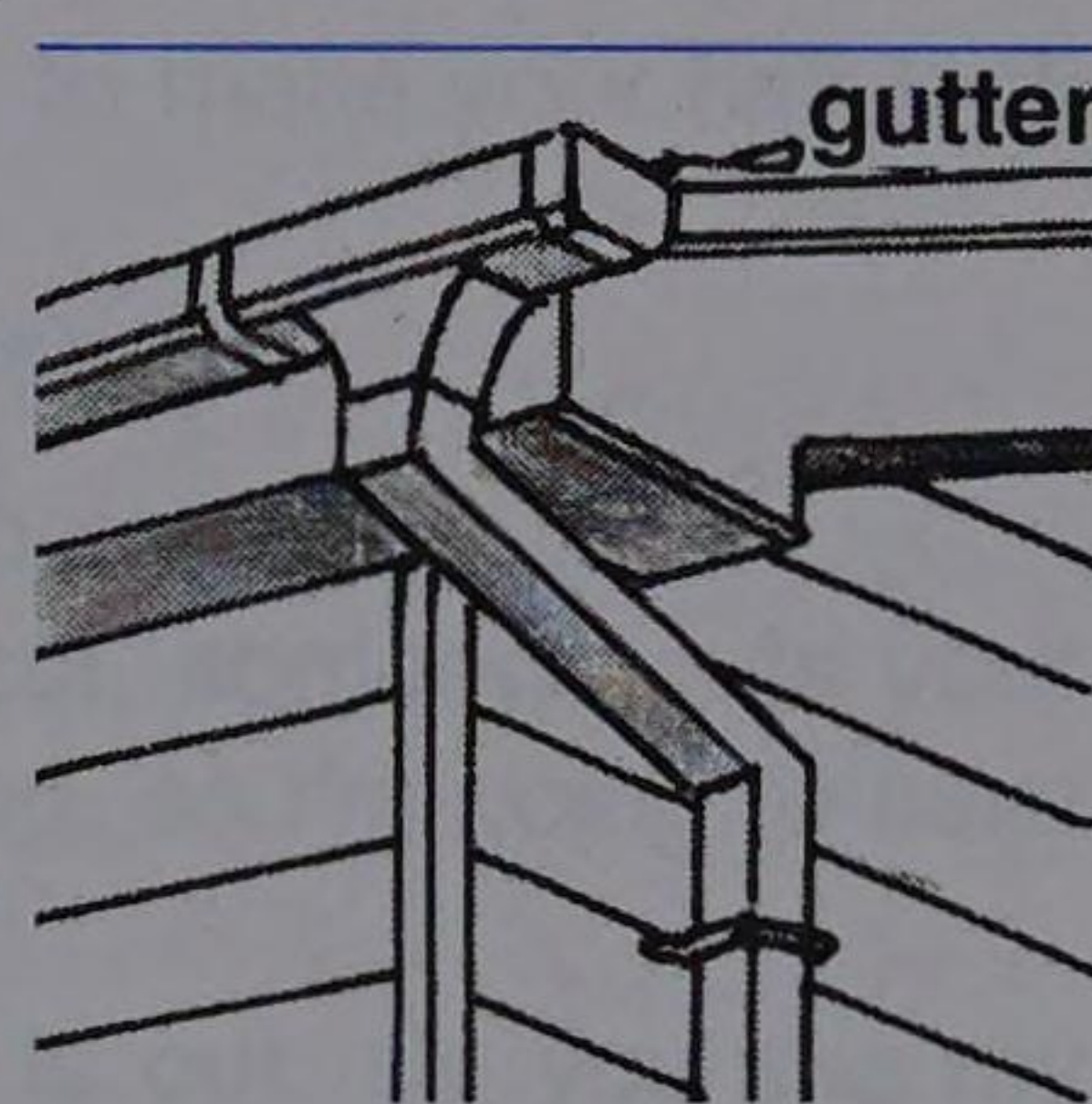
**guts** /gʌts/ noun, informal

courage and determination to do something difficult: *He didn't have the guts to ask his boss for more money.*

**gut-ter** /'gʌtə/

noun

a part at the lowest edge of something such as a roof or a road, that collects water and waste so that it can flow away: *The gutter was blocked by leaves.*

**guy** /gaɪ/ noun, informal

a man: *He's a really nice guy.*

**guz-zle** /'gʌzəl/ verb, informal

to drink a lot of something very quickly: *My brother and his friends were eating pizza and guzzling soda.*

**gym** /dʒɪm/ noun

a building or room that has equipment for doing physical exercise: *I go to the gym three times a week.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **exercise**<sup>2</sup>

**gym·na·si·um** /dʒɪm'neɪziəm/ noun

→ **gym**

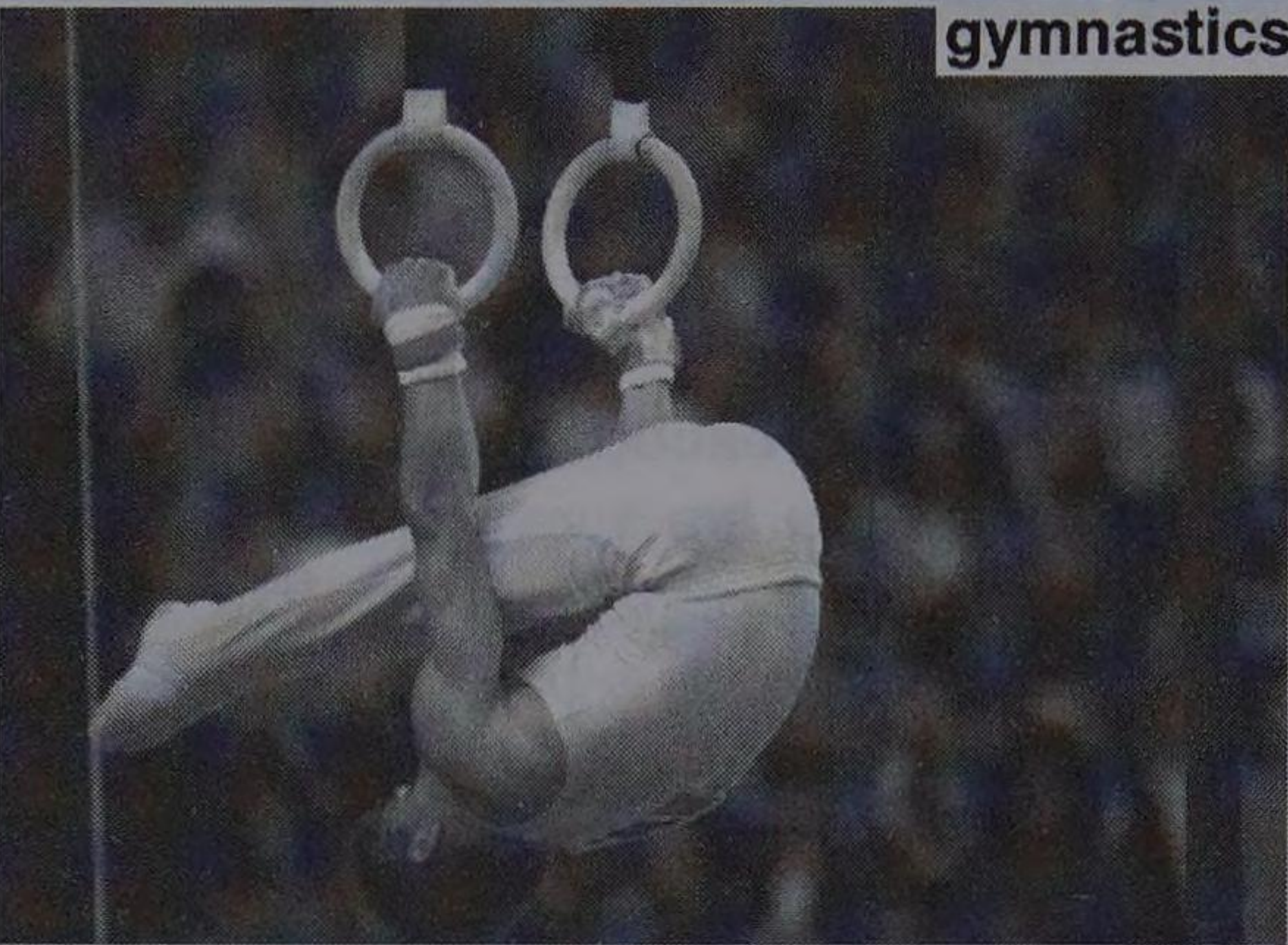
**gym·nas·tics** /dʒɪm'næstɪks/ noun

a sport involving skillful physical exercises and movements

—**gymnast** /'dʒɪmnæst/ noun someone who performs gymnastics: *an Olympic gymnast*

→ See picture on page A24





gymnastics

G

**gy·ne·col·o·gy** /,gaɪnəˈkɒlədʒi/ *noun*  
the study and treatment of medical conditions relating to women's ability to have children  
—**gynecologist** *noun* someone who studies gynecology  
—**gynecological** /,gaɪnəkəˈlɒdʒɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to gynecology

**gyp·sy** /ˈdʒɪpsi/ *noun* plural **gypsies**  
a member of a group of people who travel around rather than live in one place. Gypsies originally came from northern India.



# Hh

## ha /hɑ/

said when you are surprised or pleased about something: *Ha! I knew I was right.*

## hab·it /'hæbɪt/ noun

something that you do often or regularly: *We got in the habit of staying up very late. I Smoking is a very bad habit.*

## hab·i·tat /'hæbə,tæt/ noun, formal

the place in which a plant or animal lives: *The woods are the natural habitat of foxes.*

## hack /hæk/ verb

**1** to cut something roughly or violently: *Tom hacked the branches off the tree.*

**2** to use a computer to enter someone else's computer system in order to damage it or get secret information: *The criminals hacked into the bank's computer system and moved money into their bank accounts.*

## hack·er /'hækə/ noun, informal

someone who secretly uses or changes the information in other people's computer systems: *A hacker stole some information from the company's computer system.*

—**hacking** noun the activity of secretly using or changing information in other people's computer systems

## hack·saw /'hæksɔ/ noun

a type of cutting tool with small teeth on its blade, used especially for cutting metal

—**hacksaw** verb to cut something with a hacksaw

## had /əd; strong hæd/ verb

the past tense and past participle of HAVE

## had·n't /'hædnt/ verb

the short form of "had not": *I hadn't eaten anything all day.*

## hail<sup>1</sup> /heɪl/ verb

if it hails, small hard pieces of frozen rain fall from the sky: *It was hailing when we came out of church.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **snow<sup>1</sup>**, **rain<sup>1</sup>**

## hail<sup>2</sup> noun

small hard pieces of frozen rain that fall from the sky: *There will be some hail later today.*

## hail·stone /'heɪl,stoun/ noun

a small ball of frozen rain: *Most hailstones are about the size of peas.*

## hair /her/ noun

**1** the things like thin threads that grow together on your head: *Tim has brown hair. I She was brushing her hair.*

### GRAMMAR: hair

In this meaning, **hair** is an uncountable noun so it has no plural: *Tim has brown hair (NOT brown hairs).*

**2** one of the thin threads that grow on the skin of a person or animal: *There are cat hairs all over this chair.*

**3 let your hair down** informal = to relax and enjoy yourself: *On weekends, people like to let their hair down with friends.*

→ See picture on page A2

## hair·brush /'herbrʌʃ/ noun

a brush that you use to make your hair look neat

→ See picture at **brush**

## hair·cut /'herkʌt/ noun

**1** if you have a haircut, someone cuts your hair: *My hair's too long, so I'm going to have a haircut.*

**2** the way your hair is cut: *Do you like my new haircut?*

## hair·do /'herdu/ noun plural hairdos informal

the style in which your hair is cut or arranged: *Mom came home with a new hairdo.* **SYNONYM hairstyle**

## hair·dress·er /'her,dresə/ noun

someone whose job is to cut and arrange people's hair: *Marie's always been good at cutting hair, so she's training to be a hairdresser.*

→ See picture on page A16

## hair·dry·er /'her,draɪə/ noun

a machine that you use to dry your hair

## hair·style /'herstail/ noun

the style in which your hair is cut and arranged: *She's had the same short hairstyle for years.*

## hair·y /'heri/ adjective

hairy arms, legs, etc. have a lot of hair on them: *a big man with a hairy chest*



**Haj** also **Hajj** /hɑdʒ/ *noun*

a trip to Mecca that all Muslims try to make for religious reasons

—**Haji** also **Hajji** /'hɑdʒi/ *noun* a Muslim who has made the trip to Mecca

**ha·lal** /hə'ləl/ *adjective*

halal meat is from animals that were killed in a way that Muslim law approves

**half<sup>1</sup>** /hæf/ *noun* plural **halves** /hævz/ *pronoun*

**1** one of two equal parts of something: *Half of 10 is 5. | Half the students spoke Spanish, the other half spoke English. | I cut the sandwich in half (=in two equal pieces). | My brother is two and a half (=two years and six months old).*

**2** one of two parts of a game in some sports: *Alan scored a goal at the end of the first half.*

**3** **half an hour** = thirty minutes: *I'll be there in half an hour.*

**4** **half a dozen** = six: *I need half a dozen eggs.*

**half<sup>2</sup>** *adverb*

partly but not completely: *A half-empty coffee cup was on the table.*

**'half-, brother** *noun*

a brother who is the child of only one of your parents

**'half-'hearted** *adjective*

if you do something in a half-hearted way, you do it without really trying or succeeding: *She was very upset, but she made a half-hearted attempt to smile.*

**'half-'hour** *noun*

thirty minutes: *The cake is not done – it needs another half-hour in the oven.*

—**'half-hour** *adjective* continuing for thirty minutes: *a half-hour TV show*

**'half-'mast** *adjective*

**at half-mast** = if a flag is at half-mast, it is in the middle of the pole and not at the top, because someone important has died: *The flag flew at half-mast for a week after the governor died.*

**'half-, sister** *noun*

a sister who is the child of only one of your parents

**'half time** *noun*

a time when the teams rest between two parts of a game such as football: *Our team*

*was winning at half time, but they scored twice in the second half.*

**half·way** /,hæf'weɪ/ *adjective, adverb*

**1** in the middle between two places or things: *I live halfway between New York and Washington D.C. | The boat was halfway across the lake.*

**2** in the middle of a period of time or an event: *Dad fell asleep halfway through the movie.*

**hall** /hɒl/ *noun*

**1** a narrow area in a house or building with doors that lead to other rooms: *Go down the hall and turn right, and you'll see the bathrooms.* **SYNONYM** **hallway**

**2** a room that you go through when you enter a house, with doors that lead to other rooms: *You can hang your coats in the front hall.* **SYNONYM** **hallway**

**3** a big room or building that people use for public meetings, concerts, etc.: *The audience was coming into the concert hall.*

**hal·le·lu·jah** /,hælə'luyə/

a word people say to praise to God

**Hal·low·een** /,hælə'win/ *noun*

the night of October 31, when children dress as WITCHES, GHOSTS, etc., and go to people's houses asking for candy by saying "trick or treat!": *Children love dressing up for Halloween.*

**hal·lu·ci·nate** /hə'lusə,neɪt/ *verb, formal*

to see or hear something very clearly, although it is not really there: *Sometimes the drug makes people hallucinate.*

—**hallucination** /hə'lusə'neɪʃən/ *noun*  
something you see or hear very clearly, although it is not really there: *The man was screaming and having hallucinations about monsters trying to kill him.*

**hall·way** /'hɒlweɪ/ *noun*

**1** a room that you go through when you enter a house, with doors that lead to other rooms: *I came into the house and found Sam standing in the hallway.* **SYNONYM** **hall**

**2** a narrow area in a house or building with doors that lead to other rooms: *The classroom is the last door on the right at the end of the hallway.* **SYNONYM** **hall**



**halt<sup>1</sup>** /hɒlt/ verb, formal

to stop: *Our taxi halted outside the airport. | Problems have halted work on the new building.*

**halt<sup>2</sup>** noun, formal

a stop: *The cars suddenly came to a halt because some children were crossing the road.*

**halve** /hæv/ verb, formal

to cut something into two equal parts: *Halve the tomato, and put the two pieces on each side of the dish.*

**halves** /hævz/ noun

the plural of HALF

**ham** /hæm/ noun

the meat from a pig with salt added to it to keep it fresh: *I put two slices of ham in the sandwich.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meat**

**ham-burg-er** /'hæm,bɜːgə/ noun

**1** a flat piece of meat in the shape of a circle, made from very small pieces of BEEF, that you cook and eat between pieces of round bread: *He was eating a hamburger and fries.*

**2** BEEF that is cut into very small pieces, used for making hamburgers and other dishes: *I bought a pound of hamburger.*

**ham-mer<sup>1</sup>** /'hæmə/ noun

a tool you use for hitting nails into wood

**hammer<sup>2</sup>** verb

to hit something with a hammer: *He hammered a nail into the fence.*

**ham-mock** /'hæmək/ noun

a piece of net or other material that hangs between two trees or poles that you use for sleeping in

**ham-ster** /'hæmstə/ noun

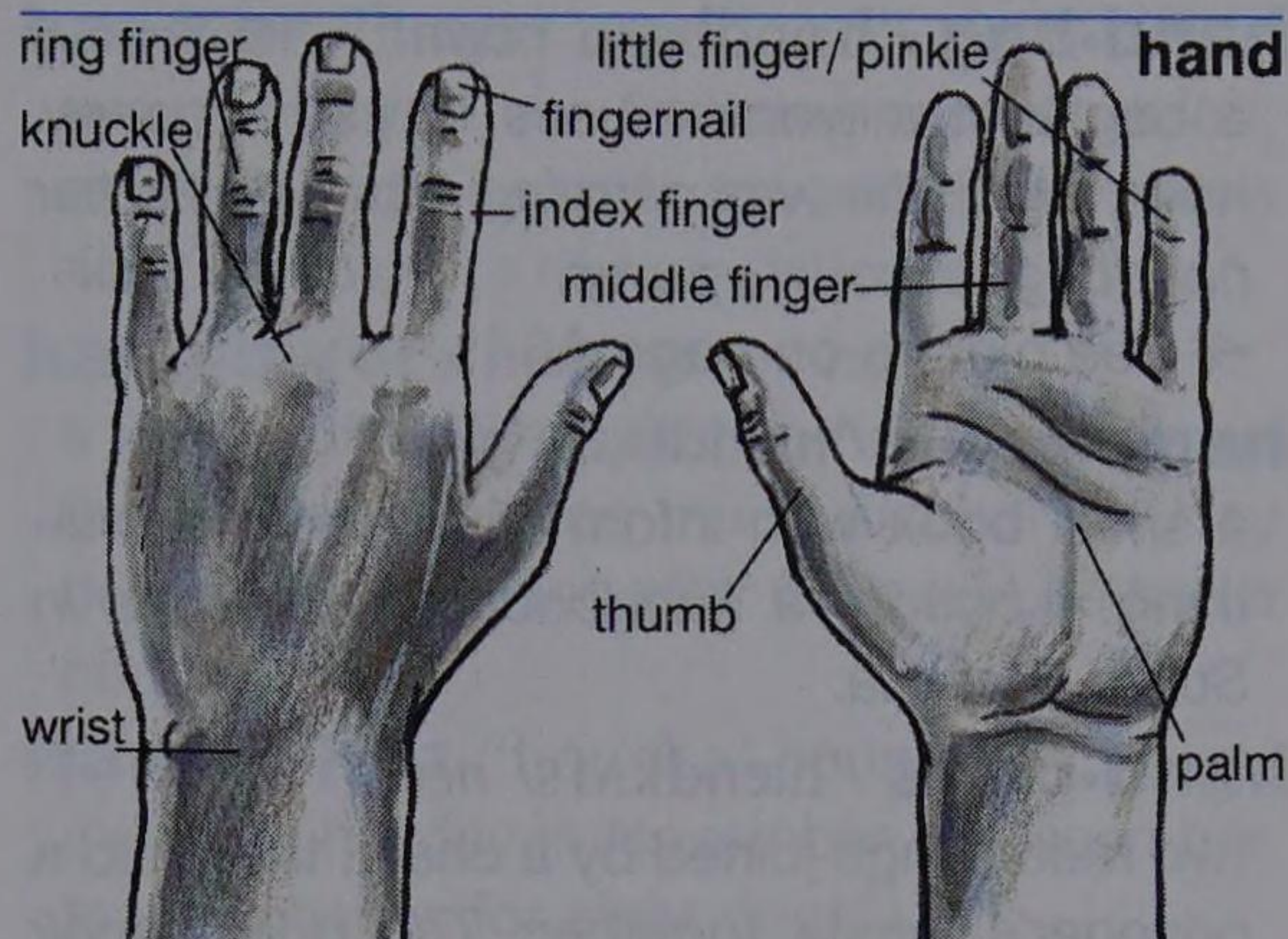
a small soft animal like a mouse with no tail, that children often keep as a pet

→ See picture at **pet**

**hand<sup>1</sup>** /hænd/ noun

**1** the part of your body at the end of your arm, that you use to hold things: *Go and wash your hands. | Most people write with their right hand. | Raise your hand (=lift it up) if you know the answer.*

**2** a hand = some help: *Can you give me a hand with this box? It's really heavy.*



**3** (on the one hand...) on the other hand = you use this for giving another idea or fact that you should consider: *The work was really hard, but on the other hand I learned a lot.*

**4** by hand = done or made by a person, not a machine: *The rug was made by hand.*

**5** one of the things that move to show the time on a clock: *The hands on the clock moved slowly toward noon.*

**6** be/get out of hand = to be or become impossible to control: *The party was beginning to get out of hand, so I told everyone to leave.*

**7** on hand = near and ready if needed: *A teacher is always on hand to help.*

**8** the cards that you are holding in a game: *Tom held the winning hand.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **give<sup>1</sup>**

→ See picture on page A2

**hand<sup>2</sup>** verb

to give something to someone else using your hand: *Can you hand me a towel?*

**PHRASAL VERBS****hand something down**

to give something to a younger member of your family: *This necklace was handed down from my grandmother to me.*

**hand something in**

to give something to a teacher, employer, etc.: *Hand in your homework, please.*

**hand something out**

to give something to everyone in a group: *The teacher handed out the tests.*

**hand something over**

to give something to someone else using your hand: *She handed the phone over to me.*



**hand-bag** /'hændbæg/ *noun*

a bag that a woman uses to carry money, keys, etc.: *She was carrying a brown leather handbag.* **SYNONYM** purse

→ See picture on page A6

**hand-book** /'hændbuk/ *noun*

a small book with information about something: *I bought a handbook for travelers in South America.*

**hand-cuffs** /'hændkʌfs/ *noun*

two metal rings joined by a chain, that hold a prisoner's wrists together: *The police took him away in handcuffs.*

—**handcuff** *verb* to put handcuffs on someone: *An officer handcuffed him, because they could not control him.*

**hand-ful** /'hændfʊl/ *noun*

**1** an amount that you can hold in your hand: *She took a handful of nuts from the bowl.*

**2** a **handful of something** = a small number of people or things: *Only a handful of people came to the meeting – I think there were five people there.*

**hand-gun** /'hændgʌn/ *noun*

a small gun you can hold in one hand

**hand-i-cap** /'hændi,kæp/ *noun*

**1** *formal* something that is permanently wrong with a part of your body or mind, so that you are not able to use it in the normal way: *Some diseases can cause mental handicaps (=of the mind).* **SYNONYM** disability

**2** something that makes it difficult for you to do something: *If you don't speak Spanish, it will be a handicap when you travel in South America.* **SYNONYM** disadvantage

**hand-i-capped** /'hændi,kæpt/ *adjective*

not able to use a part of your body or mind because there is something permanently wrong with it: *The school is good for physically handicapped children, because there are no stairs.* **SYNONYM** disabled

**USAGE: handicapped**

**handicapped** is old-fashioned and may offend some people. It is better to use the word **disabled**: *The hotel has special rooms on the ground floor for disabled people.*

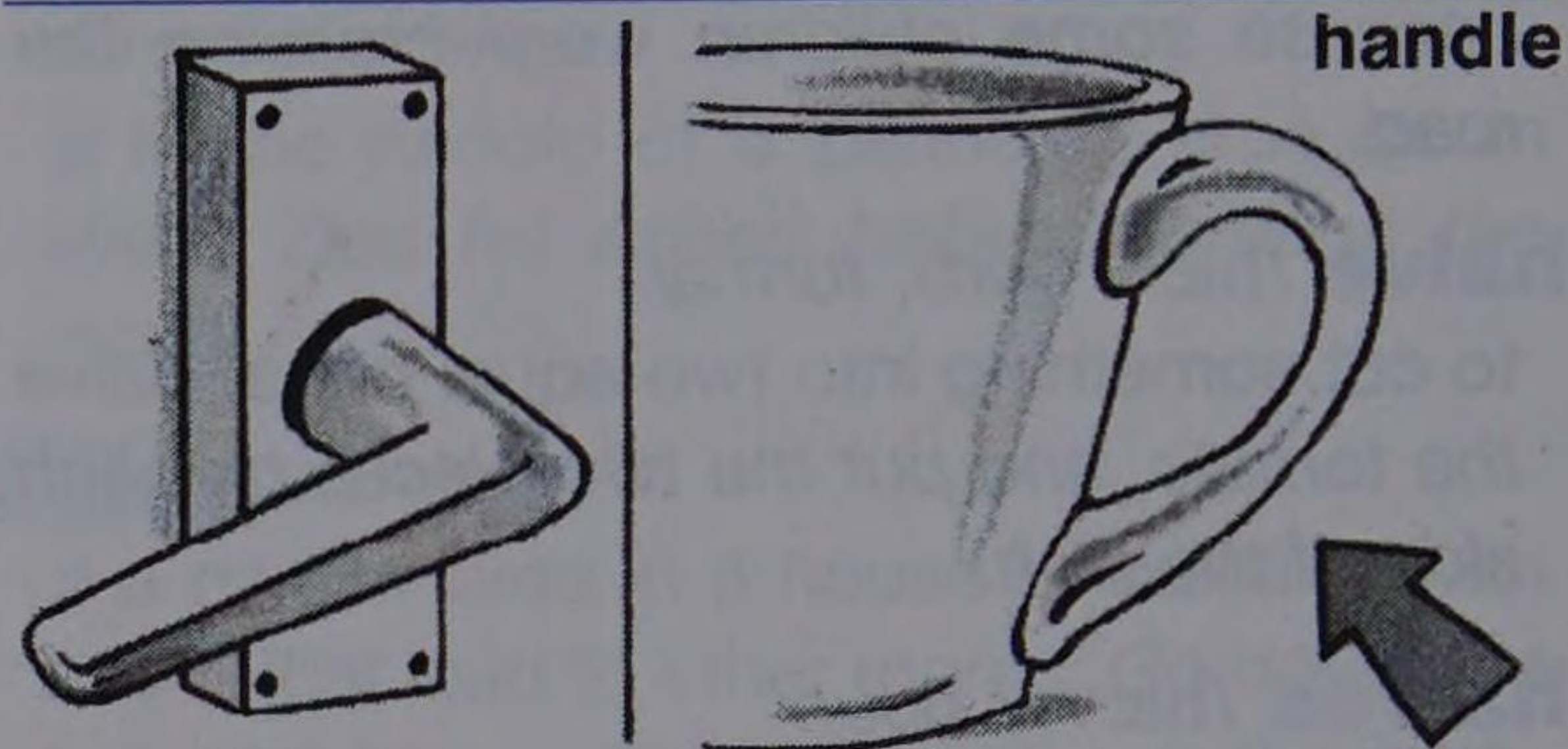
**hand-ker-chief** /'hæŋkətʃɪf/ *noun*

a piece of cloth that you use for drying your nose or eyes

**han-dle<sup>1</sup>** /'hændl/ *verb*

**1** to deal with something: *If there are any problems, I'll handle them.*

**2** to pick up or touch something: *If you handle uncooked meat, you should wash your hands.*



**handle<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

the part of something that you have in your hand when you hold or open it: *the handle of the knife | a door handle*

**han-dle-bars** /'hændl,barz/ *noun*

the part of a bicycle or MOTORCYCLE that you hold with your hands when you are riding it

**hand-made** /,hænd'meɪd/ *adjective*

made by a person and not a machine: *I bought a handmade rug for the bedroom.*

**hand-out** /'hændaʊt/ *noun*

**1** a piece of paper with information on it, that you give to people in a class or meeting: *The teacher gave us a handout with our math homework on it.*

**2** money or food that people receive because they need help: *There are a lot of poor people living on government handouts (=that the government gives).*

**hand-shake** /'hændʃeɪk/ *noun*

an act of taking someone's right hand in your hand and moving it up and down, for example when you meet or make an agreement: *People welcomed us with smiles and handshakes.*

**hand-some** /'hænsəm/ *adjective, formal*

a handsome man is attractive: *He was a handsome young man, and he worked as a model for a while.* **SYNONYM** good-looking;

**ANTONYM** ugly

→ See Thesaurus box at **beautiful**

**hand-writ-ing** /'hænd,rɪtɪŋ/ *noun*

the way someone writes with a pen or a pencil: *She has very neat handwriting, which is easy to read.*



**hand-writ-ten** /'hænd,rɪtn/ *adjective*  
written with a pen or pencil and not a machine: *She sent me a handwritten letter, not an email.*

**hand-y** /'hændi/ *adjective* **handier, handiest**

**1** useful: *I earned some extra money, which came in handy (=was useful).*

**2** near and easy to reach: *Do you have a pen handy?*

**hand-y-man** /'hændi,mæn/ *noun* plural **handymen** /'hændi,men/

someone who is good at making and repairing things: *Bruce works as a handyman at the school, and he's doing a lot of building work.*

**hang<sup>1</sup>** /hæŋ/ *verb*

**1** hung /hʌŋ/ to put clothes in a cupboard, pictures on a wall, etc. by attaching the top part of them to something like a hook: *I hung my coat on a hook in the hall. | Do you want me to hang the picture here?*

**2** hanged to kill someone by putting a rope around their neck and letting them drop down toward the ground: *The man hanged himself in prison.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**hang around** *informal*

to stay in one place and not do much: *On Saturdays, a lot of kids hang around downtown.*

**hang on** *informal*

**1** to hold something carefully in order to keep it or yourself safe: *Hang on to your wallet in this part of town, or someone will take it.* **SYNONYM** **hold on**

**2** you say this when you want someone to wait for you: *Hang on – I'm almost ready to go.* **SYNONYM** **hold on**

**hang out** *informal*

to spend a lot of time somewhere with friends and not do much: *I'm going to hang out at the beach all summer.*

**hang up**

to finish speaking on the telephone by putting the telephone down: *Dad wants to use the phone, so I have to hang up now.*

**hang<sup>2</sup>** *noun, informal*

**get the hang of something** = to learn how to do or use something: *He falls off his bike a lot, but he'll get the hang of it soon.*

**hang-er** /'hæŋə/ *noun*

something you use for hanging clothes on, made of some curved wire, wood, etc. with a hook on top

**hang-o-ver** /'hæŋ,ouʋə/ *noun*

a feeling of sickness that someone has when they have drunk too much alcohol the day before: *The morning after the party, he had a bad hangover.*

**Ha-nuk-kah** /'hanəkə/ *noun*

a Jewish holiday in November or December, that continues for eight days

**hap-haz-ard** /,hæp'hæzəd/ *adjective, formal*

not organized, neat, or planned: *Brian's books were lying all over his desk in a haphazard way.*

—**haphazardly** *adverb*: *She threw her clothes haphazardly onto the bed.*

**hap-pen** /'hæpən/ *verb*

**1** when something happens, there is an event that no one planned or expected: *The accident happened outside my house. | I'm going to call Kara and tell her what happened.*

#### THESAURUS: happen

**happen** if something happens, you usually did not plan or expect it: *A strange thing happened on my way to school.*

**take place** *formal* if an event takes place, it is usually because of a plan or arrangement: *The next meeting will take place on Thursday.*

**occur** *formal* if an event occurs, it usually happens in a particular place or at a particular time: *The robbery occurred around 9 p.m.*

**2 happen to do something** = to do something by chance: *I went downtown to do some shopping, and I happened to meet Greg (=I met him when I did not expect to meet him).*

**hap-pi-ness** /'hæpinəs/ *noun*

the state of being happy: *Her happiness was easy to see from the big smile on her face.*

**hap-py** /'hæpi/ *adjective* **happier, happiest**

**1** feeling pleased, for example because your life is good, or something good has happened: *Pete is very happy at his new*



school. | I was really happy to hear your good news! **ANTONYM** **sad**

**THESAURUS: happy**

**cheerful** someone who is cheerful seems happy and smiles a lot: *Tom's a very cheerful little boy.*

**pleased** happy because someone has done something good, or something good has happened: *Her parents were pleased that she had done so well in college.*

**glad** happy because something good has happened. You use **glad** especially when you are telling other people that you are happy about something: *I'm really glad you can come to the party.*

**delighted** formal very happy because something good has happened: *She will be delighted when she hears the news.*

H

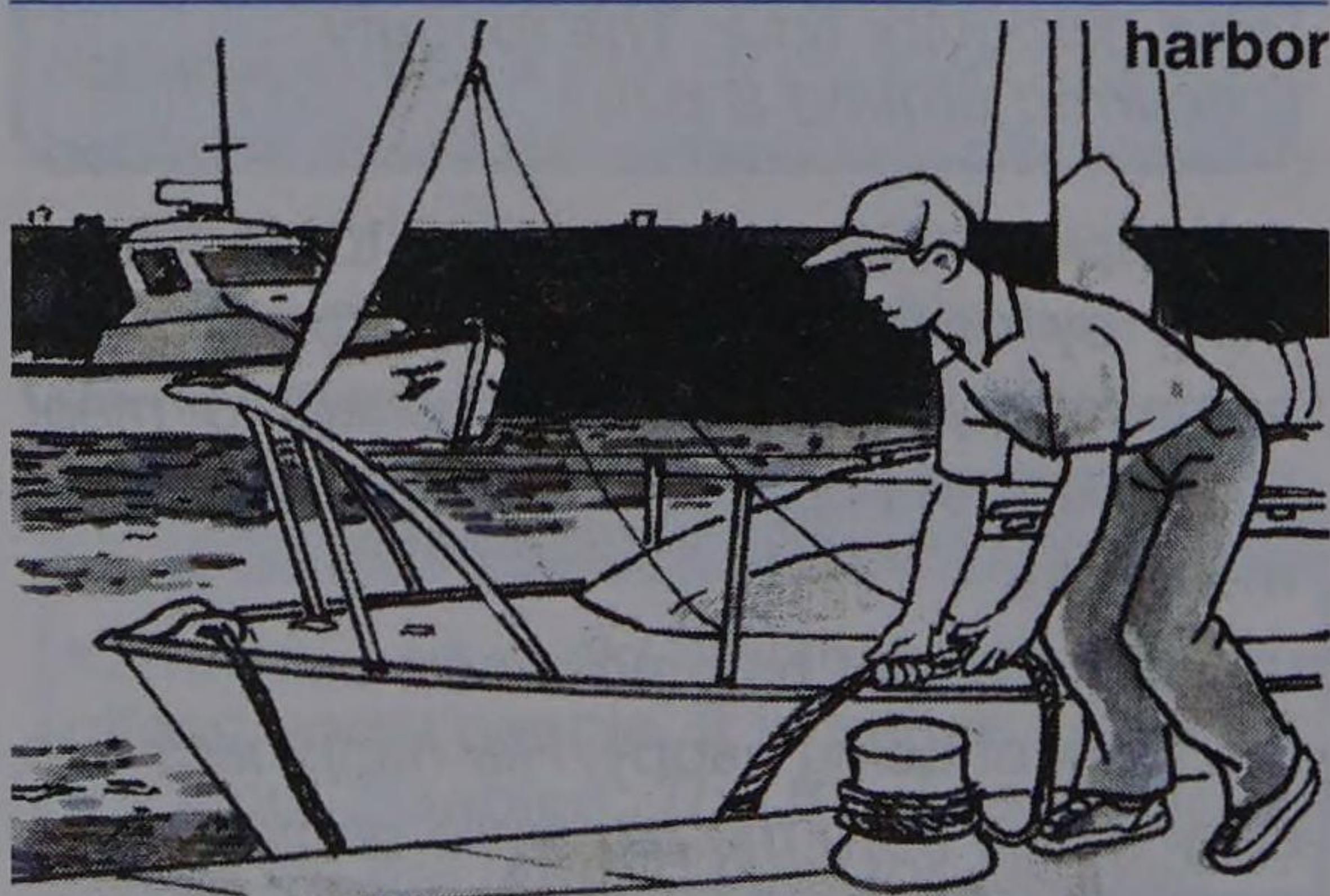
**2 Happy Birthday/New Year, etc.** = you say this to someone on a special occasion to show that you hope they have a nice time —**happily** adverb in a happy way: *They laughed happily.*

→ See picture on page A23

**ha·rass** /hə'reɪs/ verb, formal

to annoy or threaten someone by treating them in a way that is very unpleasant: *The man harassed her by writing threatening letters and calling her on the phone late at night.*

—**harassment** noun behavior that annoys or threatens someone: *The cases of harassment were reported to the principal.*



**har·bor** /'hɑ:bə/ noun

an area of water next to the land, where ships can stay safely

**hard<sup>1</sup>** /hard/ adjective

**1** firm and stiff: *I didn't sleep well because the bed was so hard.* **ANTONYM** **soft**

**THESAURUS: hard**

**firm** not soft to touch, but not completely hard either: *Bake the cake until it is firm when you touch it.*

**stiff** difficult to bend: *The kids used stiff cardboard to make models of their homes.*

**solid** something that is solid is very hard and does not bend or move when you touch it: *solid rock* | *Outside it was snowing, and the ground was frozen solid.*

**2** difficult to do or understand: *Some of the exam questions were really hard.* **ANTONYM** **easy**

**3** needing a lot of effort, work, etc.: *There is so much hard work to do on a farm.* | *They were always poor, and they had a hard life.*

**ANTONYM** **easy**

**4 be hard on someone** informal = to criticize someone or be unfair to them: *Don't be too hard on Mike – he's still young.*

—**hardness** noun the quality of being firm and stiff: *The hardness of the soil made it difficult to dig.*

**hard<sup>2</sup>** adverb

with a lot of effort or force: *He worked hard and saved his money.* | *It was raining hard.*

**hard·back** /'hɑ:dbæk/ noun

a book that has a strong stiff cover: *I bought the book in hardback.*

**hard 'disk** also **hard 'drive** noun

a part of a computer on which you can keep information permanently: *You can install the software on your hard disk.*

**hard·en** /'hɑ:dn/ verb

to become firm or stiff: *The glue takes about an hour to harden.*

**hard·ly** /'hɑ:dlɪ/ adverb

almost not, none, etc.: *When my family moved to this area, we hardly knew anyone.* | *I hardly ever (=almost never) watch that show on TV, because I don't really like it.*

**USAGE: hardly**

Do not use **hardly** as the adverb of hard. The adverb of **hard** is also **hard**: *The teacher made us work very hard (NOT very hardly).*



**hard-ship** /'hɑ:dʃɪp/ *noun*

something that makes living difficult, such as not having enough food or money: *In those years of hardship, we never had enough to eat.*

**hard-ware** /'hɑ:dweɪ/ *noun*

**1** computer machinery and equipment: *First you have to buy the hardware – hard drive, keyboard, printer – then buy the software programs.*

**2** tools you use to build and fix things: a hardware store (=where you can buy these things)

**hard-'working** *adjective*

someone who is hard-working works using a lot of effort: *a hard-working student* **ANTONYM** *lazy*

**hare** /her/ *noun*

an animal like a large rabbit, with longer ears and longer back legs

**harm<sup>1</sup>** /hɑ:m/ *noun*

damage, injury, or trouble: *He spent the night in the woods without any harm.* | *Staying up late tonight won't do you any harm.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **harm** *noun*
- **harm** *verb*
- **harmful** *adjective*
- **harmless** *adjective*

**harm<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to hurt or damage something: *Too much sun will harm your skin.* **SYNONYM** *damage*

**harm-ful** /'hɑ:mfəl/ *adjective*

causing harm: *These chemicals are harmful to the environment.*

**harm-less** /'hɑ:mləs/ *adjective*

something that is harmless will not hurt someone or damage something: *The snake is harmless – it will not bite you.*

—**harmlessly** *adverb*

**har-mon-i-ca** /hɑ:'mɒnɪkə/ *noun*

a small metal musical instrument that fits in your hand and is often used in BLUES and rock music. You blow into the holes along the side.

→ See picture on page A21

**har-mo-ny** /'hɑ:məni/ *noun plural*  
**harmonies**

**1** a situation in which people do not argue with each other: *Why can't people live in harmony and be happy?*

**2** the combination of two or more musical notes or two or more lines of music, especially ones that sound good together: *The song has beautiful harmonies.*

—**harmonious** /hɑ:'mouniəs/ *adjective*, formal not involving arguments: *My brother and I had a harmonious relationship – we never fought.*

**har-ness** /'hɑ:nɪs/ *verb, formal*

to use a kind of energy or power to do something: *The machine harnesses the energy of waves to produce electricity.*

**harp** /hɑ:p/ *noun*

a musical instrument like a frame with three corners, with strings stretched from the top to the bottom of the frame

—**harpist** *noun* someone who plays the harp

→ See picture on page A21

**harsh** /hɑ:ʃ/ *adjective*

**1** severe or unpleasant, in a way that is not nice to experience: *Many plants died in the harsh winter.* | *The harsh street lights made everything look greenish and ugly.*

**2** unkind or too strict: *harsh criticism*

—**harshly** *adverb*

—**harshness** *noun*

**har-vest<sup>1</sup>** /'hɑ:vɪst/ *noun*

the act of collecting crops, or the amount that is collected: *The wheat harvest has begun.* | *This year we had a good harvest (=a large amount was collected).*

**harvest<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to collect crops: *They will harvest the corn later in the year.*

**has** /əz; strong hæz/ *verb*

the third person singular of the present tense of HAVE: *She has three sisters.*

**hash** /hæʃ/ *noun*

a dish made with cooked meat and potatoes mixed together

**hash 'browns** *plural noun*

small pieces of potato, cooked in oil

**has-n't** /'hæzənt/ *verb*

the short form of "has not": *He hasn't come home yet.*



**has·sle** /'hæsəl/ noun

something that is annoying to do or deal with: *My pasta was cold, but it was too much hassle to go back and wait in line to ask for more.*

**haste** /heɪst/ noun, formal

quick action, because you are in a hurry: *In her haste to get to the airport, Pam forgot the tickets.*

**hast·y** /'heɪsti/ adjective, formal

done in a hurry, or doing something in a hurry: *I made a hasty decision, and now I wish I could change it.* **SYNONYM** quick

—**hastily** adverb: *I hastily apologized and then ran onto the bus.* **SYNONYM** quickly

**hat**

knit hat



baseball cap



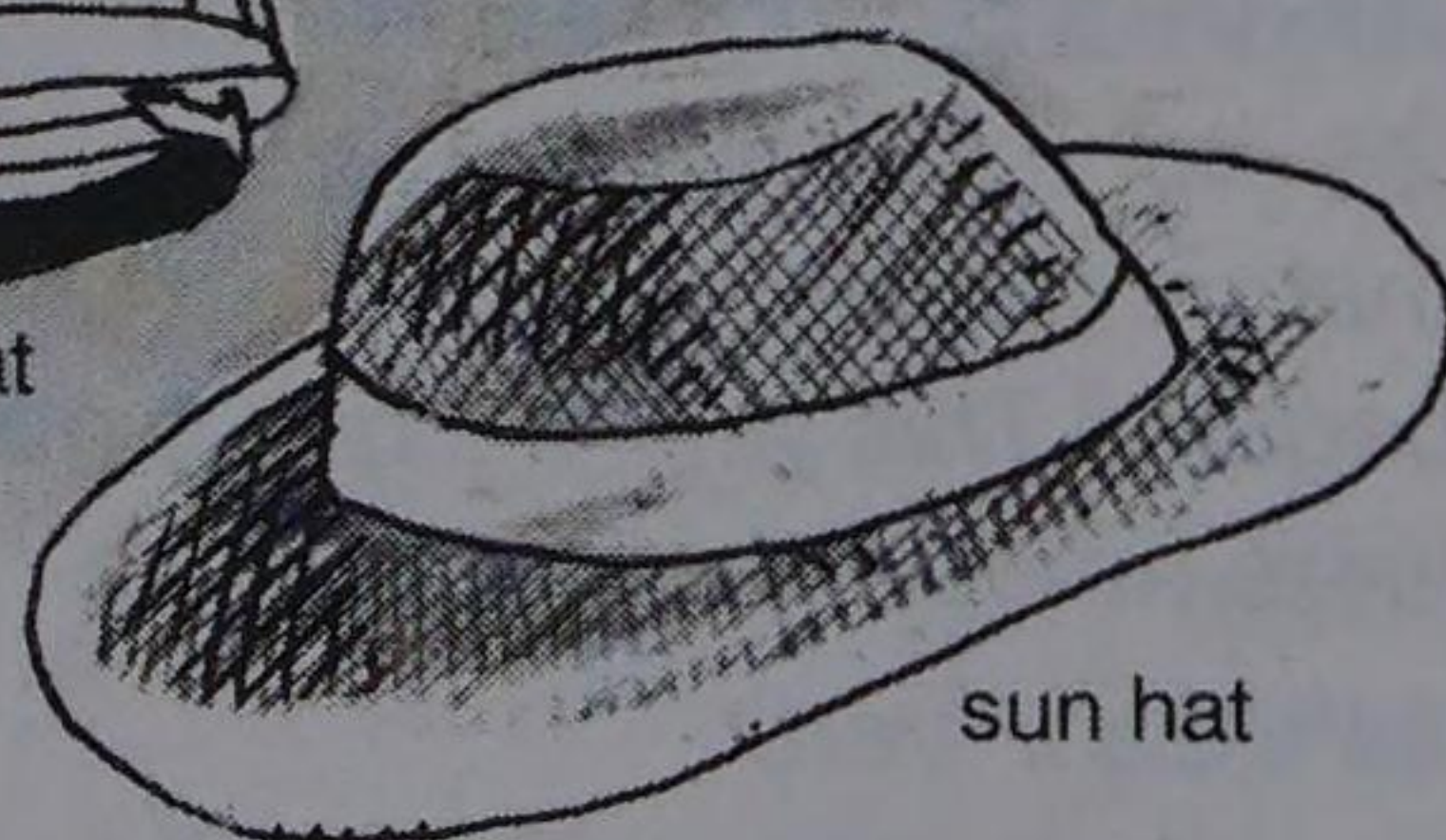
top hat



beret



hard hat



sun hat

**hat** /hæt/ noun

a piece of clothing that you wear on your head: *She was wearing a black wool hat.*

**hatch** /hætʃ/ verb

if an egg hatches, a baby bird, fish, or insect comes out of it

**hatch·et** /'hætʃɪt/ noun

a small AX

**hate** /heɪt/ verb

to dislike someone or something very much: *I hate the cold. | He hated the boy for*

*laughing at him in front of the other kids.*

**ANTONYM** love

**THESAURUS: hate**

**dislike** to not like someone or something: *The only food I dislike is peanut butter.*

**can't stand** to dislike someone or something very much: *I can't stand being late.*

**detest** formal to hate someone or something very much: *I was going out with a boy my mother detested.*

**despise** formal to hate someone very much and not respect him or her at all: *Would she despise him when she found out what he had done?*

**hate**<sup>2</sup> noun

a very strong feeling of dislike: *She felt hate for the men who had hurt her brother.*

**SYNONYM** hatred; **ANTONYM** love

**hate·ful** /'heɪtful/ adjective

very bad: *I wanted to get out of that hateful place.*

**ha·tred** /'heɪtrəd/ noun, formal

a very strong feeling of dislike: *He would not fight in the war because of his hatred of violence.* **SYNONYM** hate; **ANTONYM** love

**haul** /hɔːl/ verb

to pull or carry something heavy: *They hauled the boat up onto the beach.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pull**<sup>1</sup>

**haunt** /haʊnt/ verb

if the spirit of a dead person haunts a place, it appears there often: *The owner told us that the ghost haunts the upstairs bedrooms.*

—**haunted** adjective a haunted building or place is often visited by the spirits of dead people: *Would you spend the night in a haunted house?*

**haunt·ing** /'haʊntɪŋ/ adjective

something that is haunting is so beautiful and sad that you remember it for a long time: *The haunting tune made me want to cry.*

**have**<sup>1</sup> /həv; strong hæv/ auxiliary verb had /əd, strong həd/ **having**

used with the past participle of a verb to form the perfect form of the verb. Used when talking about the period of time up to and including the present: *She has never*



been on a plane before. | “Have you seen the new Disney movie?” “No, I haven’t.” | “What has he been doing?” “He’s been working and going to school” (=he is still working and going to school now).

## have<sup>2</sup> /hæv/ verb had, having

**1** to possess, own, or include something: *Do you have a car?* | *She had beautiful brown eyes.* | *I don’t have any brothers or sisters.* | *The school has over 1,000 students.*

**2** to eat, drink, or smoke something: *What time do you usually have breakfast?* | *Can I have another cup of coffee?*

**3** to experience something: *I often have problems with my computer.* | *Did you have a good time at the party?*

**4** to be sick with an illness or affected by injury: *She has a cold.* | *He has a broken leg.*

**5** to be carrying something with you: *Do you have your wallet with you?*

**6** to be allowed a particular amount of time to do something: *You have 30 minutes to finish the test.*

**7** to think of something: *I have an idea!*

**8** if a woman has a baby, the baby is born: *When is she going to have the baby?*

**9 have to do something** = if you have to do something, you must do it because it is important or necessary: *She has to go to a business meeting.* | *I don’t have to go until tomorrow.*

**10 had better do something** = if you had better do something, you should do it: *You had better tell her that you’re sorry.*

**11 have your hair cut/your car fixed, etc.** = to pay someone to do something for you, for example to cut your hair, or fix your car: *You need to have your hair cut.*

**12 have your eyes closed/your mouth open, etc.** = to keep part of your body in a particular position: *He had his eyes closed, and he looked like he was asleep.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **own<sup>2</sup>**

### PHRASAL VERB

#### have something on

to be wearing something: *The man had no clothes on.*

## have·n’t /'hævənt/ verb

the short form of “have not”: *I haven’t seen him in a long time – does he still live here?*

## have to /'hæftə; strong 'hæftu/ also

### have 'got to verb

**1** if you have to do something, you must do it: *I have to go now. I’m already late!* | *You’ve got to make a decision by tomorrow.*

### USAGE: have to

If an action is not necessary, you can say that you **don’t have to** do it: *You don’t have to come with us if you don’t want to.*

You can also say **don’t need to** if it is not necessary for someone to do something: *I don’t need to leave until 10.*

If someone **must not** do something, she or he is not allowed to do it. **Must not** is fairly formal and is used mainly in written English: *You must not take any sharp objects on the plane.* | *You mustn’t tell anyone else about this.*

Do not say **don’t have to** to mean **must not**.

### GRAMMAR: have to

#### have to, have got to, must

**have to** – used when a rule, law, situation, etc. forces you to do something and you do not have a choice about it: *You have to pay tax on your income* (=because the law says it is necessary). | *We have to visit Grandma on Sunday* (=e.g. because my mother says it is necessary).

**must** – used especially in more formal writing when a law or someone who is in charge of something forces you to do something: *All students must have shorts and a t-shirt for P.E.* (=because the school says it is necessary) | *Motorcycle riders must wear helmets* (=because a law says it is necessary)

**must** – used when you make yourself do something because you think it is a good idea or necessary: *We must visit Grandma on Sunday* (=e.g. because we haven’t seen her for a long time and it would be a good idea). | *I must study for tomorrow’s test* (=because I know it is a good idea if I want to do well).

**have got to** – used in spoken English instead of **have to** or **must** to show how important it is to do something: *I’ve got to talk to him.*

**2** used when saying that you are sure that



something is true or will happen: *This has to be a joke – they can't be serious.*

**hawk** /hɒk/ *noun*

a large bird that eats small birds and animals

**hay** /heɪ/ *noun*

dry grass that is fed to farm animals: *a bale of hay* (=amount of hay tied together)

**'hay fever** *noun*

a condition like a bad cold that some people get from breathing in POLLEN (=dust from plants)

**haz·ard** /'hæzəd/ *noun*

something that may be dangerous: *The smoke from the factory is a health hazard* (=a danger to people's health).

—**hazardous** *adjective* dangerous: *Snow is making the roads hazardous.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **danger**

**haze** /heɪz/ *noun*

smoke or dust in the air that is difficult to see through: *They could almost see the sun through the haze.*

**haz·y** /'heɪzi/ *adjective*

**1** air that is hazy has smoke or dust in it: *On a hazy day you cannot see the mountains.*

ANTONYM **clear**

**2** a hazy memory or idea is not clear: *I was very young, so my memories of that night are a little hazy.*

**he** /i; strong hi/ *pronoun*

used when talking about a man, boy, or male animal: *"That's my brother." "How old is he?"*

**head<sup>1</sup>** /hed/ *noun*

**1** the top part of your body, where your eyes, mouth, and ears are: *She wrapped a scarf around her head to keep warm. | She shook her head* (=as a way of saying "no"). *| He was covered in mud from head to toe* (=completely covered in mud).

**2** your mind: *I can't get that song out of my head. | Come on, use your head* (=think)!

SYNONYM **brain**

**3** the person who is in charge of a group or organization: *Who's the head of the biology department? | the head coach*

**4** the top or front of something, or the most important part of it: *His mother sat at the head of the table.*

**5 keep your head** = to stay calm in a difficult situation: *He fell through the ice on*

*the lake, but he kept his head and pulled himself out.*

**6 lose your head** = to behave stupidly in a difficult situation: *One of the boys lost his head and started yelling at the dog.*

**7 go to someone's head** = to make someone feel more important than he or she really is: *Don't let your success go to your head.*

**8 laugh/yell/scream, etc. your head off** *informal* = to laugh, shout, etc. very much: *The movie was so funny – we were laughing our heads off.*

→ See picture on page A2

**head<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**1** to go in a particular direction: *I headed for* (=went toward) *the door.*

**2** to be in charge of a group or organization: *The company is headed by David Marshall.*

**3 be heading/headed for something** = if you are heading for something, it is likely to happen to you: *The team has to learn how to work together, or they'll be headed for trouble when the season starts.*

**head·ache** /'hedeɪk/ *noun*

a pain in your head: *I have a bad headache.*

**head·ing** /'hedɪŋ/ *noun*

a word or words at the beginning of a piece of writing that tells what it is about: *The heading at the beginning of the paragraph said, "Fashion Tips."*

**head·light** /'hedlaɪt/ *noun*

one of the two large lights on the front of a car: *When I turned the headlights on, only one was working.*

→ See picture on page A28

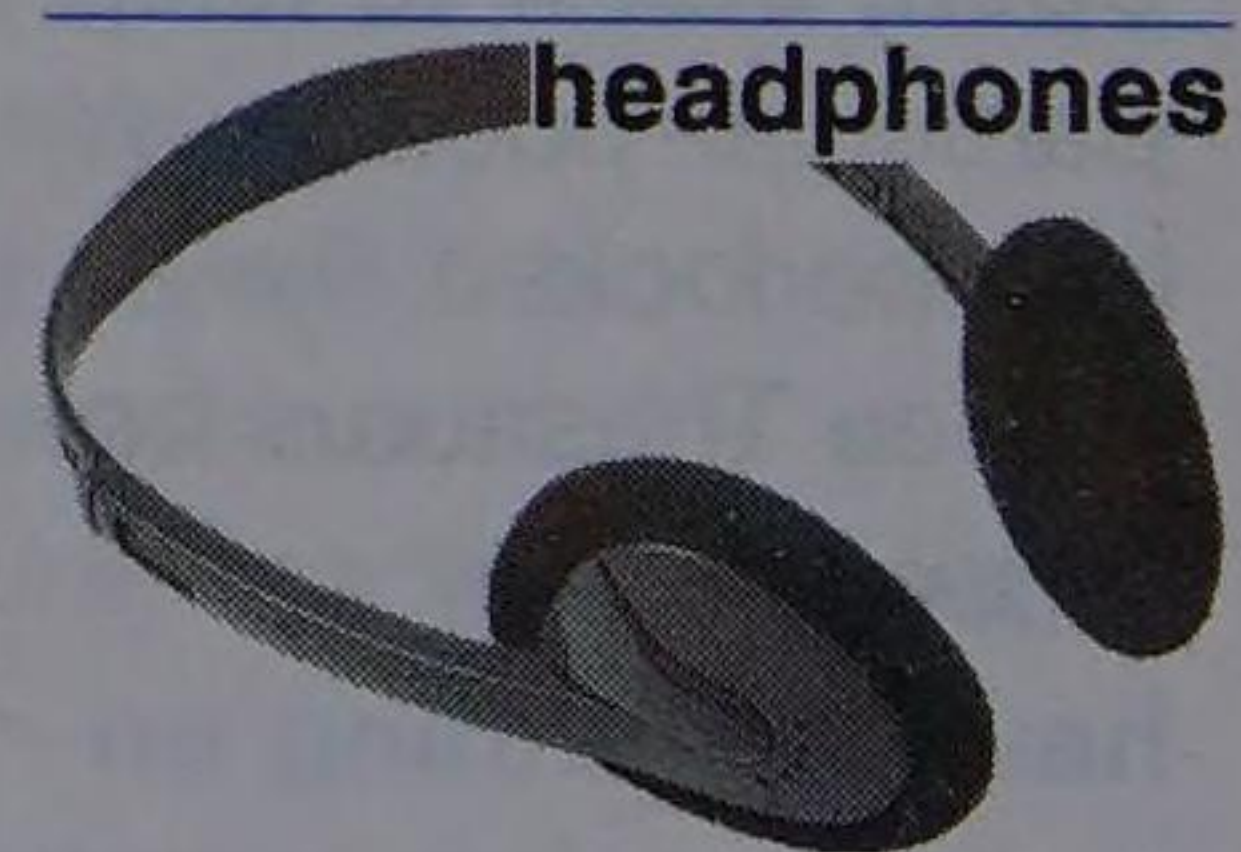
**head·line** /'hedlaɪn/ *noun*

the title of a report in a newspaper: *"President Flies Home," said the headline.*

**head·phones**

/'hedfəʊnz/ *plural noun*

a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears to listen to music



**head·quar·ters** /'hed,kwɔrtəz/ *noun*

**HQ** the place from which people run a large organization or control military activities: *The company's headquarters are in New York.*



**heads** /hedz/ *noun*

the side of a coin that has a picture of someone's head on it: *I lost because I called heads.* **ANTONYM** **tails**

**head 'start** *noun*

the advantage you get by starting before other people: *We gave the younger kids a head start in the race, so that they had a chance to win against the older kids.*

**head·way** /'hedweɪ/ *noun*

**make headway** = to succeed in achieving part of something that is difficult: *The officers trying to solve the crime have not made much headway (=they have not learned much about the crime).* **SYNONYM** **make progress**

**heal** /hil/ *verb*

**1** if a wound heals, the skin or flesh grows back together: *The scratch on her finger healed quickly.*

**2** to make a sick person or a wound get better: *The cream will heal the cut faster.*

—**healer** *noun* someone who makes sick people get better, but not with ordinary medical treatment: *a religious healer*

**health** /helθ/ *noun*

the condition of your body and your mind: *Smoking is bad for your health.* | *My mother had a lot of mental health problems.* | *Are your grandparents in good health (=healthy)?*

**'health care** also **health·care** /'helθker/ *noun*

medical treatment and care: *the high cost of health care*

**'health food** *noun*

food that is natural and good for you: *She bought some brown rice from the health food store.*

**health·ful** /'helθfəl/ *adjective, formal*

good for your body: *fruit, vegetables and other healthful food* **SYNONYM** **healthy**

**health·y** /'helθi/ *adjective*

**1** physically well and strong: *We are very happy to have a healthy baby girl.* **ANTONYM** **sick**

**THESAURUS: healthy**

**well** healthy – used for saying how someone feels or looks: *Aren't you feeling well?*

**fine** healthy – used when someone has asked you how you feel and you are replying that you feel well: *"Hi, Tom, how are you?" "Fine, thanks."*

**better** less sick than you were, or no longer sick: *I'm feeling a lot better now.*

**in shape** healthy and physically strong: *He's fifty, but he runs a lot and he's in pretty good shape.*

**physically fit** healthy and having a strong body: *Even kids need exercise to be physically fit.*

**2** good for your body or your mind: *I try to eat a healthy diet and get exercise.* | *It's not healthy to be alone so much.* **ANTONYM** **unhealthy**

**heap<sup>1</sup>** /hip/ *noun*

a large messy pile of things: *There was a heap of clothes on the floor.*

**heap<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

to put a lot of things on top of each other in a messy way: *He heaped his plate with food.*

**hear** /hɪr/ *verb* **heard** /hɔ:d/

**1** to notice a sound, using your ears: *He heard footsteps.* | *I could hear my parents yelling downstairs.*

**2** to be told some news or information: *Have you heard the news? Jen had her baby.* | *I heard that he was sick.* | *She had heard about the robbery on the radio.*

**3 have heard of someone/something** = to know that someone or something exists: *I've heard of the book, but I've never read it.*

**PHRASAL VERB****hear from someone**

to get news or information from someone: *Have you heard from John lately?*

**hear·ing** /'hɪrɪŋ/ *noun*

**1** your ability to hear: *My hearing is not very good, so you'll have to speak louder.*

**2** an official meeting to find out the facts about something: *The Senate began hearings on airline safety this week.*

**'hearing aid** *noun*

a small object that you put in your ear if you cannot hear well, to make sounds louder

**heart** /hart/ *noun*

**1** the part inside your chest that makes blood move through your body: *Her heart beat faster.*

**2** the part of you which has strong feelings



such as love: *I loved her with all my heart* (=very strongly). *I knew in my heart that I wouldn't see him again.*

**3** a shape that is used to mean love: *The card was decorated with pink hearts.*

**4 the heart of something** **a)** the middle of an area or thing: *Our hotel was in the heart of the city* **b)** the most important part of something: *We need to get to the heart of the problem so that we can fix it.*

**5** a card used in card games, with red heart shapes on it: *the four of hearts* (=a card with four heart shapes)

**6 know something by heart** = to know a poem, song, etc. so well that you can say it or sing it without reading it: *I know the song by heart, so I won't need the music.*

**7 break someone's heart** = to make someone very unhappy: *When she asked for a divorce, she broke my heart.*

**8 take heart** = to have more hope and confidence than before: *"Take heart," the coach said to the team. "I know we can play much better than we did today."*

**9 lose heart** = to have less hope and confidence than before: *Don't lose heart – we'll find an answer to the problem!*

**10 someone's heart sinks** = used when saying that someone suddenly becomes very sad or loses hope: *Her heart sank when she realized how big the job was.*

**11 be something at heart** = used when saying what type of person someone really is: *He gets mad easily, but he's a good person at heart.*

→ See picture on page A2

**'heart at tack** *noun*

a time when someone's heart suddenly stops working normally: *He had a heart attack and died.*

**heart-beat** /'hɑrtbit/ *noun*

the movement or sound that someone's heart makes: *The doctor listened to the baby's heartbeat.*

**heart-break** /'hɑrtbreik/ *noun, formal*  
great sadness that you feel when something happens: *He remembered the heartbreak he felt when she married another man.*

—**heartbroken** /'hɑrt,broukən/ *adjective*  
very sad because of something that has happened: *They were heartbroken when the Red Sox didn't win.*

**heart-less** /'hɑrtlɪs/ *adjective, formal*  
cruel or unkind: *Her husband was a stupid heartless man.*

**heart-y** /'hɑrti/ *adjective, formal*  
a hearty meal is very big: *Everyone was hungry, and ate a hearty dinner.*

**heat<sup>1</sup>** /hit/ *noun*

**1** the warmth from something hot: *She felt the heat from the sun on her face.*

**2** very hot weather: *I can't work in this heat.*

**3 the heat** = the system in a building that keeps it warm: *It's cold in here – I'll turn the heat on.*

**heat<sup>2</sup>** also **heat up** *verb*

to make something warm or hot: *I'll heat some soup for dinner.*

**heat-ed** /'hitɪd/ *adjective*

if an object is heated, a heater makes it warm: *The hotel has a heated swimming pool.*

**heat-er** /'hitə/ *noun*

a machine for heating air or water: *He lived in a small room with one electric heater to keep him warm.*

→ See picture on page A28

**'heat wave** *noun*

some days or weeks when the weather is very hot: *In August, there was a heatwave when the temperature was over 95 for a week.*

**heave** /hiv/ *verb*

to lift or pull something heavy: *Three men heaved the big box into the house.*

**heav-en** /'hevən/ *noun*

in some religions, the place where God is, and good people go after they die: *Do you think you'll go to heaven?*

→ **hell**

—**heavenly** *adjective* relating to heaven: *Christians sometimes call God the heavenly Father.*

**heav-y** /'hevi/ *adjective*

**1** weighing a lot: *I couldn't lift the box – it was too heavy.*

ANTONYM **light**

**2** large in amount: *There was heavy snow and some roads were closed.* ANTONYM **light**





**3 a heavy smoker/drinker** = someone who smokes a lot, or drinks a lot of alcohol: *Lung cancer is more common if you are a heavy smoker.*

—**heaviness** *noun* the feeling that something weighs a lot

→ See Thesaurus box at **fat**<sup>1</sup>

**heavy- 'duty** *adjective*

very strong and not easy to damage: *The workmen need to wear heavy-duty boots to protect their feet.*

**heav-y-weight** /'hevi,weɪt/ *noun*

in BOXING, someone who belongs in the group of people who weigh the most

**hec-tic** /'hektɪk/ *adjective*

very busy, with a lot of different things happening: *I had a hectic week, with three exams and a paper due on Friday.*

**he'd** /ɪd; strong hɪd/

**1** the short form of “he had”: *He'd met her before.*

**2** the short form of “he would”: *George said he'd be late.*

**heel** /hi:l/ *noun*

**1** the round part in the back of your foot

**2** the part on the bottom of a shoe in the back: *She likes shoes with high heels for parties.*

→ See page A2, picture at **shoe**

**heft-y** /'hefti/ *adjective, informal*

**1** a hefty amount of money is very large: *They paid him a hefty salary – over 2 million dollars.*

**2** someone who is hefty is large and heavy: *He was a hefty guy with dark hair.*

**height** /haɪt/ *noun*

**1** how tall someone or something is: *First, the doctor measured her height.*

**2** the level something is above the ground: *You can change the height of your chair and make it lower if that is more comfortable.*

**3** the time when something is busiest or most successful: *July is the height of the tourist season, and thousands of people come here every day.*

**heir** /er/ *noun*

someone who gets money or other things from a person who has died: *Her son was the heir to everything she owned.*

**held** /held/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of **HOLD**

**hel-i-cop-ter** /'helɪ,kɑptə/ *noun*

an aircraft with long metal parts on top that spin to make it fly. A helicopter can go straight up into the air: *A police helicopter landed on top of the building.*

→ See picture on page A26

**he'll** /ɪl; strong hɪl/

the short form of “he will”: *He'll call us when he gets there.*

**hell** /hel/ *noun*

in some religions, the place where bad people go when they die

**hel-lo** /hə'ləʊ/

a word you say when you meet someone, or talk on the telephone: *Hello Paul, how are you?*

**hel-met** /'helmət/ *noun*

a hard hat that covers and protects your head: *Don't forget to wear your bicycle helmet.*

→ See picture on page A26

**help**<sup>1</sup> /help/ *verb*

**1** to do something that makes a job, work, etc. easier for another person: *“This box is really heavy.” “I can help.” | Mom, can you help me with my homework?*

**2** to make something bad or unpleasant better: *If you have a headache, lying down helps.*

**3 can't help doing something** = used in order to say that you cannot stop yourself from doing something: *She looked so funny – I couldn't help laughing.*

**4 help yourself** = used in order to tell someone to take as much food or drink as he or she wants to: *There's plenty of food, so help yourself.*

**5 help!** = a word you shout when you are in danger, and you need someone to come

—**helper** *noun* someone who helps another person: *I built the wall myself, with a few helpers.*

**help**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

something that makes a job, work, etc. easier for another person: *Could you come here for a minute – I need help. | If you don't understand, ask your teacher for help.*

**help-ful** /'helpfəl/ *adjective*

**1** useful: *The website is full of helpful information about the college.*

**2** willing to help: *The librarian was very*



helpful and found exactly the book I wanted.  
—**helpfully** adverb in a helpful way: “If you need anything, just ask me,” he said helpfully.

**help·ing** /'helpɪŋ/ noun

an amount of food for one person, that you put on a plate: *I ate a big helping of ice cream.*

**help·less** /'helpləs/ adjective

not able to take care of yourself: *When babies are born, they are totally helpless.*

—**helplessly** adverb: *He could not swim, and struggled helplessly in the water.*

**hem** /hem/ noun

the bottom edge of a piece of clothing, that you make by folding it over and sewing it: *I shortened the skirt, and sewed up the hem.*

**hem·i·sphere** /'hemə,sfɪr/ noun

one half of the Earth: *Australia is in the southern hemisphere.*

**hen** /hen/ noun

a female chicken: *Hens usually lay eggs in the same place every day.*

**hep·a·ti·tis** /,hepə'taɪtɪs/ noun

a serious disease of the LIVER

**her** /ə; strong hæ/ pronoun

a woman or girl: *I gave her \$20.*

—**her** adjective belonging to a woman or girl: *Mom lost her purse.*

**herb** /əb/ noun

a plant that you use for giving more taste to food, or for making medicine: *Cook the chicken with some fresh herbs.*

**herb·i·vore** /'hæbə,vɔr/ noun, formal

an animal that only eats plants: *Rabbits are herbivores.*

**herd<sup>1</sup>** /hæd/ noun

a group of big animals of the same kind: *In Kenya, we saw a herd of elephants.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group<sup>1</sup>**

**herd<sup>2</sup>** verb

to make a group of people or animals move somewhere together: *The men herded us into a room.*

**here** /hɪr/ adverb

**1** in or to this place: *How long have you lived here? | Come here, and stand next to me.*

**2** if a period of time is here, it has begun: *Winter is gone and Spring is here!*

**3 here you go/here you are** = something you say when you are giving something to

someone: “Can I see your pictures?” “Sure, here you go.”

**4 here and there** = in different places: *Boats were sailing here and there on the water.*

**her·it·age** /'herətɪdʒ/ noun, formal

the ideas, history, art, etc. of the people in a country or group, that they pass to their children: *My family is Chinese-American, and we are proud of our Chinese heritage.*

**he·ro** /'hɪrəʊ/ noun plural **heroes**

**1** someone who people admire, who has done something very brave or good: *When he came back from the war, he was a hero.*

**2** a man who is the most important character in a book, play, or movie: *The hero escapes and saves the children at the end of the movie.*

—**heroism** /'herəʊ,ɪzəm/ noun when someone does something very brave or good: *My father received a medal for his heroism.*

**he·ro·ic** /hɪ'rouɪk/ adjective

very determined or brave: *The neighbors made a heroic effort to save our house as it burned.*

**her·o·ine** /'herəʊɪn/ noun

a woman who is the most important character in a book, play, or movie: *In movies, the heroine is usually beautiful.*

**her·on** /'herən/ noun

a big bird with very long legs and a long beak, that lives near water

**her·ring** /'herɪŋ/ noun plural **herring** or **herrings**

a long thin silver fish that lives in the ocean

**hers** /hɜz/ pronoun

something that belongs to a woman or girl: *That's not my bag – it's hers (=her bag).*

**her·self** /ə'self; strong hæ'self/ pronoun

**1** the woman or girl who you have just mentioned: *Anna looked at herself in the mirror.*

**2** used with “she” or a woman’s name, to emphasize that she did something: *I know it's true, because she told me herself.*

**3 (all) by herself** = alone or without help: *She painted the house by herself.*

**he's** /ɪz; strong hɪz/

**1** the short form of “he is”: *He's a doctor.*

**2** the short form of “he has”: *He's bought a new car.*



**hes·i·tate** /'hezə,teɪt/ verb

to stop before you do or say something, because you are thinking about what to do or say: *She hesitated for a second before she picked up the phone.*

—**hesitation** /,hezə'teɪʃən/ noun an act of hesitating: *He asked me to marry him, and I said “yes” without hesitation (=immediately).*

**het·er·o·sex·u·al** /,hetərə'sekʃuəl/

adjective, formal

someone who is heterosexual is attracted to people of the opposite sex

**hi** /haɪ/ informal

another word for HELLO: *Hi Jen! How are you?*

**hi·ber·nate** /'haɪbə,neɪt/ verb

if an animal hibernates, it sleeps all through the winter: *Some bears hibernate, and wake up in the spring.*

—**hibernation** /,haɪbə'neɪʃən/ noun the act of hibernating

**hic·cups** /'hɪkʌps/ plural noun

if you get the hiccups, you start making short sounds in your throat that you cannot control: *I suddenly got the hiccups, and had to drink some water to make them go away.*

**hide<sup>1</sup>** /haɪd/ verb hid /hɪd/ hidden /'hɪdn/

**1** to put something where people will not find it: *She didn't want him to see the letter, so she hid it in a drawer.*

**2** to go somewhere where people cannot see or find you: *Jake hid from his mom, because he thought she would be mad.*

**3** to stop other people from knowing the truth, or seeing how you feel: *Mark couldn't hide the fact that he liked Kim a lot.*

**hide<sup>2</sup>** noun

the skin of an animal, that people use for leather

**hide-and-'seek** noun

a game in which one child tries to find all the other children, who are hiding in different places: *The kids were in the yard, playing hide-and-seek.*

**hid·e·ous** /'hɪdiəs/ adjective

very ugly: *A lot of people thought the new building was hideous.*

**hi·er·ar·chy** /'haɪə,rɑːki/ **Ac** noun

plural **hierarchies**

a system of organizing people in which some people are more important and powerful than others: *The president is at the top of the hierarchy.*

**high** /haɪ/ adjective

**1** high mountains, walls, etc. are tall: *There was a high wall around the house. | Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.*

ANTONYM **low**

**2** high windows, cupboards, etc. are a long way above the ground: *Keep medicine in a high cupboard that children cannot reach.*

**USAGE: high**

Use **high** to talk about mountains, walls, fences, etc.: *the highest mountain in the world | How high will the wall be?*

Use **high** to talk about how far something is from the ground: *The shelf's too high for the kids to reach.*

Use **tall** to talk about the height of people and trees: *She's only five feet tall. | a tall man | the tall trees in the park*

Use **tall** to talk about other narrow objects: *an old house with tall chimneys | a tall flagpole*

We usually use **tall** to talk about buildings: *the tall buildings in the downtown area*

**3** a high amount, number, etc. is big: *I got a really high score on my math test.*

**4** of a very good quality or standard: *The food in that store is very high quality.*

**5** a high sound is near the top of the range of sounds that humans can hear: *She had a high voice, like a little girl's voice.*

**6 be high in something** = to have a lot of a substance: *Candy bars are not healthy because they are very high in fat.*

WORD FAMILY → **height** noun

**higher edu'cation** noun

education at a college or university: *The school encourages its students to go on to higher education.*

**'high jump** noun

**the high jump** = a sport in which you jump as high as you can over a bar

**high·lands** /'haɪləndz/ noun

an area with a lot of mountains: *The family traveled to the highlands where it was cooler.*



**high·light**<sup>1</sup> /'haɪlaɪt/ **Ac** verb

to mark important words on paper or on a computer, using a color that is easy to see: *Use a colored pen to highlight information that you want to remember.*

**highlight**<sup>2</sup> noun

the best or most important part of something: *We can watch the highlights of the game on TV later tonight.*

**high·ly** /'haɪli/ adverb

**1** very: *The movie was highly successful – millions of people went to see it.*

**2** **highly paid/trained, etc.** = very well paid, etc.: *All our teachers are highly experienced.*

**High·ness** /'haɪnəs/ noun

**Your/His/Her Highness** = a title for a king or queen, and some other royal people

**high·pitched** adjective

a high-pitched sound is not low like a man's voice: *I could hear the high-pitched laughter of the girls upstairs.*

**high school** noun

a school in the U.S. and Canada for students over the age of 14: *high school students* | *Wendy and I were good friends in high school.*

**high-tech** also **hi-tech** /,haɪ 'tek/ adjective

using very modern equipment and methods: *In Japan, there are a lot of high-tech companies that produce electronic goods.*

**high tide** noun

the time when the ocean comes a long way up the beach: *At high tide, the water covers the whole beach.*

→ See picture at **tide**

**high·way** /'haɪweɪ/ noun plural **highways**

a big fast road between cities: *There was a lot of traffic on the highway because of an accident.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **road**

**hi·jack** /'haɪdʒæk/ verb

to use violence or threats to take control of an airplane, bus, etc.: *The terrorists hijacked a plane flying from London to the U.S.*

—**hijacker** noun someone who hijacks a plane, bus, etc.: *A hijacker in Miami took a school bus and left the children by the side of the road.*

—**hijacking** noun an act of hijacking a plane, bus, etc.: *Two people were shot in the hijacking.*

**hike** /haɪk/ noun

a long walk in the country: *On Sunday, we took a hike in the mountains.*

—**hike** verb to walk a long way in the country: *A lot of people hike the mountain trail that runs from New Hampshire to Georgia.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **walk**<sup>1</sup>

**hi·lar·i·ous** /hɪ'lerɪəs/ adjective

very funny: *His jokes were hilarious – I couldn't stop laughing.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **funny**<sup>1</sup>

**hill** /hɪl/ noun

an area of high land, like a small mountain: *Why don't we climb to the top of the hill?*

—**hilly** adjective having a lot of hills: *San Francisco is a hilly city.*

**him** /ɪm; strong hɪm/ pronoun

a man or boy: *I gave him the letter.*

**him·self** /ɪm'self; strong hɪm'self/ pronoun

**1** the man or boy who you have just mentioned: *Pete fell and hurt himself.*

**2** used with "he" or a man's name to emphasize that he did something: *Dad made the boat himself.*

**3 (all) by himself** = alone or without help: *He likes working by himself.*

**hin·der** /'hɪndə/ verb, formal

to make it difficult for someone to do something: *The bad weather hindered their efforts to save the men.*

**hind·sight** /'haɪndsɑɪt/ noun

the ability to understand a situation that you can only get after it has happened: *In hindsight, I realize that he was lying to me (=I know now that he was lying).*

**Hin·du·ism** /'hɪndu,ɪzəm/ noun

the main religion in India

—**Hindu** noun someone whose religion is Hinduism

—**Hindu** adjective relating to Hinduism: *a Hindu temple*



**hinge** /hɪndʒ/

noun

a piece of metal that joins two parts of a door, box, etc., so that one of them can open or shut: *The door's hinges squeak every time it opens.*



hinge

**hint** /hɪnt/ noun

**1** something you say that helps someone guess something: *Mom, what am I getting for my birthday – give me a hint!*

**2** something that is useful advice: *The book is full of helpful hints on how to get a job.*

—**hint** verb to say something that helps someone guess something: *She said she and Dan had some big news – I think she was hinting that they might get married.*

**hip** /hɪp/ noun

the part of your body where your legs join your body: *The woman was holding a baby on her hip.*

→ See picture on page A2

**hip-hop** noun

a type of popular music with a strong beat and spoken words, that people dance to

**hip-pie** also **hippy** /'hɪpi/ noun

someone from the 1960s and 1970s who had long hair and unusual clothes and who did not want war or a traditional way of living

**hip-po-pot-a-mus** /,hɪpə'pɒtəməs/

also **hip-po** /'hɪpɒ/ noun plural

**hippopotamuses**

a large African animal with a fat body and thick gray skin, that lives in and near water

**hire** /haɪə/ verb

to pay someone to work for you: *Most hotels hire more people during the summer when it is busy.* **SYNONYM** employ

**his<sup>1</sup>** /ɪz; strong hɪz/ adjective

belonging to a man or boy: *Did he do his homework?*

**his<sup>2</sup>** pronoun

something that belongs to a man or boy: *That's not my jacket – it's his (=his jacket).*

**His-pan-ic** /hɪ'spænɪk/ noun

someone from a country where the people speak Spanish or Portuguese

—**Hispanic** adjective from a country where

the people speak Spanish or Portuguese: *Hispanic students*

**hiss** /hɪs/ verb

to make a sound like “ssss”: *The snake hissed at me, and I jumped.*

—**hiss** noun a sound like “ssss”: *The elevator doors opened with a hiss.*

→ See picture on page A22

**his-to-ri-an** /hɪ'stɔriən/ noun

someone who studies or writes about history: *She is a famous historian who knows a lot about early American history.*

**his-tor-ic** /hɪ'stɔrɪk/ adjective

important in history: *It was a historic moment when the two countries signed the peace agreement.*

**his-to-ry** /'hɪstəri/ noun

**1** also **History** the study of things that happened in the past: *My favorite subject at school is History.*

**2** all the things that happened in the past: *The Civil War was the most difficult time in the history of our nation.*

—**historical** /hɪ'stɔrɪkəl/ adjective relating to things that have happened in the past: *I like reading historical novels.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **history** noun
- **historic** adjective
- **historical** adjective
- **historian** noun
- **prehistoric** adjective

**hit<sup>1</sup>** /hɪt/ verb hit, hitting

**1** to move your hand quickly, so that you touch something with a lot of force: *One boy hit me on the arm really hard. I picked up the bat and hit the ball hard.*

**THESAURUS: hit**

**punch** to hit someone hard with your hand closed, especially in a fight: *One of the boys punched him in the stomach.*

**slap** to hit someone with the flat part of your hand, especially because you are angry with him or her: *I saw him slap his girlfriend.*

**beat** to hit someone or something many times: *He had been robbed and beaten.*

**smack** to hit someone or something, usually with your open hand: *The ball smacked him in the face.*



**strike** *formal* to hit someone or something very hard: *She fell and struck her head on a table.*

**knock** to hit a door or window with your closed hand to make a noise and get someone's attention: *Someone was knocking on the door.*

**bang** to make a loud noise, especially by hitting something against something hard: *A policeman was banging on the door.*

**tap** to gently hit your fingers or foot against something: *I tapped him on the shoulder.*

**pound** to knock very hard, making a lot of noise: *Scott pounded on the door with his fist.*

**2** to crash into something: *Ann's car hit a tree.*

**3** if a bullet or bomb hits someone or something, it goes into them and causes injury or damage: *The bullet hit him in his shoulder.*

**4 hit the roof/ceiling** *informal* = to become very angry: *Dad hit the roof, when I got home late.*

#### PHRASAL VERB

##### hit on something

to have a good idea about something: *Chris hit on the idea of asking our professor for help.*

#### hit<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a movie, song, play, etc. that is very successful: *The band's first song was a big hit (=it was very popular).*

**2** the act of hitting the ball in a game such as baseball: *Michael played really well – he had four hits.*

#### hitch-hike /'hɪtʃhaɪk/ verb

to travel by asking for free rides from people who are driving past you: *I hitchhiked around Europe because I didn't have enough money for the trains.*

—**hitchhiker** *noun* someone who is hitchhiking: *I picked up a hitchhiker when I was driving home.*

#### hi-tech /,haɪ 'tek/ adjective

another spelling of HIGH-TECH

#### HIV noun

**Human Immunodeficiency Virus** a VIRUS people get that can cause AIDS

#### hive /haɪv/ noun

also **beehive** a place where BEES live

#### HMO noun

**Health Maintenance Organization** a type of insurance organization that pays for your health care if you use doctors and hospitals that are part of the organization

#### hoard<sup>1</sup> /hɔːd/ also hoard up verb

to collect or hide a lot of something you will use in the future: *Animals such as squirrels hoard food for the winter.*

—**hoarder** *noun* someone who hoards something

#### hoard<sup>2</sup> noun

a large amount of something that someone has hidden to keep it safe: *People say there is a hoard of gold somewhere on the island.*

#### hoarse /hɔːs/ adjective

if you are hoarse, your voice sounds low and is not clear: *I talked so much that I was hoarse by the end of the day.*

—**hoarsely** *adverb* if you speak hoarsely, your voice sounds hoarse: *"I can't speak very well," he said hoarsely.*

—**hoarseness** *noun* the quality of sounding hoarse

#### hoax /houks/ noun

an unkind trick to make people think something that is not true: *The caller said there was a bomb in the store, but it was a hoax.*

#### hob-ble /'hɒbəl/ verb

to walk with small steps because it is difficult to walk: *His leg was hurting badly, but he managed to hobble home.*

#### hob-by /'hɒbi/ noun plural hobbies

an activity that you enjoy doing in your free time: *My hobbies are swimming and playing the piano.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **game**

#### hock-ey /'hɒki/ noun

also **ice hockey** a sport that two teams play on ice, using curved sticks to hit a hard flat object

#### hoe /hou/ noun

a tool with a long handle, used for making the soil loose

#### hog<sup>1</sup> /hɒg/ noun

a large pig: *a hog farm*

#### hog<sup>2</sup> verb, informal hogged, hogging

to use something a lot, so it is difficult for other people to use it: *My sister always hogs the bathroom.*



**hoist** /hɔɪst/ verb

to lift something using ropes or a machine: *The soldiers came into the building and hoisted the flag.*

**hold<sup>1</sup>** /hould/ verb held /held/

**1** to have something in your hands or arms: *The boy was holding a \$10 bill. | Hold my hand when we cross the street.*

**THESAURUS: hold**

**grip** to hold something firmly: *I gripped the rail and tried not to look down.*

**clutch** to hold something tightly: *a child clutching a bag of candy*

**take/keep/grab hold of something** to take something in your hands and hold it tightly: *Doug took hold of my hand and pulled me away from the crowd.*

**grab** to take hold of someone or something suddenly or violently: *Vince grabbed hold of my arm.*

**seize** formal to take hold of something or someone suddenly and using force: *He was seized by three young soldiers.*

**2** to keep something in a position: *He held the picture up so we could see it. | She held the door open for me.*

**3** to have a formal meeting: *The school is holding a meeting for parents and teachers next week.*

**4** to have space for a number or amount of something: *The theater holds 800 people. | The container holds one gallon of liquid.*

**5** formal to have a particular position, job or level of achievement: *The green card allows people from another country to hold a job in the U.S.*

**6 hold it!** informal = you say this when you are telling someone to wait or stop doing something: *"Hold it!" the teacher said, "Nobody leave the room yet – I'm still talking."*

**7 hold your breath** = to breathe in and not breathe out again for a short time: *I held my breath, and jumped into the water.*

→ **hold your breath** at **breath**

**PHRASAL VERBS****hold something against someone**

to blame or dislike someone for something he or she did: *John got the job that she was supposed to get, and she holds that against him.*

**hold something back**

to stop something or someone from moving forward: *The police couldn't hold the crowds back.*

**hold on**

**1 hold on!** informal = used when asking someone to wait, while you do or say something: *Hold on a minute – I need to find my keys.*

**2** to keep something carefully or tightly in your hand: *If you go out at night, hold on to your wallet.*

**hold someone or something up**

to make someone or something late: *Bad weather held us up, and we got home an hour late.*

→ See picture on page A4

**hold<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1 take/grab/keep hold of something** = to take something in your hand and keep it there: *Mom took hold of the handle and pulled hard.*

**2 get (a) hold of someone or something** = to find someone or something that you need or want: *I need to get hold of Mike to ask him a question.*

**3 on hold** = if you are on hold, you are waiting to speak to someone on the telephone: *Every time I call the bank, they put me on hold (=make me wait).*

**4 the hold** = the bottom part of a ship, where you store goods

**hold-up** /'houldʌp/ noun

**1** a delay: *There was a holdup on the freeway because of an accident.*

**2** if there is a holdup, people try to rob a store, bank, etc., using guns or other weapons: *He went to jail for driving the car in a holdup.*

**hole** /hou/ noun

**1** an empty space, especially where something is broken or torn: *There's a hole in my sweater.*

**THESAURUS: hole**

**space** the empty area between two things, into which you can put something: *There's a space for that box on the shelf over there.*

**gap** an empty space between two things or two parts of something: *She has a gap between her two front teeth.*



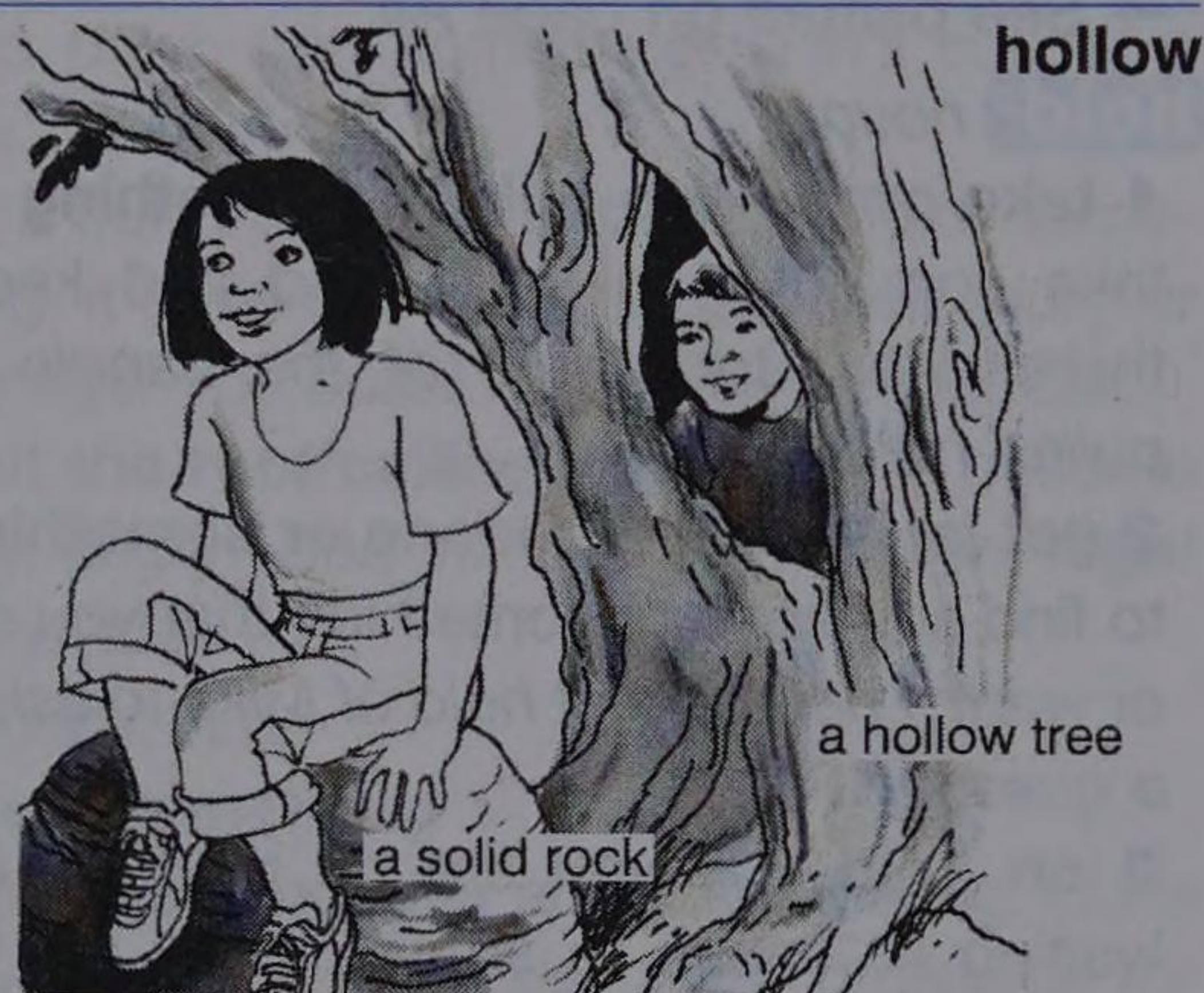
**leak** a small hole that lets liquid or gas flow into or out of something: *There was a leak in the oil tank.*

**crack** a very narrow space between two things or two parts of something: *He pushed the letter through the crack under the door.*

**2** a space in the ground where an animal lives: *a rabbit hole*

**hol·i·day** /'hələ,deɪ/ *noun* plural **holidays**  
an official day when people do not have to go to school or work: *Many of the stores were closed, because it was a national holiday.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **vacation**



**hol·low** /'haləʊ/ *adjective*  
having an empty space inside: *The kids hid in the old tree, which was hollow inside.*

**hol·ly** /'hali/ *noun*  
a small tree with dark green pointed leaves and small red fruits

**ho·ly** /'houli/ *adjective* **holier, holiest**  
**1** relating to God or religion: *Jerusalem is a holy city for Christians, Muslims, and Jews.*

SYNONYM **sacred**

**2** a holy person is very good and close to God: *The priest was a very holy man.*

—**holiness** *noun* the quality of being very good and close to God

**home¹** /'həʊm/ *noun*

**1** the place where you live: *On Monday Mia felt sick, so she stayed at home.*

# **THESAURUS: home**

**house** the house or apartment where someone lives: *Her house is always really clean.*

**place** *informal* the house, apartment, or room where someone lives: *We went back to my place after the movie.*

**residence** *formal* the place where someone lives: *There are some private residences inside the national parks.*

**2** a place where people live if they need someone to take care of them: *That building is now a home for the elderly.*

**3 be/feel at home** = to feel happy and confident somewhere, because you know it well: *I feel at home in the city, because I've lived here all my life.*

**home²** *adverb*

to or at the place where you live: *I was tired, and I wanted to go home. | Hi Mom, I'm home.*

**home³** *adjective*

**1** relating to the place where you live or were born: *My home town is Chicago.*

**2** playing on your team's sports field, not the field of another team: *The team has won all its home games.* **ANTONYM** **away**

**home·land** /'houmlænd/ *noun*

the country where you were born: *When the war started, many people left their homeland.*

**home·less** /'houmləs/ *adjective*

without a place to live: *There were terrible floods, and a lot of people became homeless.*

—**the homeless** *noun* people who do not have a place to live: *The money goes to medical care for the homeless.*

**home·made** /,həʊm'meɪd/ *adjective*

homemade bread, jam, etc. is made at home, not in a store: *I love my mom's homemade cookies.*

**'home page** also **home·page**

/'həʊmpeɪdʒ/ *noun*

the first page of a WEBSITE that gives you general information about the website: *This arrow will take you back to the homepage.*

**home·room** /'həʊmrum/ *noun*

a room where groups of students go at the beginning of each school day to get general information and take ATTENDANCE: *Carrie and I sit next to each other in homeroom.*

**'home 'run** *noun*

a good hit in baseball, that gives the player time to run all the way around, and get a



point: *Johnny's a good basketball player – he hit a home run in our last game.*

**home-sick** /'həʊm,sɪk/ adjective

sad because you are away from your home: *When Jessie went to camp for three weeks, she was really homesick.*

—**homesickness** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **sad**

**home-work** /'həʊmwɜ:k/ noun

work for school that students do at home: *I did all my homework, and then I went outside.*

**hom-i-cide** /'həmə,said/ noun, formal

the crime of murder: *The police charged the man with homicide for killing two people.*

**ho-mo-sex-u-al** /,həʊmə'sekʃuəl/

adjective, formal

sexually attracted to people of the same sex

SYNONYM **gay**; ANTONYM **heterosexual**

—**homosexuality** /,həʊmə'sekʃu'æləti/

noun the state of being homosexual

**hon-est** /'ənɪst/ adjective

an honest person is good, and does not lie or steal: *He was an honest man, who everyone liked and trusted.* ANTONYM **dishonest**

—**honestly** adverb behaving in an honest way: *Please answer these questions honestly.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **honest** adjective
- **honestly** adverb
- **honesty** noun
- **dishonest** adjective
- **dishonestly** adverb
- **dishonesty** noun

**hon-es-ty** /'ənɪsti/ noun

the quality of being good and not lying or stealing: *Thank you for telling me the truth – I admire your honesty.* ANTONYM **dishonesty**

**hon-ey** /'hʌni/ noun

a sweet sticky liquid that BEES make, and that people eat

**hon-ey-moon** /'hʌni,mun/ noun

a vacation that people take after they get married: *Two days after the wedding, they went to Greece on their honeymoon.*

**honk** /hɒŋk/ verb

to use the horn in a car, so that it makes a loud noise: *I crossed the road in front of a cab, and the driver honked his horn.*

**hon-or** /'ɒnə/ noun

**1** something that makes you feel proud: *It was an honor to play for this great team.*

**2 in honor of someone** = in order to show respect for someone or something important: *They built a memorial in honor of the Princess after she died.*

**3** something that someone officially receives as a sign of praise and respect for something good he or she has done: *The medal is the highest honor that the President can give to someone.*

—**honorable** adjective deserving respect or praise for being good, fair, or honest: *He gave the money that he took back to the family, which was the honorable thing to do.*

**hood** /hʊd/ noun

**1** the part of a jacket, SWEATSHIRT, etc. that you pull up to cover your head: *The man had pulled up his hood, so I couldn't see his face.*

**2** the metal cover over the engine of a car: *I lifted the hood of the car to look at the engine.*

→ See picture on pages A6 and A26

**hoof** /hʊf/ noun

plural **hoofs** or

**hooves** /hʊvz/

the hard foot of a horse, cow, etc.

**hook** /hʊk/ noun

**1** something curved that you hang things on, on a wall, door, etc.: *Kate took off her coat, and hung it on a hook behind the door.*

**2** a curved piece of metal that you use for catching fish: *a fishing hook*

**3 off the hook** = if a telephone is off the hook, the part that you speak into is not on its base, so nobody can call you

**hoop** /hup/ noun

a round piece of wood, metal, or plastic: *a basketball hoop* (=that you throw the ball through)

**hoo-ray** /hʊ'reɪ/

you shout this when you are very happy about something: *Hooray! We won!*

**hoot** /hut/ verb

if an OWL hoots, it makes a loud noise: *The owl hooted and then flew away.*

—**hoot** noun the loud noise that an owl makes



hoof



**hooves** /hʊvz/ noun

the plural of HOOF

**hop** /hɒp/ verb hopped, hopping

**1** if a bird or animal hops, it moves with short quick jumps: *The bird hopped across the grass, and ate the bread.*

**2** if people hop, they jump on one leg: *Can you hop from one side of the yard to the other?*

**3** informal to get into or out of a car: *Hop in, and I'll give you a ride to your house.*

—**hop** noun a short jump

→ See Thesaurus box at **jump**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture at **jump**<sup>1</sup>

**hope**<sup>1</sup> /hoʊp/ verb

to want something to happen or be true: *I hope that you feel better soon. | Bill's hoping to finish his degree next year. | "Do you think we'll win?" "I hope so." (=I want this to happen)*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

→ **hope** verb

→ **hope** noun

→ **hopeful** adjective

→ **hopeless** adjective

→ **hopelessness** noun

**hope**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** the feeling that something good may happen: *My family were poor, but we always had hope for the future.*

**2** a chance that you will succeed in doing something: *The police say there is some hope of finding the children alive.*

**3** something that you hope will happen: *He talked about his hopes and dreams for his future.*

**hope·ful** /'hoʊpfəl/ adjective

believing that what you want will happen: *Scientists are hopeful that they will find a cure for the disease.*

**hope·ful·ly** /'hoʊpfəli/ adverb

**1** you say this to show what you hope will happen: *Hopefully, I'll be home early.*

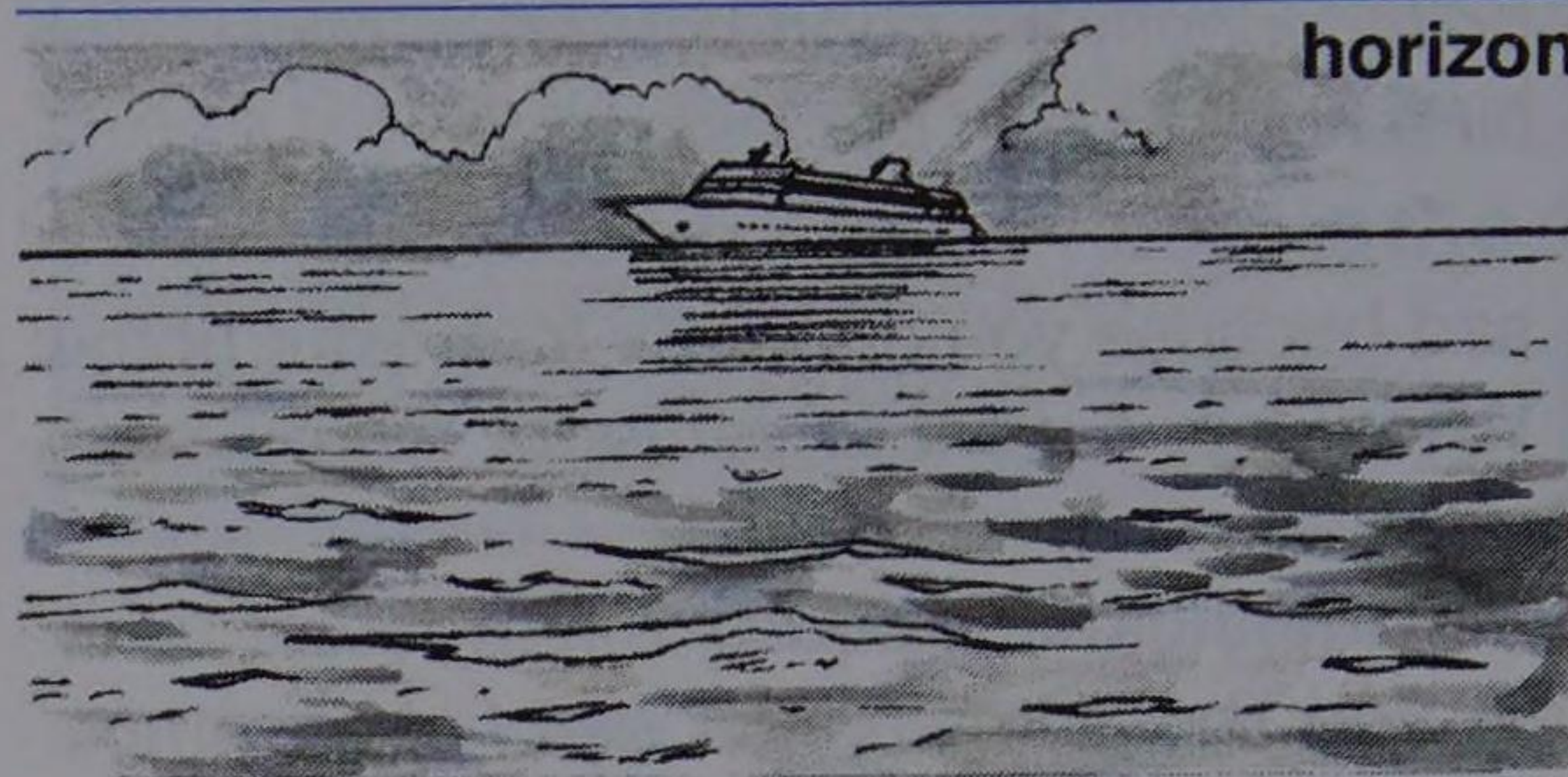
**2** in a hopeful way: *"Can I have some icecream"? Kayla asked hopefully.*

**hope·less** /'hoʊpləs/ adjective

unlikely to succeed or improve: *We were lost on the mountain, and the situation seemed hopeless.*

—**hopelessness** noun

**horizon**



**ho·ri·zon** /hə'raɪzən/ noun

**the horizon** = the line where the land or ocean seems to meet the sky: *We looked out at the ocean and saw a ship on the horizon.*

**hor·i·zon·tal** /,hɒrə'zɒntl/ adjective

flat and level: *Draw a horizontal line from one side of the paper to the other side.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **flat**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture at **diagonal**

**hor·mone** /'hɔrmoun/ noun

a chemical that your body produces, and that makes your body grow and change

**horn** /hɔrn/ noun

**1** a hard pointed part that grows on the heads of some animals: *Cows often have horns.*

**2** the thing in a car, bus, etc. that makes a loud sound when you push a button: *The driver behind me was honking his horn (=making a loud noise with the horn).*

SYNONYM **beep**

**3** a musical instrument that you play by blowing

→ See picture on page A28

**hor·net** /'hɔrnɪt/ noun

a large black and yellow insect that can sting you

**hor·o·scope** /'hɔrə'skəʊp/ noun

a description of what will happen to you, that comes from the position of the stars when you were born: *My horoscope says I will have good luck today.*

**hor·ri·ble** /'hɔrəbəl/ adjective

very bad or frightening: *I had a horrible dream last night. | The food in the school cafeteria is horrible – I won't eat it.* SYNONYM **terrible, awful**

—**horribly** adverb: *Some of the people are suffering horribly from disease and lack of food.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **bad**



**hor·ri·fied** /'hɒrə,faɪd/ *adjective*  
feeling very shocked or upset: *We were horrified to hear that she had died so young.*  
—**horrify** *verb* to make someone feel horrified: *The news of the murder horrified me.*

**hor·ror** /'hɒrə/ *noun*  
a feeling of great shock or fear: *I watched in horror as Ramsey hit her.*

**horse** /hɔːs/ *noun*  
a large animal that people ride, and use in races: *I learned to ride a horse when I was a kid.*

**horse·back** /'hɔːsbæk/ *noun*  
**on horseback** = riding a horse: *We passed two girls on horseback.*

**'horseback ,riding** *noun*  
the activity of riding horses: *On weekends, I go horseback riding.*

**horse·shoe** /'hɔːʃ-fu/ *noun*  
a curved piece of iron that covers and protects the bottom of a horse's foot

**hor·ti·cul·ture** /'hɔːtə,kʌltʃə/ *noun, formal*  
the activity or science of growing plants

**hose** /hoʊz/ *noun*  
a long tube that water or air can travel through: *Dad was watering the yard with the hose.*

**hos·pi·ta·ble** /hə'spɪtəbəl/ *adjective, formal*  
willing to welcome people who visit your home or country: *I traveled all over Europe, and the people were very hospitable.*

**hos·pi·tal** /'hɒspɪtəl/ *noun*  
a building where doctors and nurses help people who are sick or hurt: *Eric's dad is still in the hospital (=getting care in a hospital). I went to the hospital to have some blood tests done.*

**hos·pi·tal·i·ty** /,hɒspə'tæləti/ *noun, formal*  
friendly behavior toward people who visit you: *They welcomed us into their home with great hospitality.*

**host** /hoʊst/ *noun, formal*  
a person who organizes a party and invites people to it: *Our host greeted us at the door.*

**hos·tage** /'hɒstɪdʒ/ *noun*  
someone who is the prisoner of an enemy, until other people do what the enemy asks:

*The terrorists are still holding five hostages and demanding money from the U.S.*

**host·ess** /'hoʊstɪs/ *noun, formal*  
a woman who organizes a party and invites people to it: *Our hostess was wearing a long black dress.*

**hos·tile** /'hɒstl/ *adjective, formal*  
behaving in an angry and unfriendly way: *The prisoners were hostile toward the police officers, yelling at them and throwing things.*  
—**hostility** /hə'stɪləti/ *noun* unfriendly or angry feelings or behavior: *The two brothers had never liked each other and there was still a lot of hostility between them.*

**hot** /hɒt/ *adjective hotter, hottest*  
**1** having a lot of heat: *Don't touch that plate – it's hot. | It was summer, and the weather was hot.* **ANTONYM** cold

#### THESAURUS: hot

**warm** a little hot, especially in a pleasant way: *a warm summer evening | The bread was still warm from the oven.*

**humid** if air or the weather is humid, it feels hot and wet: *It can be very humid in Florida in the summer.*

**lukewarm** a liquid that is lukewarm is only slightly warm, and not as cold or hot as it should be: *The soup was only lukewarm.*

**scalding** a scalding liquid is hot enough to burn you: *a cup of scalding coffee*

**2** hot food has a burning taste: *I like pizza with hot peppers.*

**'hot dog** also **hot·dog** /'hɒtdɒg/ *noun*  
a long SAUSAGE that you eat in a piece of bread

**ho·tel** /hoʊ'tel/ *noun*  
a building where you pay to stay when you are traveling: *In Jamaica, we stayed in a hotel right next to the ocean.*

**'hot plate** also **hot·plate** /'hɒtpleɪt/ *noun*  
a small electric thing with a flat top, that you use for cooking food

**hour** /aʊə/ *noun*  
**1** a time of 60 minutes: *The show lasted an hour. | I'll be home in an hour (=when one hour has passed). | It's a ten hour trip by car to Chicago.*

**2** a time during the day when you do something: *I'll go to the store on my lunch hour*



(=during the time when I stop working to have lunch). *I Please call me during office hours (=at the time when the office is open).*

**3 hours** *informal* = a long time: *I've been waiting for him to get here for hours.*

**4 on the hour** = at exactly one o'clock, two o'clock, three o'clock, etc.: *Classes begin on the hour.*

**5 at this hour** = at a time that is so late: *I'm sorry to call you at this hour, but I didn't know what else to do.*

**hour·ly** /'aʊə·li/ *adjective, adverb*

happening every hour: *The bus leaves hourly from outside the airport.*

**house** /haʊs/ *noun plural houses* /'haʊzɪz/

**1** a building that you live in, especially with your family: *Come over to my house after school.*

**2** all the people who live in a house: *Be quiet, or you'll wake up the whole house!*

**3** also **house music** a type of modern music that you dance to

→ See Thesaurus box at **home**<sup>1</sup>

**house·hold** /'haʊshəʊld/ *noun*

a house and the people who live in it together: *Most households have at least one computer.*

—**household** *adjective* relating to a house and the people who live in it: *Get your kids to do some household chores (=jobs around the house).*

**House of Repre'sentatives** *noun*

the larger of the two parts of the government in the U.S., Australia, and New Zealand

**house·wife** /'haʊswaɪf/ *noun plural*

**housewives** /'haʊswaɪvz/

an old-fashioned word for a married woman who does the cooking, cleaning, etc. at home, and no other work: *Later, she quit her job and became a housewife.*

**house·work** /'haʊswɜ:k/ *noun*

the work that you do to keep a house clean: *On Saturday, we all help to do the housework; my job is to clean my bedroom.*

**hous·ing** /'haʊzɪŋ/ *noun, formal*

houses, apartments, etc. that people live in: *They are building new housing downtown. I low-income housing (=houses for people who do not earn much money)*

**hov·er** /'hʌvə/ *verb*

to stay in one place in the air: *A helicopter hovered above the crowd.*

**how** /haʊ/ *adverb, conjunction*

**1** you say this to ask about the way you do something: *How do you spell your name?*

**2 how much/how long/how old, etc. ...?** = you say this to ask about the amount of something: *How much did your jeans cost? I How old are you?*

**3** you say this to ask if someone is well and happy: *How are you? I How's your mother?*

**4 how about ...?** *informal* = you say this to suggest something: *I can't come tonight, but how about tomorrow?*

**5 how come?** = why?: *How come you were so late?*

**6** you say this to ask someone for their opinion or to explain something: *"How do I look in this dress?" "Great!" I How can he be so unkind?*

**7 how do you do?** *formal* = you say this when you meet someone for the first time

**how·dy** /'haʊdi/ *informal*

you can use this to say "hello" in a very informal way

**how·ev·er** /haʊ'evə/ *adverb*

**1** you use this to mean "but", before saying something a little surprising: *It was a very hard test; however, everyone passed.*

**2 however long/difficult, etc. ...** = even if something is very long, difficult, etc. ...: *She goes swimming every day, however cold the weather is.*

**howl** /haʊl/ *verb*

to make a long loud sound like a dog crying: *A wild dog howled, and another one answered.*

—**howl** *noun* a sound like a dog crying

**how-to** *adjective*

a how-to book, video, etc. tells you the way to do something: *a how-to book on choosing a career*

**hud·dle** /'hʌdl/ *verb*

also **huddle together** to move very close to the other people in a small group: *We huddled around the fire to keep warm.*

**hug** /hʌg/ *verb hugged, hugging*

to put your arms around someone to show love or friendship: *My grandmother hugged me and gave me a kiss.*



—**hug** *noun* the act of hugging someone:  
Come here and give me a hug!

**huge** /hyudz/ *adjective*

very big: *Their house is huge – it has six bedrooms and a big playroom.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **big**

**huge-ly** /'hyudzli/ *adverb*

very: *The TV show was hugely popular for years.*

**hum** /hʌm/ *verb* hummed, humming

**1** to sing a tune with your mouth closed:  
*Dad was humming as he worked.*

**2** to make a low steady sound like a BEE:  
*High in the sky, an airplane hummed.*

**hu-man** /'hyumən/ *adjective*

belonging or relating to people: *Give an example of how human behavior is similar to animal behavior. | The accident was a result of human error (=a mistake made by a person, not a machine).*

**human 'being** *also human noun*

a person, not an animal: *They have not tested the drug on human beings yet.*

**hu-mane** /hyu'meɪn/ *adjective, formal*

not cruel: *Farm animals should have humane treatment.* **ANTONYM** **inhumane**

—**humanely** *adverb*

**hu-man-i-tar-i-an** /hyu,mænə'terɪən/ *adjective, formal*

relating to people who are in a very bad or dangerous situation and the help that countries or organizations give them: *The U.S. sent humanitarian aid (=food, medicine, and other help) to the people affected by the earthquake.*

**hu-man-i-ty** /hyu'mænəti/ *noun, formal*

**1** all the people in the world: *He thought he was different from the rest of humanity.*

**2** kindness and respect toward other people: *We should treat prisoners with humanity.*

**hu-man-ly** /'hyumənli/ *adverb*

**humanly possible** = able to be done by someone who is trying very hard: *The doctors did everything humanly possible to save his life.*

**human 'race** *noun*

**the human race** = people considered as a group: *How long has the human race existed?*

**human 'rights** *plural noun*

the basic rights that everyone has to be treated well, especially by the government: *The country has a bad record on human rights; many people have been unfairly put in prison.*

**hum-ble** /'hʌmbəl/ *adjective*

**1** someone who is humble does not think that he or she is special or important: *The great scientist was a humble man who did not want praise.* **ANTONYM** **proud**

**2** poor and of a low social rank: *He came from humble beginnings and later became President.*

—**humbly** *adverb*

**hu-mid** /'hyumɪd/ *adjective*

if the weather is humid, the air feels warm and wet: *Summers here are hot and humid.*

—**humidity** /hyu'mɪdəti/ *noun* the wetness of warm air: *The heat and humidity made me feel tired.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hot**

**hu-mil-i-ate** /hyu'mɪli,eɪt/ *verb*

to make someone feel or seem stupid or weak, in an upsetting way: *The teacher humiliated him by laughing at the answer he gave.*

—**humiliated** *adjective*

—**humiliating** *adjective*

—**humiliation** /hyu,mɪli'eɪʃən/ *noun* when someone is humiliated: *the team's humiliation after their loss*

**hu-mor** /'hyumər/ *noun*

**1 sense of humor** = the ability to be funny and to understand things that are funny: *She has a great sense of humor – she really makes me laugh.*

**2** funny things that someone says or writes: *There's a lot of humor in the book.*

**hu-mor-ous** /'hyumərəs/ *adjective, formal*

funny: *We make humorous television ads that make our product seem fun.*

—**humorously** *adverb*

→ See Thesaurus box at **funny**<sup>1</sup>

**hump** /hʌmp/ *noun*

a large round raised part or object: *Some camels have one hump on their backs and some have two.*



**hunch** /hʌntʃ/ *noun*

a feeling that something is true or will happen, which is not based on any facts: *My hunch is that things will improve soon.*

**hunched** /hʌntʃt/ *adjective*

bending forward so that your back forms a curve: *He sat hunched over his desk.*

**hun-dred** /'hʌndrɪd/ *number*

100

—**hundredth** *number* 100th or 1/100

**hung** /hʌŋ/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of **HANG**

**hun-ger** /'hʌŋgə/ *noun*

the state of needing or wanting to eat: *There has been no food in this town for weeks, and people are dying of hunger.*

**hun-gry** /'hʌŋgri/ *adjective* **hungrier, hungriest**

**1** needing or wanting to eat something: *When's dinner? I'm hungry.*

**2 go hungry** = to not have enough food to eat: *My family was poor, but we never went hungry.*

**hunt** /hʌnt/ *verb*

**1** to chase wild animals in order to kill them: *They hunted deer in the woods.*

**2** to look for something or someone very carefully: *She hunted for her keys all around the house.* **SYNONYM** **search**

—**hunting** *noun* the activity of chasing wild animals in order to kill them: *We're going hunting in the White Mountains this weekend.*

—**hunt** *noun* an attempt to catch or find someone or something: *The hunt for the terrorists could last for years, and we may never find them.*

**hunt-er** /'hʌntə/ *noun*

someone who hunts wild animals: *a deer hunter*

**hurl** /hɜːl/ *verb*

to throw something with a lot of force: *He hurled a brick through the window.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **throw**<sup>1</sup>

**hur-ri-cane** /'hʌɪ,keɪn/ *noun*

a storm with very strong fast winds that comes from the ocean: *The hurricane destroyed many buildings.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **wind**<sup>1</sup>

**hur-ry**<sup>1</sup> /'hʌɪ/ *verb* hurried, third person singular hurries

to do something or go somewhere quickly: *We have to hurry or we'll miss the plane. | The girls hurried home to tell their parents.*

**SYNONYM** **rush**

**PHRASAL VERB****hurry up**

to do something or move somewhere more quickly than before: *Hurry up! We're going to be late!*

**hurry**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1 be in a hurry** = to need to do something or go somewhere very quickly: *He was in a hurry and couldn't stop to talk.*

**2 (there's) no hurry** = used when telling someone that he or she does not have to do something immediately: *You can give me the CD back any time – there's no hurry.*

**hurt**<sup>1</sup> /hɜːt/ *verb* hurt

**1** to injure yourself or someone else: *She fell and hurt her knee. | No one was hurt in the explosion.*

**THESAURUS: hurt****To Injure Someone**

**Hurt** and **injure** can mean the same, but **hurt** is usually used when the damage to your body is not very great: *Alex fell and hurt his knee.*

**injure** to damage someone's body – usually used for saying that someone has been hurt in an accident: *Three people were seriously injured in the crash.*

**wound** to injure someone using a weapon such as a gun or knife: *The gunman killed two people and wounded six others.*

**To Feel Pain**

**ache** to feel a continuous pain: *My back was aching.*

**sting** to cause a sudden sharp pain in your eyes, throat, or skin: *The soap got in my eyes and stung a lot.*

**be tender** if a part of your body is tender, it is painful if someone touches it: *The bruise on her leg was very tender.*

**be stiff** if a part of your body is stiff, your muscles hurt and it is difficult to move, usually because you have exercised too much or you are sick: *My legs are so stiff!*



**be sore** to be painful as a result of a wound, infection, or too much exercise: *My ankle was really sore where I'd twisted it. | She had a sore throat and fever.*

**2** if a part of your body hurts, it is painful: *My stomach hurts.*

**3** if an action hurts, it makes you feel pain: *My throat is sore, and it hurts to swallow.*

**4** to make someone feel upset: *He said some terrible things that really hurt my feelings.*

**hurt<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**1** injured: *Is he badly hurt?*

**2** upset: *I felt hurt when they didn't invite me to the party.*

**hurt-ful** /'hɜːtfəl/ adjective

making you feel upset: *That's a hurtful thing to say – you should say you're sorry.*

**hus-band** /'hʌzbənd/ noun

the man that a woman is married to: *This is my husband Bob.*

**hush<sup>1</sup>** /hʌʃ/

said in order to tell someone, especially a child, to be quiet or stop crying: *Hush now. It's time to go to sleep.*

**hush<sup>2</sup>** noun, formal

a peaceful silence: *A hush fell over the crowd (=everyone suddenly became quiet).*

**hut** /hʌt/ noun

a small simple house or building: *The village is a group of mud huts.*

**hy-dro-e-lec-tric** /,haɪdrou'lektrɪk/ adjective

hydroelectric power is electricity that is produced by the force of water

**hy-dro-gen** /'haɪdrədʒən/ noun

a light gas that is an ELEMENT

**hy-giene** /'haɪdʒɪn/ noun

things you do to keep people and things clean in order to prevent diseases: *It is important to have good personal hygiene (=keep your body clean).*

—**hygienic** /haɪ'dʒenɪk/ adjective clean, so that people will not get diseases: *Restaurants must have hygienic kitchens, so that people who eat in them do not get sick.*

**hymn** /hɪm/ noun

a song that people sing in Christian churches

**hy-phen** /'haɪfən/ noun

a mark (-) that you use to join two words or parts of a word: *The word "four-legged" has a hyphen in it.*

**hyp-no-sis** /hɪp'nəʊsɪs/ noun

a state like sleep, in which you can remember more things, and someone can make you think or do things. A doctor usually puts you into this special state: *He remembered details about the crime while he was under hypnosis.*

—**hypnotize** /'hɪpnə'taɪz/ verb to put someone in a state of hypnosis

—**hypnotist** noun someone who hypnotizes people

**hyp-o-crite** /'hɪpə,kraɪt/ noun

someone who tells people to behave in a particular way, but who does not behave in that way himself or herself: *You're such a hypocrite – you told me never to smoke, but now you're smoking!*

—**hypocritical** /,hɪpə'krɪtɪkəl/ adjective someone who is hypocritical is a hypocrite

—**hypocrisy** /hɪ'pəkrəsi/ noun the action of being hypocritical

**hy-poth-e-sis** /haɪ'pəθəsɪs/ **[Ac]** noun

plural **hypotheses** /haɪ'pəθəsɪz/ formal an idea that no one has proved to be true yet: *The scientist did an experiment to test his hypothesis (=find out if it could be true).*

SYNONYM **theory**

**hy-po-thet-i-cal** /,haɪpə'θetɪkəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

a hypothetical situation is not real, but might happen: *I'm going to give you a hypothetical situation, and you tell me how you would deal with it if it really happened.*

**hys-ter-ical** /hɪ'sterəkəl/ adjective

so upset, excited, etc. that you cannot control yourself: *When she was told her daughter was dead, she became hysterical.*

—**hysteria** /hɪ'steriə/ noun your feelings and actions when you are hysterical: *There was public hysteria when the newspaper reported that the disease was spreading.*



# Ii

## I<sup>1</sup> /aɪ/ pronoun

used as the subject of a verb when you are talking about yourself: *I saw Mike yesterday.*

## I<sup>2</sup>

the number 1 in the system of ROMAN NUMERALS

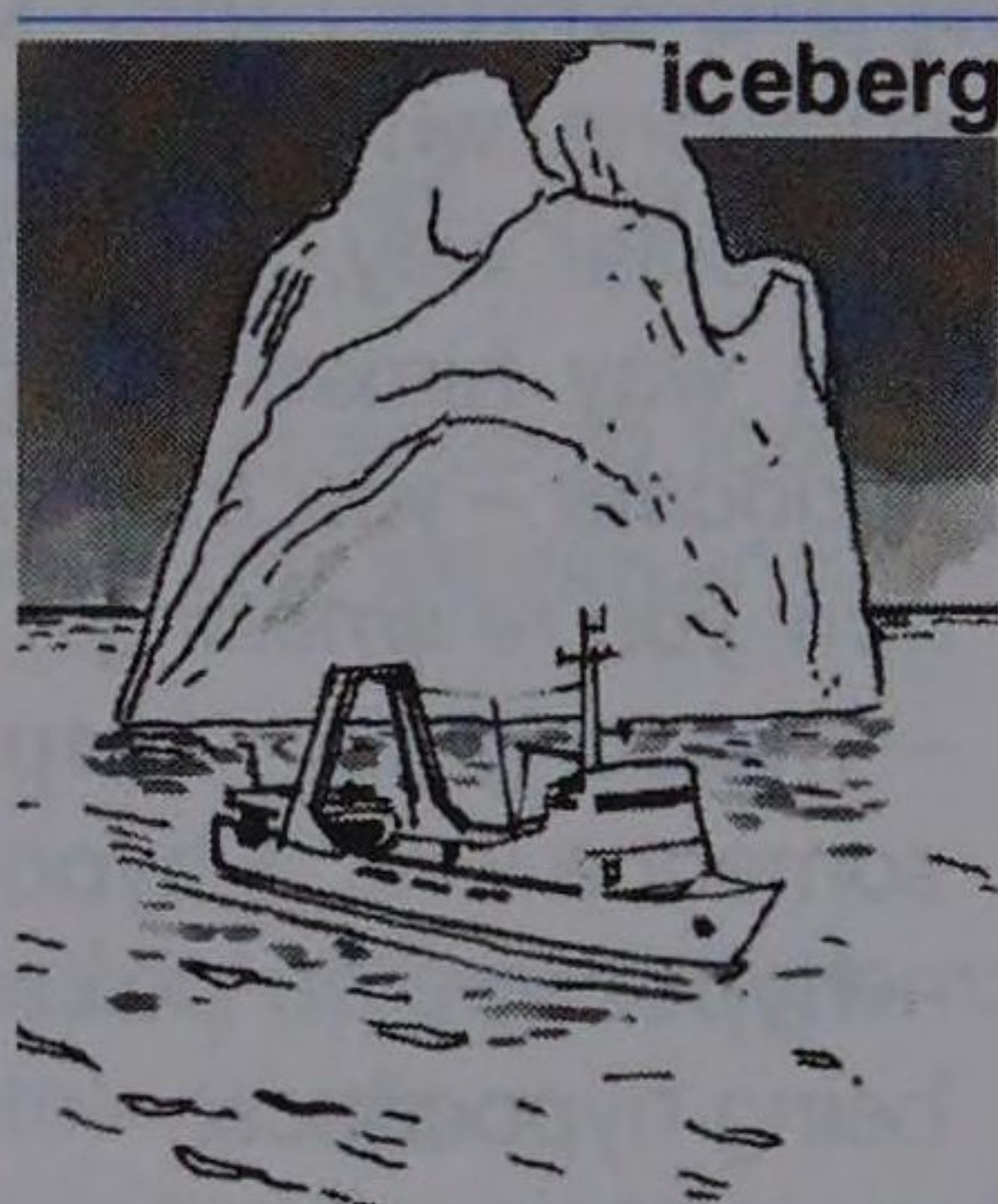
## ice /aɪs/ noun

water that has frozen: *Do you want some ice in your drink?* | *Ice began to cover the lake.*

## ice-berg

/ˈaɪsbɜːg/ noun

a very large piece of ice floating in the ocean



iceberg

## 'ice cream noun

a sweet frozen food made from milk or cream: *chocolate ice cream*

## 'ice cream

**cone** noun

a pointed container that you can eat, that holds ice cream

## 'ice cube noun

a small square piece of ice that you put in a drink

## 'ice skate verb

to move along on ice wearing special boots  
—**ice skate** noun a special boot with a blade attached under it that you wear for moving on ice

—**ice skater** noun someone who ice skates

## i-ci-cle /ˈaɪsɪkəl/ noun

a long pointed piece of ice that hangs down from something: *The water began to freeze and there were icicles hanging from the roof.*

## ic-ing /ˈaɪsɪŋ/ noun

a sweet substance that you put on cakes, made from sugar and liquid and often butter

SYNONYM **frosting**

## i-con /ˈaɪkən/ noun

**1** a small picture on a computer screen that you can choose with your mouse to make the computer do something

**2** someone who is famous and admired by many people: *Elvis Presley is a pop icon.*

→ See picture on page A20

## ic-y /ˈaɪsi/ adjective icier, iciest

**1** very cold: *An icy wind was blowing from the north.*

**2** covered in ice: *Cars were sliding on the icy road.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cold**<sup>1</sup>

## I'd /aɪd/

**1** the short form of "I had": *I'd never seen her before.*

**2** the short form of "I would": *I'd love to come!*

## ID noun

an official document that shows who you are and usually has a picture on it: *You have to be 21 to come into the bar. Can I see your ID?*

## i-de-a /aɪˈdiə/ noun

**1** a thought about something that someone could do or try: *I like the idea of getting a dog.* | *"Let's ask Jim what to do." "That's a good idea (=the action is likely to be successful)."*

**2** understanding or knowledge of something: *I had no idea (=did not know at all) what the problem was.* | *Can you give me an idea of how much it will cost?*

**3** an opinion or belief: *He explained his ideas about how the music should sound.*

**4 the idea** = the aim of an action or plan: *The idea is to make children aware of pollution by showing them how much pollution their car produces.*

## i-de-al<sup>1</sup> /,aɪˈdiəl/ adjective

the best possible: *It's a beautiful beach – an ideal place for a vacation.* SYNONYM **perfect**

—**ideally** adverb used when saying what would be the best thing to happen: *Ideally, you should start learning to play soccer at the age of about five.*

## ideal<sup>2</sup> noun

an idea about a way of living, way of doing something, etc. that is the very best and that you should try to achieve: *We believe strongly in the American ideals of freedom and democracy.*



**i·de·al·ism** /aɪ'diə,lɪzəm/ *noun*

the belief that a good world and good behavior are possible: *He is a young politician with a lot of idealism – he believes that democracy can work better than it does now.*

—**idealistic** /,aɪdiə'lɪstɪk/ *adjective* believing that a good world and good behavior are possible: *an idealistic young teacher*

—**idealist** /aɪ'diəlɪst/ *noun* someone who is idealistic

**i·de·al·ize** /aɪ'diə,ləɪz/ *verb, formal*

to think or try to show that something is much better than it really is: *The show idealizes family life by showing a “perfect” family in a “perfect” house.*

**i·den·ti·cal** /aɪ'dentɪkəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

exactly the same: *Your dress is identical to mine.* | *identical twins* (=two brothers or sisters who were born at the same time and look exactly alike)

→ See Thesaurus box at **similar**

**i·den·ti·fi·ca·tion** /aɪ,dentəfə'keɪʃən/

**[Ac]** *noun*

something that shows who you are: *You can use a passport as identification.* **SYNONYM** ID

**i·den·ti·fy** /aɪ'dentə,fai/ **[Ac]** *verb* **identi-**

**fied**, third person singular **identifies**

to say who someone is or what something is: *Our teacher could identify all the plants we saw.*

**PHRASAL VERB****identify with someone**

to feel that someone is similar to you, so that you understand the way he or she thinks or behaves: *I identified with the main character in the book.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **identify** *verb*
- **identification** *noun*
- **identity** *noun*

**i·den·ti·ty** /aɪ'dentəti/ **[Ac]** *noun* plural **identities**

**1** someone's name: *The police do not know the identity of the dead man.*

**2** the qualities that make one person or group different from others: *Our country has a strong national identity, and we don't want other countries to tell us how to think.*

**i·de·ol·o·gy** /,aɪdi'olədʒi/ **[Ac]** *noun*

plural **ideologies** *formal*

a set of political beliefs or ideas: *Communist ideology*

—**ideological** /,aɪdiə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ *adjective* relating to ideologies: *The two men have ideological differences.*

**id·i·om** /'ɪdiəm/ *noun*

a group of words which have a special meaning when they are used together: *“Get cold feet” is an idiom which means “to suddenly feel worried about doing something.”*

—**idiomatic** /,ɪdiə'mætɪk/ *adjective* being an idiom, or containing idioms

→ See Thesaurus box at **phrase**

**id·i·ot** /'ɪdiət/ *noun*

a stupid person: *Don't drive so fast, you idiot!*

—**idiotic** /,ɪdi'ɒtɪk/ *adjective* stupid: *Don't ask such idiotic questions.*

**i·dle** /'aɪdl/ *adjective*

**1** not working or being used: *Machines are sitting idle because there is no one to operate them.*

**2** an old-fashioned word meaning “lazy”

—**idleness** *noun*

**i·dol** /'aɪdl/ *noun*

**1** someone, especially someone famous, who you admire very much: *President Reagan was his idol when he was a child.*

**2** a STATUE of a god: *People worshiped the idol in the temple.*

—**idolize** *verb* to admire someone very much: *He idolizes his father and says he wants to be just like him.*

**i.e.** /,aɪ 'i/

used before explaining exactly what you mean: *The movie is for adults only, i.e. people over the age of 18.*

**if** /ɪf/ *conjunction*

**1** used when talking about something that might happen or that might have happened: *If I find out where the party is, I'll call you.* | *If we hadn't taken him to the hospital, he would have died.*

**2** whether: *I don't know if I'll be able to come.*

**3** whenever: *If I drink milk, I get a stomach-ache.*

**4** **if I were you** = used when giving advice: *If I were you, I'd wear something warmer because it's getting really cold.*



→ even if at **even**<sup>1</sup>, as if/though at **as**, if only at **only**<sup>1</sup>

**ig·nite** /ɪgˈnaɪt/ verb, formal

to make something start burning: *A cigarette ignited the gas, and the gas exploded.*

**ig·ni·tion** /ɪgˈnɪʃən/ noun

the part of a car where you put a key to start the engine: *He turned the key in the ignition.*

→ See picture on page A28

**ig·no·rance** /ˈɪgnərəns/ **[Ac]** noun

the state of not knowing something, especially something you should know: *I was embarrassed by my ignorance of their culture* (=how much I did not know about their culture).

**ig·no·rant** /ˈɪgnərənt/ **[Ac]** adjective

not knowing something, especially something you should know: *She had just come to this country and was ignorant of her rights as a U.S. citizen.*

**ig·nore** /ɪgˈnɔr/ **[Ac]** verb

to not pay any attention to someone or something: *I tried to talk to her, but she ignored me.*

**ill** /ɪl/ adjective

**1** someone who is ill has a disease or does not feel well: *She can't go to work because she's ill.* | *He is mentally ill.* **SYNONYM** **sick**

**2** **ill at ease** formal = nervous or embarrassed: *He felt ill at ease in this group of rich people.* **SYNONYM** **uncomfortable**

→ See Thesaurus box at **sick**

**I'll** /aɪl/

the short form of "I will": *I'll be back soon.*

**il·le·gal** /ɪˈlɪɡəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

not allowed by the law: *It's illegal to park here.* | *illegal drugs* **ANTONYM** **legal**

—**illegally** adverb: *They had entered the country illegally, so they were sent back to their own country.*

**il·leg·i·ble** /ɪˈledʒəbəl/ adjective

impossible to read: *I couldn't read the letter, because his writing was illegible.* **ANTONYM** **legible**

**il·le·git·i·mate** /ɪləˈdʒɪtəmət/ adjective, formal

an illegitimate child has parents who were not married when the baby was born: *He has an illegitimate son.*

—**illegitimacy** /ɪləˈdʒɪtəməsi/ noun the state of being illegitimate

**il·lit·er·ate** /ɪˈlɪtərət/ adjective

not able to read or write: *She did not know what the letter said because she was illiterate.*

—**illiteracy** /ɪˈlɪtərəsi/ noun when people cannot read or write

**ill·ness** /ˈɪlnəs/ noun

a disease, or a period of being ill: *She has had several serious illnesses, including cancer.* | *people with mental illness* (=problems with your mind, for example problems controlling your thoughts and feelings)

**il·log·i·cal** /ɪˈlɒdʒɪkəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

an illogical idea or action is not based on good thinking: *It is illogical to hit your computer when it does something that you do not like.* **ANTONYM** **logical**

**il·lu·mi·nate** /ɪˈluməˌneɪt/ verb, formal

if a light illuminates something, it makes it bright: *The fire illuminated her face, and I could see that she was crying.*

—**illumination** /ɪˌluməˈneɪʃən/ noun the act of making a place bright

**il·lu·sion** /ɪˈluʒən/ noun

**1** something that seems to be real or true but is not: *One line looks longer than the other, but that is just an optical illusion; they are actually the same length.*

**2** a false belief: *She has no illusions about winning* (=she realizes she probably will not win).

**il·lus·trate** /ˈɪləˌstreɪt/ **[Ac]** verb

**1** to give or be an example that makes something clearer: *This story illustrates how important it is to tell the truth.*

**2** to add pictures to a book: *She illustrates children's books.*

—**illustrator** noun someone who draws pictures for books

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **illustrate** verb
- **illustration** noun
- **illustrator** noun

**il·lus·tra·tion** /ɪləˈstreɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a picture in a book: *The book has beautiful color illustrations.*

**2** an example that shows something: *The Bible gives Jesus's life as an illustration of how to live a good life.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **picture**<sup>1</sup>



**I'm** /aɪm/

the short form of "I am": *I'm hungry.*

**im·age** /'ɪmɪdʒ/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a picture that you can see on a television, in a mirror, etc.: *We watched the images on TV of the destruction caused by the flood.*

**2** the way that someone or something seems to the public: *The President wanted to improve his image, so he traveled around the country to meet people.*

**3** a picture that you have in your mind: *I have a clear image of the kind of house I want to live in.*

**im·age·ry** /'ɪmɪdʒəri/ **[Ac]** noun, formal

the things described or shown in poems, books, movies, etc.: *The song's violent imagery upset many people.*

**i·mag·i·nar·y** /ɪ'mædʒə,neri/ adjective

something that is imaginary is not real and only exists in your mind: *The book shows us an imaginary world of strange people living on other planets.*

**i·mag·i·na·tion** /ɪ,mædʒə'neɪʃən/ noun

the ability to think of new ideas or make new pictures in your mind: *She had a vivid imagination (=a great ability to imagine new things).*

—**imaginative** /ɪ'mædʒənətɪv/ adjective  
having or showing a lot of imagination: *The boy wrote a very imaginative story.*

**i·mag·ine** /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ verb

**1** to use your mind to think of new ideas, stories, pictures, etc.: *Imagine (that) you have lots of money, and you can do anything you want.*

**2** to use your mind to try to understand something that is new, different, or difficult: *I can imagine how you felt – you must have been really mad.*

**3** to think that something will probably happen or is probably true: *I imagine she was pretty upset.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **imagine** verb
- **imagination** noun
- **imaginative** adjective
- **imaginary** adjective

**im·i·tate** /'ɪmə,teɪt/ verb

**1** to copy the way a person or animal speaks or moves to entertain other people:

*He imitated the teacher to make the other kids laugh.*

**2** to copy something because you think it is good: *Other companies have tried to imitate our products, but ours are still the best.*

SYNONYM **copy**

—**imitation** /,ɪmə'teɪʃən/ noun the act of imitating someone or something: *She does imitations of birds' songs (=she makes sounds to copy them).*

**im·i·ta·tion** /,ɪmə'teɪʃən/ adjective

made to look like something real: *The necklace was made of imitation pearls, not real ones.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **fake**

**im·ma·ture** /,ɪmə'tʃʊr/ **[Ac]** adjective

behaving like someone much younger than you: *I think Jim's too immature to live by himself.* SYNONYM **childish**; ANTONYM **mature**

—**immaturity** /,ɪmə'tʃʊrəti/ noun the quality of being immature

**im·me·di·ate** /ɪ'midiət/ adjective

**1** happening or coming very soon: *I wrote them an email, and I got an immediate reply. | What are your plans for the immediate future (=the time that is very soon after now)?*

**2** **someone's immediate family** = someone's parents, children, brothers, and sisters: *We only invited our immediate families to our wedding, because we didn't want too many people there.*

**im·me·di·ate·ly** /ɪ'midiətli/ adverb

very quickly and with no delay: *I knew immediately that something was wrong, when I saw that she had been crying.*

#### THESAURUS: immediately

**instantly** immediately – used when something happens at almost the same time as something else: *He was killed instantly when his motorcycle hit a truck.*

**right away** informal immediately and without waiting – used especially when something needs to be done urgently: *Jill called him right away.*

**at once** immediately or without waiting: *I realized at once that I had said the wrong thing.*

**right now** informal at this time and not later – used especially when something needs to be done urgently: *Ben! Stop that right now!*



**im·mense** /ɪ'mens/ *adjective, formal*  
very large: *We have an immense amount of work to do.* **SYNONYM enormous, huge**

**im·mense·ly** /ɪ'mensli/ *adverb, formal*  
very or very much: *The show is immensely popular.*

**im·merse** /ɪ'mɜ:s/ *verb, formal*

**1** to put something into a liquid so that the liquid covers it completely: *Do not immerse this equipment in water.*

**2 immerse yourself in something** = to give all your attention to something: *She immersed herself in her school work because she didn't want to think about her problems.*

—**immersion** /ɪ'mɜ:ʒən/ *noun* the act of putting something into a liquid so that the liquid covers it completely

**im·mi·grant** /'ɪməgrənt/ **[Ac]** *noun*

someone who comes to live in a country: *His grandparents were Chinese immigrants (=they came from China).*

**im·mi·gra·tion** /,ɪmə'greɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
the act of coming to live in a country: *People on the Mexican border are trying to stop illegal immigration.*

—**immigrate** /'ɪməgreɪt/ *verb* to come to live in a country: *He immigrated to the United States from Poland.*

**im·mor·al** /ɪ'mɔ:rəl/ *adjective*

bad and wrong: *Religions teach us that killing and stealing are immoral.*

—**immorality** /,ɪmə'ræləti/ *noun* immoral behavior

**im·mor·tal** /ɪ'mɔ:tl/ *adjective*

living or continuing forever: *Some people believe the soul is immortal and lives after the body dies.* **ANTONYM mortal**

—**immortality** /,ɪmɔ:'tæləti/ *noun* the state of living or continuing forever: *Greek people in ancient times believed in the immortality of their gods.*

**im·mune** /ɪ'myun/ *adjective*

not able to be affected by something bad, especially a disease: *A small group of people are immune to the virus and have not gotten sick at all.*

—**immunity** /ɪ'myunəti/ *noun* the state of being immune to something: *The children do not have immunity to the disease.*

**im·mune ,system** *noun*

the system by which your body protects itself against disease: *People with weakened immune systems are at risk from the disease.*

**im·mu·nize** /'ɪmyənaɪz/ *verb*

to protect someone from disease by giving him or her a VACCINE (=weak form of the disease): *We must immunize children against these diseases.*

—**immunization** /,ɪmyənə'zeɪʃən/ *noun*  
the act of immunizing someone

**im·pact** /'ɪmpækt/ **[Ac]** *noun*

the effect that something has: *The decision to close the school will have a major impact on the town (=cause big changes in the town).*

—**impact** /ɪm'pækt/ *verb* to affect something: *How does the disease impact on your life?*

**im·pair** /ɪm'per/ *verb, formal*

to make something less good, for example to make an ability less good: *The injury to her brain impaired her ability to talk.*

—**impairment** *noun* the state of being less good: *He has a hearing impairment, so you have to speak louder.*

**im·par·tial** /ɪm'pɑ:ʃəl/ *adjective*

not supporting a particular person or group: *The judge should be impartial (=fair to both sides).* **SYNONYM objective; ANTONYM biased**

—**impartially** *adverb*

—**impartiality** /ɪm,pɑ:ʃi'æləti/ *noun* the quality of being impartial

**im·pa·tient** /ɪm'peɪʃənt/ *adjective*

**1** annoyed because something has not been done immediately: *The teacher gets impatient with students who do not listen to her.*

**2 impatient to do something** = wanting to do something immediately: *Juan was impatient to leave, because he was bored.*

—**impatience** *noun* the state of feeling impatient

—**impatiently** *adverb*

**im·peach** /ɪm'pitʃ/ *verb*

to say officially that a public official has committed a serious crime

—**impeachment** *noun* when someone is impeached

**im·per·a·tive** /ɪm'perətɪv/ *noun*

the form of a verb that you use when you tell someone to do something: *In the sentence*



“Come here!” the verb “come” is in the imperative.

**imperative**<sup>2</sup> adjective

formal something that is imperative is very important and must be done: *It is imperative that we win this game.*

**im-per-fect** /ɪm'pɜːfɪkt/ adjective, formal not perfect: *We live in an imperfect world.*

—**imperfection** /ˌɪmpɜː'fekʃən/ noun a fault, mark, etc. that makes something not perfect: *There were some imperfections in the cloth, so they lowered the price.*

**im-pe-ri-al-ism** /ɪm'pɪriə,lɪzəm/ noun, disapproving

a political system in which one country controls a lot of other countries

—**imperialist** noun

—**imperialist**, also **imperialistic** /ɪm,pɪriə'lɪstɪk/ adjective

**im-per-son-al** /ɪm'pɜːsənəl/ adjective

dealing with you in a way that is not friendly or does not show any interest in you: *I wrote an email to explain my problem to the bank, but I just got an impersonal reply.*

**im-per-so-nate** /ɪm'pɜːsə,neɪt/ verb

to copy someone's voice and behavior in order to entertain or trick people: *He impersonates many famous people on his show.*

—**impersonator** noun someone who impersonated someone else: *an Elvis impersonator*

—**impersonation** /ɪm,pɜːsə'neɪʃən/ noun the act of impersonating someone: *He does a good impersonation of the President.*

**im-ple-ment**<sup>1</sup> /'ɪmplə,ment/ **Ac** verb, formal

if you implement a plan, process, etc., you begin to make it happen

—**implementation** /ˌɪmpləmən'teɪʃən/ noun the act of implementing a plan

**im-ple-ment**<sup>2</sup> /'ɪmpləmənt/ **Ac** noun

a simple tool: *farm implements*

**im-pli-ca-tion** /ˌɪmplə'keɪʃən/ **Ac** noun

a possible result or effect of something: *What are the implications of the research (=what effects does it have)?*

**implicit** /ɪm'plɪsɪt/ **Ac** adjective

an idea that is implicit can be understood from something you say, but is not said directly: *My boss didn't say that my work*

*was bad, but there was an implicit criticism in the way he said it.*

—**implicitly** adverb

**im-ply** /ɪm'plaɪ/ **Ac** verb implied, third person singular implies

to make someone think that something is true without saying it directly: *I think he was implying that I would get the job, but I'm not sure.*

**im-po-lite** /ˌɪmpə'laɪt/ adjective

not polite: *It's impolite to yawn when someone is talking.* **SYNONYM** rude

→ See Thesaurus box at **rude**

**im-port**<sup>1</sup> /ɪm'pɔːt/ verb

to bring things into a country to sell or use: *We import a lot of oil from other countries.*

**ANTONYM** export

—**importer** noun a person or company that imports things

**im-port**<sup>2</sup> /'ɪmpɔːt/ noun

**1** something that is brought into a country to be sold or used: *The stores are full of cheap imports.* **ANTONYM** export

**2** the action of bringing things into a country to sell or use: *The government stopped the import of weapons.* **ANTONYM** export

**im-por-tance** /ɪm'pɔːtns/ noun

the quality of being important: *I understand the importance of a good education, because my parents did not have one. | This is a matter of great importance (=a very important matter).*

**im-por-tant** /ɪm'pɔːtnt/ adjective

**1** if something is important, you care about it a lot or should care about it a lot: *This is the most important part of the class. | My family is very important to me. | It's important to stay calm during an emergency.*

**THESAURUS: important**

**crucial** formal very important: *The U.S. plays a crucial role in the region.*

**vital** formal very important or necessary: *She was able to give the police some vital clues that helped them catch the murderer.*

**essential** formal very important and necessary: *It's essential that you buy tickets in advance.*

**major** very large or important, especially when compared to other things: *Several major roads were closed to any traffic.*



**significant** *formal* noticeable or important: *His music has had a significant influence on other musicians.*

**key** very important and needed for success: *One of the team's key players is injured and won't be playing this Friday.*

**2** an important person has power or influence: *She is the most important person in the company.*

—**importantly** *adverb* used when mentioning something important: *The restaurant is beautiful and, more importantly, the food is excellent.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **important** *adjective*
- **unimportant** *adjective*
- **importance** *noun*

**im·pose** /ɪm'pəʊz/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to force people to have a law, punishment, etc.: *The principal imposed a new rule to stop students from wearing jewelry in school.*

—**imposition** /ɪmpə'zɪʃən/ *noun* the act of imposing something

**im·pos·ing** /ɪm'pəʊzɪŋ/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

large and impressive: *The White House is an imposing building.*

**im·pos·si·ble** /ɪm'pəsəbəl/ *adjective*

not able to be done or to happen: *I could not do it – it was an impossible job. | It was so hot that it was impossible to sleep.*

—**impossibility** /ɪm,pəsə'bɪləti/ *noun* the fact that something is impossible, or something that is impossible: *I wanted mom's party to be a secret, but I knew that would be an impossibility because my brother would tell her.*

**im·pos·ter** /ɪm'pastə/ *noun*

someone who pretends to be someone else in order to trick people: *He wasn't a real soldier; he was an imposter.*

**im·prac·ti·cal** /ɪm'præktɪkəl/ *adjective*

an impractical plan or way of doing something is too difficult, too expensive, etc.: *It would be impractical to ask every person what he or she thinks.*

**im·pre·cise** /,ɪmpri'saɪs/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

not exact: *I believe there were about 1,500 people there, but that is an imprecise number.*

**im·press** /ɪm'pres/ *verb*

to make someone feel admiration and respect: *He rented a nice car to impress his girlfriend.*

—**impressed** *adjective*: *I was very impressed with the new classrooms.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **impress** *verb*
- **impressed** *adjective*
- **impressive** *adjective*

**im·pres·sion** /ɪm'preʃən/ *noun*

**1** the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of what you see or hear: *I got the impression that he didn't like me (=I felt that he didn't like me). | It's important to make a good impression at your interview (=make people have a good opinion of you in the interview).*

**2** **be under the impression that** = to think that something is true when it is not: *I was under the impression that they were married, but they are not.*

**3** the act of copying the voice or behavior of a famous person in order to entertain people: *Erin does a great impression of Britney Spears.* **SYNONYM** *imitation*

**im·pres·sive** /ɪm'presɪv/ *adjective*

if something is impressive, it is very good and you admire it: *Winning five gold medals is an impressive achievement.*

**im·pris·on** /ɪm'prɪzən/ *verb, formal*

to put someone in prison: *The new leader imprisoned anyone who disagreed with him.*

—**imprisonment** *noun* the state of being in prison: *His imprisonment lasted ten years.*

**im·prob·a·ble** /ɪm'prəbəbəl/ *adjective, formal*

not likely to happen or to be true: *The car accident was very bad, and it is improbable that anyone survived.* **SYNONYM** *unlikely*; **ANTONYM** *probable*

**im·prop·er** /ɪm'prɒpə/ *adjective, formal*

wrong or unacceptable: *The improper use of child car seats resulted in many deaths.*

—**improperly** *adverb*: *We didn't go into the*



restaurant because it was a formal place and we were improperly dressed.

**im·prove** /ɪm'pru:v/ verb

to become better, or to make something better: *Her health improved when she stopped smoking.* | *I want to improve my language skills.*

**im·prove·ment** /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ noun

**1** when something becomes better: *He seems happier, and there's been an improvement in his behavior.* | *Her health is showing signs of improvement.*

**2** a change that makes something better: *You can borrow money to pay for home improvements such as putting in a new kitchen or painting the house.*

**im·pro·vise** /'ɪmprəvaɪz/ verb

to do or make something without any preparation: *The musicians improvised, so they did not have written music in front of them.*

—**improvisation** /ɪmˌprəvə'zeɪʃən/ noun  
the act of improvising

**im·pulse** /'ɪmpʌls/ noun

a sudden desire to do something: *I resisted the impulse to hit him* (=I stopped myself from hitting him).

**im·pul·sive** /ɪm'pʌlsɪv/ adjective

someone who is impulsive does things suddenly, without thinking about the results: *Small children are impulsive; they will do or say anything that they think of.*

—**impulsively** adverb: *Impulsively, he kissed her.*

**im·pure** /ɪm'pyʊr/ adjective

**1** containing another substance that is unwanted: *Impure drugs can make you very sick.* **ANTONYM** pure

**2** formal bad, according to a religion: *impure thoughts* **ANTONYM** pure

—**impurity** /ɪm'pyʊrəti/ noun an unwanted substance that another substance contains: *We can remove some of the impurities from the water to make it taste better.*

**in** /ɪn/ preposition, adverb

**1** inside a container or building, or surrounded by a place: *She had a pencil in her pocket.* | *Put the knives and forks in the drawer.* | *He lives in Denver.* | *Come in!*

**2** during a month, year, etc.: *We moved here in September.* | *I was born in 1990.*

**3** after a period of time: *Gerry should be home in an hour.*

**4** using a particular language or way of speaking: *He said something in Italian.* | *They spoke in whispers.*

**5** wearing: *Who's the woman in the black dress?*

**6** if you are in something, you are part of it or involved in it: *I talked to the other people in the group.* | *He has appeared in several movies.* | *She's in advertising* (=she works in the business of advertising).

**7** fashionable now informal: *Long hair is in again.* **ANTONYM** out

**8** **be in for something** = if you are in for something, something is about to happen to you: *If you think this game is going to be easy, you're in for a shock.*

**9** **be in on something** = to be involved in something or know about something: *Do you think he was in on the robbery?*

**10** **in all** = used when mentioning a total amount: *There were 20 of us in all.*

**in.**

the written abbreviation of **inch**

**in·a·bil·i·ty** /,ɪnə'bɪləti/ noun, formal

the fact of not being able to do something: *He was embarrassed about his inability to read.* **ANTONYM** ability

**in·ac·ces·si·ble** /,ɪnək'sesəbəl/ **[Ac]**

adjective, formal

difficult or impossible to reach: *The house is inaccessible in winter, because snow blocks the road.* **ANTONYM** accessible

**in·ac·cu·rate** /ɪn'ækjərɪt/ **[Ac]** adjective, formal

not completely correct: *He gave an inaccurate description of the house, so we did not recognize it when we saw it.* **ANTONYM** accurate

—**inaccuracy** noun the quality of being inaccurate

→ See Thesaurus box at **wrong**

**in·ac·tive** /ɪn'æktɪv/ adjective, formal

not doing anything: *Most fish are inactive at night.* **ANTONYM** active

—**inactivity** /,ɪnæk'tɪvəti/ noun the state of not doing anything

**in·ad·e·quate** /ɪn'ædəkwət/ **[Ac]**

adjective, formal

not good enough or great enough: *The medical care I received at first was*



*inadequate, so I had to go back into the hospital.* **ANTONYM** **adequate**

—**inadequately** *adverb*

**in·ap·pro·pri·ate** /,ɪnə'prɒpri-ət/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

not right for a particular situation or person: *The book is inappropriate for children, because it discusses sex.* **ANTONYM**

**appropriate**

—**inappropriately** *adverb*

**in·au·di·ble** /ɪn'ɔdəbəl/ *adjective, formal*  
too quiet to hear: *Her reply was almost inaudible, so I asked her to say it again.*  
**ANTONYM** **audible**

**in·au·gu·rate** /ɪ'nɒɡyə'reɪt/ *verb*  
to have a ceremony when someone begins an important job: *The President is inaugurated in January.*

—**inaugural** /ɪ'nɒɡyərəl/ *adjective* relating to an inauguration: *the President's inaugural speech*

—**inauguration** /ɪ'nɒɡyə'reɪʃən/ *noun* when someone is inaugurated

**in·bound** /'ɪnbəʊnd/ *adjective*  
inbound planes, trains, cars, etc. are coming toward or into a place: *Traffic is slow on the inbound lanes of the freeway.* **ANTONYM** **out-bound**

## **Inc.**

the written abbreviation of **incorporated**, used after the name of a big company: *General Motors Inc.*

**in·ca·pa·ble** /ɪn'keɪpəbəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

**incapable of (doing) something** = not able to do something: *Since the accident, she has been incapable of moving her legs.*

**in·car·cer·ate** /ɪn'kɑrsə'reɪt/ *verb, formal*  
to put or keep someone in a prison: *He has been incarcerated for 10 years in the local jail.*

**in·censed** /ɪn'senst/ *adjective, formal*  
very angry: *She was incensed at his unkind words.*

**in·cen·tive** /ɪn'sentɪv/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
something that makes you want to do something: *If students choose their own rewards, it gives them an incentive to work hard.*

**inch** /ɪntʃ/ *noun plural inches*  
*written abbreviation in.* a unit for measuring length, equal to 2.54 centimeters: *There are 12 inches in a foot. | The insect is about 1.5 inches long.*

**in·ci·dent** /'ɪnsədənt/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*  
something unusual, serious, or violent that happens: *You should report the incident to the police.*

**in·ci·den·tally** /,ɪnsə'dentli/ **[Ac]** *adverb*  
used when giving more information or starting to talk about something new: *He's an excellent player. Incidentally, he's also my cousin.*

**in·cin·er·ate** /ɪn'sɪnə'reɪt/ *verb, formal*  
to burn something in order to destroy it: *We incinerate a lot of our garbage.*

—**incineration** /ɪn,sɪnə'reɪʃən/ *noun* the act of incinerating something

—**incinerator** /ɪn'sɪnə'reɪtə/ *noun* a machine in which you incinerate things

**in·cli·na·tion** /,ɪnklə'neɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*  
a feeling that you want to do something: *He showed no inclination to leave (=he did not behave as if he wanted to leave).*

**in·clined** /ɪn'klaɪnd/ **[Ac]** *adjective*  
**be inclined to do something a)** to be likely to do something: *I'm inclined to trust him because he's always been honest with me. b) to often do something in a particular situation: *He's inclined to get upset over small things.**

**in·clude** /ɪn'klud/ *verb*

**1** if one thing includes another, the second thing is part of the first: *The trip includes a visit to the Grand Canyon.*

**2** to make someone or something part of a larger group: *Did you include my name on the list?* **ANTONYM** **exclude**

—**inclusion** /ɪn'kluzən/ *noun* the act of including something

## **WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **include** *verb*
- **exclude** *verb*
- **including** *preposition*
- **excluding** *preposition*
- **inclusive** *adjective*
- **exclusive** *adjective*
- **inclusion** *noun*
- **exclusion** *noun*



**in-clud-ing** /ɪn'klʊdɪŋ/ preposition

used when saying that someone or something is part of the group you are talking about: *There were 20 people in the room, including the teacher.* **ANTONYM** **excluding**

**in-clu-sive** /ɪn'klusɪv/ adjective, formal  
including many different people or things: *The price for the vacation is inclusive of flight, hotel, and all taxes.*

**in-co-her-ent** /,ɪnkoʊ'hɪrənt/ **[Ac]**

adjective, formal

if you are incoherent, you are speaking in a way that is very unclear: *She was incoherent because she hadn't slept in four days.*

—**incoherently** adverb

—**incoherence** noun the quality of being incoherent

**in-come** /'ɪŋkʌm/ **[Ac]** noun

the money that you get, for example for working: *She has an income of \$50,000 per year.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **pay**<sup>2</sup>

**'income tax** noun

money that you must give the government when you earn money

**in-com-pat-i-ble** /,ɪnkəm'pætəbəl/ **[Ac]**

adjective

too different to be able to work together well or have a good relationship: *The software is incompatible with the software I already have.* **ANTONYM** **compatible**

—**incompatibility** /,ɪnkəm,pætə'bɪləti/ noun the quality of being incompatible: *My parents' incompatibility led to their divorce.*

**in-com-pe-tent** /ɪn'kampətənt/

adjective

not able to do your job well: *He was fired for being incompetent.* **ANTONYM** **competent**

—**incompetence** noun the quality of being incompetent: *I was shocked at the incompetence of the managers.*

**in-com-plete** /,ɪnkəm'plit/ adjective

not having all its parts or not finished yet: *The bridge is incomplete, but it will be finished later this year.* **ANTONYM** **complete**

**in-com-pre-hen-si-ble**

/,ɪnkəmprɪ'hensəbəl/ adjective

impossible to understand: *The lawyer's letter was incomprehensible to me, because he used so many legal terms.*

**in-con-clu-sive** /,ɪnkən'klusɪv/ **[Ac]**

adjective, formal

not resulting in clear information or a clear situation: *The medical tests were inconclusive; they did not show what was causing her pain.*

—**inconclusively** adverb

**in-con-sid-er-ate** /,ɪnkən'sɪdərɪt/

noun, formal

not thinking or caring about what other people feel or need: *You never call to say you are going to be late, and that's inconsiderate.*

**ANTONYM** **considerate**

**in-con-sist-ent** /,ɪnkən'sɪstənt/ **[Ac]**

adjective

not always the same or not the same as others: *He's an inconsistent player – sometimes good, sometimes terrible. | His answer to the first question is inconsistent with the answers he gave later (=his first answer does not match his later answers).*

—**inconsistently** adverb

**in-con-ven-ient** /,ɪnkən'vɪniənt/

adjective

causing problems or difficulties: *If this is an inconvenient time to talk, I'll call you back later.*

—**inconvenience** noun problems, or something that causes problems: *We are sorry for the inconvenience caused by this delay.*

**in-cor-po-rate** /ɪn'kɔrpə'reɪt/ **[Ac]** verb

to include something as part of something else: *I tried to incorporate the changes that my teacher suggested into my paper.*

**in-cor-rect** /,ɪnkə'rekt/ adjective, formal

not right: *That answer is incorrect.* **SYNONYM** **wrong**; **ANTONYM** **correct**

—**incorrectly** adverb

→ See Thesaurus box at **wrong**

**in-crease**<sup>1</sup> /ɪn'kris/ verb

if an amount increases, or if something increases it, it becomes larger: *My weight had increased by five pounds. | Smoking increases your chances of getting cancer.*

**ANTONYM** **decrease**

#### THESAURUS: increase

**go up** to increase in number, amount, or value: *Prices have gone up 2%.*

**rise** to increase in number, amount, quality, or value: *The city's population has risen to over 10 million people.*



**grow** to get bigger in size or amount:

*The number of people working from home has grown in the last ten years.*

**double** to become twice as big: *The company has doubled in size in ten years.*

**shoot up** informal to quickly increase in number, size, or amount: *Her grades have shot up this semester.*



increase

**in·crease<sup>2</sup>** /'ɪŋkris/ noun

a rise in the amount of something: *There has been an increase in crime.* **ANTONYM**

**decrease**

**in·creas·ing·ly** /ɪn'krisɪŋli/ adverb

more and more: *He wasn't home by midnight and his parents were becoming increasingly worried.*

**in·cred·i·ble** /ɪn'kredəbəl/ adjective

**1** very good or large: *The food here is incredible (=very good)! I have an incredible amount of respect for him.*

**2** very hard to believe: *It's incredible that he survived the fall from the third floor.*

—**incredibly** adverb very: *She works incredibly hard.*

**in·crim·i·nate** /ɪn'krɪmə,neɪt/ verb, formal

to make someone seem guilty of a crime: *He didn't say anything, because he didn't want to incriminate himself.*

—**incriminating** adjective making someone seem guilty of a crime: *They found the gun and other incriminating evidence in his house.*

**in·cu·ba·tor** /'ɪŋkyə,betə/ noun

a special container in a hospital, where very small or weak babies are put so that they stay alive

**in·cur** /ɪn'kə/ verb incurred, incurring formal

if you incur something bad, it happens to you because of something you do: *A family incurs extra expenses when a child is born.*

**in·cur·a·ble** /ɪn'kyʊrəbəl/ adjective

an incurable disease cannot be cured

**in·debt·ed** /ɪn'detɪd/ adjective

**be indebted to someone** formal = to be very grateful to someone for his or her help: *We are indebted to everyone who helped us write this magazine.*

**in·de·cent** /ɪn'disənt/ adjective

likely to shock people: *You can't wear a skirt that short – it's indecent!*

—**indecent** noun indecent behavior

**in·de·ci·sive** /,ɪndɪ'saɪsɪv/ adjective

not able to make decisions quickly: a weak indecisive leader **ANTONYM** **decisive**

**in·deed** /ɪn'did/ adverb, formal

**1** used in order to emphasize what you are saying or to say that what someone has said is true: *It is indeed unfortunate that this happened (=I agree that it is unfortunate).*

**2** used when adding information: *He liked the book. Indeed, he said it was the best one he had ever read.*

**in·def·i·nite** /ɪn'defənət/ **[Ac]** adjective

an indefinite period of time has no fixed end: *The police are increasing the number of officers in the area where the crimes happened for an indefinite period.*

—**indefinitely** adverb for a period of time that has no fixed end: *She will remain on the team indefinitely.*

**in, definite 'article** noun

“a” and “an”

**in, definite 'pronoun** noun

a word such as “someone” or “anything”, which does not refer to a particular person or thing

**in·dent** /ɪn'dent/ verb

to start a line of writing closer to the middle of the page than the other lines: *Indent the first line of each paragraph.*

**in·de·pend·ence** /,ɪndə'pendəns/ noun

**1** the freedom to do what you want to do and take care of yourself: *When I got my first car, I was so excited to have more independence. I Having a job gives you financial independence.*

**2** freedom from control by another country: *Nigeria gained independence from Britain in 1960.*



**Inde'pendence ,Day** *noun*

a U.S. national holiday on July 4th, when Americans celebrate the time when their country became independent from Britain

**in-de-pend-ent** /,ɪndə'pendənt/ *adjective*

**1** doing what you want to do and taking care of yourself: *I wanted to move out of my parents' home and be independent.* **ANTONYM** **dependent**

**2** not controlled by another country, organization, or group: *India became independent in 1947.*

—**independently** *adverb*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **independent** *adjective*
- **dependent** *adjective*
- **independence** *noun*
- **dependence** *noun*
- **independently** *adverb*

**'in-depth** *adjective*

considering or dealing with all the details of something: *The program is an in-depth look at the problem of racism.*

**in-de-scrib-a-ble** /,ɪndɪ'skraɪbəbəl/ *adjective*

not possible to describe: *an indescribable smell*

**in-dex** /'ɪndeks/ **[Ac]** *noun* plural **indexes** or **indices** /'ɪndə'sɪz/

a list at the end of a book that tells you the page where each thing in the book is mentioned: *Subjects in the index are in alphabetical order.*

**'index ,finger** *noun*

the finger next to your thumb

→ See picture at **hand**<sup>1</sup>

**In-di-an**<sup>1</sup> /'ɪndiən/ *adjective*

**1** from India

**2** a word meaning NATIVE AMERICAN which some people think is offensive

**Indian**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** someone from India

**2** a word for a NATIVE AMERICAN which some people think is offensive

**in-di-cate** /'ɪndə'keɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

**1** to show that something is likely to be true: *Research indicates that people are becoming healthier.*

**2** to say something in a way that is not

direct: *She indicated that she would be willing to help us.*

—**indicator** *noun*, formal something that shows something else: *Weight is an important indicator of how healthy you are; if you are too heavy, you are likely to be unhealthy.*

—**indicative** /ɪn'dɪkətɪv/ *adjective*, formal showing something: *The team's loss last night is indicative of how bad the season has been for them.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **indicate** *verb*
- **indication** *noun*
- **indicative** *adjective*
- **indicator** *noun*

**in-di-ca-tion** /,ɪndə'keɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a sign that something exists or is likely to be true: *His performance today gives an indication of (=shows) how talented he is.* | *There were indications that the fire was started by someone inside the house.*

**in-di-ces** /'ɪndə'sɪz/ *noun*

a plural of INDEX

**in-dict** /ɪn'daɪt/ *verb*, formal

to officially say that someone may have committed a crime: *He was indicted for murder.*

—**indictment** *noun* an official written statement indicting someone

**in-dif-ferent** /ɪn'dɪfrənt/ *adjective*

not interested in something, or not caring about something: *He was indifferent to their opinions.*

—**indifference** *noun* the state of being indifferent to something

**in-di-ges-tion** /,ɪndɪ'dʒestʃən/ *noun*

pain that you get when your stomach cannot deal with the food you have eaten: *I ate too much, and now I have indigestion.*

**in-dig-nant** /ɪn'dɪgnənt/ *adjective*, formal

angry because you feel someone has treated you in a rude or unfair way: *She was indignant at the man's offensive questions.*

—**indignantly** *adverb*

—**indignation** /,ɪndɪg'neɪʃən/ *noun* an indignant feeling: *Students protested to show their indignation at the high cost of a college education.*



**in-di-rect** /,ɪndə'rekt/ adjective

**1** not directly caused by or relating to something: *The accident was an indirect result of the heavy rain, which had created a hole in the road.* **ANTONYM** **direct**

**2** an indirect way of showing what you think or feel is not very clear: *His silence was an indirect way of showing his anger.* **ANTONYM** **direct**

**3** *formal* an indirect way of getting to a place is not the straightest one: *We took an indirect route through the country.* **ANTONYM** **direct**

—**indirectly** *adverb*: *I was indirectly responsible for her mistake, because I forgot to check her work.*

**indirect 'object** *noun*

a word or phrase referring to the person or thing that receives something: *In the sentence "Pete gave me the money," "me" is the indirect object.*

**in-dis-creet** /,ɪndɪ'skri:t/ adjective

careless about what you say or do, so that you let people know too much

**in-dis-pu-ta-ble** /,ɪndɪ'spyutəbəl/

*adjective, formal*

definitely true: *I have indisputable evidence that he has been lying.*

—**indisputably** *adverb*

**in-dis-tin-guish-a-ble**

/,ɪndɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃəbəl/ *adjective, formal*

things that are indistinguishable are so similar that you cannot see any difference between them: *This material is indistinguishable from real silk.*

**in-di-vid-u-al**<sup>1</sup> /,ɪndə'vɪdʒuəl/ **Ac** *adjective*

**1** used when talking about each person or thing, rather than the whole group: *We have to think about the needs of the individual student.*

**2** for one person rather than a group: *The children had individual desks.*

—**individually** *adverb* separately: *The teacher spoke to the students individually.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **individual** *adjective*
- **individual** *noun*
- **individually** *adverb*
- **individualized** *adjective*

**individual**<sup>2</sup> *noun, formal*

a person, not a group: *Every individual is different.*

**in-di-vid-u-al-ism** /,ɪndə'vɪdʒuəlɪzəm/

**Ac** *noun*

the practice of allowing people to do what they want, alone, and in their own way

—**individualist** *noun* someone who believes in individualism

—**individualistic** /,ɪndə'vɪdʒuəlɪstɪk/ *adjective* doing what you want, alone, and in your own way

**in-di-vid-u-al-ized** /,ɪndə'vɪdʒuəlɪzɪd/

*adjective, formal*

made or designed for a particular person: *The school has an individualized learning method in which students have more choices.*

**in-door** /'ɪndɔːr/ adjective

inside a building: *an indoor swimming pool*

**ANTONYM** **outdoor**

**in-doors** /,ɪn'dɔːrz/ *adverb*

into or inside a building: *It's raining – let's stay indoors.* **SYNONYM** **inside**; **ANTONYM** **outdoors**

**in-dulge** /ɪn'dʌldʒ/ *verb*

**1** to do something that you enjoy, which you do not usually do or should not do: *I had a little extra time, so indulged in an afternoon nap.*

**2** to let someone do or have whatever he or she wants, even if it is bad for him or her: *Her parents indulge her, giving her toys whenever she asks for them.*

—**indulgent** *adjective* letting someone do or have whatever he or she wants: *indulgent parents*

—**indulgence** *noun* when you allow yourself or someone else to do or have something

**in-dus-tri-al** /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ *adjective*

relating to industry, or having a lot of industries: *The river has been polluted by industrial waste. | the world's leading industrial nations*

**in-dus-tri-al-ized** /ɪn'dʌstriəlɪzɪd/

*adjective*

an industrialized country has a lot of industries

—**industrialization** /ɪn,dʌstriələ'zeɪʃən/ *noun* the process of developing a lot of industries: *Industrialization meant that more*



people worked in factories instead of on farms.

**in·dus·tri·ous** /ɪn'dʌstriəs/ adjective, formal

an industrious person works hard

—**industriously** adverb

**in·dus·try** /'ɪndəstri/ noun plural **indus·tries**

**1** the making of things in factories: *He wanted a job in industry.*

**2** all the businesses that make or do a particular type of thing: *She has friends in the music industry.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **industry** noun
- **industrial** adjective
- **industrialized** adjective
- **industrialization** noun

**in·ed·i·ble** /ɪn'edəbəl/ adjective, formal  
dangerous to eat or tasting too bad to eat: *The cookies were so burnt they were inedible.* **ANTONYM** **edible**

**in·ef·fec·tive** /,ɪnə'fektɪv/ adjective  
something that is ineffective does not achieve what you want it to achieve: *The medical treatment was ineffective, and the patient did not get better.* **ANTONYM** **effective**  
—**ineffectiveness** noun

**in·ef·fi·cient** /,ɪnə'fɪʃənt/ adjective  
working or done in a way that wastes time, money, or energy: *The engine is inefficient and uses a lot of fuel.* **ANTONYM** **efficient**  
—**inefficiently** adverb  
—**inefficiency** noun the quality of being inefficient

**in·el·i·gi·ble** /ɪn'elədʒəbəl/ adjective  
not allowed to do or have something, according to a rule: *He is ineligible for money from the government because he earns too much money.* **ANTONYM** **eligible**

**in·e·qual·i·ty** /,ɪnɪ'kwələti/ noun plural **inequalities**  
an unfair situation in which some people in society have more money, opportunities, etc. than others: *Poor people often cannot afford a good education, and this leads to inequalities in our society.* **ANTONYM** **equality**

**in·ev·i·ta·ble** /ɪ'nevətəbəl/ **[Ac]** adjective  
certain to happen and impossible to avoid: *The situation between the two countries is*

*so bad that war seems inevitable.*

—**inevitably** adverb if something will inevitably happen, it will definitely happen

**in·ex·pen·sive** /,ɪnɪk'spensɪv/ adjective  
cheap: *The food is simple and inexpensive.* **ANTONYM** **expensive**

—**inexpensively** adverb

**in·ex·pe·ri·enced** /,ɪnɪk'spɪrɪənst/ adjective  
not having much experience: *An inexperienced teacher may have difficulty controlling his or her class.* **ANTONYM** **experienced**  
—**inexperience** noun the quality of being inexperienced

**in·fa·mous** /'ɪnfəməs/ adjective  
well known for being bad or evil: *an infamous murderer* **SYNONYM** **notorious**  
—**infamy** noun the state of being infamous

**in·fant** /'ɪnfənt/ noun, formal  
a baby: *The class is for mothers and infants.*  
—**infancy** /'ɪnfənsi/ noun the period when someone is a baby: *Their son died in infancy.*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **child**

**in·fan·try** /'ɪnfəntri/ noun  
soldiers who fight on foot: *The infantry followed the tanks into the area.*

**in·fat·u·at·ed** /ɪn'fætʃu'eɪtɪd/ adjective  
having a feeling of love for someone that is too strong or not sensible: *He's infatuated with her, so he can't see any of her faults.*  
—**infatuation** /ɪn,fætʃu'eɪʃən/ noun a feeling of love for someone that is too strong or not sensible

**in·fect** /ɪn'fekt/ verb  
to give someone a disease: *People with the disease can easily infect others.*  
—**infected** adjective: *How many people are infected with the virus?*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **infect** verb
- **infection** noun
- **infectious** adjective
- **infected** adjective

**in·fec·tion** /ɪn'fekʃən/ noun  
a disease affecting a part of your body which is caused by a BACTERIA or VIRUS: *I have an ear infection, so the doctor gave me some drops to put in my ear.*



**in·fec·tious** /ɪn'fekʃəs/ adjective

an infectious disease can be passed between people, without them touching each other: *Infectious diseases can spread quickly.*

**in·fer** /ɪn'fə/ **[Ac]** verb inferred, inferring  
formal

to decide that something is probably true, because of what you see or hear: *They inferred from his refusal to answer that he was guilty.*

**in·fe·ri·or** /ɪn'fɪriə/ adjective

not as good as someone or something else: *The new gym is inferior to the old one, and no one is happy with it.* **ANTONYM** superior

—**inferiority** /ɪn'fɪri'ærəti/ noun the state of being inferior to someone or something else: *He had failed twice, and his feeling of inferiority was growing.*

**in·fest** /ɪn'fest/ verb

if insects, rats, etc. infest a place, there are a lot of them there: *The old hotel was infested with rats.*

**in·field** /'ɪnfɪld/ noun

the part of a baseball field that is inside the four bases

**in·fi·nite** /'ɪnfənət/ **[Ac]** adjective

without a limit or end: *Is the universe infinite, or does it have an edge?* **ANTONYM** finite

**in·fi·nite·ly** /'ɪnfənətli/ **[Ac]** adverb,  
formal

very much: *Their first album was infinitely better than this one. I don't like this one at all.*

**in·fin·i·tive** /ɪn'fɪnətɪv/ noun

the basic form of a verb, used with "to": *In the sentence "I want to go," "to go" is an infinitive.*

**in·fin·i·ty** /ɪn'fɪnəti/ noun

**1** a space or distance without a limit or end: *If you put two mirrors opposite each other, you can see reflections going into infinity.*

**2** a number that is larger than all others: *It is impossible to count to infinity.*

**in·flamed** /ɪn'fleɪm/ verb, formal

red, swollen, and painful: *Her throat was inflamed because of an infection.*

**in·flam·ma·ble** /ɪn'flæməbəl/ adjective,  
formal

something that is inflammable burns very easily: *Gasoline is highly inflammable, so you*

*should never smoke near it.* **SYNONYM** flammable

**in·flam·ma·tion** /ɪnflə'meɪʃən/ noun,  
formal

the state of being red, swollen, and painful: *There was some inflammation around the sore on her arm.*

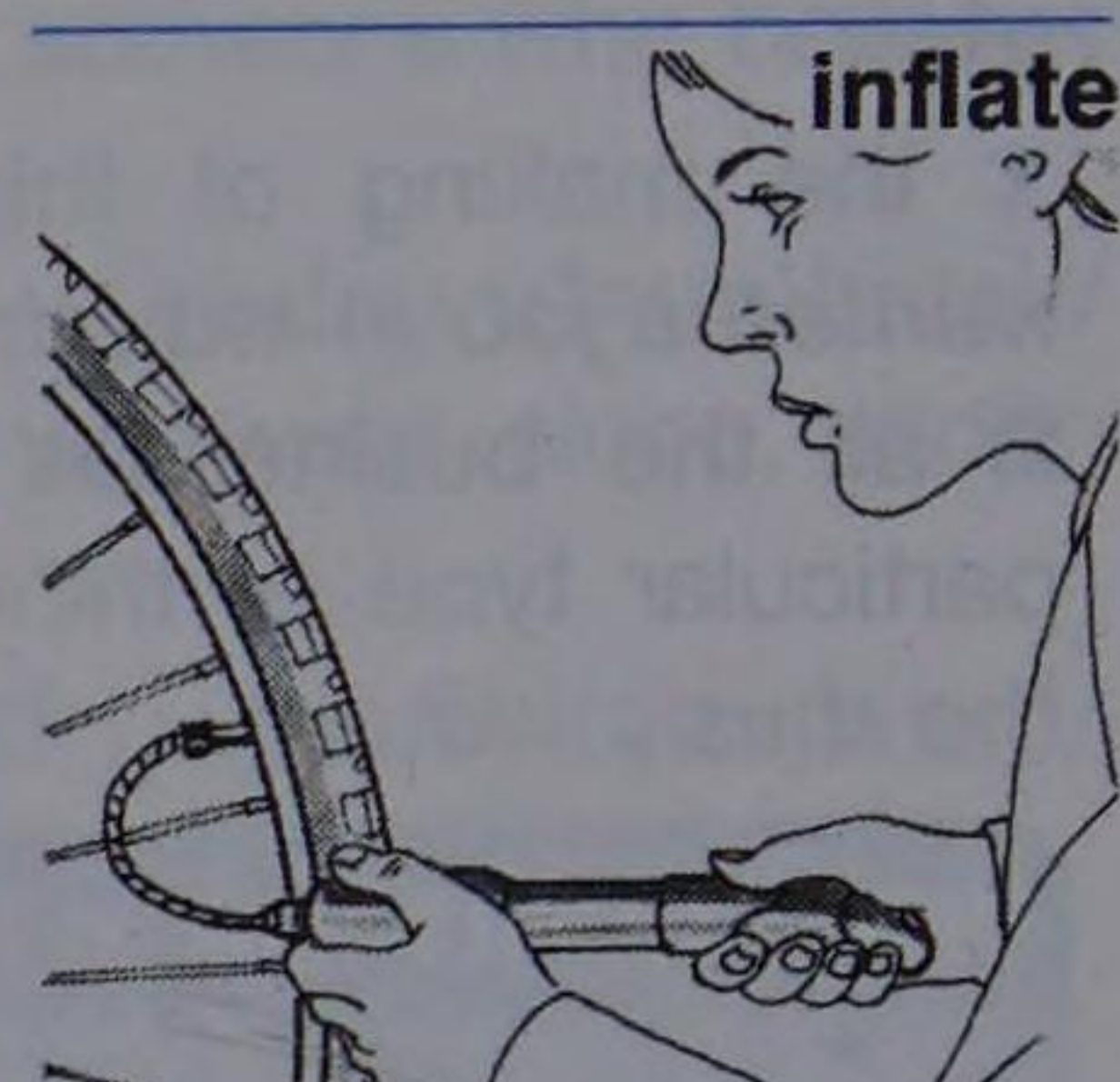
**in·flate** /ɪn'fleɪt/

verb

to fill something with air or gas, so that it becomes larger: *Inflate the bicycle's tires.*

—**inflatable**

adjective something that is inflatable can be inflated: *an inflatable boat made of rubber*

**in·fla·tion** /ɪn'fleɪʃən/ noun

a continuing increase in prices: *When there is high inflation, people need more money just to pay for basic things.*

—**inflationary** /ɪn'fleɪʃə'neri/ adjective causing inflation

**in·flict** /ɪn'flɪkt/ verb, formal

to make someone suffer something bad: *He seemed to enjoy inflicting pain on his younger brother.*

**in·flu·ence<sup>1</sup>** /'ɪnfluəns/ noun

**1** the power to affect what someone does or thinks: *Television has a lot of influence on young people. They often behave like people they see on TV.*

**2** someone or something that affects what someone does or thinks: *Her boyfriend was a bad influence on her (=made her behave in a worse way).*

**3** **under the influence of alcohol/drugs**  
formal = drunk or affected by drugs: *He committed the crime under the influence of alcohol.*

—**influential** /ɪnflu'enʃəl/ adjective having a lot of influence: *He was an influential thinker, whose ideas have changed the world.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **persuade**

**influence<sup>2</sup>** verb

to affect what someone does or thinks: *If I tell you which college I like best, I might influence your decision, and I don't want to do that.*



**in-form** /ɪn'fɔrm/ verb, formal

to tell someone something: *I informed them that I would be arriving on June 24.* | *He did not inform me of his plans.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **inform** verb
- **information** noun
- **informative** adjective

**in-for-mal** /ɪn'fɔrməl/ adjective

**1** relaxed, and not done in an official way or according to rules: *It was an informal meeting, and no one bothered to take notes.*

ANTONYM **formal**

**2** appropriate for ordinary situations rather than formal ones: *"See you!" is an informal way of saying "goodbye."* ANTONYM **formal**

—**informally** adverb

—**informality** /,ɪnfər'mæləti/ noun the quality of being informal

**in-for-ma-tion** /,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/ noun

facts that you get from someone or give someone: *Can you give me some information about where to buy this book?* | *Before you start on the project, I have one more important piece of information for you.*

**GRAMMAR: information**

Do not say "an information" or "informations." Say, for example, **some/any information, a lot of information, or a piece of information:** *Where can I find some information about your company?* | *All of this information is in the book.* | *I need a couple more pieces of information before I can finish my report.*

**in-form-a-tive** /ɪn'fɔrmətɪv/ adjective

giving many facts: *It was a very informative program – I learned a lot.*

**in-fra-struc-ture** /'ɪnfərə'strʌktʃə/ **Ac**

noun, formal

the basic systems that a country needs, for example roads and communication systems: *The country's roads and other infrastructure are old and need to be rebuilt.*

**in-fre-quent** /ɪn'frikwənt/ adjective,

formal

not happening often: *We enjoy her infrequent visits and wish she would come more often.* SYNONYM **rare**

—**infrequently** adverb not often

**in-fu-ri-ate** /ɪn'fjuri,eɪt/ verb, formal

to make someone very angry: *He was lazy, which infuriated his parents.*

—**infuriating** adjective

**in-ge-nious** /ɪn'dʒɪniəs/ adjective

**1** an ingenious plan, machine, etc. is the result of intelligent thinking: *She had invented an ingenious machine that peeled fruit.*

**2** good at thinking of new plans, machines, etc.: *He was an ingenious man and could always find a solution to his problems.*

—**ingenuity** /,ɪndʒə'nuəti/ noun the quality of being ingenious

**in-gre-di-ent** /ɪn'gridiənt/ noun

one of the things that you use to make a particular food: *Mix the egg with the other ingredients and pour the mixture into a cake pan.*

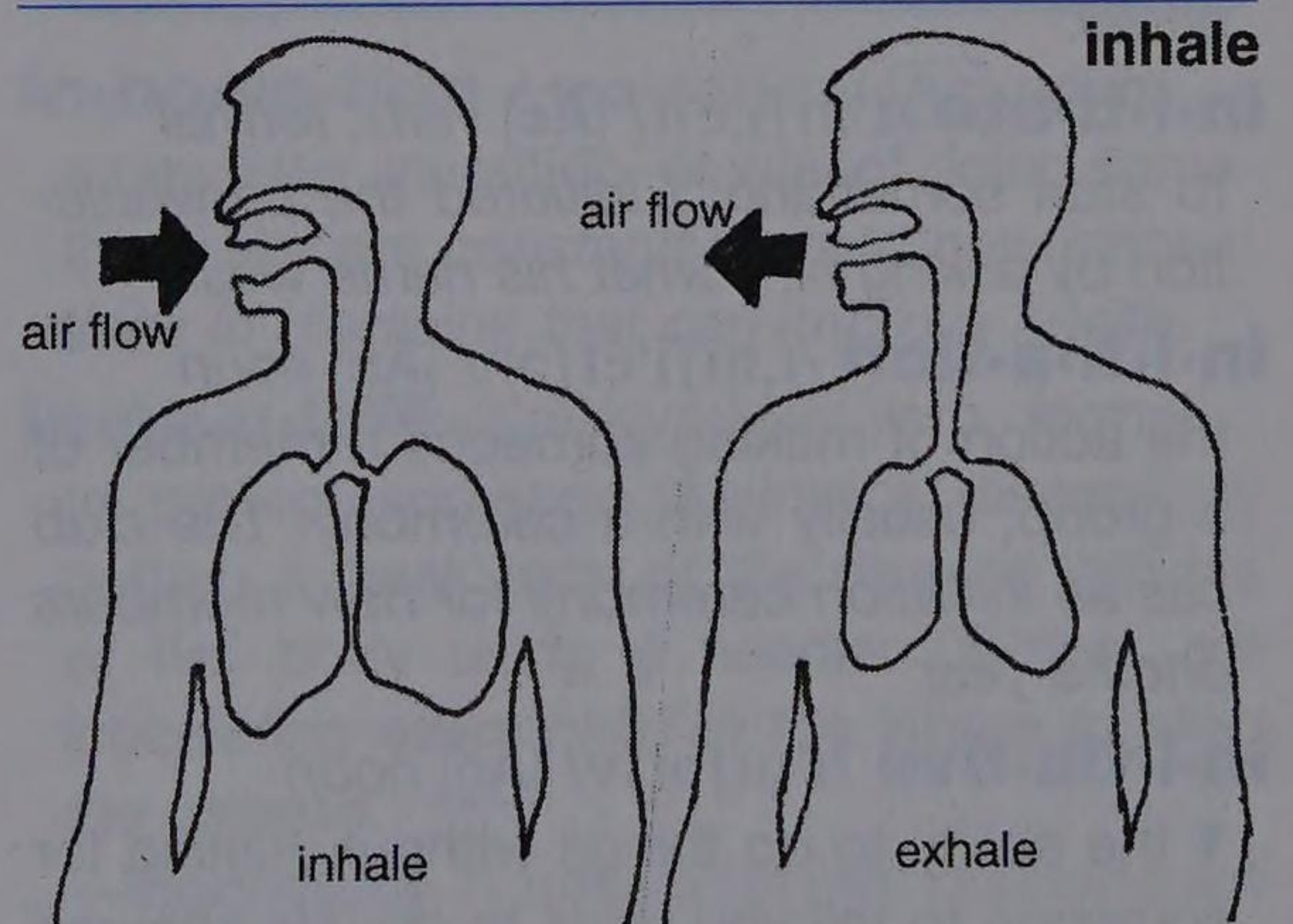
**in-hab-it** /ɪn'hæbɪt/ verb, formal

if people or animals inhabit a place, they live there: *These people have inhabited the region for 800 years.*

—**inhabited** adjective if a place is inhabited, people live there: *They did not know if the island was inhabited because they didn't see any houses.*

**in-hab-it-ant** /ɪn'hæbətənt/ noun, formal

one of the people who live in a place: *It is a small town with only 250 inhabitants.*



**in-hale** /ɪn'heɪl/ verb, formal

to breathe in air, smoke, or gas: *Some of the people rescued from the fire had inhaled a lot of smoke.* ANTONYM **exhale**

**in-her-ent** /ɪn'hɪrənt/ **Ac** adjective,

formal

a quality or feature that is inherent in something cannot be removed: *The problem is inherent in the system, so we have to change*



the system to fix the problem.

—**inherently** adverb, formal: Being a firefighter is an inherently dangerous job.

**in-her-it** /ɪnˈherɪt/ verb

**1** to get something from someone after he or she has died: *I inherited the house from my uncle when he died.*

**2** to get a quality or feature from one of your parents: *Anna inherited her mother's good looks.*

—**inheritance** noun money or things that you get from someone after he or she has died: *He spent all his inheritance on expensive cars.*

**in-hu-mane** /ɪnhyuˈmeɪn/ adjective

inhumane treatment is cruel: *We are trying to end the inhumane treatment of prisoners.*

ANTONYM **humane**

—**inhumanity** /ɪnhyuˈmænəti/ noun cruel treatment

**in-i-tial**<sup>1</sup> /ɪˈniʃəl/ noun

the first letter of a name: *His name is John Smith, so his initials are J. S.*

**initial**<sup>2</sup> [Ac] adjective

happening at the beginning: *My initial reaction was shock. But then I was angry.*

SYNONYM **first**

**in-i-tial-ly** /ɪˈniʃəli/ [Ac] adverb, formal

at first: *Initially, my new job seemed very difficult, but after a few weeks it became easier.*

**in-i-ti-ate** /ɪˈniʃi,et/ [Ac] verb, formal

to start something: *I initiated the conversation by asking him what his name was.*

**in-i-ti-a-tion** /ɪˌniʃiˈeɪʃən/ [Ac] noun

the action of making someone a member of a group, usually with a ceremony: *The club has an initiation ceremony for new members once a year.*

**in-i-tia-tive** /ɪˈniʃətɪv/ [Ac] noun

**1** the ability to do things without waiting for someone to tell you what to do: *He showed initiative by thinking of a way to deal with the problem and then getting other people to help him do it.*

**2** an important plan or way of solving a problem: *The initiative to reduce crime in the area has been a success.*

**3 take the initiative** = to do something rather than waiting for other people to do something: *If you want the problem to be*

*fixed, you're going to have to take the initiative. No one else is going to do anything.*

**in-ject** /ɪnˈdʒekt/

verb

to put a drug into someone's body using a special needle: *The doctor injected the patient with the new drug. | Chemicals were injected into the animals.*



—**injection** /ɪnˈdʒekʃən/ noun, formal if you have an injection, a drug is injected into your body: *The nurse gave me an injection of penicillin.*

**in-jure** /ˈɪndʒə/ [Ac] verb

to damage someone's body: *Her father was seriously injured in a car accident. | I injured my knee playing football.*

—**injured** adjective

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **injure** verb
- **injured** adjective
- **injury** noun

→ See Thesaurus box at **hurt**<sup>1</sup>

**in-ju-ry** /ˈɪndʒəri/ [Ac] noun plural **injuries**

physical damage to someone's body: *Wear a helmet to prevent head injuries. | He suffered a serious injury to his right leg and couldn't use it for several months.*

**THESAURUS: injury**

**wound** an injury, especially a deep cut made in your skin by a knife or bullet: *Soldiers were being treated for wounds from the battle.*

**bruise** a black or blue mark on your skin that you get when you fall or get hit: *There was a dark bruise on her cheek.*

**cut** the small wound you get if a sharp object cuts your skin: *a cut on her finger*

**sprain** an injury to a joint in your body, caused by suddenly twisting it: *He missed the race because of an ankle sprain.*

**bump** an area of skin that is swollen because you have hit it on something: *How did you get that bump on your forehead?*



**scratch** a long thin cut on your skin: *Her legs and arms were covered in scratches from where she'd pushed through the bushes.*

**in-jus-tice** /ɪn'dʒʌstɪs/ *noun*

a situation in which someone is treated unfairly: *He fought against the injustice of innocent people being sent to prison for crimes they were not involved in.* **ANTONYM** justice

**ink** /ɪŋk/ *noun*

a colored liquid used for writing or printing

**'in-laws** *plural noun*

the parents of your husband or wife: *We're spending Christmas with my in-laws.*

**,in-line 'skating** *noun*

the activity of moving along while wearing special boots with a line of wheels under them

—**in-line skates** *plural noun* special boots with a line of wheels under them

**in-mate** /'ɪnmɛɪt/ *noun*

someone who is kept in a prison or a mental hospital: *Two of the inmates got into a fight and were sent back to their prison cells.*

**inn** /ɪn/ *noun*

a small hotel, usually not in a city

**in-ner** /'ɪnə/ *adjective*

**1** on the inside or close to the middle of something: *An infection of the inner ear can cause problems with balance.* | *an inner room of the house with no windows* **ANTONYM** outer

**2** relating to thoughts or feelings that you feel at a very basic level: *Meditation gave him a feeling of inner calm.*

**,inner 'city** *noun*

an area that is close to the middle of a city, where many poor people live: *The program is designed to help kids from the inner city whose families do not have a lot of money.*

—**inner-city** *adjective* existing in the inner city: *inner-city schools*

**in-ner-most** /'ɪnə'moʊst/ *adjective*

your innermost feelings or thoughts are your most private ones: *He did not tell anyone his innermost thoughts.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **private**<sup>1</sup>

**in-ning** /'ɪnɪŋ/ *noun*

one of the nine playing periods in a game of baseball

**in-no-cent** /'ɪnəsənt/ *adjective*

**1** not guilty of a crime: *They cannot send an innocent man to jail.* | *The jury found him innocent of his wife's murder* (=they decided he was innocent). **ANTONYM** guilty

**2** someone who is innocent does not have much experience of the bad things in life, and believes that everyone is good and honest: *I was young and innocent, and I trusted everyone.*

**3 innocent victim/bystander/civilian, etc.** = someone who gets hurt or killed in a war or during a crime, though he or she is not involved in it: *Two of the victims were members of a gang, and the other was an innocent bystander.*

—**innocently** *adverb*

—**innocence** *noun*

**in-no-vate** /'ɪnə'veɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to start to use a new idea, invention, or a new way of doing something: *We try not to repeat what we did in the past – we want to innovate.*

—**innovative** *adjective* new and better than in the past: *The company has been successful by developing innovative new products.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **innovate** *verb*
- **innovation** *noun*
- **innovative** *adjective*

**in-no-va-tion** /,ɪnə'veɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a new idea, invention, or way of doing something: *We are constantly seeing new innovations in medicine that can improve health.*

**in-oc-u-late** /ɪ'nɒkyəleɪt/ *verb, formal*

to protect someone against a disease by putting a weak form of the disease into his or her body using a needle: *Doctors are inoculating every child in the village to stop the disease.*

—**inoculation** /ɪ'nɒkyə'leɪʃən/ *noun* the act of inoculating someone

**in-of-fen-sive** /,ɪnə'fensɪv/ *adjective*

not causing offense or not making anyone upset: *The words of the song are inoffensive, so I let my little sister listen to it.* **ANTONYM** offensive

**in-pa-tient** /'ɪn,peɪʃənt/ *adjective*

relating to someone who stays in hospital while he or she is being given medical



treatment: *Inpatient care is usually much more expensive than outpatient treatment.*

**in·put** /'ɪnpʊt/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

**1** ideas that you have or things that you do to help make something succeed: *We want to get input from all the students in the class so that we can make the changes that they want.*

**2** information that is put into a computer  
**ANTONYM** **output**

**in·quire** /ɪn'kwɪə/ *verb, formal*

to ask someone for information: *"Do you live here?" he inquired. | I took the pants back to the store and inquired about getting my money back. | A man called me to inquire whether my car was still for sale.*

—**inquirer** *noun* someone who inquires about something

**in·quir·y** /ɪn'kwɪəri/ *noun plural*

**inquiries** *formal*

**1** a question you ask in order to get information: *You should make inquiries about the area before you decide to move there.*

**2** an official process to try to find out why something bad happened: *Relatives of the dead woman have asked for an inquiry into the crash.*

**in·quis·i·tive** /ɪn'kwɪzətɪv/ *adjective*

interested in finding out about things: *Jake's an inquisitive boy; he asks questions about everything.*

**in·sane** /ɪn'seɪn/ *adjective*

**1** *informal* very stupid, and often dangerous: *It's insane to try to cross the ocean in such a small boat.*

**2** someone who is insane is seriously mentally ill: *a hospital for the criminally insane*

—**insanely** *adverb*

—**insanity** /ɪn'sænəti/ *noun* the state of being seriously mentally ill

→ See Thesaurus box at **crazy**

**in·sect** /'ɪnsekt/ *noun*

a small creature such as an ANT or a fly, with six legs and a body divided into three parts. Some insects also have wings.

**in·sec·ti·cide** /ɪn'sektə'saɪd/ *noun*

a chemical substance used for killing insects

**in·se·cure** /,ɪnsɪ'kyʊr/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** not feeling confident that other people like you, or not confident about your ability to do something: *Many teenagers feel insecure*

*about their looks; they worry about being too fat or not having the right clothes.* **ANTONYM** **confident**

**2** if a situation or your job is insecure, you cannot depend on it because it might be taken away at any time: *Workers at the old factory feel insecure about their economic future.*

**in·sen·si·tive** /ɪn'sensətɪv/ *adjective, formal*

not noticing or caring whether something you say or do upsets someone: *The police officer was insensitive to the girl's feelings, and asked unkind questions about her dead boyfriend.*

**in·sep·a·ra·ble** /ɪn'sepərəbəl/ *adjective*

**1** people who are inseparable are always together because they like each other a lot: *The kids became inseparable, playing together every day.*

**2** things that are inseparable cannot be considered separately: *The problems of hunger and poverty are inseparable in this area; we cannot end hunger unless we also end poverty.*

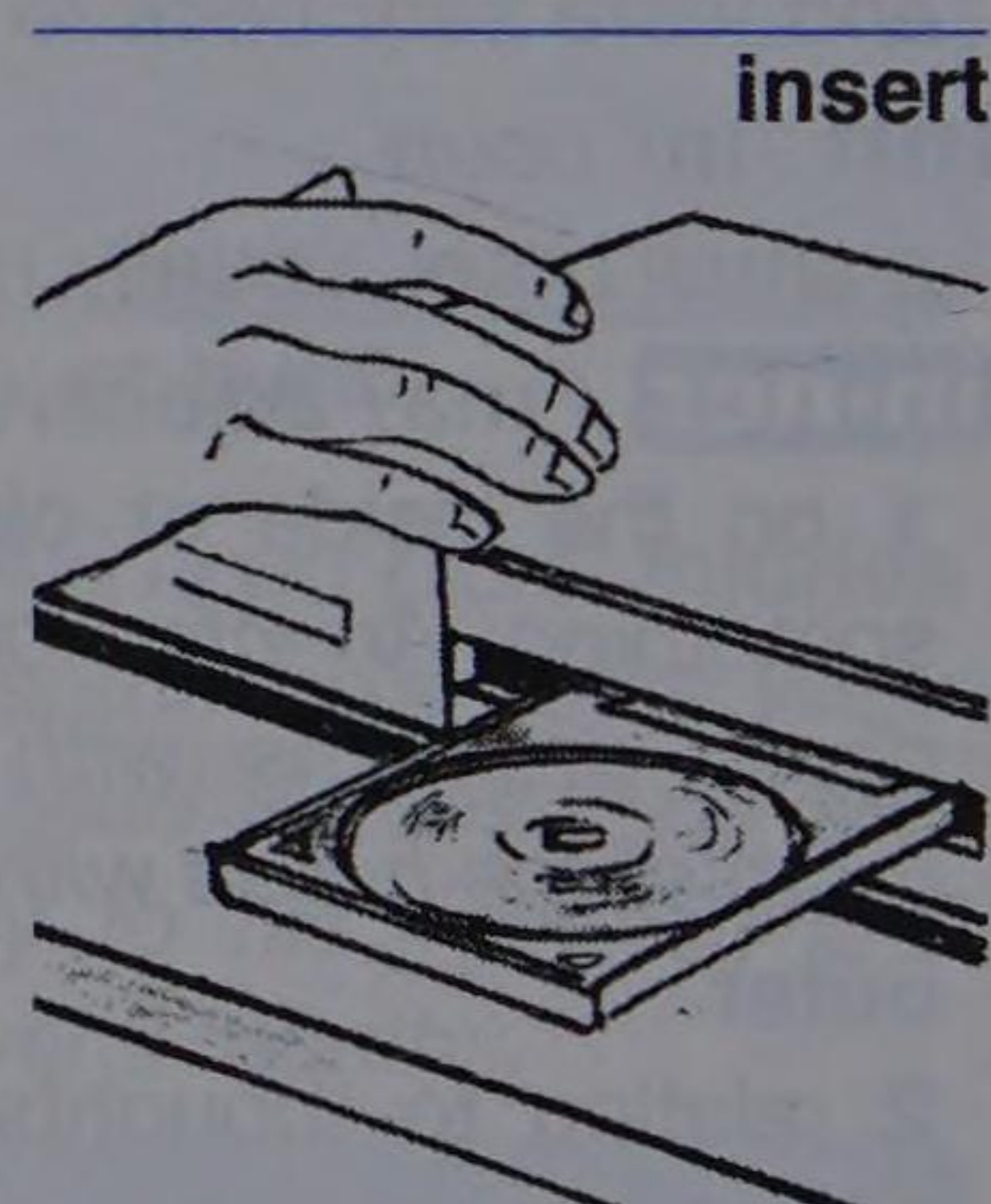
**in·sert** /ɪn'sɜ:t/

**[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to put something inside or into something else: *Insert a CD into the CD player.*

—**insertion**

/ɪn'sɜ:ʃən/ *noun* the action of putting something inside something else



**in·side<sup>1</sup>** /ɪn'saɪd/ *adverb, preposition*

in a container, room, building, etc.: *Her keys were locked inside the car. | It's raining – let's go inside. | The temperature inside the building is hotter than outside.* **ANTONYM** **outside**

**inside<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1 the inside** = the inner part of something: *The skin on the inside of my ear was red and sore. | The door was locked from the inside and I couldn't get in.*

**2 inside out** = if clothing is inside out, the part that is usually on the outside is on the inside: *One of her socks was inside out. | Turn your jeans inside out when you wash them.*



**inside<sup>3</sup>** adjective

on the inside of something: *He took a pen from the inside pocket of his jacket.*

**in-sid-er** /ɪn'saɪdər/ noun

someone who works for an organization and knows a lot about it: *Some insiders believe the company is having trouble, but there have been no public announcements.*

**in-sight** /'ɪnsaɪt/ **Ac** noun

the ability to understand what people and situations are really like: *Living in Paris really gave me insight into the way the French people live.*

—**insightful** adjective able to understand what people and situations are really like

**in-sig-ni-a** /ɪn'sɪɡniə/ noun plural**insignia**

a piece of cloth or plastic showing someone's rank or the name of the organization he or she works for. It is usually worn on a shirt or jacket: *His shirt had a navy insignia on the arm.*

**in-sig-nif-i-cant** /,ɪnsɪɡ'nɪfɪkənt/ **Ac**

adjective, formal

too small or unimportant to think or worry about: *Our problems seem insignificant compared to people whose houses were destroyed.*

—**insignificantly** adverb

—**insignificance** noun the fact that something is insignificant

**in-sin-cere** /,ɪnsɪn'sɪr/ adjective

pretending to think or feel something that you do not really think or feel: *He laughed to show that he wasn't afraid, but his laughter sounded insincere.*

—**insincerely** adverb

—**insincerity** /,ɪnsɪn'serəti/ noun the fact that someone is pretending to think or feel something that he or she does not really think or feel

**in-sist** /ɪn'sɪst/ verb

**1** to keep saying firmly that something is true, even when other people think you may not be telling the truth: *He kept insisting that Mike was driving when the accident happened.*

**2** to say firmly that you will do something or that something must happen: *He insisted on going to work even though he was sick. | The insurance company insisted (that) I had to be*

*checked by my doctor, or they would not pay.*

—**insistence** noun the act of demanding that something must happen

**in-som-ni-a** /ɪn'səmniə/ noun

if you have insomnia, you are not able to sleep

—**insomniac** /ɪn'səmni,æk/ noun someone who regularly has difficulty sleeping

**in-spect** /ɪn'spekt/ **Ac** verb

to examine something carefully, especially as part of an official activity: *The bags will be inspected by a customs official. | We inspected the roof for leaks.*

—**inspector** noun someone whose job is to check that something is being done correctly and that rules are being obeyed: *Building inspectors checked the new building for problems.*

**in-spec-tion** /ɪn'spekʃən/ **Ac** noun

a careful examination of something, to make sure that something is in good condition or that something has been done correctly: *a safety inspection | Engineers do an inspection of the engines before the plane takes off.*

**in-spi-ra-tion** /,ɪnspə'reɪʃən/ noun

something or someone that makes you want to achieve something, or that gives you new ideas: *When I was a kid I wanted to be a fighter, and Muhammad Ali was my inspiration. | The author said that his children were the inspiration for many of his stories (=they gave him ideas).*

—**inspirational** adjective giving you inspiration: *an inspirational leader*

**in-spire** /ɪn'spaɪər/ verb

**1** to make someone feel that he or she wants to do or achieve something: *His love for the young woman inspired him to write the song.*

**2** to make someone have a particular feeling: *The captain inspired confidence in the soldiers who worked with him.*

**in-stall** /ɪn'stɔl/ verb

**1** formal to put a piece of equipment somewhere and connect it so that it is ready to be used: *It took me two hours to install the new light in the bedroom ceiling.*

**2** to add new computer software onto a computer: *Download the software, and install it on your computer.*



—**installation** /ˌɪnstəˈleɪʃən/ *noun* the act of putting a new piece of equipment somewhere

**in·stall·ment** /ɪnˈstɔlmənt/ *noun*

a payment that you make every week, month, etc. in order to pay for something you have bought: *You can pay for the computer in monthly installments if you don't have all the money right now.*

**in·stance** /ˈɪnstəns/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** **for instance** = for example: *In some states, for instance Nevada, gambling is legal.*

**2** **formal** an example of something, especially something bad: *There are too many instances of people being cruel to animals.*

**in·stant¹** /ˈɪnstənt/ *adjective*

**1** happening immediately: *The movie was an instant success.*

**2** instant coffee or food can be prepared very quickly by adding hot water: *instant noodles*

**instant²** *noun*

a very short period of time: *I saw her for an instant, and then she was gone.* **SYNONYM** **moment**

**in·stan·ta·ne·ous** /ˌɪnstənˈteɪniəs/ *adjective*

happening immediately: *With email, communication is almost instantaneous.*

—**instantaneously** *adverb*

**in·stant·ly** /ˈɪnstəntli/ *adverb*

very quickly: *He still looked exactly the same, and I recognized him instantly.* **SYNONYM** **immediately**

→ See Thesaurus box at **immediately**

**instant 'replay** *noun*

an occasion when the action in a sports game on television is shown again, immediately after it first happens: *They used the instant replay to show that his foot went outside the lines.*

**in·stead** /ɪnˈsted/ *adverb*

if you do, use, or have something instead of another thing, you do, use, or have it rather than another thing: *If you don't want chicken, you can have beef instead.* | *I'll ride my bike to work instead of driving* (=I will ride, not drive).

**in·stinct** /ˈɪnstɪŋkt/ *noun*

a natural behavior or action that you do quickly, and that you have not learned or thought about: *I was very scared, and my instinct was to run to a safe place.*

—**instinctive** *adjective* based on instinct: *Most children have an instinctive fear of the dark.*

—**instinctively** *adverb*: *I knew instinctively that he wasn't guilty.*

**in·sti·tute** /ˈɪnstəˌtut/ **[Ac]** *noun*

an organization where people work on a subject related to education, especially a science: *the Massachusetts Institute of Technology*

**in·sti·tu·tion** /ˌɪnstəˈtuʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a large important organization, such as a bank, hospital, or university: *banks and other financial institutions*

**2** a behavior or way of doing something that people in a particular society have used for a very long time: *The institution of marriage has changed throughout history.*

—**institutional** *adjective* relating to an institution

**in·struct** /ɪnˈstrʌkt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

**1** to officially tell someone to do something: *Employees were instructed not to talk to the media.*

**2** to teach someone something: *The program instructs students in English grammar.*

—**instructor** *noun* someone who teaches a skill or activity: *a swimming instructor*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **instruct** *verb*
- **instructor** *noun*
- **instruction** *noun*

**in·struc·tion** /ɪnˈstrʌkʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a statement telling someone what they must do: *Dan shouted instructions to us, telling us to bring a rope.* | *He gave instructions that I should deliver the package to you.*

**2** **formal** lessons that teach you a particular skill or subject: *She never had any instruction in music, so she can't read music.*

**3** **instructions** = information that tells you how to do something: *Follow the instructions on the back of the box, and you can build this model car.* | *The invitation came*



with a map and instructions on how to get to the party. **SYNONYM** **directions**

**in·stru·ment** /'ɪnstrəmənt/ *noun*

**1** something such as a piano, TRUMPET, VIOLIN, etc. that you play in order to make music: *Can you play any musical instruments?*

**2** a piece of scientific equipment or a medical tool: *The doctor had his surgical instruments laid out for the operation.*

**in·stru·men·tal** /,ɪnstrə'mentl/ *adjective*

**1** instrumental music is played by instruments, not sung by voices

**2** **be instrumental in doing something** = to be a person that helps to make something happen: *My biology professor was instrumental in getting me this job. He knew someone at the company.*

**in·sub·stan·tial** /,ɪnsəb'stænʃəl/ *adjective, formal*

not large or definite enough to have an important effect: *The evidence against him was insubstantial and did not convince the jury.*

**in·suf·fi·cient** /,ɪnsə'fɪʃənt/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

not enough: *The amount of money in your bank account was insufficient to pay the bill.*

**ANTONYM** **sufficient**

—**insufficiently** *adverb*

**in·su·late** /'ɪnsə,leɪt/ *verb*

**1** to cover or protect something with a material that stops electricity, sound, heat, etc. getting in or out: *Insulate the pipes to stop them from freezing.*

**2** to protect someone from knowing about or experiencing something bad: *Kids from wealthy families can be insulated from the type of problems that poor kids have.*

—**insulation** /,ɪnsə'leɪʃən/ *noun* material used to insulate something, especially a building

**in·su·lin** /'ɪnsələn/ *noun*

a substance which your body makes naturally in order to change sugar into energy

**in·sult**<sup>1</sup> /ɪn'sʌlt/ *verb*

**1** to say something unkind, rude, or offensive about someone: *You insulted him when you said he didn't have enough skill to do the job himself.*

**2** **be insulted** = to feel upset because someone has said or done something unkind, rude, or offensive: *She might be insulted if we don't come to her party.*

**in·sult**<sup>2</sup> /'ɪnsʌlt/ *noun*

a rude or offensive remark or action: *The man and woman were yelling nasty insults at each other.*

**in·sult·ing** /ɪn'sʌltɪŋ/ *adjective*

very rude or offensive to someone: *His jokes are insulting to women and have offended his staff, especially the women. I insulting remarks*

→ See Thesaurus box at **rude**

**in·sur·ance** /ɪn'ʃʊərəns/ *noun*

an arrangement in which you pay a company an amount of money every month or every year, and they pay you money if anything bad happens to you or something you own: *You should have health insurance in case you have a serious medical problem. Treatment can be very expensive. I pay very high insurance premiums (=the amount you pay every month, year, etc. for insurance).*

**in·surance ,policy** *noun*

a legal written agreement with an insurance company so that you have insurance: *If I die, my life insurance policy will pay my wife a large amount of money.*

**in·sure** /ɪn'ʃʊr/ *verb*

**1** to buy or provide insurance for something or someone: *This painting is insured for \$5,000 in case it is stolen or damaged.*

**2** to make certain that something happens: *The gift of \$200,000 dollars will insure that the school has enough money to build a new library.*

—**insurer** *noun* a company that provides insurance

**in·tact** /ɪn'tækt/ *adjective*

not harmed or damaged: *The storm destroyed many of the wooden buildings, but the hotel was still intact.*

**in·te·ger** /'ɪntədʒə/ *noun, formal*

a whole number, not a FRACTION (=a part of a number, such as  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ): 6, -2, and 0 are all integers.

**in·te·gral** /'ɪntəgrəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal* forming an important and necessary part of something: *Women are now an integral part*



of our military; we could not fight a war without them.

**in·te·grate** /'Intə,greɪt/ [Ac] verb

**1** to become part of a group or society and be accepted by them: *Some immigrants do not want to integrate into American life.*

**2** to end the practice of separating people of different races in schools or institutions: *The Supreme Court's decision to integrate public schools allowed black children and white children to go the same schools across the U.S.*

—**integrated** adjective having people from different places or of different types living together: *We live in an integrated community with people of all races and religions.*

—**integration** /,Intə'greɪʃən/ noun the process of becoming part of a group or society and being accepted by them

**in·teg·ri·ty** /In'tegrəti/ [Ac] noun

the quality of being honest and doing what you believe is right: *I admire his integrity; I have known him for 20 years, and I have never heard him lie.*

**in·tel·lect** /'Intə,lekt/ noun

the ability to understand things and think intelligently: *My professor is a woman of great intellect.*

**in·tel·lec·tu·al**<sup>1</sup> /,Intə'lektʃuəl/ adjective

relating to your ability to think and understand ideas and information: *In a democracy we have intellectual freedom; nobody can limit what we learn about.*

**intellectual**<sup>2</sup> noun

an intelligent person who spends time thinking about complicated ideas: *We live near a university, so there are lots of intellectuals and artists in the town.*

**in·tel·li·gence** /In'telədʒəns/ [Ac] noun

**1** the ability to learn, understand, and think about things: *He was a child of average intelligence, who got B's and C's at school.*

**2** information about the secret activities of foreign governments, such as their military plans: *The President said the intelligence that was collected was too secret to be shown to the public.*

**in·tel·li·gent** /In'telədʒənt/ [Ac] adjective

able to learn and understand things quickly: *an intelligent man* | *She's a good student who always asks intelligent questions.*

ANTONYM **stupid**

—**intelligently** adverb

### THESAURUS: intelligent

**smart** intelligent: *He's a really smart guy and he studies really hard.*

**bright** quick at learning things – used especially about children and young people: *Their daughter is very bright; she's only four and she's already learned to read.*

**brilliant** very intelligent and good at the work you do: *a brilliant scientist*

**wise** having a lot of experience and knowledge about people and the world, so that you can make good decisions and give good advice: *My mother was a wise woman, who helped me understand how to treat other people kindly.*

**clever** intelligent and good at thinking of ideas: *He's clever, and can usually figure out a way to get what he wants.*

**gifted** a gifted child is much more intelligent than most other children: *a special class for gifted children*

**in·tend** /In'tend/ verb

**1** to plan to do something: *The work took longer than we intended.* | *Bob never intended to hurt me.* SYNONYM **mean**

**2 be intended for someone/something** = made for a particular person or designed for a particular purpose: *It's a movie for kids – it's not intended for adults.*

### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **intend** verb
- **intention** noun
- **intentional** adjective
- **intentionally** adverb
- **intent** noun

**in·tense** /In'tens/ [Ac] adjective

having a very strong effect on someone or felt very strongly: *The heat from the burning building was intense.* | *intense pain*

—**intensely** adverb: *Bill disliked her intensely and hated being around her.*



**in·ten·si·fy** /ɪn'tensə,fai/ **[Ac]** verb, formal  
to increase in strength, size, or amount, etc.:  
*The pain intensified, until it was so bad that I went to the hospital. | Officials have intensified the search for the missing children.*

**in·ten·si·ty** /ɪn'tensəti/ **[Ac]** noun  
when something is felt very strongly or has a very strong effect: *You could see the intensity of the love he felt for his children in the gentle way he took care of them.*

**in·ten·sive** /ɪn'tensɪv/ **[Ac]** adjective  
involving a lot of work in a short period of time: *The team did two months of intensive training before the Olympics.*  
—**intensively** adverb

**in·tent** /ɪn'tent/ noun  
formal what you want or plan to do: *It was never my intent to hurt anybody – the bad things that happened were an accident.*  
SYNONYM **intention**

**in·ten·tion** /ɪn'tenʃən/ noun  
something that you plan to do: *I have no intention of retiring – I'm going to continue working as long as possible.*

**in·ten·tion·al** /ɪn'tenʃənəl/ adjective  
an action that is intentional is one that you plan to do: *He broke the rules, but I'm sure it wasn't intentional.*  
—**intentionally** adverb

**in·ter·act** /,ɪntə'rækt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal  
to talk, work, or be involved in an activity with someone: *The Senator tries to interact with ordinary Americans, so that he knows how they think.*  
—**interaction** /,ɪntə'rækʃən/ noun the activity of talking or working with other people

**in·ter·ac·tive** /,ɪntə'ræktɪv/ **[Ac]** adjective  
if a television, piece of software, etc. is interactive, you can send and receive messages telling it what to do: *The museum has an interactive program that allows you to enter your weight and see how much you would weigh on the moon.*

**in·ter·cept** /,ɪntə'sept/ verb  
to stop something that is going from one place to another before it gets there: *He threw the ball to a teammate, but a member of the other team intercepted it.*

—**interception** /,ɪntə'sepʃən/ noun the action of stopping something before it gets somewhere

**in·ter·com** /'ɪntə,kəm/ noun  
a system that lets people in different parts of a building, aircraft, etc. speak to each other: *I was sitting down in the plane when the captain spoke to us over the intercom.*

**in·ter·con·nect·ed** /,ɪntə'kə'nektɪd/ adjective, formal  
if two or more things are interconnected, they are related to each other or connected to each other: *Computers have thousands of interconnected parts.*

**in·ter·de·pend·ent** /,ɪntə'dɪ'pendənt/ adjective, formal  
depending on or necessary to each other: *Work and family are interdependent areas of a parent's life.*

—**interdependence** noun when two or more things depend on or are necessary to each other

**in·ter·est<sup>1</sup>** /'ɪntrəst/ noun  
**1** the feeling that you want to know more about a subject or person, or do more of an activity: *The girls have started to show an interest in fashion (=become interested in fashion). | I got bored with the book and began to lose interest (=stopped being interested).*

**2** a subject or activity that you enjoy studying or doing: *My interests are music, soccer, and riding horses.*

**3** money that you must pay a bank when you borrow money, or money that a bank pays you if you save money: *I haven't even paid the interest on my student loan yet.*

**interest<sup>2</sup>** verb  
if a subject, activity, or person interests you, you want to find out more about them: *The idea of studying journalism interests me and I want to learn more about it.*

**in·ter·est·ed** /'ɪntrəstɪd/ adjective  
**1** if you are interested in something, you want to learn more about it because you enjoy it: *Most girls who are my age are interested in music, clothes, and boys.*

**2** if you are interested in doing something, you want to do it: *I'm interested in buying your truck. How much money do you want for it?*



**in·ter·est·ing** /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/ adjective

unusual or exciting in a way that makes you want to find out more: *That's an interesting story – could you tell me more about it?*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **interesting** adjective
- **interested** adjective
- **interest** verb
- **interest** noun

**in·ter·fere** /,ɪntə'fɪr/ verb

to get involved in a situation when other people do not want you to: *It's better not to interfere in their arguments. They need to solve their problems themselves.*

—**interference** noun an act of interfering

**PHRASAL VERB****interfere with something**

to prevent something from happening in the way that is planned: *Her family problems began to interfere with her work and her boss had to talk to her about it.*

**in·te·ri·or** /ɪn'tɪriə/ noun

the inside part or inside of something: *The interior of the ship was dark and noisy.*

ANTONYM **exterior**

—**interior** adjective inside: *The interior walls of the house need to be painted.*

**in·ter·jec·tion** /,ɪntə'dʒekʃən/ noun

a word or phrase that is used to express surprise, shock, pain, etc. In the sentence "Ouch! That hurt!", "ouch" is an interjection.

**in·ter·me·di·ate** /,ɪntə'midiət/ **[Ac]** adjective

done or happening between two other stages, levels, etc.: *First you take the beginners English class, then the intermediate class, and then the advanced class.*

**in·ter·mis·sion** /,ɪntə'mɪʃən/ noun

a short period of time when a play, concert, etc. stops before starting again: *The show lasts 85 minutes with a short intermission in the middle.*

**in·tern<sup>1</sup>** /'ɪntən/ noun

**1** a student who works without pay so that he or she can learn how to do a job

**2** someone who has almost finished training as a doctor and is working in a hospital

**in·tern<sup>2</sup>** /ɪn'tən/ verb

**1** to work at an organization as an intern: *Scott's interning at a law firm during summer vacation from law school.*

**2** to put someone in prison for political reasons or during a war, without charging him or her with a crime: *Thousands of people were interned at labor camps and forced to build roads.*

—**internment** noun the practice of keeping people in prison for political reasons or during a war, without charging them with a crime

**in·ter·nal** /ɪn'tənl/ **[Ac]** adjective

**1** existing or happening within a company, organization, or country: *The bank began an internal investigation into the illegal activity among its employees.*

**2** inside your body: *the internal organs such as the heart, lungs, and stomach* **ANTONYM external**

—**internally** adverb

**in·ter·na·tion·al** /,ɪntə'næʃənəl/ adjective

involving or existing in more than one country: *They asked the United Nations and other international organizations for help. | international terrorism*

—**internationally** adverb

**in·ter·net** /'ɪntə,net/ noun

**the Internet** = a computer system that allows millions of computer users around the world to send and receive information: *You can buy airline tickets on the Internet.*

SYNONYM **the Net, the Web**

—**Internet** adjective: *The phone company now provides Internet access to its customers.*

**in·ter·pret** /ɪn'təprɪt/ **[Ac]** verb

**1** to change what someone is saying in one language into another language: *Gina speaks Spanish, so she interpreted for me when we were in Mexico.*

**2 formal** to believe that something has a particular meaning: *I interpreted his silence as a sign of guilt.*

—**interpreter** noun someone who changes what someone is saying in one language into another language



**in·ter·pre·ta·tion** /ɪn,tə'prə'teɪʃən/**[Ac]** noun, formal

the way in which someone understands or explains something: *What is your interpretation of the end of the story? Do you think the characters are happy?*

**in·ter·ra·cial** /,ɪntə'reɪʃəl/ adjective

happening or existing between different races of people: *Interracial marriage is more common now than it used to be.*

**in·ter·ro·gate** /ɪn'terə'geɪt/ verb

to ask someone questions for a long time in order to get information: *The police interrogated the men for more than three hours, trying to find out exactly what happened.*

—**interrogator** noun a police officer or other official who asks someone questions in order to get information

—**interrogation** /ɪn,tərə'geɪʃən/ noun the act of asking someone questions for a long time in order to get information

**in·ter·rupt** /,ɪntə'rʌpt/ verb

**1** to say or do something that stops someone else from speaking: *He got mad at me for interrupting his conversation.*

**2** to make a process or activity stop for a short time: *The rain interrupted our barbecue.*

—**interruption** /,ɪntə'rʌpʃən/ noun something that makes an activity stop for a short time

**in·ter·sec·tion** /,ɪntə'sekʃən/ noun

a place where two or more roads meet and cross each other, often where there is a traffic light: *Turn left at the next intersection.*

**in·ter·state**<sup>1</sup> /'ɪntə'steɪt/ noun

a wide road that goes between states, on which cars can travel very fast: *The car was going south on Interstate 93.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **road**

**interstate**<sup>2</sup> adjective

between different states in the U.S.: *interstate transportation*

**in·ter·val** /'ɪntə'vəl/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a period of time or distance between two events, activities, etc.: *There was a short interval of good weather between the storms.*

**2 at regular intervals** = with the same amount of time or distance between each

thing, activity, etc.: *The light flashes at regular intervals.*

**in·ter·vene** /,ɪntə'veɪn/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to do something to try to stop an argument, problem, war, etc.: *I could hear the boys arguing, but I decided not to intervene and let them solve their own problems.*

—**intervention** /,ɪntə'veɪnʃən/ noun the act of intervening in something in order to change what happens: *We oppose U.S. military intervention in the area.*

**in·ter·ven·ing** /,ɪntə'veɪnɪŋ/ **[Ac]**

adjective

**the intervening months/years, etc.** formal = the time that has passed between two events: *I hadn't visited my school in a long time, and a lot had changed in the intervening years.*

**in·ter·view**<sup>1</sup> /'ɪntə,vju/ noun

**1** an occasion when a famous person is asked a lot of questions about his or her life and opinions by a newspaper, television program, etc.: *In an interview with CBS, Jack said that he planned to get married in the fall.* | a TV interview

**2** a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions to find out if you are a good person to work in a particular job or to study at a college, etc.: *I have an interview at Dartmouth College tomorrow.* | a job interview

**interview**<sup>2</sup> verb

to ask someone questions during an interview: *Kelly was interviewed on the radio after the game.* | *We are interviewing 15 people for the job.*

—**interviewer** noun the person who asks someone questions during an interview

—**interviewee** noun the person who answers questions in an interview

**in·tes·tine** /ɪn'testɪn/ noun

the long tube in your body that food passes through after it leaves your stomach and before it leaves your body

—**intestinal** adjective related to the intestine: *intestinal infection*

→ See picture on page A2

**in·ti·mate** /'ɪntəmət/ adjective

**1** having a very close relationship with someone: *a small party for intimate friends*

**2** relating to very private or personal matters:



He told her the most intimate embarrassing details of his private life.

**3 intimate knowledge of something** = very detailed and thorough knowledge of something, gained through experience or study: During his four years in Mexico City, he gained an intimate knowledge of Mexican life.

**4 formal** relating to sex: The man and woman were close friends but had never had an intimate relationship.

—**intimately** adverb

—**intimacy** /'Intəməsi/ noun when you have a close personal relationship with someone

**in·tim·i·date** /In'tɪmə,deɪt/ verb

to make someone feel frightened of you, so that he or she does what you want him or her to do: The police arrested members of the gang for intimidating witnesses and trying to keep them from talking to police.

—**intimidating** adjective making you feel worried or not confident: I find job interviews quite intimidating.

—**intimidation** /In,tɪmə'deɪʃən/ noun the act of intimidating someone

**in·to** /'Intə; before vowels 'Intu; strong 'Intu/ preposition

**1** inside a container or place: When she saw his car coming, Ruth ran into the house. | I put some clothes into my suitcase, and left for the airport.

**2** involved in a situation or activity: After college, he decided to go into teaching (=become a teacher). | Those boys are always getting into trouble.

**3** becoming a different thing: Caterpillars turn into butterflies. | They are going to make the book into a movie.

**4** hitting something, usually by accident: Dick drove his dad's car into a tree and wrecked it.

**5 be into something informal** = to like something very much: I'm totally into sports, especially football.

**6** in a particular direction: She held my face and looked into my eyes.

**7** used when dividing one number by another number: Five goes into ten two times.

**in·tol·er·a·ble** /In'tələrəbəl/ adjective, formal

more difficult, bad, or painful than you can deal with: The pain became intolerable, so I went to the hospital.

**in·tox·i·cat·ed** /In'taksə,keɪtɪd/ adjective, formal

**1** drunk: He was arrested for driving while intoxicated.

**2** very happy and excited by something, so that you stop thinking clearly: He became intoxicated by dreams of winning lots of money in Las Vegas.

—**intoxicating** adjective making you drunk: intoxicating liquor

—**intoxication** /In,taksə'keɪʃən/ noun the state of being drunk

**in·tran·si·tive** /In'trænsətɪv/ adjective

an intransitive verb does not have an object. In the sentence "They arrived early," "arrive" is an intransitive verb

—**intransitive** noun an intransitive verb

**in·tri·cate** /'Intrɪkət/ adjective

containing many small parts or details: the intricate patterns of an Oriental rug

**in·trigue** /In'trɪg/ verb, formal

to interest someone a lot, especially by being strange or mysterious: The title of the book intrigued me because it was so unusual.

—**intriguing** adjective interesting and slightly strange or mysterious: The experiment produced some intriguing results, and scientists are investigating them further.

—**intrigued** adjective very interested in something because it seems strange or mysterious

**in·trin·sic** /In'trɪnzɪk/ **Ac** adjective, formal

being an important basic quality or feature of something: I felt the intrinsic pleasure of swimming smoothly through the water.

—**intrinsically** adverb, formal: We believe that people are intrinsically good, and that it is the troubles in their lives that make them do bad things.

**in·tro·duce** /,ɪntrə'dus/ verb

**1** if you introduce someone to another person, you tell each person the other person's name for the first time: She took me home and introduced me to her parents. | Let me



introduce myself – my name is Mark Wright.

**2** formal to make something happen or be available for the first time: *Apple introduced the iPod in 2004.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **introduce** verb
- **introduction** noun
- **introductory** adjective

**in-tro-duc-tion** /,ɪntrə'dʌkʃən/ noun

**1** formal the act of making something happen or be available for the first time: *Every year we see the introduction of new more powerful computers.*

**2** the act of telling two people each other's names when they meet for the first time: *Wade greeted his guests and made the introductions (=told everyone what each person's name was).*

**3** a short written or spoken explanation at the beginning of a book or speech: *In the introduction, the author explains why he wrote the book.*

—**introductory** /,ɪntrə'dʌktəri/ adjective: *Write an introductory paragraph to your essay stating your main ideas.*

**in-tro-vert-ed** /'ɪntrə,vɜːtɪd/ adjective

an introverted person is quiet and shy, and does not enjoy being with other people: *At fifteen years old, she was quiet and introverted.* **ANTONYM** extroverted

—**introvert** noun someone who is introverted

→ See Thesaurus box at **shy**

**in-trude** /ɪn'truːd/ verb, formal

to interrupt someone or become involved in a private situation when people do not want you to: *"I hope I'm not intruding," she said to the people sitting around the table. | I don't want newspapers intruding into our private lives*

—**intrusion** /ɪn'truːʒən/ noun an occasion when someone or something intrudes in your private affairs

**in-trud-er** /ɪn'truːdə/ noun

**1** someone who illegally enters a building or area in order to steal something: *The intruders entered the school building through a window.*

**2** someone who is in a place where he or

she is not wanted: *The border guards have promised to fight against foreign intruders.*

**in-tu-i-tion** /,ɪntu'ɪʃən/ noun

the feeling that you know something is true or correct without having definite facts: *My intuition told me not to trust him, but I wasn't sure why.*

—**intuitive** /ɪn'tuːətɪv/ adjective based on feelings, not facts or knowledge

**In-u-it** /'ɪnuɪt/ noun

**the Inuit** = a race of people who live in the very cold parts of North America

**in-un-date** /'ɪnən,deɪt/ verb

**be inundated with/by something** = to receive too much of something, so that you cannot deal with all of it: *We were inundated with phone calls from people who wanted tickets.*

**in-vade** /ɪn'veɪd/ verb

to enter a country with an army in order to take control of it: *Iraqi troops invaded Kuwait in 1990.*

—**invader** noun a country or army that invades another country

**in-val-id<sup>1</sup>** /'ɪnvələd/ noun

someone who is sick, injured, or old and needs other people to do things for them

**in-val-id<sup>2</sup>** /ɪn'vælɪd/ **Ac** adjective

something that is invalid is not legally acceptable because it breaks a rule: *If the credit card doesn't have a signature, it is invalid and cannot be used.* **ANTONYM** valid

—**invalidate** verb to make something invalid

**in-val-ua-ble** /ɪn'vælyəbəl/ adjective, formal

very useful: *His experience was invaluable to the younger players on the team.* **SYNONYM** valuable

**in-val-sion** /ɪn'veɪʒən/ noun

an occasion when an army enters a country in order to take control of it: *The invasion of Poland marked the beginning of World War II.*

**in-vent** /ɪn'vent/ verb

**1** to make, design, or think of something that is completely new and different: *Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.*



**THESAURUS: invent**

**create** to make something new: *a new dish created by our chef*

**think up** to produce an idea, plan, etc. that is completely new: *Teachers always have to think up ways to keep the kids interested.*

**come up with something** to think of a new idea, plan, reply, etc.: *Carson said he came up with the idea for the book about five years ago.*

**devise** formal to invent a way of doing something: *Two scientists devised a test to measure people's intelligence.*

**make up something** to produce a new story, song, game, etc.: *Grandpa made up stories for us at bedtime.*

**2** to think of a reason, story, etc. that is not true and tell it to people: *She invented a reason not to go to the party.*

—**inventive** adjective able to think of new, different, or interesting ideas

**WORD FAMILY look at the words:**

- **invent** verb
- **inventor** noun
- **invention** noun
- **inventive** adjective

→ See Thesaurus box at **lie<sup>2</sup>**

**in·ven·tion** /ɪnˈvenʃən/ noun

something that has been invented, or the act of inventing something: *The computer industry is constantly coming up with new inventions. | The invention of television has changed the world.*

**in·ven·tor** /ɪnˈventər/ noun

someone who thinks of or makes something completely new and different

**in·ven·to·ry** /ˈɪnvənˌtɔːri/ noun plural inventories

- 1** all the things that are for sale in a store
- 2** a list of all the things in a place

**in·ver·te·brate** /ɪnˈvɜːtəbreɪt/ noun

a creature that does not have a BACKBONE (=a row of connected bones going down its back): *Worms are invertebrates.*

**in·vest** /ɪnˈvest/ **Ac** verb

**1** to buy property, shares, goods, etc. because you hope their value will increase and you will make a profit: *I have some money that I want to invest and hopefully*

*make a good profit. | We've decided to invest the money in land.*

**2** to use a lot of time, effort, or money to improve something and make it succeed: *The government has invested heavily in education.*

—**investor** noun someone who buys property, shares, or goods because he or she hopes they will make a profit

**in·ves·ti·gate** /ɪnˈvestəˌgeɪt/ **Ac** verb to try to find out the truth about a crime, accident, etc.: *After investigating the case, the police arrested two men. | I heard a strange noise and went downstairs to investigate.*

—**investigator** noun someone who investigates a crime, accident, etc.

**WORD FAMILY look at the words:**

- **investigate** verb
- **investigation** noun
- **investigator** noun

**in·ves·ti·ga·tion** /ɪnˌvestəˈgeɪʃən/ **Ac** noun

an official attempt to find out the reasons for something, such as a crime or accident: *an investigation into the cause of the plane crash | The company is under investigation (=being investigated) for tax fraud.*

**in·vest·ment** /ɪnˈvestmənt/ **Ac** noun

**1** the money that you use to buy property, shares, goods, etc. in order to make a profit, or the act of doing this: *People want to know that their investments are growing. | Foreign investment in China has increased year after year.*

**2** something that you buy or do because it will be valuable or useful later: *Going back to school was a good investment of my time.*

**in·vis·i·ble** /ɪnˈvɪzəbəl/ **Ac** adjective something that is invisible cannot be seen: *At 5,000 feet the small plane was almost invisible; it looked like a dot in the sky.*

—**invisibly** adverb

—**invisibility** /ɪnˌvɪzəˈbɪləti/ noun the fact that something is invisible

**in·vi·ta·tion** /ˌɪnvəˈteɪʃən/ noun

**1** a request inviting someone to go somewhere or do something: *I decided to accept Andrea's invitation to visit her.*

**2** a piece of paper that someone sends you



to ask you to come to a party or event: *You have to bring the invitation with you to get into the party.*

**in·vite** /ɪnˈvaɪt/ verb

to ask someone to come to a party, dinner, wedding, etc.: “Why weren’t you at Eva’s party?” “I wasn’t invited.” | *I invited the Rosens to dinner next Friday.* | *They’ve invited us for lunch.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### invite someone in

to ask someone to come into your home: *We stood on the front porch for a while, but she didn’t invite us in.*

##### invite someone over

to ask someone to come to your home for a party, meal, etc.: *They invited us over for a barbecue.*

**in·vit·ing** /ɪnˈvaɪtɪŋ/ adjective

something that is inviting is attractive and makes you want to enjoy it: *The swimming pool looked inviting* (=made me want to swim in it).

—**invitingly** adverb

**in·voice** /ˈɪnvoɪs/ noun

a list that shows how much you must pay for goods, work, etc. **SYNONYM** bill

—**invoice** verb to send someone an invoice

**in·voke** /ɪnˈvoʊk/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

to use a law, principle, etc. to support your ideas or actions: *Stern invoked his rights and refused to answer questions in court* (=he refused to speak in court, which is his legal right).

**in·vol·un·tar·y** /ɪnˈvɒləntəri/ adjective

relating to a movement, reaction, etc. that you or your body makes but that you cannot control: *Breathing is an involuntary process – we do it without thinking about it.*

—**involuntarily** /ɪnˌvɒlənterəli/ adverb: *My eye was sore and red, and began to twitch involuntarily* (=make slight movements that could not be controlled).

**in·volve** /ɪnˈvɒlv/ **[Ac]** verb

**1** to include or affect someone or something: *Two students from our school were involved in the fight.*

**2** to encourage or allow someone to take part in something, for example a game or a discussion: *It’s important to involve children in sports and after-school activities.*

**3** if an activity or situation involves something else, that thing is part of it or is the result of it: *It’s a difficult climb, and we all knew the risks involved.* | *Taking the job involves moving to Texas.*

**in·volved** /ɪnˈvɒlvd/ **[Ac]** adjective

if you are involved in an activity or event, you take part in it: *I don’t want to get involved in anything that’s illegal.* | *Lots of kids become involved with Little League Baseball.*

**in·ward** /ˈɪnwəd/ also **inwards** adverb

toward the inside or center of something: *The door opens inward.* **ANTONYM** outward

—**inward** adjective toward the inside or center of something

**in·ward·ly** /ˈɪnwərdli/ adverb

in a way that is not seen or noticed by other people: *I laughed inwardly, but said nothing.*

**IOU** noun

**I owe you** a piece of paper that you sign to say that you owe someone some money

**IPA** noun

**International Phonetic Alphabet** a system of signs that represent the sounds made when speaking

**IQ** noun

**intelligence quotient** the level of someone’s intelligence. It is shown as a number, with 100 being the average: *He’s extremely intelligent. He has an IQ of 130.*

**Irish<sup>1</sup>** /ˈaɪrɪʃ/ adjective

coming from Ireland or relating to Ireland

**Irish<sup>2</sup>** noun

**the Irish** = the people of Ireland

**iron<sup>1</sup>** /ˈaɪərn/ noun

**1** a piece of electrical equipment used for making clothes smooth: *Be careful – the iron is still hot!*

**2** a common hard metal that is used to make steel: *The old fence was made of iron.*

**3** a natural substance that is in food and your blood in small amounts: *Red meat has a lot of iron in it.*

**iron<sup>2</sup>** verb

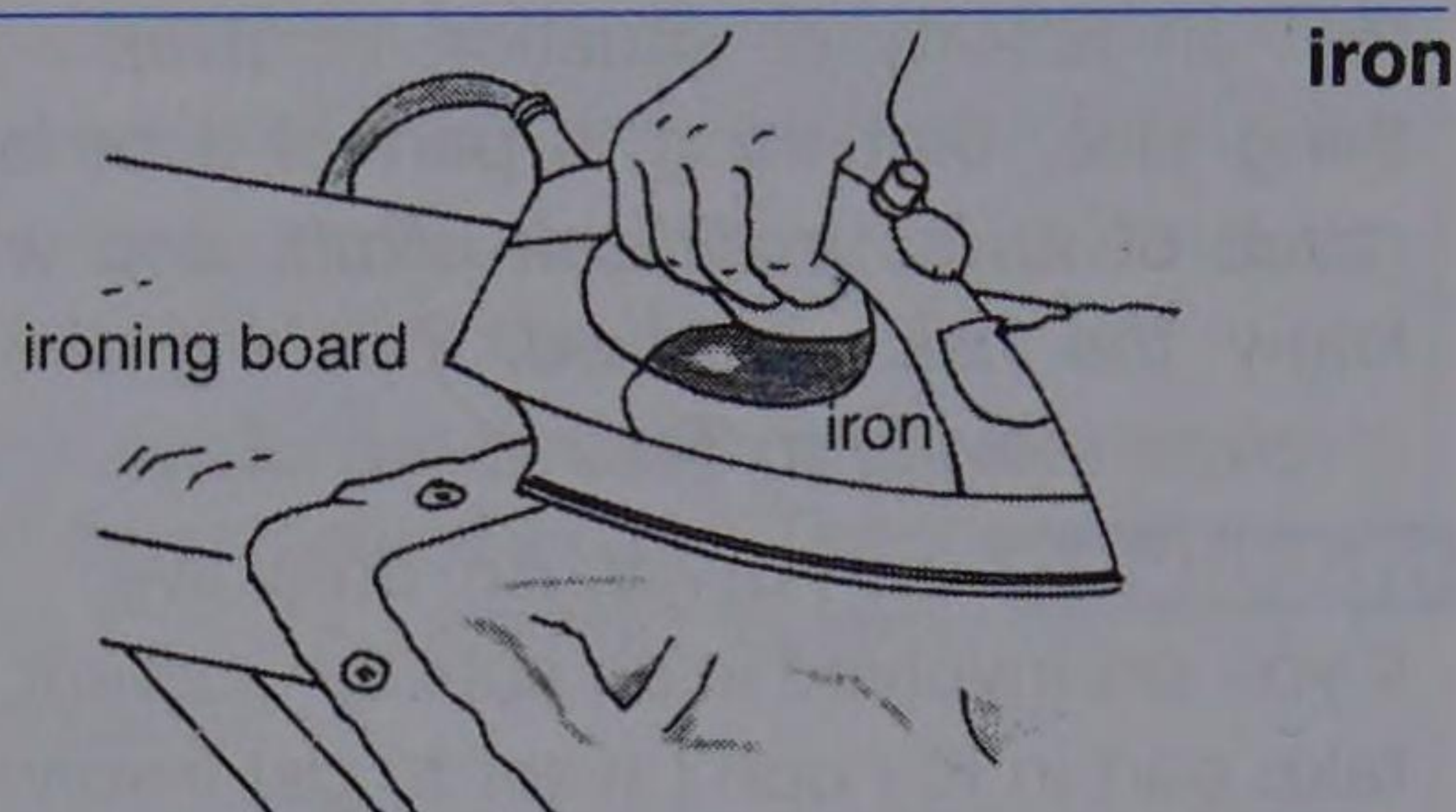
to make your clothes smooth using an iron: *Thanks for ironing my shirt – it looks a lot neater now.*

#### PHRASAL VERB

**iron something out** informal

to solve a small problem: *The embassy*





helped me iron out some problems with my visa.

### **iron<sup>3</sup>** adjective

**1** made of iron: *an iron gate*

**2** **do something with an iron hand/fist/grip** = to do something in a way that is very strict and severe: *He ruled the country with an iron fist and did not allow any opposition.*

### **i·ron·ing** /'aɪə'nɪŋ/ noun

the activity of making clothes smooth using an iron: *I usually do the ironing while I watch TV.*

### **'ironing board** noun

a tall narrow table used for ironing clothes

→ See picture at **iron<sup>1</sup>**

### **i·ro·ny** /'aɪrəni/ noun plural **ironies**

**1** a situation that is funny or sad because something strange happens, or the opposite of what is expected happens: *People are dying from taking this drug, and the irony is that the drug is supposed to save lives.*

**2** a form of humor in which you say something using words that are the opposite of what you really mean

—**ironic** /aɪ'rənɪk/ adjective relating to irony: *It's ironic that he moved all the way to Alaska and then married a girl he met there who comes from his home town.* | *ironic comments*

### **ir·ra·tion·al** /ɪ'ræʃənəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

irrational feelings, behavior, reasons, etc. are not sensible or reasonable because they are not based on clear thinking: *I know my fear of dogs is irrational, but I can't stop being afraid.* **ANTONYM** **rational**

—**irrationally** adverb: *He was given the drug because he was behaving irrationally and could not be controlled.*

### **ir·reg·u·lar** /ɪ'regyələ/ adjective, formal

**1** not happening at times that are an equal distance apart: *The test showed that she*

*had an irregular heartbeat and needed medical treatment.*

**2** not happening or done at the normal time or at the same time every day, week, month, etc.: *Actors work irregular hours; often a movie will be filmed in the middle of the night.*

**3** having a shape, surface, etc. that is not even or smooth: *the irregular edges of a piece of broken glass*

**4** an irregular verb or noun does not change in the normal way when you use them in the past tense, the plural, etc.: *"Go" is an irregular verb and "deer" is an irregular noun.*

—**irregularly** adverb

### **ir·reg·u·lar·i·ty** /ɪ'regyə'lærəti/ noun

plural **irregularities** formal

**1** a situation in which the normal rules or laws have not been followed: *City officials closed the club because of financial irregularities.*

**2** a situation in which something does not happen regularly in the way it should: *The drug can cause irregularities in your heartbeat.*

### **ir·rel·e·vant** /ɪ'reləvənt/ **[Ac]** adjective

not useful or not relating to a particular situation, and therefore not important: *We know he can do the job, so his age is irrelevant (=it does not matter how old he is).*

**ANTONYM** **relevant**

—**irrelevance** noun the quality of being irrelevant

### **ir·re·sist·i·ble** /ɪ'rɪ'zɪstəbəl/ adjective

**1** if someone or something is irresistible, he, she, or it is so attractive that you cannot stop yourself from wanting him, her, or it: *The cake looks irresistible. I can't wait to try it.* | *He thinks he's irresistible to women, but actually very few women find him attractive.*

**2** too strong or powerful to be stopped: *She suddenly felt an irresistible urge to cry and tears began to flow down her face.*

—**irresistibly** adverb

### **ir·re·spon·si·ble** /ɪ'rɪ'spənsəbəl/

adjective

behaving in a careless way, without thinking about the bad results that might happen: *It was irresponsible to go out and leave the kids alone.*

—**irresponsibly** adverb



—**irresponsibility** /ˌɪrɪˌspɑnsəˈbɪləti/ *noun*  
the quality of being irresponsible

**ir·ri·gate** /ˈɪrəˌgeɪt/ *verb*

to supply water to land or crops: *Egyptian farmers used water from the Nile to irrigate their land.*

—**irrigation** /ˌɪrəˈgeɪʃən/ *noun* the process of supplying land or crops with water

**ir·ri·ta·ble** /ˈɪrətəbəl/ *adjective*

an irritable person gets annoyed or angry very easily: *He's always irritable in the morning, so it's best not to talk to him then.*

—**irritably** *adverb*

—**irritability** /ˌɪrətəˈbɪləti/ *noun* the fact that someone is irritable

**ir·ri·tate** /ˈɪrəˌteɪt/ *verb*

**1** to make someone angry or annoyed: *His bad jokes are starting to irritate me.*

**2** to make a part of your body painful and sore: *Cigarette smoke irritates your lungs, making you cough.*

—**irritating** *adjective* making you feel angry or annoyed

—**irritated** *adjective* feeling angry or annoyed

—**irritant** *noun* something that keeps you angry or annoyed for a long period of time

—**irritation** /ˌɪrəˈteɪʃən/ *noun* the feeling of being angry or annoyed

**IRS** *noun*

**the IRS = the Internal Revenue Service** the government organization in the U.S. that deals with taxes

**is** /z, s, əz; strong ɪz/

the third person singular of the present tense of BE

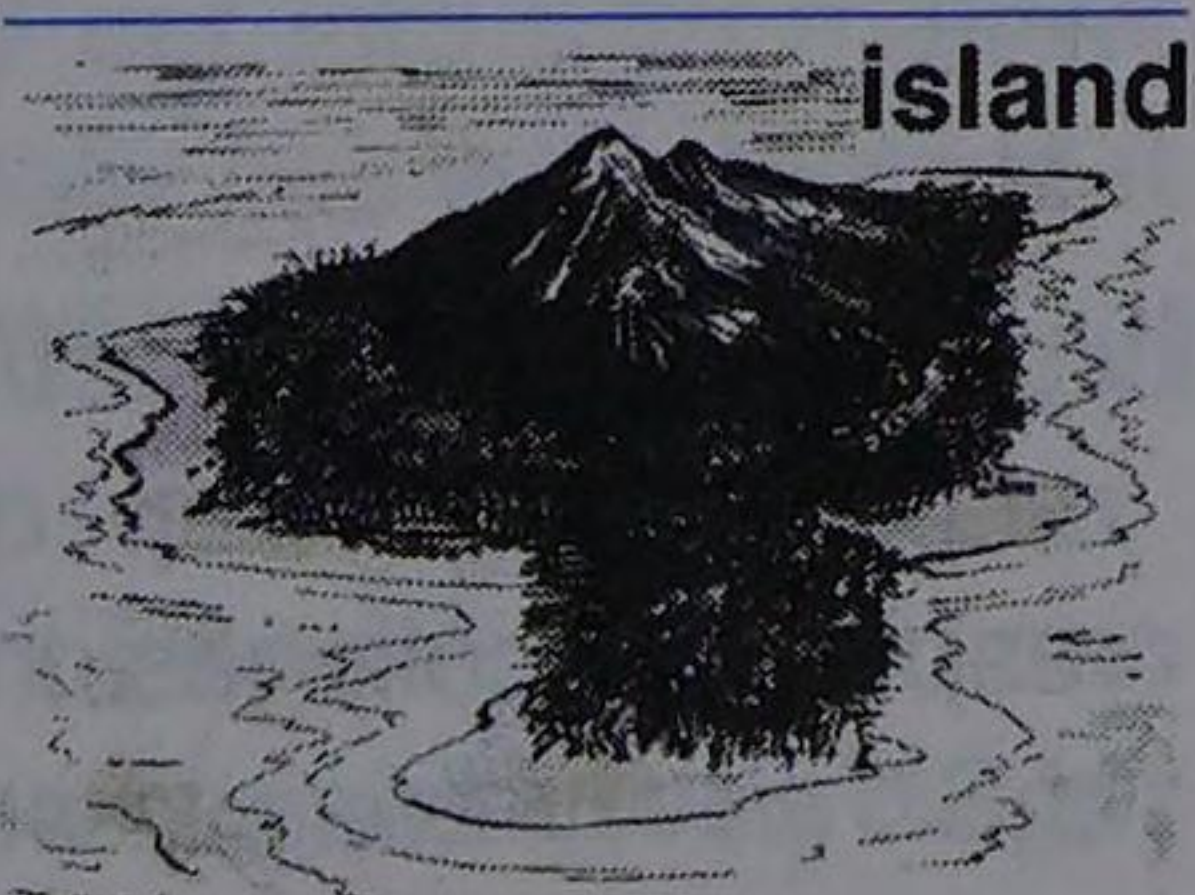
**Is·lam** /ˈɪzlɑm/ *noun*

the Muslim religion which was started by Muhammad and whose holy book is the Koran

—**Islamic** /ɪzˈlɑmɪk/ *adjective* relating to the religion of Islam or to Muslim people and countries: *Their system is based on Islamic law.*

**is·land** /ˈaɪlənd/ *noun*

a piece of land completely surrounded by water: *a small island off the coast of Florida* |



*You can take the ferry to Staten Island. | They live on the island and have to take a boat to the mainland.*

**isle** /aɪl/ *noun, formal*

an island: *a desert isle* | *the Isle of Skye*

**is·n't** /ˈɪzənt/ *verb*

the short form of “is not”: *He isn't here right now, but he'll be back in an hour.*

**i·so·late** /ˈaɪsəˌleɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb*

to keep one person or thing separate from others: *The heavy snow has completely isolated the mountain town. | If a puppy becomes sick, isolate it from the other puppies, and call the vet.*

**i·so·lat·ed** /ˈaɪsəˌleɪtɪd/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

**1** far away from other things: *They lived on an isolated farm and had no neighbors.*

**2** feeling alone or unable to meet or speak to other people: *Yes, I did feel isolated when we first moved to the new neighborhood.*

**3** an isolated action or event happens only once and is not likely to happen again: *The attack is not an isolated incident – there were two other attacks earlier this week.*

**is·sue¹** /ˈɪʃu/ **[Ac]** *noun*

**1** a subject or problem that people discuss: *The cost of health care is an issue that affects everyone. | At the next meeting, we should raise the issue (=begin to discuss it).*

**2** a magazine or newspaper that is sold on a particular day, week, month, or year: *The article is in this month's issue of the magazine.*

**issue²** *verb, formal*

**1** to make an official statement, or to give an order or a warning: *The mayor issued a statement saying that two of the schools would close.*

**2** to officially provide someone with documents or equipment: *The U.S. will not issue a visa to people with a criminal record.*

**it** /ɪt/ *pronoun*

**1** used to talk about something you have already mentioned or something that the person you are talking to already knows about: *“Did you bring your umbrella?” “No, I left it at home.” | “Where's the bread?” “It's (=it is) on the shelf.” | Don't get angry with me. It wasn't my fault.*



**2** used to talk about the situation that someone is in now: *I can't stand it any longer. I'm leaving.*

**3** used as the subject or object of a sentence when the real subject or object is later in the sentence: *It costs less to drive than to take the bus.*

**4** used with the verb "be" to talk about the weather, time, distance, etc.: *It's cold today. | It was late by the time we got home. | It's not far to the beach from here.*

**5** used in order to talk about a child or animal when you do not know what sex he or she is: *"Marilyn had a baby." "Is it a boy or girl?"*

## IT noun

**information technology** the study or use of computers and other electronic equipment to store and process information

## i·tal·ics /ɪ'tælɪks/ plural noun

a style of printed letters that lean to the right: *The examples in this dictionary are written in italics.*

—**italic** adjective: *italic type*

## itch /ɪtʃ/ noun

**1** an unpleasant feeling on your skin that makes you want to rub it with your nails: *I have an itch on my back – can you scratch it for me?*

**2** informal a strong desire to do or have something: *I've got this itch to go to Australia. I think it would be a lot of fun.*

—**itch** verb to feel an itch: *My arms itched where the wool touched them.*

## itch·y /'ɪtʃi/ adjective

if your skin is itchy, it feels unpleasant in a way that makes you want to rub your nails across it: *My skin felt dry and itchy.*

## it'd /'ɪtəd/

**1** the short form of "it would": *It'd be more fun if we both went.*

**2** the short form of "it had": *It'd been a warm summer, but now it was growing cooler.*

## i·tem /'aɪtəm/ **Ac** noun

**1** a single thing in a set, group, or list: *There were several items of clothing on the floor. | I checked every item on the list.*

**2** a single piece of news in a newspaper, on television, or on the radio: *I heard a news item about his arrest on the radio.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **thing**

## i·tin·er·ar·y /aɪ'tɪnə,ri/ noun plural

### itineraries

a plan or list of the places you will visit on a trip: *The first place on our itinerary is Las Vegas, and after that we go to the Grand Canyon.*

## it'll /'ɪtɪ/

the short form of "it will": *It'll be fun, I promise.*

## it's /ɪts/

**1** the short form of "it is": *It's snowing!*

**2** the short form of "it has": *It's been so hot all week.*

## its /ɪts/ adjective

belonging to thing, animal, or baby that has been mentioned: *The dog was barking and wagging its tail. | The school has had some problems with its computer systems. | A baby is totally dependent on its parents.*

## it·self /ɪt'self/ pronoun

**1** the REFLEXIVE form of "it", used to say that a thing, animal, or baby is affected by its own actions: *The cat was licking itself. | Our country has the right to defend itself.*

**2** **in itself** = only the thing mentioned, and not anything else: *You finished the race, and that in itself is fantastic, even if you didn't win.*

**3** used to emphasize a particular thing: *The acting is good, but the movie itself is a little slow.*

## I've /aɪv/

the short form of "I have": *I've never been to New York.*

## i·vo·ry /'aɪvəri/ noun

the hard smooth white substance that the TUSKS (=long teeth) of an ELEPHANT are made of

—**ivory** adjective made of ivory: *an ivory bracelet*

## i·vy /'aɪvi/ noun

a plant with dark green shiny leaves that grows up the walls of buildings: *They lived in a large old brick house, with ivy covering the walls.*

→ **poison ivy**

## 'Ivy League adjective

relating to a group of eight important and respected colleges in the northeast of the U.S.: *an Ivy League school*



# Jj

**jab<sup>1</sup>** /dʒæb/ verb jabbed, jabbing

to push something pointed into or toward something else using short quick movements: *Mom, Laurie just jabbed her finger in my eye!*

**jab<sup>2</sup>** noun

a sudden hard push with a pointed object or with your hand, finger, etc.: *I gave him a jab in the ribs with my finger to get his attention.*

**jack** /dʒæk/ noun

**1** a piece of equipment used for lifting something heavy, such as a car: *I got the jack out of the car and started to change the flat tire.*

**2** a card used in card games which has a picture of a young man on it: *the jack of clubs*

**jack-al** /'dʒækəl/ noun

a wild animal like a dog that lives in Africa and Asia

**jack-et** /'dʒækɪt/ noun

a short light coat: *a black leather jacket* | *He took off his suit jacket and sat down to eat.*

→ See picture on page A6

**jack-ham-mer** /'dʒæk,hæmər/ noun

a large powerful tool used for breaking hard materials such as the surface of a road

**'jack-in-the-box** noun

a toy shaped like a box with a toy person or animal inside that comes out on a SPRING when the lid of the box opens

**jack-knife** /'dʒæknaɪf/ noun plural

**jackknives** /'dʒæknaɪvz/

a knife with a blade that folds into its handle

**jack-o'-lan-tern** /'dʒæk ə ,læntən/

noun

a PUMPKIN with holes cut into it to make it look like a face. It usually has a light inside it and is used at HALLOWEEN.

**jack-pot** /'dʒækpɒt/ noun

**1** a very large amount of money that you can win in a game: *If you win the jackpot, you get \$55 million.*

**2 hit the jackpot** = to win a lot of money or be very lucky: *He hit the jackpot when he married Kim – she's just right for him.*

**Ja-cuz-zi** /dʒə'kuzi/ noun, trademark

an object like a large heated bathtub for several people to sit in. It makes bubbles that help to relax your muscles.

**jade** /dʒeɪd/ noun

a green stone used especially for making jewelry

**jag-ged** /'dʒæɡɪd/ adjective

having a rough uneven edge with a lot of sharp points: *The jagged rocks along the coast are a danger to ships.*

**jag-uar** /'dʒæɡwɑː/ noun

a large wild cat with yellow fur and black spots that lives mainly in Central and South America

**jail** /dʒeɪl/ noun

a place where criminals are sent as a punishment for a crime: *He was sentenced to 10 years in jail* (=the judge said he must spend 10 years in jail). | *You could go to jail for doing that.* | *a two-year jail sentence* **SYNONYM** prison

—**jail** verb to put someone in prison: *The judge jailed him for two years for stealing cars.*

**jam<sup>1</sup>** /dʒæm/ verb jammed, jamming

**1** to push something into a small space using a lot of force: *I jammed all the books I needed into my backpack.*

**2** if a machine jams, it stops working because a part of it stops moving: *Every time I try to use the copy machine it jams and I have to get someone to repair it.*

**3 informal** if a lot of people or things jam a place, they completely fill it and it is difficult for them to move: *It was 5:00 p.m. and the freeway was jammed with cars.*

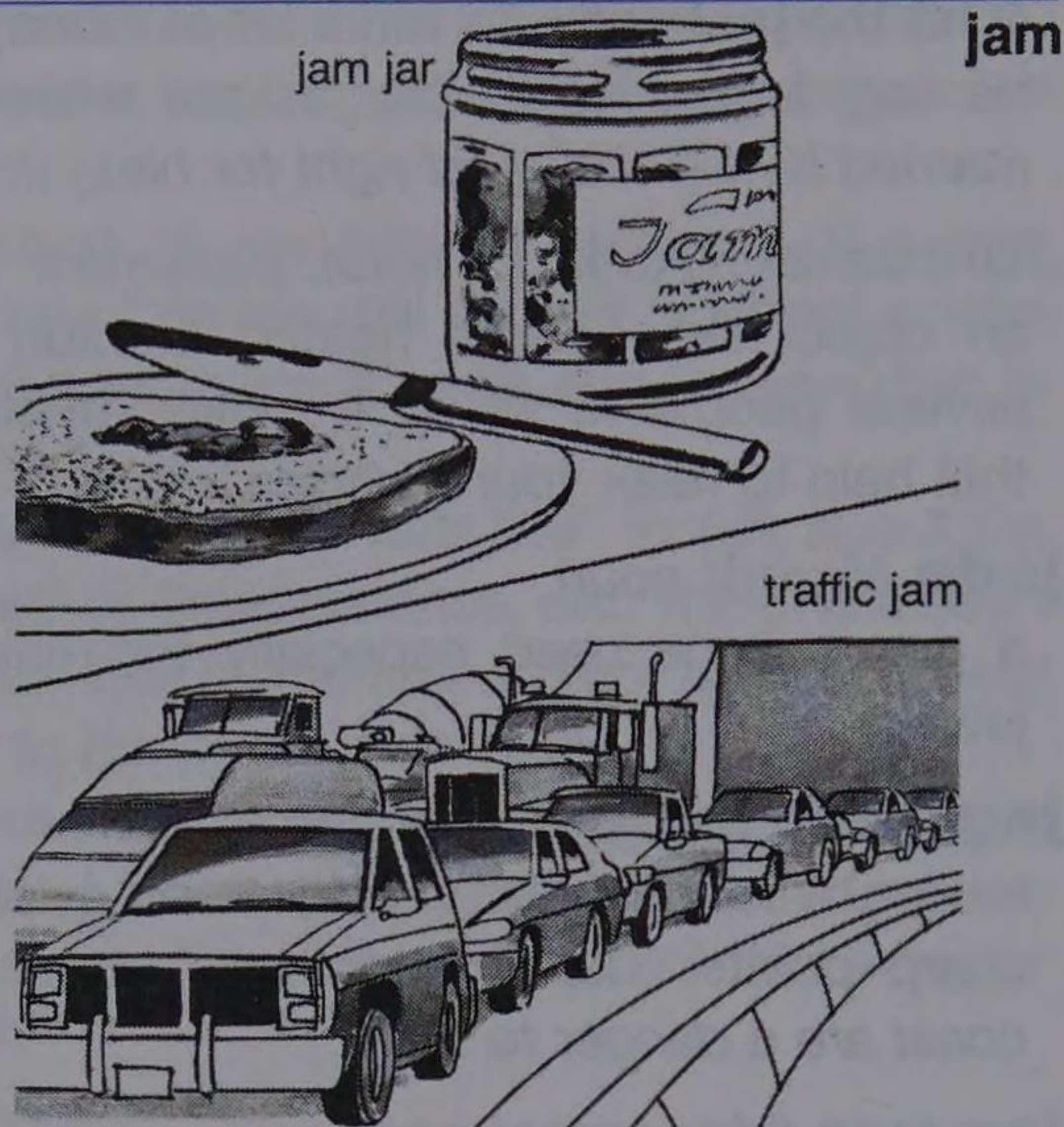
**4** if a door jams, it is stuck and will not open or close: *The bathroom door had jammed, trapping her inside.*

**jam<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a thick sticky sweet food made from fruit that you eat on bread. Jam has small pieces of fruit in it: *an English muffin with butter and jam*

**2 be in a jam/get into a jam informal** = to be or become involved in a difficult or bad





situation: *Sarah, I'm in a jam – could you help me out?*

**3** a situation in which something is stuck somewhere: *There is a paper jam in the fax machine.*

→ **traffic jam**

**jam-'packed** *adjective, informal*  
completely full of people or things: *The mall was jam-packed with people shopping on the weekend.*

**jan·i·tor** /'dʒænətər/ *noun*  
someone whose job is to clean and take care of a large building: *the school janitor*  
SYNONYM **custodian**

**Jan·u·ar·y** /'dʒænyu,eri/ *noun, written abbreviation Jan.*  
the first month of the year, between December and February: *We got married on January 12, 2000. | It's very cold here in January. | We moved to Texas last January. | Jack's coming to visit next January.*

**Jap·a·nese<sup>1</sup>** /,dʒæpə'niz/ *adjective*  
from Japan: *Japanese students*

**Japanese<sup>2</sup>** *noun*  
**1** the language used in Japan  
**2** the **Japanese** = the people of Japan

**jar** /dʒər/ *noun*  
a round glass container with a lid, used for storing food: *He kept cookies in a jar on his desk. | a jar of peanut butter*

**jar·gon** /'dʒɑrgən/ *noun*  
technical words and phrases that people doing the same type of work use, which other people find difficult to understand:

*Legal jargon can be confusing.*  
→ See Thesaurus box at **language**

**jav·e·lin** /'dʒævəlɪn/ *noun*  
**1** the **javelin** = a sport in which you throw a long pointed stick as far as you can  
**2** the long pointed stick used in this sport

**jaw** /dʒɔ/ *noun*  
the bottom part of your face that contains the two bones which your teeth are in: *He punched Ted in the jaw.*  
→ See picture on page A2

**jay·walk·ing** /'dʒeɪ,wɒkɪŋ/ *noun*  
the act of walking across a street at a place where it is dangerous to cross: *The police officer fined me for jaywalking and told me to cross at the corner.*  
—**jaywalker** *noun* some who walks across a street at a place where it is dangerous to cross  
—**jaywalk** *verb*

**jazz** /dʒæz/ *noun*  
a type of music that started in the early 1900s and has developed and changed many times since then. It is usually played in groups, but performers often IMPROVISE (=play something new based on the tune that the band plays): *He began listening to jazz when he moved to New Orleans.*

**jeal·ous** /'dʒeləs/ *adjective*  
**1** feeling unhappy because someone else has something that you wish you had: *He was jealous of his brother's nice car.* SYNONYM **envious**  
**2** feeling angry or unhappy because the person you love likes another person, or another person likes the person you love: *It makes me jealous when my boyfriend dances with other women. | a jealous husband*

—**jealousy** *noun* a feeling of being jealous  
→ See picture on page A23

**jeans** /dʒinz/ *noun*  
pants made from DENIM (=a strong, usually blue, cotton cloth): *She was wearing a pair of jeans and a T-shirt.*  
→ See picture on page A6

**Jeep** /dʒip/ *noun, trademark*  
a type of car made for traveling over rough ground



**jeer** /dʒɪr/ verb

to laugh and shout rude things at someone in order to show that you do not respect him or her: *The crowd began to jeer at the soldiers and throw rocks.*

—**jeer** noun something rude that you shout at someone

**Je·ho·vah's Wit·ness** /dʒɪˌhoʊvəz 'wɪtnəs/ noun

a member of a religious organization that believes the end of the world will happen soon and sends its members to people's houses to try to persuade them to join

**Jell-o** /'dʒelou/ noun, trademark

a soft sweet food, made from fruit juice, that shakes when you move it

**jel·ly** /'dʒeli/ noun

a thick sticky sweet food made from fruit that you eat on bread: *a peanut butter and jelly sandwich*

**jel·ly·bean** /'dʒeliˌbin/ noun

a small soft candy that is shaped like a bean. Jellybeans come in different colors and flavors.

**jel·ly·fish** /'dʒeliˌfɪʃ/ noun

a sea animal that has a round transparent body with parts hanging down that can sting you

**jeop·ard·ize** /'dʒepəˌdaɪz/ verb, formal

to risk losing or destroying something that is valuable or important: *The injury could jeopardize his career in football.*

**jerk**<sup>1</sup> /dʒɜːk/ verb

to move with a sudden quick movement: *She fell over when the train jerked forward.* | *"Don't touch me," she said, jerking her arm away.*

**jerk**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** informal someone, especially a man, who does stupid or annoying things: *Your brother's a real jerk – he says such rude things!*

**2** a sudden quick movement: *The car stopped with a jerk, and I hit my forehead on the windshield.*

—**jerky** adjective stopping and starting suddenly and roughly: *The elevator's jerky movements frightened me.*

**jer·sey** /'dʒɜːzi/ noun plural jerseys

a shirt worn as part of a sports uniform: *The team was wearing red and white jerseys.*

**Je·sus** /'dʒɪzəs/ also **Jesus 'Christ**

the person who Christians believe was the son of God, and whose life and ideas Christianity is based on

**jet** /dʒet/ noun

**1** a fast airplane with a special type of engine that pushes out hot gases: *Military jets flew overhead.*

**2** a thin stream of liquid or gas that comes out of a small hole very quickly: *The fountain has a jet of water spraying from the top.*

**'jet lag** noun

the feeling of being very tired after traveling a long distance in an airplane to a part of the world where the time is different

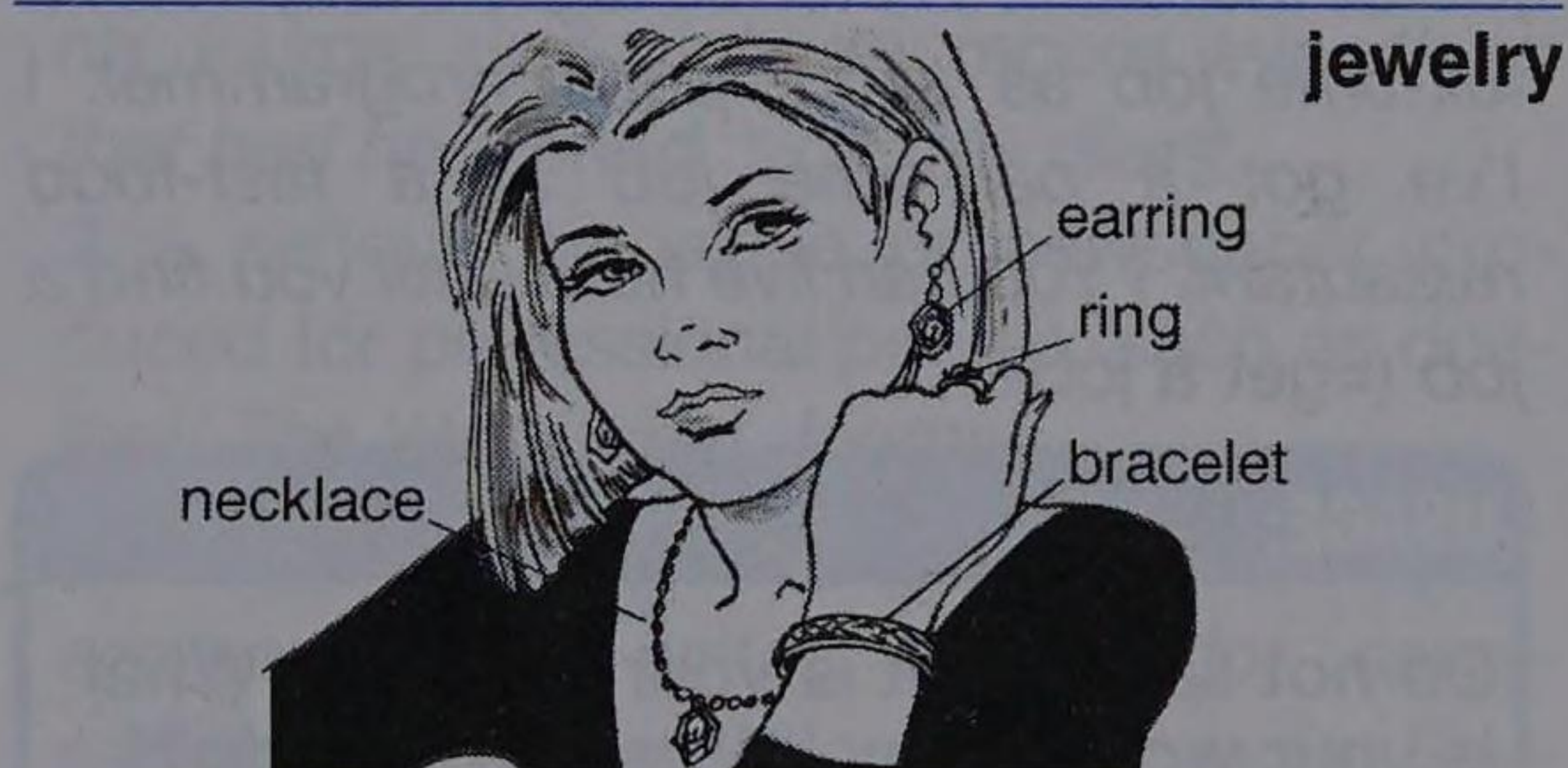
—**jet-lagged** adjective feeling the effects of jet lag

**jew·el** /'dʒuəl/ noun

a small valuable stone, such as a DIAMOND

**jew·el·er** /'dʒuələ/ noun

someone who buys, sells, makes, or repairs jewelry



jewelry

**jew·el·ry** /'dʒuəlri/ noun

small things that you wear for decoration, such as rings and NECKLACES: *She was wearing a gold necklace and other expensive jewelry.* | *a beautiful piece of jewelry*

**jew·els** /'dʒuəlz/ plural noun

another word for jewelry

**Jew·ish** /'dʒuɪʃ/ adjective

relating to Judaism

—**Jew** noun someone whose religion is Judaism

**jig·gle** /'dʒɪɡəl/ verb jiggled, jiggling informal

to move from side to side with short quick movements: *I jiggled the baby up and down on my knee.* | *His big belly jiggled when he laughed.*

**jig·saw puz·zle** /'dʒɪɡsoʊ ˌpʌzəl/ also puzzle noun

many small pieces of shaped wood or CARDBOARD that have pieces of a picture on



them. You try to fit the pieces together to make the whole picture

**jin·gle** /'dʒɪŋɡəl/ verb

to shake small metal objects together so that they produce a noise: *Lucy jingled the keys in front of the kitten to get its attention. I could hear coins jingling in his pocket.*

**jinx<sup>1</sup>** /dʒɪŋks/ noun

someone or something that brings bad luck

**jinx<sup>2</sup>** verb

to make someone have bad luck: *I don't want to talk about winning – I'm afraid I'll jinx myself.*

—**jinxed** adjective having a lot of bad luck

**job** /dʒəb/ **Ac** noun

**1** work that you do regularly in order to earn money: *Dad's always telling me to get a job and earn some money. I have applied for a job at the bank. I After college, Cathy took a full-time job as a computer programmer. I I've got a part-time job at a fast-food restaurant. I You can live here until you find a job (=get a job).*

**USAGE: job**

Do not say "What is your job?" or "What is your work?" Say "**What do you do?**" or "**What kind of work do you do?**"

**THESAURUS: job**

Your **job** is the particular work you do regularly to earn money: *I got a job in a music store.*

**Work** is used in a more general way to talk about the job you do: *What kind of work do you do?*

**Position** is a more formal word for a job in a particular organization: *He was offered a teaching position at the college.*

**Occupation** is a formal word used mainly on official forms to mean your **job**: *Please give your name, age, and occupation.*

A **profession** is a job for which you need special education and training: *the legal profession*

Your **career** is the work you do for most of your life: *I'm interested in a career in journalism.*

A **vocation** is formal word for a job that you do because you enjoy it and because you feel you are the right type of person to do it: *Nursing was both my job and my vocation.*

→ **work**

**2 on the job** = while at work, or while doing your job: *He was injured on the job, so his employer paid for his treatment.*

**3** something that you are responsible for doing: *It's my job to watch my little brother.*

**4** something that you have to do without being paid: *I have a lot of little jobs to do at home this weekend, like cleaning out the garage.* **SYNONYM task**

**5 do a good/great/bad, etc. job** = to do something well or badly: *You did a great job on the picture – it really looks like Sarah.*

**jock·ey** /'dʒəki/ noun

someone who rides horses in races

**jog** /dʒəg/ verb jogged, jogging

to run at a slow steady speed for exercise: *Julie jogs in the park every morning.*

—**jog** noun a slow steady run

—**jogging** noun the activity of running at a slow steady speed: *I went jogging around the neighborhood at about 6 a.m.*

—**jogger** noun someone who jogs

→ See picture on page A4

**join** /dʒɔɪn/ verb

**1** to become a member of an organization, society, or group: *He joined the army when he was nineteen. I We haven't lost a game since Vince joined the team.*

**2 also join in** to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in: *Other kids started to join in the laughter. I More police arrived to join the search.*

**3** to go somewhere in order to do something with someone else: *Why don't you join us for dinner?*

**4** to do something with other people, as a group: *Please join with me in welcoming tonight's speaker.*

**5** to be connected or fastened together: *This is where the two rivers join to form the Ohio River.*

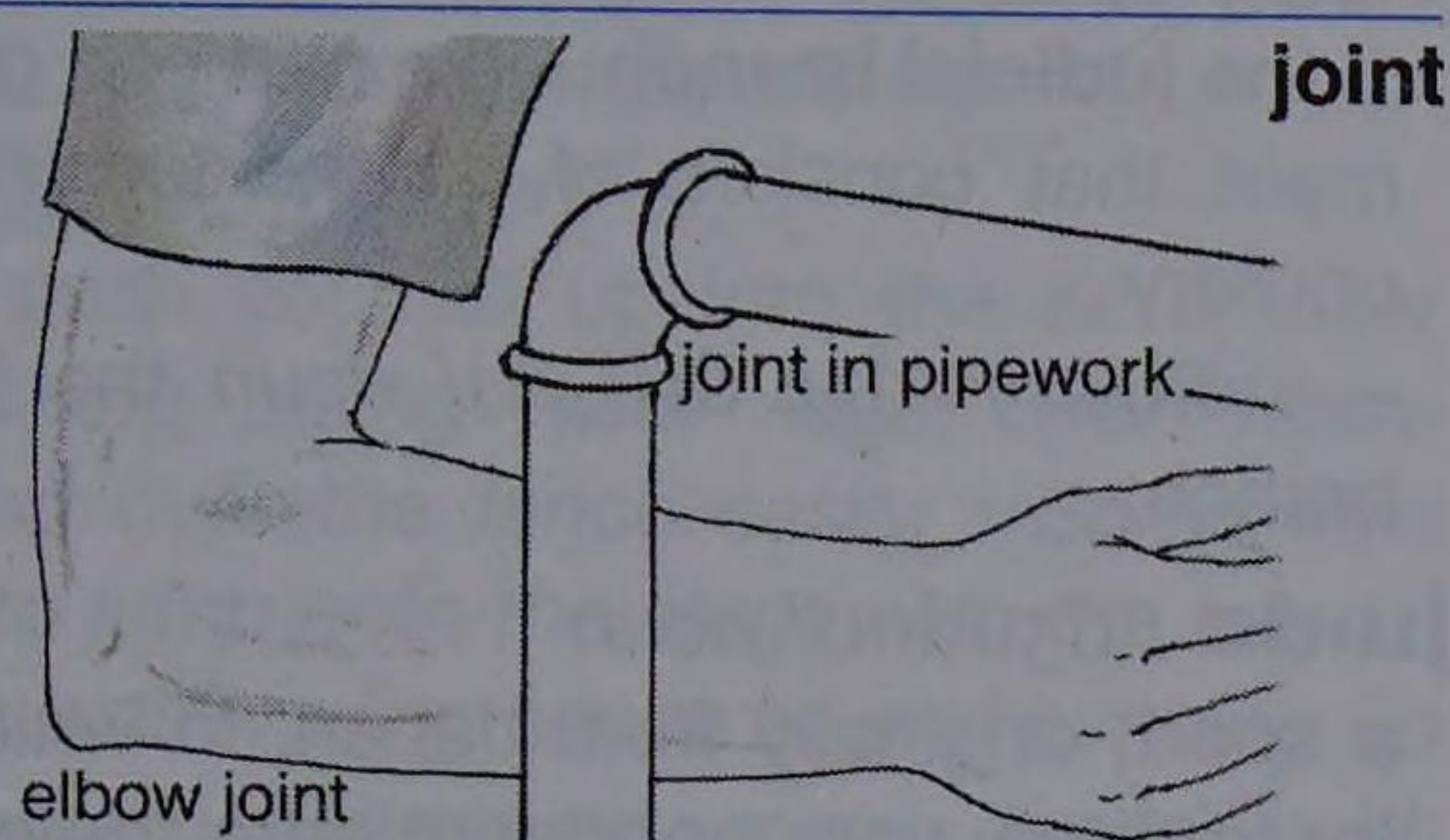
**joint<sup>1</sup>** /dʒɔɪnt/ adjective

involving two or more people, or owned or shared by two or more people: *The two Senators had a joint news conference. I My husband and I have a joint bank account and*



we both put our pay into it.

—**jointly** *adverb*: The company is jointly owned by two big software makers.



## **joint**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a part of the body where two bones meet, that can bend: *the elbow joint*

**2** *informal* a cheap restaurant or club: *She works in a hamburger joint.*

**3** a place where two parts of something are connected or joined together: *One of the pipe joints was leaking.*

## **joke**<sup>1</sup> /dʒoʊk/ *noun*

**1** something funny that you say to make people laugh: *We laughed and told jokes all night. | Don't make jokes about your mother!*

**2** **be a joke** *informal* = to be completely stupid or unreasonable: *I thought his idea was a joke, but the teacher loved it.*

### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **joke** *noun*
- **joke** *verb*
- **joker** *noun*
- **jokingly** *adverb*

## **joke**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to say things that are intended to be funny: *I saw him in the hall talking and joking with my girlfriend.*

—**jokingly** *adverb*

—**joker** *noun* someone who likes to tell jokes and make people laugh

## **jol·ly** /'dʒɒli/ *adjective* **jollier, jolliest**

happy and friendly: *Santa Claus is a jolly old man with a long white beard.*

## **jolt**<sup>1</sup> /dʒoʊlt/ *noun*

**1** a sudden strong feeling, especially surprise, shock, or excitement: *The news came as a jolt to the whole family.*

**2** a sudden rough or violent movement: *The car hit the tree with a jolt.*

## **jolt**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to make something move suddenly and roughly: *The earthquake jolted southern California.*

**2** to give someone a sudden shock: *She was jolted awake by a loud bang.*

## **jostle** /'dʒɒsl/ *verb*

to push roughly against other people in a crowd, usually so that you can get somewhere or do something before them: *People in the crowd jostled for a better view of the field.*

## **jot** /dʒɒt/ *verb* jotted, jotting

### PHRASAL VERB

### **jot something down**

to write something quickly on a piece of paper: *I jotted down her address and phone number.*

## **jour·nal** /'dʒɜːnl/ **Ac** *noun*

**1** a book in which you write about the things that happen to you each day, your thoughts and opinions, etc.: *He wrote several pages in his journal that night to record everything that had happened.* **SYNONYM** *diary*

**2** a serious magazine or newspaper produced for professional people, such as doctors: *The Wall Street Journal*

## **jour·nal·ist** /'dʒɜːnlist/ *noun*

someone who writes reports for newspapers, magazines, television, or radio: *Several journalists asked the president the same question.* **SYNONYM** *reporter*

—**journalism** *noun* the job or activity of writing reports for newspapers, magazines, television, or radio: *During his career in journalism he has worked for newspapers and on television.*

→ See picture on page A16

## **jour·ney** /'dʒɜːni/ *noun*

a trip from one place to another, especially over a long distance: *Columbus's journey from Spain to the New World | The book is about the two men's journey across North America.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **travel**<sup>2</sup>

## **joy** /dʒɔɪ/ *noun*

**1** a feeling of great happiness and pleasure: *Tears of joy and relief rolled down her cheek. | You could see the joy on the kids' faces when they saw the puppies.*

**2** something or someone that gives you



happiness or pleasure: *The car is a joy to drive.*

—**joyful** *adjective* very happy or likely to make people happy: *The birth of a child is a joyful experience.*

—**joyous** *adjective* very happy or likely to make people happy: *The day she came home from the hospital was a joyous occasion for the family.*

**joy-stick** /'dʒɔɪstɪk/ *noun*

a handle that you use to control an aircraft or a computer game

**Jr.**

the written abbreviation of **Junior**

**Ju-da-ism** /'dʒʊdɪˌɪzəm/ *noun*

the Jewish religion based on books called the Hebrew Scriptures, which include many of the books that are in the Old Testament of the Christian BIBLE

**judge**<sup>1</sup> /dʒʌdʒ/ *noun*

**1** the person in control of a court who decides how criminals should be punished: *The judge gave Simmons six years in jail for the crime.*

**2** someone who decides the result of a competition: *the judges at the Olympic ice skating competition*

**3 a good/bad, etc. judge of something** = someone whose opinion about something is usually right or wrong: *My father is a good judge of character* (=he can judge whether someone is a good, bad, etc. person).

→ See picture on page A16

**judge**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to decide something or form an opinion about someone or something: *You should not judge people by the color of their skin. | Judging from her expression, I'd say she was angry. | You will be judged on how many correct answers you give.*

**2** to decide the result of a competition: *Kim and I will be judging the writing competition.*

**judg-ment** also **judgement** /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ *noun*

**1** an opinion that you reach after thinking about something: *It's too early to make a judgment; we need more information.*

**2** the ability to make decisions about situations or people: *I trust your judgment, and I know you will make the right decision.*

**3** an official decision made by a judge or a court of law: *the court's final judgment*

**ju-di-cial** /dʒu'dɪʃəl/ *adjective, formal*

**1** relating to a court of law, a judge, or a judge's decisions: *the court's judicial authority*

**2 the judicial branch** = the part of a government that consists of all the judges in a country

—**judiciary** /dʒu'dɪʃi,eri/ *noun* the judicial branch

**ju-do** /'dʒʊdʊ/ *noun*

a sport, originally from Japan, in which you try to throw your opponent onto the ground

**jug** /dʒʌg/ *noun*

a large deep container for liquids that has a narrow opening and a handle: *a jug of water*

**jug-gle** /'dʒʌgəl/ *verb*

**1** to keep three or more objects moving through the air by throwing and catching them so that one or more of them is always in the air: *He threw three tennis balls into the air and started juggling them.*

**2** to try to do two or more jobs, activities, etc. at the same time: *He has to juggle three jobs to support his family.*

—**juggler** *noun* someone who juggles objects in the air

**juice** /dʒʊs/ *noun*

**1** the liquid that comes from fruit and vegetables, or a drink made from this: *a glass of orange juice*

**2** the liquid that comes out of meat when it is cooked

**juic-y** /'dʒʊsi/ *adjective* **juicier, juiciest**

containing a lot of juice: *a juicy peach*

—**juiciness** *noun*

**juke-box** /'dʒʊk,baks/ *noun*

a machine that plays music when you put money in it. Jukeboxes are usually in places such as bars and restaurants.

**Ju-ly** /dʒʊ'laɪ/ *noun, written abbreviation Jul.*

the seventh month of the year, between June and August: *Her birthday is on July 9. | Henry started working here in July. | We went to Seattle last July. | Next July is my mom's 40th birthday.*

**jum-ble** /'dʒʌmbəl/ *noun*

a group of things mixed together in a messy way: *There was a jumble of books and magazines next to his bed.*



—**jumble** verb to mix things together in a messy way

**jum-bo** /'dʒʌmbou/ adjective

larger than other things of the same type: *I ordered a plate of jumbo shrimp.*

**jump**<sup>1</sup> /dʒʌmp/ verb

**1** to push yourself up into the air or over something using your legs: *Her horse jumped over the fence easily.* | *Some fans tried to jump onto the stage with the band.* | *Karen was waving her arms and jumping up and down (=jumping many times) with excitement.*

### THESAURUS: jump

**skip** to move forward with little jumps between your steps: *Tammy skipped along ahead of her mother.*

**hop** to move by jumping on one leg: *For one race, we had to hop on one foot to the tree and back.*

**leap** to jump high into the air or to jump over something: *The dog leaped over the fence.*

**dive** to jump into water with your head and arms going in first: *The swimmers dived into the water at the sound of the whistle.*

**2** to drop down from a place that is above the ground: *The cat jumped down and came*

*to meet us.* | *Some kids were jumping off the wall.*

**3** to move somewhere quickly or suddenly: *Paul jumped up to help me with the grocery bags.*

**4** if an amount jumps, it increases suddenly and by a large amount: *The population of Arizona has jumped 500% since 1950.*

**5 make someone jump** = if something makes you jump, it frightens you and your body makes a sudden movement: *A branch touched my arm in the dark and made me jump.*

**6 jump to conclusions** = to form an opinion about something before you have all the facts: *Don't jump to conclusions – we don't have all the information yet.*

### PHRASAL VERB

#### jump at something

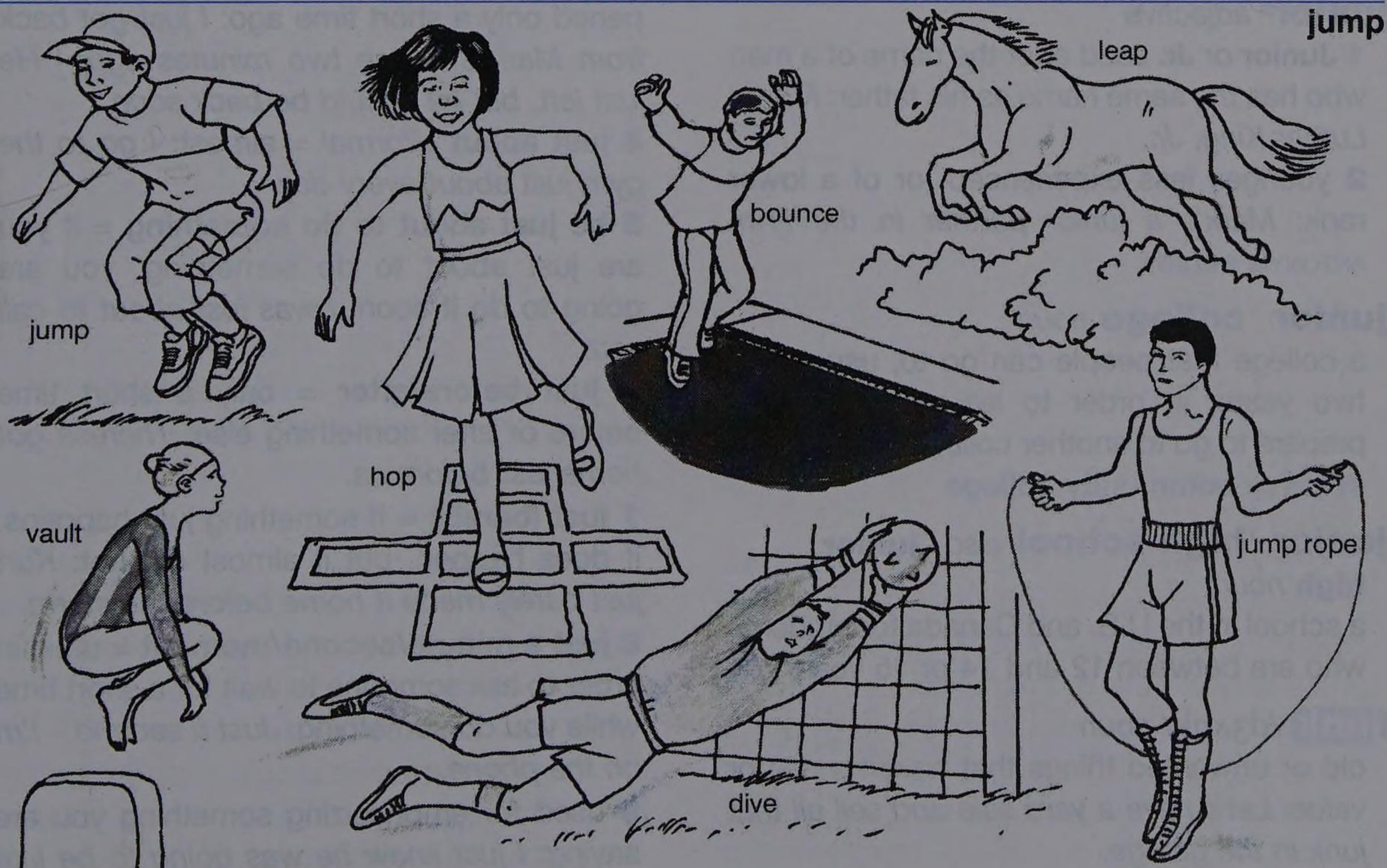
to eagerly accept the chance to do something: *Heidi jumped at the chance to go to Harvard.*

**jump**<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** a movement in which you push yourself up into the air using your legs

**2** a movement in which you drop from a place that is above the ground: *a parachute jump*

**3** a sudden large increase in an amount:





*There's been another big jump in gas prices; they went by up 20 cents.*

**jump-y** /'dʒʌmpi/ adjective

worried or nervous because you are expecting something bad to happen: *We'd heard that there might be an attack, and everyone was jumpy.* **SYNONYM** nervous

**junc-tion** /'dʒʌŋkʃən/ noun

a place where one road, track, etc. joins another: *The bakery is near the junction of Highland Avenue and Lowell Street.* **SYNONYM** intersection

**June** /dʒun/ noun, written abbreviation **Jun.**

the sixth month of the year, between May and July: *Can you come to our party on June 24? | Janet was born in June. | Last June I got my driver's license. | Dad's going to Europe next June.*

**jun-ple** /'dʒʌŋgəl/ noun

a tropical forest with many trees and large plants growing very close together: *Many unusual plants and animals are found in the Amazon jungle.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **tree**

**junior**<sup>1</sup> noun

a student in the third year of HIGH SCHOOL or college: *I'm a junior at Van Nuys High School.*

**junior**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1 Junior or Jr.** used after the name of a man who has the same name as his father: *Martin Luther King, Jr.*

**2** younger, less experienced, or of a lower rank: *Mark's a junior partner in the firm.*

**ANTONYM** senior

**junior 'college** noun

a college that people can go to, usually for two years, in order to learn a skill or to prepare to go to another college or university

**SYNONYM** community college

**junior 'high school** also **junior**

**'high** noun

a school in the U.S. and Canada for students who are between 12 and 14 or 15 years old

**junk** /dʒʌŋk/ noun

old or unwanted things that have no use or value: *Let's have a yard sale and sell all that junk in the garage.*

**'junk food** noun, informal

food that is not healthy because it has a lot of fat or sugar: *He just eats junk food like French fries and hamburgers.*

**junk-ie** /'dʒʌŋki/ noun

informal someone who is not able to stop taking illegal drugs such as HEROIN and COCAINE

**'junk mail** noun

mail that companies send to your house in order to advertise a product

→ See Thesaurus box at **advertisement**

**Ju-pi-ter** /'dʒupətə/ noun

the largest PLANET, which is fifth from the sun

**ju-ry** /'dʒʊri/ noun plural **juries**

a group of 12 people who listen to a case in court and decide whether someone is guilty of a crime

**just**<sup>1</sup> /dʒʌst/ adverb

**1** exactly: *My brother looks just like me. People are always thinking I'm him. | These pants fit just right. They're perfect. | Just then the bus came around the corner.*

**2** only: *You can't blame him, he's just a kid. | I'll be okay – I just need a good night's sleep. | He's making just enough money to pay his rent and bills, but he didn't have any left over.*

**3** if something has just happened, it happened only a short time ago: *I just got back from Maria's house two minutes ago. | He just left, but he should be back soon.*

**4 just about** informal = almost: *I go to the gym just about every day.*

**5 be just about to do something** = if you are just about to do something, you are going to do it soon: *I was just about to call you.*

**6 just before/after** = only a short time before or after something else: *Theresa got home just before us.*

**7 just (barely)** = if something just happens, it does happen, but it almost did not: *Kurt just barely made it home before the storm.*

**8 just a minute/second/moment** = used in order to ask someone to wait for a short time while you do something: *Just a second – I'm on the phone.*

**9** used for emphasizing something you are saying: *I just knew he was going to be late*



again. | Just be quiet, will you?

→ See Thesaurus box at **recently**

**just**<sup>2</sup> adjective, formal

morally right and fair: *He received a just punishment for his crimes.* **ANTONYM** unjust

**jus·tice** /'dʒʌstɪs/ noun

**1** the action of treating people in a way that is fair and right: *He murdered their daughter, and they want justice.* **ANTONYM** injustice

**2** the laws of a country and the way they are used: *the criminal justice system*

**3** a judge in a court of law: *a Supreme Court justice*

**justice of the 'peace** noun

someone who judges law cases that are not serious, and who can perform marriages

**jus·ti·fy** /'dʒʌstəfaɪ/ **Ac** verb justified,

third person singular justifies

to give a reason for doing something that other people think is not right: *How can you justify spending so much money on shoes,*

*when you can't pay the rent?*

—**justifiable** adjective an action that is justifiable is done for good reasons: *Can killing someone ever be justifiable?*

—**justification** /,dʒʌstəfə'keɪʃən/ noun a reason someone gives for doing something that other people think is wrong: *Her justification for taking the money was that the people she stole it from were rich.*

**ju·ve·nile** /'dʒuvənɪl/ adjective

relating to children younger than about 16. This word is used only in legal language: *There has been an increase in juvenile crime (=crimes done by young people).*

—**juvenile** noun a child younger than about 16

**juvenile de·linquent** noun, formal

a person under the age of 18 who breaks rules or laws: *Juvenile delinquents are sent to a special jail for young people.*



# Kk

## K /keɪ/

**1** informal 1,000: *He earns \$50K (= \$50,000) a year.*

**2** the written abbreviation of **kilometer**: *a 10K race*

**3** the written abbreviation of **kilobyte**

## kan·ga·roo /ˌkæŋgəˈru/ noun

an animal from Australia that has strong back legs that it uses to jump, and that carries its babies in a pocket of skin on its stomach

## ka·ra·te /kəˈrati/

noun

a sport from Japan in which you fight using your hands and feet to hit and kick

## kay·ak /ˈkaɪæk/

noun

a small closed boat with two pointed ends, for one or two people. You **PADDLE** (=move) it using a long stick with two large flat ends on both sides

## keen /kin/ adjective

very interested in something or wanting to do it: *He read the story with keen interest.*

—**keenly** adjective

## keep /kip/ verb kept /kept/

**1** to have something and not give it to anyone else or not get rid of it: *You can keep that sweater – it's too small for me. | I kept all his old letters.*

**2** to make someone or something continue to be in a place or situation: *The doctors kept him in the hospital for three days. | Put your coat on to keep warm.*

**3** **keep (on) doing something** = to continue doing something: *It was noisy, but she kept on reading.*

**4** to put something in the same place that



you always put it: *We keep the glasses in that cupboard there.*

**5** **keep a record/diary etc.** = to write down information regularly: *The teacher keeps a record of who was in class each day.*

**6** **keep your promise** = to do what you have promised to do: *He said he'd meet her at the restaurant, but he didn't keep his promise.*

**7** **keep a secret** = to not tell anyone something that you have promised not to tell: *"Can you keep a secret?" "Yes." "Well, Lisa really likes Danny, but don't tell her I told you."*

**8** if food keeps, it stays fresh enough to be eaten: *Eggs keep better in the refrigerator.*

**9** **Keep Out!** = used on signs to tell people that they are not allowed to go into a place

## PHRASAL VERB

### keep up

**1** to do something as fast or as well as someone else: *The little boy had to run to keep up with his sisters.*

**2** **keep something up** = to continue to do something: *Keep up the good work!*

## keep·er /ˈkipə/ noun

someone whose job is to take care of something: *a zookeeper*

## ken·nel /ˈkenl/ noun

a place where you can take your dog, so that someone will take care of it while you are away

## kept /kept/ verb

the past tense and past participle of **KEEP**

## ker·nel /ˈkənl/ noun

a seed that you can eat: *corn kernels*

## ker·o·sene /ˈkerə,sɪn/ noun

a type of oil that people burn for heat and light

## ketch·up /ˈketʃəp/ noun

a red sauce made from tomatoes that you can put on different foods, for example **HAMBURGERS**: *Do you want ketchup on your fries?*

## ket·tle /ˈketl/ noun

a metal container used for boiling and pouring water

## key¹ /ki/ noun

**1** a shaped piece of metal that you put into a lock to open or close it, or to start the engine of a car: *I can't find my car keys. | Do you have a key to the front door?*



**2** the part of a computer or machine that you press to make it work or to write words: *Use the Control and S keys to save your work.*

**3** the part of a musical instrument such as a piano that you press to make a sound: a piano key

**4** a set of musical notes with a particular base note: *The song was in the key of C.*

**5 the key** = the most important thing that helps you do something: *Exercise is the key to a healthy body.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **important**

→ See picture on page A20

## **key<sup>2</sup>** adjective

very important and needed for success: *She's a key player on the basketball team. We couldn't win without her.*

## **key-board** /'kibɔ:d/ noun

**1** all the keys on a computer, piano, machine, etc. that you press to make it work

**2** a musical instrument that is like a small electric piano

→ See picture on page A20

## **key-hole** /'kihoʊl/ noun

the hole in a lock that you put a key in

## **key ring** noun

a metal ring that you keep keys on

## **kg.**

the written abbreviation of **kilogram**

## **kha-ki** /'kæki/ noun

a light brown color

—**khaki** adjective

## **kha-kis** /'kækiz/ noun

pants that are a light brown color

## **kick<sup>1</sup>** /kɪk/ verb

**1** to hit something with your foot: *Juan kicked the ball into the goal.*

**2** to move your legs in the air: *The baby was kicking his legs.*

### **PHRASAL VERBS**

#### **kick off**

*informal* to start an event: *The Cubs kicked off the baseball season with a win against the Cincinnati Reds.*

#### **kick someone out** *informal*

to make someone leave a place: *Sean was kicked out of school for cheating.*

→ See picture on page A4

## **kick<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** an act of hitting something with your foot: *Evan's kick was good, and we scored the extra point.*

**2** *informal* a strong feeling of excitement or pleasure: *He gets a kick out of hearing the kids laugh at his jokes.*

## **kick-off** /'kɪk-ɔf/ noun

**1** the time when a game of football or SOCCER starts: *The stadium opens at 2:00 and kickoff is at 3:00.*

**2** the first kick in a game of football or SOCCER

## **kid<sup>1</sup>** /kɪd/ noun

**1** a child: *The kids were playing outside. | "Do you have any kids?" "Yes, I have two sons."*

**2** a young goat

→ See Thesaurus box at **child**

## **kid<sup>2</sup>** verb kidded, kidding *informal*

to say something as a joke: *"Did you really eat all those cookies?" "No, I was just kidding!" | "He's always late." "No kidding (=said when something could be a joke, but is true)." | "The bear came right into our campsite!" "You're kidding (=said when something is surprising but true)!"*

## **kid-nap** /'kɪdnæp/ verb kidnapped, kidnapping also kidnaped, kidnaping

to take someone away using force: *The group kidnapped the son of a rich man and asked for money.*

—**kidnapper** noun someone who kidnaps people

—**kidnapping** noun the crime of kidnapping people

## **kid-ney** /'kɪdni/ noun plural **kidneys**

a part of your body that cleans waste liquid from your blood. You have two kidneys, and they are inside your body close to your lower back.

→ See picture on page A2

## **kill** /kɪl/ verb

**1** to make a person, plant, or animal die: *Her son was killed in the war. | If you don't water the plants, you'll kill them.*

### **THESAURUS: kill**

**murder** to deliberately kill someone: *He murdered his wife.*



**commit manslaughter** to kill someone when you did not plan to do it: *The gun went off accidentally and killed his friend, so he was charged with committing manslaughter.*

**commit suicide** to deliberately kill yourself: *She committed suicide after her boyfriend left her.*

**assassinate** to deliberately kill an important person: *He tried to assassinate the president.*

**slaughter/massacre** to kill a lot of people in a violent way, especially when they cannot defend themselves: *People in the town, including women and children, were slaughtered by the soldiers.*

**execute** to kill someone as a punishment for a crime: *He was executed for kidnapping and killing a little boy.*

**2 informal** to be very angry at someone: *My mom will kill me if I'm late again.*

**kill·er** /'kɪlə/ *noun*

a person, animal, or thing that kills: *Police are still looking for the girl's killer.*

**ki·lo** /'kiˌlou/ *noun* plural **kilos**

an abbreviation of **kilogram**

**ki·lo·byte** /'kiˌləˌbaɪt/ *noun*

**k** a unit for measuring computer information, which is around 1,000 BYTES

**kil·o·gram** /'kiˌləˌgræm/ *also kilo noun*

written abbreviation **kg** a unit for measuring weight, equal to 1,000 grams

**ki·lom·e·ter** /kiˌlɒməˌtə/ *noun*

written abbreviation **km** a unit for measuring length, equal to 1,000 meters

**kil·o·watt** /'kiˌləˌwɒt/ *noun*

written abbreviation **kW** a unit for measuring electrical power, equal to 1,000 WATTS

**kin** /kɪn/ *noun*

your family: *The police are trying to find the dead man's next of kin (=closest relative).*

**kind¹** /kaɪnd/ *noun*

**1** a type of person or thing: *"What kind of dog is that?" "It's an English Sheepdog."* | *I like all kinds of music – hip hop, rock, jazz, country, and other kinds too.* **SYNONYM** **sort, type**

**2 kind of informal** = a little bit: *I felt kind of scared.* | *It's kind of hard to explain the story.*

**SYNONYM** **slightly**

**kind²** *adjective*

helpful, friendly, and nice to other people: *Our neighbors were very kind to us when we moved into our new house; they even made us dinner!*

#### THESAURUS: kind

**nice** friendly and kind: *My new roommate seems really nice.*

**considerate** formal a considerate person thinks about what other people feel or need: *The neighbors are very considerate; they don't play their music too loud.*

**thoughtful** thinking of things you can do to make other people happy: *He brought her flowers when she wasn't feeling well, which was really thoughtful.*

—**kindly** *adverb*: *She kindly drove me home.*

—**kindness** *noun*: *She showed kindness to anyone who needed help.*

**kin·der·gar·ten** /'kɪndəˌɡɑːtn/ *noun*

a class in school for children who are about five years old. Children go to kindergarten before they start first grade.

**king** /kɪŋ/ *noun*

a man who is the ruler of a country because he is from a royal family: *King George III was king of England during the American Revolution.*

**king·dom** /'kɪŋdəm/ *noun*

a country that has a king or queen

**'king-size** *also 'king-sized adjective*

the largest size that something can be: *All the hotel rooms have a king-size bed.*

**kiss** /kɪs/ *verb*

to touch someone with your lips, to show that you love him or her or when you say hello or goodbye: *She and her boyfriend started kissing.* | *She kissed me on the cheek.*

—**kiss** *noun* the act of kissing someone: *Her mother gave her a kiss on the forehead.*

**kit** /kɪt/ *noun*

**1** a set of tools or equipment that you keep together and that you use to do something: *There are some bandages in the first-aid kit.*

**2** a set of pieces that you put together to make something: *a model airplane kit*

**kitch·en** /'kɪtʃən/ *noun*

the room where you cook food: *Jay's in the kitchen washing the dishes.*



**kite** /kaɪt/ *noun*

a toy that you fly in the air on the end of a long string

**kit·ten** /'kɪtn/

*noun*

a young cat

**kit·ty** /'kɪti/ *also*

**kit·ty·cat**

/'kɪti,kæt/ *noun*

plural **kitties**

*informal*

a cat: *Here, kitty kitty! Here's your food.*

**ki·wi** /'kiwi/ *also* **'kiwi fruit** *noun*

a soft green fruit with small black seeds and a thin brown skin

→ See picture on page A13

**Kleen·ex** /'kleɪnks/ *noun, trademark*

a piece of soft thin paper, that you use to clean your nose or dry your eyes: *She was crying, so I handed her a Kleenex.* **SYNONYM** *tissue*

**km.**

the written abbreviation of **kilometer**

**knack** /næk/ *noun, informal*

the ability to do something well: *Kelly has a knack for learning languages – she speaks Chinese, Greek, and French.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **ability**

**knead** /nid/ *verb*

to press a bread mixture with your hands to make it ready to cook: *Knead the dough for ten minutes.*

→ See picture on page A14

**knee** /ni/ *noun*

**1** the middle part of your leg, where it can bend: *I got on my knees to look under the bed* (=with my legs bent and my knees on the floor).

**2** the part of your pants that covers your knee: *Billy's jeans had holes in both knees.*

→ See picture on page A2

**knee·cap** /'nikæp/ *noun*

the bone at the front of your knee

→ See picture on page A2

**knee-'deep** *adjective*

deep enough to reach your knees: *The water was knee-deep.*



**kneel** /niːl/ *also kneel down* *verb* knelt

/nelt/ or kneeled

to put your knees on the ground, so that they are supporting your body: *She knelt down beside the bed to pray.*

→ See picture on page A4

**knew** /nu/ *verb*

the past tense of **KNOW**

**knife** /naɪf/ *noun* plural **knives** /naɪvz/

a tool used to cut things or as a weapon. It has a sharp metal part and a handle: *Mom cut up the chicken with a knife.*

→ See picture on page A9

**knight** /naɪt/ *noun*

a soldier in Medieval times, who fought while riding a horse

**knit** /nɪt/ *verb* knit

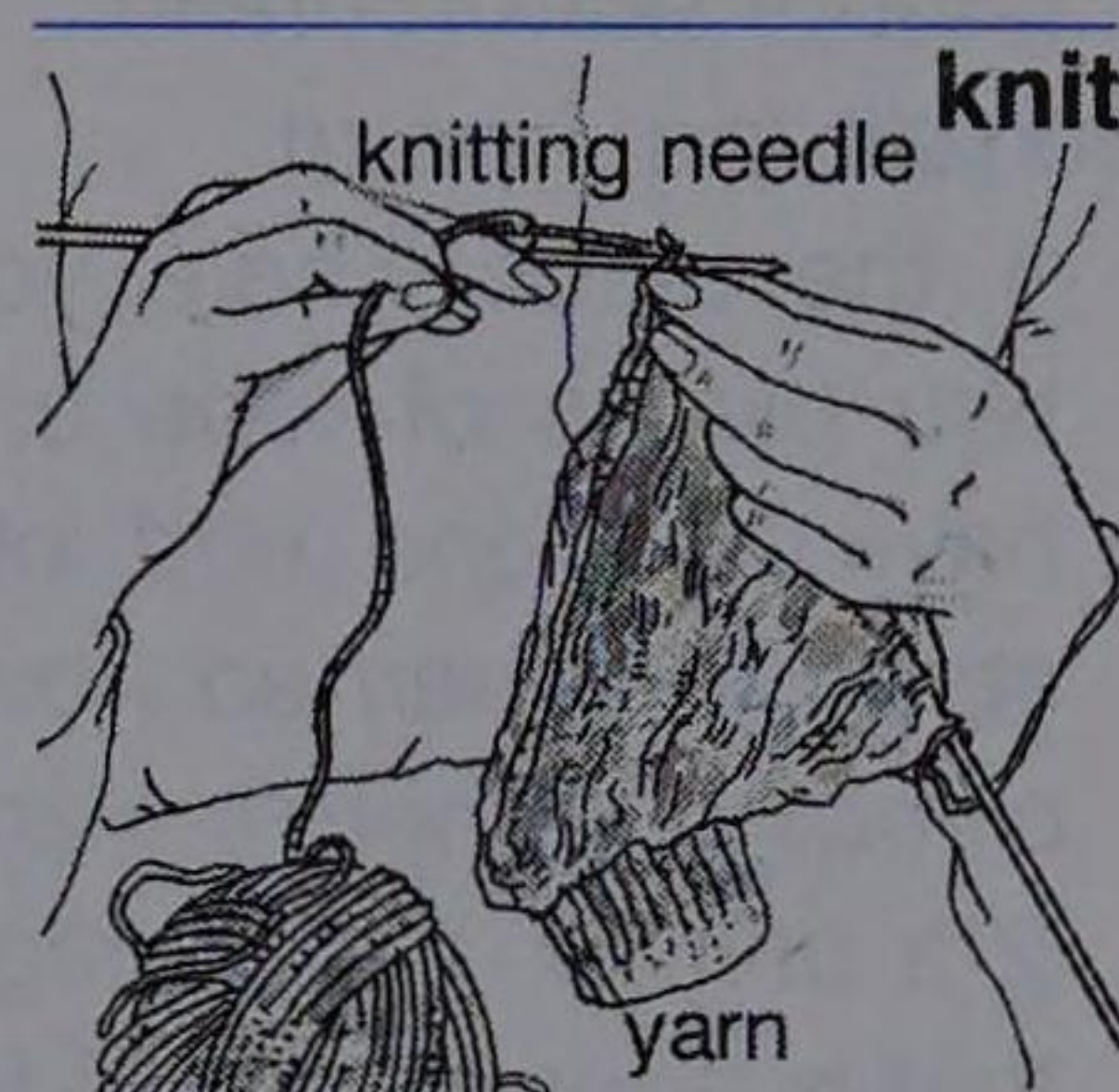
or knitted, **knitting**

to make clothes out of thick thread using long pointed sticks: *Grandma is knitting a sweater.*

—**knitting** *noun*

something you are

making that you knit: *We learned sewing and knitting from our mother.*



**knob** /nab/ *noun*

a round handle that you pull or turn to open a door, turn on a radio, etc.: *I tried to turn the knob, but the door was locked and it wouldn't move.*

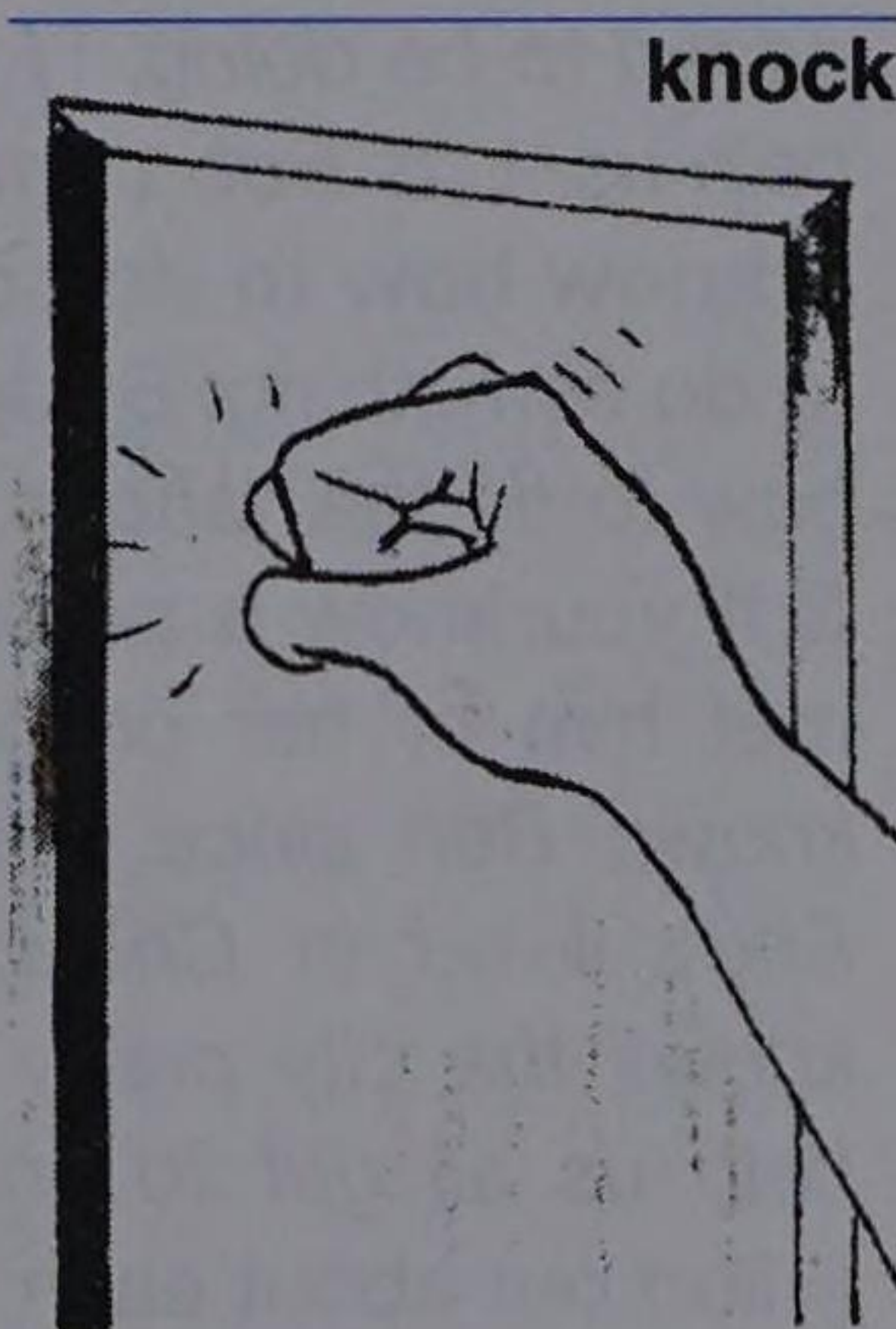
**knock<sup>1</sup>** /nɑk/ *verb*

**1** to hit a door or window with your hand to make a noise and get someone's attention: *I knocked on the door for five minutes, but nobody answered.*

**2** to hit something hard so that it moves or falls

down: *The dog knocked the phone off the table.*

**3 knock it off** *informal* = used to tell someone to stop doing something that is annoying you: *Hey, knock it off! I'm on the phone.*





PHRASAL VERBS

**knock something down**

to hit or push something so that it falls to the ground: *The wind was so strong it knocked down trees.*

**knock someone out**

to hit someone hard so that he or she falls down and cannot get up: *The boxer knocked his opponent out in the fifth round.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **hit**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture on page A3

**knock**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

the sound that is made by hitting something hard: *There was a loud knock on the door.*

**knock-out** /'nɒk-aʊt/ *noun*

an act of hitting someone so hard in the sport of BOXING that he falls down and cannot get up again

**knot** /nɒt/ *noun*

**1** the place where you have tied together two pieces of rope or string, or where you have tied one end of a piece of rope or string: *We learned how to tie knots for rock climbing. | There's a knot in my shoelace.*

**2** a unit for measuring the speed of a ship, that is equal to 6,080 feet or 1,853 meters in an hour

—**knot** *verb* to tie something in a knot: *She knotted the scarf around her neck.*

**know** /nou/ *verb* knew /nu/ known /noun/

**1** to have information about something in your mind: *Do you know the answer? | Doctors don't really know much about the disease. | We don't know what we're supposed to be doing. | I knew that Andy would help us. | "Is Bob coming?" "I don't know."*

**2 know how to do something** = to be able to do something: *By age six, most kids know how to tie their shoes.*

**3** if you know a person or place, you have met him or her or been there before: *I've known Ben since I was three years old. | She's lived in Chicago for ten years and knows the city pretty well. | This game will help us all get to know each other better (=find out about each other).*

**4 you know** **a)** people use this when they cannot quickly think of what to say next: *Then I said, you know, let's go to the movies on Friday.* **b)** used to make sure that someone understands what you are saying or that he or she is listening: *She just seems so*

*angry all the time, you know?* **c)** used when you want to start talking about something: *You know Rita's cat? He hurt his foot.*

**5 I know (what you mean)** = used to say that you agree with or understand what someone is saying: *"Science was so boring today!" "I know."*

**6 as far as I know** = said when you think something is true, but you are not sure: *Tom's never been married, as far as I know.*

**7 know better** = to be old enough or have done something often enough that you understand that you should not do something: *You know better than to play ball in the house!*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **know** *verb*
- **knowledge** *noun*
- **knowledgeable** *adjective*
- **known** *adjective*
- **unknown** *adjective*

**know-how** *noun, informal*

the knowledge or ability you need to do something: *He has the technical know-how to keep the computers working.*

**knowledge** /'nɒlɪdʒ/ *noun*

the information and understanding about something that you have in your mind: *Laura's knowledge of Spanish helped her get a job.*

—**knowledgeable** *adjective* having a lot of knowledge about something: *He's very knowledgeable about fixing cars and has helped me repair my car many times.*

**known**<sup>1</sup> /noun/ *verb*

the past participle of KNOW

**known**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

if someone or something is known, many people know about them: *Ansel Adams is known for his photographs of Yosemite National Park.* **SYNONYM** famous

**knuckle** /'nʌkəl/ *noun*

one of the places where your fingers can bend, including the places where they join your hand

→ See picture at **hand**<sup>1</sup>

**koala** /kou'ɑlə/ also **koala bear** *noun*

an Australian animal that looks like a small bear and that climbs trees and eats leaves



**Ko·ran** /kə'ræn/ *noun*

**the Koran** = the holy book of the Muslim religion

**Ko·re·an**<sup>1</sup> /kə'riən/ *adjective*

from Korea

**Korean**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** someone from Korea

**2** the language spoken in Korea

**ko·sher** /'kouʃə/ *adjective*

kosher food is prepared according to Jewish law

**ku·dos** /'kudous/ *noun*

praise for doing something well: *The newspaper gave kudos to Jim Carrey for an excellent performance.*

**kung fu** /,kʌŋ 'fu/ *noun*

a sport from China in which you fight using your hands and feet to hit and kick

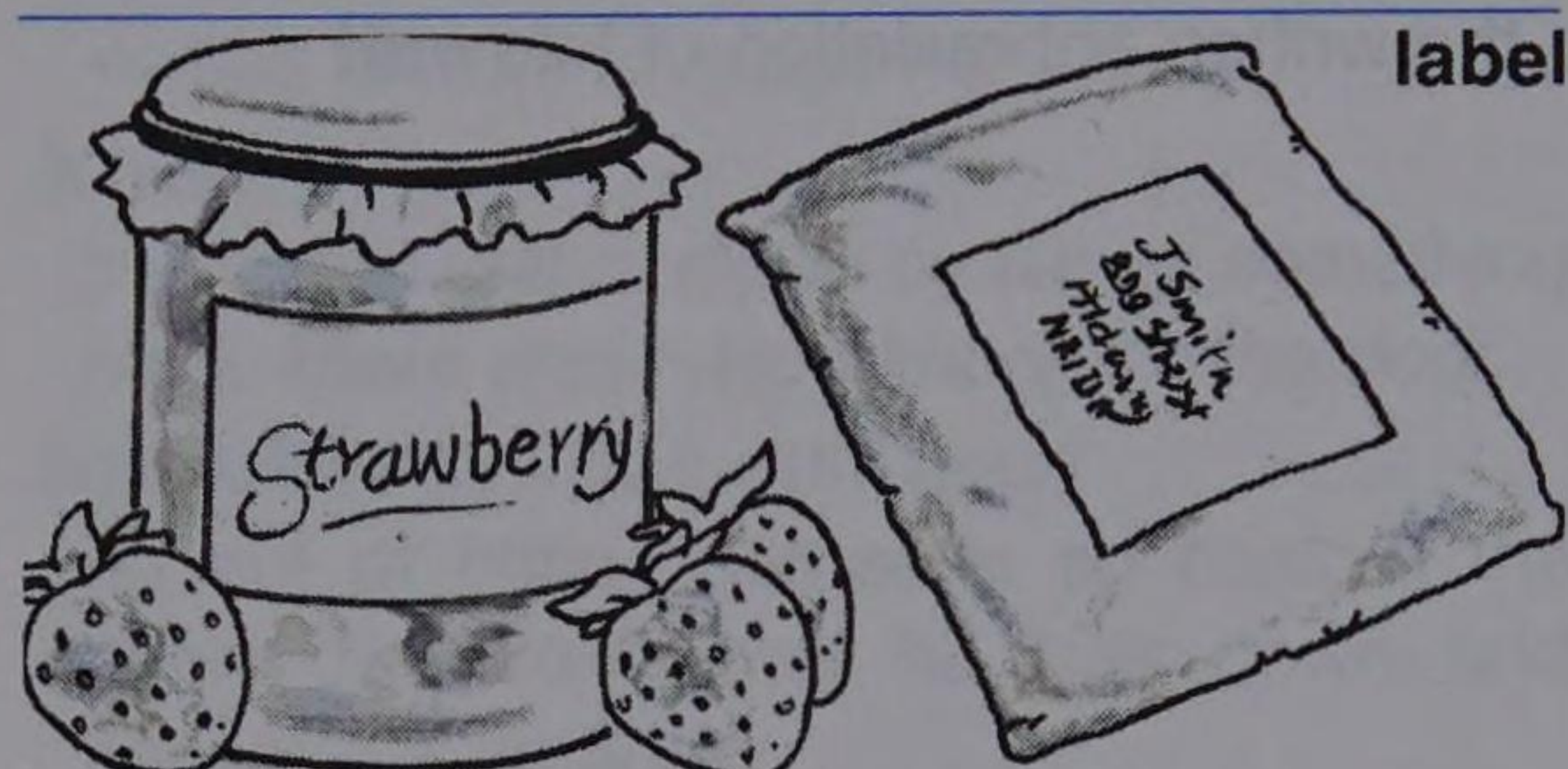
**kW**

the written abbreviation of **kilowatt**



# LI

**lab** /læb/ noun, informal  
a LABORATORY



label

**la·bel**<sup>1</sup> /'leɪbəl/ **Ac** noun  
a piece of paper or cloth that is attached to something and has information written on it: *Always read the instructions on the label before taking any medicine.*

**label**<sup>2</sup> verb

- 1** to put a label on something or write information on it: *We labeled each toy box with what was inside it: cars, blocks, dolls.*
- 2** to always use a particular word to describe someone even if it is not a true or fair way to describe them: *The teachers labeled him "a lazy student" and stopped trying to help him.*

**la·bor**<sup>1</sup> /'leɪbər/ **Ac** noun

- 1** hard work that you do using your body and hands: *He did a lot of manual labor (=physical work) to earn money, especially mowing lawns and raking leaves.*
- 2** all the people who work for a company or in a country: *The car industry needs skilled labor (=employees who have been trained to do a job).*
- 3** if a woman is in labor, she is pushing a baby out of her body

**labor**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to work very hard: *Farmers labored in the fields.*

**lab·ora·to·ry** /'læbrə,tɔːri/ also **lab** noun  
plural **laboratories**

a room or building in which scientists work: *Scientists in the laboratory are working on drugs to help cancer patients.*

**'Labor Day** noun

a holiday on the first Monday in September that shows respect for people who work

**'labor union** noun

an organization that helps workers in a particular job get better pay, health insurance, money for when they stop working, etc.: *The labor union wants to make sure employees receive better healthcare.* **SYNONYM** union

**lab·y·rinth** /'læbə,rɪnθ/ noun

another word for a MAZE

**lace**<sup>1</sup> /leɪs/ noun

- 1** a type of cloth that has a pattern made of very small holes in it: *The wedding dress was covered with lace.*
- 2** a string that you tie your shoes with: *His laces were untied.* **SYNONYM** shoelace

**lace**<sup>2</sup> also **lace up** verb

to fasten something by tying a lace: *Paul put on his boots and laced them up.*

**lack**<sup>1</sup> /læk/ noun

the state of not having something, or of not having enough of something: *A lack of money stops these families from finding better places to live.*

**lack**<sup>2</sup> verb, formal

to not have something, or to not have enough of it: *He wants to go to college, but he lacks grades that are good enough.*

**lad·der** /'lædər/ noun

- 1** a piece of equipment that you use to climb up to high places, made of two long pieces of metal or wood with bars between them that you use as steps: *The painter climbed up the ladder to reach the top of the wall.*
- 2** a series of jobs in which each job is better than the one before, so that you get more power and money: *Nelson worked hard to climb the company ladder and get a job in management.*

**'ladies' room** noun

a room in a public building with toilets for women

**la·dle** /'leɪdl/ noun

a deep spoon with a long handle, that you use to put soup into bowls

—**ladle** verb *Mom ladled the soup into each bowl.*



**la·dy** /'leɪdi/ *noun* plural **ladies**

**1** a polite word for a woman: *Ladies and gentlemen, thank you for coming this evening.*

**2** *informal* said when talking to a woman you do not know in an impolite way: *Hey, lady, hurry up!*

**la·dy·bug** /'leɪdi,bʌg/ *noun*

a small insect that has red or orange wings with black spots on them

**lag** /læɡ/ *verb* lagged, lagging

to move or achieve things more slowly than other things or people: *Jonathan walked slowly and lagged behind the rest of the kids climbing the hill.*

**la·goon** /lə'ɡuːn/ *noun*

an area of ocean that has land almost all the way around it

**laid** /leɪd/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of LAY

**laid-·back** *adjective*

relaxed and not worried about anything: *My teacher is pretty laid-back. He likes to have fun in class.*

**lain** /leɪn/ *verb*

the past participle of LIE

**lake** /leɪk/ *noun*

a large area of water with land all around it: *We're going swimming in the lake. | Lake Michigan*

**lake·front** /'leɪkfrʌnt/ *noun*

the land next to a lake: *They built a house on the lakefront so they could go boating and fishing whenever they wanted to.*

**lamb** /læm/ *noun*

a young sheep, or the meat of a young sheep

**lame** /leɪm/ *adjective*

**1** *informal* silly or not very good: *The jokes were lame, and no one laughed.*

**2** *formal* not able to walk easily because your leg or foot is hurt: *The horse was lame; it had cut its leg on a fence.*

**lamp** /læmp/ *noun*

an object that produces light, which you put on a table or that stands on the floor: *She turned on the lamp to read.*

→ See picture at **light**<sup>1</sup>

**lamp·shade** /'læmpʃeɪd/ *noun*

a cloth or plastic cover over the light of a lamp that the light shines through

→ See picture on page A8

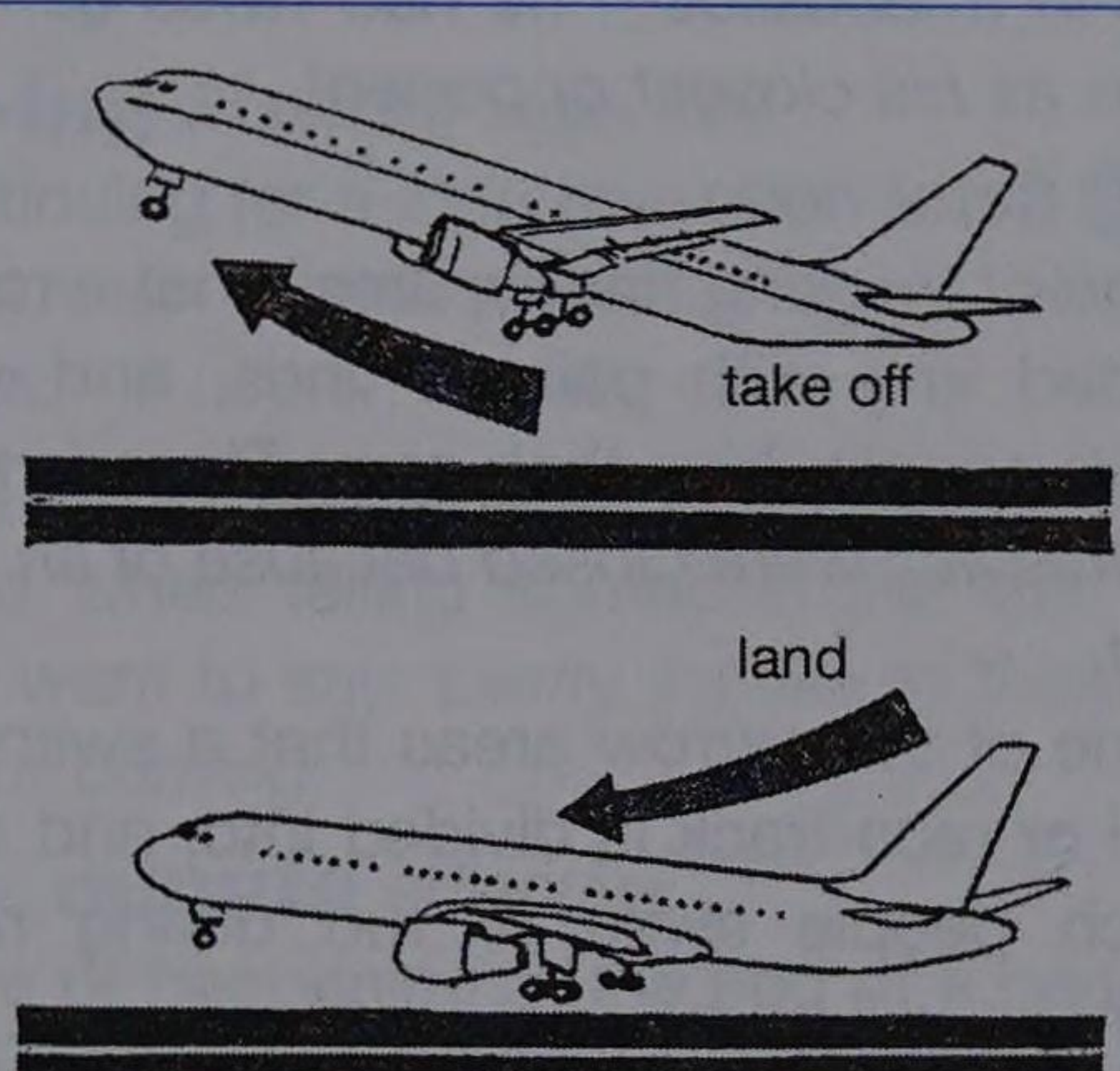
**land**<sup>1</sup> /lænd/ *noun*

**1** an area of ground, which people can own or use for farming: *Three houses will be built on the land. | Mr. Peterson owns the land near the river and grows crops there.*

**2** the part of the Earth that is not covered by water: *Frogs live on land and in the water.*

**3** *formal* a country or place: *They came to America from many lands.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **earth**, **arrive**, **country**

**land**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

**1** to arrive somewhere in a boat or airplane: *Airplanes land and take off from the airport every few minutes.*

**2** to fall onto something after moving through the air: *Chris slipped and landed on his back.*

**land·ing** /'lændɪŋ/ *noun*

the landing of an airplane or boat is when it arrives on land: *The plane made a safe landing.* **ANTONYM** **takeoff**

**land·la·dy** /'lænd,leɪdi/ *noun* plural **landladies**

a woman who owns the house or apartment that you rent

**land·lord** /'lændlɔːd/ *noun*

someone who owns the house or apartment that you rent

**land·mark** /'lændmɑːk/ *noun*

**1** something that helps you know where you are, such as a famous building: *The Empire State Building is a famous landmark in New York.*



**2** an important event: *The discovery of penicillin was a landmark in the history of medicine.*

**land·own·er** /'lənd,əʊnə/ *noun*, formal  
someone who owns a lot of land

**land·scape** /'ləndskeɪp/ *noun*  
a view across an area of land: *The snow changed the landscape, making it seem soft and beautiful.*

**land·slide** /'ləndslaɪd/ *noun*

**1** a landslide is when a lot of dirt and rocks fall down the side of a hill or mountain: *Part of the highway is blocked by a landslide.*

**2** a defeat in which someone wins an election by a very large number of votes: *Wilson won in a landslide – he had twice as many votes as his closest opponent.*

**lane** /leɪn/ *noun*

**1** one of the long narrow areas that a road is divided into with painted lines, and along which people drive their cars: *Three lanes of the freeway were closed because of an accident.*

**2** one of the narrow areas that a swimming pool or race track is divided into, and along which people swim or run during races: *Johnson will be running in lane 4.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **road**

**lan·guage** /'læŋɡwɪdʒ/ *noun*

**1** the words and grammar that people who live in a country use when they talk to each other: *the English language* | “Do you speak any foreign languages?” “Yes, I speak Arabic.”

#### THESAURUS: language

**dialect** *formal* a form of a language that is spoken in one area, which is different from the way it is spoken in other areas: *Cantonese is only one of many Chinese dialects.*

**accent** a way of pronouncing words that someone has because of where he or she was born or lives: *She has a strong Southern accent.*

**slang** very informal spoken words: *Teenagers sometimes use slang that their parents don't understand.*

**jargon** technical words and phrases used by people who are doing the same type of work: *I couldn't understand the computer book; it was full of technical jargon.*

**2** the type of words that someone uses: *In my classroom, I don't allow bad language (=swear words). | He described the experiment using scientific language (=special words that scientists use, which people do not usually use).*

**3** a system used to give instructions to a computer: *Java is a computer programming language often used in making websites.*

**lan·tern** /'ləntən/ *noun*

a type of lamp you can carry, that has a metal frame and glass sides: *He used the lantern to find his way to the tent.*

→ See picture at **light**<sup>1</sup>

**lap**<sup>1</sup> /læp/ *noun*

**1** the flat area that the tops of your legs make when you are sitting down: *The little girl was sitting on her mother's lap.*

**2** one trip around a race track, or a trip from one end of a swimming pool to the other: *Patty swims 30 laps every day.*

**lap**<sup>2</sup> also **lap up** *verb* lapped, lapping

if an animal laps a drink, it drinks it by touching it with its tongue: *The cat lapped up the milk.*

**la·pel** /lə'pel/ *noun*

part of one of the front edges of a coat which is folded back: *He wore a pin on his lapel.*

**lapse** /læps/ *noun*, formal

a short period of time when you forget something or do not do something you should: *There was a lapse in security at the airport, and a man with a gun got on the plane.*

**lap·top** /'læptɒp/ also **laptop**  
**com·puter** *noun*

a small computer that you can carry with you

→ See picture on page A20

**lar·ce·ny** /'larsəni/ *noun*, formal  
the crime of stealing something

**large** /lɑ:dʒ/ *adjective*

big in size, number, or amount: *a large pizza* | *The high school has 1,500 students, so it is much larger than the middle school.* **ANTONYM**  
**small**

→ See Thesaurus box at **big**

**large·ly** /'lɑ:dʒli/ *adverb*

mostly or mainly: *Grizzly bears largely eat fruit and plants, but will also eat meat.*



**lark** /lɑrk/ *noun*

a small wild brown bird that sings and has long pointed wings

**lar·va** /'lɑrvə/ *noun* plural **larvae** /'lɑrvi/

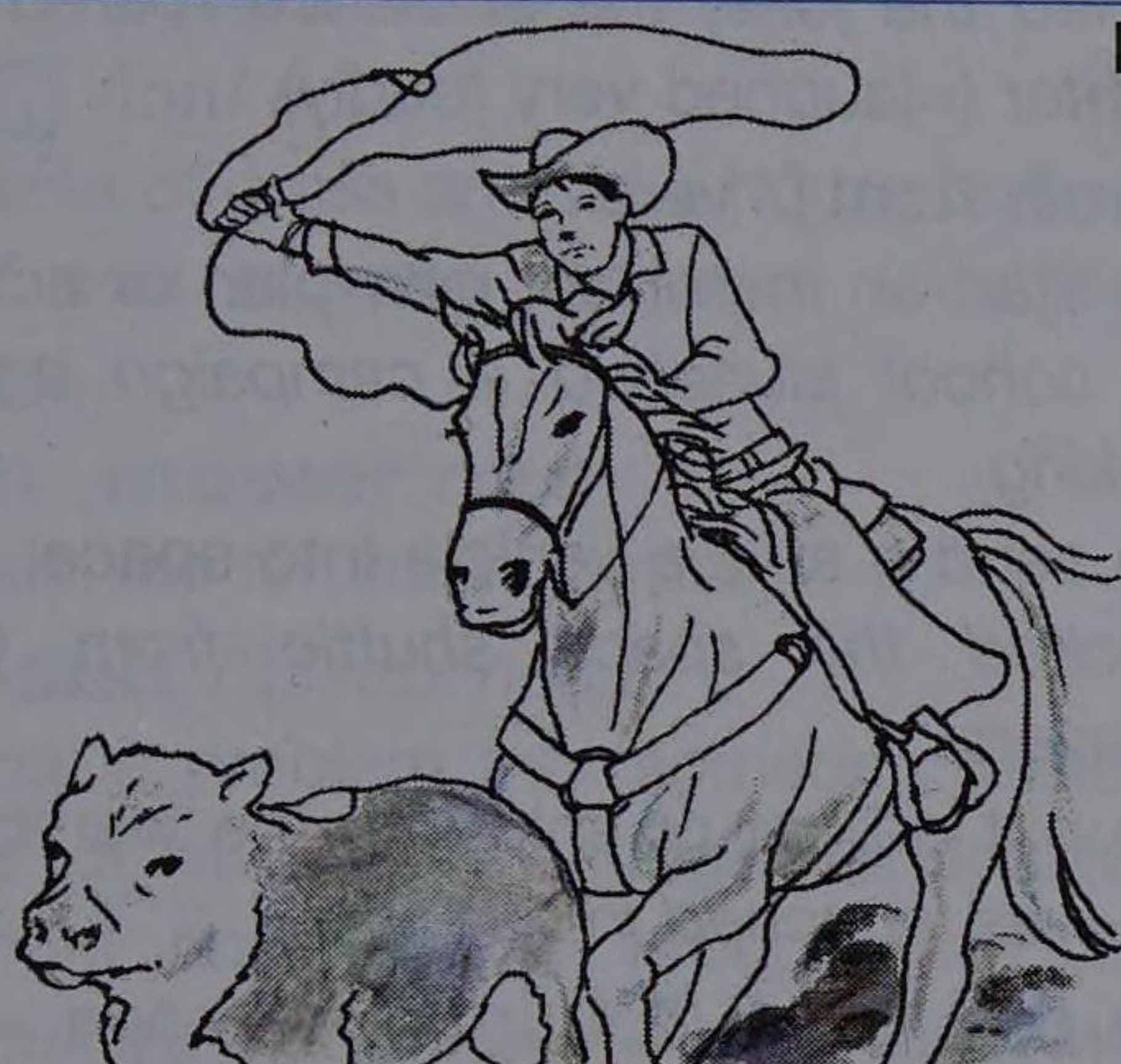
a young insect with a soft body and no wings, that will become an insect with wings later in its life

**la·ser** /'leɪzə/ *noun*

a piece of equipment that produces a powerful narrow beam of light: *Doctors can use lasers to correct your eyesight.*

**lash** /læʃ/ *noun*

an EYELASH



lasso

**las·so** /'læsou/ *noun*

a rope with one end tied in a circle, used for catching cows and horses

—**lasso** *verb* to catch a cow or horse using a lasso

**last<sup>1</sup>** /læst/ *adjective*

**1** most recent, or happening just before the one happening now: *The last time we played tennis, you won.* | *I saw Tim last week.*

**2** at the end, after everyone or everything else: *We were last in line for tickets.* | *When is the last day of school?* | *He dies in the last chapter of the book.*

**3** the last one is the only one that is still there from a group: *Do you want the last piece of cake?*

**4 the last person/thing** = a person or thing that you do not expect or want at all: *He's the last person I'd want to go on a date with!*

**last<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**1** to continue to happen for a period of time: *The meeting lasted only ten minutes.*

**2** if something lasts, it continues to be in good condition and you can use it: *Most batteries will last for up to 8 hours before they need to be recharged.*

**last<sup>3</sup>** *adverb*

**1** most recently before now: *"When did you see her last?" "Three days ago."*

**2** after everything or everyone else: *I run as fast as I can, but I always finish last.*

**3 last but not least** = said to show that the last thing you say is just as important as the other things you have said: *Last but not least, I'd like to thank my mother for all the help she has given me.*

**last<sup>4</sup>** *noun*

**1 at last** = after a long time: *The rain stopped at last.*

**2 the last** = the person or thing that is after all the others: *Joe was the last to go to bed that night.*

**last·ing** /'læstɪŋ/ *adjective*

continuing for a long time: *We have a lasting friendship – we've known each other 25 years.*

**last·ly** /'læstli/ *adverb, formal*

used when telling someone the last thing you want to say: *Lastly, I'd like to thank you all for coming.*

**'last-, minute** *adjective*

done or happening at the end of a period of time: *Lucas made some last-minute changes to his paper before he gave it to the teacher.*

**'last name** *noun*

your family's name, which in English comes after your other names: *I think Julio's last name is Martinez.*

**latch** /lætʃ/ *noun*

a small metal object that keeps a door, gate, or window closed

**late** /leɪt/ *adjective, adverb*

**1** after the usual or expected time: *She was late for school and got in trouble again.* | *Our flight got to Houston two hours late, so we missed our next flight.*

**2** near the end of a period of time: *The house was built in the late 19th century.* | *The team finally scored late in the game.*

**3** at night, or near the end of the day: *It's late and I'm tired.* | *the late show on TV*

**late·ly** /'leɪtli/ *adverb*

recently: *"Have you seen Barbara lately?" "No, not for several months."* | *Lately, I've been really busy.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **recently**



**lat·er**<sup>1</sup> /'leɪtə/ *adverb*

**1** after the time now, or after the time you are talking about: *I'll see you later.* | *They met in July, and only two months later they got married.*

**2** **later on** = at some time in the future, or after something else: *She said she'd meet you later on this evening.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **after**

**later**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** coming in the future, or after something else: *You can freeze the soup and use it at a later time.*

**2** more recent: *Later models of the car are much improved.*

**lat·est** /'leɪtəst/ *adjective*

most recent: *I like to know the latest news, so I buy a newspaper every day.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **new**

**La·tin** /'lætn/ *noun*

an old language, used in science, law, and medicine: *The names of each plant are given in Latin.*

**Latin A'merica** *noun*

all the countries in Central America and South America

—**Latin American** *adjective* from or in Latin America: *Latin American art*

**lat·i·tude** /'lætə,tud/ *noun*

*formal* the distance north or south of the EQUATOR (=an imaginary line around the middle of the Earth): *New York City is on the same latitude as Naples, Italy.*

**lat·ter** /'lætə/ *noun*

**the latter** *formal* = the second of two people or things that someone talks about: *There was tea and coffee, and I chose the latter (=coffee).*

**laugh**<sup>1</sup> /læf/ *verb*

to make a sound with your voice because you think something is funny: *No one laughs at my jokes.* | *We made her laugh by telling funny stories.*

**THESAURUS: laugh**

**giggle** to laugh quickly in a high voice: *The girls were giggling about something that had happened at school.*

**chuckle** to laugh quietly: *Jim waved at her and made a silly face, and she chuckled.*

**snicker** to laugh quietly in a way that is not nice: *"Stop pushing me!" she shouted, and some of the kids snickered.*

**PHRASAL VERB****laugh at someone**

to make jokes about someone in a way that upsets him or her: *Other kids laughed at him because he couldn't read.*

**laugh**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

the sound you make when you laugh: *"That's funny!" he said, with a laugh.*

**laugh·ter** /'læftə/ *noun*

the sound of people laughing: *When he finished the joke, the audience roared with laughter (=laughed very loudly).*

**launch** /lɒntʃ/ *verb*

**1** to start an important new plan or activity: *The school launched a campaign against smoking.*

**2** to send a space vehicle into space: *They launched the space shuttle from Cape Canaveral.*

**3** to put a boat or ship into the water: *The ship was launched in 1911.*

**laun·dro·mat** /'lɒndrə,mæt/ *noun*

a place where you pay to wash your clothes in a machine

**laun·dry** /'lɒndri/ *noun*

**1** clothes and sheets that you need to wash: *Did you do the laundry (=wash clothes and sheets)?*

**2** clothes and sheets that you have washed: *a pile of clean laundry*

**la·va** /'lævə/ *noun*

hot liquid rock that comes out of the top of a mountain: *Lava flowed out of the volcano.*

**lav·a·to·ry** /'lævə,tɔri/ *noun plural*

**lavatories** *formal*

a room with a toilet, in a public building or airplane

**lav·en·der** /'lævəndə/ *noun*

a plant with purple flowers that have a pleasant smell

**law** /lɔ/ *noun*

**1** **the law** = the system of rules in a country: *Driving without a seatbelt on is against the law (=illegal).* | *If you buy stolen goods you are breaking the law (=doing something illegal).*

**2** a rule that everyone in a country must obey, and if they do not, they might be



punished by a court: *There is a law against driving too fast.*

**3** the study of legal systems: *I'd like to study law.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **rule<sup>1</sup>**

**law-a-bid-ing** /'lɔ əˌbaɪdɪŋ/ adjective, formal

a law-abiding person always obeys the law: *I am a law-abiding citizen – I have never gotten into trouble with the police.*

**law-ful** /'lɔfəl/ adjective, formal

allowed by the law: *He made his money through lawful means (=doing legal things).*

SYNONYM **legal**; ANTONYM **illegal**

**lawn** /lɔn/ noun

an area of grass around a house or building: *Dad was mowing the lawn (=cutting the grass).*

**'lawn ,mower** noun

a machine for cutting grass

**law-suit** /'lɔsut/ noun

formal a problem that someone takes to a court of law so that a judge can decide who is right and who is wrong: *They filed a lawsuit against the building company when it did not complete its work.*

**law-yer** /'lɔyər/ noun

someone whose job is to advise people about the law, and speak for them in court: *My lawyer told me not to give them any money until they sign the papers.* SYNONYM **attorney**

→ See picture on page A16

**lay<sup>1</sup>** /leɪ/ verb laid /leɪd/

**1** to put something in a particular place: *She laid her coat over a chair. | He laid the baby on the bed.*

**2** to put or attach something in the correct place on the ground: *We are laying carpet in the living room.*

**3** if a bird or insect lays eggs, eggs come out of its body: *The hen laid an egg.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**lay someone off**

if a company lays off employees, it stops employing them because it does not have enough work for them: *The company had to lay off 25 workers when business got slowed down.*

**lay something out**

**1** to spread something out so that it is lying

flat: *Pam laid out her dress for the party on the bed.*

**2** to explain or describe an idea with all the details: *The mayor laid out her plans for building two new parks downtown.*

**lay<sup>2</sup>** verb

the past tense of LIE

#### USAGE: lay

**Lay** means to put something down in a flat position. The past tense for this is **laid**: *She laid the newspaper down and picked up the phone.*

**Lie** has two different meanings:

– to be or move into a flat position on the floor, a bed, etc.: *She was lying on the sofa.*

The past tense for this meaning of lie is **lay**: *He lay on the bed.*

– to say something that is not true: *Why did you lie to me?*

The past tense for this meaning of lie is **lied**: *The police think that he lied.*

**lay-er** /'leɪər/ **Ac** noun

**1** an amount of something that covers a surface: *No one had been there for months, and there was a thick layer of dust on the table.*

**2** something that you put on or between other things: *It was cold, so we wore several layers of clothing.*

**lay-off** /'leɪɔf/ noun

the act of ending someone's employment, because there is not enough work for them: *The factory closed down, and there were about 100 layoffs.*

**lay-out** /'leɪaʊt/ noun

the way things are arranged in a place or on a page: *We changed the layout of our bedroom, and put the bed under the window. | a newspaper's page layout*

**la-zy** /'leɪzi/ adjective **lazier**, **laziest**

**1** not wanting to work or make any effort: *Tom is so lazy; he never helps with the housework.*

**2** a lazy time is spent relaxing and not doing any work: *We spent a lazy day at the pool.*

ANTONYM **busy**

—**laziness** noun the quality of being lazy: *She complained about his laziness, saying all he did was watch TV.*



**lb.**

the written abbreviation of **pound**: *I weigh 140 lbs.*

**lead<sup>1</sup>** /lid/ verb led /led/

**1** to show someone the way somewhere, by walking in front of him or her: *You lead, and we'll follow.* | *He led his horse to the barn.*

ANTONYM **follow**

**2** to go in front of a group of people or vehicles: *Our town's high school band is leading the parade.*

**3** if a road, path, or door leads somewhere, you can get there by using it: *This road leads to Springfield.* SYNONYM **go**

**4** to be winning a game or competition: *Our team was leading 8–0.*

**5** to control an activity or a group of people: *Who is leading the investigation?*

**6** to be more successful at an activity than other companies, countries, or people: *Our company leads the world in making cars.*

**7 lead a ... life** = to have a particular kind of life: *It's hard to lead a normal life when you're famous.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****lead to something**

to make something happen or exist: *The new factory has led to a lot of new jobs.*

**lead up to something**

to come before something: *In the days leading up to her operation she was very nervous.* ANTONYM **follow**

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **lead** verb
- **leader** noun
- **leadership** noun

**lead<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a position in front of other people or vehicles: *Barron is still in the lead, but the race is only half finished.*

**2** the amount by which one person is ahead of another in a competition or race: *We are in first place with a lead of ten points.*

**3** a piece of information that may help you discover something: *The police got an important lead when someone reported seeing a tall man near the murder scene.*

**lead<sup>3</sup>** /led/ noun

**1** a heavy gray metal: *lead pipes*

**2** the gray substance in a pencil that makes

marks when you write: *The lead on my pencil broke.*

**lead·er** /'lidə/ noun

**1** someone who leads or controls other people: *The meeting will be attended by all the world leaders* (=people who lead countries' governments).

**2** the person or team that is winning a race or competition: *She was the leader for the first half of the race.*

—**leadership** noun the quality of being good at leading people

**lead·ing** /'lidɪŋ/ adjective

**1** formal most important or most successful: *The director liked him, and he got a leading part in the play.* | *the team's leading scorer*

**2 a leading lady/man** = the actor who has the most important female or male part in a movie: *Julia Roberts is the leading lady in many movies.*

**leaf** /lif/ noun plural **leaves** /livz/

one of the flat green parts of a plant or tree that grow from its stem or branches: *There are still some leaves on the trees, but most of them have fallen off.*

**leaf·let** /'liflɪt/ noun

a piece of paper with information or an advertisement printed on it: *They gave out leaflets in the street, inviting people to join their church.*

**league** /lig/ noun

**1** a group of teams in a particular sport that play against each other every year in order to see who is best: *How many teams are in the National Football League?*

**2** a group of people or countries that have joined together to work for a special aim: *the League of Women Voters*

**leak<sup>1</sup>** /lik/ verb

**1** if something leaks, liquid or gas comes out of a hole in it where it is broken or damaged: *The roof leaks when it rains, and we need to get it fixed.* | *Gas was leaking out of the pipes.*

**2** to give secret information to a newspaper or television company, so that people find out about something: *Details of the president's speech were leaked to reporters.*

—**leakage** noun liquid or gas that leaks from something



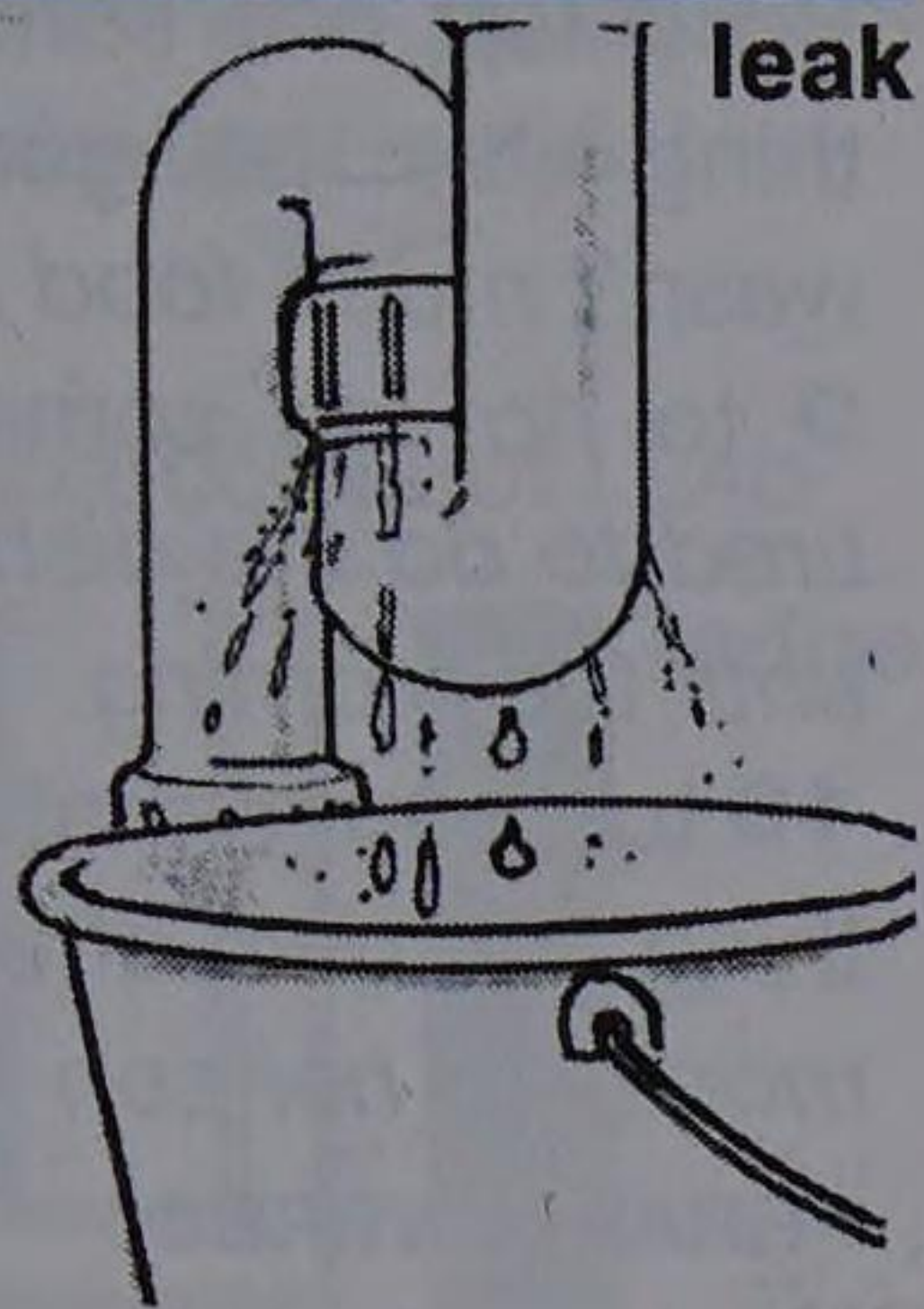
—**leaky** *adjective* something that is leaky is leaking

→ See Thesaurus box at **hole**, **pour**

## **leak**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** a hole that liquid or gas comes out of, where something is broken or damaged: *There is a leak in the pipe under the sink. Can you fix it?*

**2** a situation in which someone gives secret information to a newspaper or television company, so that people find out about something: *No one knew about the deal until there was a leak from the White House.*



## **lean**<sup>1</sup> /lin/ *verb*

**1** to bend your body in a particular position: *She leaned forward to kiss him.*

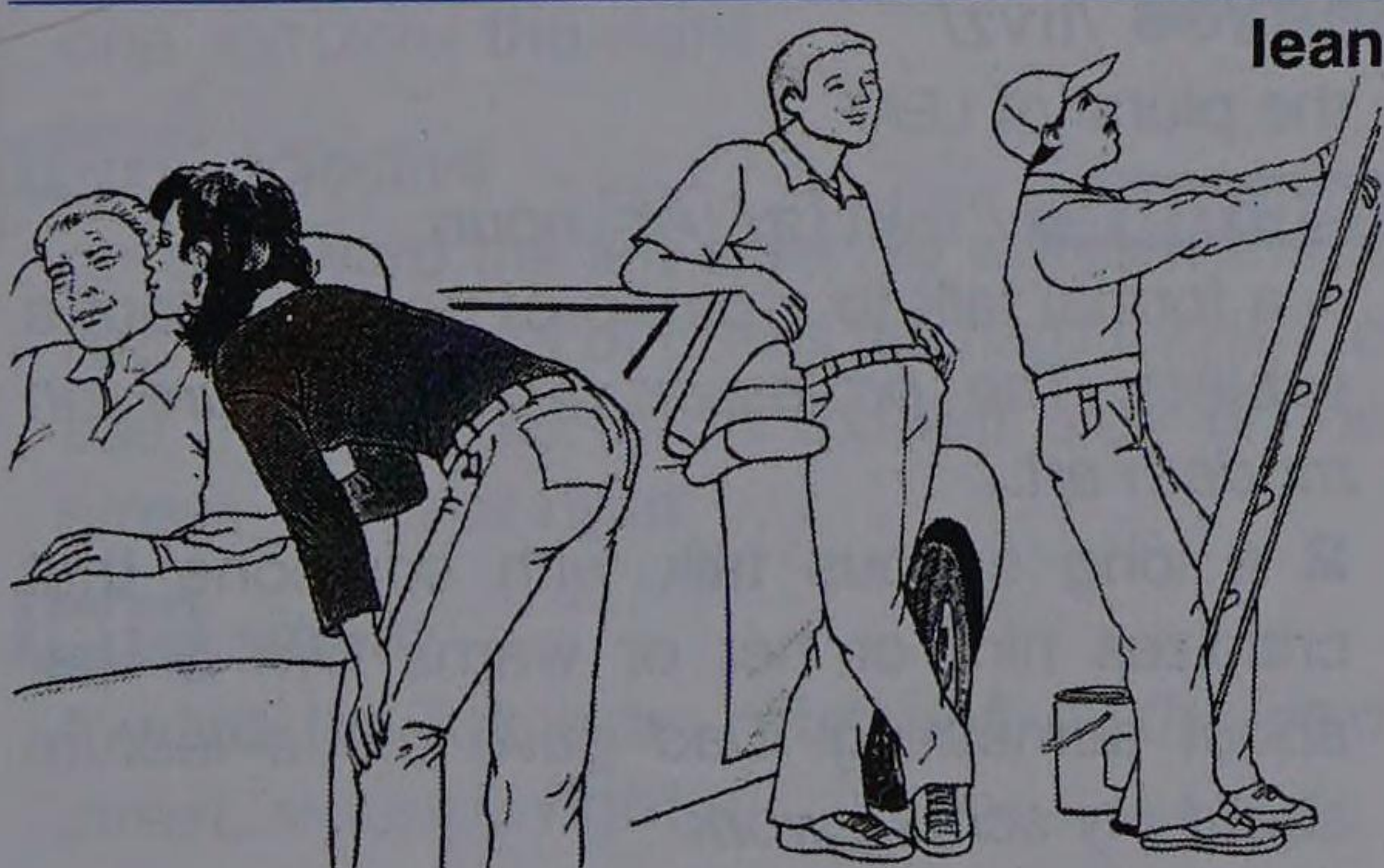
**2** to rest your body against something: *He was leaning against his car. | She leaned on her cane as she walked.*

**3** to put something against something else to support it: *He leaned the ladder against the wall.*

### **PHRASAL VERB**

#### **lean toward something**

to slightly prefer one thing when you are trying to choose from several things: *She's leaning toward majoring in history, but she hasn't decided for sure yet.*



## **lean**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

**1** thin in a healthy way: *His body was lean and athletic.* **ANTONYM** **fat**

**2** lean meat does not have much fat on it **ANTONYM** **fatty**

→ See Thesaurus box at **thin**

## **leap** /lip/ *verb* leaped or leapt /lept/

to jump into the air or to jump over something: *The dog leaped over the fence. | Jon leapt up from the chair to answer the phone.*

—**leap** *noun* an act of leaping: *With one leap, she crossed the stream.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **jump**<sup>1</sup>

→ See picture at **jump**<sup>1</sup>

## **leap year** *noun*

a year when February has 29 days instead of 28, which happens every four years

## **learn** /lɜ:n/ *verb*

**1** to study or practice a subject or activity so that you know about it or know how to do it: *I am learning to speak German. | We learned about electricity in school.*

### **USAGE: learn**

You **learn** a subject or skill when you study or practice it: *I want to learn English. | Jo's learning to drive.*

If you **teach** someone a subject or skill, you help him or her learn it: *Dad taught me to play the guitar.*

You cannot say "Dad learned me to play the guitar."

**2** to know something very well so it is easy to remember, by reading or repeating it many times: *She learned the poem and read it in front of the class.*

## **learn-ing** /'lɜ:nɪŋ/ *noun*

the process of learning: *Learning is fun if new information is taught correctly. | Children with learning difficulties take a long time to learn to read.*

## **lease** /lis/ *noun*

a legal agreement that allows you to live in a building or do business from it for a period of time: *The company signed a five-year lease on their new offices.*

—**lease** *verb* to have a lease on something

## **leash** /liʃ/ *noun*

a piece of rope or leather that you attach to a dog's collar and hold when you take the dog for a walk: *Please keep your dog on a leash.*

## **least** /list/ *pronoun, adverb, adjective*

**1** less than anything or anyone else: *She doesn't have much money, so she bought the least expensive computer. | They came to my house when I least expected it (=when I did not expect them).* **ANTONYM** **most**



**2 at least a)** used for saying something good about a bad situation: *It's not good news, but at least we know now what the problem is.* **b)** not less than a number or amount: *He's tall – at least six foot.*

**3 least of all** = especially not: *I don't like vegetables, least of all carrots.*

**4 not in the least** = not at all: *The dog had escaped many times, so I wasn't in the least surprised when it happened again.*

**5 the least** = the smallest number or amount: *Even the least amount of this poison can hurt you.*

**leath·er** /'leðə/ noun

a material used for making shoes, bags, and belts, that is the skin of an animal: *a leather jacket*

—**leathery** adjective like leather: *She smoked and spent too much time in the sun, and her skin was leathery.*

**leave<sup>1</sup>** /liv/ verb **left** /left/ **leaving**

**1** to go away from a place: *The bus leaves in five minutes – you'd better get on.* | *I leave school at 3 and I'm home by 3:30.* **ANTONYM arrive**

**2** to put something somewhere and go away without it: *We left the car at the airport when we went to Washington.* | *Leave the keys on the table.*

#### USAGE: leave

When you want to talk about the place where you left something by mistake, you must use "leave": *I left my homework at home.*

You can also say "I forgot my homework."

Do not say "I forgot my homework at home."

**3 leave a message** = to tell someone something by asking someone else to tell him or her or by writing a note: *Pete was out, so I left a message with his mom.*

**4** to stop living with your husband or wife, because you do not love him or her: *Mom cried all the time when dad left her.*

**5** to stop doing a job or going to a school or college and not return to it: *He left school and got a job.* **SYNONYM quit**; **ANTONYM start**

**6 leave someone alone** = used for telling someone to stop annoying or upsetting someone: *Go away and leave me alone!*

**7 leave something alone** = used for telling someone to stop touching something: *Leave those glasses alone, or you'll break them.*

**8 be left** = if something is left after everything else has gone, it is still there: *There wasn't much food left at the end of dinner.*

**9** to not do something until later: *I'm too tired to do the dishes now – let's leave them until the morning.*

**10** to arrange that someone will have something you own after you die: *She left a lot of money to her son in her will.*

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### leave something behind

to not take something with you when you go somewhere: *When we moved to the U.S. we had to leave our dog behind in Mexico.*

##### leave out

**1 leave something out** = to not include something: *Tell me everything that Colleen said, and don't leave out any details.*

**2 be/feel left out** = to feel as if you are not accepted or welcome in a particular group of people: *I always felt left out when my older sister's friends came to our house.*

##### leave something to someone

to let someone make a decision or be responsible for something and not do it yourself: *Jon likes driving and I don't, so I leave that to him.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **vacation**

**leave<sup>2</sup>** noun

a period of time away from your work because you are sick or on vacation: *I took sick leave when I had the operation.*

**leaves** /livz/

the plural of LEAF

**lec·ture<sup>1</sup>** /'lektʃə/ **[Ac]** noun

**1** a formal talk to a group of people about a subject: *The professor gave a lecture on modern art.*

**2** a long serious talk with someone that criticizes him or her or warns him or her about something: *Dad gave me a lecture about my school work.*

**lecture<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** to have a long serious talk with someone, criticizing his or her behavior or warning him or her about something: *He's always lecturing me about how bad smoking is.*

**2** to give a formal talk about a subject to a



group of people: *She lectures to school groups about the animals and plants that live in the area.*

—**lecturer** *noun* someone who gives lectures that teach people about a subject

**led** /led/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of LEAD

**ledge** /ledʒ/ *noun*

a narrow flat surface either on a large rock, or like the one at the bottom of a window



**ledg-er** /'ledʒə/ *noun*

a book in which a business records the money it receives and spends

**leek** /lik/ *noun*

a long vegetable with straight green leaves that tastes like an onion

→ See picture on page A12

**left<sup>1</sup>** /left/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of LEAVE

**left<sup>2</sup>** *noun*

**1** the side opposite to the one with which most people write: *The school is up ahead on the left.* **ANTONYM** **right**

**2** **the left** = in politics, people who think the government should pay for important things people need and that business should have less power: *More people on the left support the idea of government health care for everyone.* **ANTONYM** **the right**

**left<sup>3</sup>** *adjective*

on or toward the left side: *He writes with his left hand, so a lot of desks are hard for him to use.* | *The store is on the left side of the street.* **ANTONYM** **right**

**left<sup>4</sup>** *adverb*

toward the left side: *Turn left at the next street.* **ANTONYM** **right**

**left-'handed** *adjective*

someone who is left-handed uses his or her left hand to write and throw a ball **ANTONYM** **right-handed**

—**left-hander** *noun* someone who is left-handed

**left-ist** /'leftɪst/ *adjective, formal*

another word for LEFT-WING: *The military did not like the leftist government.*

**left-o-vers** /'left,ʊvəz/ *noun*

food that remains at the end of a meal that you can keep and eat later: *They gave the leftovers from dinner to the dog to eat.*

**left-'wing** *adjective*

people who are left-wing believe that the government should pay for the important things that people need and that business should not have too much power: *My brother is more left-wing than I am.*

**leg** /leg/ *noun*

**1** one of the two long parts of your body on which you stand or walk: *Dogs have four legs.* | *She fell and broke her leg.*

**2** one of the long parts that supports a table, chair etc.: *One of the table legs was shorter than the others, so the table wobbled.*

→ See picture on page A2

**leg-a-cy** /'legəsi/ *noun plural legacies*  
*formal*

**1** money or property that you receive from someone after he or she dies **SYNONYM** **inheritance**

**2** a situation that exists because of things that happened at an earlier time: *The high level of crime in the country is a legacy of the war.*

**le-gal** /'lɪgəl/ **Ac** *adjective*

**1** relating to laws: *the legal system* | *The company offers free legal advice.*

**2** allowed by the law: *Is it legal to own a gun in every state?* **ANTONYM** **illegal**

—**legally** *adverb*: *You can't legally buy alcohol until you're 21.*

—**legalize** *verb* to make something legal: *a plan to legalize gambling*

—**legality** /lɪ'gæləti/ *noun* the fact of whether something is legal or not: *We have questions about the legality of the deal.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **legal** *adjective*
- **illegal** *adjective*
- **legally** *adverb*
- **illegally** *adverb*
- **legalize** *verb*



**legal holiday** *noun*

a day when government offices, schools etc. are closed because of a law: *Christmas Day is a legal holiday.*

**leg-end** /'ledʒənd/ *noun*

**1** an old well-known story about people in the past, that is usually not true: *the legend of King Arthur* | *According to legend, he lived to be 125 years old.*

**2** someone who is very famous for a long time because they are good at doing something: *Elvis Presley is a rock and roll legend.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **story**

**leg-end-ar-y** /'ledʒən,deri/ *adjective*

famous and admired: *the legendary baseball player, Babe Ruth*

**leg-i-ble** /'ledʒəbəl/ *adjective*

written or printed clearly enough for you to read: *The teacher gave my paper back because my writing was not legible.* **ANTONYM** *illegible*

**le-gion** /'lidʒən/ *noun, formal*

a large number of people or things: *The singer has legions of fans around the world.*

**leg-is-late** /'ledʒə,sleɪt/ **[Ac]** *verb, formal*

to make a law about something: *Congress will try to legislate new health care changes.*

—**legislator** *noun* someone who has the power to make new laws: *A group of legislators will meet with members of the public to discuss the issue.*

**leg-is-la-tion** /,ledʒə'sleɪʃən/ **[Ac]** *noun, formal*

a law or set of laws: *Congress wants to pass new legislation to (=pass it) reduce teenage smoking.*

**leg-is-la-tive** /'ledʒə,sleɪtɪv/ **[Ac]** *adjective, formal*

**1** relating to laws or to making laws: *Congress's legislative powers*

**2** the **legislative branch** = the part of a government that makes laws

**leg-is-la-ture** /'ledʒə,sleɪʃər/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a group of people who make or change laws in a government: *the Ohio state legislature*

**le-git-i-mate** /lə'dʒɪtəmət/ *adjective*

**1** a legitimate feeling, reason, remark, etc. is one that is completely reasonable: *She has a legitimate reason for not coming to school – her mother is very sick.*

**2** done or made in a way that is allowed by

law: *It is only legitimate to use the software if you have paid for it.* **ANTONYM** *illegal*

—**legitimacy** *noun* the fact of whether something is legitimate or not: *We have questions about the legitimacy of the election because too many people were not allowed to vote.*

—**legitimize** *verb* to make something legitimate: *Nothing can legitimize the killing of innocent people.*

**lei-sure** /'liʒər/ *noun*

the time when you are not at school or working and can do things that you enjoy: *I like to play soccer and video games in my leisure time.*

**lei-sure-ly** /'liʒərli/ *adjective*

done in a slow and relaxed way: *They took a leisurely walk around the park.*

**lem-on** /'lemən/ *noun*

a yellow fruit with a juice that tastes sour: *There was a slice of lemon with each piece of fish.* | *lemon juice*

—**lemony** *adjective* tasting or smelling of lemon

→ See picture on page A13

**lem-on-ade** /,lemə'neɪd/ *noun*

a drink made with lemon juice, sugar, and water: *a nice cold glass of lemonade*

**lend** /lend/ *verb* *lent* /lent/

**1** to let someone have some money or something that belongs to you for a short time: *Could you lend me your bike for the weekend? I want to go for a bike ride.*

**USAGE: lend**

If you **lend** something to someone, you give it to him or her so that she or he can use it for a short time: *I lent that DVD to Rick.* | *Mom, could you lend me some money?*

You cannot say “Could you borrow me some money?”

If you **borrow** something from someone, you take something that someone gives you for a short time, and then you give it back: *Can I borrow your pen?*

You cannot say “Can I lend your pen?”

**2** if a bank lends you money, it gives it to you but you must pay it back within a certain time and pay an additional amount of money called “interest”: *The bank lends money to people who want to start a business.*



**length** /leŋθ/ *noun*

**1** the distance from one end of something to the other end: *The length of the room is ten feet. | The pole was about 7 feet in length.*

**2** the amount of time during which something happens or continues: *The length of summer vacation is about ten weeks.*

**length-en** /'leŋθən/ *verb*

to make something longer: *I need to lengthen this dress – it's too short for me. | There are new plans to lengthen the school day from 6 and a half to 7 hours.* **ANTONYM** shorten

**length-wise** /'leŋθwaɪz/ *also***length-ways** /'leŋθweɪz/ *adverb*

in the direction or position of something's longest side: *Fold the cloth lengthwise.*

**length-y** /'leŋθi/ *adjective, formal*

continuing for a long time: *We had a lengthy discussion about my work that took over an hour.*

**le-ni-ent** /'liniənt/ *adjective, formal*

punishing someone in a way that is not as severe as people expect: *I think judges are too lenient with drunk drivers; they should take the drunk driver's license away the first time.*

—**leniency** *noun* lenient behavior or a lenient attitude

—**leniently** *adverb*

**lens** /lenz/ *noun*

a piece of curved glass or plastic that makes things look bigger, smaller, or clearer: *His glasses had thick lenses in them. | a camera lens*

**lent** /lent/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of LEND

**len-til** /'lentəl/ *noun*

a small round seed which has been dried and can be cooked

**Le-o** /'liu/ *noun*

**1** the fifth sign of the ZODIAC, represented by a lion

**2** someone born between July 23 and August 22

**leop-ard** /'lepərd/ *noun*

a large wild cat with yellow fur and black spots, from Africa and southern Asia

**les-bi-an** /'lezbɪən/ *noun*

a woman who is sexually attracted to other women

—**lesbian** *adjective* relating to lesbians

**less<sup>1</sup>** /les/ *adverb*

**1** **less important/likely/busy, etc.** = not so important, likely, etc.: *People who exercise regularly are less likely to develop heart disease. | This hotel is less expensive than the other one, but it's not as nice.* **ANTONYM** more

**2** happening fewer times or for a shorter time: *I see him much less than I used to.* **ANTONYM** more

**3** **less and less** = in a way that becomes less in amount: *I began to think less and less about our fight, and I finally forgot about it.*

**less<sup>2</sup>** *adjective, pronoun*

**1** a smaller amount: *I'm trying to exercise more and eat less to lose weight. | He earns less money than some of his friends, but he has less stress. | She spends less of her time studying now that she has a job. | Which dress costs less? The red one or the pink one?* **ANTONYM** more

**GRAMMAR: less****less, fewer**

Use **less** before nouns that are things you cannot count: *There is less water in this cup than in that one. | This book has less information than the other one.*

Use **fewer** before nouns whose form shows that there is more than one: *There were fewer cars on the roads in the 1950s. | Fewer people were in the class than I expected.*

**2** **less and less** = in a way that gets smaller in amount: *My boyfriend and I have been spending less and less time together. We might break up.*

**less-en** /'lesən/ *verb*

to become less, or to make something become less: *If you wear a seatbelt, you lessen the chances that you will be hurt in a car accident. | The little girl's fear lessened a little when she saw her mother.* **ANTONYM** increase

→ See Thesaurus box at **reduce**



**less·er** /'lesə/ adjective, formal

not as large, as important, or as much as something else: *These wounds would have killed a lesser man* (=someone not as strong or brave).

**les·son** /'lesən/ noun

a period of time when someone teaches you something: *I have a guitar lesson today.* | *Hannah is taking swimming lessons at the YMCA pool.*

**let** /let/ verb let, letting

**1** to allow someone to do something, or allow something to happen: *I wanted to go, but my mom wouldn't let me.* | *Let me finish this, and then we can go.*

**2** to allow someone or something to come into or go out of a place: *Security guards refused to let reporters into the building.* | *He opened the door to let the dog out.*

**3 let go** = to stop holding someone or something: *The boy was holding the toy car and refused to let go.* | *You can let go of my hand after we cross the street.*

**4 let someone go** = to allow someone to go, after you have been keeping them somewhere: *The police let him go after asking him some questions.* **SYNONYM** release

**5 let someone know** = to tell someone something: *I'll let you know when dinner is ready.*

**6 let me do something** = said when you are offering to help someone: *Let me carry that for you.*

→ **let's**

**PHRASAL VERB**

**let someone down**

to make someone feel disappointed because you have not done what he or she wanted or expected you to do: *You can trust John – he won't let you down.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **allow**

**let·down** /'letdaʊn/ noun

something that makes you feel disappointed because it is not as good as you expected: *Our hotel was a big letdown – the rooms were very small and not very clean.* **SYNONYM** disappointment

**le·thal** /'liθəl/ adjective

lethal weapons or substances can kill someone: *The drug can be lethal if you take too much of it.*

**let's** /lets/

the short form of “let us,” used when you want to suggest that someone or a group of people do something with you: *I'm hungry – let's eat.* | *Let's not talk about this right now.*

**let·ter** /'letə/ noun

**1** a written message that you put into an envelope and send to someone by mail: *I wrote a letter to my mother telling her that I was coming to visit.* | *I got a letter from the college about my application.* | *Can you mail this letter on your way to work?*

**2** one of the signs in writing that represents a sound in speech: *There are 26 letters in the English alphabet.*

**let·tuce** /'letɪs/ noun

a green vegetable with large thin leaves joined together at the bottom, that you eat raw in SALADS

→ See picture on page A12

**let·up** /'letʌp/ noun

a pause or a reduction in something unpleasant or difficult: *There's no sign of a letup in the rain – it's supposed to continue all weekend.*

**leu·ke·mia** /lu'kimɪə/ noun

a serious disease that affects the blood and that can cause death: *Her son had leukemia and died last year.*

**lev·ee** /'levi/ noun

a wall that is built to stop a river from flooding

**lev·el** /'levəl/ noun

**1** the amount or degree of something, compared to another amount or degree: *People have shown a high level of interest in the subject and have been asking for more information.* | *The price of gas stayed at that high level through the summer.*

**2** the height or position of something in relation to the ground or to another thing: *The water level in the lake is very high and houses near the shore have flooded.*

**3** a standard of skill or ability in a particular subject, sport, etc.: *Rick played football at the highest level – the Superbowl.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **flat**<sup>1</sup>



**level<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**1** flat and not sloping, with no part higher than any other part: *The floor isn't level so the furniture doesn't sit straight.*

**2** at the same height as something else: *The top of my head was level with his chin, so I had to look up to see his face.*

**level<sup>3</sup>** verb

**1** to knock down or completely destroy a building or area: *An earthquake leveled several buildings in the city.*

**2** to make a surface flat and smooth: *Level the ground before putting the brick sidewalk down.*

**lev·er** /'levə/ noun

**1** a long handle that you pull or push to make a machine start

**2** a long piece of metal used for lifting something heavy. You put one end under the object and push down on the other end

**lev·er·age** /'levərɪdʒ/ noun, formal

influence that you can use to make people do what you want: *Small businesses have less leverage with banks than big businesses do because they don't have as much money as the big businesses.*

**li·a·ble** /'laɪəbəl/ adjective

**1** **be liable to do something** = to be likely to do something: *Remind me to call her because I'm liable to forget.*

**2** legally responsible for something and having to pay money as a result: *Should cigarette companies be liable for a smoker's health problems?*

—**liability** /,laɪ'bɪləti/ noun legal responsibility for the cost of something: *The airline tried to deny liability for the accident.*

**li·ar** /'laɪə/ noun

someone who deliberately says something that is not true: *You're a liar! I didn't say that.*

**li·bel** /'laɪbəl/ noun

the illegal act of writing or printing things about someone that are not true: *He is suing the magazine for libel because it reported that he stole something when he did not.*

**lib·eral<sup>1</sup>** /'lɪbərəl/ **[Ac]** adjective

willing to accept or respect other people's ideas and behavior even if it is different from your own: *a liberal church that welcomes people of other religions* **ANTONYM conservative**

**liberal<sup>2</sup>** noun

someone with liberal opinions or principles: *Political liberals want to spend more on education.* **ANTONYM conservative**

—**liberalism** noun the attitude or behavior of liberals

**liberal 'arts** plural noun

subjects that develop someone's general knowledge and ability to think, rather than technical skills: *liberal arts such as history and sociology* | *a liberal arts college*

**lib·eral·ize** /'lɪbrə,laɪz/ **[Ac]** verb, formal to make a system or laws less strict so that people have more freedom: *The state government plans to liberalize gambling laws and allow more casinos.*

**lib·er·ate** /'lɪbə,reɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**1** to free prisoners, a city, a country, etc. from someone's control: *The U.S. army liberated the town from the Nazis in 1945.*

**2** to free someone from feelings or situations that make his or her life difficult: *Machines such as dishwashers have liberated us from a lot of hard work at home*

—**liberator** noun someone or something that liberates people or places: *The people believed he was a liberator who could end the dictator's rule.*

—**liberation** /,lɪbə'reɪʃən/ noun the act of liberating prisoners, a city, country, etc. *the liberation of Eastern Europe*

**lib·er·ty** /'lɪbə,ti/ noun plural **liberties**

**1** the freedom to do what you want without too much control from a government or authority: *The people of this country fought for liberty and democracy.*

**2** a particular legal right: *The new law will protect religious liberties so that all people can worship as they choose.*

**Li·bra** /'lɪbrə/ noun

**1** the seventh sign of the ZODIAC, represented by a SCALE

**2** someone born between September 23 and October 23

**li·brar·y** /'laɪ,breri/ noun plural **libraries**

a room or building containing books that you can borrow or read there: *He borrowed a book from the school library.* | *library books*

—**librarian** /laɪ'brerɪən/ noun someone who works in a library



**lice** /laɪs/ *noun*  
the plural of LOUSE

**li·cense**<sup>1</sup> /'laɪsəns/ **Ac** *noun*

an official document that gives you permission to own something or do something: *He doesn't have a driver's license so he can't drive. | You can't carry a gun without a license.*

**license**<sup>2</sup> *verb*

to give official permission for someone to own or do something: *Williams is not licensed to practice law in New York.*

**'license plate** *noun*

one of the signs with numbers and letters on it on the back or front of a car

→ See picture on page A28

**lick** /lɪk/ *verb*

to move your tongue across the surface of something: *The dog jumped up and licked her face.*

**lic·o·rice** /'lɪkərɪs/ *noun*

a type of black or red candy with a strong taste

**lid** /lɪd/ *noun*

a cover for a pot, box, or other container: *He carefully lifted the lid of the box to see what was inside.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **cover**<sup>2</sup>

→ See picture on page A9

**lie**<sup>1</sup> /laɪ/ *verb* lay /leɪ/ lain /leɪn/ lying

**1** to be in a position in which your body is flat on the floor, a bed, etc.: *We lay on the beach all day.*

**2** also **lie down** to put yourself in a position in which your body is flat on the floor, a bed, etc.: *I'm going upstairs to lie down. | He lay on the floor and went to sleep.*

**lie**<sup>2</sup> *verb* lied /laɪd/ lying

to deliberately tell someone something that is not true: *She lied about her age and said she was 30 when she was really 35. | Don't lie to me! I can tell if you're not telling the truth.*

#### THESAURUS: lie

**make something up** to think of and tell someone something that is not true: *"What'll you tell your mother?" "I'll make something up."*

**fib** *informal* to tell someone a lie about something that is not important: *Were you fibbing when you said you didn't see what happened?*

**tell a lie** to say something that you know is not true: *I didn't want to tell a lie, but I didn't want to get Brian in trouble, either.*

**invent** to think of an idea, story, etc. that is not true: *If I can't find a reason, I'll invent one.*

**mislead** *formal* to make someone believe something that is not true by giving him or her false or incomplete information: *The ads mislead people about how healthy the diet is.*

**deceive** *formal* to make someone believe something that is not true: *During the war, both sides sent false messages to deceive the enemy.*

#### USAGE: lie

**Lie** has two different meanings:

– to be or move into a flat position on the floor, a bed, etc.: *She was lying on the sofa.*

The past tense for this meaning of **lie** is **lay**: *He lay on the bed.*

– to say something that is not true: *Why did you lie to me?*

The past tense for this meaning of **lie** is **lied**: *The police think that he lied.*

**Lay** means to put something down in a flat position. The past tense for this is **laid**: *She laid the newspaper down and picked up the phone.*

**lie**<sup>3</sup> *noun*

something that you say which you know is not true: *My teacher made me stay after school for telling her a lie.*

**lieu·ten·ant** /lu'tenənt/ *noun*, written abbreviation **Lt.** or **Lieut.**

**1** an officer who has a fairly low rank in the Army, Air Force, Navy, or Marines: *He's a lieutenant in the Army. | Lieutenant Patrick Smith*

**2** an officer who has a fairly high rank in the police force

**life** /laɪf/ *noun* plural **lives** /laɪvz/

**1** the period of time between someone's birth and death: *Charles lived in New York City all his life. | She spent her life helping others.*



**2** the state of being alive: *Surgery could save her life.* | *Firemen risked their lives to save him* (=did something that could have killed them to save him).

**3** all the experiences and activities that are typical of a particular way of living: *Life in the city is very exciting.*

**4** the type of experience that someone has during his or her life: *Tia had a full and happy life.* | *My social life is pretty boring right now, because I have so much studying to do.*

**5** living things such as people, animals, or plants: *Do you think there is life on other planets?*

**6** activity or movement: *The house looked empty, and there were no signs of life.* | *Katie was young and full of life* (=very cheerful and active).

**7** human existence, and all the things that can happen during someone's life: *Life can be hard sometimes.*

**8** **real life** = things that really happen, rather than things that happen in a story or in someone's imagination: *Don't believe everything you see on TV – it's not like that in real life.*

**life-boat** /'laɪfbəʊt/ *noun*

a small boat that a big ship carries, and that people go into if the big ship sinks: *The ship did not have enough lifeboats for everyone on it so many people drowned.*

**life cycle** *noun*

all the stages in the life of an animal or plant, as it develops and changes into different forms: *In Biology today, we learned about the life cycle of the butterfly.*

**life insurance** *noun*

a type of insurance that pays money to your family when you die

**life jacket** *noun*

a piece of equipment that you wear around your chest to stop you from sinking in the water

**life-less** /'laɪfləs/ *adjective*

**1** not exciting or interesting: *a lifeless, boring party*

**2** dead or seeming to be dead: *They pulled her lifeless body from the river.*

**life-like** /'laɪflaɪk/ *adjective*

very much like a real person or thing: *The statue was so lifelike that I thought it was a real person.*

**life-long** /'laɪflɒŋ/ *adjective*

continuing all through your life: *She had a lifelong interest in birds.*

**life pre-server** *noun*

a thing shaped like a ring that you use in water to stop yourself from sinking

**life raft** *noun*

a small rubber boat filled with air, that you can use if your ship sinks or your airplane crashes

**life sentence** *noun*

the punishment of sending someone to prison for the rest of his or her life: *The judge gave him a life sentence for the murder.*

**life-style** /'laɪfstɑɪl/ *noun*

the way in which you live, and what kinds of activities you do: *She has a very healthy lifestyle: she eats well and exercises daily.*

**life-time** /'laɪftaɪm/ *noun*

the period of time during which someone is alive: *I never thought that there would be another big war in my lifetime.*

**lift**<sup>1</sup> /lɪft/ *verb*

**1** also **lift up** to move something up into the air: *Lift up your feet so I can sweep the floor.*

**2** to go up into the air: *The fog started to lift and the sun came out.*

**3** to end a rule or a law that says that something is not allowed: *The government has lifted the ban on traveling to the area.*

**4** *informal* to steal something or copy someone else's words, ideas, etc.: *Parts of her essay were lifted directly from the Internet.*

SYNONYM **copy**

→ See picture on page A4

**lift**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

**1** something that makes something more successful, or that makes someone feel happier: *The economy needs a lift, and the president hopes the tax cut will help.*

**2** something that makes something else move upward: *We rode the ski lift to the top of the mountain.*

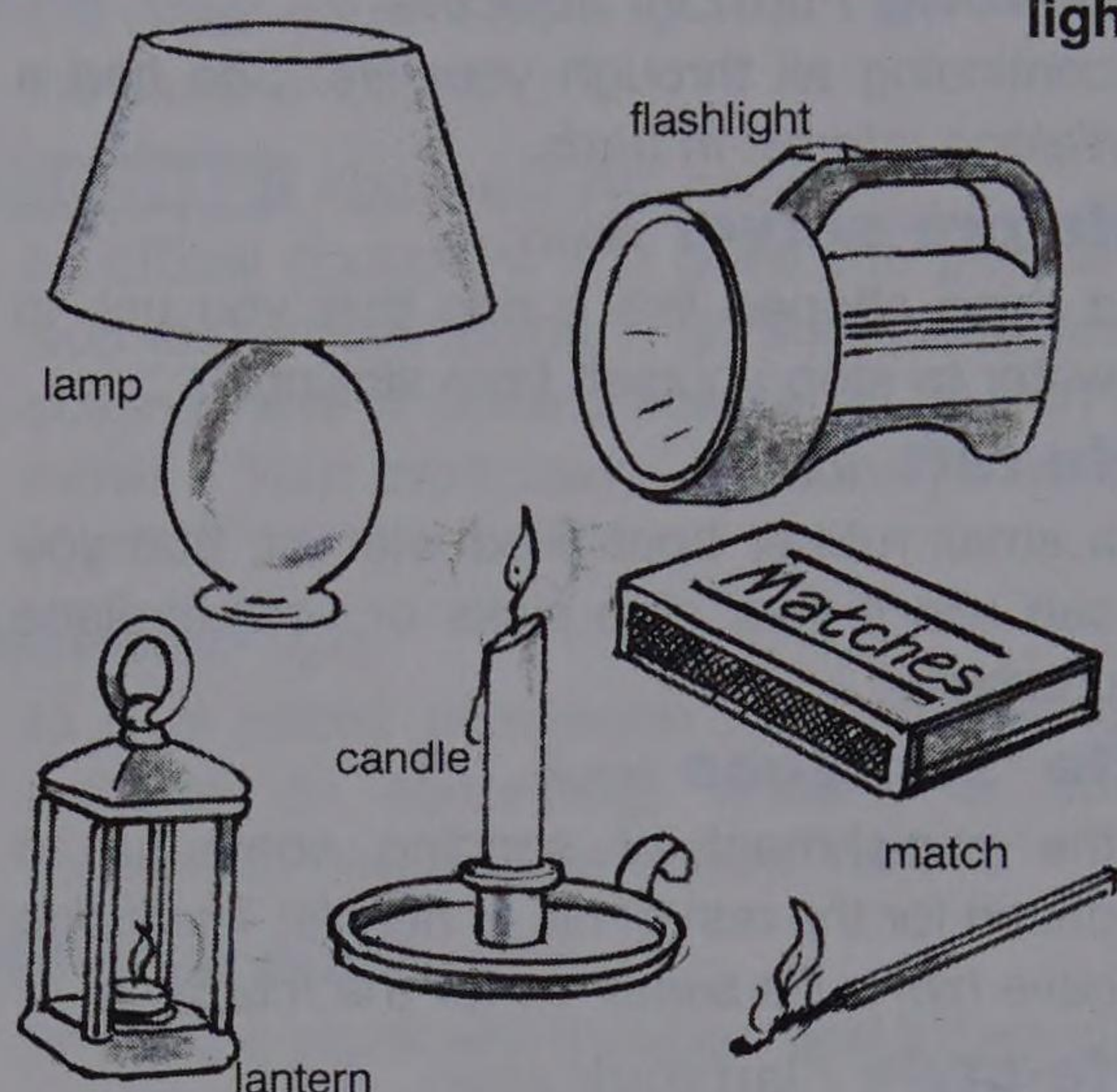
**3** an occasion when you take someone somewhere in your car: *Can I give you a lift to school?* SYNONYM **ride**

**lift off** *noun*

the moment when a space vehicle leaves the ground and rises up into the air: *After lift-off the rocket shot up into the sky.*



## light

**light**<sup>1</sup> /laɪt/ noun

**1** the brightness from the sun, a lamp, etc. that allows you to see things: *The room was very dark and there wasn't much light.*

ANTONYM **dark**

**2** a thing that produces light, for example an electric lamp: *Don't forget to turn off the lights.*

**3** a set of red, green, and yellow lights used for controlling traffic: *Turn left at the light.*

**4** a different/new, etc. **light** = a different, new, etc. way of thinking about someone or something: *I now thought of him in a different light.*

**light**<sup>2</sup> adjective

**1** not weighing very much: *The box is very light.* ANTONYM **heavy**

**2** a light color is not dark and seems to have a lot of white mixed into it: *a light blue dress* SYNONYM **pale**; ANTONYM **dark**

**3** if it is light, the sky is not dark: *It gets light at about 5 a.m. in the summer.*

**4** light clothes are thin and not very warm: *She put on a light sweater when it got cooler in the evening.* ANTONYM **thick**

**5** a light wind is not strong: *a light breeze* ANTONYM **strong**

**6** if something is light, there is only a small amount of it: *light rain* | *The traffic was light on the freeway.* ANTONYM **heavy**

**7** gentle and soft: *She gave him a light kiss on the cheek.*

**8** **make light of something** = to joke about something or to treat it as if it were not

important: *I don't want to make light of her problems.*

—**lightness** noun

**light**<sup>3</sup> verb lit /lɪt/ or lighted

**1** to make something start burning or producing light: *We lit a fire to keep ourselves warm.*

**2** to give light to something: *The room is lit by candles.*

## PHRASAL VERB

**light up**

**1** **light something up** = to make something become bright: *Fireworks lit up the night sky.*

**2** if your face or eyes light up, you show that you are happy or excited: *Paula's eyes lit up when she saw all of her presents.*

**3** to make a cigarette start burning

**light bulb** noun

the round glass part of a lamp that uses electricity to produce light

**light-en** /'laɪtn/ verb

**1** formal to become brighter: *The sky started to lighten and the sun came out.* ANTONYM

**darken**

**2** to make something less heavy: *I took some boxes out of the car to lighten the load.*

## PHRASAL VERB

**lighten up**

to stop being so serious: *He needs to lighten up and stop worrying about his work.*

**light-er** /'laɪtə/ noun

a small object that produces a flame to light cigarettes, CIGARS, etc.

**light-headed** adjective

unable to think clearly or move steadily, for example because you have drunk alcohol or you are sick: *The wine was making me feel light-headed.* SYNONYM **dizzy**

**light-house**

/'laɪthaus/ noun

a tall building near the ocean with a very bright light at the top that warns ships of danger

**light-ing** /'laɪtɪŋ/

noun

the kind of light, or the system used to

**lighthouse**



produce light: *The lighting wasn't very good and it was hard to read the map.*

**light·ly** /'laɪtli/ *adverb*

gently: *I tapped her lightly on the shoulder so as not to scare her.*

**light·ning**

/'laɪtnɪŋ/ *noun*

a bright flash of light in the sky that happens during a storm: *The tree was hit by lightning and split in two.*



**light·weight**

/'laɪtweɪt/ *noun*

a BOXER who weighs between 126 and 135 pounds

**light year** *noun*

the distance that light travels in one year: *The star is millions of light years away from the Earth.*

**lik·a·ble** /'laɪkəbəl/ *adjective*

a likable person is nice and easy to like: *She's funny and likable and has lots of friends.*

**like<sup>1</sup>** /laɪk/ *preposition, conjunction*

**1** similar to another person or thing: *Ken looks like his brother.* | *The Earth is round like a ball.* **ANTONYM** **unlike**

**2** used when you are giving examples for what you are talking about. Many teachers do not think that using like in this way is correct, and use "such as" instead: *Vegetables like broccoli and carrots are very good for you.* **SYNONYM** **such as**

**3** typical of a person or thing, or what they usually do: *It's not like Nancy to be late* (=she is usually not late).

**4** *informal* used when you are describing someone or something: *He acts like he knows everything.* | *"What was the movie like?" "It was good."*

→ See Thesaurus box at **enjoy**, **similar**

**like<sup>2</sup>** *verb*

**1** to think that someone or something is nice or good, or to enjoy doing something: *I never liked her brother very much.* | *She likes driving.* | *He doesn't like to talk about himself.* **ANTONYM** **dislike**

**GRAMMAR: like**

Do not say "I am liking it" or "I am liking to do it." Say "I like it" or "I like to do it."

Do not say "I am liking very much Anna." Say "I like Anna very much."

**2** to think that someone is nice and attractive: *"Do you like Jeff?" "Yeah, he's really cute."*

**3** **would like/'d like** = a polite way of saying "want": *I'd like a large pizza with mushrooms.*

**4** **How do you like ...?** = used when asking someone's opinion about something: *"How do you like your new house?" "It's okay."*

**like·ly** /'laɪkli/ *adjective*

if something is likely, it will probably happen or is probably true: *It's likely to rain tomorrow.*

—**likelihood** *noun* the state of being likely: *What is the likelihood of getting the disease?*

**like·ness** /'laɪknəs/ *noun*

the image of someone in a painting, photograph, STATUE, etc.: *The stamp had a likeness of President Lincoln on it.*

**likes and dislikes** *plural noun*

the things that you like and do not like: *Children have strong likes and dislikes about food.*

**like·wise** /'laɪk-waɪz/ **[Ac]** *adverb*

**1** *formal* in the same way: *The boss stood up, and everyone else did likewise.*

**2** used when saying that you feel the same as the other person: *"It's great to see you." "Likewise."*

**lik·ing** /'laɪkɪŋ/ *noun*

the feeling when you like someone or something: *He's always had a liking for ice cream and usually orders it for dessert.*

**li·lac** /'laɪlək/ *noun*

**1** a small tree with purple or white flowers, which has a nice smell

**2** a light purple color

—**lilac** *adjective*

**lil·y** /'lɪli/ *noun* plural **lilies**

a plant with large flowers, which are usually white or yellow: *There was a beautiful bunch of lilies in a vase.*

**limb** /lɪm/ *noun, formal*

**1** an arm or leg: *He had a fever and all his limbs were shaking.*



**2** a large branch of a tree: *The cat climbed the tree and sat on one of the limbs.*

**lime** /laɪm/ noun

a small round green fruit that has a sour taste: *a lime tree* | *Squeeze some lime juice on the fish.*

→ See picture on page A13

**lim·it**<sup>1</sup> /'lɪmɪt/ noun

**1** the greatest amount, number, or distance that is allowed or is possible: *The speed limit is 65 miles per hour.* | *There is a limit on how much money you can take out of the bank at one time.*

**2** the edge or border of something: *Students are not allowed outside the school limits during school hours.*

**3** **be off limits** = if a place is off limits, you are not allowed to go there: *The beach is off limits after dark.*

**limit**<sup>2</sup> verb

to stop an amount or number from getting bigger than a particular amount: *Class size is limited to 30.* | *I limit the amount of TV my kids watch. Otherwise, they would watch it all day.*

—**limited** adjective small in number or amount: *There are a limited number of tickets, so get yours early.*

**lim·o** /'lɪmoʊ/ noun, informal

a LIMOUSINE

**lim·ou·sine** /'lɪmə,zɪn/ noun

a big expensive car that is longer than a normal car, and that is driven by someone who is paid to drive: *The band arrived at the concert in a big white limousine.*

**limp**<sup>1</sup> /lɪmp/ adjective

hanging down loosely, in a way that is not stiff or firm: *The hot weather made my hair limp and unattractive.*

—**limply** adverb: *Her weak arm hung limply at her side.*

**limp**<sup>2</sup> verb

to walk with difficulty because your leg or foot is hurt: *He limped off the soccer field after he was knocked down.*

—**limp** noun a way of walking with difficulty because your leg or foot is hurt: *After the accident he always walked with a limp.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **walk**<sup>1</sup>

**line**<sup>1</sup> /laɪn/ noun

**1** a long thin mark on a surface: *She drew a line across the page.* | *He reached the finish line at the end of the race.*

**2** a row of people or things: *A long line of cars was waiting to buy gas.* | *Mia stood in line at the cafeteria to get her food.* | *If you want to buy tickets, you'd better get in line.*

**3** a long piece of string or rope: *I hung the wet clothes on the line.* | *a fishing line* (=for catching fish)

**4** a border between two states or countries: *I didn't stop driving until I crossed the state line into Kansas.*

**5** the direction something travels, or the imaginary path between two points in space: *Light travels in a straight line – it doesn't curve.*

**6** a single row of words in a poem, play, song, book, etc.: *I only know the first three lines of the poem.*

**7** a wire or connection, for example for electricity or the telephone: *The strong winds blew the power lines down.* | *I tried to call him, but the line was busy* (=someone was already using the telephone).

**8** **on line** = using a computer that is connected to the Internet to get information or communicate with other people: *I buy a lot of books on line from home – it's easier than going to the store.*

**9** **out of line** informal = not acceptable in that situation: *What he did was out of line, and he will be punished.*

**line**<sup>2</sup> verb

**1** to cover the inside of something with something else: *We lined the box with old cloths to make it soft for the kittens.* | *The coat was lined with wool.*

**2** to form a line along the edge of something: *Trees line the streets.*

**PHRASAL VERB**

**line up**

to form a line of people or things: *The fans were already lining up outside the stadium.*

**lin·en** /'lɪnən/ noun

**1** a kind of cloth used to make clothes, to cover tables, etc., that is made from a plant called flax: *a cool linen shirt*

**2** **bed/table linen** formal = the sheets that you put on the bed, or the cloth that you put on a table



**lin·er** /'laɪnə/ noun

a large ship for carrying people: *They sailed to Hawaii on an ocean liner.*

**line·up** /'laɪnʌp/ noun

**1** the list of players or performers who are going to take part in a game or concert: *He won't be in the lineup for tonight's basketball game because of an injury.*

**2** a set of events, programs, etc. that have been arranged to happen one after the other: *Friday night's TV lineup includes three comedy shows.*

**lin·ger** /'lɪŋgə/ also **linger on** verb, formal

to stay somewhere for a long time: *The smell of onions lingered in the kitchen and Darla could not cover it up.*

**lin·ge·rie** /,lɪnʒə'reɪ/ noun, formal  
women's underwear**lin·guis·tics** /lɪŋ'gwɪstɪks/ noun, formal  
the study of languages, including their grammar and history**lin·ing** /'laɪnɪŋ/ noun

a piece of material covering the inside of a coat, box, etc.: *a jacket with a red lining*

**link<sup>1</sup>** /lɪŋk/ **Ac** verb

**1** to say or show that two things are related, so that one thing causes or affects the other: *Smoking is linked to cancer.*

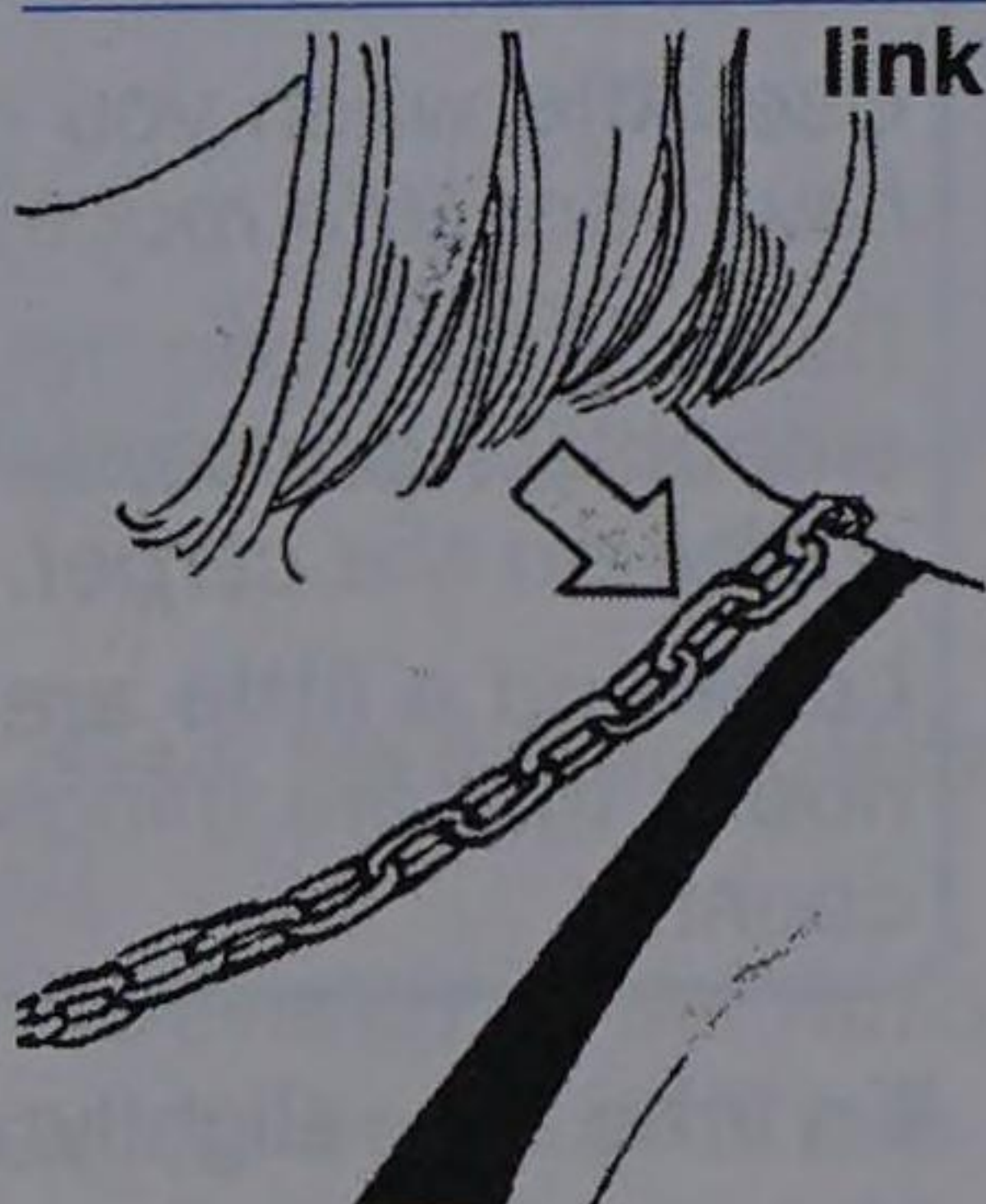
**2** also **link something up** to connect two things or places together: *You can link your computer up to the Internet with this cable. | The highway links two major cities.*

**link<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a relationship or connection between two or more things or people: *Do you think that there is a link between the two murders, or are they unrelated?*

**2** one of the rings in a chain: *One of the links on my necklace has broken.*

**3** a **satellite/telephone/rail, etc. link** = something that makes it possible to communicate or travel between different places: *The reporters sent the pictures back to the TV studio using a satellite link.*

**li·no·le·um** /lɪ'noʊliəm/ noun

smooth material that is used to cover a floor: *The linoleum on the kitchen floor is easy to keep clean.*

**lint** /lɪnt/ noun

soft small pieces of thread that come off cotton, wool, or other material

**li·on** /'laɪən/ noun

a large wild cat that lives in Africa: *Male lions have long thick hair around their necks.*

**lip** /lɪp/ noun

**1** one of the two outer parts of your mouth: *She kissed him on the lips.*

**2** the top edge of a container such as a cup or a bowl: *Soup had spilled over the lip of the bowl.*

→ See picture on page A2

**lip·stick** /'lɪp,stɪk/ noun

a substance that women use to put color on their lips, to make them look more attractive: *I usually wear lipstick if I'm going out in the evening.*

**liq·ue·fy** /'lɪkwə,fai/ verb liquified, third person singular liquifies formal

to change into a liquid: *The gas liquefies when it is cooled to a low temperature.*

**liq·uid** /'lɪkwɪd/ noun

a substance such as water that is not a solid or a gas: *There was still some liquid in the bottle.*

—**liquid** adjective not a solid or a gas: *a bottle of liquid soap*

**liq·uor** /'lɪkə/ noun

a strong alcoholic drink such as WHISKEY: *The bar sells whiskey, vodka, and other kinds of liquor.*

**'liquor store** noun

a store where alcohol is sold

**list<sup>1</sup>** /lɪst/ noun

a set of things that you write one below the other: *Make a list of the things you'll need. | Is my name on the list?*

**list<sup>2</sup>** verb

to write or say a list of things: *List your ten favorite movies, starting with the one you like the best.*

**lis·ten** /'lɪsən/ verb

**1** to pay attention to what someone is saying or to a sound such as music: *Listen*



carefully – this is important. | He was listening to a CD.

**2** *informal* used when you want someone to pay attention to what you are saying: *Listen, Amanda, it's time to clean up your room.*

**3** **listen up!** *informal* = said in order to get a group of people's attention when you are going to say something important: *Okay, class, listen up! Turn to page 33.*

—**listener** *noun* someone who listens to what people are saying, or to a radio station: *Do you want to talk about it? I'm a good listener.*

**list·ing** /'listɪŋ/ *noun*

a list, or something that is on a list: *She checked the TV listings to see if there was anything good on TV.*

**lit**<sup>1</sup> /lɪt/ *verb*

the past tense and past participle of **LIGHT**

**lit**<sup>2</sup> *adjective*

burning or having light: *The room was brightly lit and everyone's face was clearly visible.*

**lite** /laɪt/ *adjective*

used in the names of types of food and drinks that have less fat, sugar, or alcohol than other types

**li·ter** /'lɪtə/ *noun*

written abbreviation | a unit for measuring liquids, equal to 0.26 gallons: *a liter of water*

**lit·er·a·cy** /'lɪtərəsi/ *noun*

the ability to read and write: *We provide literacy programs (=classes to teach reading and writing) for adults.*

**lit·er·al** /'lɪtərəl/ *adjective*

the literal meaning of a word is its basic or first meaning: *The fight against crime is not a fight in the literal sense (=it does not mean trying to physically hurt someone).*

**lit·er·al·ly** /'lɪtərəli/ *adverb*

used when saying that you are using the basic meaning of a word, or that you mean exactly what you say: *She has literally thousands of books (=several thousand, not just a large number).*

**lit·er·ar·y** /'lɪtə,ri/ *adjective*

relating to literature: *He wrote poems and other literary works.*

**lit·er·ate** /'lɪtərɪt/ *adjective*

able to read and write: *People who are not literate cannot read job application forms.*

ANTONYM **illiterate**

**lit·er·a·ture** /'lɪtərəʃə/ *noun*

good books, plays, poems, etc.: *I studied the book in my American literature class.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **book**<sup>1</sup>

**lit·ter** /'lɪtə/ *noun*

**1** waste paper, cans, etc. that people leave on the ground: *The sidewalks were covered in litter that people had thrown there.*

**2** a group of baby animals born to one mother at the same time: *Our cat just had a litter of five kittens!*

—**litter** *verb* if things litter a place, they are there and make it look messy: *The floor was littered with toys.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **group**<sup>1</sup>, **garbage**

**lit·tle**<sup>1</sup> /'lɪtl/ *adjective, pronoun*

**1** small: *The dog had cute little ears. | The mother was carrying her little girl.*

**2** **less, least** a small amount: *I only know a little Spanish – just the basics. | “Would you like some gravy?” “Just a little.” | Can I have a little bit of milk in my coffee, please? | Little is known about the disease, but scientists are trying to learn more. | We had very little money and could not afford expensive clothes.*

#### GRAMMAR: little

##### little, a little

Use **little** when you mean “not much”: *I have very little money left.*

Use **a little** when you mean “a small amount”: *I accidentally spilled a little coffee on the carpet.*

**Little** and **a little** are always used with nouns that are things that you cannot count.

**3** **a little bit** = slightly: *I wanted to play a little bit longer.*

**4** short in time or distance: *I'll wait a little while and then call again. | Anna walked a little way down the road with him before she turned back.*

**5** not important: *He gets angry over little things.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **small**



**little<sup>2</sup>** adverb

**1** a little = slightly: *I was a little nervous at first, but then I calmed down.*

**2** not much: *I slept very little last night and I'm very tired today.*

**liv·a·ble** also **liveable** /'lɪvəbəl/ adjective  
good enough to live in: *How can we make our cities more livable?*

**live<sup>1</sup>** /lɪv/ verb

**1** to be alive or stay alive: *He was the best athlete who ever lived. | My grandmother lived to be 88 (=stayed alive until she was 88).*

**2** to have your home in a particular place: *I live in Atlanta.*

**3** to have a particular kind of life: *I just want to live a normal life.*

**PHRASAL VERBS****live on/off something**

**1** to eat only a particular kind of food: *These animals live on insects.*

**2** to have a particular amount of money to spend on things you need: *We were living on \$1,500 a month.*

**live up to something**

to be as good as someone expects: *The movie didn't live up to my expectations.*

**live with someone**

to share your home with someone, especially a boyfriend or girlfriend: *Tim's living with a girl he met in college.*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **live** verb
- **life** noun
- **living** adjective
- **alive** adjective

**live<sup>2</sup>** /laɪv/ adjective

**1** live animals are not dead: *He fed the snake live rats.* **ANTONYM** **dead**

**2** a live broadcast on television or the radio lets people see or hear an event as it happens: *There was a live broadcast of the president's speech so people across the country heard it at the same time.*

**3** performed for people who are there watching: *The club has live music three nights a week. The other nights, they have a DJ who plays CDs.*

—**live** adverb broadcast as something is

actually happening: *The ceremony will be broadcast live on television.*

**live-in** /'lɪv ɪn/ adjective

living in the same home as the person you work for, or living in the same home as your boyfriend or girlfriend: *a live-in cook*

**live·li·hood** /'laɪvli,hʊd/ noun

the way you earn money in order to live: *Farming is their livelihood, so when crops are bad, they have no money.*

**live·ly** /'laɪvli/ adjective **livelier, liveliest**  
full of activity: *a lively dog with lots of energy | The discussion was lively and some people started shouting.*

**liv·er** /'lɪvə/ noun

**1** a large part inside your body which cleans your blood

**2** the liver of an animal, eaten as meat

→ See picture on page A2

**lives** /laɪvz/ noun

the plural of LIFE

**live·stock** /'laɪvstək/ noun

animals that are kept on a farm: *They keep cows and other livestock.*

**liv·ing<sup>1</sup>** /'lɪvɪŋ/ adjective

alive: *The ocean is full of living things (=animals and plants).* **ANTONYM** **dead**

**living<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** money for things that you need in order to live, or a way of earning money: *"What does he do for a living?" "He works in an office." | It's hard to make a living (=earn enough money) as an actor.*

**2** the living formal = the people who are alive: *We must help the living before burying the dead.*

→ **cost of living**

**living room** noun

the main room in a house, where you sit, watch television, etc.: *Jack was lying on the sofa in the living room, reading.*

**liz·ard** /'lɪzəd/ noun

an animal that has rough skin, short legs, and a long tail: *Lizards are a kind of reptile.*

**'ll** /l, əl/ verb

the short form of "will": *She'll do it tomorrow.*

**load<sup>1</sup>** /ləʊd/ noun

**1** a large amount of something that is carried by a vehicle or person: *The truck was carrying a load of fruit.*

**2** a large amount of something that you have



to do or deal with: *New teachers have a heavy work load – they have to teach five different classes.* | *I put a load of laundry in the washing machine.*

**3 loads of something** *informal* = a lot of something: *He must have loads of money.*

## **load<sup>2</sup>** verb

**1** also **load up** to put things on or into a vehicle: *We loaded the van with boxes to take to the new apartment.* | *They loaded all their luggage into the car.*

**2** to put bullets into a gun, or film into a camera: *He loaded the gun with bullets when he heard the noise downstairs.*

**3** to put a program into a computer: *It doesn't take long to load the software.*

## **loaf** /louf/ noun plural **loaves** /louvz/

bread that has been cooked in one large piece: *I bought a loaf of bread.*

## **loan<sup>1</sup>** /ləʊn/ noun

an amount of money that you borrow, especially from a bank: *He had to get a loan from the bank to buy the car.*

## **loan<sup>2</sup>** verb

to lend someone money: *I loaned him \$200.*

SYNONYM **lend**

## **loaves** /louvz/ noun

the plural of LOAF

## **lob-by** /'lɒbi/ noun plural **lobbies**

**1** a large hall inside the entrance of a building: *Wait for me downstairs in the hotel lobby.*

**2** a group of people who try to persuade the government to do something: *The environmental lobby is becoming more powerful and influential with lawmakers.*

—**lobby** verb to try to persuade the government to do something

—**lobbyist** noun someone who tries to persuade the government to do something

## **lob-ster** /'lɒbstə/

noun

a sea animal which has a hard body and ten legs, two with large CLAWS: *Lobsters turn red when they are cooked.*



**lobster**

## **lo-cal** /'ləʊkəl/ adjective

in or relating to the area where someone lives: *We borrowed books from the local library.*

—**locally** adverb in the area where someone lives: *Most of the fruit we buy is grown locally.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **near<sup>1</sup>**

## **'local time** noun

the time in a particular part of the world: *We'll arrive in Denver at four o'clock local time.*

## **lo-cate** /'ləʊkeɪt/ **[Ac]** verb, formal

**1** **be located** = to be in a particular place: *The hotel is located near the airport, so it's easy to get to.*

**2** to find the place where something is: *The police have located the hidden bomb.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **find**

## **lo-ca-tion** /ləʊ'keɪʃən/ **[Ac]** noun

a particular place or position: *His apartment is in a really good location close to stores and restaurants.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **place<sup>1</sup>**

## **lock<sup>1</sup>** /lɒk/ noun

a thing that keeps a door, drawer, etc. shut, which you open with a key: *This key doesn't open this lock.*

## **lock<sup>2</sup>** verb

to close a door, drawer, etc. with a lock: *Did you remember to lock the door when you left this morning?* | *Her parents locked her in her room (=locked the door so she could not get out).* ANTONYM **unlock**

### **PHRASAL VERB**

#### **lock up**

**1** **lock someone or something up** also **lock someone or something away** = to lock a door, drawer, etc. so that someone or something cannot leave or be taken out: *They should lock up criminals like that and never let them out.*

**2** to lock all the doors of a building: *Don't forget to lock up when you leave.*

## **lock-er** /'lɒkə/ noun

a small cupboard where you leave things you own, especially at school or when you are playing sports

## **'locker room** noun

a room where people change their clothes before playing sports that has lockers in it



**lo-co-mo-tive** /ˌləʊkə'moʊtɪv/ *noun*  
the part of a train that pulls the other parts along **SYNONYM** **engine**

**lodge**<sup>1</sup> /lɒdʒ/ *verb*

**1** to become stuck somewhere: *A fish bone had lodged in his throat.*

**2 lodge a complaint/protest** *formal* = to officially complain about something: *I would like to lodge a complaint with management about the bad service we received.*

**lodge**<sup>2</sup> *noun*

a simple building or hotel in the country or in the mountains where people can stay for a short time: *a ski lodge*

**lodg-ing** /'lɒdʒɪŋ/ *noun*

a place to stay: *The tourist office will help you find lodging when you arrive.*

**loft** /lɒft/ *noun*

an area with a floor that is above a room or in a BARN: *The farmer stored hay in the loft.*

**log**<sup>1</sup> /lɒg/ *noun*

**1** a thick piece of wood cut from a tree: *Put another log on the fire so the flame doesn't go out.*

**2** an official record of things that have happened or been done: *The ship's captain wrote what had happened in the log.*

**log**<sup>2</sup> *verb* **logged, logging**

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**log off/out**

to stop using a computer, computer program, or WEBSITE: *Log off when you're finished using the program.*

**log on/in**

to enter information to start using a computer, computer program, or WEBSITE: *I can't log on because I've forgotten my password.*

**log-ging** /'lɒgɪŋ/ *noun*

the activity of cutting down trees in a forest

**log-ic** /'lɒdʒɪk/ **[Ac]** *noun*

a way of thinking in which you think very carefully about facts and how the facts are related: *The detective used logic to figure out who must have taken the money.*

#### WORD FAMILY look at the words:

- **logic** *noun*
- **logical** *adjective*
- **illogical** *adjective*
- **logically** *adverb*

**log-i-cal** /'lɒdʒɪkəl/ **[Ac]** *adjective*

sensible and based on good thinking: *It seems logical to give kids a good breakfast if we want them to be ready to learn all morning.* **ANTONYM** **illogical**

—**logically** *adverb*

**lo-go** /'ləʊgəʊ/ *noun* plural **logos**

a picture that is the official sign of a company or organization: *The players have the team logo on their helmets.*

**lol-li-pop** /'lɒli,pɒp/ *noun*

a hard candy on the end of a stick

**lone** /ləʊn/ *adjective, formal*

a lone person or thing is the only one that is somewhere or does something: *The lone survivor of the crash was the driver.*

**lone-ly** /'ləʊnli/ *adjective*

**1** unhappy because you are alone: *He is lonely without his wife.*

**2 formal** a long way from where people live: *a lonely country road*

—**loneliness** *noun* the feeling you have when you are lonely

**lone-some** /'ləʊnsəm/ *adjective*

lonely: *I felt so lonesome when she left.*

**long**<sup>1</sup> /lɒŋ/ *adjective*

**1** measuring a large distance from one end to the other: *Julie has long hair.* | *A long line of people waited ahead of me.* **ANTONYM** **short**

**2** continuing for large amount of time: *I had a long talk with him.* | *It happened a long time ago – back in 1853.* **ANTONYM** **short**

**3** used to ask or talk about the length of something: *"How long is the movie?" "About 3 hours."* | *The snake was three feet long.*

**4** a long book has a lot of pages: *The book was long and it took me months to read it.*

**ANTONYM** **short**

**long**<sup>2</sup> *adverb*

**1** also **for long** for a long time: *Have you been waiting long?* | *He didn't stay angry for long. The next day he was fine.*

**2 long before/after** = a long time before or after an event: *He died long before you were born.*

**3 as long as** = if: *You can go as long as you're back by four o'clock.*

**4 no longer also not any longer** = if a situation that existed in the past no longer exists, it does not exist now: *She no longer*



teaches at this school – she’s now at Hansen Middle School.

**5 before long** = soon: *Before long, we arrived at the station.*

**6 so long** = goodbye

**long**<sup>3</sup> verb, formal

to want something very much: *She longed to go home and thought about it every day.*

**long-****distance** adjective

**1 a long-distance (telephone/phone) call** = a telephone call to someone who lives far away: *Long-distance phone calls don’t cost any extra on my cell phone.* **ANTONYM** local

**2** traveling between places that are far away from each other: *long-distance truck drivers* —**long-distance** adverb speaking by telephone to someone who is far away, or traveling long distances: *She called her boyfriend long-distance every night while she was on vacation.*

**long-ing** /'lɒŋɪŋ/ noun, formal

a strong feeling of wanting someone or something very much: *He was filled with longing to be back home.*

—**longingly** adverb, formal: *The boy looked longingly at the cookies in the jar, but his mother said “no.”*

**lon-gi-tude** /'lɒndʒə,tud/ noun

the distance east or west of an imaginary line going from the top of the Earth to the bottom. Longitude is measured in degrees: *The island at longitude 21° west.*

**long jump** noun

**the long jump** = a sport in which you jump as far as possible

**long-****running** adjective **longest-running**

happening continuously for a long time: *The long-running legal battle has now lasted five years.*

**long-****term** adjective

relating to what will happen a long time in the future: *When I was seven years old, my long-term goal was to become a professional baseball player by age 22.* **ANTONYM** short-term

**look**<sup>1</sup> /lʊk/ verb

**1** to move your eyes toward something or something so that you can see them: *David took \$5 from her purse when she wasn’t looking. | She looked at me and smiled.*

## THESAURUS: look

### Look At Something

**glance** to look at someone or something for a short time and then look quickly away: *Kevin glanced at the clock.*

**peek** to quickly look at something, especially something you are not supposed to see: *Close your eyes and don’t peek – I’m going to bring you a surprise.*

**peer** to look very carefully, especially because you cannot see something well: *Hansen peered through the car window at the street signs.*

**stare** to look at someone or something for a long time, especially without closing your eyes: *That man is staring at me!*

**gaze** to look at someone or something for a long time, often without realizing that you are doing it: *Helen gazed out the window at the lake.*

### Look For Something

**search** to look carefully for someone or something: *We searched the whole house for the keys.*

**try to find someone/something** to look for someone or something, especially when this is difficult: *He’s been trying to find a job for six months.*

**seek** formal to try to find someone or something: *You should seek advice from your doctor.*

## USAGE: look

You **look at** a picture, person, thing, etc. because you want to: *Hey, look at the hat that guy is wearing. | Maria was looking at a picture book.*

You **see** something without planning to: *Two people saw him take the woman’s purse. | I saw a big black dog in the park.*

You **watch** TV, a movie, or something that happens for a period of time: *My parents always come to watch me play basketball. | The kids are watching TV.*

You can also say that you saw a movie, a program, etc., but you cannot say “see television”: *I saw a great movie on TV last night.*

**2** to try to find someone or something using your eyes: *I looked everywhere for my car*



keys but I couldn't find them. | "Is there any orange juice?" "Look in the refrigerator."

**3** to try to find someone or something that you need: He says he wants a new job, but he's not looking very hard. | We're looking for a new secretary in my office. Do you know of anyone?

**4** to seem or appear to be something: He doesn't look like a criminal – he seems so nice. | Mom's eyes were closed and she looked tired.

**5 -looking** = having a particular type of appearance: That's a strange-looking dog!

**6 Look...** = said when you are annoyed and you want to emphasize what you are saying: Look, I'm not giving you any money, so don't ask me again!

#### PHRASAL VERBS

##### look after someone

to take care of someone or something: Sarah asked me to look after the children while she went shopping.

##### look ahead

to think about what will happen in the future: You should forget about the past and look ahead to the future.

##### look around (something)

to look at what is in a building, store, place while you are walking: We have about three hours to look around downtown.

##### look forward to something

to be excited and happy about something that is going to happen: I'm really looking forward to seeing my dad when he comes home.

##### look into something

to try to find out the truth about a crime or problem: The police are looking into the cause of the fire.

##### look on

**1** to watch something, without being involved in it: A truck pulled the car out of the mud while several people looked on.

**2 look on/upon something** *formal* = to think about something in a particular way: There are some problems that I have to solve, but I look on them as challenges.

##### look out

**look out!** = use this to tell someone to pay attention because something dangerous is happening: Look out! There's a car coming.

##### look something over *informal*

to examine something quickly: Can you look over this job application before I send it?

##### look up

**1 look something up** = to try to find information in a book: I had to look the word up in the dictionary to find out what it means.

**2 look someone up** = to go to see someone you know when you are visiting the place where he or she lives: Don't forget to look up my parents when you're in Seattle.

##### look up to someone

to admire and respect someone: He looks up to his older brothers and wants to be just like them.

→ See Thesaurus box at **seem**

→ See picture at **see**

#### look<sup>2</sup> noun

**1** an act of looking at something: We decided to take a look around the museum and see what was there.

**2** an expression that you make with your eyes or face to show how you feel: There was a look of hate in his eyes. | Jon gave me a strange look (=looked at me in a strange way).

#### look-out /'lʊk-aʊt/ noun

**1 be on the lookout (for something)** *informal* = to pay attention to things around you in order to find something that you want, or to avoid something bad: We are always on the lookout for talented singers to hire for our club. | Be on the lookout for snakes – they hide in the grass.

**2** someone whose job is to watch carefully for danger

#### looks /lʊks/ plural noun

how attractive someone is: He has the good looks to be a model.

#### loom /lum/ verb, formal

to appear as a large unclear shape that seems dangerous or frightening: The huge house loomed over him in the darkness.

#### loop<sup>1</sup> /lup/ noun

a shape like a circle in a piece of string or wire: The keys were hanging from a loop of string.

#### loop<sup>2</sup> verb

to put a piece of rope, string, etc. around or over something in a shape like a circle: I



looped the rope around the tree and tied a knot.

**loop-hole** /'luphoul/ noun

a small mistake in a law that makes it possible to legally avoid doing what the law intended: *Congress plans to close this loop-hole in the law so that all businesses will have to pay the tax.*

**loose** /lus/ adjective

**1** not firmly attached to something: *I have two loose teeth, and they'll probably fall out soon. | One of the buttons on my shirt is coming loose – I need to sew it on better.*

**2** loose clothes do not fit tightly on your body: *My jeans are loose and comfortable.*

SYNONYM **baggy**

**3** free to move around, not in a CAGE, prison, etc.: *The dogs got loose and started chasing the horses.*

**4** if your hair is loose, it is not tied or kept firmly in place: *Her hair was loose and hung down her back.*

—**loosely** adverb: *His clothes were too big and they hung loosely on her.*

—**looseness** noun

**loose-leaf** adjective

having pages that can be put in or removed easily: *You can add pages to a loose-leaf binder.*

**loos-en** /'lusən/ verb

to make something less tight or less firmly fastened: *He took off his shoes and loosened his tie. | The ropes around her wrist had started to loosen because of her movements.*

**loot** /lut/ verb

to steal things from stores or houses during a war or RIOT: *The mob started looting stores and setting fire to cars.*

—**loot** noun money or things that have been stolen, especially during a war

—**looting** noun the act of stealing things during a war or RIOT

—**looter** noun someone who loots

**lop-sid-ed** /,lɒp'saɪdɪd/ adjective, informal

**1** having one side that is heavier, larger, or lower than the other side: *a lopsided smile*

**2** not equal or fair: *The Red Sox beat Baltimore 10–0 in a lopsided game.*

**lord** also **Lord** /lɔrd/ noun

**1 Lord** also **the Lord** = a title used for God or Jesus Christ, used especially when praying: *Let us give thanks to the Lord our God.*

**2** a man in Britain who has a particular position in the ARISTOCRACY: *the poet, Lord Byron*

**lose** /luz/ verb lost /lɒst/

**1** to stop having something that is important to you or that you need: *Michelle lost her job and needs to get another one quickly. | Her family lost everything they owned in the storm.*

**2** to be unable to find someone or something: *I think I've lost my wallet – I've been looking everywhere for it.*

**3** to not win a game, war, etc.: *Napoleon's army was defeated, and France lost the war. | We played well, but we still lost the game by 2 points.*

**4** to have less of something than before: *I need to lose weight.*

**5 lose your sight/memory/voice, etc.** = to stop being able to see, remember things, talk, etc.: *Grandpa's getting old and losing his hearing.*

**6** to not have a particular quality, attitude, etc. anymore: *Marie lost interest in going to college and decided to get a job instead.*

**7 lose your temper** = to become angry: *Jake lost his temper and started yelling at everyone.*

**8** you say you lose a member of your family when he or she dies: *Mrs. Keenan lost two sons in the war.*

**9 lose your life** = to die: *More than 2,000 people lost their lives in the earthquake.*

**10 lose someone** informal = to confuse someone when you are trying to explain something: *You lost me. Can you explain it again, please?*

**WORD FAMILY** look at the words:

- **lose** verb
- **lost** adjective
- **loser** noun
- **loss** noun

**los-er** noun /'luzə/

**1** someone who loses a competition or game: *The losers of this game will get the silver medal, and the winners will get the gold medal.* ANTONYM **winner**



**2 informal** you use this about someone who you do not like or respect: *Don't go to the dance with him – he's such a loser.*

**loss** /lɒs/ noun

**1** the fact of no longer having something: *weight loss* | *The factory is closing, and there will be many job losses.*

**2** if a business makes a loss, it spends more money than it earns: *The company had huge losses last year, and investors were not happy.*

**3** an occasion when you do not win a game: *The team has 3 wins and 4 losses this season*

**4** the death of someone: *We are all very sad at the loss of a dear friend.*

**lost<sup>1</sup>** /lɒst/ adjective

**1** if you get lost, you do not know where you are or how to get somewhere: *It's easy to get lost in a city this big.* | *We were lost, so we asked a policeman for directions.*

**2** if something is lost, you cannot find it: *I'm calling to report a lost credit card.*

**3 Get lost!** informal = used to tell someone rudely to go away or to stop annoying you

**lost<sup>2</sup>** verb

the past tense and past participle of LOSE

**lost-and-'found** noun

a place where bags, coats, etc. that people have lost are kept until someone comes to get them

**lot** /lɒt/ noun

**1 a lot a)** also **lots informal** a large amount or number: *A million dollars is a lot of money.* | *The police asked me lots of questions, but I couldn't answer them all.* **b)** very much: *I like her a lot – she's a very good friend.* | *We'll get there a lot faster if we drive than if we walk.*

**GRAMMAR: lot**

**a lot of, much, many**

In sentences with “not”, you can use **much** or **many** instead of **a lot of**.

**Much** is used with nouns that are things you cannot count: *There isn't much milk left.*

**Many** is used with nouns that show there is more than one thing or person: *I didn't see many people there that I knew.*

**A lot of** can be used with both types of noun: *There isn't a lot of time to work on this.* | *She doesn't have a lot of friends.*

**2** a small area of land in a town or city that is used for a particular purpose, especially for building houses: *We bought the empty lot next to our house.*

→ **parking lot**

**lo·tion** /'ləʊʃən/ noun

a liquid that you put on your skin in order to make it soft or to protect it: *I put hand lotion on my dry hands.*

**lot·ter·y** /'lɒtəri/ noun plural **lotteries**

a game in which you buy tickets with a series of numbers on them. If your number is picked, you can win a lot of money: *Maybe I'll win the lottery and never have to work again!* | *a lottery ticket*

**lot·to** /'lɒtəʊ/ noun

a lottery: *He won \$10.5 million in the New York Lotto.*

**loud** /laʊd/ adjective

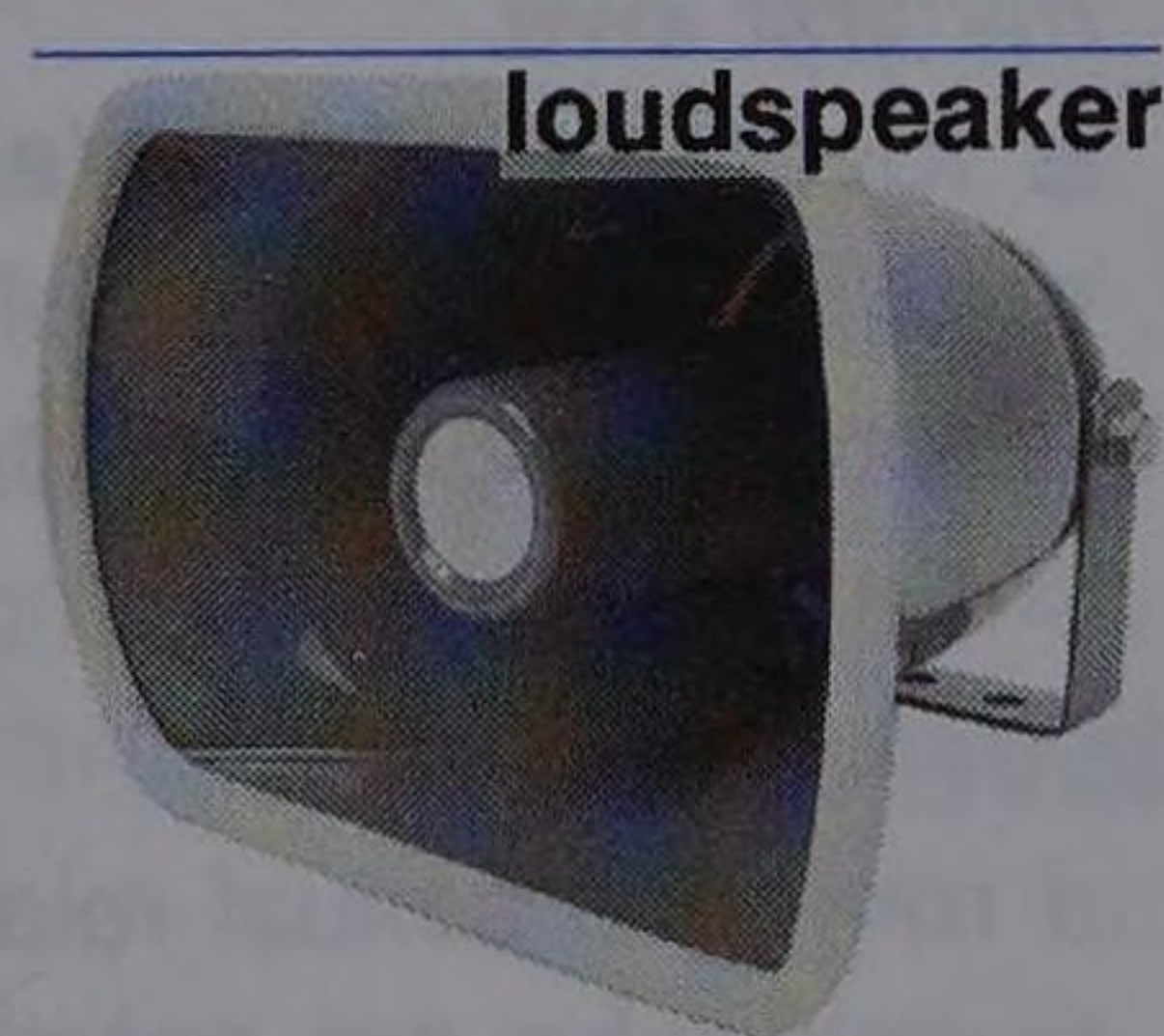
making a lot of noise: *The music was so loud that I didn't hear the phone.* | *He heard a loud bang followed by gunshots.* **ANTONYM** quiet

—**loudly** adverb

—**loudness** noun

**loud·speak·er**

/'laʊd,spi:kə/ noun  
a piece of equipment that makes sounds louder: *A voice on the loudspeaker told us that the flight was delayed.*



**loudspeaker**

**lounge<sup>1</sup>** /laʊndʒ/ noun

a room in a hotel, an airport, or other public building where people can relax, sit down, or have a drink: *We sat and waited for the taxi in the hotel lounge.*

**lounge<sup>2</sup>** verb

to sit or lie in a place in a very relaxed way without doing much: *My brother and his friends were lounging in front of the TV.*

**louse** /laʊs/ noun plural **lice** /laɪs/

a very small insect that can live on the skin and hair of animals and people



**lous-y** /'laʊzi/ adjective, informal  
very bad: *I lied to her, and now I feel lousy. | We had lousy seats, way in back of the theater.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **bad**

**lov-a-ble** /'lʌvəbəl/ adjective  
easy to love: *a sweet, lovable child*

**love<sup>1</sup>** /lʌv/ verb

**1** to care very much about someone, especially a member of your family or a close friend: *Mom loved us, fed us, and looked after us.*

**2** to have a strong romantic feeling for someone: *I love you Amy, and I want to marry you.*

**3** to enjoy doing something very much: *Tom loves to read. | I love playing hockey.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **enjoy**

**love<sup>2</sup>** noun

**1** a strong romantic feeling for someone: *He is in love with Laura. | We fell in love, got married, and had children.*

**2** the strong feeling of caring very much about someone or something: *a mother's love for her child*

**3** something that you like or enjoy doing very much: *My sister and I both have a love of books.*

**4** someone you love romantically: *Mike was my first love.*

**5 love/lots of love/all my love** informal = written at the end of a letter to a friend, parent, husband, etc.: *Take care. Lots of love, Dad.*

**'love af,fair** noun

a romantic sexual relationship between two people who are not married to each other: *His wife divorced him when she found out about his love affair.*

**love-ly** /'lʌvli/ adjective

**1** attractive: *She was lovely with beautiful black hair and big brown eyes.*

**2** very enjoyable: *Everyone had a lovely time at the beach.*

**lov-er** /'lʌvə/ noun

**1** someone who is having a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to

**2** someone who enjoys something very much: *The park was full of dog lovers, walking their dogs.*

**lov-ing** /'lʌvɪŋ/ adjective

a loving mother, wife, husband, etc. behaves in a gentle and caring way toward the people she or he loves: *She has a wonderful loving husband and three great kids.*

**low<sup>1</sup>** /lou/ adjective

**1** not high, or not far above the ground: *I picked an apple from one of the lower branches. | The dog jumped over the low wall easily.* **ANTONYM** **high**

**2** small in degree or amount: *The work is hard and the pay is low. | The restaurant serves good food at low prices.* **ANTONYM** **high**

**3** bad, or below the usual standard: *The teacher gave Kim a low grade for not turning in the assignment.* **ANTONYM** **high**

**4** if a supply of something is low, you have used almost all of it and there is not much left: *Ali was running low on cash and needed a job. | Supplies of food are getting low.*

**5** unhappy: *I've been feeling low ever since my best friend moved away.* **SYNONYM** **depressed**

**6** a low sound is quiet: *"I am leaving now," she said in a low voice that I could barely hear.* **ANTONYM** **loud**

**low<sup>2</sup>** adverb

in a low position or at a low level: *It was evening, and the sun was low in the sky. | There's a lot of noise from low-flying aircraft.*

**ANTONYM** **high**

**low<sup>3</sup>** noun, formal

a low level: *Support for the senator has dropped to a new low.* **ANTONYM** **high**

**low-er<sup>1</sup>** /'louə/ verb

**1** to reduce something in amount, strength, etc.: *The company has lowered the prices of many of its video games to increase sales. | She lowered her voice (=spoke more quietly) so that father couldn't hear us.*

**2** to move something down: *The flag is lowered every evening and put away.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **reduce**

**lower<sup>2</sup>** adjective

**1** below something else of the same kind: *He cut his lower lip in a fight. | Our apartment's on one of the lower floors of the building.* **ANTONYM** **upper**

**2** smaller in amount, level, etc. than something else: *Prices are usually lower in the*



supermarket. | Temperatures outside will be lower than yesterday.

**low·er·case** /'louə,keɪs/ *noun*, formal  
letters written in their small form, such as a, b, c, etc.: Use a capital letter for the first word in the sentence and write the rest in lowercase. **ANTONYM** **uppercase**

—**lowercase** *adjective* lowercase letters are written in their small form: a lowercase m

**lower 'class** *noun*

**the lower class** = the people in a country who do not have much money or power

—**lower-class** *adjective* relating to the lower class: She was born into a a lower-class family.

**low 'tide** *noun*

the time when the ocean is at its lowest level and far away from the shore

→ **high tide**

**loy·al** /'loɪəl/ *adjective*

always supporting someone, an organization, country, idea etc.: The team has loyal fans that come to every game. | She remained loyal to her husband even after she discovered he had been lying to her.

—**loyalty** *noun* the quality of being loyal: All the players feel a strong loyalty to the team.

**lu·bri·cate** /'lubrə,keɪt/ *verb*, formal

to put a substance such as oil on something in order to make it move smoothly: Lubricate the door with some oil, so that it doesn't squeak.

—**lubrication** /,lubrə'keɪʃən/ *noun* the act of lubricating something

—**lubricant** /'lubrəkənt/ *noun* a substance that is put on something in order to make it move smoothly

**luck** /lʌk/ *noun*

**1 also good luck** good things that happen to people by chance: Have you had any luck finding someone to rent the room? | People throw rice at the married couple for good luck.

**2 bad luck** = bad things that happen to people by chance: We've had a lot of bad luck recently – first the car broke down, then I broke my arm, and last week Julio's wallet was stolen.

**3 Good luck!** = used to tell someone that you hope that he or she will be successful: Good luck on your exam!

**4 be in luck/be out of luck** = to get or not get something that you want: You're in luck – there's one ticket left!

**lucky** /'lʌki/ *adjective* **luckier**, **luckiest**

**1** having good luck: It was a terrible accident, and he's lucky to be alive. | We were lucky (that) the plane was delayed because we got to the airport very late. | I look at my family, and I feel like the luckiest guy in the world. **SYNONYM** **fortunate**; **ANTONYM** **unlucky**

**2** bringing good luck: Seven is my lucky number.

—**luckily** *adverb*: Luckily, no one was hurt.

**lug** /lʌg/ *verb* **lugged**, **lugging** *informal*  
to carry something with difficulty because it is very heavy: We had to lug our bags up to the 5th floor.

**lug·gage** /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ *noun*

the bags that you carry when you are traveling: She helped us carry our luggage to our hotel room.

→ See picture on page A30

**luke·warm** /,lʌk'wɔrm/ *adjective*

**1** liquid or food that is lukewarm is slightly warm, often when it should be hot: a cup of lukewarm tea

**2** not showing very much interest or excitement: Critics gave the movie a lukewarm reception (=they were not very excited about it).

→ See Thesaurus box at **hot**

**lul·la·by** /'lʌlə,baɪ/ *noun* plural **lullabies**

a quiet slow song that you sing to children in order to make them go to sleep: Maria sat on the edge of her son's bed and sang him a lullaby.

**lum·ber** /'lʌmbə/ *noun*

wood that is used for building: We bought some lumber to build a new porch.

**lum·ber·jack** /'lʌmbə,dʒæk/ *noun*

someone whose job is cutting down trees for wood

**lump** /lʌmp/ *noun*

**1** a small piece of something solid that does not have a definite shape: Stir the mixture until all the lumps are gone. | a lump of coal

**2** a small hard swollen area just under the surface of the skin, caused by an injury or illness: She felt a lump in her breast and decided to have an X-ray.

→ See Thesaurus box at **piece**



**lump·y** /'lʌmpi/ adjective **lumpier**,  
**lumpiest** informal

something that is lumpy has small solid pieces in it when it should not: *A lumpy mattress is hard to sleep on.* | *The sauce was lumpy because it hadn't been stirred enough.*

**lu·nar** /'lunə/ adjective, formal

relating to the moon: *The spacecraft landed on the lunar surface.*

**lu·na·tic** /'lunətik/ noun, informal

someone who behaves in a crazy or very stupid way: *I saw him chasing his wife down the road like a lunatic.*

**lunch** /lʌntʃ/ noun

a meal that you eat in the middle of the day: *I had a sandwich for lunch.* | "What time do you eat lunch?" "At noon." | *Let's have lunch at the Chinese restaurant.*

→ See Thesaurus box at **meal**

**lunch·time** /'lʌntʃtaɪm/ noun

the time in the middle of the day when people eat lunch: *I usually just have a sandwich at lunchtime.*

**lung** /lʌŋ/ noun

one of the two parts inside your body that you use for breathing: *Smoking is bad for your lungs.*

→ See picture on page A2

**lunge** /lʌndʒ/ verb

to move toward someone or something quickly and using your strength: *She lunged at Jim, hitting him hard in the face.*

—**lunge** noun a sudden strong movement toward someone or something

**lurch** /lɜ:tʃ/ verb

to move forward suddenly in an uncontrolled way: *The train lurched forward, throwing some people to the floor.*

—**lurch** noun an uncontrolled movement forward

**lush** /lʌʃ/ adjective, formal

lush plants are healthy and have a lot of green leaves: *a lush green lawn*

**lux·u·ry** /'lʌkʃəri/ noun plural **luxuries**

**1** comfort and pleasure that you get from expensive things: *They live a life of luxury in a huge house with a swimming pool.* | *a luxury car with leather seats*

**2** something expensive that you want but do not need: *I can't afford to buy luxuries such as chocolates and cookies for my kids.*

—**luxurious** /lʌg'ʒʊəriəs/ adjective very expensive, beautiful, and comfortable: *They have a luxurious home with five huge bedrooms and a formal dining room.*

**ly·ing** /'laɪ-ɪŋ/ verb

the present participle of **LIE**

**lynch** /lɪntʃ/ verb

if a crowd of people lynches someone, they kill that person by **HANGING** him or her illegally: *A crowd of angry men lynched him before the trial could start.*

—**lynching** noun an occasion when someone is lynched

**lyr·ics** /'lɪrɪks/ plural noun

the words of a popular song: *I love the lyrics to this song but I don't really like the tune.*

—**lyricist** /'lɪrəsɪst/ noun someone who writes the words of a song



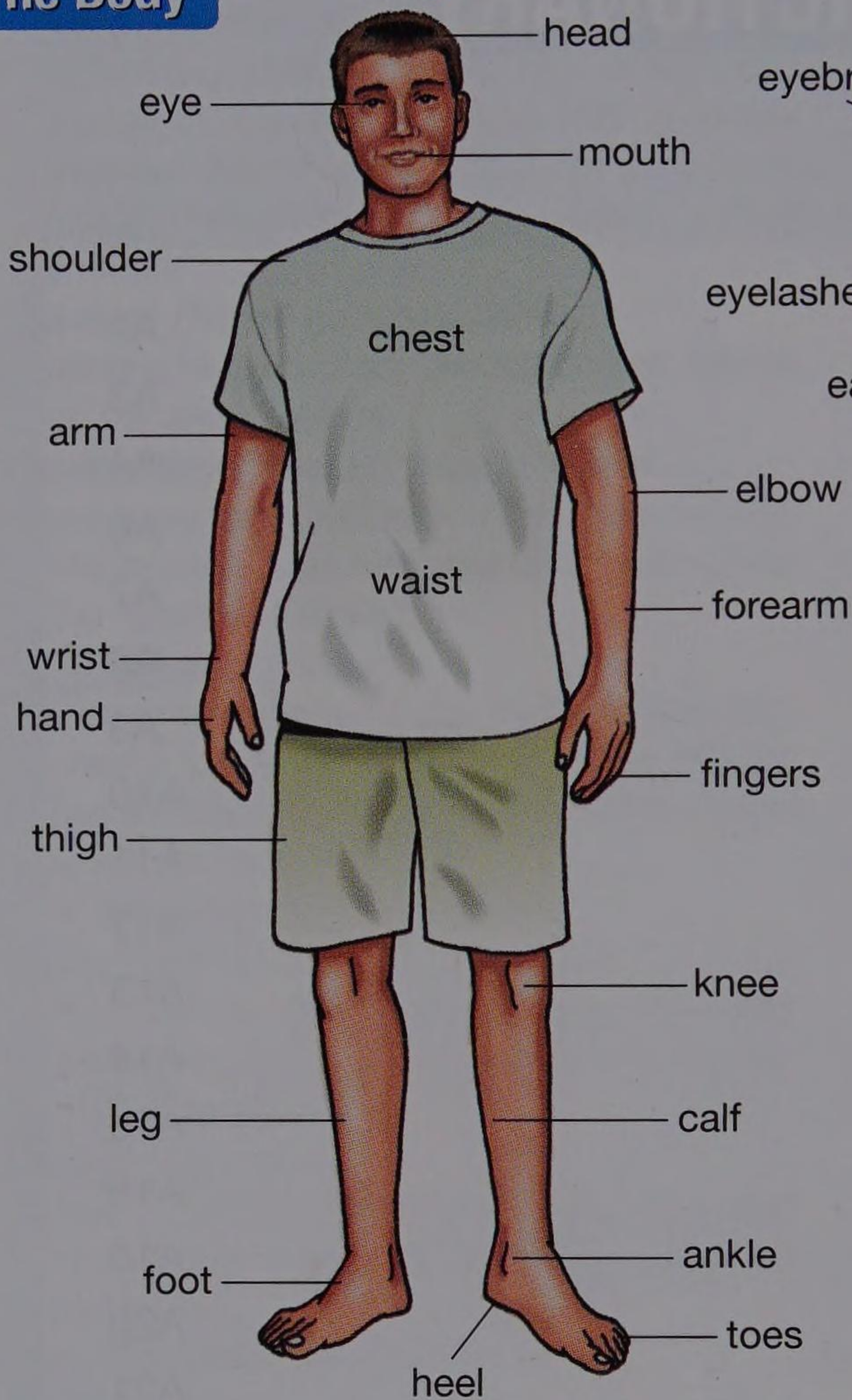
# PICTURE DICTIONARY

Body	A2
Verbs of Movement (hands)	A3
Verbs of Movement (body)	A4
Clothing	A6
Family	A7
Living Room	A8
Kitchen	A9
Bedroom	A10
Bathroom	A11
Vegetables	A12
Fruit and Nuts	A13
Kitchen Verbs	A14
Restaurant	A15
Jobs	A16
Office	A18
Computer	A20
Musical Instruments	A21
Sounds	A22
Emotions	A23
Sports	A24
Transportation	A26
Car	A28
Weights and Measures	A29
Airport	A30
Map of the United States	A32

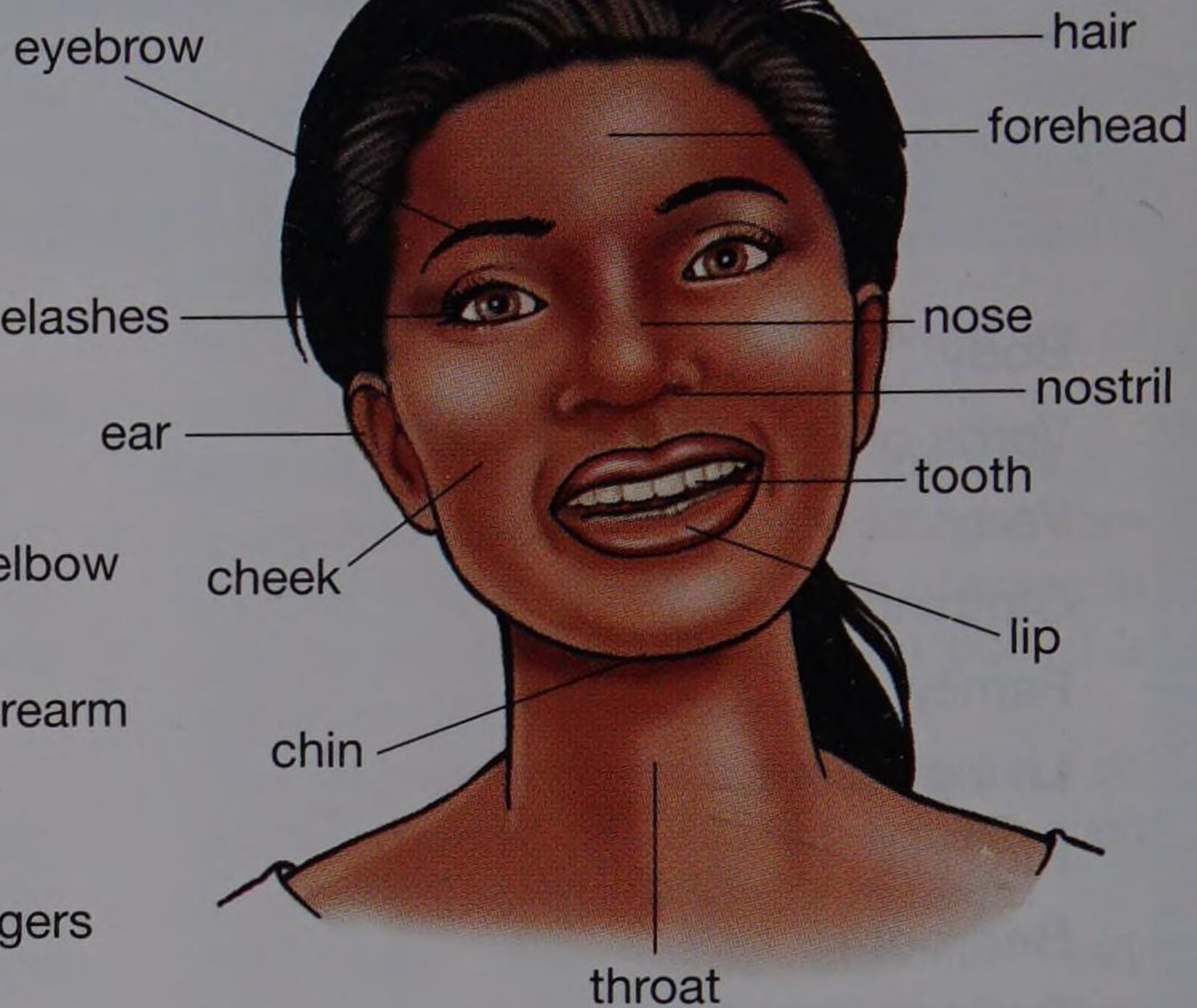


## The Body

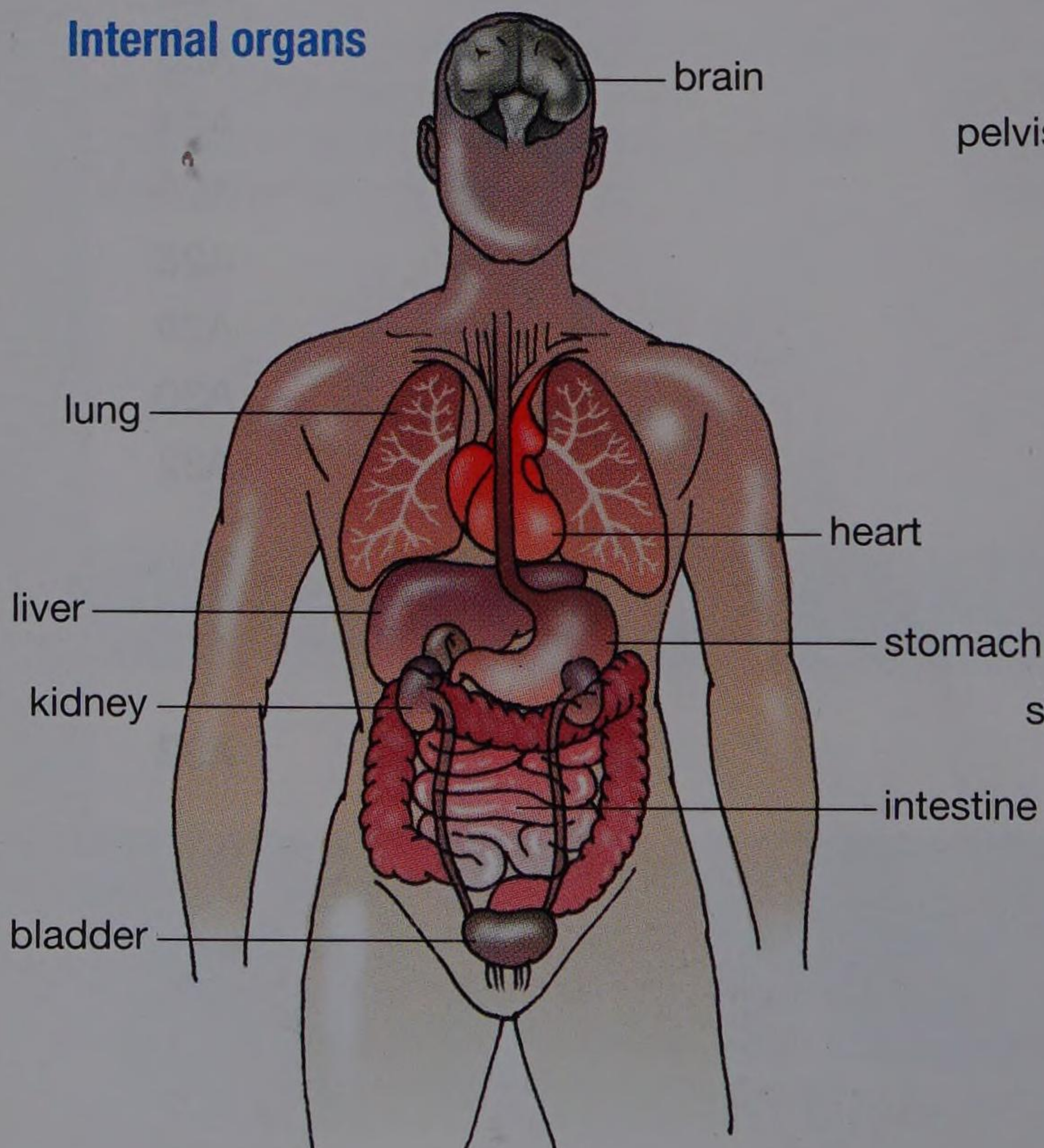
### Body



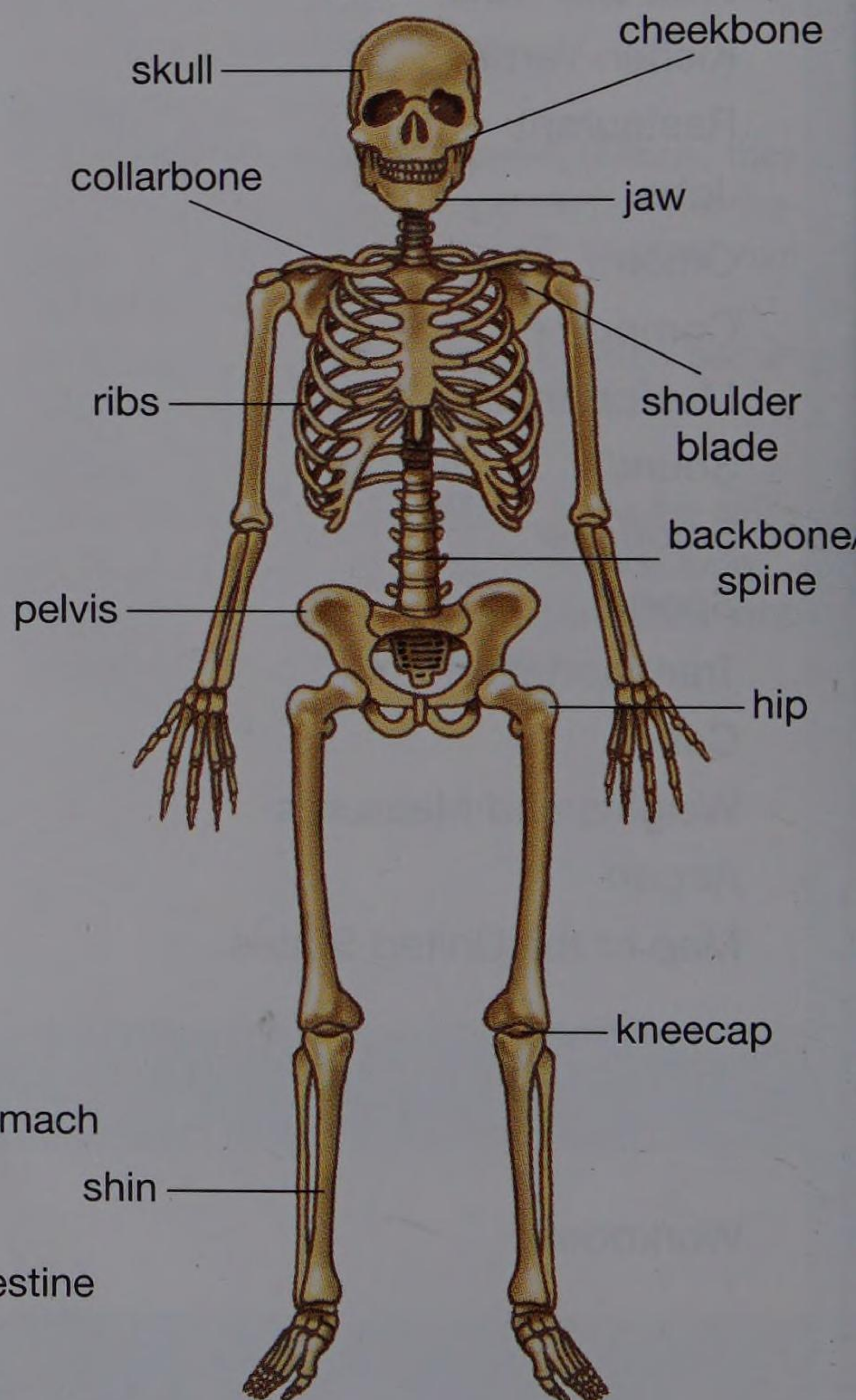
### Face



### Internal organs

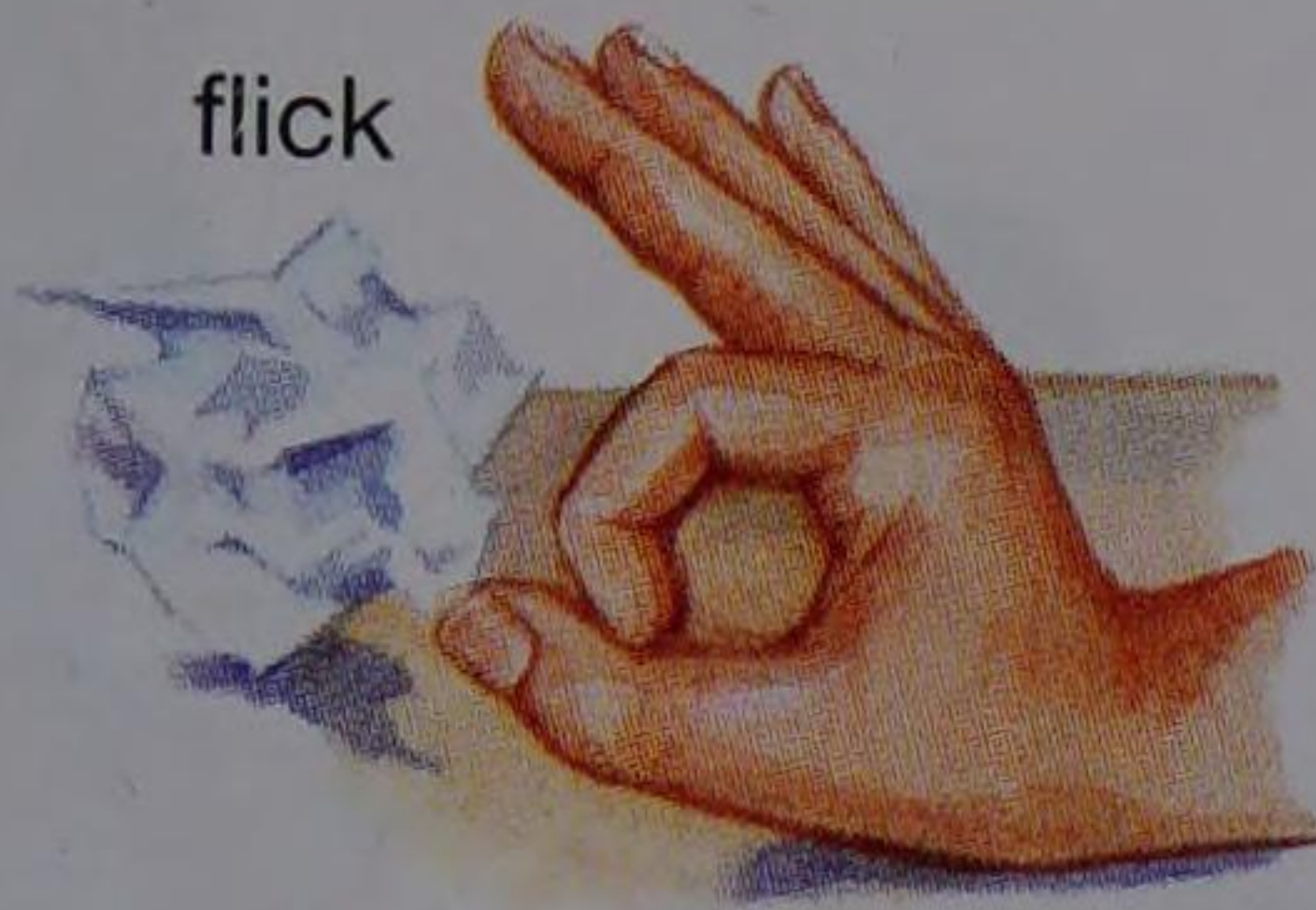


### Skeleton





## Verbs of Movement (hands)

clap/  
applaud

flick



tap



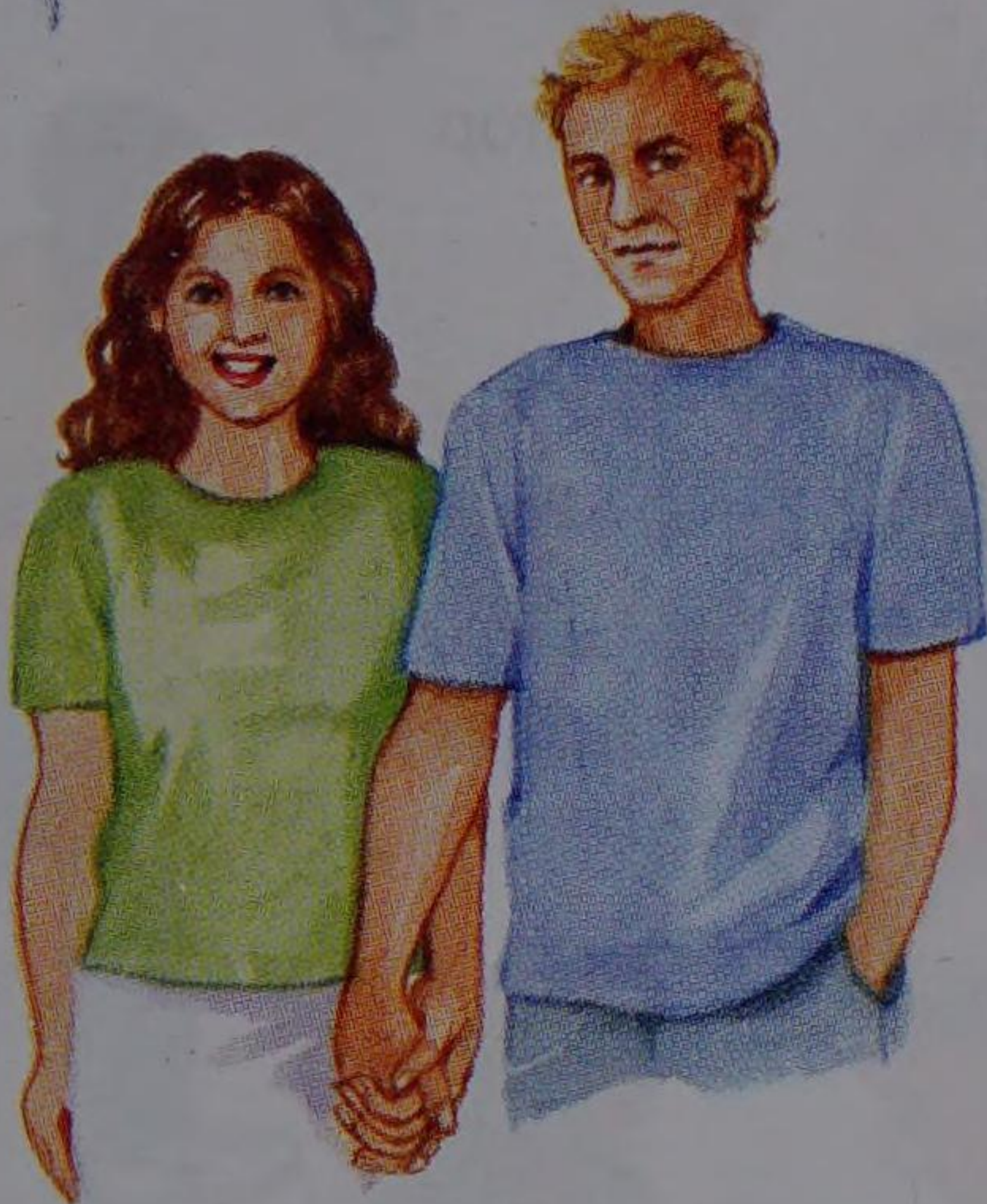
pinch



knock



shake hands



hold hands



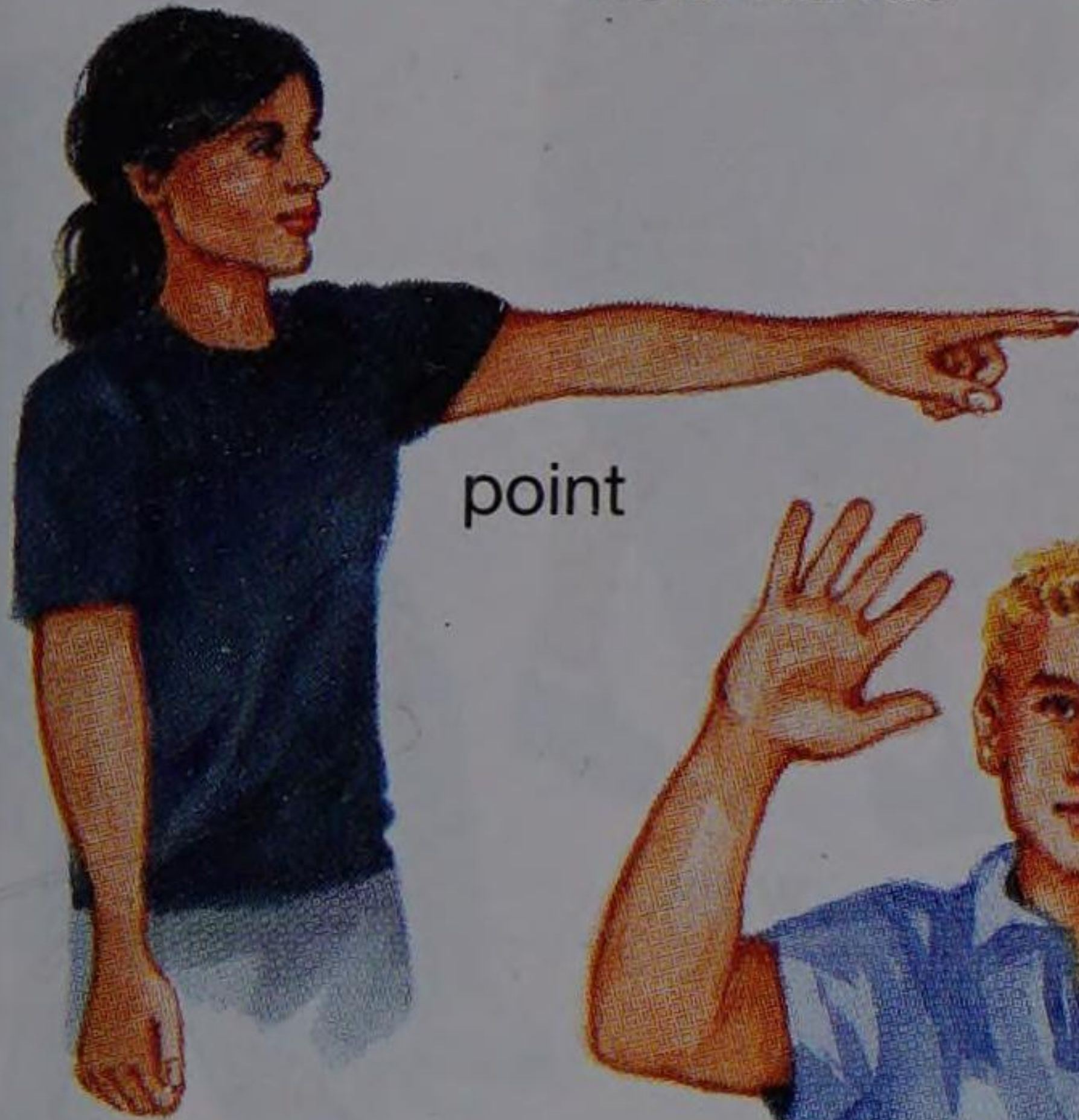
scratch



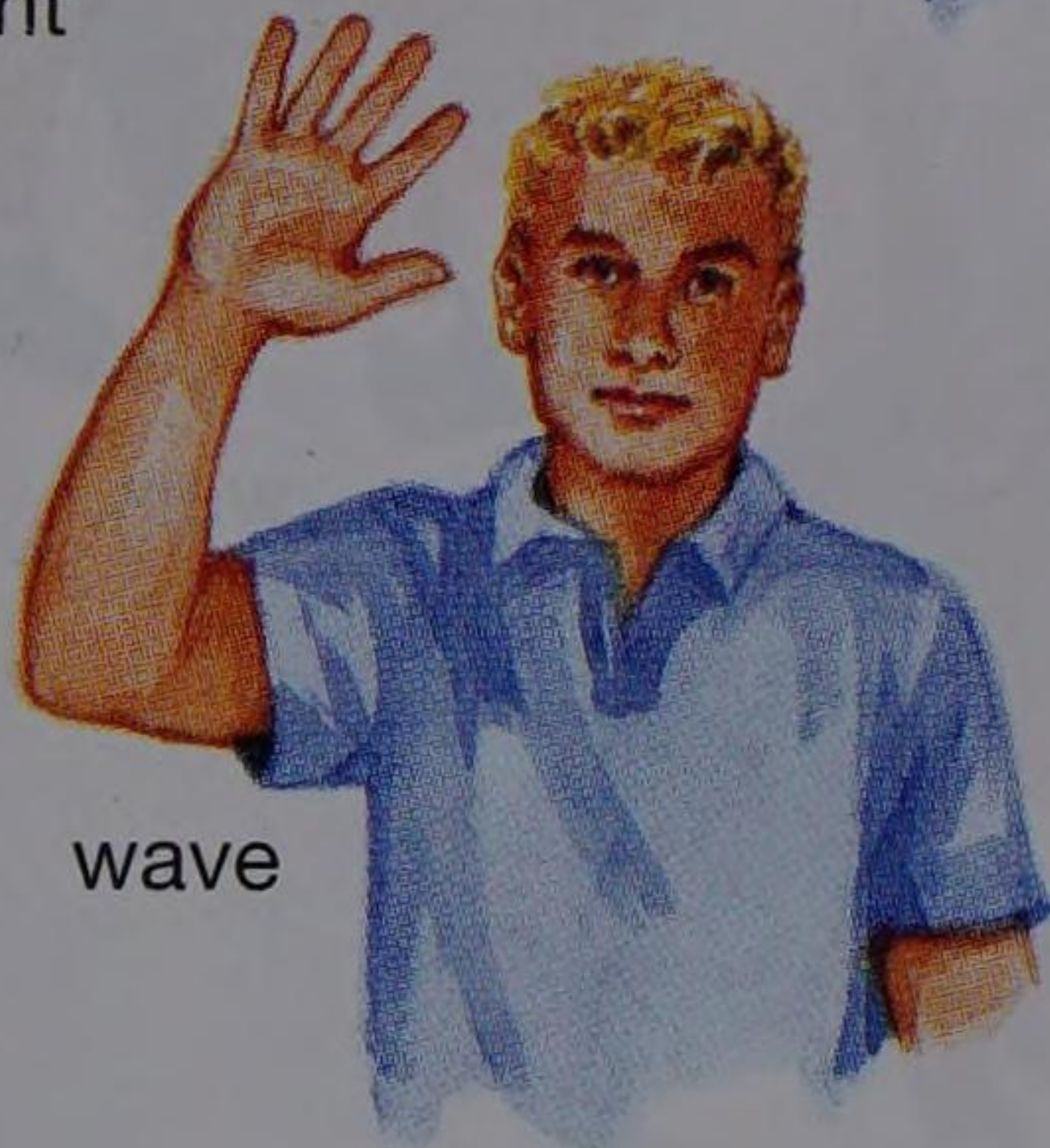
poke



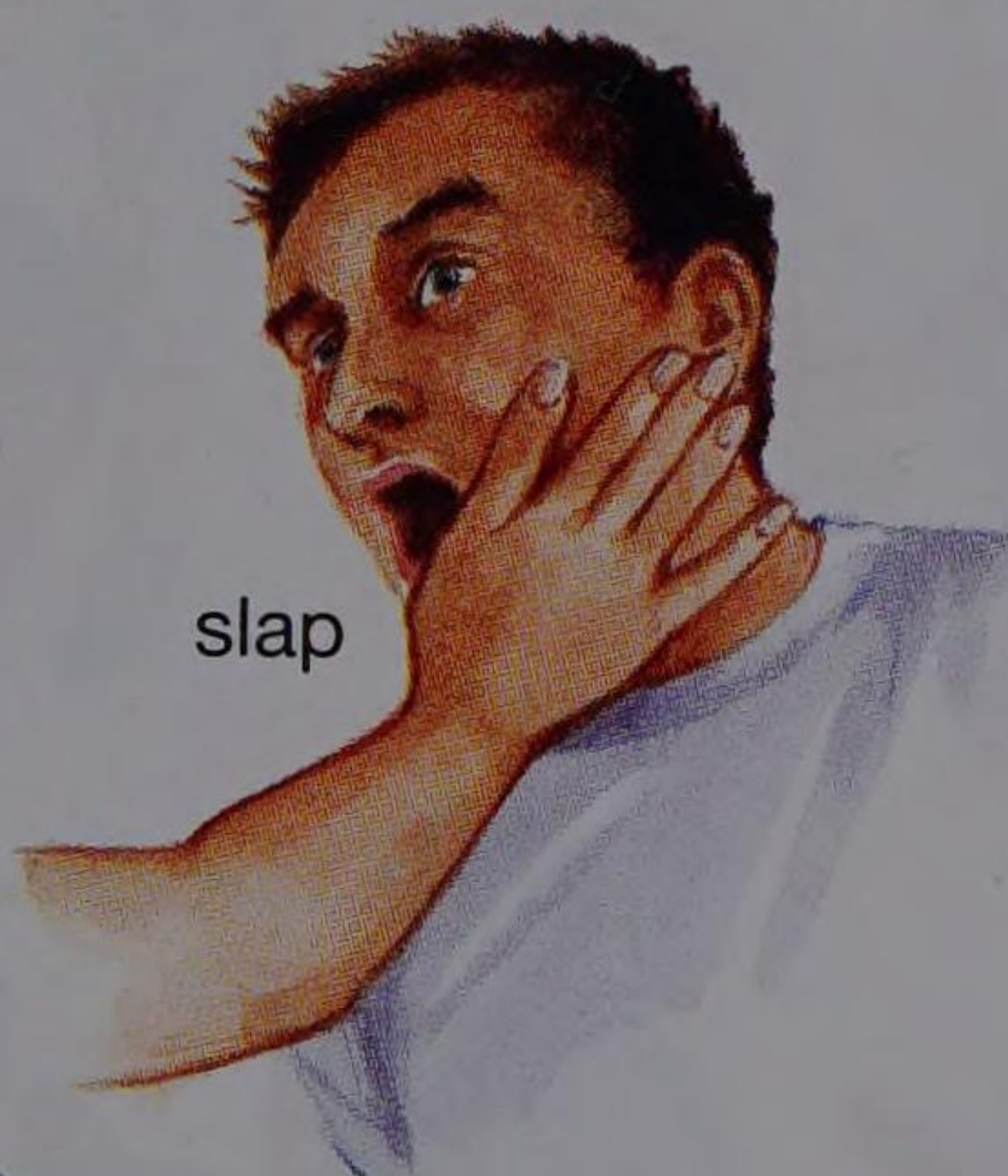
squeeze



point



wave



slap



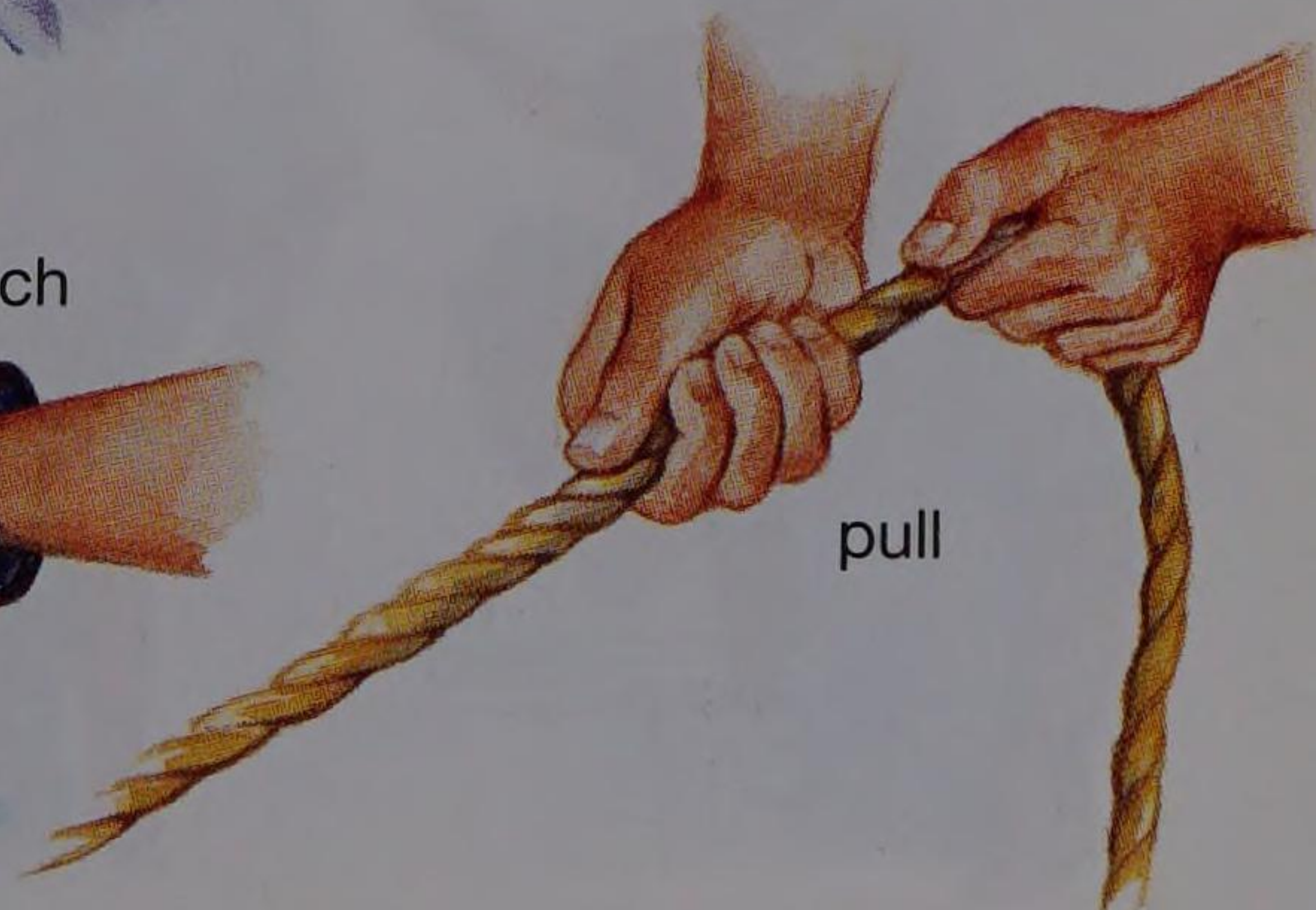
pet/stroke



push



punch



pull



Verbs of Movement (body)



bend



lift



carry



drop



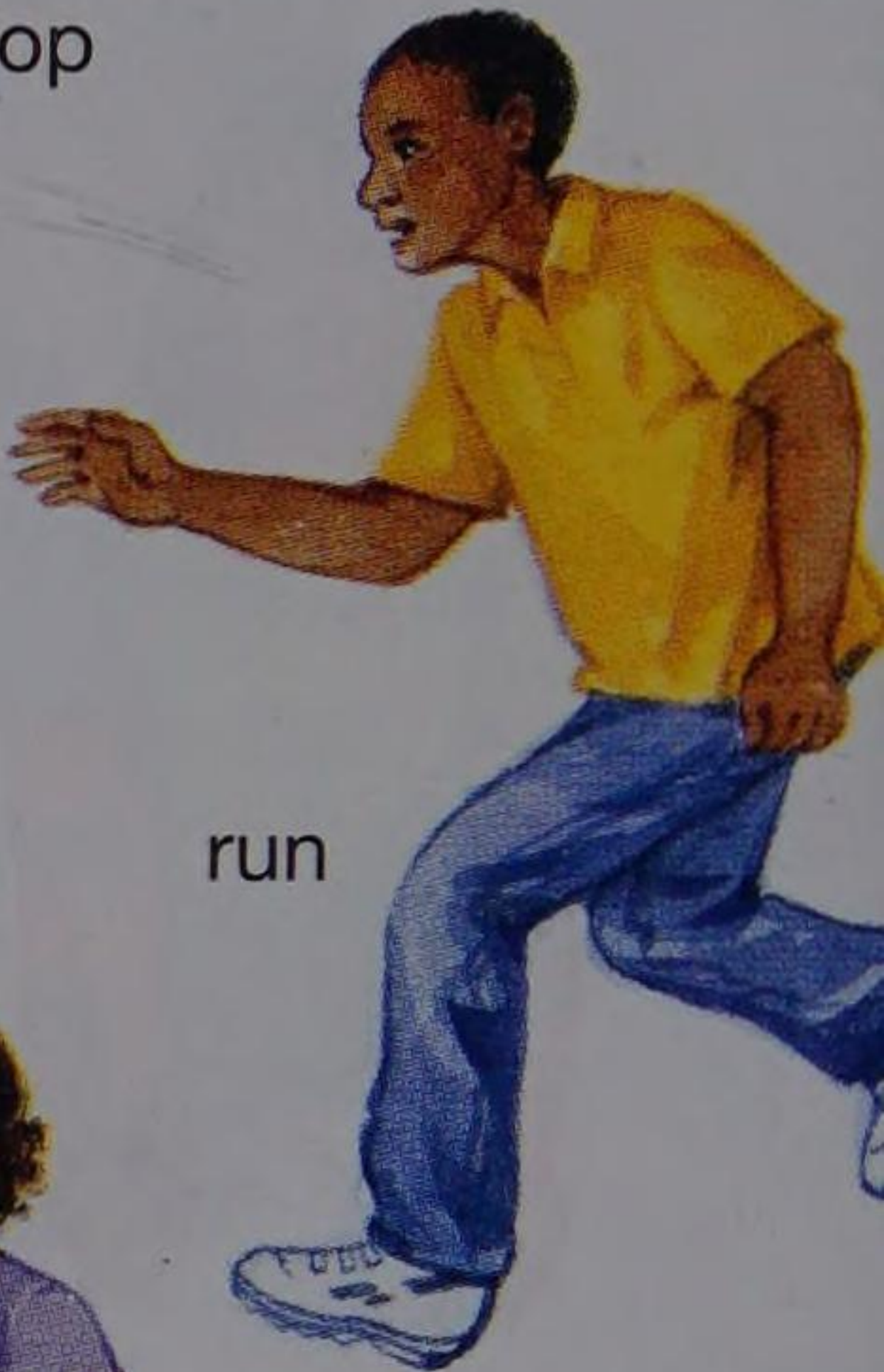
pick up



put down



jog



run



walk



march



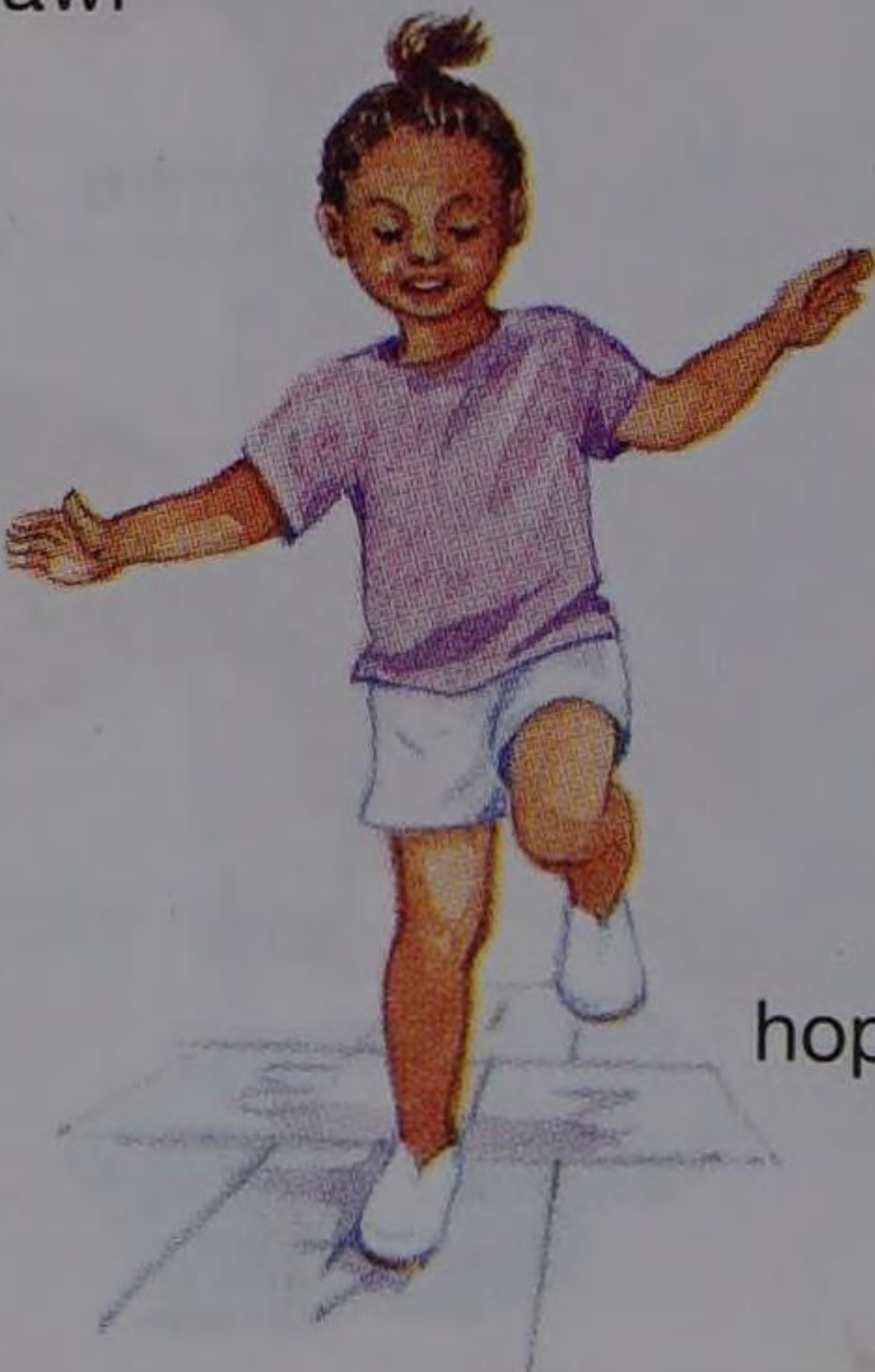
crawl



skip



jump



hop



tiptoe



swing

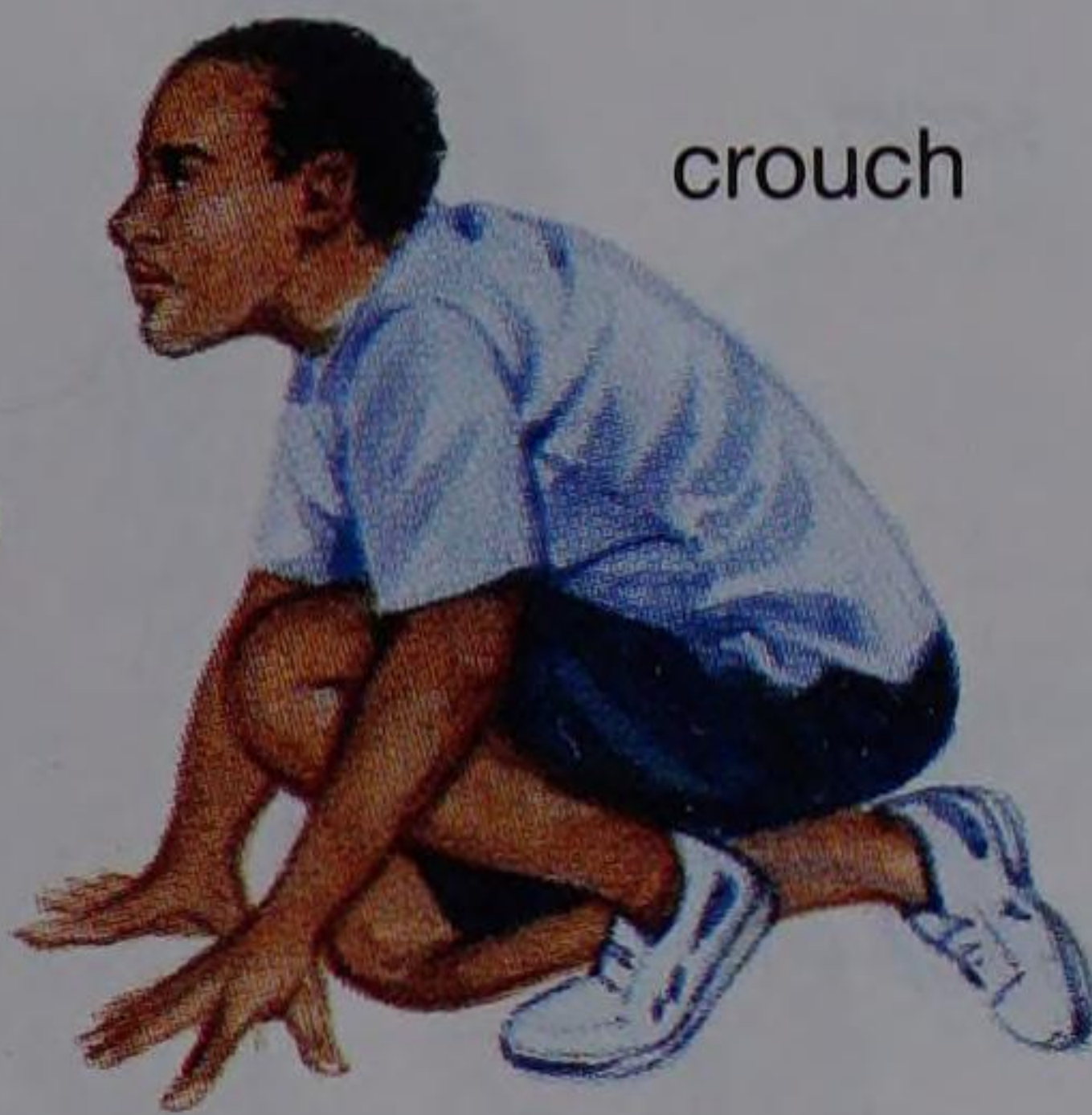




kneel



squat



crouch



trip



stretch



lean



climb



fall



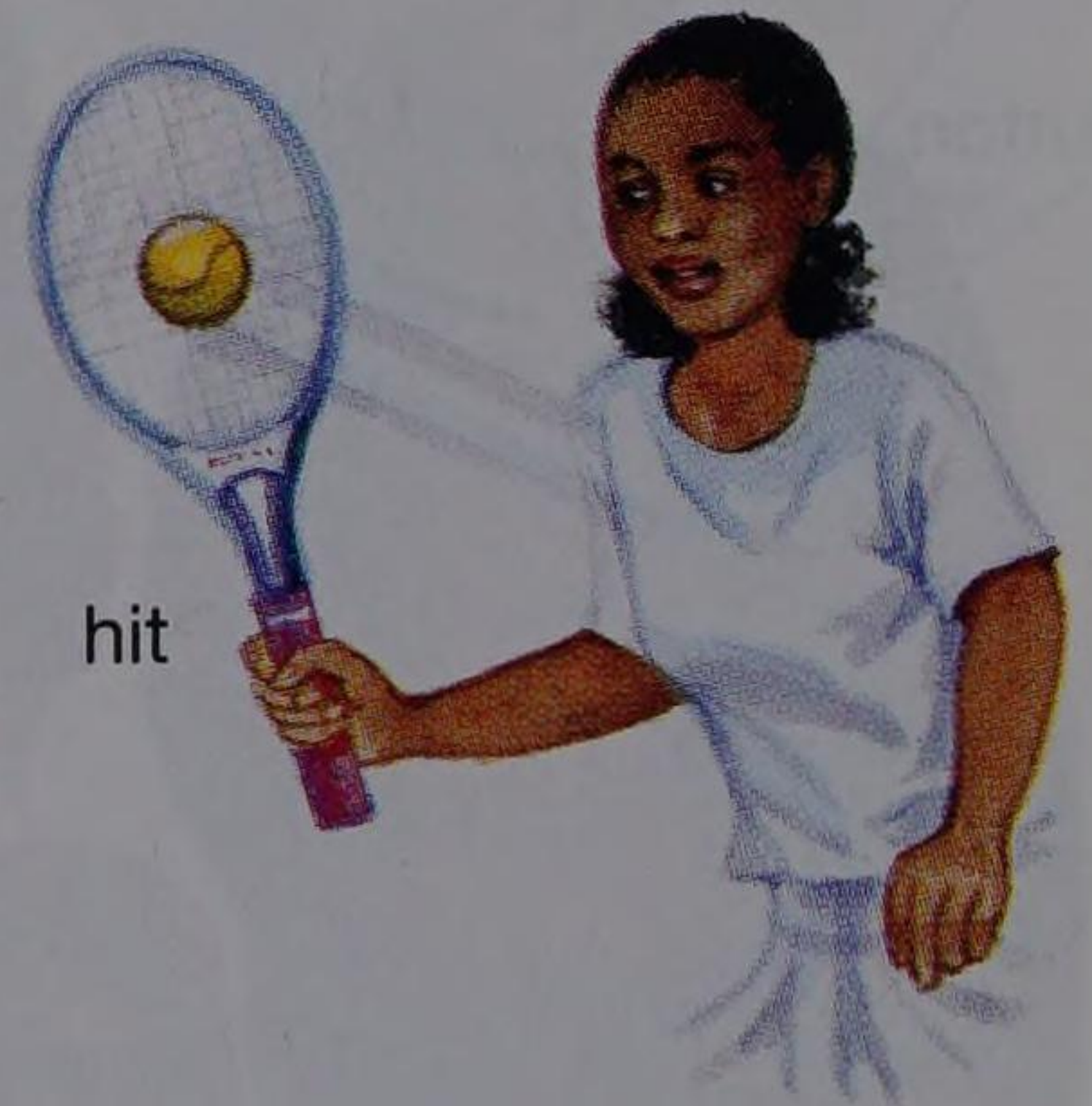
sit



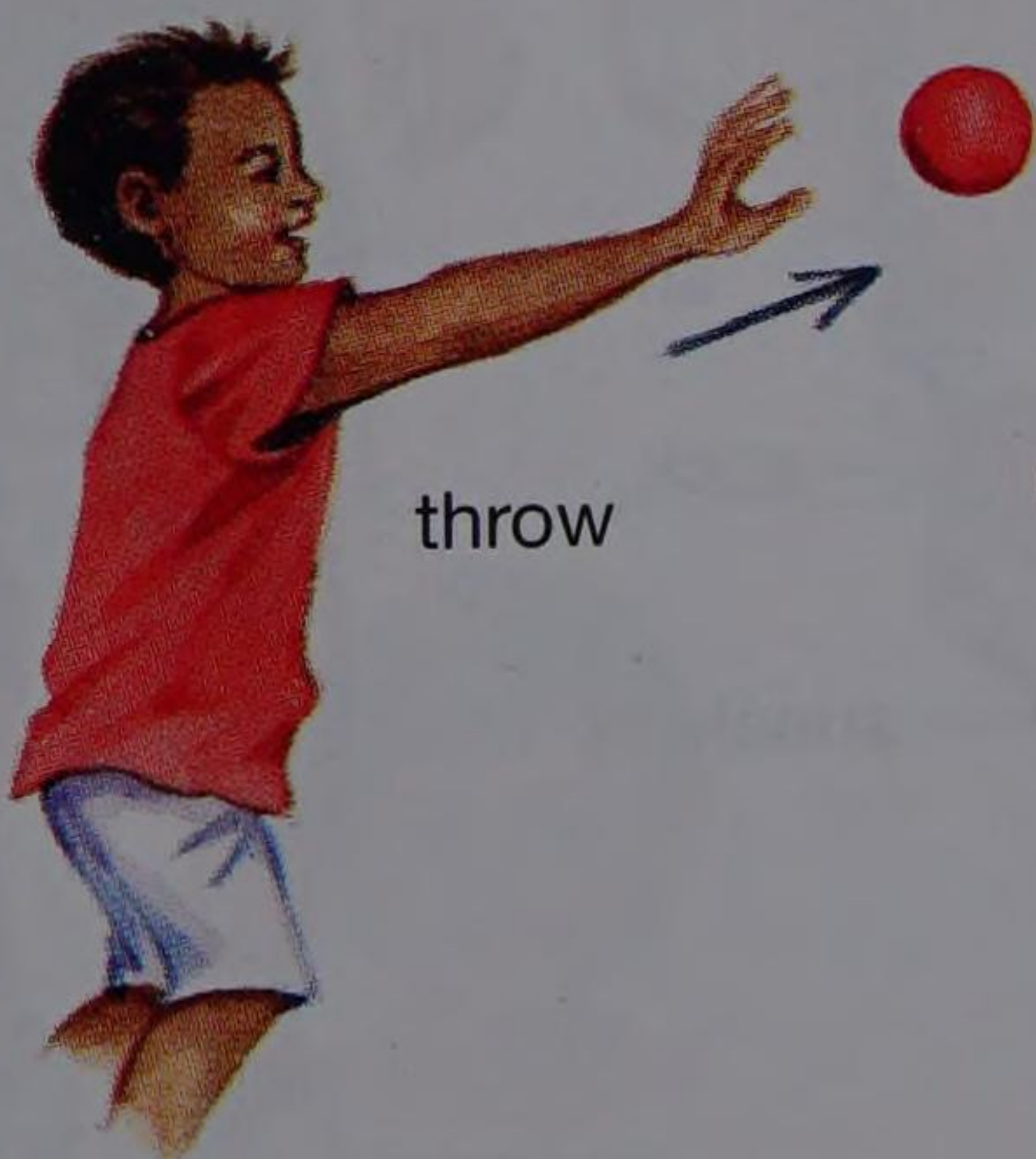
hold



drag



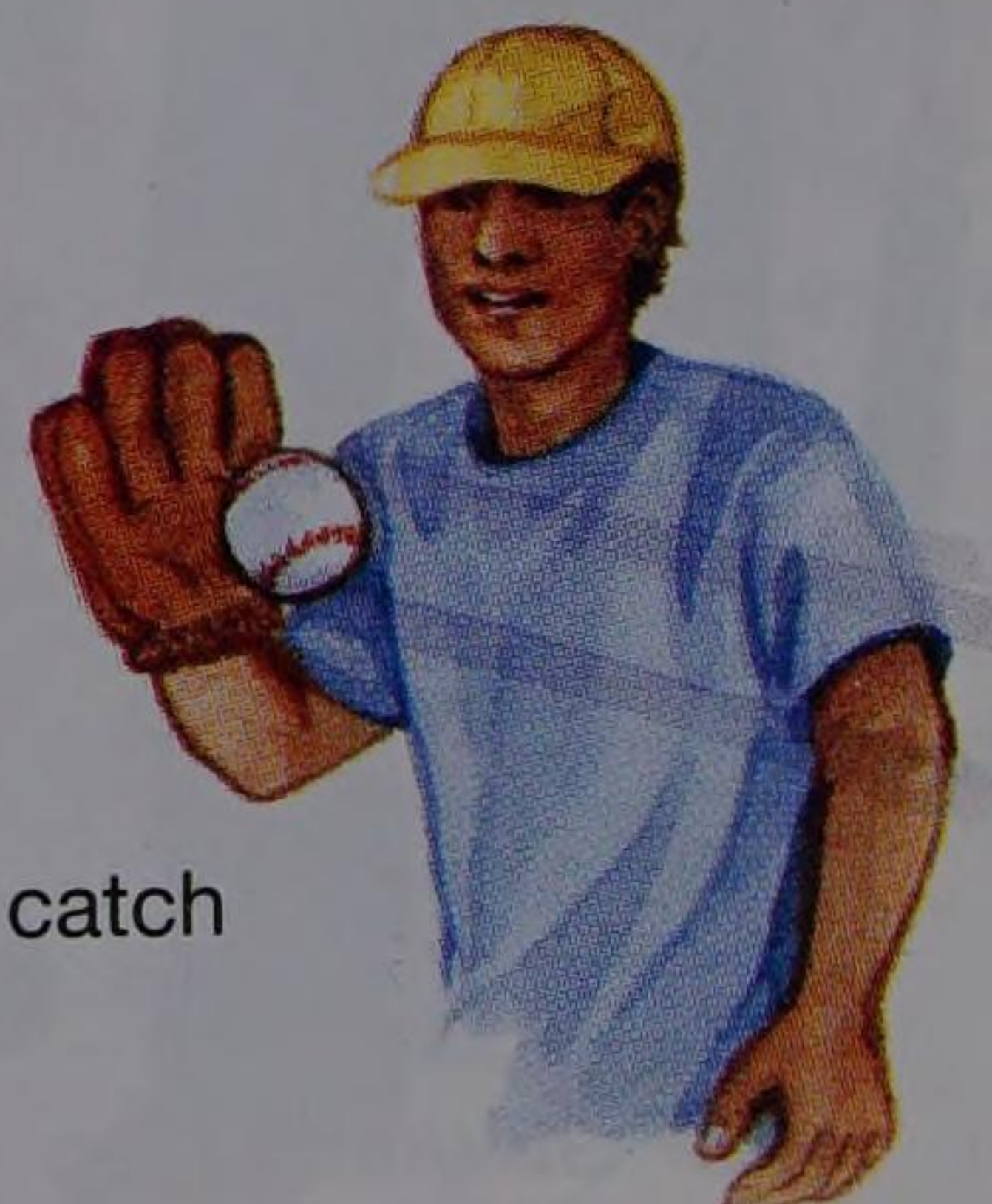
hit



throw



kick



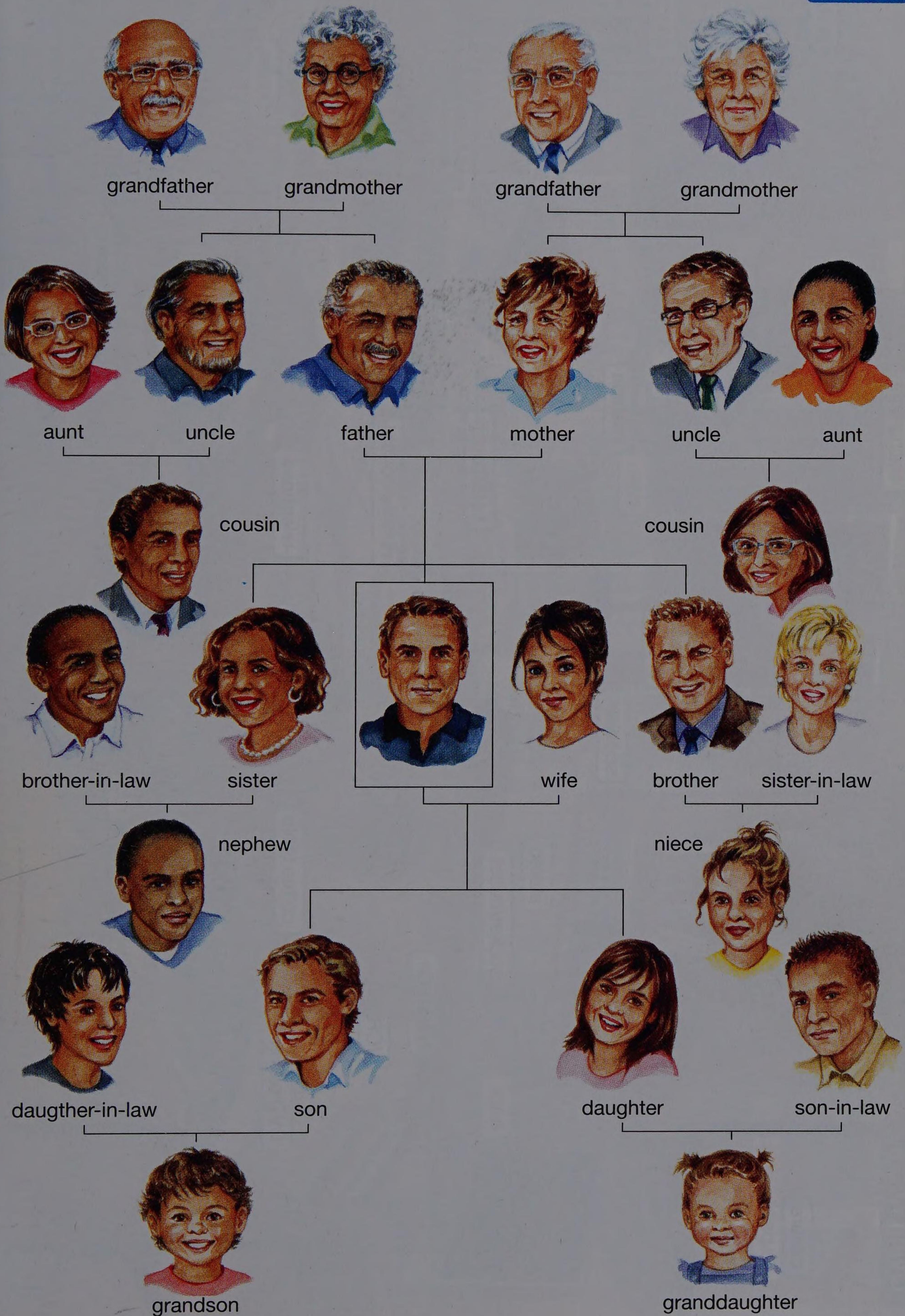
catch



# Clothing

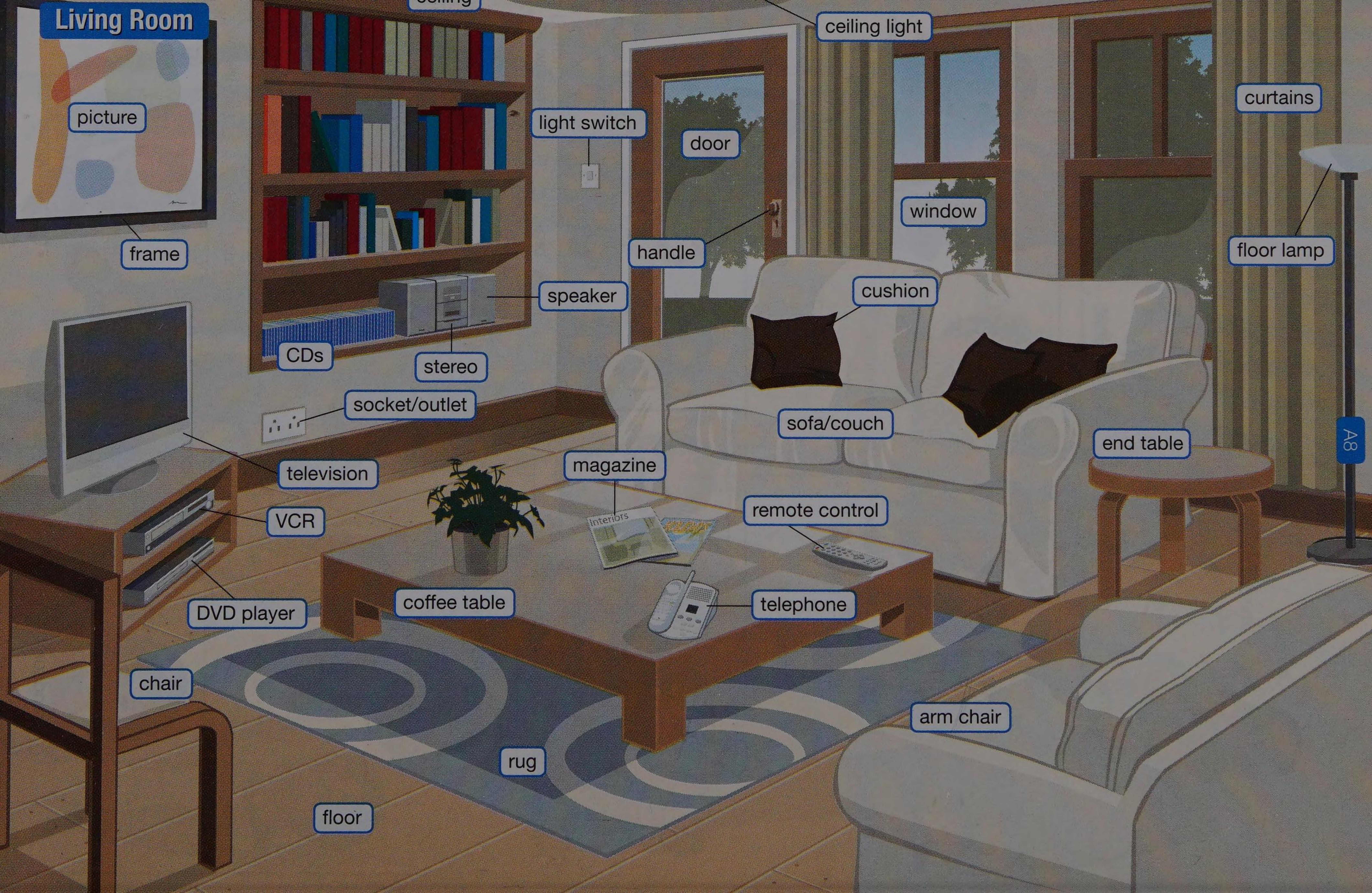








# Living Room



picture

frame

ceiling light

curtains

light switch

door

window

floor lamp

handle

cushion

speaker

CDs

stereo

socket/outlet

sofa/couch

end table

magazine

remote control

VCR

television

DVD player

coffee table

telephone

chair

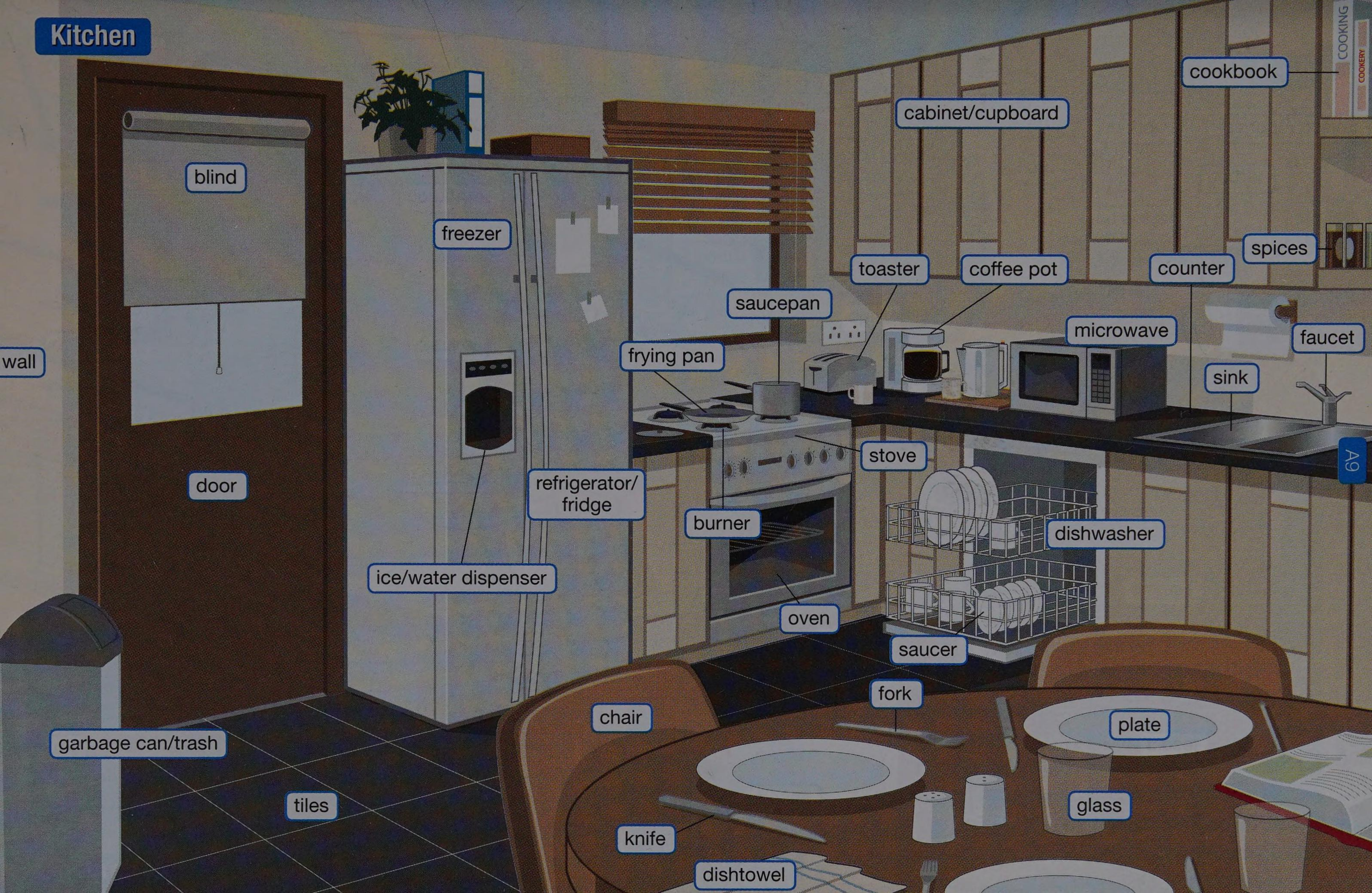
arm chair

rug

floor



# Kitchen



blind

freezer

cabinet/cupboard

cookbook

spices

counter

coffee pot

toaster

microwave

faucet

sink

saucepan

frying pan

stove

refrigerator/  
fridge

ice/water dispenser

dishwasher

burner

oven

saucer

fork

plate

glass

chair

knife

dishtowel

garbage can/trash

tiles

door

wall

A9



# Bedroom



blind

curtains

mirror

poster

bed

window

stereo

lamp

closet

bookshelf

clothes

pillow

bedspread

racket

sheet

alarm clock

dresser

blanket

chair

ice skates

carpet

rug

laundry

laundry basket

desk

mouse

keyboard

computer

mp3 player

books



# Bathroom

blind

cabinet

mirror

wall

shower

curtain rod

shower curtain

window

toothbrush

shaving cream

razor

comb

shelf

hand towel

tile

shampoo

wash cloth

bath tub

ledge

toilet paper

soap

faucet

sink

laundry

laundry basket

toilet

floor

bath mat

towel



# Vegetables



green onions



lettuce



potato



artichoke



radishes



onion



eggplant



leek



green beans



cucumber



squash



spinach



broccoli



mushrooms



asparagus



garlic



carrots



celery



tomato



cabbage



zucchini



pumpkin



corn



red pepper

yellow pepper



green pepper



peas



## Fruit and Nuts



apple



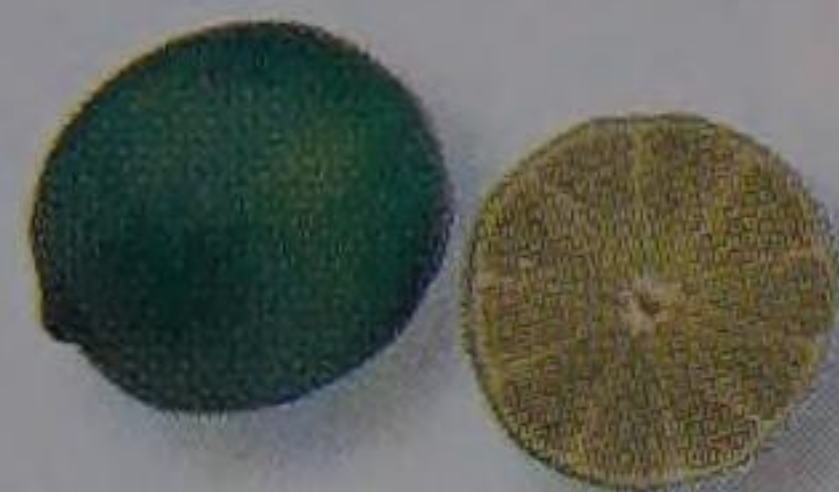
pear



tangerine



lemon



lime



grapes



melon



pineapple



kiwi



peach



nectarine



plum

apricot  
(fresh)

cherries



banana



figs (fresh)



orange



grapefruit



watermelon



cantaloupe

rhubarb



mango



strawberries



raspberries

blueberries



cranberries



blackberries

prunes

apricots

figs

raisins



dates

walnut



peanuts



almonds



pecans

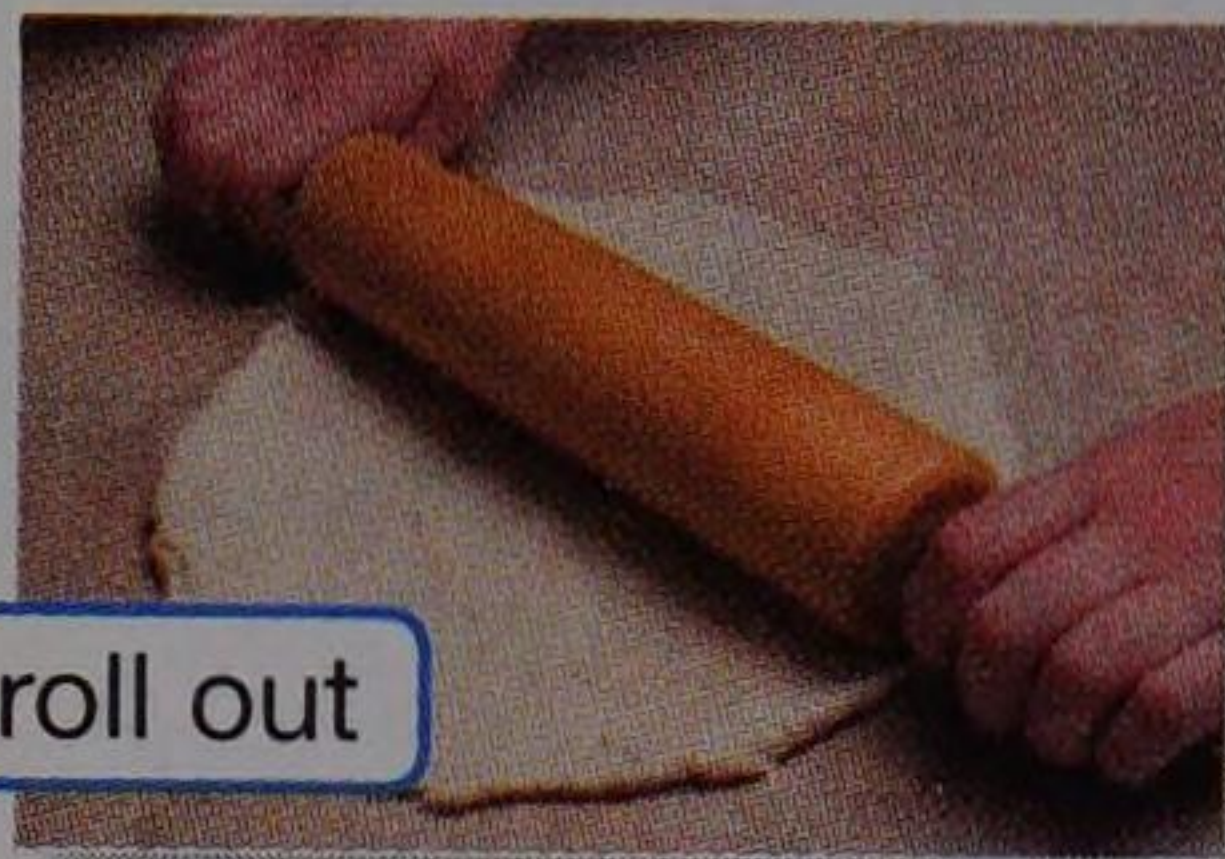


coconut





# Kitchen Verbs



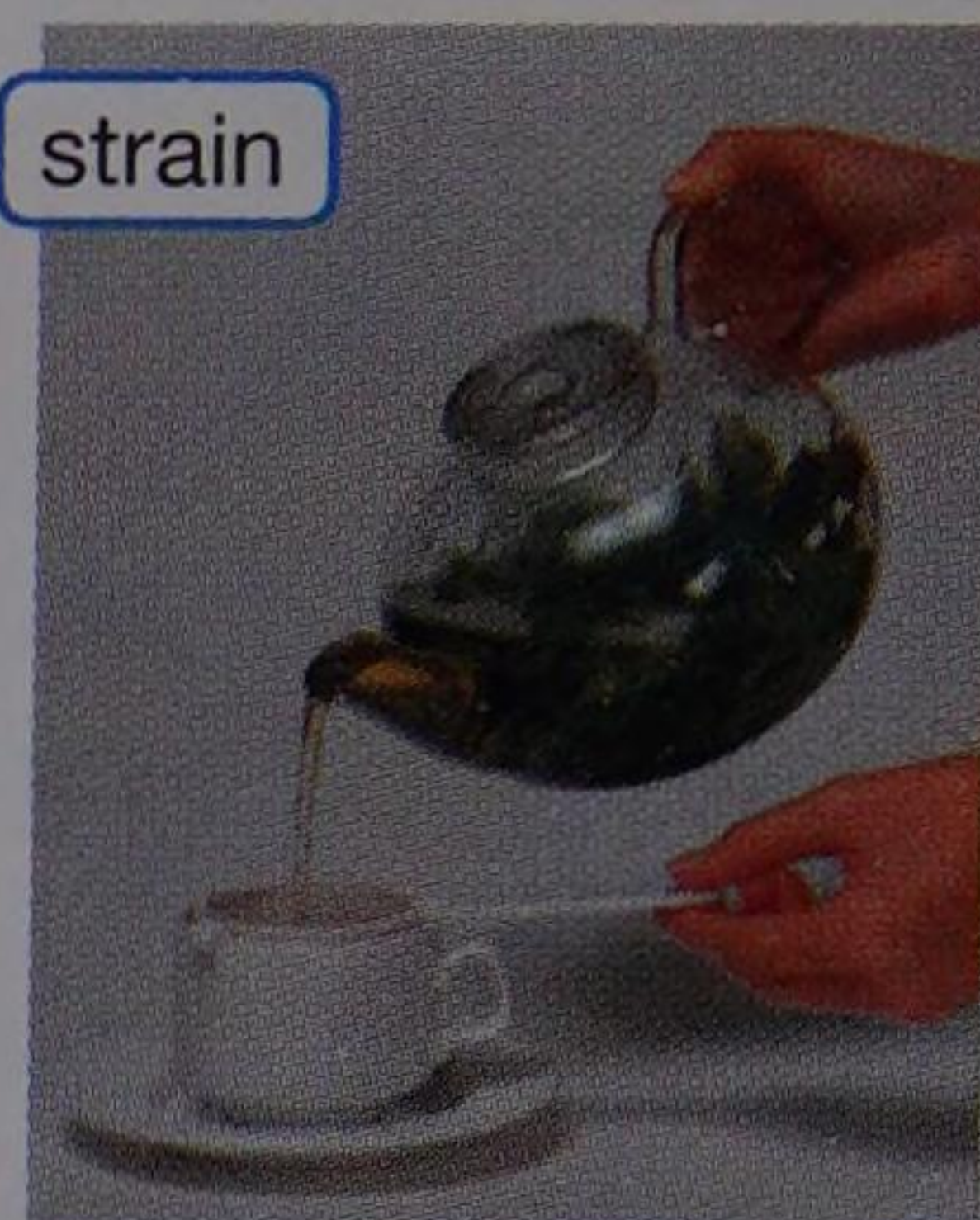
roll out



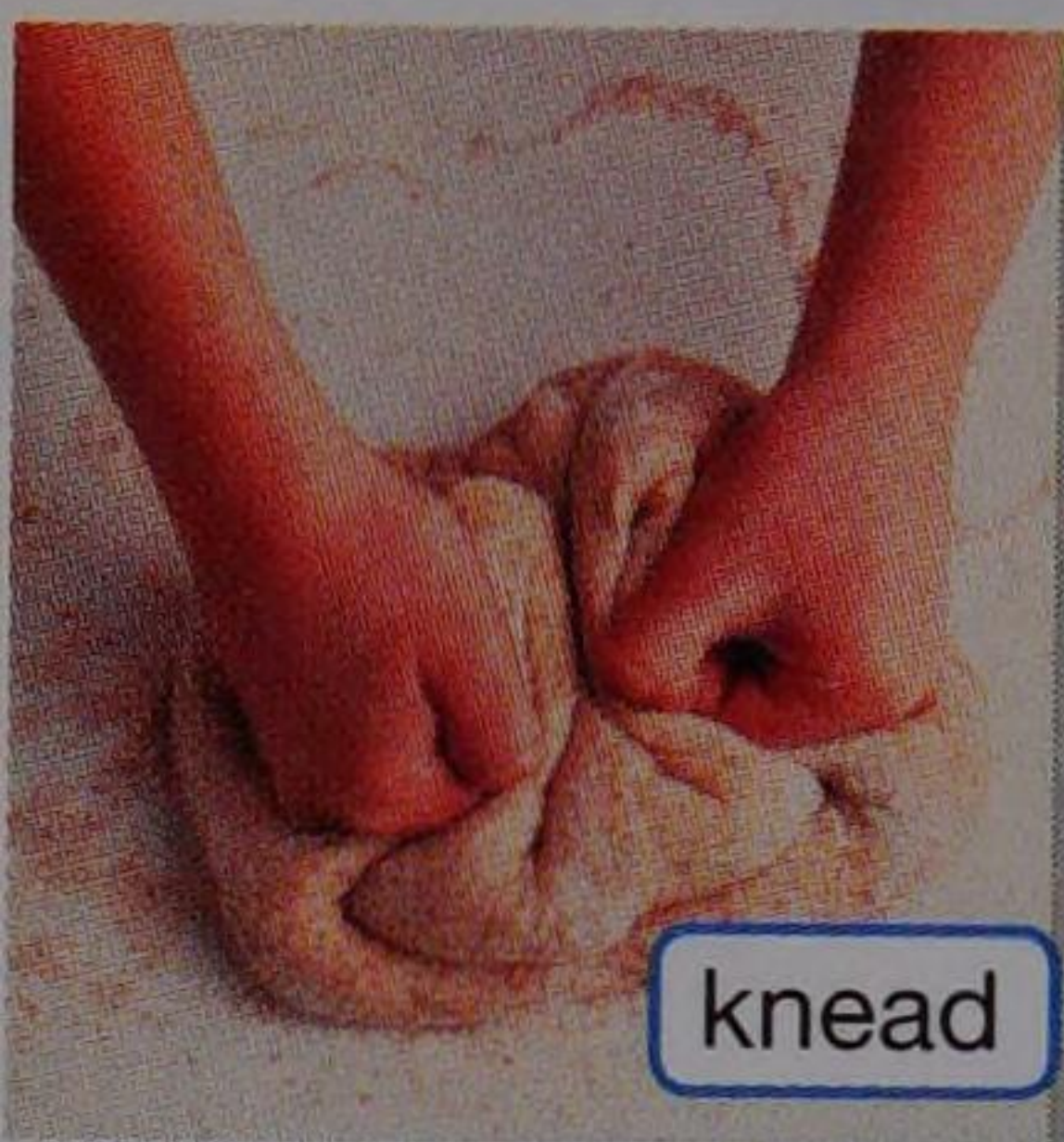
beat



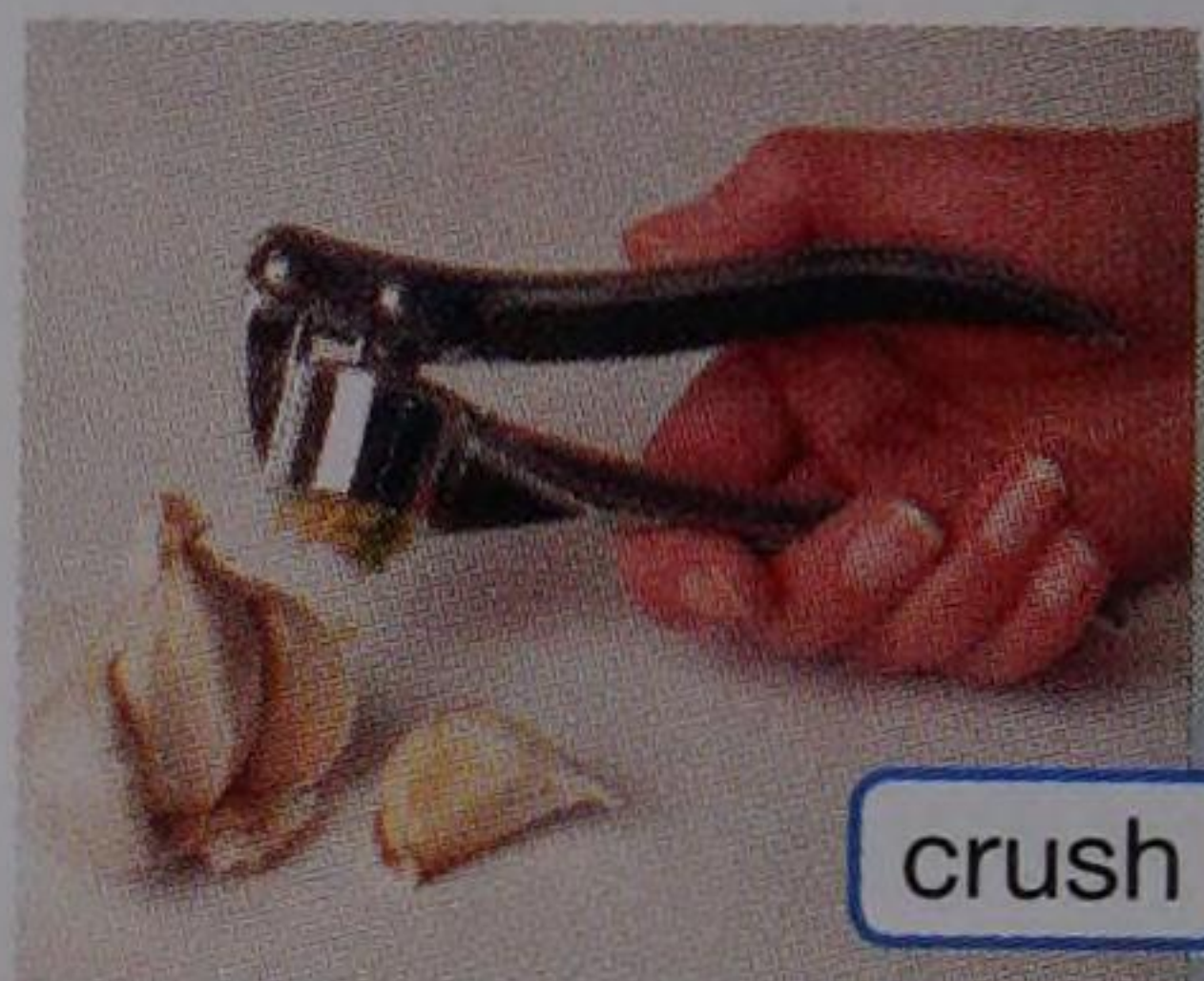
mash



strain



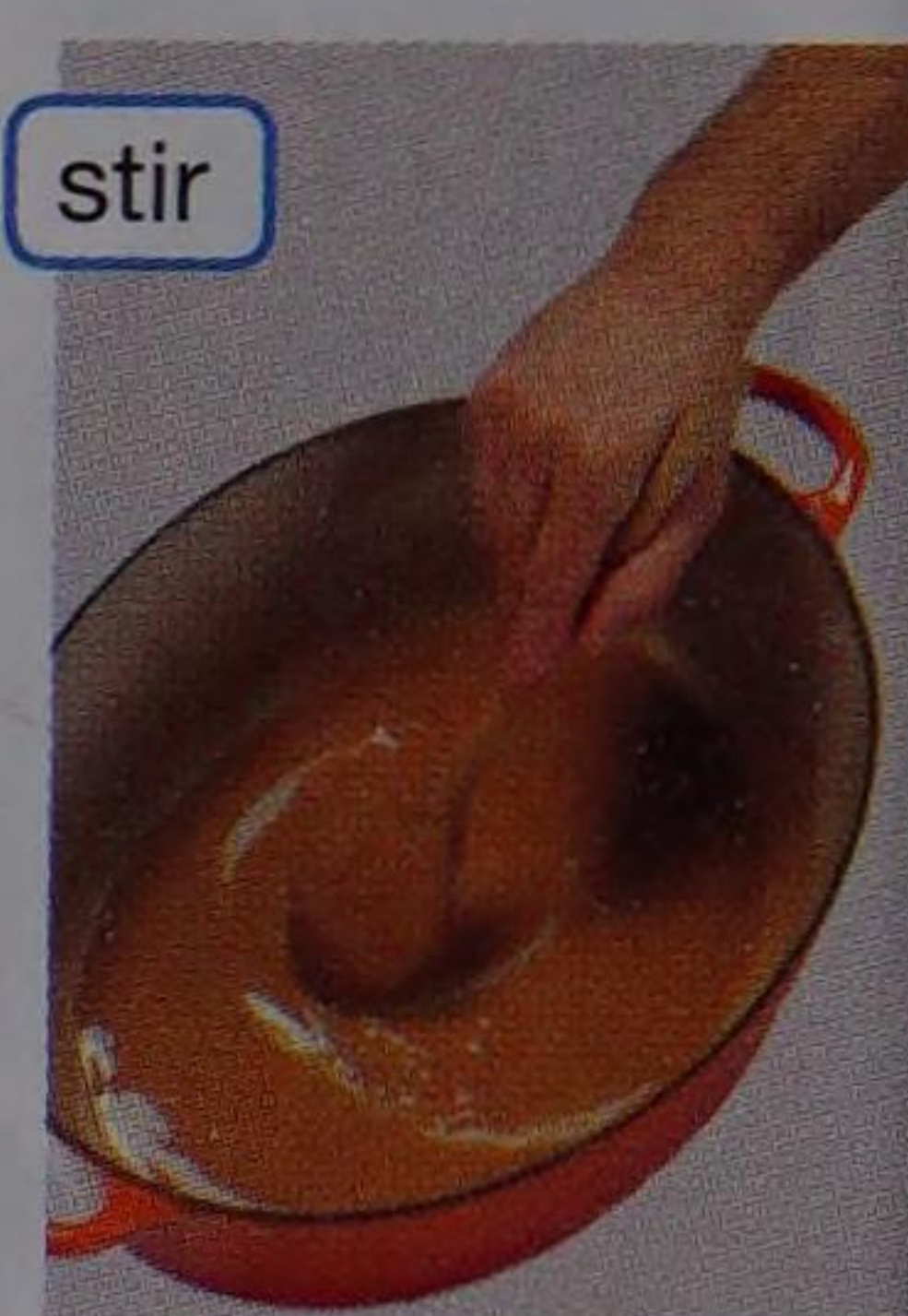
knead



crush



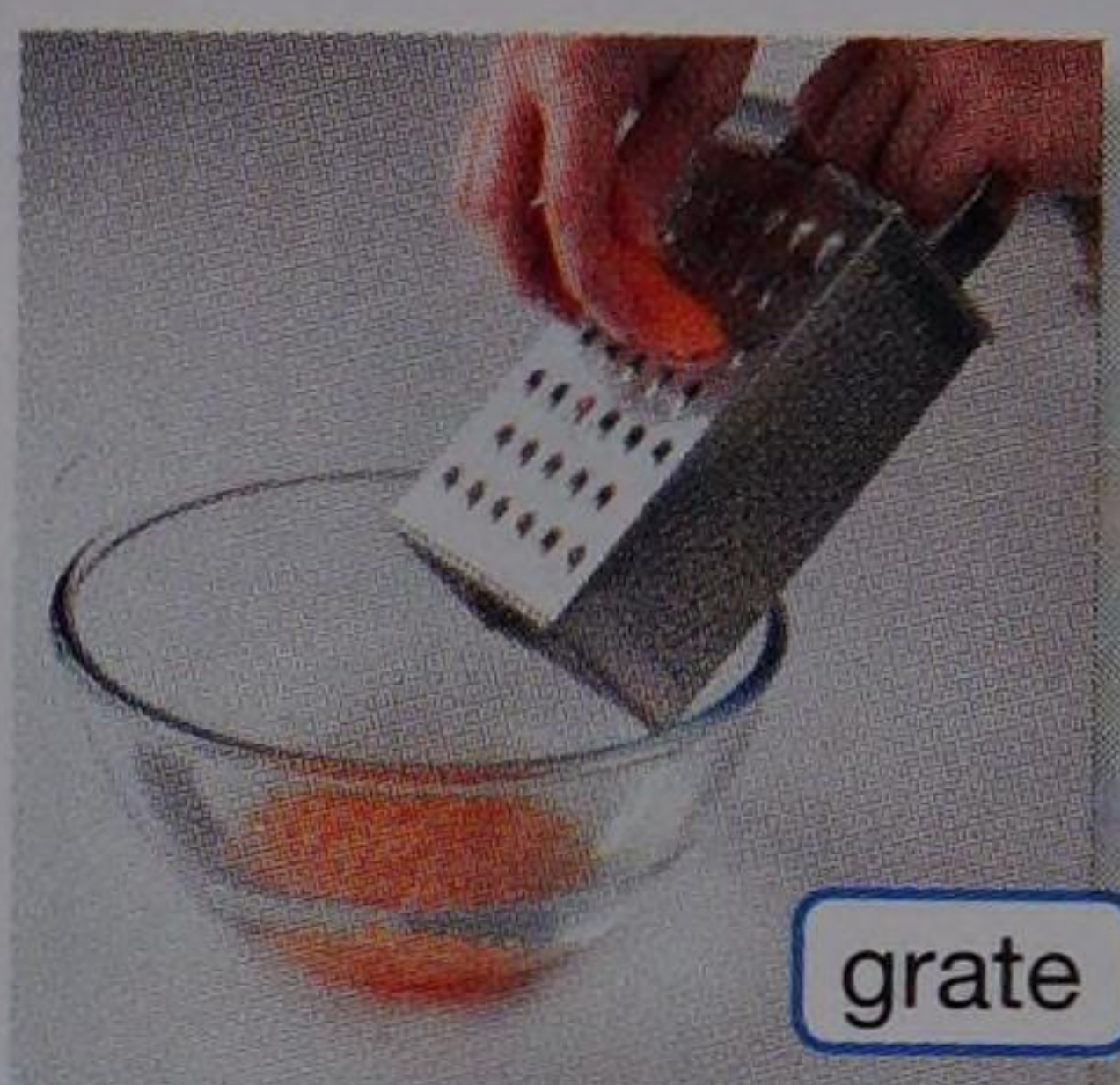
boil



stir



slice



grate



pour

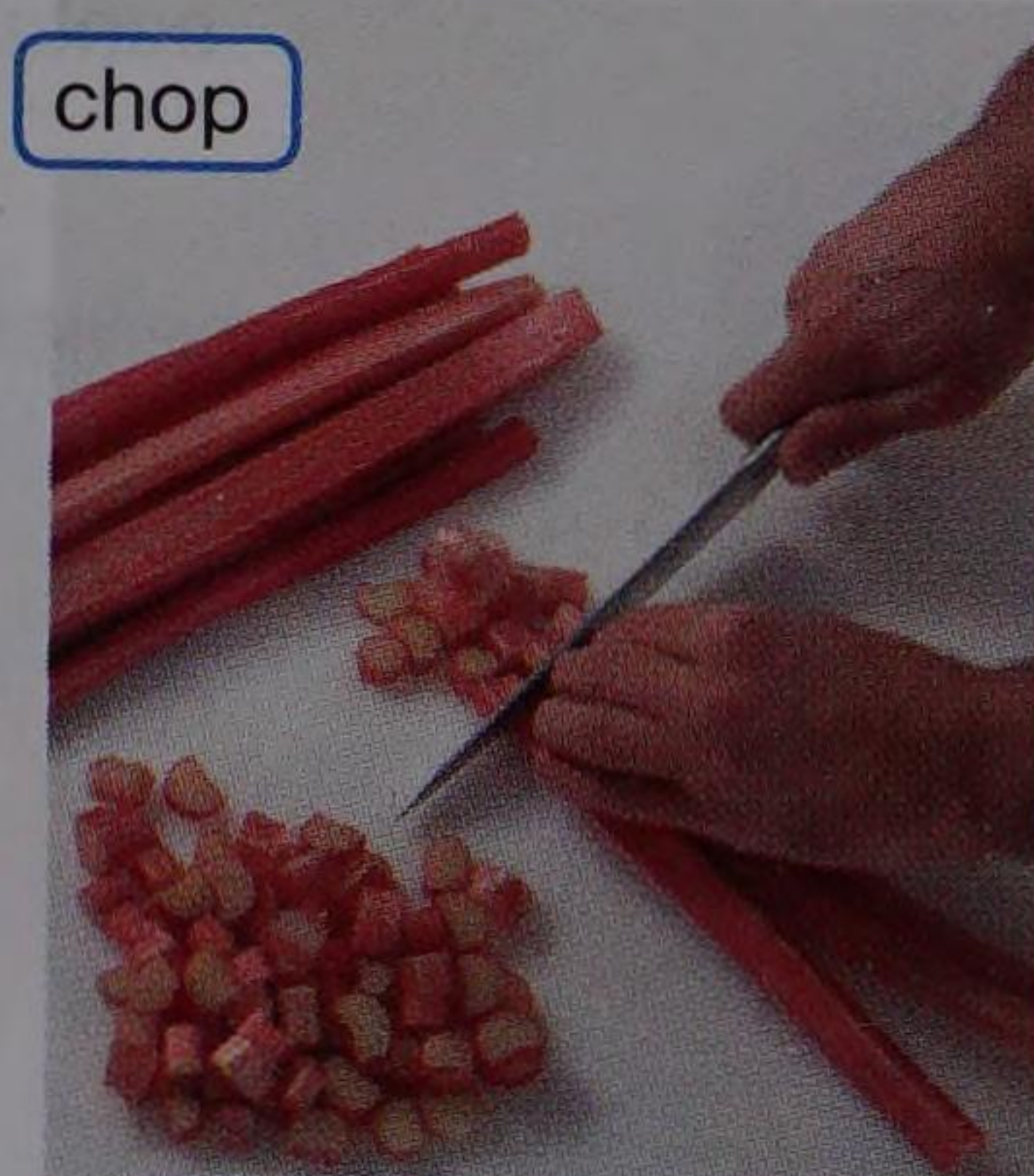
fry



squeeze



carve



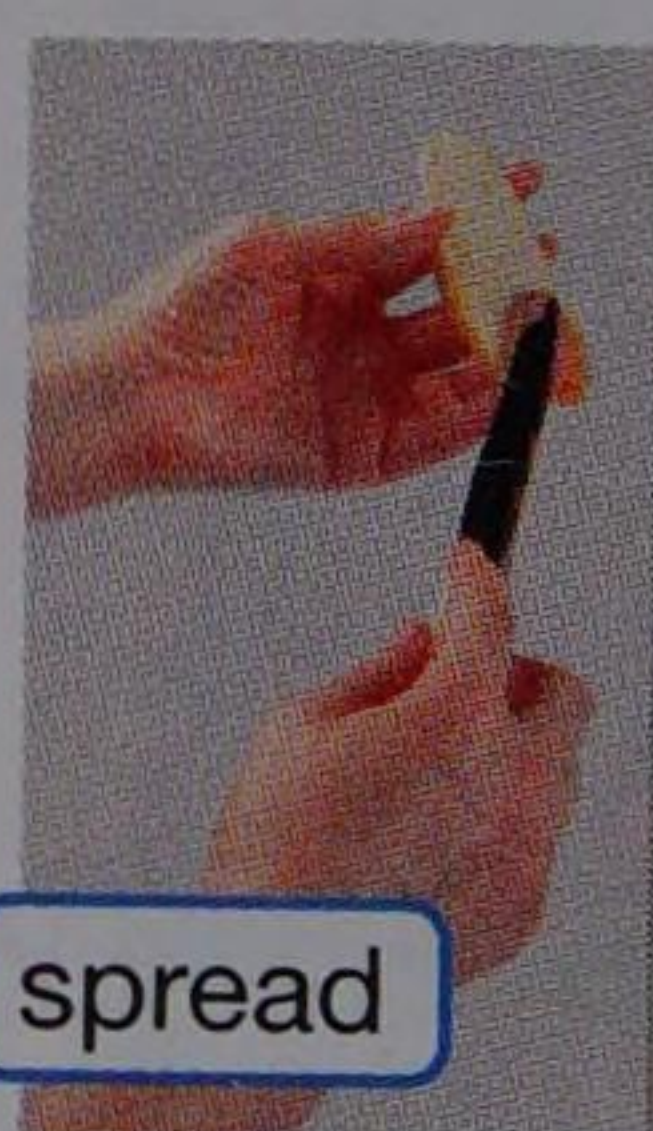
chop



mix



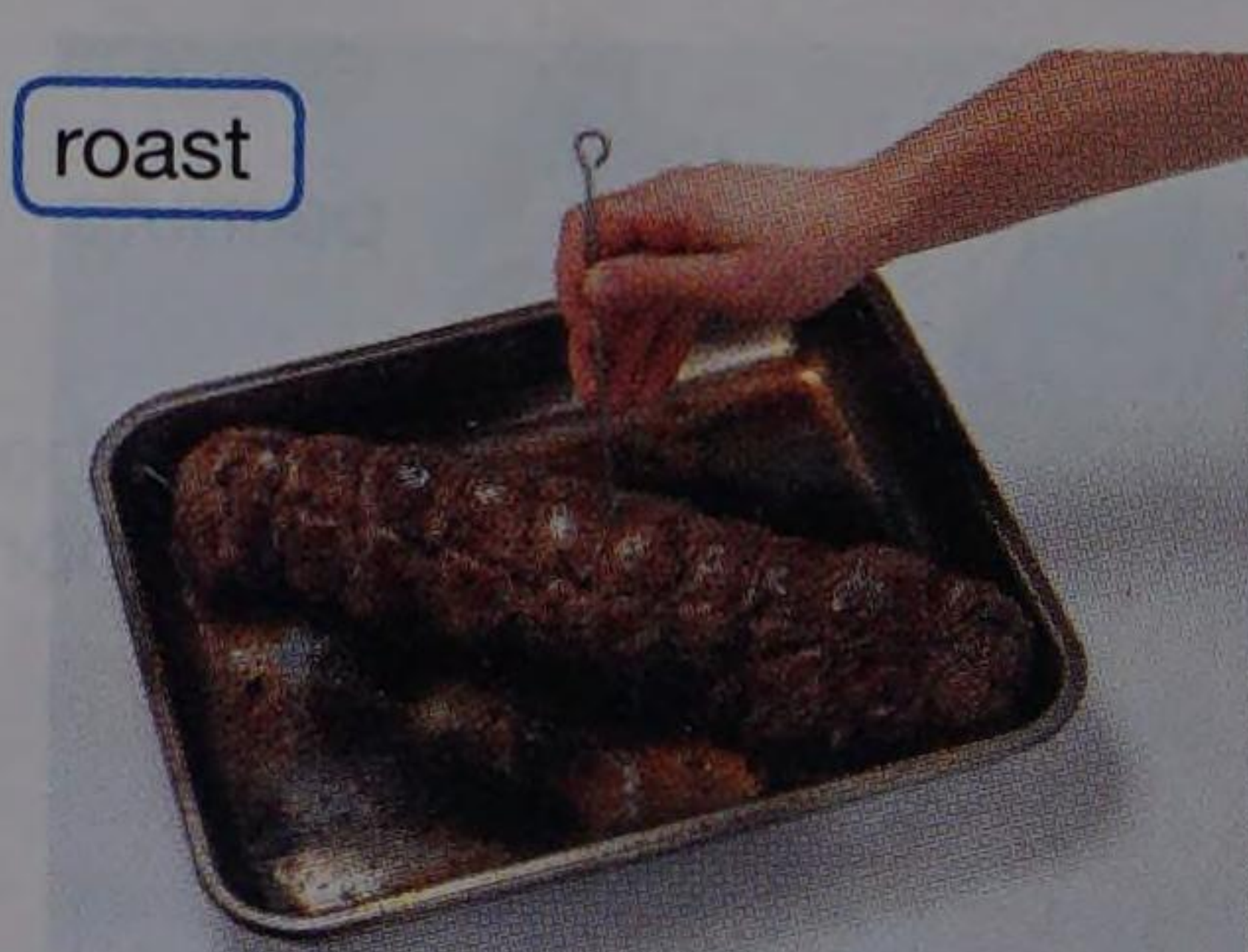
dip



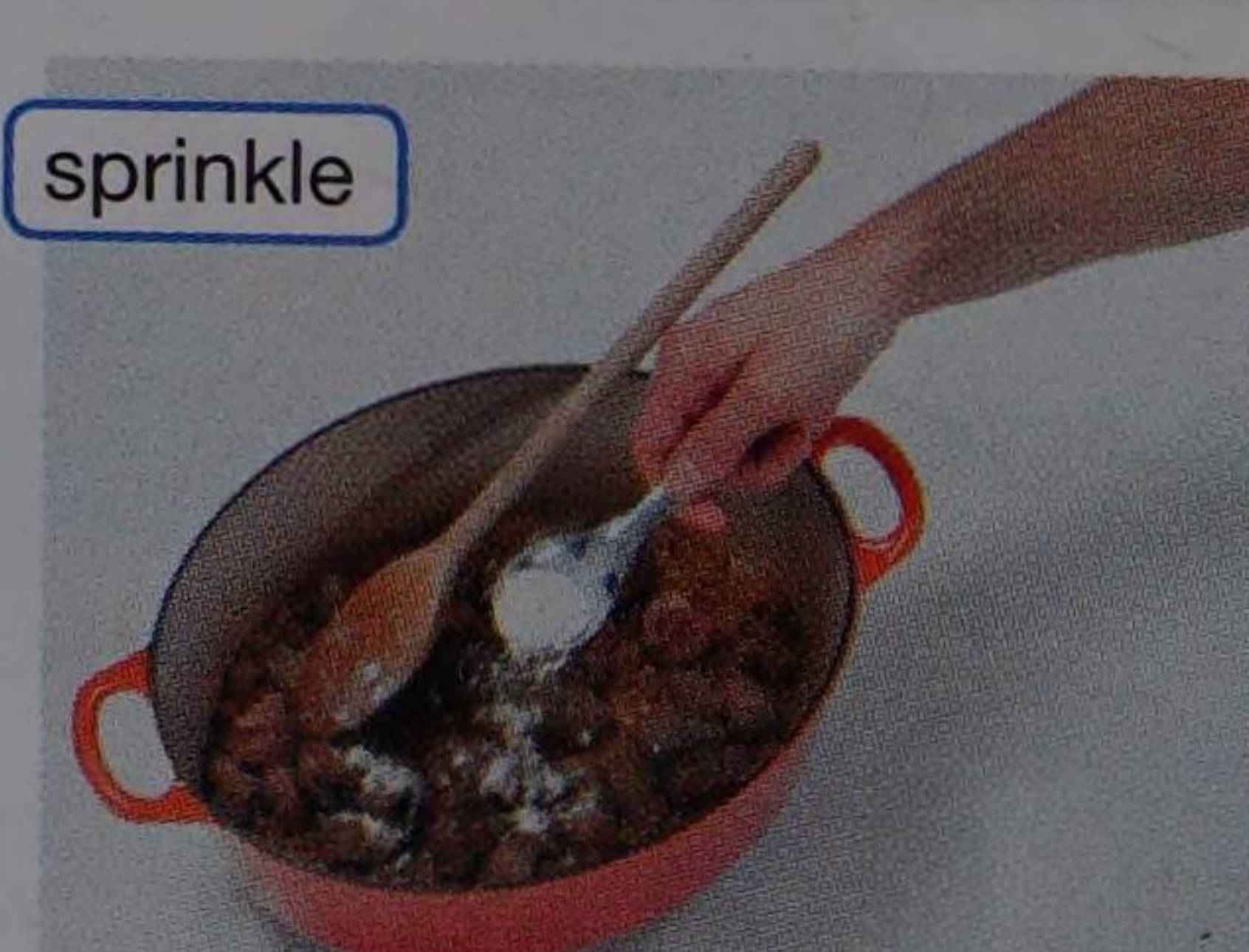
spread



peel



roast



sprinkle



# Restaurant



chef

spoon

kitchen

waiter

hostess

straw

cup

tray

waitress

salt

pepper

glass

knife

fork

tablecloth

menu

napkin

customer

chair

candle

table

place mat



## Jobs



mechanic



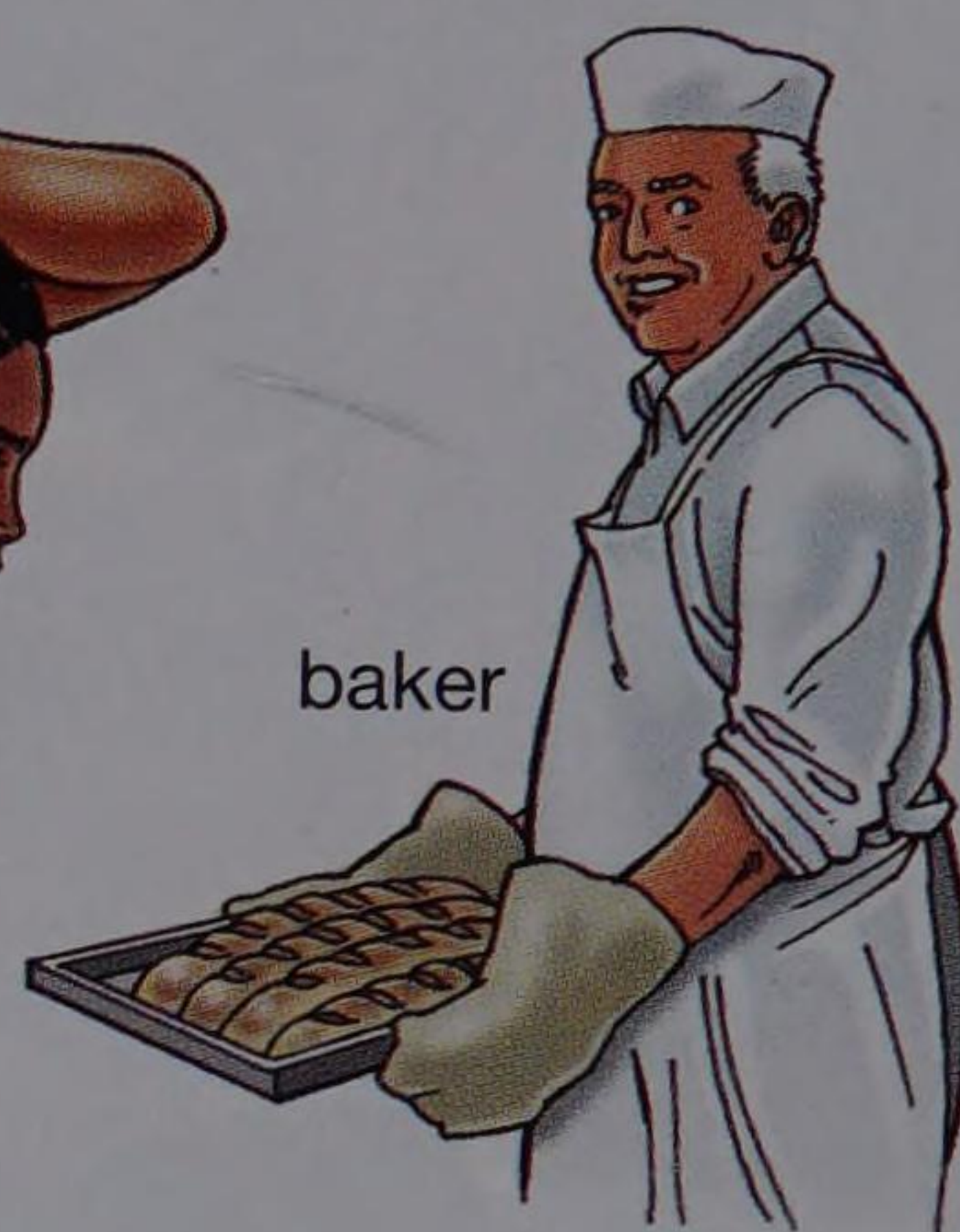
plumber



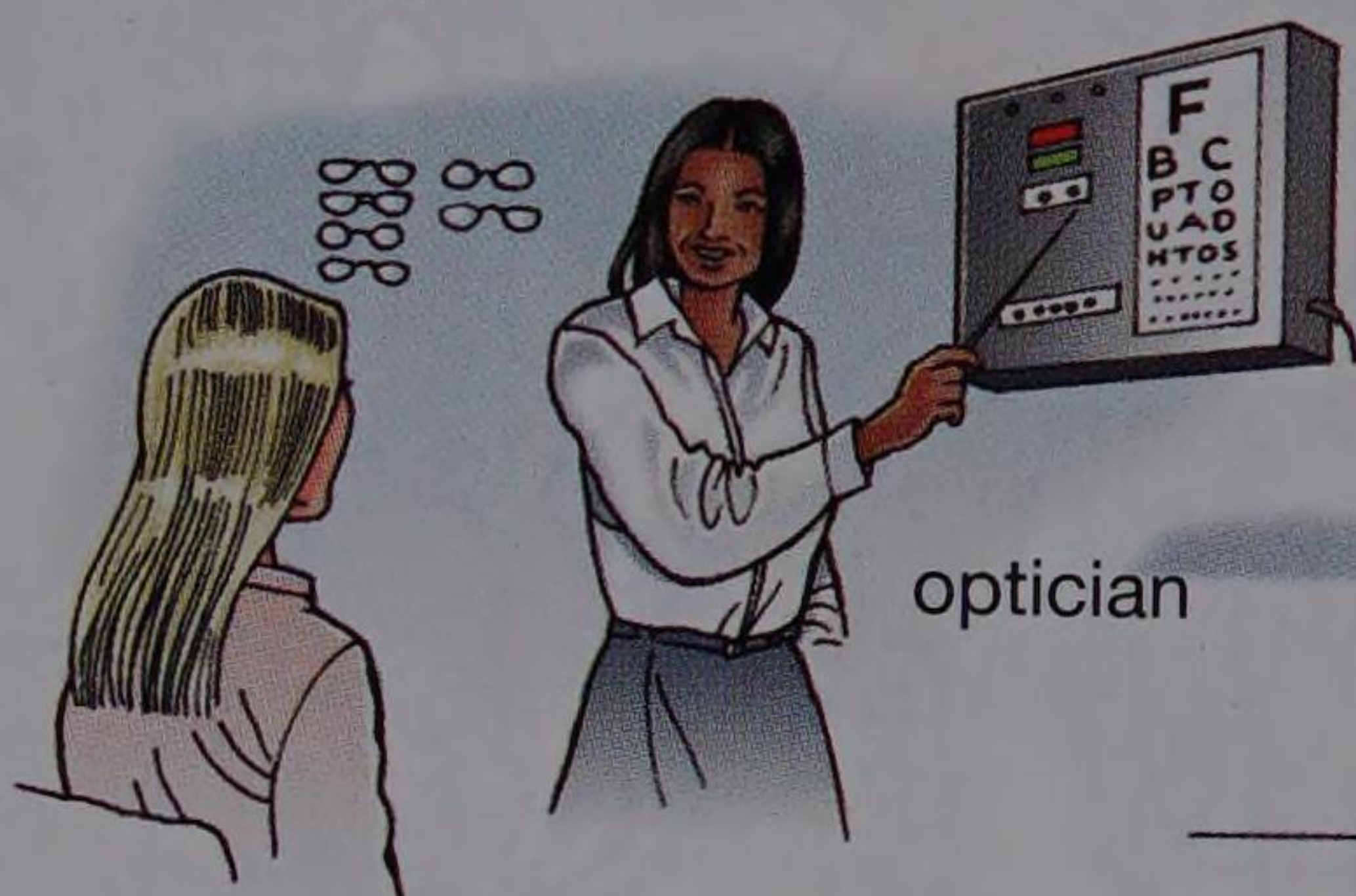
receptionist



hairdresser



baker



optician

painter



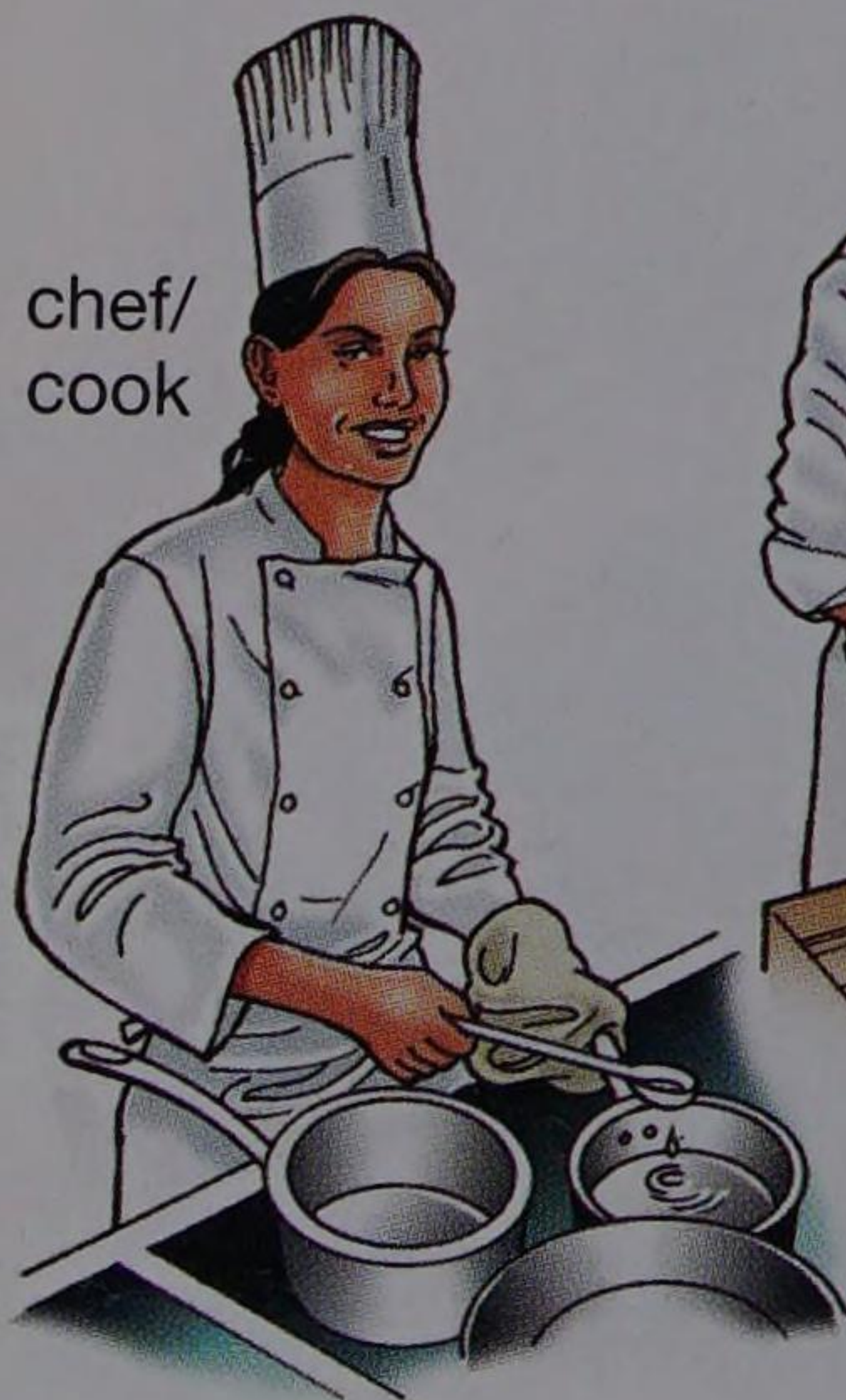
electrician



florist



waiter

chef/  
cook

butcher



veterinarian



doctor

